Operation Manual

DORICO ELEMENTS 4

Personal Music Notation System

steinberg

The Steinberg Documentation Team: Cristina Bachmann, Martina Becker, Heiko Bischoff, Lillie Harris, Christina Kaboth, Insa Mingers, Matthias Obrecht, Sabine Pfeifer

Translation: Ability InterBusiness Solutions (AIBS), Moon Chen, Jérémie Dal Santo, Rosa Freitag, GiEmme Solutions, Josep Llodra Grimalt, Vadim Kupriianov, Roland Münchow, Boris Rogowski, Sergey Tamarovsky

This document provides improved access for people who are blind or have low vision. Please note that due to the complexity and number of images in this document, it is not possible to include text descriptions of images.

The information in this document is subject to change without notice and does not represent a commitment on the part of Steinberg Media Technologies GmbH. The software described by this document is subject to a License Agreement and may not be copied to other media except as specifically allowed in the License Agreement.
No part of this publication may be copied, reproduced, or otherwise transmitted or recorded, for any purpose, without prior written permission by Steinberg Media Technologies GmbH. Registered licensees of the product described herein may print one copy of this document for their personal use.

All product and company names are ™ or ® trademarks of their respective owners. For more information, please visit www.steinberg.net/trademarks.

© Steinberg Media Technologies GmbH, 2023.

All rights reserved.

Dorico Elements_4.3.30_en-US_2023-03-30

Table of Contents

9 **New features**

16 **Introduction**
16 Platform-independent documentation
16 Usage of musical terms
17 Documentation structure
18 Typographical conventions
19 Key commands
19 How you can reach us

20 **Dorico concepts**
20 Design philosophy and higher-level concepts
21 Projects in Dorico
21 Modes in Dorico
22 Flows in Dorico
23 Players in Dorico
23 Instruments in Dorico
24 Popovers
25 Notes and rests in Dorico
26 Rhythmic position
26 Layouts in Dorico
27 Page templates in Dorico
28 Key commands in Dorico
29 Options dialogs in Dorico Elements

30 **User interface**
30 Project window
43 Workspace setup
52 Color setup
56 Language setup
58 Preferences dialog
59 Key Commands page in the Preferences dialog
65 Jump bar

69 **Project and file handling**
69 Hub
71 Starting new projects
72 Opening projects/files
73 Projects from different versions of Dorico
74 Missing Fonts dialog
75 Project Info dialog
78 Project templates
78 File import and export
102 Auto-save
104 Project backups
105 Read-only mode

106 **Setup mode**
106 Project window in Setup mode
118 Players, layouts, and flows
120 Players
125 Ensembles
127 Instruments
158 Player groups
162 Flows
165 Layouts
172 Player, layout, and instrument names
178 Flow names and flow titles
180 Videos

186 **Write mode**
186 Project window in Write mode
201 Inputting vs. editing
204 Rhythmic grid
205 Caret
210 Note input
247 Note durations
252 MIDI recording
259 Notations input
401 Selecting notes/items
409 Editing items
416 Hiding non-printing elements
417 Navigation
421 Instrument filters
426 Signposts
427 Insert mode
431 Arranging tools
444 Transposing tools
453 Musical transformations
470 Splitting flows
470 Comments

477 **Engrave mode**
477 Project window in Engrave mode
481 Moving items graphically

485 **Play mode**
485 Project window in Play mode
494 Tracks
501 Playhead
503 Playing back music
506 Enabling independent voice playback
507 Muting/Soloing tracks
509 Repeats in playback
512 Swing playback
515 Transport window
518 Playback templates
525 Endpoints

533 **Print mode**
533 Project window in Print mode
538 Printing layouts
542 Exporting layouts as graphics files
546 Printers
547 Page arrangements for printing/exporting
549 Duplex printing
550 Page vs. paper size
552 Graphics file formats
554 Annotations

555 **Page formatting**
556 Changing the page size and/or orientation
557 Changing page margins
558 Applying page template sets to layouts
559 Changing the default staff size
559 Changing the default staff/system spacing
560 Changing the vertical justification of staves/systems

562 Hiding/Showing empty staves
564 Hiding/Showing blank staves after final flows
565 Starting layouts on left-hand pages
565 Allowing/Disallowing multiple flows on the same page
566 Changing when the First page template is used
567 Hiding/Showing flow headings
568 Hiding/Showing information in running headers above flow headings
569 Changing the horizontal justification of final systems
570 Margins
573 Staff size
576 Staff spacing
579 Note spacing
581 Casting off
586 System breaks
589 Frame breaks
592 Tacets
595 Condensing
596 Part formatting propagation
599 Page templates
603 Flow headings
605 Frames
613 Music frame chains

615 Properties
615 Properties panel
616 Local vs. global properties
617 Changing the property scope
618 Changing values in numeric value fields

619 Key Editor
619 Key Editor panel
630 Notes in the Key Editor
639 Played vs. notated note durations
641 Playing Techniques editor
642 Velocity editor
645 Dynamics editor
650 MIDI Pitch Bend editor
651 MIDI CC editor
656 Tempo editor
659 Histogram tool
663 Transform tool
664 Key Editor configurations

667 Mixer
667 Mixer panel
668 Mixer window
669 Mixer channels
672 Hiding/Showing channels
672 Scrolling through channels
673 Changing the height of channels
673 Changing the volume of channels
674 Panning channels
675 Loading inserts into channels
676 Changing the reverb plug-in

677 Library
677 Layout Options dialog
679 Notation Options dialog
681 Music Fonts dialog
682 Expression maps
700 Percussion maps
706 Playback techniques

710 Notation reference

711 Introduction

712 Accidentals
712 Deleting accidentals
713 Hiding/Showing or parenthesizing accidentals
714 Changing the size of accidentals
715 Stacking of accidentals
717 Altered unisons
719 Microtonal accidentals
719 Accidental duration rules

723 Articulations
724 Copying and pasting articulations
724 Deleting articulations
724 Positions of articulations
728 Articulations in playback

729 Bars
729 Bar length
729 Deleting bars/beats
732 Splits in bars

734 Barlines
734 Per-flow notation options for barlines
735 Types of barlines
738 Hiding/Showing systemic barlines on single-staff systems
739 Barlines across staff groups

742 Bar numbers
742 Hiding/Showing bar numbers
743 Hiding/Showing bar number enclosures
744 Hiding/Showing bar number ranges on multi-bar rests
745 Hiding/Showing guide bar numbers
745 Changing the bar number paragraph style used in layouts
746 Positions of bar numbers
749 Bar number changes
751 Subordinate bar numbers
753 Bar numbers and repeats

754 Beaming
754 Per-flow notation options for beam grouping
755 Beam grouping according to meters
755 Beaming notes together manually
758 Changing the thickness of beams
759 Beam placement relative to the staff
760 Beam slants
762 Centered beams
764 Creating cross-staff beams/tremolos
768 Beam corners
768 Secondary beams
771 Tuplets within beams
771 Rests within beams
772 Stemlets
772 Fanned beams

774 Note and rest grouping
774 Creating custom beat groupings for meters

776 Brackets and braces
777 Changing bracket grouping according to ensemble type
779 Secondary brackets
781 Sub-sub-brackets

782 Chord symbols
783 Chord components
783 Chord symbol appearance presets
788 Positions of chord symbols
793 Chord symbol regions
794 Transposing chord symbols
794 Respelling chord symbols
796 Hiding/Showing the root and quality of chord symbols
797 Changing the arrangement of compound chord symbols
798 Erasing the background of chord symbols
799 Parenthesized chord symbols
803 Chord symbols imported from MusicXML

805 Chord diagrams
806 Chord diagram components
806 Hiding/Showing chord diagrams
809 Hiding/Showing used chord diagrams grids
810 Hiding/Showing fingerings in chord diagrams
812 Changing the chord diagram shape
813 Creating new chord diagram shapes

816 Clefs
817 Showing clefs after grace notes
817 Hiding/Showing clefs according to layout transpositions
818 Hiding/Showing clefs at the start of systems
819 Changing the octave of clefs
820 Clefs with octave indicators

822 Octave lines
823 Positions of octave lines
824 Octave lines in Engrave mode
825 Tucking index properties

827 Cues

828 Dynamics
828 Types of dynamics
829 Positions of dynamics
833 Parenthesizing dynamics
834 Erasing the background of dynamics
835 Changing dynamic levels
836 Hiding/Showing immediate dynamics
837 Hiding/Showing combined dynamic separators
837 Changing the appearance of sforzando/rinforzando dynamics
838 Voice-specific dynamics
839 Dynamic modifiers
842 Gradual dynamics
849 Messa di voce hairpins
851 Niente markings
853 Groups of dynamics
855 Linked dynamics
857 Dynamics in playback

858 Figured bass
859 Hiding/Showing figured bass in layouts
860 Showing figured bass on rests
861 Showing single brackets on figured bass
861 Figured bass hold lines
865 Positions of figured bass
868 Appearance of figured bass

871 Fingering
871 General placement conventions for fingering
872 Changing fingerings to substitution fingerings
873 Changing existing fingerings
874 Changing the staff-relative placement of fingerings
876 Changing the size of fingerings
877 Showing enclosures/underlines on fingerings
877 Showing individual fingerings in italics
878 Hiding/Showing fingering
878 Deleting fingerings
879 Cautionary fingerings
880 Fingerings for fretted instruments
885 Fingering slides
887 Fingerings for valved brass instruments
888 Hiding/Showing string fingering shift indicators
890 Fingerings imported from MusicXML files

891 String indicators
892 Deleting string indicators
893 Positions of string indicators

895 Front matter
895 Editing layout transposition text

897 Grace notes
898 General placement conventions for grace notes
899 Turning existing notes into grace notes
900 Turning grace notes into normal notes
900 Showing grace notes before/after barlines
901 Grace note size
901 Grace note slashes
903 Grace note stems
903 Grace note beams
904 Grace notes in playback

905 Holds and pauses
906 Types of fermatas
907 Types of breath marks
907 Types of caesuras
907 Positions of holds and pauses

911 Key signatures
912 Key signature arrangements
913 Types of key signatures
914 Hiding/Showing key signatures at the start of systems
914 Positions of key signatures
915 Cautionary key signatures
915 Enharmonic equivalent key signatures

918 Tonality systems
918 Equal Division of the Octave (EDO)

919 Lyrics
919 Types of lyrics
921 Types of syllables in lyrics
922 Copying and pasting lyrics
924 Exporting lyrics
924 Filters for lyrics
925 Positions of lyrics
930 Lyric text editing
933 Showing lyrics in italics
934 Changing the paragraph style used for lyrics
934 Lyric hyphens and lyric extender lines
935 Lyric line numbers
938 Verse numbers
938 Elision slurs

940 Notes
940 Notehead sets
947 Assigning notes to strings
948 Changing the width of ledger lines
949 Hiding/Showing noteheads
950 Changing the consolidation of rhythm dots
951 Viewing options for notes and rests

953 Bracketed noteheads
954 Showing brackets on noteheads
956 Showing brackets around one/all noteheads in tie chains
957 Splitting brackets on chords
958 Notehead brackets in Engrave mode

961 Stems
961 Stem direction
965 Stem length
966 Hiding/Showing stems

968 Harmonics
969 Turning notes into harmonics
970 Changing the harmonic partial
971 Hiding/Showing or parenthesizing harmonic accidentals
972 Appearances/Styles of harmonics

977 Ornaments
977 Changing ornament intervals
978 Positions of ornaments

981 Trills
981 Hiding/Showing trill marks
982 Changing the speed of trills
983 Hiding/Showing speed changes in trill extension lines
983 Hiding/Showing trill extension lines
984 Trill intervals
991 Trills in playback

994 Arpeggio signs
994 Types of arpeggio signs
997 Length of arpeggio signs
997 General placement conventions for arpeggio signs
998 Changing arpeggio playback relative to the beat
999 Changing the playback duration of arpeggios

1000 Glissando lines
1001 Glissando lines across empty bars
1001 Changing the style of glissando lines
1002 Changing glissando line text
1003 Glissando lines in Engrave mode
1004 Glissando lines in playback

1006 Guitar bends
1008 Guitar pre-bends and pre-dives
1009 Guitar post-bends
1011 Vibrato bar dives and returns
1012 Bend intervals
1013 Hiding/Showing guitar bend hold lines
1013 Changing the direction of guitar pre-bends/pre-dives
1014 Hiding/Showing accidentals on guitar pre-bends/pre-dives
1015 Deleting guitar pre-bends, pre-dives, and post-bends
1015 Guitar bends in Engrave mode

1021 Guitar techniques
1021 Vibrato bar techniques
1022 Tapping
1023 Hammer-ons and pull-offs
1025 Showing notes as dead notes
1026 Changing vibrato bar dip intervals
1026 Changing the staff-relative placement of guitar techniques
1027 Deleting guitar techniques

1028 Jazz articulations
1029 Jazz ornaments
1030 Positions of jazz articulations
1030 Changing the type/length of existing jazz articulations
1031 Changing the line style of smooth jazz articulations
1032 Deleting jazz articulations

1033 Page numbers
1033 Changing the page number numeral style
1034 Hiding/Showing page numbers

1036 Harp pedaling
1037 Changing the appearance of harp pedal diagrams
1038 Hiding/Showing harp pedaling in layouts
1040 Hiding/Showing borders on harp pedal diagrams
1042 Positions of harp pedal diagrams
1042 Partial harp pedaling

1044 Pedal lines
1045 Sustain pedal retakes and pedal level changes
1050 Positions of pedal lines
1052 Splitting pedal lines
1053 Pedal line start signs, hooks, and continuation lines
1058 Text pedal line signs
1061 Pedal lines in playback
1061 Pedal lines imported from MusicXML files

1062 Playing techniques
1063 Adding text to playing techniques
1064 Erasing the background of text playing techniques
1065 Hiding/Showing playing techniques
1066 Positions of playing techniques
1067 Playing technique continuation lines
1072 Groups of playing techniques

1075 Lines
1077 Line components
1078 Positions of lines
1082 Length of lines
1085 Changing the body style of lines
1086 Changing the caps of lines
1087 Changing the direction of lines
1088 Adding text to lines
1094 Lines in Engrave mode

1095 Rehearsal marks
1095 Positions of rehearsal marks
1096 Changing the index of rehearsal marks
1097 Changing the rehearsal mark sequence type
1098 Adding prefixes/suffixes to rehearsal marks

1099 Markers
1099 Hiding/Showing markers
1100 Changing the vertical position of markers
1101 Editing marker text
1102 Changing the timecodes of markers
1102 Defining markers as important

1103 Timecodes
1104 Changing the initial timecode value
1104 Changing the vertical position of timecodes
1105 Changing the timecode frequency

1107 Repeat endings
1107 Changing the total number of playthroughs in repeat endings
1109 Lengthening/Shortening segments in repeat endings
1110 Positions of repeat endings
1110 Editing repeat ending text
1111 Changing the appearance of individual final repeat ending segments
1111 Lengthening/Shortening repeat ending hooks
1112 Repeat endings in MusicXML files

1113 Repeat markers
1114 Changing the index for repeat markers
1115 Editing repeat marker text
1116 Hiding/Showing repeat markers
1117 Positions of repeat markers
1118 Repeat counts

1120 Bar repeats
1121 Changing the length of the repeated phrase in bar repeat regions
1122 Hiding/Showing region highlights
1122 Bar repeat counts
1125 Bar repeat grouping

1127 Numbered bar regions
1128 Hiding/Showing numbered bar regions
1128 Numbered bar region counts

1132 Rhythm slashes
1132 Slash regions
1134 Slashes in multiple-voice contexts
1137 Splitting slash regions
1138 Hiding/Showing stems in slash regions
1138 Slash region counts
1141 Slash voices

1144 Rests
1144 General placement conventions for rests
1145 Implicit vs. explicit rests
1147 Per-flow notation options for rests
1148 Hiding/Showing rest colors
1148 Moving rests vertically
1149 Deleting rests
1150 Hiding/Showing bar rests in empty bars
1152 Multi-bar rests

1155 Slurs
1155 General placement conventions for slurs
1161 Slur styles
1164 Slur curvature direction
1166 Cross-staff and cross-voice slurs
1167 Nested slurs
1169 Linked slurs
1170 Slur segments
1171 Slurs in Engrave mode
1176 Slur height
1177 Slur shoulder offset
1178 Slurs in playback

1180 Staff labels
1181 Hiding/Showing staff labels
1183 Hiding/Showing staff labels at system/frame breaks
1184 Staff label contents
1185 Instrument transpositions in staff labels
1187 Hiding/Showing instrument change labels at the start of flows
1188 Player group labels
1189 Staff labels for percussion kits
1190 Staff labels on condensed staves

1192 Staves
1193 Per-layout options for staves
1193 Extra staves
1194 Ossia staves
1194 System dividers
1196 System objects
1198 System indents

1199 Divisi

1200 Tablature
1201 Rhythms on tablature
1201 Hiding/Showing notation staves and tablature
1202 Changing the allocated string for notes on tablature

1204 Tempo marks
1205 Types of tempo marks
1206 Tempo mark components
1208 Positions of tempo marks
1209 Changing tempo text
1211 Hiding/Showing tempo marks
1211 Metronome marks
1215 Gradual tempo changes
1218 Tempo equations

1220 Text items
1221 Types of text
1225 Changing the paragraph style of text
1225 Aligning text items with the start of systems
1226 Enabling/Disabling text collision avoidance
1227 Adding borders to text items
1229 Erasing the background of text items
1230 Hiding/Showing text items

1232 Ties
1233 Ties vs. slurs
1234 Tie styles
1237 Tie curvature direction
1238 Non-standard ties
1240 Hiding/Showing laissez vibrer ties
1241 Deleting ties
1241 Splitting tie chains
1242 Ties in Engrave mode
1245 Tie height
1247 Tie shoulder offset

1249 Time signatures
1250 Types of time signatures
1252 Cautionary time signatures
1253 Pick-up bars

1254 Large time signatures
1256 Time signature styles
1261 Positions of time signatures
1261 Hiding/Showing time signatures
1262 Ending interchangeable time signatures
1262 Changing the design of time signatures

1264 Tremolos
1265 General placement conventions for tremolos
1266 Tremolos in tie chains
1268 Changing the speed of tremolos
1268 Deleting tremolos
1269 Rhythmic positions of notes with tremolos
1269 Moving tremolo strokes

1271 Tuplets
1271 Nested tuplets
1273 Turning existing notes into tuplets
1273 Turning tuplets into normal notes
1274 Allowing/Disallowing tuplets to span barlines
1275 Tuplet beams
1276 Tuplet brackets
1279 Tuplet numbers/ratios

1282 Unpitched percussion
1282 Playing techniques for unpitched percussion instruments
1288 Percussion kits vs. individual percussion instruments
1289 Per-flow notation options for unpitched percussion
1289 Percussion kits and drum sets
1291 Notations on notes in percussion kits
1293 Percussion kit presentation types
1295 Percussion legends
1300 Voices in percussion kits
1301 Universal Indian Drum Notation

1303 Voices
1304 Per-flow notation options for voices
1304 Hiding/Showing voice colors
1305 Allowing/Disallowing noteheads in opposing voices to overlap
1306 Note positions in multiple-voice contexts
1309 Unused voices
1309 Notes crossed to staves with existing notes in other voices

1310 Glossary

1324 Index

New features

New Features in Version 4.3.0

Splitting notes by duration

- You can now split notes into multiple, shorter notes. See Splitting notes by duration.

Repeat barlines

- When you add start repeat barlines to a range of selected items, Dorico Elements now automatically adds end repeat barlines at the end of the selection. See Inputting barlines with the popover and Inputting barlines with the panel.

Restorative clefs

- When you add clefs to a range of selected items, Dorico Elements now automatically adds restorative clefs at the end of the selection. See Inputting clefs with the popover and Inputting clefs with the panel.

Engrave mode view options

- System and frame fullness indicators are now shown in Engrave mode. See System fullness indicators and Frame fullness indicators.

Layout transposition token

- A new token that displays whether layouts are concert or transposed pitch is available. It uses your instrument language setting by default, but you can override the text in each layout independently. See Tokens and Editing layout transposition text.

Key Editor improvements

- You can now show multiple instruments in the Key Editor simultaneously, allowing you to input data, such as MIDI CC points, for all selected instruments simultaneously. See Showing instruments in the Key Editor.
- You can now copy MIDI CC and dynamic points from the primary instrument in the Key Editor to all secondary instruments, making it easy to sync data across tracks. See Copying dynamic points to other instruments and Copying MIDI points to other instruments.
- The Histogram and Transform tools are now available in the MIDI CC editor, in addition to the Velocity editor. See Histogram tool and Transform tool.
- You can now save configurations of editors in the Key Editor, allowing you to open those editors again quickly. See Key Editor configurations.

Chord diagram fingering improvements

- When editing chord diagram fingerings, you can now enter **0** to show no fingering and **T** for thumb fingerings on the lowest string. See Edit Chord Diagram dialog.

Lyric improvements

- It is now possible to export all lyrics in the project as plain text. See Exporting lyrics.

Hiding noteheads

- You can now hide the noteheads of individual notes, while maintaining appropriate note spacing. See Hiding/Showing noteheads.

Note grouping in slash regions

- You can now change the grouping and duration of rhythm slashes in slash regions; for example, if you want to show six slashes in 6/8 instead of two dotted slashes. See Note grouping in slash regions.

Text improvements

- You can now select different border styles for text items. See Changing the style of text item borders.

Tremolos in tie chains

- You can now specify that single-note tremolos should not appear on the first or last note in tie chains when inputting tremolos. See Tremolos in tie chains, Inputting tremolos with the popover, and Inputting tremolos with the panel.

New Features in Version 4.2.0

Key Editor improvements

- MIDI CC, MIDI pitch bend, and dynamic points are now copied automatically when you copy the notes to which they apply. However, you can disable this behavior if required. See Disabling automatic copying of MIDI data when pasting.
- The percussion editor has been returned to the Key Editor. You can also now use the **Drumstick** tool to input notes with a different rhythmic duration for each unpitched percussion instrument independently. See Inputting notes using the Drumstick tool.

New Features in Version 4.1.0

Color improvements

- A new **Colors** page has been added to **Preferences**. It includes new options that allow you to control colors used for various purposes in the music area, including the first eight voices on each staff, and to invert music/page colors, which by default shows white music on a black background. See Changing music area colors and Inverting colors.

Printing/Exporting flows

- You can now specify the flows that you want to print or export. Dorico Elements then prints/exports all pages on which the selected flows appear. See Print Flows dialog.

Page template overrides

- You can now remove page template overrides in Dorico Elements. See Removing page template overrides.

Flow headings

- You can now change the tokens included in flow headings in Dorico Elements. See Edit Flow Heading dialog.

Properties panel

- You can now activate properties in the Properties panel by clicking their name in addition to their activation switch. See Properties panel.

Lyrics improvements

- You can now edit the formatting of individual lyrics, such as making single characters underlined. See Edit Lyric dialog.
- You can override the paragraph style used for individual lyrics. For example, if you want to use a paragraph style with less stretch for lyrics on tightly spaced systems. See Changing the paragraph style used for lyrics.

New Features in Version 4.0.0

Highlights

Jump bar

- The new jump bar allows you to perform commands and go to locations using only your computer keyboard. See Jump bar.
- You can assign jump bar aliases to specific commands; for example, so you can use shorter entries for your favorite commands. See Assigning jump bar aliases.

MIDI improvements

- The handling of imported/opened MIDI files has been extensively improved. You can now map tracks to specific voices, players, and playing techniques, and save your settings for reuse in subsequent imports. See MIDI Import Options dialog.
- During MIDI recording, Dorico Elements now automatically transcribes multiple simultaneous parts into separate voices, such as in contrapuntal piano music. Depending on your settings for MIDI recording and quantization, Dorico Elements can also detect slurs, tremolos, trills, pedal lines, tuplets, and grace notes. See MIDI recording.

Player sorting

- By default, players are now automatically sorted in orchestral order, regardless of the order in which you add them to the project. You can change the player sorting setting in the **Players** panel in Setup mode. See Players panel.
- You can now designate players as soloists, such as in a concerto for solo violin and orchestra. Soloists are treated differently, such as their instruments not being numbered with other instruments of the same type and being automatically positioned in the conventional score position; that is, above the strings. See Designating players as soloists.

Dorico Elements features

- The maximum number of players you can have in a single project has been increased to 24, allowing Dorico Elements users to write for ensembles such as big bands and medium-sized orchestras. See Players.
- Graphical editing in Engrave mode is now included in Dorico Elements, allowing you to adjust the graphical positions of items and to access additional properties. See Engrave mode.
- The **Notation Options** dialog is now available in Dorico Elements. It allows you to change per-flow defaults, such as for beam, note, and rest grouping in different meters. See Notation Options dialog.
- You can now access chord symbol appearance presets that allow you to customize the appearance of chord symbols. See Chord symbol appearance presets.

Capos

- You can now define capos for individual fretted instruments. You can then control how capos affect notated pitches and chord symbols/diagrams independently of each other to suit a range of requirements. See Capos.

Lower zone

- The lower zone, formerly known as the “bottom panel”, now contains multiple different panels, including Keyboard, Fretboard, and Drum Pads panels that you can use to input notes and the Mixer and Key Editor panels that you can use to adjust playback. See Lower zone (Write mode).

Instrument filters

- Instrument filters allow you to show only the staves of selected instruments in galley view. You can easily switch between showing only staves in the filter and all staves in the layout. See Instrument filters.

Insert mode scope

- Insert mode has been given additional functionality, allowing you to change the scope of its impact. For example, you can now set Insert mode to affect all players in flows and also change the duration of the current bar. See Insert mode scopes.
- You can also now set a stop position in each flow, which prevents any material beyond the stop point being affected by inserted notes. See Setting Insert mode stop positions.

Musical transformations

- Dorico Elements now provides multiple tools for transforming pitches and rhythms, including reversing and inverting pitches. See Musical transformations.
- The functionality of the note tools popover has been expanded to include the new musical transformations. You can also transform notes using new, dedicated dialogs. See Note tools popover.

Play mode

- Play mode has had a complete refresh in both appearance and functionality. Tracks now appear in a track overview, with editing options available in the Track Inspector and Key Editor. See Project window in Play mode.
- The piano roll now appears in the Key Editor, rather than in the track overview (previously known as the “event display”). See Key Editor.
- Powerful histogram controls have been introduced as part of the new Key Editor, allowing you to perform various editing operations, including for non-consecutive notes. See Histogram tool.
- The Mixer has also been completely refreshed in appearance and functionality. In addition to the **Mixer** window, it can also appear as a panel in the lower zone in Write, Engrave, and Play modes. See Mixer.

Library

- Dialogs for visual items and options in the library are now accessible on a new **Library** menu. This also allows you to access these dialogs from all modes. See Library.

Numbered bar regions

- Numbered bar regions allow you to show bar counts in specific regions without additional notations. This can help performers keep track of how many bars have passed when playing repetitive music. See Numbered bar regions.

More New Features

Language improvements

- Changing the application language now takes effect immediately, without the need to restart Dorico Elements. See Changing the application language.
- You can now change the language used for instrument names, including resetting the names of all existing instruments in the project to follow the new setting. See Changing the language for instrument names.
- You can now change the language used for date and time tokens. See Changing the language for date and time tokens.

Hub redesign

- The Hub has been redesigned, and now includes a **Create New** page where you can set up basic project information, including adding the project title, selecting a time signature, and specifying a starting number of bars. See Hub.

Ensemble picker

- When adding ensembles, you can now build custom ensembles and save them for future projects. The ensemble picker has also been given a default key command. See Ensemble picker and Building and saving custom ensembles.

Write mode toolboxes

- Some functions in the Notes toolbox now have additional options available when you click and hold their button, including allowing you to open the tuplets popover. See Notes toolbox.
- You can now switch between accessing panels and popovers from the Notations toolbox in Write mode. See Notations toolbox.

Chord symbol improvements

- You can now generate chord symbols based on the harmony of selected notes. See Generating chord symbols from notes.
- You can change the arrangement of polychord and altered bass note chord symbols. See Changing the arrangement of compound chord symbols.
- You can also now erase the background of chord symbols. See Erasing the background of chord symbols.
- You can now show parentheses around chord symbols, including showing only a single left or right bracket on individual parenthesized chord symbols. See Parenthesized chord symbols.
- For players set to show chord diagrams, you can now show only the chord symbol or chord diagram for individual chord symbols. See Showing only chord symbols or chord diagrams.

Insert Music Text dialog

- The new **Insert Music Text** dialog makes it easier to add music symbols, such as note glyphs and accidentals, to text items and in text frames. See Insert Music Text dialog.

Figured bass improvements

- You can now input *tasto solo* indications and bracketed figures, including only showing a single bracket on each figure. See Figured bass popover and Showing single brackets on figured bass.

Note spelling

- A new automatic note respelling dialog has been added, allowing you to specify the notes you want to respell and apply general preferences to the selection. See Respell Notes Automatically dialog.
- You can now copy note spellings to other layouts, for example, if you originally respelled notes in a part layout but want those spellings to appear in the full score layout as well. See Copying note spellings to other layouts.
- Additionally, you can reset changes to note spellings in either the current layout only or in all layouts. See Resetting note spellings.

Casting off improvements

- There are new options to make casting off layouts easier, including moving bars to next/previous systems and locking/resetting entire layouts. See Moving bars to other systems, Locking layouts, and Resetting casting off.
- Additionally, there is now a preference for whether system/frame breaks are allowed within bars. Disallowing breaks within bars lets you select anything in the bar at the start of which you want a system/frame break. See Allowing/Disallowing breaks within bars.

Pasting articulations

- You can now copy phrases and paste only their articulations and jazz articulations to other phrases. See Copying and pasting articulations.

Chord diagram fingerings

- You can now show fingerings in chord diagrams, either inside dots or at the ends of strings. You can change individual fingerings when editing chord diagram shapes. See Hiding/Showing fingerings in chord diagrams and Edit Chord Diagram dialog.

Percussion improvements

- You can now interact with rests belonging to unpitched percussion instruments, including moving rests vertically and deleting rests. See Moving rests vertically and Deleting rests.

Staff label improvements

- You can now show player names instead of instrument names for each player in each layout independently, and set both full and short player names for each player. For example, in works with multiple percussionists, showing “Percussion 1” in staff labels regardless of their current instrument is sometimes preferred. See Showing instrument/player names in staff labels and Renaming players.
- Additional options have been added for the appearance and position of instrument transpositions in staff labels, including parenthesizing instrument transpositions and showing them after the instrument number. See Changing the appearance/position of instrument transpositions in staff labels.
- You can now show vertical labels for player groups to the left of staff labels, as is sometimes used in large-scale works. See Player group labels.

Last but Not Least

Saving, resetting, and removing defaults in options dialogs

- A **Reset to Factory** option has been added to the **Preferences** dialog, allowing you to restore the factory defaults for application preferences if necessary. See Preferences dialog.
- All four ways of saving, resetting, and removing defaults in options dialogs are now always shown. Previously, it was necessary to hold a modifier key to access other options if you had existing saved defaults. See Layout Options dialog and Notation Options dialog.

Project preview

- When you save projects, Dorico now generates preview images of the layout open in the music area. PNG files are used on the **Open Recent** page in the Hub. See Project Info dialog.

Pedal line improvements

- You can now add retakes and pedal level changes to, and remove them from, multiple rhythmic positions simultaneously. See Adding retakes with the popover, Adding retakes with the panel, and Removing retakes and pedal level changes.

Changing voices

- You can now change the voice of existing notes using the same methods as creating and switching between voices during note input. See Changing the voice of existing notes.

Crosshairs

- You can now show crosshairs when selecting and/or dragging items in Engrave mode, which can help you align items more easily. See Hiding/Showing crosshairs.

Page templates

- The templates for achieving consistent page formatting that used to be known as “master pages” have been renamed, and are now known as “page templates” throughout Dorico. See Page templates.

Accidental scale size

- You can now change the size of accidentals independently of noteheads. See Changing the size of accidentals.

Bar number improvements

- You can now hide numbers in subordinate bar number sequences and only show alphabetical letters, such as “a”, “b”, and “c”. See Adding subordinate bar numbers.

Beaming improvements

- You can now change the gaps between, and thickness of, beam lines for individual beams. See Changing the gaps between beam lines and Changing the thickness of beams.
- You can now force centered beams for beams that include notes only on one side of the middle staff line using the new **Custom Centered Beam** dialog. See Creating centered beams.

Hiding clefs and key signatures after the first system

- You can now hide/show clefs and key signatures at the start of single-staff systems from the second system onwards in each flow independently. This is a convention commonly used in hand-copied lead sheets. See Hiding/Showing clefs at the start of systems and Hiding/Showing key signatures at the start of systems.

Grace notes

- You can now turn existing notes into grace notes and vice versa. See Turning existing notes into grace notes and Turning grace notes into normal notes.

Introduction

Thank you very much for purchasing Dorico Elements.

We are delighted that you have chosen Steinberg's scoring application and hope that you will enjoy using it for years to come.

Dorico is a next-generation application for producing beautiful sheet music, whether you are a composer, arranger, music engraver, publisher, instrumentalist, teacher, or student. Whether you want to print your music or share it in a digital format, Dorico is the most sophisticated program available.

Like all of Steinberg's products, Dorico has been designed from the ground up by a team of musicians who understand your needs and who are dedicated to producing a tool that is both easy to learn and use, but also capable of results of the highest quality. Dorico also integrates with your existing workflow and can import and export files in a variety of formats.

Dorico thinks about music the same way a human musician does and has a deeper understanding of the elements of music and musical performance than other scoring applications. Its unique design allows an unprecedented degree of flexibility, in music input and editing, in score layout, in rhythmic freedom, and many other areas besides.

Most sincerely yours,

The Steinberg Dorico Team

Platform-independent documentation

This documentation applies to the operating systems Windows and macOS.

Features and settings that are specific to one of these platforms are clearly indicated. In all other cases, the descriptions and procedures in the documentation are valid for Windows and macOS.

Some points to consider:

- The screenshots are taken from macOS and use the dark theme in Dorico Elements.
- Some functions that are available on the **File** menu on Windows can be found in the program name menu on macOS.

Usage of musical terms

This documentation uses American terminology for musical items.

The following table lists all the notes and notations that have different names in American and British English:

American name	British name
Double whole note	Breve
Whole note	Semibreve

American name	British name
Half note	Minim
Quarter note	Crotchet
Eighth note	Quaver
Sixteenth note	Semiquaver
Thirty-second note	Demisemiquaver
Sixty-fourth note	Hemidemisemiquaver
Hundred twenty-eighth note	Semihemidemisemiquaver
Two hundred fifty-sixth note	Demisemihemidemisemiquaver
Half-step	Semitone
Whole step	Whole tone
Staff	Stave
Bar/Measure	Bar
NOTE	
This documentation only uses “bar”.	

Documentation structure

In our documentation, we divide information into three different types of topics, according to their content.

Descriptions of the user interface

Topics that describe the functionality of user interface items and list the options and settings of dialogs, panels, or other items.

Descriptions of basic concepts

Topics that describe concepts and explain the functionality of a specific software feature.

Descriptions of procedures

Topics that provide step-by-step instructions for how to perform a specific task. These topics often provide an example for why you might want to follow the steps and a brief summary of the result, including consequences to be aware of.

Because of this division of information, our documentation structure functions as a reference you can consult for specific information or instructions as required, rather than a guide you must read from start to finish.

TIP

Descriptive topics do not describe how to perform a task, and procedural topics do not explain what something is. To find general information about items or concepts, we recommend searching for them by name, such as “dynamics”. To find instructions for performing particular actions, we recommend including a relevant verb in your search, such as “moving”.

Links at the bottom of topics guide you to further relevant content. You can also check the sidebar for nearby, related topics in the documentation structure.

Typographical conventions

In our documentation, we use structural and markup elements to present information according to its purpose.

Structural elements

Prerequisite

Describes any actions or conditions you must have fulfilled before starting a procedure.

Procedure

Lists the steps that you must take to achieve a specific result.

Important

Informs you about serious issues; for example, issues that affect the system, the connected hardware, or that risk data loss.

Note

Informs you about issues or other relevant information.

Tip

Adds further information or useful suggestions.

Example

Provides you with an example.

Result

Describes the result of the procedure.

After Completing This Task

Informs you about actions or tasks that you can perform after completing the procedure.

Related Links

Lists related topics that you can find in this documentation.

Markup

Bold text indicates the name of a menu, option, function, dialog, window, and so on.

EXAMPLE

To open the **Project Info** dialog, choose **File** > **Project Info**.

If bold text is separated by a greater-than symbol, this indicates either a sequence of different menus to open, or directions to follow for navigation inside the dialog named at the start of the sequence.

EXAMPLE

Choose **Edit** > **Notations** > **Voices** > **Change Voice** > **[Voice]**.

You can change this option in **Preferences** > **Note Input and Editing** > **Editing**.

File names and folder paths are shown in a different font.

EXAMPLE

`example_file.txt`

Key commands

Key commands are sets of keys that perform defined tasks when pressed together. They are also known as “keyboard shortcuts” or “hotkeys”. Many key commands are the same on different operating systems but some are not, and this guide distinguishes them.

When key commands use equivalent modifier keys depending on the operating system, the modifier keys are indicated separated by a slash, with the Windows modifier key first and the macOS modifier key second.

EXAMPLE

Ctrl/Cmd-Alt/Opt-Down Arrow means: press **Ctrl**-**Alt**-**Down Arrow** on Windows, **Cmd**-**Opt**-**Down Arrow** on macOS.

When key commands require entirely different keys depending on the operating system, they are indicated with the Windows key command first, followed by the macOS key command.

EXAMPLE

 # (Windows) or \ (macOS) means: press **#** on Windows, **** on macOS.

In this documentation, we use key commands that match the language of the documentation. For example, key commands in the English documentation correspond to the English keyboard language.

RELATED LINKS

Key commands in Dorico on page 28
Key Commands page in the Preferences dialog on page 59
Changing the keyboard language on page 64
Changing the application language on page 56

How you can reach us

You can access additional information from the **Help** menu.

The menu contains links to various Steinberg web pages. Selecting one of these menu items automatically launches your web browser and opens the page. On these pages, you can find support and compatibility information, answers to frequently asked questions, information about updates and other Steinberg products, and so on.

Dorico concepts

Dorico is based on a number of key concepts that come from its design philosophy.

We recommend familiarizing yourself with these concepts, as this will greatly enhance your ability to work efficiently with Dorico and to navigate more easily through this documentation.

Design philosophy and higher-level concepts

Deep design considerations are required to create a notation software like Dorico, which might be of particular interest to users familiar with scoring applications. Dorico has a forward-thinking design that is led by musical concepts rather than computational convenience, and this provides many benefits.

In most other graphically-orientated scoring applications, the highest-level concept is the staff or the instrument definition that creates a staff or staves. When setting up your full score in such programs, you start by adding the correct number of staves, and you are immediately forced into making decisions about the layout. This means that you must know in advance whether two flutes share a staff or have their own individual staves, or whether there should be two trumpets or three. Many of these decisions have significant effects throughout the process of inputting, editing, and producing individual instrumental parts.

Typically, every system of a score must contain the same number of staves, even if some are hidden on particular systems. This requires the user to manage common conventions for themselves, such as multiple players of the same instrument sharing staves. This can be time-consuming and is naturally error-prone.

By contrast, Dorico is designed to conform more closely to how music is performed in the real world and to make the score a flexible expression of the practical choices that go into a musical performance, rather than to make the musical performance subservient to the way the score was initially prepared.

To that end, the highest-level concept of Dorico is the group of human musicians that performs a score. A score can be written for one or more groups; for example, a double choir, or an orchestra plus off-stage chamber ensemble, and so on. Each group includes one or more players which correspond to the humans who play one or more instruments. Players may either be individuals who play more than one instrument, such as an oboist doubling cor anglais, or groups in which everyone plays only one instrument, such as eight desks of violinists.

One crucial difference between Dorico and other scoring applications is that the musical content exists independently of the score layout in which it is viewed.

The actual music played by the group in your score belongs to one or more flows. A flow is any span of music that stands alone; for example, a whole song, a movement of a sonata or symphony, a number in a musical show, or even a short scale or exercise. Players might or might not have any music to play in a given flow. For example, all the brass players might be omitted from the slow movement of a classical symphony, or certain players might have nothing to play in some cues in a movie score. This is no problem as you can combine players in flows in any combination.

Dorico's design philosophy provides several benefits. Chief among them is its ability to produce multiple layouts that share the same musical content, but each having customized appearances to suit different requirements. For example, in the same project you can create a conductor's

score with as many instruments as possible condensed onto a smaller number of staves, a full score with each player's music on separate staves, a custom score layout containing just the piano and vocal staves for choral rehearsals, and an instrumental part for each player that only contains the music belonging to them.

This means it is not necessary to extract flows or parts as separate files: all this information can co-exist in the same Dorico project file.

RELATED LINKS
Condensing on page 595
Assigning players to layouts on page 167

Projects in Dorico

A project is an individual file that you create within Dorico. It can contain multiple separate pieces of music of any duration, written for any combination of instruments, and use as many layouts as required.

For example, you can create a single project that contains all the preludes and fugues in Bach's "The Well-Tempered Clavier" as separate flows. You could then have one layout that contains only the flows for Book 1 and another layout that contains the flows for Book 2.

In addition to the notated music, projects save other relevant information, such as the playback template applied.

Dorico projects are saved as `.dorico` files.

RELATED LINKS
Flows in Dorico on page 22
Layouts in Dorico on page 26
Options dialogs in Dorico Elements on page 29
Page templates in Dorico on page 27
Playback templates on page 518

Modes in Dorico

Modes in Dorico represent a logical sequence of the workflow phases of preparing music, but you can switch between them at any time as required for your own workflow.

Dorico Elements contains the following modes:

Setup

In Setup mode, you can set up the fundamental elements of the project: instruments and the players that hold them, flows, layouts, and videos. You can also determine how they interact with each other; for example, by changing the players assigned to layouts.

You can view music in the music area and switch between viewing other tabs and layouts, but you cannot select or interact with anything in the music area in Setup mode.

Write

In Write mode, you can input and edit your music, including changing the rhythmic positions of items, changing the pitch of notes, and deleting notes and items. The available toolboxes and panels allow you to input all the notes and notation items that are most commonly used.

By design, you cannot move notes and items graphically on the page in Write mode. Graphical adjustments are only possible in Engrave mode in Dorico Pro.

Engrave

In Engrave mode, you can make fine adjustments to the position, size, and appearance notes and items and determine how the pages of your project are laid out, including editing and creating page templates.

By design, you cannot delete any notes or items, change their rhythmic positions, or change the pitch of notes in Engrave mode; this prevents mistakes when engraving.

Play

In Play mode, you can change how your music sounds in playback. You can do this by changing the playback template and assigning VST instruments, inputting automation, adjusting the mix, and changing the sounding duration of notes in playback without affecting their notated duration.

Print

In Print mode, you can print your layouts or export them as graphics files. When printing layouts, you can specify the paper size and other options, such as duplex or booklet printing. When exporting layouts, you can specify different graphics file types, such as PDF or PNG, and the information you want to include in their exported file names.

RELATED LINKS
Setup mode on page 106
Write mode on page 186
Engrave mode on page 477
Print mode on page 533
Play mode on page 485

Flows in Dorico

Flows are separate spans of music that are completely independent in musical content; for example, a single song in an album, a movement in a sonata or symphony, a number in a stage musical, or a short scale or sight-reading exercise of only a few bars in length. A single project can contain any number of flows.

Each flow can contain music for any combination of players, independently of other flows. For example, brass players are often tacet in the second movements of Classical-period symphonies, so you can remove brass players from the flow for the second movement but leave them in the flows for other movements. In a set of cues for a movie, for example, specific players might not be required in some cues, so the corresponding flows can contain only those players who have anything to play.

The correct assignment of players to flows allows Dorico, for example, to generate tacet sheets automatically for individual instrumental parts.

RELATED LINKS
Players, layouts, and flows on page 118
Flows on page 162
Tacets on page 592
Flow headings on page 603

Players in Dorico

In Dorico, a player can represent an individual musician or multiple musicians in the same section. Players hold instruments, so you must add at least one player to your project before you can add instruments.

- A single player represents one person who can play one or more instruments. For example, a clarinettist who doubles on alto saxophone or a percussionist who plays bass drum, clash cymbals, and triangle.
- A section player represents multiple people who all play the same instrument. For example, a violin section player might represent all eight desks of the Violin I section in an orchestra, or a soprano section player might represent the whole soprano section in a mixed voice choir.

  NOTE

  Section players can only hold one instrument.

By using the concept of players, Dorico makes it much easier to handle, for example, instrument changes, divisi, and condensing music for multiple players onto a smaller number of staves.

You can also group players together; for example, to separate off-stage players from on-stage players in a large-scale work. Grouping players together means they are positioned together in the score, numbered independently of players outside the group, and are bracketed together according to the ensemble type set for each layout.

Players can be assigned to any combination of layouts and flows.

RELATED LINKS
Players, layouts, and flows on page 118
Players on page 120
Player groups on page 158
Divisi on page 1199
Condensing on page 595
Brackets according to ensemble type on page 778

Instruments in Dorico

In Dorico, an instrument is an individual musical instrument, such as a piano, a flute, or a violin. Human voices, such as soprano or tenor, are also considered instruments.

In Dorico, instruments are held by players, just as real instruments are held by human players. Section players can only hold one instrument but single players can hold multiple instruments. This allows you to handle instrument changes easily, such as when an oboist doubling the cor anglais switches from one instrument to the other.

Each instrument automatically gets its own staff, but when instrument changes are allowed, the music for multiple instruments held by the same single player can appear on the same staff as long as no notes overlap.

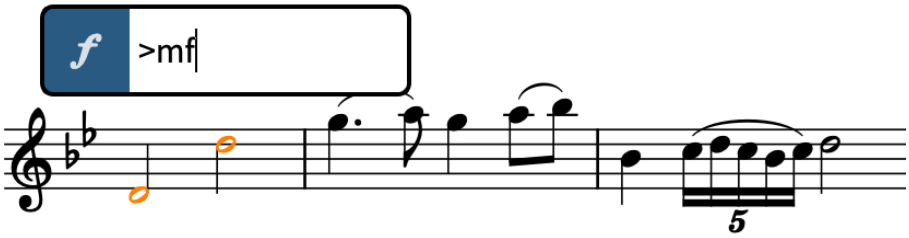
Dorico has a database of information about the properties of each instrument. These include the playable range, common and uncommon playing techniques, notational conventions, transposition properties, tunings, clef, number of staves, type of staff, and so on. Having these properties predetermined makes it easier and quicker to set up projects correctly. For example, selecting the horn instrument with the appropriate transposition and clef setting for its part

layout means you do not have to input a layout-specific clef. Similarly, there is a timpani instrument that automatically hides all key signatures.

RELATED LINKS
Instruments on page 127
Instrument changes on page 130
Transposing instruments on page 133

Popovers

Popovers allow you to input different notations and perform tasks, such as transposing a selection of notes, using only your computer keyboard. They are temporary value fields that use text entries for different items and tasks, and there are specific popovers for different purposes.



The dynamics popover with an example entry

One of the key benefits of popovers is that you can use them as you input notes: for example, once you reach the position where you want to input a new time signature, you can open the time signatures popover, input the time signature you want, and then continue inputting notes.

Although specific entries are required for many notations, the correct entries for different notations are consistently and logically structured. For example, tuplets are always expressed as a ratio, such as 3:2 or 5:4. Key signatures are expressed using capital letters for major keys and lowercase letters for minor keys. Time signatures are expressed as a pair of separated numbers; common time signatures use a slash, such as 3/4 or 6/8.

During note input, and depending on the notation you are inputting with the respective popover, notations are input either on the currently selected note, which is usually the last note you input, or at the current rhythmic position, indicated by the caret.

You can always identify popovers by the icon on their left-hand side, which are the same icons used in the Notations toolbox on the right of the window. The Notations toolbox allows you to hide/show the corresponding notation's panel, which is another way you can input notations.

You can only use popovers in Write mode, as that is the only mode where you can input notes and items together and change the pitch of notes. Popovers open above the top staff on which the caret is active or an item is selected, and at the caret position or the rhythmic position of the earliest selected item.

RELATED LINKS
Caret on page 205
Note input on page 210
Notations input on page 259
Notations toolbox on page 192
Right zone (Write mode) on page 195

Notes and rests in Dorico

In Dorico, the notation and division of notes and rests is determined semantically by rules based on convention. This means that note and rest durations can change and appear differently later than when you first input them.

Dorico is able to update how notes and rests are notated depending on their context because of the following key concepts:

1. Notes are treated as a single unit, even if they appear as a tie chain that contains multiple notes tied together.
2. Implicit rests automatically fill the gaps between the notes you input.

In combination with time signatures and Dorico's understanding of their corresponding meters, this allows you to input only the notes you want with the duration required. It is not necessary to input rests between notes or input ties for notes that cross the half-bar, for example. If you subsequently change the time signature or move notes rhythmically to start earlier or later, Dorico updates how notes and rests are notated, such as by notating a quarter note as two tied eighth notes if it now straddles a barline or consolidating two eighth note rests into a single quarter note rest if they are now in the same bar.

If you tie existing notes together, you might find that they turn into a single note, such as a half note instead of two tied quarter notes, or into a tie chain containing more notes. This is because tie chains are treated as single notes in Dorico, and Dorico automatically notates and beams notes appropriately depending on their duration, the prevailing time signature, and their position in the bar. Similarly, notes can change after you input notes immediately following them as this changes the context, such as a quarter note tied to an eighth note becoming a dotted quarter note when it is followed by an eighth note rather than a rest.

TIP

In Write mode, selecting any part of a tie chain selects the whole tie chain because it is a single note. However, you can still input notations, such as dynamics, in the middle of tie chains by activating the caret and moving it to the required rhythmic position within the tie chain.

You can force the duration of individual notes and rests; for example, if you want to specify subdivisions within a tie chain that are different than the prevailing meter.

RELATED LINKS
Notes on page 940
Ties on page 1232
Implicit vs. explicit rests on page 1145
Note and rest grouping on page 774
Beam grouping according to meters on page 755
Per-flow notation options for beam grouping on page 754
Caret on page 205
Inputting notes on page 211
Forcing the duration of notes/rests on page 250
Inputting ties on page 237

Rhythmic position

In Dorico, notes and items exist at rhythmic positions, which are calculated using their place in musical time in the flow rather than their position in a specific bar that has a particular time signature.

In Dorico, musical time is the number of beats starting from the beginning of each flow. For example, instead of a note existing on beat 3 in bar 4 in a 4/4 time signature, Dorico considers that note to exist at beat 15, regardless of the time signature and its position in a bar.

This approach allows for a lot of flexibility. For example, because notes and items exist independently of bars and time signatures in Dorico, you can change the time signature without changing when notes happen in relation to each other or adding rests at the end of each bar. Instead, the barlines simply move to different positions and note grouping is updated as required, such as notating a quarter note as two tied eighth notes if it now straddles a barline or crosses the half-bar. You can even start writing notes without inputting a time signature at all.

Similarly, you can easily push notes to later rhythmic positions or pull them in to earlier ones using Insert mode without the risk of them being incorrectly notated. It also means you can think of items existing in the music independently of notes, because items exist at a particular rhythmic position, rather than being attached to notes. To input items at rhythmic positions that do not coincide with the start of notes, such as dynamics in the middle of tie chains, you can either select any other item at that position, or activate the caret and input items at the caret position.

In Dorico, the rhythmic position of notes and items is separate from their graphical position on the page. The benefit of this is that you can input items at the position in the music where they must apply and then move them graphically without causing them to apply to different notes or inadvertently split multi-bar rests. For example, if you want strings to play *pizzicato* from the start of a bar, but because of tight vertical spacing you want to move the *pizz.* indication slightly to the side. Attachment lines link items to the rhythmic positions to which they apply, so it is always clear where they belong, but are not printed.

RELATED LINKS
Note and rest grouping on page 774
Beaming on page 754
Time signatures on page 1249
Inputting notes in Insert mode on page 226
Notes on page 940
Caret on page 205
Insert mode on page 427
Rhythmic grid on page 204
Annotations on page 554

Layouts in Dorico

Layouts combine musical content, as represented by flows and players, with rules for page formatting and music engraving, and allow you to produce paginated music notation that can be printed or exported in various formats. For example, part layouts typically only show the music for one player, whereas full score layouts show the music of all players in the project.

A typical project for an ensemble contains several layouts. By default, Dorico projects contain a single full score layout that contains the music for all players, and a part layout for each player that only contains their music. However, you can also create as many layouts as required.

When you add the first player to a project, Dorico automatically creates a full score layout and a part layout. For all subsequent players you add to the project, Dorico creates a part layout for each player and assigns them all to the existing full score layout.

Layouts can contain any combination of players and flows. They share the musical content of these players and flows, such as the notes each instrument plays. For example, when you change the pitch of a note in the full score, that note's pitch is also updated in the corresponding part layout.

You can control practically every aspect of page formatting in each layout independently, including note spacing, staff size, page size, margins, and casting off; that is, the positions of system breaks and page turns. Changing these aspects in one layout does not affect other layouts. For example, inserting systems breaks in a part layout does not change the casting off in the full score.

Similarly, you can change the visual appearance of many items only in one layout, without affecting other layouts, using local properties. For example, you can hide text items in the full score layout but show them in part layouts.

The default formatting of pages in layouts is determined by page templates. By default, full score layouts use a different page template set to part layouts; however, you can apply a different page template set to each layout.

Deleting layouts does not delete any music from the project.

RELATED LINKS
Layouts on page 165
Players, layouts, and flows on page 118
Page formatting on page 555
Casting off on page 581
Condensing on page 595
Properties on page 615
Local vs. global properties on page 616
Page templates on page 599
Page template sets on page 600
Types of page templates on page 601
Applying page template sets to layouts on page 558
Printing layouts on page 538
Exporting layouts as graphics files on page 542

Page templates in Dorico

Page templates in Dorico Elements allow you to achieve consistent page formatting by applying the same arrangements of frames to multiple pages and in different layouts.

Frames are boxes in which you can display text, music, and graphics. The default page templates contain a large music frame that takes up most of the page and text frames at the top and bottom. On the first page of music, text frames display the project title, lyricist, and composer. On the second page of music onwards, text frames display the page number and flow title for the top flow on that page in scores, and the layout name in parts.

All pages in your scores and parts inherit their default formatting from page templates.

Dorico Elements provides different types of page templates so that there is appropriate page formatting for first pages independently of subsequent pages, as the first page typically includes additional information, such as the title, composer, and copyright. Dorico Elements uses tokens to display this additional information.

Page templates are contained in page template sets. By default, Dorico Elements provides separate page template sets for full score and part layouts. Page template sets are automatically applied to every layout that you create.

NOTE

- In Dorico Elements, you cannot edit page templates or create new ones; this is only available in Dorico Pro.
- Changing individual pages in layouts is considered a page template override in Dorico Elements. This includes, for example, editing the title or running header in Write mode. Pages with page template overrides are not automatically deleted, even if they are empty because the layout became shorter.

  If you want to change the information shown at the tops of pages, that is, the title and running header text that you cannot select, we recommend that you do so in the **Project Info** dialog to avoid page template overrides. The big title at the top of the first page is the project title. The running header on subsequent pages uses the flow title for the top flow on that page in scores, and the layout name in parts.

RELATED LINKS
Page template sets on page 600
Page templates on page 599
Types of page templates on page 601
Frames on page 605
Project Info dialog on page 75
Tokens on page 607

Key commands in Dorico

Dorico's key commands have been designed to be logical, consistent, and accessible using a standard computer keyboard, without needing a number pad.

EXAMPLE

- The arrow keys on their own navigate the selection around the music area.
- **Alt/Opt** modifies selected items.

  For example, in Write mode, adding **Alt/Opt** to the up/down arrow keys transposes notes by staff position; adding **Alt/Opt** to the right/left arrow keys moves notes/items rhythmically. In Engrave mode, adding **Alt/Opt** to any arrow key moves items a small amount graphically.
- **Shift**-**Alt/Opt** changes the duration of notes/items in Write mode.

  For example, **Shift-Alt/Opt-Right Arrow** lengthens notes/items by the current rhythmic grid resolution.
- **Ctrl/Cmd** increases the amount by which selected items are modified.

  For example, in Write mode, adding **Ctrl/Cmd**-**Alt/Opt** to the up/down arrow keys transposes notes by an octave; **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-Alt/Opt-Right Arrow** doubles the duration of notes. In Engrave mode, adding **Ctrl/Cmd**-**Alt/Opt** to any arrow key moves items a large amount graphically.
- **Shift** plus letter keys opens popovers in Write mode.

  For example, **Shift-D** opens the dynamics popover; **Shift-O** opens the ornaments popover.
- **Ctrl/Cmd**-**Shift** plus specific letter keys opens options dialogs.

For example, **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-L** opens **Layout Options**; **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-N** opens **Notation Options**.

The default key commands in Dorico depend on your keyboard language setting, which follows your application language setting by default.

You can view available key commands in the following ways:

- Choose **Help** > **Key Commands** to open the **Dorico Key Commands** window, which provides an overview of all available key commands.
- Search for key commands of specific functions or menu items in **Preferences** > **Key Commands**. In this dialog, you can also assign new key commands or change default key commands.
- When you move the mouse over a tool or a function that has a key command, a tooltip with the corresponding key command in brackets is shown.

RELATED LINKS
Interactive Dorico key commands map on page 61
Preferences dialog on page 58
Key Commands page in the Preferences dialog on page 59
Searching for the key commands of functions on page 62
Assigning key commands on page 63
Changing the keyboard language on page 64
Changing the application language on page 56

Options dialogs in Dorico Elements

Options to control the default appearance of music and functionality of Dorico Elements are available in different dialogs according to their type and purpose.

We recommend becoming familiar with the available options in these dialogs, as finding the most appropriate settings for each project reduces the requirement for manual intervention and graphical tweaks.

Dorico Elements contains the following dialogs for global settings:

Layout Options

Contains options that are likely to vary from layout to layout, such as page size, staff size, and the appearance and position of bar numbers. Options in **Layout Options** affect only the selected layouts but apply to all flows in those layouts.

Notation Options

Contains options that are likely to vary from flow to flow, such as beam grouping and accidental duration rules. Options in **Notation Options** affect only the selected flows but apply to all layouts in which those flows appear.

TIP

Many options have equivalent properties, which you can change for individual notes and items.

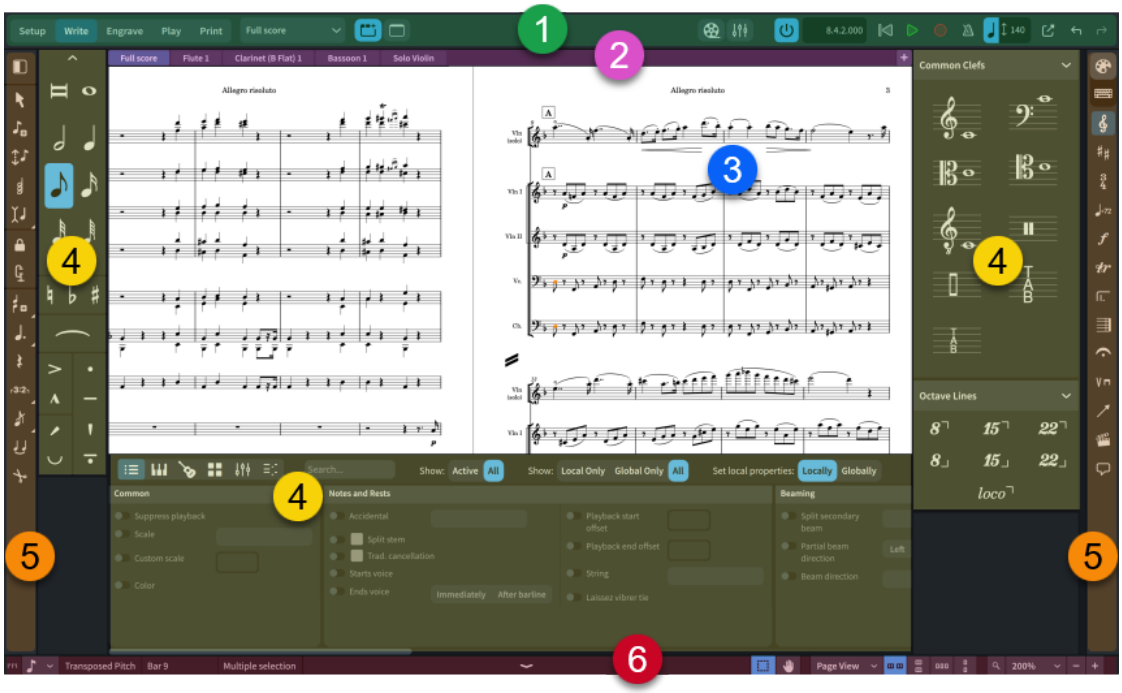
RELATED LINKS
Layout Options dialog on page 677
Notation Options dialog on page 679
Preferences dialog on page 58
Properties on page 615

User interface

The user interface of Dorico Elements is designed to keep all of the important tools at your fingertips. This chapter introduces you to key aspects of the user interface.

Project window

Dorico Elements's main project window allows you to access all the options and tools you need to work on a project. You can open multiple project windows for the same project or for different projects.



The project window comprises the following areas:

1 **Toolbar**

Allows you to access the modes, the workspace options, the **Mixer**, the **Video** window, and the main transport options.

2 **Tab bar**

Displays all open tabs. If you split the music area and open several tabs, tab groups are shown. Available in Setup, Write, and Engrave modes.

3 **Project start area/Music area/Track overview/Print preview area**

The central part of the project window where you work on your project. When you start a new empty project, this area shows the project start area that allows you to add your first players. Once you have added a player or an ensemble, this area becomes the music area that shows the music notation of the currently selected layout.

In Play mode, this area contains a track overview that displays your music in a similar way to that used in a digital audio workstation, or "DAW", such as Cubase.

In Print mode, the print preview area shows a preview of how your project will appear when printed onto paper or exported into a graphics file format.

4 **Zones**

Zones on the left, right, and lower edges of the project window contain panels that provide the notes, notations, and functions that you need to create and edit your music. Different panels are available in each zone according to the mode.

5 **Toolboxes**

Toolboxes provide access to items and tools that you can use to input and edit your music. Different toolboxes contain different items and tools according to the mode.

6 **Status bar**

Allows you to choose a different view and page arrangement of the music area. It also contains zoom options and a summary of your current selection in the music area.

RELATED LINKS
Starting new projects on page 71
Opening multiple project windows on page 49
Showing multiple tabs in the same project window on page 48
Switching between layouts on page 43
Project window in Setup mode on page 106
Project window in Write mode on page 186
Project window in Engrave mode on page 477
Project window in Play mode on page 485
Project window in Print mode on page 533

Toolbar

The toolbar allows you to access modes and workspace options as well as the **Mixer** and main transport options. It is located at the top of the project window and is available in all modes.

You can hide/show the toolbar in any of the following ways:

- Press **Ctrl/Cmd-6**.
- Choose **Window** > **Show Toolbar**.

The toolbar contains the following:

1 **Modes**

Selectable workspaces in the project window that represent different phases in the workflow of preparing a score. If the width of the main project window becomes sufficiently small, the mode buttons become a menu.

2 **Workspace options**

Provide options that allow you to select different layouts to open in the music area and to change the working environment.

3 **Show Video**

Hides/Shows the **Video** window.

4 **Show Mixer**

Hides/Shows the **Mixer** window.

5 **Mini transport**

Allows you quick access to the main transport functions, including **Play**, **Record**, and **Click**.

6 **Show Transport Bar**

Hides/Shows the **Transport** window, which contains playback and MIDI recording functions.

7 **Undo**

Allows you to undo previous actions.

8 **Redo**

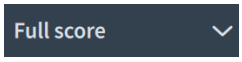
Allows you to restore previous actions that were undone using **Undo**.

RELATED LINKS
Hub on page 69
Modes in Dorico on page 21
Mini transport on page 33
Transport window on page 515
Videos on page 180
Mixer window on page 668

Workspace options

The workspace options in the middle of the toolbar provide options that allow you to select different layouts and to change the working environment.

Layout selector



Allows you to select other layouts to show in the current tab.

Show Tabs

Shows/Hides the tab bar above the music area.

Show Tabs when the tab bar is hidden

Show Tabs when the tab bar is shown

Hide/Restore Zones

Shows/Hides all open zones.

Hide/Restore Zones when zones are shown

Hide/Restore Zones when all zones were previously shown but are now all hidden

RELATED LINKS
Layouts on page 165
Switching between layouts on page 43
Zones and panels on page 38
Hiding/Showing zones on page 44

Mini transport

The mini transport on the right of the toolbar provides quick access to the main transport functions of Dorico Elements.

Activate Project

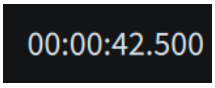
Activates/Deactivates playback in the project. When playback is deactivated, transport and playback functions are disabled.

Time display

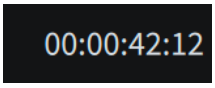
Shows the position of the playhead in one of the following formats:

- Bars, beats, and ticks
- Elapsed time in the following order of units: hours, minutes, seconds, milliseconds
- Timecode in the following order of units: hours, minutes, seconds, frames

Time display showing bars and beats



Time display showing elapsed time



Time display showing the timecode

You can change the content shown in the time display by clicking it.

Rewind to Beginning of Flow

Moves the playhead back to the beginning of the flow.

Play

Starts/Stops playback, either from the playhead position or the earliest selected item, depending on your setting on the **Play** page in **Preferences**.

Play when playback is stopped

Play during playback

Record

Starts/Stops MIDI recording.

Record outside of MIDI recording

Record during MIDI recording

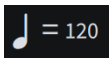
Click

Plays/Mutes the metronome click during playback and recording.

Tempo Mode

Displays the tempo used for both playback and recording. The value changes according to the playhead position, and its appearance changes according to its mode.

- You can change the tempo mode by clicking the beat unit.
- You can change the metronome mark value used in fixed tempo mode by clicking the number to show a slider, then dragging the slider to the right/left.



Fixed Tempo Mode

Follow Tempo Mode

TIP

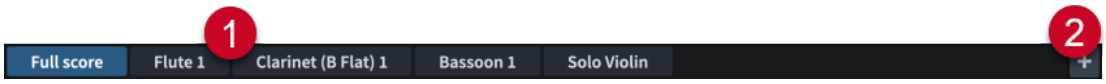
The **Transport** window contains additional transport functions.

RELATED LINKS
Transport window on page 515
Playing back music on page 503
Moving the playhead on page 502
Changing the tempo mode on page 504
Changing the content shown in the transport display on page 517
Changing the sound used for the click on page 496
MIDI recording on page 252
Mixer window on page 668
Preferences dialog on page 58
Timecodes on page 1103

Tab bar

The tab bar in Dorico Elements allows you to display different layouts within the same project window. It is located between the toolbar and the music area.

- You can hide/show the tab bar by clicking **Show Tabs** in the toolbar.



The tab bar contains the following:

1 Tabs

Displays all open tabs, with their position from left to right reflecting the order in which you opened them. Each tab is labeled with the name of the selected layout. The tab currently in view in the music area is highlighted.

When you hover over an individual tab, an **x** appears that allows you to close the tab.

2 New Tab

Allows you to open a new tab. Tabs can contain a different layout, or an additional view of a layout that is already open in another tab or window.

TIP

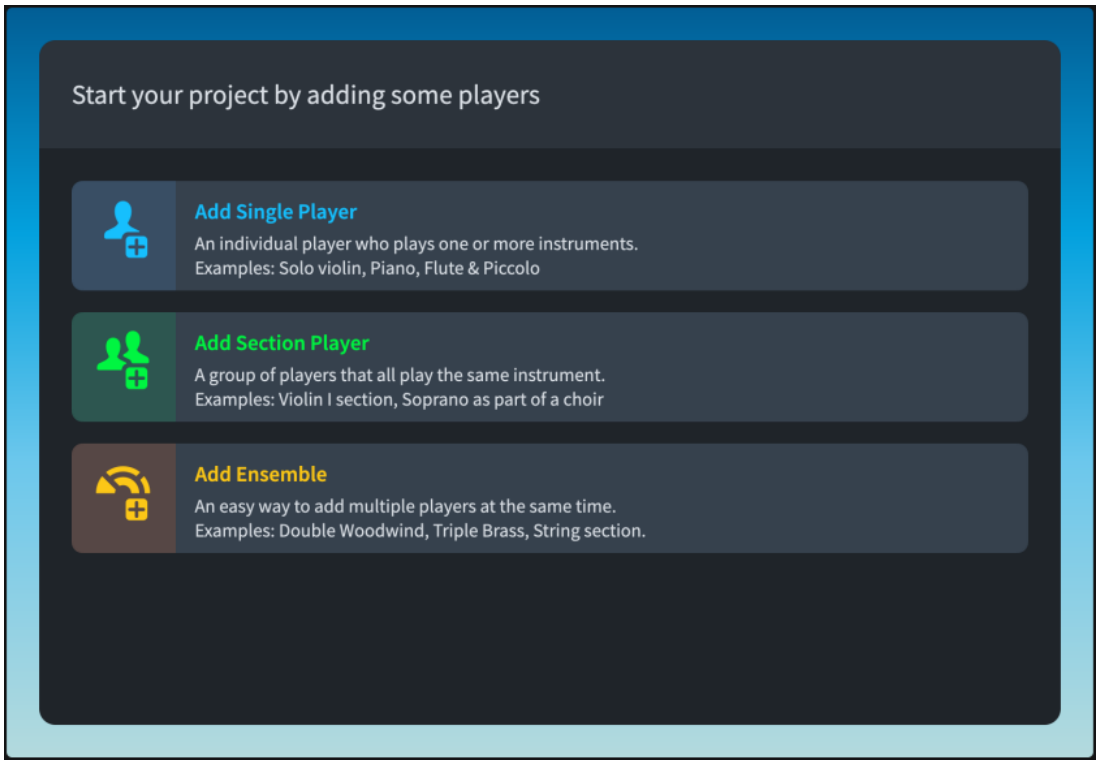
You can change whether the tab bar is hidden or shown in new projects by default in **Preferences** > **General** > **View**.

RELATED LINKS
Preferences dialog on page 58

Project start area

The project start area is displayed in the middle of the project window in Setup mode and Write mode when you set up a new empty project. When you add at least one player, the view changes into the music area.

The project start area shows cards that allow you to add players to the project.

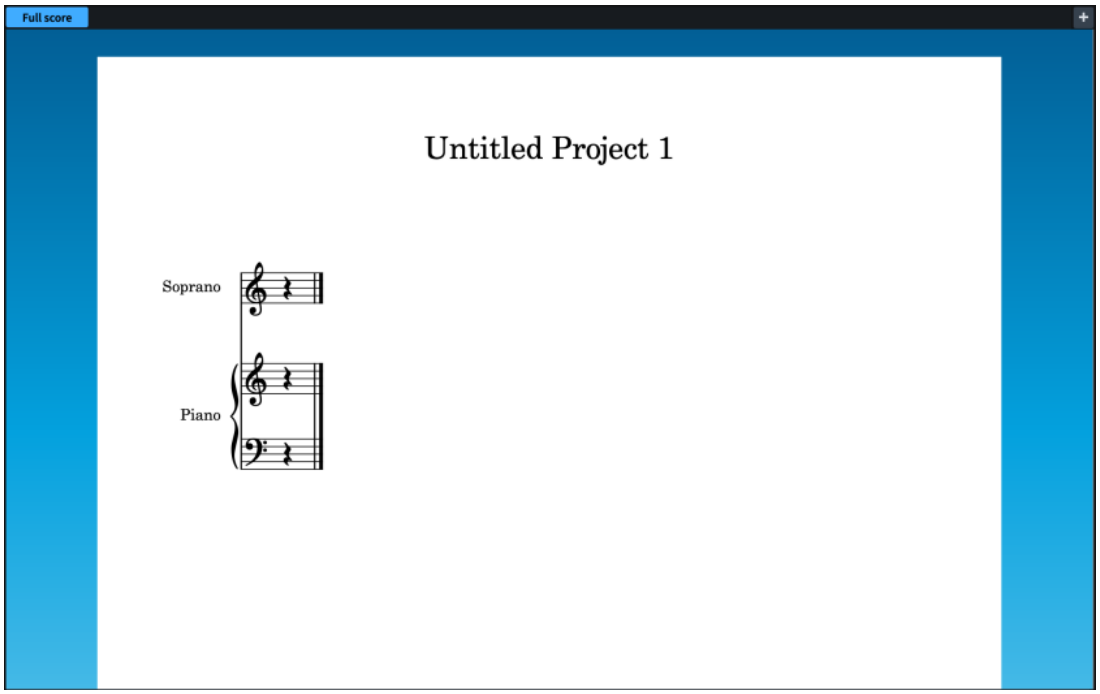


Project start area

RELATED LINKS
Adding players on page 121

Music area

In Setup, Write, and Engrave modes, the music area shows the music notation of the currently selected layout. It is the central part of the project window where you work on your project.



Music area showing a new choir piece in page view

The music area displays layouts in either galley view or page view. In Engrave mode, layouts always appear in page view. The tab bar above the music area allows you to open multiple layouts in the project simultaneously and switch between them. The scroll bars to the right and to the bottom of the music area allow you to scroll within the layout.

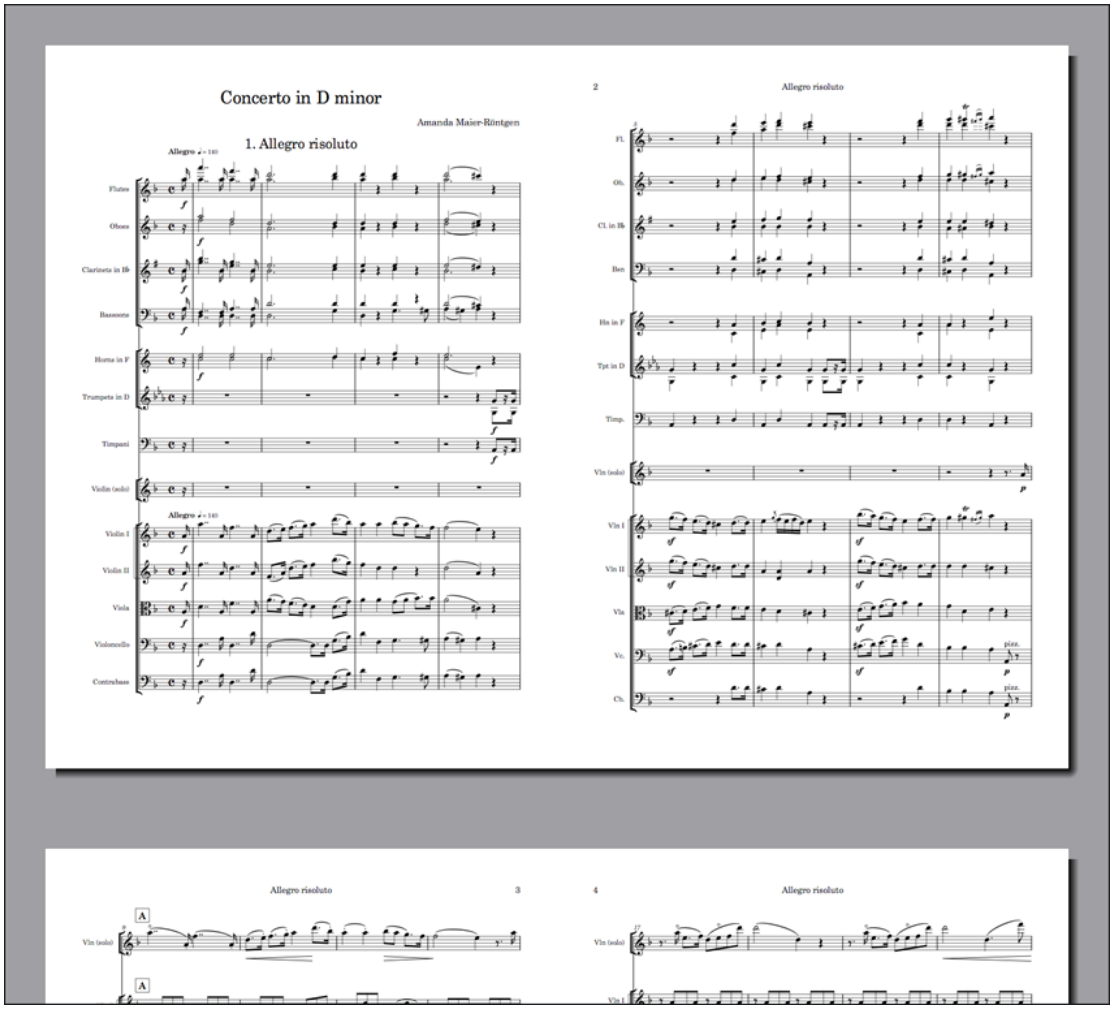
You can use the layout selector in the toolbar to show other layouts in the music area.

When zones are open on the right, left, and lower edges of the window, the size of the music area can be reduced. You can hide/show zones when necessary.

RELATED LINKS
Toolbar on page 31
Switching to galley/page view on page 50
Switching between layouts on page 43
Hiding/Showing zones on page 44
Navigation on page 417
Layouts on page 165

Print preview area

The print preview area is the central part of the project window in Print mode that shows a preview of what will be printed or exported as a graphic.



Print preview area displaying a score set to print 2-up

The print preview area shows a preview of the first layout selected in the **Layouts** panel. You can scroll through the pages that are shown, but you cannot edit layouts. If you want to make changes, you must switch to Setup or Write mode.

TIP

You can go directly to the first page in the layout by pressing **Home**, and to the last page by pressing **End**. You can change these key commands on the **Key Commands** page in **Preferences**.

If you select multiple layouts to be printed as part of the same print job, the print preview area only displays the first layout. If you want to show the expected page arrangement for each layout in the print preview, you must check each layout individually before you start printing.

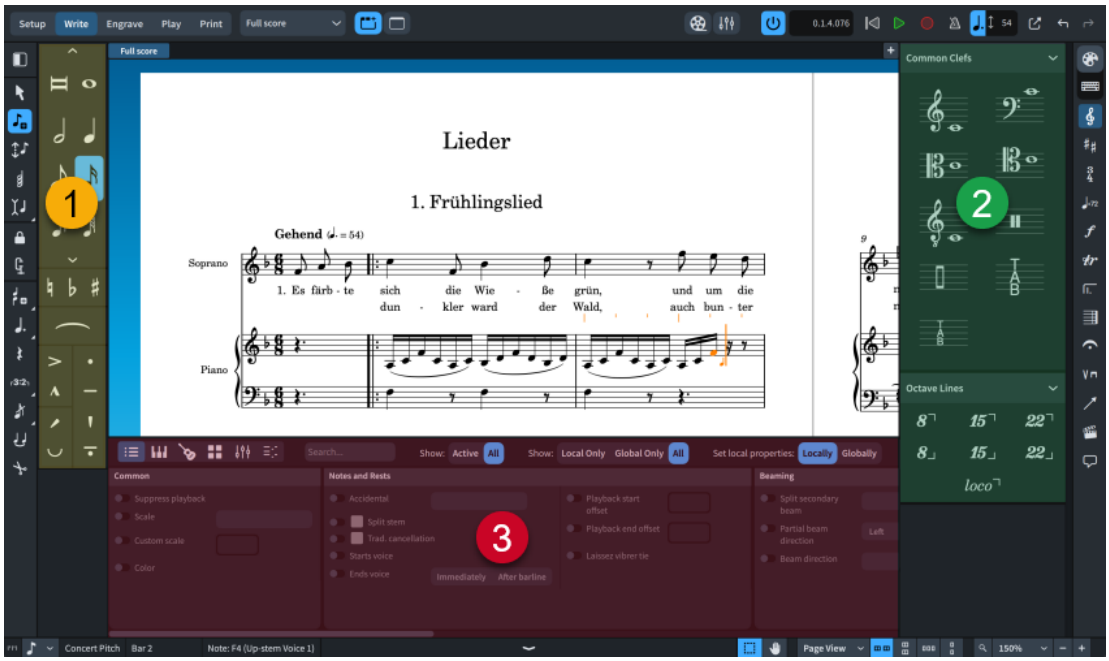
RELATED LINKS

Project window in Print mode on page 533
Layouts panel (Print mode) on page 534
Key Commands page in the Preferences dialog on page 59

Zones and panels

Zones on the left, right, and lower edges of the project window contain panels that provide the notes, notations, and functions that you need to set up, write, edit, and format your music. Different panels are available in each zone according to the mode.

You can hide/show each zone individually or all of them at the same time.



1 Left zone. In Write mode, this contains the Notes panel.

2 Right zone. In Write mode, this can display different panels, according to the current selection in the Notations toolbox.

3 Lower zone. In Write mode, this can display different panels, including the Properties panel and Mixer.

The zones contain different panels in each mode in Dorico Elements.

Modes and their panels

Mode	Left Zone	Right Zone	Lower Zone
Setup	Players panel	Layouts panel	Flows panel
Write	Notes panel	Notations panels	Properties, Keyboard, Fretboard, Drum Pads, Mixer, and Key Editor panels
Engrave	Formatting panel	n/a	Properties and Mixer panels
Play	Track Inspector and VST and MIDI panel	n/a	Mixer and Key Editor panels
Print	Layouts panel	Print Options panel	n/a

RELATED LINKS
Modes in Dorico on page 21
Hiding/Showing zones on page 44
Project window in Setup mode on page 106
Project window in Write mode on page 186
Project window in Play mode on page 485
Project window in Print mode on page 533
Players panel on page 107
Layouts panel (Setup mode) on page 114
Flows panel on page 117
Notes panel on page 191
Right zone (Write mode) on page 195
Lower zone (Write mode) on page 196
Properties panel on page 615
Track Inspector on page 488
Key Editor panel on page 619
Mixer panel on page 667
Layouts panel (Print mode) on page 534
Print Options panel on page 535

Toolboxes

Toolboxes are located on the right and left edges of the project window in some modes. They contain different tools and options according to the current mode, but in general they allow you to input and modify notes/items and to show different panels in the corresponding zone.

The following toolboxes are available in the different modes:

Write mode

- Notes toolbox on the left of the project window
- Notations toolbox on the right of the project window

Engrave mode

- Engrave toolbox on the left of the project window

RELATED LINKS
Project window on page 30
Notes toolbox on page 187
Notations toolbox on page 192

Status bar

The status bar at the bottom of the project window allows you to choose different views and page arrangements for the music area.

NOTE

Not all options in the status bar are available in all modes.

Status bar in Write mode

1 **Rhythmic Grid selector**

Allows you to change the rhythmic grid resolution, which affects certain aspects of inputting and editing, such as the amount by which items move.

2 **Status display**

Displays information about the current layout and selection, divided in up to three sections, which are, from left to right:

- Transposition of the current layout
- The bar/range of bars of the current selection
- Summary of the selection; for example, the pitch and voice of a single selected note, or the implied chord of multiple selected notes

3 **Disclosure arrow**

Allows you to show/hide the lower zone in Setup, Write, and Engrave modes.

4 **Selection tools**

Allow you to switch between using the **Marquee Tool** and the **Hand Tool** in Write mode and Engrave mode.

5 **View type selector**

Allows you to select one of the provided view types for the music area in Setup and Write mode.

6 **Page arrangement options**

Allow you to choose between different horizontal and vertical arrangements of either individual pages or pairs of pages, which are called spreads.

7 **Zoom options**

Allow you to change the zoom factor of the music area and its musical contents. There are preset zoom levels but you can also use a custom zoom level.

8 **MIDI activity indicator/Audio engine connection warning**

Indicates that there might be MIDI or audio problems that require your attention.

- A brief green light indicates that Dorico Elements is receiving MIDI input from a connected device. If the green light is persistent, a connected MIDI device is sending lots of data, which can cause problems.
- A warning icon indicates that Dorico Elements is unable to send MIDI events to the audio engine; for example, if no device is chosen or the sample rate is wrong. You can click the warning icon to open the **Device Setup** dialog, where you can fix the problem in most cases.

RELATED LINKS
Rhythmic grid on page 204
View types on page 41
Page arrangements for page view on page 42
Zoom options on page 42
MIDI recording on page 252
Playing back music on page 503
Enabling/Disabling MIDI input devices on page 258

Selection tools

The status bar in Dorico Elements contains selection tools that you can use to select items and change the music shown within the music area.

Marquee Tool

Allows you to drag a rectangle to select multiple notes and notations.

Hand Tool

Allows you to move the view within the music area.

TIP

- You can press **Alt/Opt-H** to switch between selection tools.
- To use the other tool briefly without selecting it, **Shift**-drag with the mouse.
- You can change the default selection tool for all future projects on the **Note Input and Editing** page in **Preferences**.

RELATED LINKS
Selecting notes/items on page 401
Selecting multiple items using marquee selections on page 403
Moving the view in the music area on page 420
Preferences dialog on page 58

View types

In Dorico Elements there are different ways to view your layouts.

The following view types are available:

Galley View

Lays out all the staves in the current layout and flow on a single continuous system.

This view type is most useful during the process of inputting the music as it allows you to focus on the musical content of your project. Because it shows all staves, galley view is particularly useful when inputting notes for single players holding multiple instruments.

By default, bar numbers are shown every bar above every staff. Staff labels are also shown above every staff, and follow the view as you scroll so they are always visible.

NOTE

Note spacing is unjustified in galley view and there is no automatic vertical collision avoidance, so notes and items might overlap. You can change the default gaps between staves in galley view for each layout independently.

Page View

Displays your layout paginated exactly as it appears when you print or export it.

This view type is useful for determining appropriate page turns, for example.

NOTE

- The view type is reset to your default setting when you switch layouts.

- You can change the default view type used for all future projects in the **View** section of the **General** page in **Preferences**.

RELATED LINKS
Preferences dialog on page 58
Switching to galley/page view on page 50
Changing the staff spacing in galley view on page 579
Page formatting on page 555
Players on page 120
Instruments on page 127

Page arrangements for page view

Page arrangement options in the status bar allow you to change the way pages are arranged in the music area, for layouts shown in page view.

Spreads Horizontally

Displays pages in pairs as two-page spreads, with each pair laid out from left to right in a row.

Spreads Vertically

Displays pages in pairs as two-page spreads, with each pair laid out from top to bottom in a column.

Single Pages Horizontally

Displays individual pages laid out from left to right.

Single Pages Vertically

Displays individual pages laid out from top to bottom.

RELATED LINKS
Status bar on page 39
Switching to galley/page view on page 50

Zoom options

Zoom options in the status bar allow you to change the displayed size of pages in the music area.

Custom Zoom

Opens a dialog that allows you to set a custom zoom percentage.

Set Zoom

Allows you to select one of the preset zoom scaling factors. You can set a permanent zoom factor for all future projects on the **General** page in **Preferences**.

Zoom Out

Decreases the size of notes and notations in the music area.

Zoom In

Increases the size of notes and notations in the music area.

RELATED LINKS
Status bar on page 39
Preferences dialog on page 58
Zooming in/out of the music area on page 420

Disclosure arrows

Disclosure arrows indicate that objects, areas, and menus can be expanded/collapsed, either vertically or horizontally.

In Dorico Elements, disclosure arrows are commonly used to expand/collapse sections in panels and cards, such as player cards in the **Players** panel in Setup mode.

Disclosure arrow for a player card

Disclosure arrows for sections in the Tempo panel

RELATED LINKS
Players panel on page 107
Instruments on page 127

Workspace setup

Dorico Elements enables you to set up your workspace according to your working style. For example, you can open multiple tabs to display multiple layouts in the same window. You can also open the same project in multiple project windows.

RELATED LINKS
Navigation on page 417
Hiding/Showing zones on page 44
Starting new projects on page 71

Switching between layouts

You can change which layout is displayed in the current tab in the music area in Setup, Write, and Engrave modes, or in the track overview in Play mode. For example, if you want to check individual part layouts.

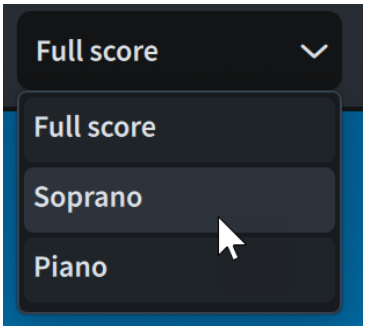
NOTE

You can only switch between layouts to which players are assigned.

PROCEDURE

- Switch to another layout in any of the following ways:

- To switch to the next layout, press **Shift-Alt/Opt-]**.
- To switch to the previous layout, press **Shift-Alt/Opt-[**.
- Select an item on a staff or in the piano roll of the player whose layout you want to open and press **W**.
- In the toolbar, click the layout selector and select a layout from the menu.



RESULT

The selected layout is opened in the music area. It replaces the layout previously open in the tab.

TIP

You can assign a key command for **Center Selection** on the **Key Commands** page in **Preferences**. This command automatically brings the selection into view.

RELATED LINKS

Layouts on page 165
Implicit vs. explicit rests on page 1145
Players, layouts, and flows on page 118
Assigning players to layouts on page 167
Switching to galley/page view on page 50
Switching between flows in the track overview on page 487
Piano roll editor on page 630

Hiding/Showing zones

You can hide/show individual zones or all zones simultaneously; for example, to increase the space available for displaying music in the music area, or to access options in a specific panel.

NOTE

In some modes, not all methods are available.

PROCEDURE

1. Hide/Show the left zone in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Ctrl/Cmd-7**.
   - In the toolbox on the left, click **Show Left Zone**.
   - Click the disclosure arrow on the left edge of the main window.
   - Choose **Window** > **Show Left Zone**.
2. Hide/Show the right zone in any of the following ways:

- Press **Ctrl/Cmd-9**.
- Click the disclosure arrow on the right edge of the main window.
- In the Notations toolbox, click the button for any panel you want to show, or the active button for the panel you want to hide.
- Choose **Window** > **Show Right Zone**.

3. Hide/Show the lower zone in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Ctrl/Cmd-8**.
   - Click the disclosure arrow at the bottom of the main window.
   - Choose **Window** > **Show Lower Zone**.
4. Hide/Show all zones in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Ctrl/Cmd-0**.
   - In the toolbar, click **Hide/Restore Zones** .
   - Choose **Window** > **Hide/Restore Zones**.

RESULT

The corresponding zones are hidden/shown.

If you hide all active zones, the **Hide/Restore Zones** button in the toolbar indicates which zones were previously active but are now hidden.

TIP

- You can assign key commands for showing specific panels in the lower zone on the **Key Commands** page in **Preferences**.
- You can choose to hide the right/left zones when the lower zone is shown, and vice versa, automatically in all future projects in **Preferences** > **General** > **Window**.

EXAMPLE

Hide/Restore Zones button when zones are shown

Hide/Restore Zones button when all zones were previously shown but are now all hidden

RELATED LINKS

Zones and panels on page 38
Toolbar on page 31
Disclosure arrows on page 43
Properties panel on page 615
Preferences dialog on page 58
Key Commands page in the Preferences dialog on page 59

Opening new tabs

You can open multiple tabs in the same project window, which you can use to display multiple layouts or different views of the same layout. For example, you can show your full score layout in page view in one tab and in galley view in another tab.

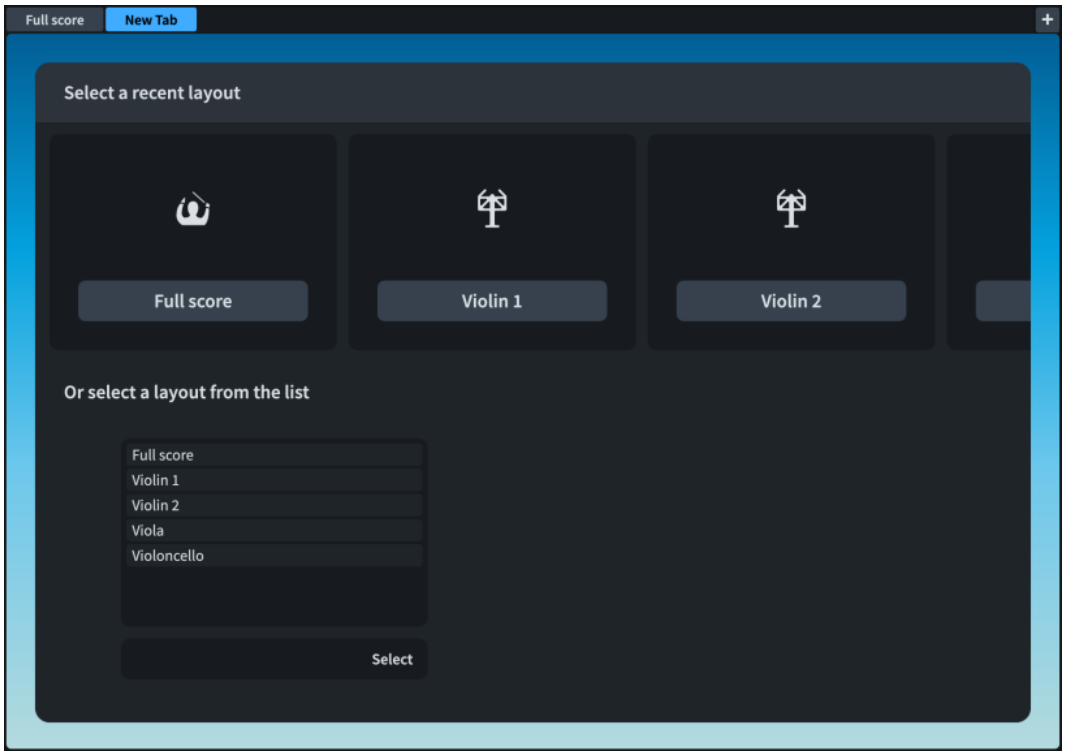
Each tab can contain a separate layout or a different view of a layout already open in another tab or window. Whenever you open a new tab, you are prompted to select a layout that you want to display in the tab.

You can find tabs in the tab bar, located at the top of the music area, below the toolbar. If no tabs are shown, click **Show Tabs** in the toolbar.

PROCEDURE

1. Open a new tab in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Ctrl/Cmd-T**.
   - At the right end of the tab bar, click **New Tab**.
   - Choose **Window** > **New Tab**.

   A new tab opens that shows recent layouts at the top and a list of other layouts in the project at the bottom. If the tab bar was hidden, it is now shown.



2. Select a layout to open in the new tab in any of the following ways:
   - Click one of the icons.
   - In the list at the bottom, select a layout.
   - In the toolbar, click the layout selector and select a layout.

RESULT

The layout that you choose opens in the active tab.

TIP

You can also switch between different layouts within the same tab.

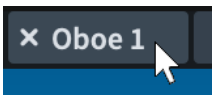
RELATED LINKS
Tab bar on page 34
Toolbar on page 31
Switching between layouts on page 43

Closing tabs

You can close individual tabs of layouts that you no longer need, and you can close multiple tabs at the same time.

PROCEDURE

- Close tabs in any of the following ways:
  - Select the tab you want to close and press **Ctrl/Cmd-W**.
  - Hover over the tab you want to close and click **x**.

  - Right-click the single tab you want to close and choose **Close Tab** from the context menu.
  - Right-click the tab you do not want to close and choose **Close Other Tabs** from the context menu.

  NOTE

  You cannot close the last tab in a window. If only one tab is open and you no longer want to see the tabs, deactivate **Show Tabs** in the main toolbar. The tab is no longer displayed, but the corresponding layout is still shown.

RESULT

If you selected a single tab and closed it, the selected tab and its corresponding layout are closed.

If you selected a single tab and closed other tabs, all open tabs except for the selected tab are closed.

Switching between tabs

You can switch between different open tabs to show different layouts in the music area.

PROCEDURE

- Switch tabs in any of the following ways:
  - To cycle forwards through all open tabs, press **Ctrl-Tab**.
  - To cycle backwards through all open tabs, press **Ctrl-Shift-Tab**.
  - Click the tab to which you want to switch.

  TIP

  - You can choose to keep selected items in view automatically when switching between tabs and windows on the **General** page in **Preferences**.

- You can assign a key command for **Center Selection** on the **Key Commands** page in **Preferences**. This command automatically brings the selection into view.

RELATED LINKS
Preferences dialog on page 58

Changing the order of tabs

You can move tabs to a different position on the tab bar.

PROCEDURE

- Click and drag a tab to the new position.

  The other tabs move to show where the dragged tab will be positioned.

Showing multiple tabs in the same project window

You can split your project window to display two tabs at the same time. The split can be either vertical or horizontal, allowing you to display different layouts either side by side or above one another.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the tab of the layout that you want to move to a new tab group.
2. Split the view in one of the following ways:
   - To show layouts side by side, choose **Window** > **Vertical Split**.
   - To show layouts above one another, choose **Window** > **Horizontal Split**.

RESULT

The project window is split to display two tabs at the same time. The selected tab is moved to the new tab group.

Moving tabs to another tab group

You can move tabs to other tab groups. For example, if you want to compare different layouts or two views of the same layout.

PREREQUISITE

You have opened at least two tabs, and they are both shown in the same project window.

PROCEDURE

- Click and drag the tab into the target tab group.

Moving tabs to other windows

You can move tabs to another open window of the same project to show the corresponding layouts in a new window. For example, if you want to compare two layouts on two displays.

NOTE

- The layouts must belong to the same project. If you attempt to move a tab to a window of a different project, a new window is created for the project to which the layout belongs.
- You can only move tabs to other windows if you have opened at least two tabs.

PROCEDURE

- Do one of the following:
  - To create a new project window with the tab inserted, either click and drag the tab away from the tab bar and release it, or choose **Window** > **Move Tab To New Window**. You can also right-click tabs and choose this option from the context menu.
  - To move the tab to an existing project window, click and drag the tab onto the tab bar in the corresponding project window.

Opening multiple project windows

You can open multiple project windows for the same project; for example, if you want to work on multiple layouts at the same time. You can also show a different mode of the same project in each window, such as having one window show Write mode and another show Play mode.

During playback, all windows that belong to the same project show the playhead and move the view to follow the music.

PROCEDURE

- Open a new project window in any of the following ways:
  - Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-T**.
  - Choose **Window** > **New Window**.

RESULT

A duplicate of the window opens. It contains the same tabs and the same view options as the original window.

TIP

You can choose to keep selected items in view automatically when switching between tabs and windows on the **General** page in **Preferences**.

RELATED LINKS

Playhead on page 501
Switching between tabs on page 47

Switching to full screen view

You can maximize the amount of screen space available for your music by making any project window cover the whole screen.

You can also hide the desktop elements provided by your operating system; for example, the task bar in Windows or the system menu bar and Dock in macOS.

Within Dorico Elements, you can also hide/show the zones on the edges of the window.

PROCEDURE

- Choose **View** > **Full Screen**.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

To return to the default view, choose **View** > **Full Screen** again.

RELATED LINKS

Hiding/Showing zones on page 44
Zooming in/out of the music area on page 420

Switching to galley/page view

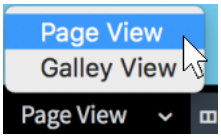
You can switch between different view types in the music area in Setup mode and Write mode. For example, if a flute player in your project is doubling piccolo, you can switch to galley view to see the piccolo staff in addition to the flute staff.

NOTE

In Engrave mode, layouts always appear in page view.

PROCEDURE

1. Switch to galley or page view in any of the following ways:
   - To switch to galley view, press **Ctrl/Cmd-Alt/Opt-2**.
   - To switch to page view, press **Ctrl/Cmd-Alt/Opt-1**.
   - In the status bar, select **Galley View** or **Page View** from the view selector.



2. Optional: If you selected **Page View**, choose one of the available page arrangements in the status bar.
   - To show display pages in pairs as two-page spreads, with each pair laid out from left to right in a row, choose **Spreads Horizontally**.
   - To display pages in pairs as two-page spreads, with each pair laid out from top to bottom in a column, choose **Spreads Vertically**.
   - To display individual pages laid out from left to right, choose **Single Pages Horizontally**.
   - To display individual pages laid out from top to bottom, choose **Single Pages Vertically**.

RESULT

The view type in the music area is changed. In page view, only staves containing notes or items are shown by default. For players holding multiple empty instruments, only the top instrument is shown in full scores.

In galley view, all staves in the project are shown. By default, guide bar numbers are shown above each staff and guide instrument labels are shown above each instrument. For players holding multiple instruments, the player name is also shown in guide instrument labels.

NOTE

- Note spacing is unjustified in galley view and there is no automatic vertical collision avoidance, so notes and items might overlap. You can change the default gaps between staves in galley view for each layout independently.
- The view type is reset to your default setting when you switch layouts.
- You can change the default view type used for all projects in **Preferences** > **General** > **View**.
- You can assign a key command for **Toggle View Type** on the **Key Commands** page in **Preferences**. This command switches between galley view and page view.
- You can assign a key command for **Center Selection** on the **Key Commands** page in **Preferences**. This command automatically brings the selection into view.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

In galley view, you can use instrument filters to show only specific staves.

RELATED LINKS

Music area on page 35
View types on page 41
Switching between layouts on page 43
Status bar on page 39
Page arrangements for page view on page 42
Changing the staff spacing in galley view on page 579
Per-layout vertical spacing options on page 577
Preferences dialog on page 58
Key Commands page in the Preferences dialog on page 59
Moving the view in the music area on page 420
Hiding/Showing guide bar numbers on page 745
Renaming players on page 173
Instrument filters on page 421

Changing your preferred unit of measurement

You can change your default preferred unit of measurement to be used throughout Dorico Elements for options that use absolute measurements, such as the size of page margins in **Layout Options**. It does not affect options that are relative to the size of staves, such as options in **Notation Options**.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-,** to open **Preferences**.
2. In the category list, click **General**.
3. In the **General** section, select one of the following options from the **Preferred unit of measurement** menu:
   - **Points (pt)**

- **Millimeters (mm)**
- **Inches (in)**
- **Centimeters (cm)**

4. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

Color setup

Dorico Elements allows you to change the colors used in different contexts, including for project windows and pages in each type of layout.

RELATED LINKS
Annotations on page 554
Viewing options for notes and rests on page 951
Hiding/Showing voice colors on page 1304
Hiding/Showing colors for notes out of range on page 951

Changing the window color theme

You can change the color theme used throughout Dorico Elements; for example, you might switch to the light theme if you prefer to read dark text on a light background. By default, Dorico Elements uses the dark theme, which shows light text on a dark background.

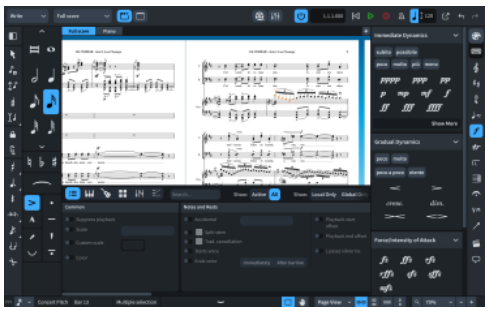
PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-,** to open **Preferences**.
2. In the category list, click **General**.
3. In the **Window** section, select one of the following options from the **Theme** menu:
   - **Dark**
   - **Light**
4. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

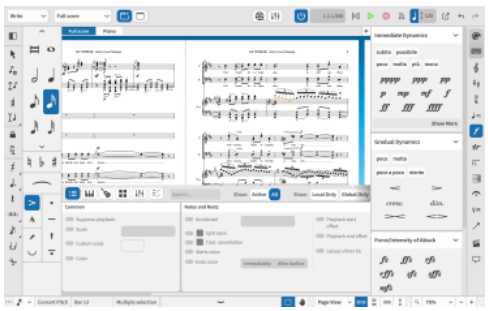
RESULT

The color theme used in Dorico Elements is changed. This affects the current project immediately and all future projects you open, until you next change your setting.

EXAMPLE



Dark theme



Light theme

Changing the page color

You can change the color of pages in each of the different layout types; for example, to help you identify whether you are in a part layout or full score layout, or to make reading the music easier or more comfortable.

By default, full score and custom score layouts have white pages, while part layouts have cream pages.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-,** to open **Preferences**.
2. In the category list, click **Colors**.
3. In the **Page Colors** section, change the page color for **Full score layouts**, **Part layouts**, and/or **Custom score layouts** in any of the following ways:
   - Click the corresponding color preview and select a color in the dialog that opens.
   - Enter a color code into the corresponding value field.
4. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

The page color in layouts of the corresponding type is changed in the current project and all future projects you open. This does not affect the resulting page color when exporting or printing layouts.

TIP

You can reset page colors back to the default factory settings by clicking **Reset** for each layout type.

RELATED LINKS

Layouts on page 165
Printing layouts on page 538
Exporting layouts as graphics files on page 542

Changing the background color

You can change the background color of the music area. The background can be a gradient of up to four colors or a single block color. You can also change the background color for Write mode and Engrave mode independently of each other; for example, to help you identify which mode you are in.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-,** to open **Preferences**.
2. In the category list, click **Colors**.
3. In the **Background Colors** section, choose one of the following options for **Use** for **Write mode** and/or **Engrave mode**:
   - **Gradient**
   - **Single Color**
4. Change the background color for **Write mode** and/or **Engrave mode** in one of the following ways:

- If you chose **Gradient** and want to use a preset selection of colors, select it from the **Preset** menu.
- If you chose **Gradient** and want to use a custom selection of colors, either click each color preview and select a color in the dialog that opens, or enter color codes into the value fields.
- If you chose **Single Color**, either click the **Stop 1** color preview and select a color in the dialog that opens, or enter a color code into the value field.

RESULT

The background color is changed in the current project and all future projects you open.

TIP

- The background color set for Write mode is also used in Setup mode.
- You can reset background colors back to the default factory settings by clicking **Reset**.

Changing music area colors

You can change the colors used for various purposes in the music area, including the first eight voice colors on each staff and the color of selected items. For example, if you find specific color combinations easier to read than others.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-,** to open **Preferences**.
2. In the category list, click **Colors**.
3. In the **Voice Colors** section, change the color for each voice in any of the following ways:
   - Click the corresponding color preview and select a color in the dialog that opens.
   - Enter a color code into the corresponding value field.
4. In the **Other Colors** section, change the color for each item in any of the following ways:
   - Click the corresponding color preview and select a color in the dialog that opens.
   - Enter a color code into the corresponding value field.
5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

The color of the corresponding voices and items is changed in the current project and all future projects you open.

TIP

You can reset colors back to the default factory settings by clicking **Reset** for each voice or item.

RELATED LINKS

Preferences dialog on page 58
Annotations on page 554
Viewing options for notes and rests on page 951
Hiding/Showing voice colors on page 1304
Hiding/Showing colors for notes out of range on page 951

Selecting notes/items on page 401
Caret on page 205
MIDI recording on page 252
Playhead on page 501
Tablature on page 1200
Linked dynamics on page 855
Linked slurs on page 1169

Inverting colors

You can invert the colors used for music and pages in Dorico Elements, which by default shows white music on black pages. You can then customize the inverted page color; for example, to show white music on a blue background.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-,** to open **Preferences**.
2. In the category list, click **Colors**.
3. In the **Page Colors** section, activate **Invert colors for music (white on black)**.
4. Change the inverted page color in any of the following ways:
   - Click the corresponding color preview and select a color in the dialog that opens.
   - Enter a color code into the corresponding value field.
5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

The colors for music and pages are inverted in the current project and all future projects you open. Music always appears white, while pages use the inverted page color you set. This does not affect the resulting colors when exporting or printing layouts.

Deactivating **Invert colors for music (white on black)** returns music/page colors to their non-inverted configuration.

TIP

You can reset the inverted page color back to the default factory setting by clicking **Reset** .

Changing the color of items

You can change the color of individual notes and items; for example, to distinguish specific items when creating educational worksheets. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the items whose color you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Color** in the **Common** group.

3. Click the color preview to open the **Select Color** (Windows)/**Colors** (macOS) dialog.
4. Select or create the color you want.
5. Click **OK** to save your changes and close the dialog.

RESULT

The color of the selected items is changed. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

RELATED LINKS

Changing the property scope on page 617
Copying property settings to other layouts/frame chains on page 599

Language setup

Dorico Elements allows you to change the language used in different contexts, including for the application itself and for instrument names in staff labels.

RELATED LINKS

Instrument transpositions in staff labels on page 1185
Changing the keyboard language on page 64

Changing the application language

You can change the language used for the user interface in the current project and all future projects you open; for example, if your operating system language is different to the language you want to use in Dorico Elements.

NOTE

Changing the application language does not affect the language used for instrument names or date and time tokens.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-,** to open **Preferences**.
2. In the category list, click **General**.
3. In the **General** section, select the language you want to use from the **Language** menu.
4. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

The language used for the user interface in the current project and all future projects is changed. If your keyboard language is set to **Default**, the keyboard language is also changed.

RELATED LINKS

Preferences dialog on page 58
Changing the keyboard language on page 64

Changing the language for instrument names

You can change the language used for instrument names; for example, if you want to recreate a French score. This affects staff labels and instrument change labels.

PROCEDURE

1. Choose **Library** > **Project Language** to open the **Project Language** dialog.
2. Select the language you want to use from the **Instrument names language** menu.
3. Activate/Deactivate **Reset instrument names**.
4. Click **OK** to save your changes and close the dialog.

RESULT

The language for all instrument names and prefixes for instrument change labels is changed project-wide. Future instruments you add to the project use your new language setting.

- If you activated **Reset instrument names**, the names of existing instruments in the project are reset to follow your new language setting.
- If you deactivated **Reset instrument names**, the names of existing instruments in the project are not reset and continue to use their existing language.

TIP

You can change the default language used for instrument names in all future projects on the **General** page in **Preferences**.

RELATED LINKS

Adding players on page 121
Adding instruments to players on page 133
Instrument changes on page 130
Staff labels on page 1180
Showing instrument/player names in staff labels on page 1184
Instrument transpositions in staff labels on page 1185

Changing the language for date and time tokens

You can change the language used for all date and time tokens project-wide; for example, if you want to display the date and time using a different language convention to your operating system.

PROCEDURE

1. Choose **Library** > **Project Language** to open the **Project Language** dialog.
2. Select the language you want to use from the **Date and time language** menu.
3. Click **OK** to save your changes and close the dialog.

RELATED LINKS

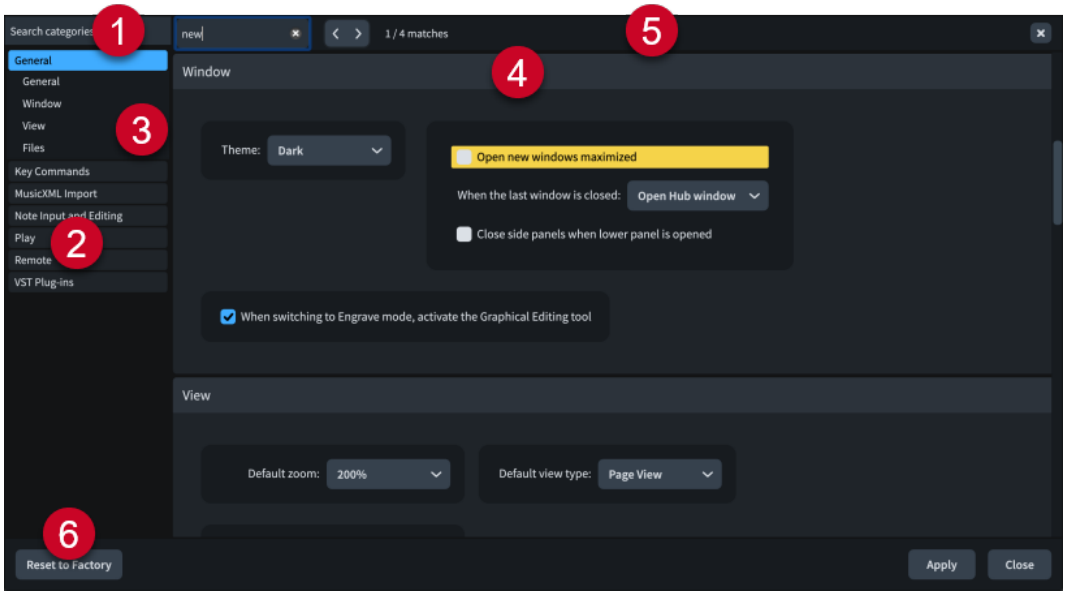
Tokens on page 607

Preferences dialog

The **Preferences** dialog allows you to change how Dorico Elements functions by default across all projects.

You can open **Preferences** in any of the following ways:

- Press **Ctrl/Cmd-,**.
- Choose **Edit** > **Preferences** (Windows) or **Dorico** > **Preferences** (macOS).



The **Preferences** dialog contains the following:

1 **Search categories field**

Allows you to filter categories and section titles according to your entry.

TIP

You can set the focus to the **Search categories** field by pressing **Ctrl/Cmd-L**. You can set the focus away by pressing **Tab**.

2 **Category list**

Contains the categories of options that you can view and change in the dialog. When you click a category in this list, any applicable section titles appear below the category in the list and its options appear as a page in the main body of the dialog.

3 **Section titles**

Shows the titles of any sections on the selected category's page. You can click these section titles to navigate directly to that section of the page.

4 **Section**

Pages are divided into sections, which can contain multiple options. Sections that contain many options are divided into subsections. For options that have multiple possible settings, the active setting is highlighted.

NOTE

The arrangement of options on the **Key Commands** page is significantly different to other pages in the **Preferences** dialog. This page is described separately in further detail.

5 **Search pages bar**

Allows you to search section titles and options on the currently selected page according to your entry and navigate through matches. The number of matches is displayed in the bar. Matches appear highlighted on the page, and the current option appears with a brighter highlight.

You can show the **Search pages** bar by pressing **Ctrl/Cmd-F**.

The bar contains the following options:

- **Search pages field**: Allows you to enter the term you want to search for. You can set the focus to the **Search pages** field by pressing **Ctrl/Cmd-F**.
- **Previous match**: Allows you to navigate to the previous match on the page. You can also navigate to the previous match by pressing **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-G**.
- **Next match**: Allows you to navigate to the next match on the page. You can also navigate to the next match by pressing **Ctrl/Cmd-G**.
- **Close**: Closes the bar and removes all match highlights. You can also close the bar by pressing **Esc**.

6 **Reset to Factory**

Resets all the options in the dialog back to the default factory settings.

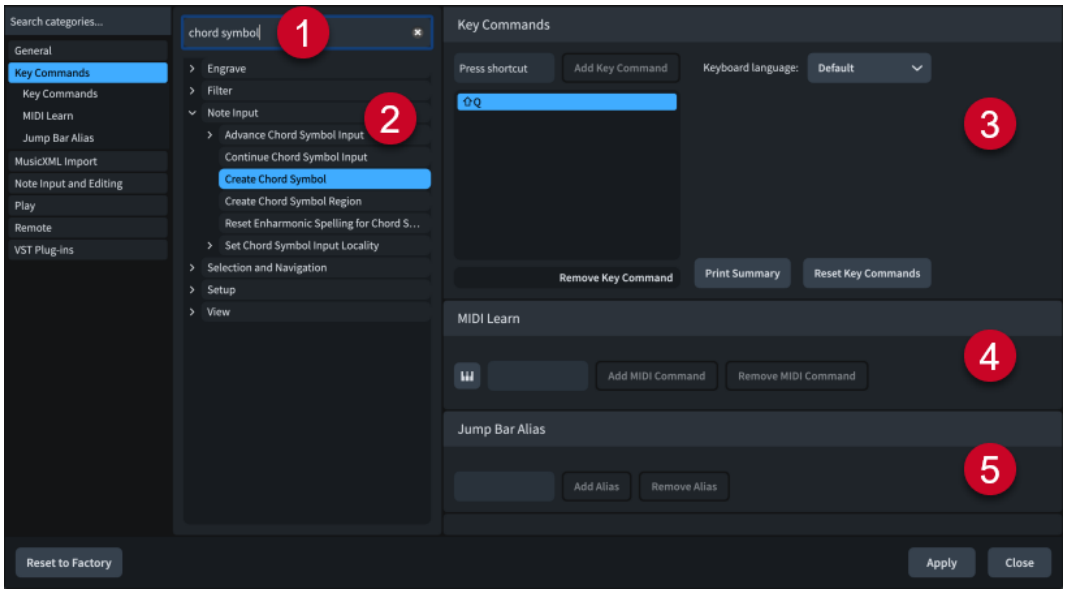
RELATED LINKS
View types on page 41
Zoom options on page 42
Selection tools on page 41
Layout Options dialog on page 677
Key commands on page 19
Changing values in numeric value fields on page 618

Key Commands page in the Preferences dialog

The **Key Commands** page in the **Preferences** dialog allows you to view all the functions to which you can assign key commands, change existing key commands, and assign new key commands to functions that have no key command assigned by default.

Assigning your own key commands can be helpful for items or actions that you find yourself performing regularly, such as setting specific rhythmic grid resolutions or exporting all layouts to PDF.

- You can find the **Key Commands** page by opening the **Preferences** dialog and clicking **Key Commands** in the category list.



The **Key Commands** page comprises the following:

1 Search field

Allows you to search for functions to view, change, or add key commands. Because there are multiple levels of disclosure arrows before you reach many functions, this is often the quickest way to find what you are looking for.

2 Functions

Displays the functions that can be assigned key commands. The list can be filtered using the **Search** field. Disclosure arrows beside options indicate that further options are available when the option is expanded.

Hovering over functions shows a tool tip, which is helpful for some functions with particularly long names.

3 Key Commands section

Displays any existing key commands set in the current keyboard language for the function selected in the list of assigned key commands, and allows you to assign new key commands.

- **Keyboard language**: Allows you to change the keyboard language used for key commands.
- **Add Key Command**: Adds the key command you pressed to the selected function.

  NOTE

  - You can assign multiple key commands to the same function.
  - If you enter a key command that is already assigned to another function, a warning is shown.

- **Remove Key Command**: Removes the selected key command from the selected function.
- **Print Summary**: Directs you to an offline page in a web browser that displays your key commands on an interactive keyboard.
- **Reset Key Commands**: Resets all of your key commands to their defaults.

4 MIDI Learn section

Allows you to assign MIDI controllers, notes, and combinations of notes to control functions.

- **MIDI Learn** : Prepares Dorico Elements to receive the MIDI input data that you want to save as a command.
- **Add MIDI Command**: Adds the MIDI controllers or notes you changed or pressed to the selected function.
- **Remove MIDI Command**: Removes the MIDI command from the selected function.

5 **Jump Bar Alias section**

Allows you to assign aliases that you can enter into the jump bar to perform the corresponding function.

- **Alias field**: Allows you to enter a jump bar alias for the selected function.
- **Add Alias**: Adds the characters you entered as the jump bar alias for the selected function.
- **Remove Alias**: Removes the existing jump bar alias from the selected function.

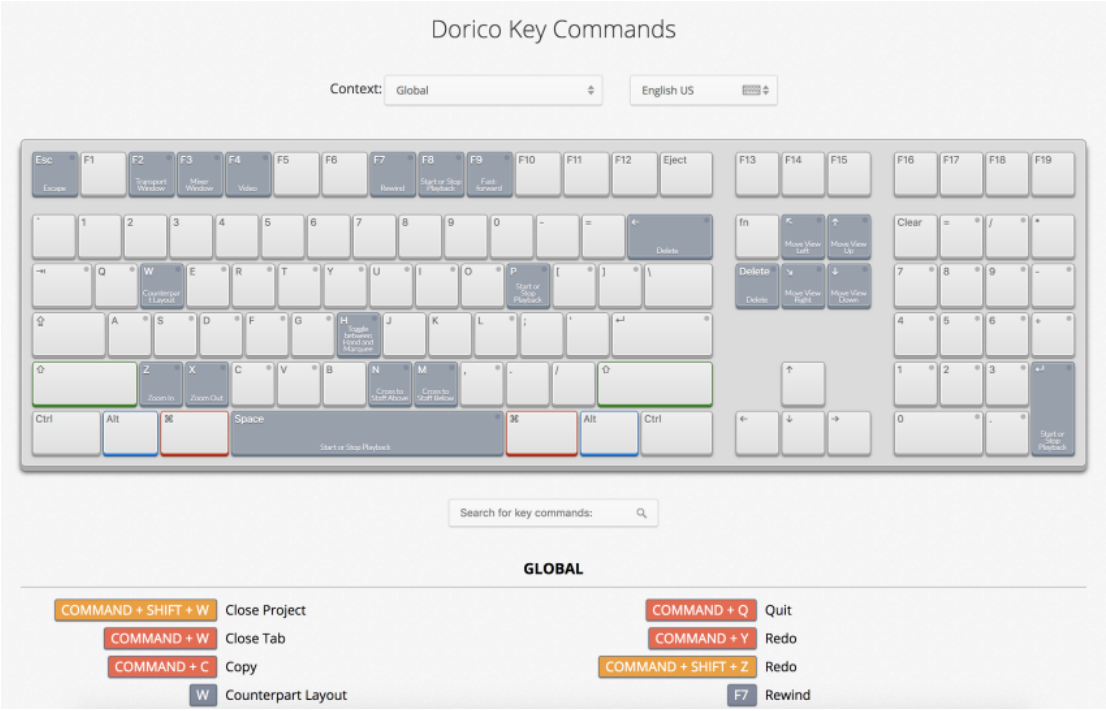
RELATED LINKS
Key commands in Dorico on page 28
Assigning key commands on page 63
Assigning MIDI commands on page 63
Jump bar on page 65

Interactive Dorico key commands map

The interactive **Dorico Key Commands** map shows a virtual computer keyboard, with keys that have been assigned key commands highlighted in different colors according to the modifier keys they contain. All key commands for the selected keyboard language layout are listed below, divided into global and mode-specific groups.

You can open the **Dorico Key Commands** map in any of the following ways:

- Choose **Help** > **Key Commands**.
- In the **Preferences** dialog, click **Key Commands** in the category list, then click **Print Summary** in the **Key Commands** section.



The interactive key commands map as it appears when US English is selected

The **Dorico Key Commands** map opens in a web browser. It allows you to do any of the following:

- To see the available key commands, select a context. The context of a key command is the mode in which it can be used. Key commands that have a global context work in all modes.
- To highlight the keys that you can press in combination with modifier keys to form a key command, press one or more modifier keys on your computer keyboard, such as **Shift** or **Ctrl/Cmd** - **Alt/Opt**, or click a modifier key on the virtual keyboard. The virtual computer keyboard highlights the pressed/clicked keys and displays the assigned functions on each key.
- To search for a specific key command, enter one or multiple words in the search field.
- To get an overview of all available key commands, browse the key commands that are listed below the virtual keyboard. The key commands are listed according to the context in which they can be used.

RELATED LINKS
Changing the keyboard language on page 64

Searching for the key commands of functions

You can search for key commands that are assigned to functions or menu items in Dorico Elements.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-,** to open **Preferences**.
2. In the category list, click **Key Commands**.
3. Enter the name of a function in the **Search** field.
   The entries that are listed below are filtered according to the words that you enter.
4. Expand an entry and select the function for which you want to see the key command.

For particularly long names, you can hover over them to see a tool tip.

RESULT

If the function has a key command, it is shown in the list of assigned key commands.

TIP

You can also search for functions in the interactive key commands map.

Assigning key commands

You can assign key commands to many functions; for example, for functions you use frequently but that do not have a key command assigned by default. You can also change existing key commands.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-,** to open **Preferences**.
2. In the category list, click **Key Commands**.
3. Search for the name of a function and select it.

   For particularly long names, you can hover over them to see a tool tip.
4. Optional: If the function already has an assigned key command, click **Remove Key Command** in the **Key Commands** section.

   If you assign a new key command without removing an existing one, you can use either key command.
5. Click the **Press shortcut** input field.
6. Press the key command that you want to assign on your computer keyboard.
7. Click **Add Key Command**.
8. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

The key command you pressed is added to the list of assigned key commands for the selected menu item or function. You can use it immediately.

RELATED LINKS

Resetting key commands on page 65

Assigning MIDI commands

You can assign specific keys or buttons on your MIDI keyboard to perform functions and access menu items. For example, if you want to navigate using MIDI keys during chord symbol input.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-,** to open **Preferences**.
2. In the category list, click **Key Commands**.
3. Select the menu item or function to which you want to assign MIDI commands.

   For particularly long names, you can hover over them to see a tool tip.
4. In the **MIDI Learn** section, click **MIDI Learn** .

5. Press the key or button on your MIDI keyboard that you want to assign to the selected parameter.
6. Click **Add MIDI Command**.
7. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

Changing the keyboard language

You can change the keyboard language used for key commands in Dorico Elements; for example, if the application language is set to German, but you are using an English keyboard and want to use English key commands.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-,** to open **Preferences**.
2. In the category list, click **Key Commands**.
3. Select the keyboard language you want to use for key commands from the **Keyboard language** menu.

   NOTE

   Default follows the application language.
4. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

The keyboard language used for key commands in the current project and all future projects is changed.

RELATED LINKS

Changing the application language on page 56

Removing key commands

You can remove individual key commands from a function.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-,** to open **Preferences**.
2. In the category list, click **Key Commands**.
3. Search for the name of a function and select it.
4. In the **Key Commands** section, click **Remove Key Command**.
5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

The key command is removed from the selected function.

RELATED LINKS

Searching for the key commands of functions on page 62
Removing jump bar aliases on page 68

Resetting key commands

You can reset all the key commands in your project to their defaults.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-,** to open **Preferences**.
2. In the category list, click **Key Commands**.
3. In the **Key Commands** section, click **Reset Key Commands**.
4. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

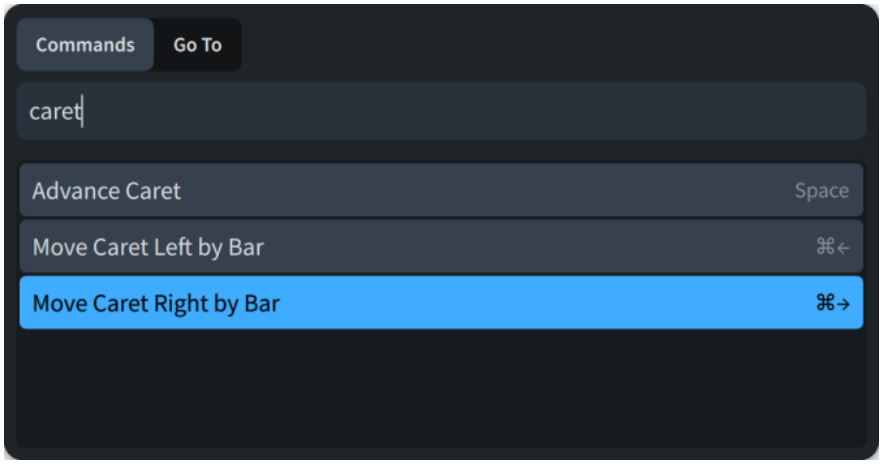
RESULT

All custom key commands are deleted and the default key commands are reinstated.

Jump bar

The jump bar is a temporary value field that allows you to perform commands and go to locations in the current layout using only your computer keyboard.

- You can show the jump bar in Setup, Write, Engrave, and Play modes by pressing **J**.



Jump bar in Commands mode with an example entry

Commands

In Commands mode, you can use the jump bar to perform commands, such as opening the **Layout Options** dialog with the specified page already selected.

- You can switch the jump bar to Commands mode by pressing **Alt-C (Windows) or Ctrl-1 (macOS)**.

When you start entering text into the jump bar in Commands mode, a menu appears that shows valid commands containing the letters/words you enter.

If you show the jump bar in Commands mode after performing a command, your previous entry is shown with its text selected.

You can press **Down Arrow** to show a list of up to five commands that you perform most frequently.

NOTE

- You can only perform commands using the jump bar in the same contexts as you can perform the corresponding action. For example, you can only perform Setup mode-specific actions in Setup mode.
- You can assign jump bar aliases to specific commands; for example, so you can use shorter entries for your favorite commands.
- If commands have a corresponding key command or jump bar alias, they are shown in the menu of valid commands.

Go To

In Go To mode, you can use the jump bar to go to bars, rehearsal marks, pages, and flows.

- You can switch the jump bar to Go To mode by pressing **Alt-G (Windows) or Ctrl-2 (macOS)**.

Example move	Jump bar entry
Go to bar number [n]; for example, bar number 32	**b[n]**; for example, **b32** or **b+32**
Go to rehearsal mark [n]; for example, rehearsal mark K	**r[n]**; for example, **rK** or **rk**
Go to page number [n]; for example, page 6	**p[n]**; for example, **p6** or **p+6**
Go to flow number [n]; for example, flow 3	**f[n]**; for example, **f3** or **f+3**
Go to the next flow	**fn**
Go to the previous flow	**fp**

EXAMPLE

To go to bar 20 in flow 3, enter **f3b20**.

RELATED LINKS

Navigation on page 417
Key commands in Dorico on page 28
Key Commands page in the Preferences dialog on page 59
Properties panel on page 615
Popovers on page 24
Notations input on page 259
Layout Options dialog on page 677
Notation Options dialog on page 679

Going to locations with the jump bar

You can use the jump bar to go to bars, rehearsal marks, pages, and flows in Setup, Write, Engrave, and Play modes.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **J** to show the jump bar.
2. Optional: Press **Alt-G (Windows) or Ctrl-2 (macOS)** to switch to Go To mode.
3. Enter the appropriate entry for the location to which you want to go.
   For example, enter **f3b20** to go to bar 20 in flow 3.
4. Press **Return**.

Performing commands with the jump bar

You can use the jump bar to perform commands, such as opening the **Layout Options** dialog with the specified page already selected, in Setup, Write, Engrave, and Play modes.

PREREQUISITE

If you want to perform mode-specific commands, you are in the corresponding mode.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **J** to show the jump bar.
2. Optional: Press **Alt-C (Windows) or Ctrl-1 (macOS)** to switch to Commands mode.
3. Select the command you want to perform in any of the following ways:
   - Enter relevant text into the jump bar.
     When you start entering text into the jump bar in Commands mode, a menu appears that shows valid commands containing the letters/words you enter, which you can select by pressing **Up Arrow** / **Down Arrow**.
   - Enter the appropriate jump bar alias into the jump bar.
   - To show a list of up to five commands that you perform most frequently, press **Down Arrow**, then press **Up Arrow** / **Down Arrow** to select a command.
4. Press **Return**.

Assigning jump bar aliases

You can assign jump bar aliases to specific commands; for example, so you can use shorter entries for your favorite commands.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **J** to show the jump bar.
2. Optional: Press **Alt-C (Windows) or Ctrl-1 (macOS)** to switch to Commands mode.
3. Enter the command to which you want to assign an alias into the jump bar.

   TIP

   To ensure the command is entered correctly, select it from the menu of valid commands by pressing **Up Arrow** / **Down Arrow**.

4. Immediately after the command, enter **=** followed by the characters you want to use as the jump bar alias.
   For example, to assign the jump bar alias **rr** to the **Remove Rests** command, enter **Remove Rests=rr**.

5. Do one of the following:
   - To perform the command and assign the jump bar alias, press **Return**.
   - To assign the jump bar alias only, without performing the command, press **Alt/Opt-Return**.

RESULT

The characters you entered after the **=** are assigned as the jump bar alias for the specified command.

TIP

You can also assign jump bar aliases on the **Key Commands** page in **Preferences**.

RELATED LINKS

Jump bar on page 65
Key Commands page in the Preferences dialog on page 59

Removing jump bar aliases

You can remove jump bar aliases you have assigned to specific commands.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-,** to open **Preferences**.
2. In the category list, click **Key Commands**.
3. Search for the name of a function and select it.
4. In the **Jump Bar Alias** section, click **Remove Alias**.
5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

The jump bar alias is removed from the selected function.

Project and file handling

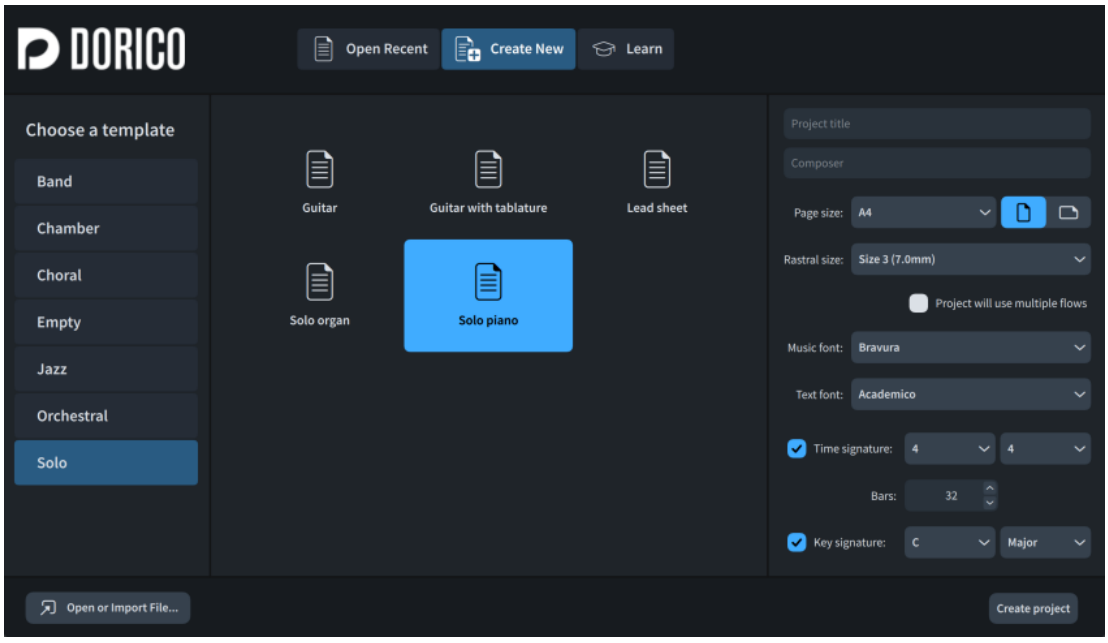
In addition to opening and importing/exporting projects and other file formats, project and file handling also includes auto-save and project backups.

RELATED LINKS
Starting new projects on page 71
Opening projects/files on page 72
File import and export on page 78
Auto-save on page 102
Project backups on page 104

Hub

The Hub allows you to access recent projects, start new projects, and keep up-to-date with learning materials including tutorials, videos, and blog updates. The Hub opens automatically when you start Dorico Elements.

- You can also open the Hub by choosing **Window** > **Hub**.



The Hub contains the following pages:

Open Recent

Allows you quick access to the projects that you worked on last. You can scroll through the list to access recent projects out of view. You can navigate through recent projects by pressing **Up Arrow** / **Down Arrow**.

Double-clicking a recent project, or selecting it and pressing **Return**, opens the project.

You can choose one of the following view types for recent projects:

- **Grid view**

- **List view**

When recent projects are shown in the grid view, you can click the menu button for each project to access the following options:

- **Remove from Recent Projects**: Removes the project from the **Recent Projects** page.
- **Open Enclosing Folder**: Opens the File Explorer/macOS Finder and shows the folder where the project is saved.

Create New

Allows you to start new projects from project templates or choose an empty project.

The **Choose a template** list on the left allows you to select a project template category, with available project templates in the selected category listed in the middle. The **Empty** project template creates a project with no players or flows.

NOTE

In Dorico Elements, the maximum number of players you can have in a single project is 24. Only categories and project templates containing 24 or fewer players are available.

On the right, the Project Options section provides the following options:

- **Project title**: Allows you to enter the project title.
- **Composer**: Allows you to enter the project composer.
- **Page size**: Allows you to select the page size for the full score layout.
- **Page orientation**: Allows you to choose whether the page orientation in the full score layout is **Portrait** or **Landscape**.
- **Rastral size**: Allows you to select the staff size for the full score layout.
- **Project will use multiple flows**: When activated, flow headings are shown in all layouts, and flow titles are shown in running headers in score layouts. When deactivated, flow headings are hidden in all layouts, and the project title is shown in running headers in score layouts.
- **Music font**: Allows you to select the music font used in the project.
- **Text font**: Allows you to select the font family used throughout the project by default.
- **Time signature**: Allows you to specify a time signature for the project. When deactivated, the project starts with no time signature, which is treated as open.
- **Bars**: Allows you to set the number of bars you want the project to contain.
- **Key signature**: Allows you to specify a key signature for the project. When deactivated, the project starts with no key signature, which is treated as atonal.

At the bottom of the Hub, **Create project** creates a new project using the selected project template and project options. You can also double-click project templates to start a new project.

Learn

Provides access to learning materials. Dorico Elements displays a notification when new materials are available.

- **Hands-on tutorials**: Displays available practical tutorials that introduce you to common operations directly in Dorico demo projects.
- **Videos**: Displays recent Dorico video tutorials. Double-clicking a video tutorial, or selecting it and clicking **Watch Now**, opens it in a web browser.

You can find more tutorial videos and information about new features on the Dorico YouTube channel.

- **Forum**: Links you to the Steinberg user forum.
- **Manual**: Links you to the online documentation. A PDF version is also available on steinberg.help.
- **Dorico Blog**: Displays recent entries in the Dorico blog. Clicking a blog entry opens it in a web browser.

At the bottom of the Hub, **Open or Import File** allows you to search for and open MusicXML, MIDI, and Dorico project files.

RELATED LINKS
Toolbar on page 31
Opening recent projects from the Hub on page 73
Project templates on page 78
Project Info dialog on page 75
Types of page templates on page 601
Staff size on page 573

Starting new projects

You can start new projects from project templates, such as for orchestra or a vocal ensemble. You can also start empty projects.

NOTE

In Dorico Elements, the maximum number of players you can have in a single project is 24. Only categories and project templates containing 24 or fewer players are available.

PROCEDURE

1. Optional: If the Hub is not open, choose **Window** > **Hub** to open the Hub.
2. In the Hub, click **Create New** to show the **Create New** page.
3. Choose one of the following project template categories:
   - **Band**
   - **Chamber**
   - **Choral**
   - **Empty**
   - **Jazz**
   - **Orchestral**
   - **Solo**
4. Choose a project template.
5. In the Project Options section, add or change information and settings as required.

   NOTE

   The Project Options section does not affect **Empty** project templates.
6. Create a new project in any of the following ways:
   - Click **Create project**.

- Double-click the project template.

RESULT

A new project is created using the selected project template.

TIP

- You can start a new, empty project at any time by pressing **Ctrl/Cmd-N** or choosing **File** > **New**.
- You can also start a new project from a project template by choosing **File** > **New From Project Template** > **[Project template category]** > **[Project template]**.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

You can customize your project, such as by adding or deleting players/instruments.

RELATED LINKS

Hub on page 69
Project templates on page 78
Brackets according to ensemble type on page 778
Adding players on page 121
Adding instruments to players on page 133
Deleting players on page 125
Deleting instruments on page 137

Opening projects/files

You can open Dorico projects at any time and in addition to other open projects; for example, if the project you want to open is not listed as a recent project in the list in the Hub. You can also open MusicXML and MIDI files.

PROCEDURE

1. Open the File Explorer/macOS Finder in any of the following ways:
   - In the Hub, click **Open or Import File**.
   - Choose **File** > **Open**.
   - Choose **File** > **Open Recent** > **[Project file name]**.
2. Locate and select the files you want to open.
3. Click **Open**.
4. Optional: If you opened a MIDI file, change the settings as required in the **MIDI Import Options** dialog that opens.

RESULT

The selected files are opened.

If you opened MusicXML or MIDI files, Dorico Elements creates new project files from the MusicXML or MIDI content, which you can save as default Dorico projects.

If MusicXML files include page size, margin, and staff size settings, Dorico Elements imports those values. If they are not included, Dorico Elements creates suitable settings according to the number of instruments in the file.

NOTE

- You can also import MusicXML and MIDI files as new flows in existing projects, rather than opening them as separate projects.
- In Dorico Elements, the maximum number of players you can have in a single project is 24. If you open a project that contains more than 24 players, it opens in read-only mode.

RELATED LINKS
Read-only mode on page 105
Hub on page 69
Importing MusicXML files on page 82
Importing MIDI on page 85
MIDI Import Options dialog on page 86

Opening recent projects from the Hub

You can open projects you have recently worked on from the Hub.

PROCEDURE

1. Optional: If the Hub is not open, choose **Window** > **Hub** to open the Hub.
2. In the Hub, click **Open Recent** to show the **Open Recent** page.
3. Double-click the recent project you want to open.

RESULT

The selected Dorico project is opened.

NOTE

In Dorico Elements, the maximum number of players you can have in a single project is 24. If you open a project that contains more than 24 players, it opens in read-only mode.

Projects from different versions of Dorico

You can open projects that were last saved in other versions of Dorico than the one you have. In such cases, Dorico Elements shows a warning message to make you aware of any implications.

The contents of the warning message vary according to the version of Dorico in which the project was last saved:

- When opening a project last saved in an older version, it shows the version number the project was last saved in and informs you that the project will be updated to your current version.
- When opening a project last saved in a newer version, it shows only that the project is from a newer version. It also informs you that items and notations from that version might not appear and will be deleted if you save the project in your current version.

In both cases, opening the project is non-destructive. This means that its contents and formatting are unaffected if you do not save it.

You can prevent Dorico Elements from showing you warnings about projects from different versions in the **Files** section of the **General** page in **Preferences**. In the same section, you can

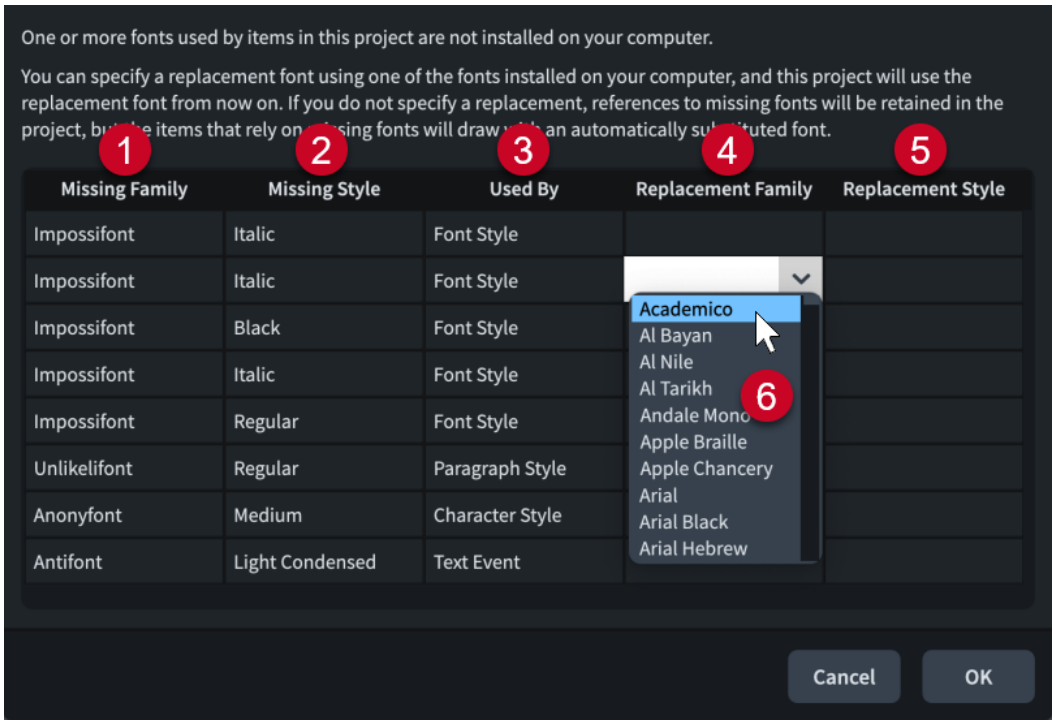
also tell Dorico Elements to prompt you to choose a new location for projects from different versions when you save them. This reduces the risk of you overwriting them by mistake.

RELATED LINKS
Preferences dialog on page 58

Missing Fonts dialog

The **Missing Fonts** dialog appears when you open a project that contains a font that you do not have installed on your computer. It allows you to select replacement fonts that are installed on your computer as substitutes.

The **Missing Fonts** dialog displays a table with multiple columns that identify the specific font families and styles that are missing for font, character, and paragraph styles and text items. Every place in the project where a font is missing has its own row. For example, if the bold style of a font family is used in three different paragraph styles, three rows are shown in the dialog, one for each paragraph style.



The **Missing Fonts** dialog comprises the following:

1 **Missing Family**

Contains a list of font families included in the project but missing on your computer.

2 **Missing Style**

Contains a list of the specific styles within the corresponding font families that are included in the project but missing on your computer.

3 **Used By**

Contains a list of the places in the project where the corresponding font is used.

4 **Replacement Family**

Allows you to select replacement font families. You can select replacement font families by double-clicking entries, then either entering the font family you want or clicking the arrow

and selecting a font family from the menu. Once selected, their names are displayed in the corresponding entry.

5 **Replacement Style**

Allows you to select any of the available styles within the corresponding replacement font families. You can select replacement font styles by double-clicking entries, then either entering the font style you want or clicking the arrow and selecting a font style from the menu. Once selected, the styles are displayed in the corresponding entry.

6 **Fonts**

Contains a list of all the available fonts installed on your computer. You can access the menu in the **Replacement Family** and **Replacement Style** columns by double-clicking any entry.

TIP

- You can choose whether or not the **Missing Fonts** dialog appears when you open a project containing fonts not installed on your computer on the **General** page in **Preferences**.
- You can change the width of columns in the **Missing Fonts** dialog. Their widths are remembered in future projects.

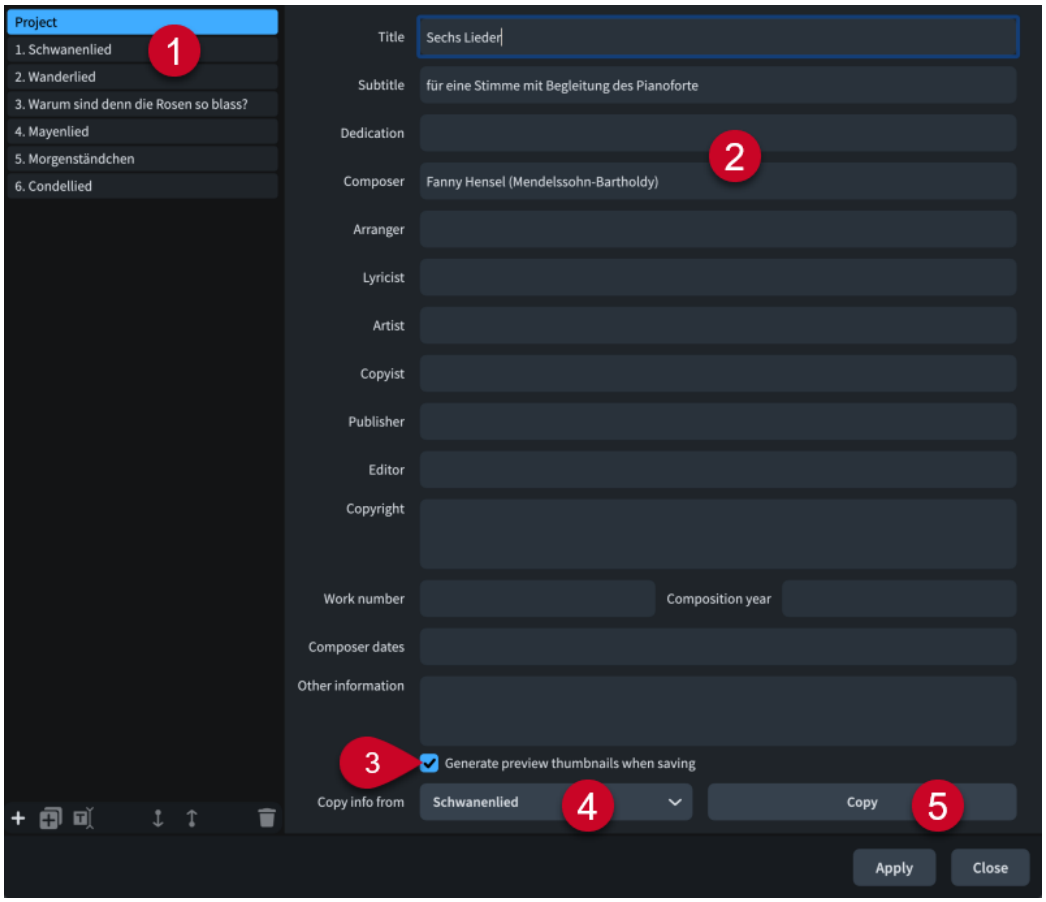
RELATED LINKS
Preferences dialog on page 58
Text editor options in Write mode on page 371

Project Info dialog

The **Project Info** dialog allows you to specify information about the whole project and each flow within it separately, such as the title, composer, and lyricist, as these might be different for different flows. You can then refer to these entries using tokens in text frames.

You can open the **Project Info** dialog in any mode in any of the following ways:

- Press **Ctrl/Cmd-I**.
- Choose **File** > **Project Info**.



The **Project Info** dialog comprises the following:

1 **Flows list**

Contains all the flows in the project, with a separate entry for the project as a whole at the top. You can select individual or multiple flows in the flows list.

NOTE

The flows list uses the names of flows as shown in the **Flows** panel in Setup mode, which can be different to their entry in the **Title** field if you have changed their flow title.

The action bar at the bottom of the list contains the following options:

- **New Flow** : Creates a new flow with no information. Its default name is **New Flow**.
- **Duplicate Flow** : Creates a new flow with all the information of the selected flow. Its default name is **Copy of [selected flow]**.
- **Rename Flow** : Opens the **Rename Flow** dialog, which allows you to change the name of the flow.

  NOTE

  If you have already manually changed the flow title, changing the name of the flow does not automatically change the flow title.

- **Move Down** : Moves the selected flows down the flows list, which changes their order in the project.

- **Move Up** : Moves the selected flows up the flows list, which changes their order in the project.
- **Delete Flow** : Deletes the selected flows.

2 **Information fields**

Allow you to enter information about the currently selected flows or the whole project in the corresponding field, such as **Composer** and **Lyricist**. If you have selected multiple flows with different entries in the same fields, such as flows with different composers, those fields display **Mixed**.

3 **Generate preview thumbnails when saving**

When activated, Dorico Elements generates the following preview images of the layout open in the music area when you save the project:

- PNG file of the first page. This is displayed on the **Open Recent** page in the Hub.
- PDF file of the whole layout.

When deactivated, Dorico Elements does not generate preview images. This reduces the file size and can make saving large projects quicker.

4 **Copy info from menu**

Allows you to select another flow or the whole project whose information you want to copy; for example, for a project containing multiple flows that all have the same composer and lyricist.

5 **Copy**

Copies all the information from the specified flow/project to the selected flows/project.

NOTE

- The information you add in **Project Info** only appears on pages where the corresponding tokens exist. For example, if you want to display a dedication above the project title, you must add the dedication token to the **First** page template.
- You cannot specify line breaks in single-line fields. However, you can enter line breaks in larger fields, namely **Copyright** and **Other information**, which you can then copy into single-line fields.
- By default, **First** page templates have tokens that refer to project information. If you only enter information for individual flows in the **Project Info** dialog, that information does not automatically appear on pages that use the **First** page template.

RELATED LINKS

Tokens on page 607
Flows on page 162
Flow names and flow titles on page 178
Reordering flows on page 164
Starting new projects on page 71
Opening projects/files on page 72
Front matter on page 895
Page templates on page 599
Types of page templates on page 601
Hub on page 69

Project templates

Project templates allow you to start new projects that already contain a particular set of players and project library settings. For example, full score layouts in orchestral project templates have larger page sizes than in chamber ensemble project templates.

Dorico Elements provides the following project template categories:

Band

Ensembles containing mostly woodwind and brass instruments, such as brass band or pit band.

Chamber

Typically small ensembles containing only a few players, such as string quartet.

Choral

Ensembles containing voices, including popular choir arrangements, such as SATB unaccompanied.

Empty

An empty project template.

Jazz

Popular ensembles commonly used to perform jazz, such as big band or jazz trio.

Orchestral

Large ensembles containing most Western instruments, including strings, woodwinds, brass, and percussion.

Solo

Ensembles containing only a single player/instrument, such as a solo organ, guitar with tablature, or lead sheet.

RELATED LINKS
Brackets according to ensemble type on page 778
Starting new projects on page 71
System objects on page 1196
Page formatting on page 555
Page templates on page 599
Library on page 677
Hub on page 69

File import and export

External files are files in different formats than Dorico projects, such as MIDI, MusicXML, or tempo tracks. It is possible in Dorico Elements both to import and export different types of files.

This can be useful if, for example, you want to share your project with others who use a different notation software, or to convert the notes, audio, or time signatures and tempo information in your project into other formats.

RELATED LINKS
Exporting lyrics on page 924
Exporting layouts as graphics files on page 542

Importing flows

You can import individual flows into existing projects; for example, if you want to bring together multiple existing pieces into one project for publishing, or if you have an empty project file with your preferred settings saved and want to reuse those settings.

PROCEDURE

1. Choose **File** > **Import** > **Flows** to open the File Explorer/macOS Finder.
2. Locate and select the project files of the flows you want to import.
3. Click **Open** to open the **Flow Import Options** dialog for the first selected project.
4. In the **Flow Import Options** dialog, choose one of the following options for **Player handling**:
   - **Create All New Players**
   - **Merge with Existing Players Where Possible**
5. In the **Import flows** list, activate the checkbox for each flow you want to import.

   You can also click **Select All** or **Select None** at the bottom of the list.
6. Click **OK** to import the selected flows and close the dialog.
7. Optional: If you selected multiple projects from which to import flows, repeat steps 4 to 6 for each project. The **Flow Import Options** dialog reopens automatically for each project.

RESULT

The selected flows are imported into the project.

- If you chose **Create All New Players**, new players are added as required for each flow.
- If you chose **Merge with Existing Players Where Possible**, any players that the imported flows and existing project have in common are merged; for example, if you imported a flow containing one piano into a project containing a piano and viola, the imported flow is added to the existing piano player.

NOTE

- Players are not automatically added to flows that you imported into the project.
- You can also open flows directly if you want them to be separate projects, rather than new flows in existing projects.

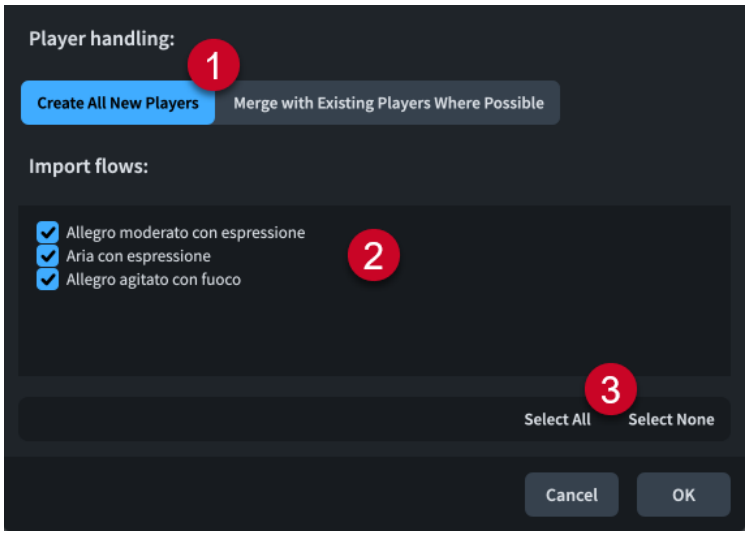
RELATED LINKS

Opening projects/files on page 72
Flows on page 162
Adding flows on page 163
Duplicating flows on page 163
Reordering flows on page 164
Deleting flows on page 165

Flow Import Options dialog

The **Flow Import Options** dialog allows you to determine whether players in imported flows are merged with existing players in the project and which flows from within other projects you want to import.

- You can open the **Flow Import Options** dialog by choosing **File** > **Import** > **Flows** and opening a Dorico project from the File Explorer/macOS Finder.



The **Flow Import Options** dialog comprises the following:

1 **Player handling**

Allows you to determine how imported flows are assigned to players.

- **Create All New Players** adds separate players for each imported flow.
- **Merge with Existing Players Where Possible** merges players from imported flows with any existing compatible players in the project.

2 **Import flows**

Contains a list of all the flows in the selected project. Flows are included in the import when their checkbox is activated.

3 **Selection options**

Allow you to select/deselect all the flows in the project. For example, you can deselect all flows and then activate the checkbox of a single flow you want to import.

Exporting flows

You can export individual flows from projects; for example, to save small excerpts of large projects separately.

NOTE

These steps export flows as separate Dorico projects. If you want to export flows as other file formats, such as MusicXML or MP3, there are different methods.

PREREQUISITE

If you want the exported flows to include all players and layouts in the project, including players with no music, you have deactivated **Omit excluded players and layouts when exporting flows** in **Preferences** > **General** > **Files**.

PROCEDURE

1. Choose **File** > **Export** > **Flows** to open the **Export Flows** dialog.
2. Activate/Deactivate **Export each selected flow as a separate file**.
3. In the **Select flows to export** list, activate the checkbox for each flow you want to export.

   You can also click **Select All** or **Select None** at the bottom of the list.

4. Activate/Deactivate **Export layouts as separate files**.
5. Optional: If you activated **Export layouts as separate files**, activate the checkbox for each layout you want to export in the **Select layouts to export** list.

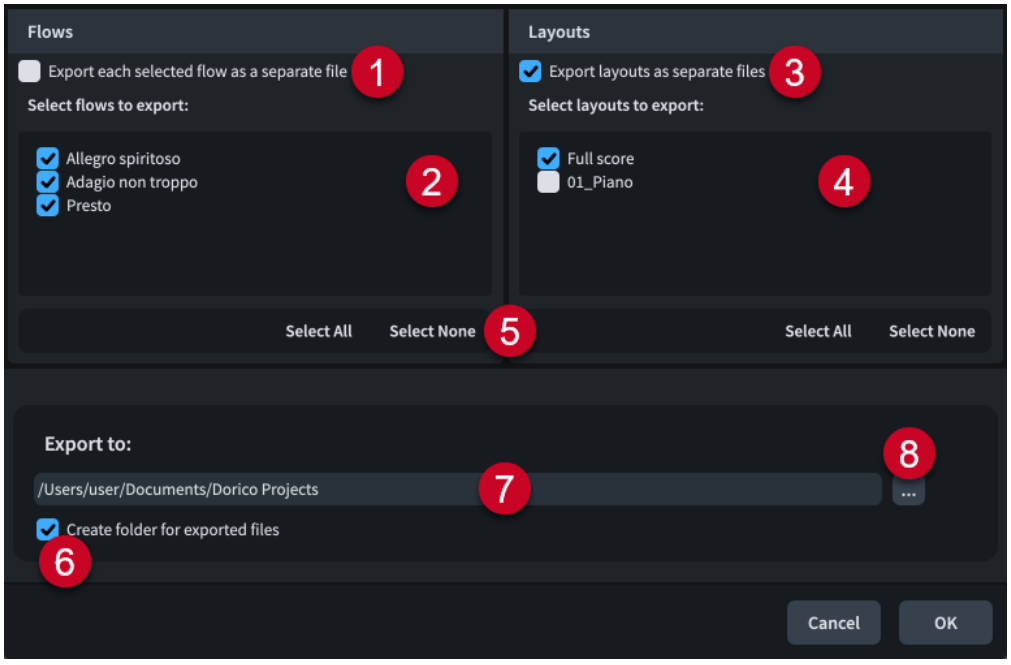
   You can also click **Select All** or **Select None** at the bottom of the list.
6. Click **Choose Folder** ... beside the **Export to** field to open the File Explorer/macOS Finder.
7. Locate and select the destination folder you want.
8. Click **Choose** to insert the new path in the **Export to** field.
9. Activate/Deactivate **Create folder for exported files**.
10. Click **OK** to export the selected flows and layouts and close the dialog.

RELATED LINKS
Flows on page 162
Exporting MusicXML files on page 84
Exporting MIDI on page 95
Exporting tempo tracks on page 98
Exporting audio on page 99

Export Flows dialog

The **Export Flows** dialog allows you to save individual flows and layouts as separate Dorico files.

- You can open the **Export Flows** dialog by choosing **File** > **Export** > **Flows**.



The **Export Flows** dialog contains the following options and lists:

1 Export each selected flow as a separate file

Allows you to export each flow as a separate file instead of all the selected flows as a single file.

2 Select flows to export

Contains a list of all the flows in the project. Flows are included in the export when their checkbox is activated.

3 **Export layouts as separate files**

Allows you to export each layout in the project as a separate file instead of as a single file.

4 **Select layouts to export**

Contains a list of all the layouts in the project. Layouts are included in the export when their checkbox is activated. Only available if you have activated **Export layouts as separate files**.

5 **Selection options**

Allow you to select/deselect all the flows/layouts in the corresponding list. For example, you can deselect all flows and then activate the checkbox of a single flow you want to export.

6 **Create folder for exported files**

Controls whether or not Dorico Elements generates a new folder for the selected flows within the selected export path. The automatic folder name is “Flows from” followed by the project file name; for example, “Flows from Smyth - String Quintet”.

7 **Export to field**

Displays the export path where exported flows will be saved.

8 **Choose Folder**

Opens the File Explorer/macOS Finder and allows you to change the export path.

Importing MusicXML files

You can import MusicXML files into existing Dorico Elements projects as separate flows; for example, to continue work on a piece started in a different notation software.

PREREQUISITE

You have set your preferences for importing MusicXML files as appropriate for the file on the **MusicXML Import** page in **Preferences**.

PROCEDURE

1. Choose **File** > **Import** > **MusicXML** to open the File Explorer/macOS Finder.
2. Locate and select the MusicXML files you want to import.
3. Click **Open** to open the **Flow Import Options** dialog for the first selected MusicXML file.
4. In the **Flow Import Options** dialog, choose one of the following options for **Player handling**:
   - **Create All New Players**
   - **Merge with Existing Players Where Possible**
5. Click **OK** to import the selected flows and close the dialog.
6. Optional: If you selected multiple MusicXML files, repeat steps 4 and 5 for each file. The **Flow Import Options** dialog reopens automatically for each file.

RESULT

The selected MusicXML files are imported into the project as new flows.

- If MusicXML files include page size, margin, and staff size settings, Dorico Elements imports those values. If they are not included, Dorico Elements creates suitable settings according to the number of instruments in the file.
- If you chose **Create All New Players**, new players are added as required for each MusicXML file.

- If you chose **Merge with Existing Players Where Possible**, any players that the imported MusicXML files and existing project have in common are merged; for example, if you imported a MusicXML file containing one piano into a project containing a piano and viola, the imported MusicXML file is added to the existing piano player.

TIP

You can also open MusicXML files directly if you want them to be separate projects, rather than new flows in existing projects.

RELATED LINKS
Flow Import Options dialog on page 79
Opening projects/files on page 72
Preferences dialog on page 58

Unpitched percussion imported from MusicXML files

Unpitched percussion music can be expressed in a number of ways in MusicXML. Scoring applications take different approaches to what data is exported and how it is encoded. Therefore, the results of importing MusicXML into Dorico Elements vary considerably.

Dorico Elements identifies each instrument in kits explicitly and then combines them dynamically onto five-line staves. Other scoring applications and MusicXML have a different approach to how unpitched percussion music is represented. For example, a drum set may be effectively notated as pitched notes on a five-line staff and annotated with additional information to help identify which instrument corresponds to each staff position.

Because of these different approaches, mapping information between the MusicXML representation and the Dorico Elements representation can be challenging, so Dorico Elements employs heuristics to improve the quality of results.

Typically, drum set instruments in MusicXML files exported from both Sibelius and Finale are imported quite cleanly into Dorico Elements.

Results are particularly good, and more likely to be imported correctly, if the voicing of the drum set is consistent, such as consistently notating the snare drum in a down-stem voice. If the voicing changes from bar to bar, it is possible that some notes are either identified incorrectly or not imported at all.

Other kinds of percussion that are notated on five-line staves produce more variable results. In most cases, Finale includes information about which percussion instrument maps onto each staff position, but Sibelius does not. As a result, you might find that Dorico Elements chooses different instruments than you expected, but you can change instruments using the **Edit Percussion Kit** dialog.

RELATED LINKS
Edit Percussion Kit dialog on page 150
Changing instruments in percussion kits on page 153
Adding instruments to percussion kits on page 153
Percussion editor on page 631
Importing MIDI on page 85

Exporting MusicXML files

You can export flows and layouts as separate MusicXML files; for example, if you want to export just the soloist's layout containing the first flow.

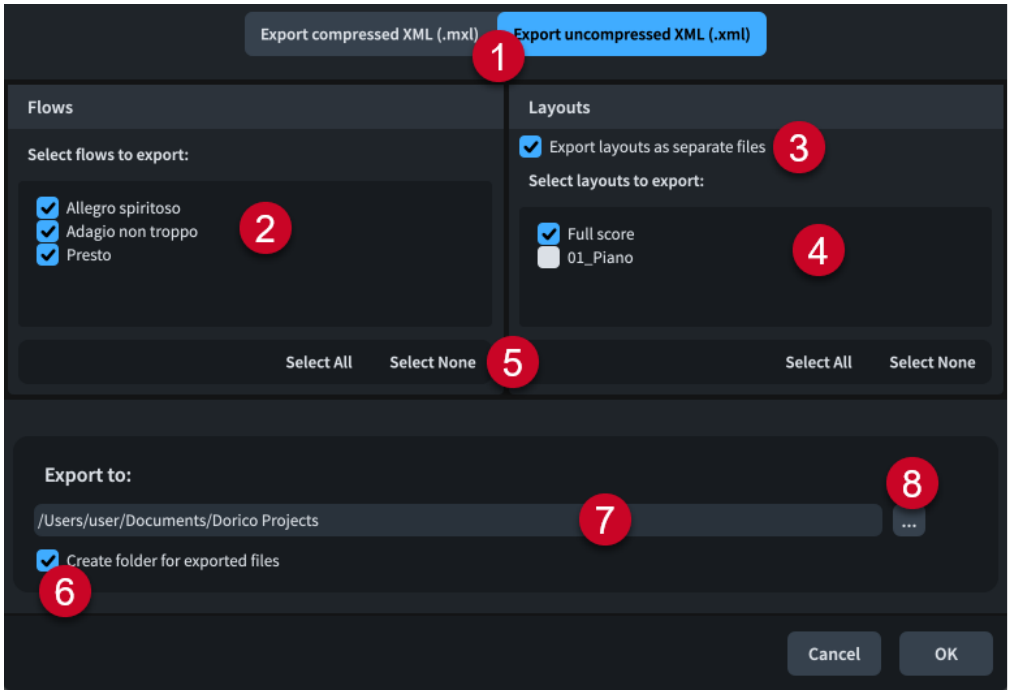
PROCEDURE

1. Choose **File** > **Export** > **MusicXML** to open the **Export MusicXML** dialog.
2. Choose one of the following file format options:
   - **Export compressed XML (.mxl)**
   - **Export uncompressed XML (.xml)**
3. In the **Select flows to export** list, activate the checkbox for each flow you want to export.
   You can also click **Select All** or **Select None** at the bottom of the list.
4. Activate/Deactivate **Export layouts as separate files**.
5. Optional: If you activated **Export layouts as separate files**, activate the checkbox for each layout you want to export in the **Select layouts to export** list.
   You can also click **Select All** or **Select None** at the bottom of the list.
6. Click **Choose Folder** ... beside the **Export to** field to open the File Explorer/macOS Finder.
7. Locate and select the destination folder you want.
8. Click **Choose** to insert the new path in the **Export to** field.
9. Activate/Deactivate **Create folder for exported files**.
10. Click **OK** to export the selected flows/layouts as MusicXML files and close the dialog.

Export MusicXML dialog

The **Export MusicXML** dialog allows you to save individual flows and layouts as separate MusicXML files.

- You can open the **Export MusicXML** dialog by choosing **File** > **Export** > **MusicXML**.



The **Export MusicXML** dialog contains the following options and lists:

1 **File format options**

Allows you to choose the MusicXML file format you want to export. Compressed MusicXML files contain the same information as uncompressed MusicXML files but have a smaller file size.

2 **Select flows to export**

Contains a list of all the flows in the project. Flows are included in the export when their checkbox is activated.

3 **Export layouts as separate files**

Allows you to export each layout in the project as a separate file instead of as a single file.

4 **Select layouts to export**

Contains a list of all the layouts in the project. Layouts are included in the export when their checkbox is activated. Only available if you have activated **Export layouts as separate files**.

5 **Selection options**

Allow you to select/deselect all the flows/layouts in the corresponding list. For example, you can deselect all flows and then activate the checkbox of a single flow you want to export.

6 **Create folder for exported files**

Controls whether or not Dorico Elements generates a new folder for the selected flows within the selected export path. The automatic folder name is “Flows from” followed by the project file name; for example, “Flows from Smyth - String Quintet”.

7 **Export to field**

Displays the export path where exported files will be saved.

8 **Choose Folder**

Opens the File Explorer/macOS Finder and allows you to change the export path.

Importing MIDI

You can import MIDI files into existing Dorico Elements projects, as either separate flows or into existing flows; for example, to work on a different version of a section of a piece.

PROCEDURE

1. Choose **File** > **Import** > **MIDI** to open the File Explorer/macOS Finder.
2. Locate and select the MIDI files you want to import.
3. Click **Open** to open the **MIDI Import Options** dialog for the first selected MIDI file.
4. Change the settings as required.

   For example, you can change the playing techniques of tracks, assign tracks to specific players, and customize quantization options.
5. Click **OK** to close the **MIDI Import Options** dialog and import the first selected MIDI file.
6. Optional: If you selected multiple MIDI files, repeat steps 4 to 5 for each file. The **MIDI Import Options** dialog reopens automatically for each file.

RESULT

The selected MIDI files are imported into the project according to your settings. Dorico Elements uses an algorithm on imported MIDI notes to produce the correct enharmonic spelling.

If the MIDI files contained markers, they are also imported. If they have SMPTE offset values defined, Dorico Elements uses them to set the timecode position for the start of the flow.

TIP

You can also open MIDI files directly if you want them to be separate projects, rather than new flows in existing projects.

RELATED LINKS
Opening projects/files on page 72
Requantizing notes on page 255
Changing the sustain pedal controller settings for MIDI recording/import on page 258
Importing tempo tracks on page 96
Exporting tempo tracks on page 98

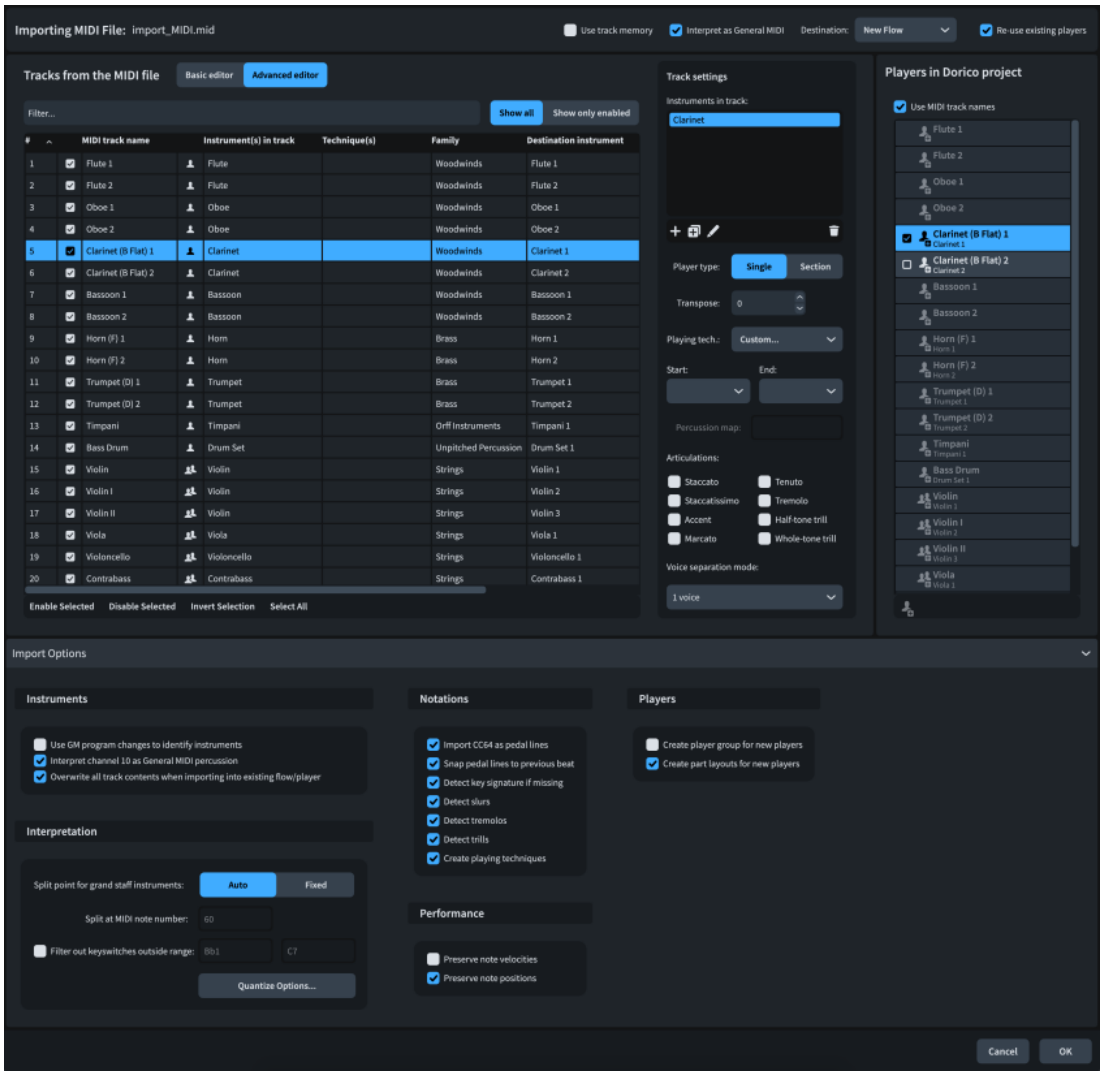
MIDI Import Options dialog

The **MIDI Import Options** dialog allows you to customize the settings Dorico Elements uses to translate MIDI data into a Dorico project when importing and opening MIDI files.

Your MIDI import settings are stored to the track memory, allowing you to reuse settings automatically the next time you open or import MIDI files with similar tracks.

You can open the **MIDI Import Options** dialog in any of the following ways:

- Choose **File** > **Import** > **MIDI** and import a MIDI file from the File Explorer/macOS Finder.
- Choose **File** > **Open** and open a MIDI file from the File Explorer/macOS Finder.



At the top of the **MIDI Import Options** dialog, there are the following options:

Importing MIDI File

Displays the file name of the MIDI file you are importing or opening.

Use track memory

Allows you both to apply settings from the track memory to the current MIDI file, and to save the settings for the current MIDI file to the track memory for reuse in future when importing or opening MIDI files with identical track names.

Interpret as General MIDI

Allows Dorico Elements to use MIDI program changes at the start of tracks to determine instrument types, including identifying tracks using channel 10 as containing unpitched percussion using the General MIDI drum set.

We recommend deactivating this option for MIDI files that do not conform to General MIDI conventions.

Destination

Allows you to select the flow into which you want to import the MIDI file. You can import MIDI as a new flow or into an existing flow in the project; for example, if you want to overwrite specific tracks in an existing flow. Only available when importing MIDI files.

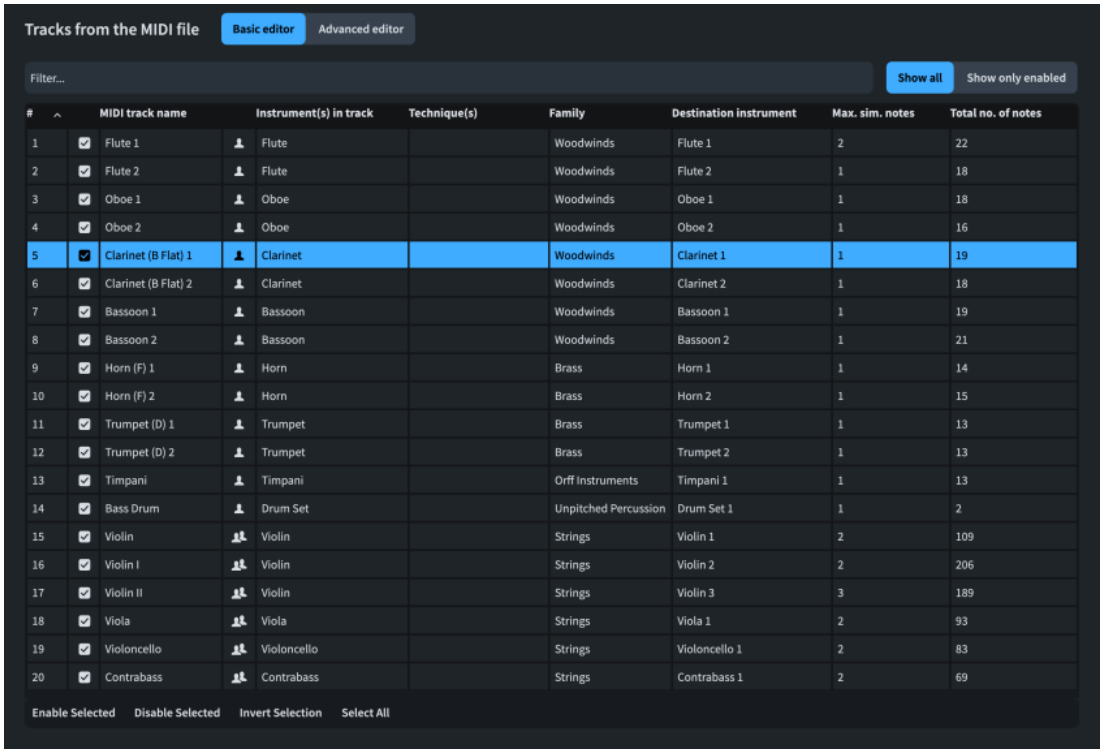
Re-use existing players

Allows you to determine the players to which tracks in the MIDI file are assigned. Only available when importing MIDI files.

- When activated, tracks from the imported MIDI file are either merged with existing players in the project or overwrite them, depending on your setting for **Overwrite all track contents when importing into existing flow/player** in the **Import Options** section.
- When deactivated, tracks are imported as new players.

Tracks from the MIDI file

Displays all the tracks from the imported or opened MIDI file in a table. Allows you to enable/disable tracks for import and change their player type, instrument, and playing techniques.



#	MIDI track name	Instrument(s) in track	Technique(s)	Family	Destination instrument	Max. sim. notes	Total no. of notes
1	Flute 1	Flute		Woodwinds	Flute 1	2	22
2	Flute 2	Flute		Woodwinds	Flute 2	1	18
3	Oboe 1	Oboe		Woodwinds	Oboe 1	1	18
4	Oboe 2	Oboe		Woodwinds	Oboe 2	1	16
5	Clarinet (B Flat) 1	Clarinet		Woodwinds	Clarinet 1	1	19
6	Clarinet (B Flat) 2	Clarinet		Woodwinds	Clarinet 2	1	18
7	Bassoon 1	Bassoon		Woodwinds	Bassoon 1	1	19
8	Bassoon 2	Bassoon		Woodwinds	Bassoon 2	1	21
9	Horn (F) 1	Horn		Brass	Horn 1	1	14
10	Horn (F) 2	Horn		Brass	Horn 2	1	15
11	Trumpet (D) 1	Trumpet		Brass	Trumpet 1	1	13
12	Trumpet (D) 2	Trumpet		Brass	Trumpet 2	1	13
13	Timpani	Timpani		Orff Instruments	Timpani 1	1	13
14	Bass Drum	Drum Set		Unpitched Percussion	Drum Set 1	1	2
15	Violin	Violin		Strings	Violin 1	2	109
16	Violin I	Violin		Strings	Violin 2	2	206
17	Violin II	Violin		Strings	Violin 3	3	189
18	Viola	Viola		Strings	Viola 1	2	93
19	Violoncello	Violoncello		Strings	Violoncello 1	2	83
20	Contrabass	Contrabass		Strings	Contrabass 1	2	69

At the top of the table, there are the following filter controls:

- **Filter field**: Allows you to filter tracks by name, instrument, or family.
- **Track visibility**: Allows you to show either all tracks or only tracks enabled for import.

The table contains the following columns:

- **#**: Displays the number of the track.
- **Enable**: Allows you to enable/disable the track for import.
- **MIDI track name**: Displays the name of the track in the MIDI file.
- **Player type**: Displays the player type for the track. You can change the player type by double-clicking the icon. Icons show the current player type from the following options:
  - Single player
  - Section player
- **Instrument(s) in track**: Displays the instruments identified for the track. You can change the instrument by double-clicking the field and selecting an instrument in the instrument

picker that opens. If a single track requires multiple instruments, you must use the advanced editor options.

- **Technique(s)**: Displays the playing techniques identified for the track. You can change the playing technique by double-clicking the field and selecting a playing technique from the menu. If a single track requires multiple playing techniques, you must use the advanced editor options.

  TIP

  - It is not necessary to specify natural or legato playing techniques, as Dorico Elements automatically creates slurs if **Detect slurs** is activated in the **Import Options** section.
  - Dorico Elements inputs the corresponding playing techniques at the required positions in the music if **Create playing techniques** is activated in the **Import Options** section.

- **Family**: Displays the instrument family of the track. For tracks with multiple instruments, the family of the first instrument is displayed.
- **Destination Instrument**: Displays the instrument in the project to which the track will be assigned. You can change the destination instrument by double-clicking the field and selecting an instrument from the menu. For example, if you want to assign multiple tracks to the same destination instrument.
- **Max. sim. notes**: Displays the number of notes played simultaneously in the track. This can help you identify whether tracks represent single, multiple, or grand staff instruments.
- **Total no. of notes**: Displays the total number of notes in the track. Tracks containing no notes might be unnecessary to import.

TIP

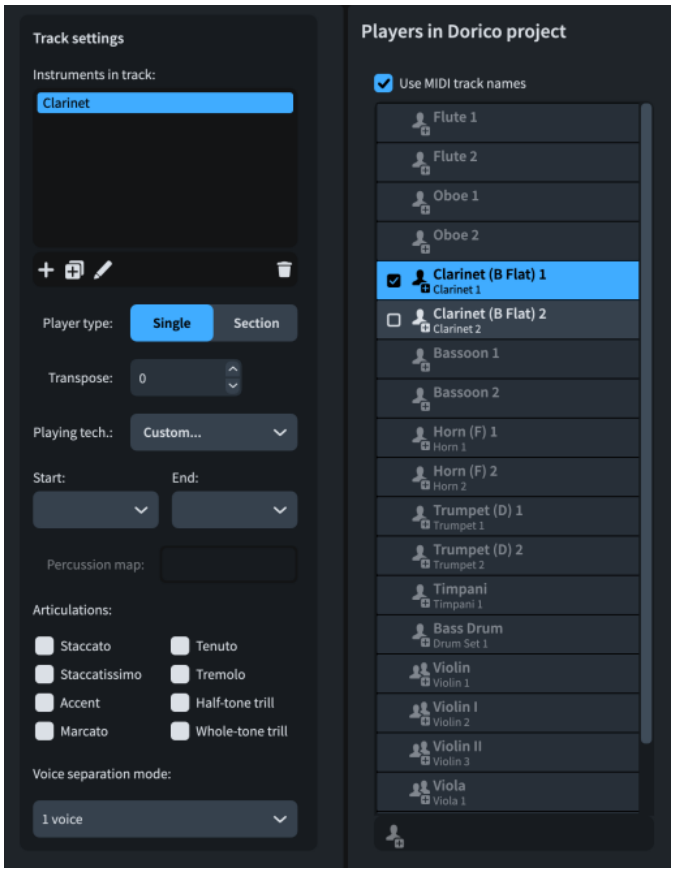
You can click each column's header to change its sort order.

The action bar at the bottom of the table contains the following options:

- **Enable Selected**: Enables the selected tracks for import.
- **Disable Selected**: Disables the selected tracks for import.
- **Invert Selection**: Switches your selection to include all tracks not previously selected.
- **Select All**: Selects all tracks.

Advanced editor options

Contains advanced options that allow you to control how the selected track is mapped to players in the project.



The **Advanced editor** options are divided into the following sections:

Track settings

Contains a list of instruments in the track selected in the **Tracks from the MIDI file** table and allows you to view and change details of how Dorico Elements will interpret the track.

- **Instruments in track list**: Contains all the instruments in the selected track and allows you to change them. For example, you might add enough horn instruments to match the **Max. sim. notes** in a horn ensemble track, and therefore ensure each instrument only plays a single note at a time.

  Chords are split between instruments in tracks in pitch order; for example, piccolos receive higher notes than flutes.

  The action bar at the bottom of the list contains the following options:

  - **Add Instrument**: Opens the instrument picker and allows you to add a new instrument to the track.
  - **Duplicate Instrument**: Duplicates the selected instrument.
  - **Change Instrument**: Opens the instrument picker and allows you to change the selected instrument.
  - **Delete Instrument**: Deletes the selected instrument.
- **Player type**: Allows you to choose the player type for the track.
- **Transpose**: Allows you to transpose the track by the specified number of half-steps (semitones).
- **Playing tech.**: Allows you to select the playing techniques for the track; for example, when assigning multiple tracks that represent different playing techniques to the same player.

- **Start**: The playing technique used at the start of the track.
- **End**: The playing technique used at the end of the track.

For example, for a violin part that switches between *pizzicato* and *arco*, using two tracks in the MIDI file, selecting **Pizzicato/Arco** instructs Dorico Elements to input *pizz.* and *arco* playing techniques at the appropriate positions.

- **Percussion map**: Allows you to select a percussion map for the track. Only available for percussion kits.
- **Articulations**: Allows you to select articulations you want to input on all notes in the track.
- **Voice separation mode**: Allows you to select a voice approach for chords. Only available when mapping a track to a single instrument. When mapping one track to multiple instruments or multiple tracks to one player, Dorico Elements automatically distributes notes to voices.
  - **1 voice**: All music in the track is assigned to the same voice.
  - **2 voice (auto)**: Music in the track is assigned to two voices on the same staff.
  - **2 voice (fixed split point)**: Music in the track is assigned to two voices, each on its own staff, using the split point set in the **Import Options** section.
  - **2 voice (explode)**: Music in the track is assigned to two voices, each on its own staff. This option can be useful for fretted instruments.
  - **4 voice keyboard (auto)**: Music in the track is assigned to four voices, spread across two staves. We recommend using this option for grand staff instruments, as it can automatically detect common keyboard textures, such as bass and melody with inner chords.

Players in Dorico project

Contains a list of the players in the project to which tracks will be assigned, including existing players in the project and any new players required by the imported MIDI file. Icons for each player indicate if it is new and its type from the following options:

- Single player
- Section player

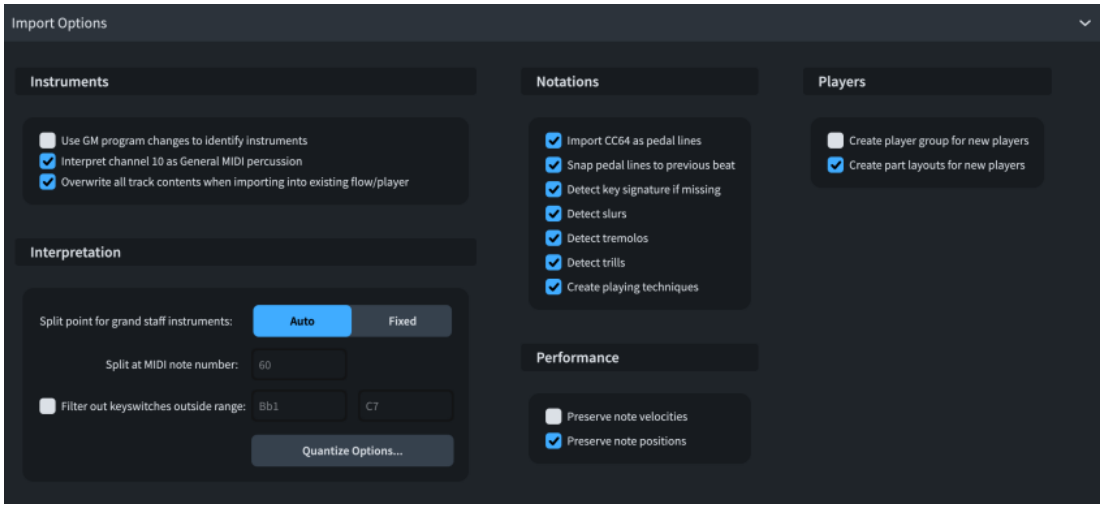
When you select an instrument in the **Instruments in track** list in the **Track settings** section, its current assigned player appears highlighted in the **Players in Dorico project** list.

You can assign instruments to other players by clicking an available player in the list. Only players of the same type and with the same instrument are available. For example, if multiple tracks represent different techniques played by the same instrument, you can assign them all to the same player.

If no instruments are assigned to a new player, it is automatically deleted.

- **Use MIDI track names** allows you to use MIDI track names for player names.
- **Add new player for track** allows you to assign the selected instrument to a new player. Only available when you have assigned more than one instrument to the same player.

Import Options



The **Import Options** section contains the following subsections:

Instruments

Contains options that determine how Dorico Elements identifies and handles instruments from the imported MIDI file.

- **Use GM program changes to identify instruments**: Allows you to set whether Dorico Elements uses MIDI program changes or track names to identify instruments.
- **Interpret channel 10 as General MIDI percussion**: Allows you to set whether Dorico Elements interprets tracks using channel 10 as conforming to the General MIDI drum set standard.
- **Overwrite all track contents when importing into existing flow/player**: When activated, imported tracks overwrite all existing music belonging to destination players. When deactivated, imported tracks merge with existing music belonging to destination players. Only applies when importing MIDI into an existing flow.

Interpretation

Contains options that determine how Dorico Elements interprets key switches and keyboard music from the imported MIDI file.

- **Split point for grand staff instruments**: Allows you to change how notes are assigned to each staff for grand staff instruments.
  - **Auto**: Dorico Elements automatically determines split points according to the musical context.
  - **Fixed**: Dorico Elements uses the set split point.
- **Split at MIDI note number**: Allows you set a MIDI note number at which notes are split between staves. Only available when **Fixed** is chosen for **Split point for grand staff instruments**.
- **Filter out key switches outside range**: Allows you to set the range of pitches used for notes in the MIDI file. Notes higher/lower than the set range are omitted.
- **Quantize Options**: Opens the **MIDI Quantize Options** dialog, which allows you to customize the quantization options.

NOTE

Quantization options are linked between **Preferences** > **Play** > **Quantization** and the **MIDI Import Options** dialog.

Notations

Contains options that determine the handling and detection of notations from the imported MIDI file, such as pedal lines and slurs.

NOTE

- Notation settings are linked between **Preferences** > **Play** > **Recording** and the **MIDI Import Options** dialog.
- When **Detect key signature if missing** is activated, Dorico Elements creates a single key signature at the start of the flow. This option works best for music with a strong tonal center that does not modulate.

Performance

Contains options that determine how much of the original performance in the MIDI file is preserved for playback purposes. They do not affect how the imported MIDI notes are notated, as this is controlled by quantization options.

NOTE

Performance settings are linked between **Preferences** > **Play** > **Recording** and the **MIDI Import Options** dialog.

Players

Contains options that determine the handling of players and layouts.

For example, if you are importing a MIDI file into an existing project in order to orchestrate, you might want to import players into their own player group without creating any extra part layouts for them.

RELATED LINKS

Opening projects/files on page 72
Changing the sustain pedal controller settings for MIDI recording/import on page 258
Unpitched percussion imported from MusicXML files on page 83
Types of actions on page 695
Preferences dialog on page 58
Player groups on page 158
Players on page 120
Instruments on page 127
Layouts on page 165
Instrument picker on page 109
Playing techniques on page 1062
Pedal lines on page 1044
Key signatures on page 911
Slurs on page 1155
Tremolos on page 1264
Trills on page 981
Tuplets on page 1271
Grace notes on page 897

Quantization options

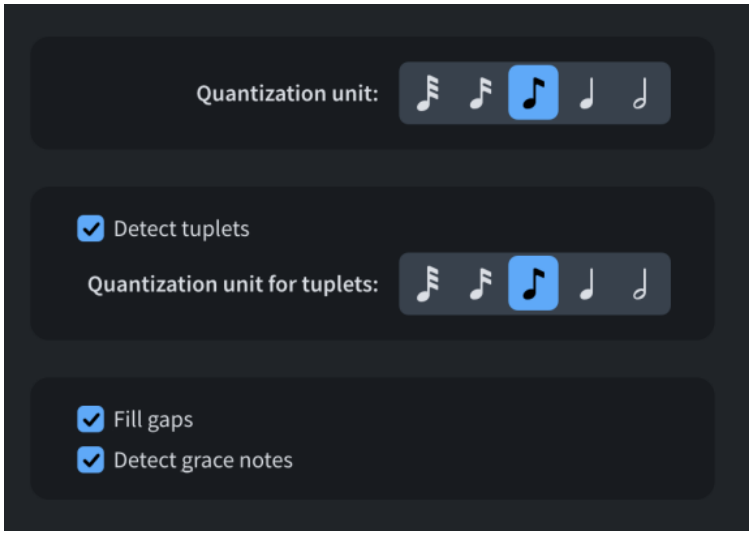
Quantization options allow you to customize the quantization you want to apply to notes when importing MIDI files, inputting notes using MIDI recording, or requantizing notes.

You can access the available quantization options in any of the following ways:

- In **Preferences** > **Play** > **Quantization**.
- In the **MIDI Import Options** dialog, click **Quantize Options** in the **Import Options** section.
- When at least one note is selected in the music area, choose **Edit** > **Requantize**.

NOTE

Quantization options are linked between **Preferences** > **Play** > **Quantization** and the **MIDI Import Options** dialog.



The following quantization options are available:

Quantization unit

Allows you to set the smallest beat unit to which you want notes to be quantized. For example, if the smallest intentional note duration in your imported file is an eighth note, set **Quantization unit** to eighth notes.

Detect tuplets

Allows you to control whether off-beat notes can be considered tuplets. If you know there are no intentional tuplets in your imported MIDI file, deactivating **Detect tuplets** ensures no notes are imported as tuplets.

Quantization unit for tuplets

Allows you to set the smallest beat unit to which you want tuplet notes to be quantized. For example, if the smallest intentional tuplet note duration in your imported file is a quarter note, set **Quantization unit for tuplets** to quarter notes.

Fill gaps

Allows you to determine whether Dorico Elements fills in gaps between short notes. If you are importing already precisely quantized music, we recommend that you deactivate **Fill gaps** to ensure that note and rest durations are notated exactly as quantized.

Detect grace notes

Allows you to determine whether Dorico Elements interprets grace notes. When deactivated, Dorico Elements turns grace notes into normal notes.

RELATED LINKS
MIDI recording on page 252
Requantizing notes on page 255
Tuplets on page 1271
Grace notes on page 897

Exporting MIDI

You can export flows as separate MIDI files; for example, if you want to edit the audio in further detail in a DAW. MIDI files exported from Dorico Elements contain any markers in the project by default.

PREREQUISITE

You have opened a layout in the music area that contains the players whose MIDI you want to export.

PROCEDURE

1. Choose **File** > **Export** > **MIDI** to open the **Export MIDI** dialog.
2. In the **Select flows to export** list, activate the checkbox for each flow you want to export.

   You can also click **Select All** or **Select None** at the bottom of the list.
3. Click **Choose Folder** ... beside the **Export to** field to open the File Explorer/macOS Finder.
4. Locate and select the destination folder you want.
5. Click **Choose** to insert the new path in the **Export to** field.
6. Activate/Deactivate **Create folder for exported files**.
7. Click **OK** to export the selected flows as MIDI files and close the dialog.

RESULT

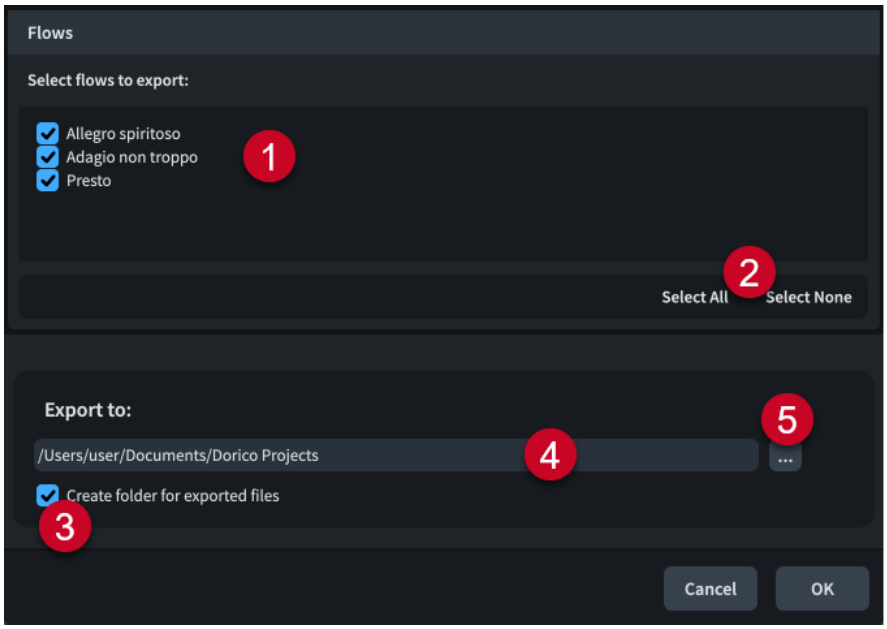
The selected flows are exported as MIDI files. They contain the MIDI of all the players assigned to the layout open in the music area.

RELATED LINKS
Switching between layouts on page 43
Opening new tabs on page 45
Assigning players to layouts on page 167
Importing tempo tracks on page 96
Exporting tempo tracks on page 98

Export MIDI dialog

The **Export MIDI** dialog allows you to save individual flows as separate MIDI files.

- You can open the **Export MIDI** dialog by choosing **File** > **Export** > **MIDI**.



The **Export MIDI** dialog comprises the following:

1 **Select flows to export**

Contains a list of all the flows in the project. Flows are included in the export when their checkbox is activated.

2 **Selection options**

Allow you to select/deselect all the flows in the project. For example, you can deselect all flows and then activate the checkbox of a single flow you want to export.

3 **Create folder for exported files**

Controls whether or not Dorico Elements generates a new folder for the selected flows within the selected export path. The automatic folder name is “Flows from” followed by the project file name; for example, “Flows from Smyth - String Quintet”.

4 **Export to field**

Displays the export path where exported files will be saved.

5 **Choose Folder**

Opens the File Explorer/macOS Finder and allows you to change the export path.

Importing tempo tracks

You can import tempo tracks into individual flows and new flows in existing projects; for example, if you are writing music for a film and changes to the footage require tempo and time signature changes. This does not overwrite the notes and notations in the flow.

PROCEDURE

1. Choose **File** > **Import** > **Tempo Track** to open the File Explorer/macOS Finder.
2. Locate and select the MIDI file whose tempo track you want to import.
3. Click **Open** to open the **Import Tempo Track** dialog.
4. In the **Import into flow** list, select the flow into which you want to import the tempo track.
5. In the **Import and replace** section, activate the checkbox for each tempo track aspect you want to include.
6. Optional: If you activated the checkbox for **Markers as**, choose one of the following options:

- **Markers**
- **System-attached Text**

7. Optional: If you chose **System Text** for **Markers as**, activate/deactivate **Show border around system-attached text markers**.
8. Click **OK** to import the tempo track and close the dialog.

RESULT

The tempo track is imported into the selected flow. If you selected **New Flow** in the **Import into flow** list, a new flow is added to the project. All selected aspects are applied to the existing music or the new flow, and notes and tempo marks are adjusted as required.

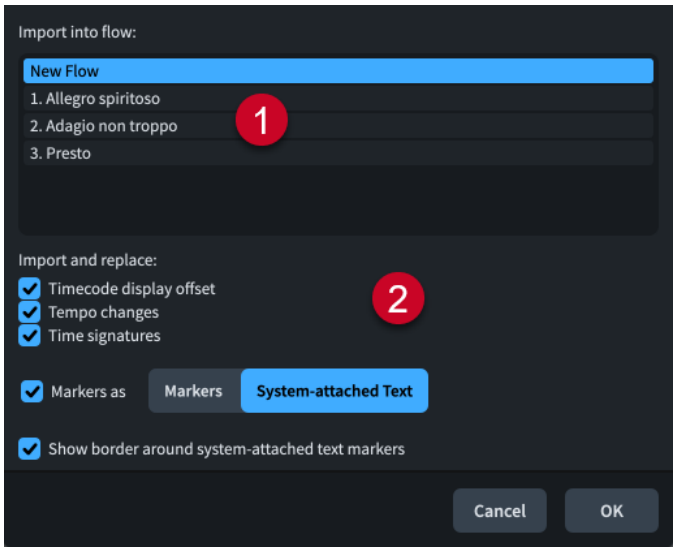
RELATED LINKS

Flows on page 162
Exporting tempo tracks on page 98
Importing MIDI on page 85
Exporting MIDI on page 95

Import Tempo Track dialog

The **Import Tempo Track** dialog allows you to import tempo tracks to individual flows within projects and to control which aspects of the tempo track you want to apply to the flow.

- You can open the **Import Tempo Track** dialog by choosing **File** > **Import** > **Tempo Track** and opening a MIDI file from the File Explorer/macOS Finder.



The **Import Tempo Track** dialog comprises the following:

1 Import into flow

Contains a list of all the flows in the project. The currently selected flow is highlighted.

NOTE

You can only import tempo tracks into a single flow at a time.

2 Import and replace

Allows you to control which tempo track aspects you want to include in your import and apply to the selected flow.

- **Timecode display offset** sets the initial timecode position at the start of the flow.
- **Tempo changes** replaces all immediate and gradual tempo changes in the flow with the tempo changes from the MIDI file.
- **Time signatures** replaces all time signatures in the flow with time signatures from the MIDI file.
- **Markers as** adds any markers from the MIDI file to the flow as either **Markers** or **System-attached Text**.

  Importing markers as **Markers** replaces any existing markers in the flow with markers from the MIDI file, while importing markers as **System-attached Text** does not replace any existing markers or system-attached text items.
- **Show border around system-attached text markers** adds borders to markers imported as system-attached text items when activated. Only available if you have chosen **System-attached Text** for **Markers as**.

Exporting tempo tracks

You can export flows as separate tempo tracks; for example, if you want to apply the tempo marks and time signatures of one flow to a different flow, which can be in the same project.

PROCEDURE

1. Choose **File** > **Export** > **Tempo Track** to open the **Export Tempo Track** dialog.
2. Activate the checkbox for each flow you want to export as a tempo track.

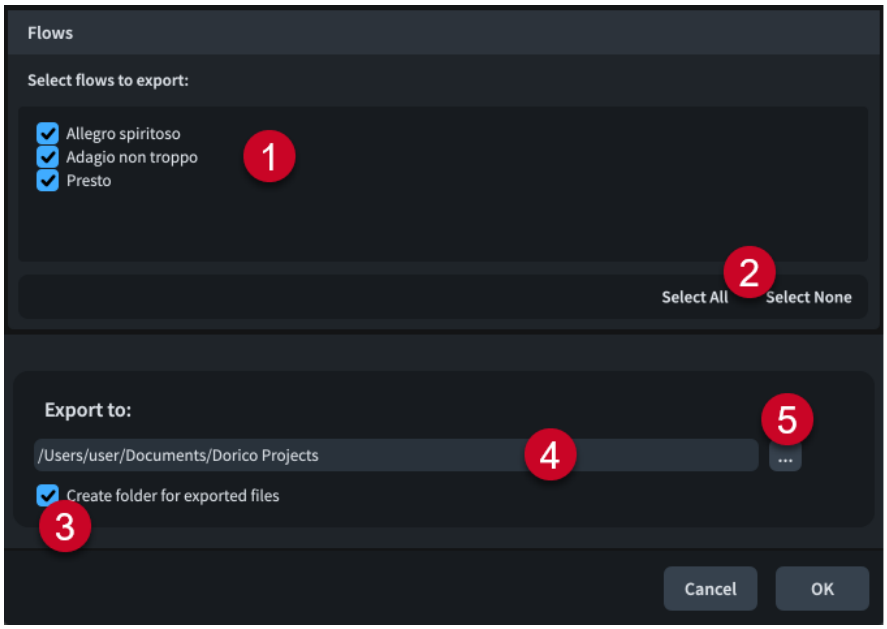
   You can also click **Select All** or **Select None** at the bottom of the list.
3. Click **Choose Folder** ... beside the **Export to** field to open the File Explorer/macOS Finder.
4. Locate and select the destination folder you want.
5. Click **Choose** to insert the new path in the **Export to** field.
6. Activate/Deactivate **Create folder for exported files**.
7. Click **OK** to export the selected flows as tempo tracks and close the dialog.

RELATED LINKS
Importing tempo tracks on page 96
Importing MIDI on page 85
Exporting MIDI on page 95

Export Tempo Track dialog

The **Export Tempo Track** dialog allows you to save individual flows as separate tempo tracks in the format of MIDI files.

- You can open the **Export Tempo Track** dialog by choosing **File** > **Export** > **Tempo Track**.



The **Export Tempo Track** dialog comprises the following:

1 **Select flows to export**

Contains a list of all the flows in the project. Flows are included in the export when their checkbox is activated.

2 **Selection options**

Allow you to select/deselect all the flows in the project. For example, you can deselect all flows and then activate the checkbox of a single flow you want to export.

3 **Create folder for exported files**

Controls whether or not Dorico Elements generates a new folder for the selected flows within the selected export path. The automatic folder name is “Flows from” followed by the project file name; for example, “Flows from Smyth - String Quintet”.

4 **Export to field**

Displays the export path where exported files will be saved.

5 **Choose Folder**

Opens the File Explorer/macOS Finder and allows you to change the export path.

Exporting audio

You can export projects as audio files in MP3, FLAC, or WAV formats, including exporting flows and players as separate files. For example, if you want to share an audio mock-up of only the soloist’s part in the second flow.

PREREQUISITE

You have opened a layout in the music area that contains the players whose audio you want to export.

PROCEDURE

1. Choose **File** > **Export** > **Audio** to open the **Export Audio** dialog.
2. Activate/Deactivate **Export each selected flow as a separate file**.
3. In the **Select flows to export** list, activate the checkbox for each flow you want to export as audio.

You can also click **Select All** or **Select None** at the bottom of the list.

4. Activate/Deactivate **Export players as separate files**.
5. Optional: If you activated **Export players as separate files**, activate the checkbox for each player you want to export in the **Select players to export** list.

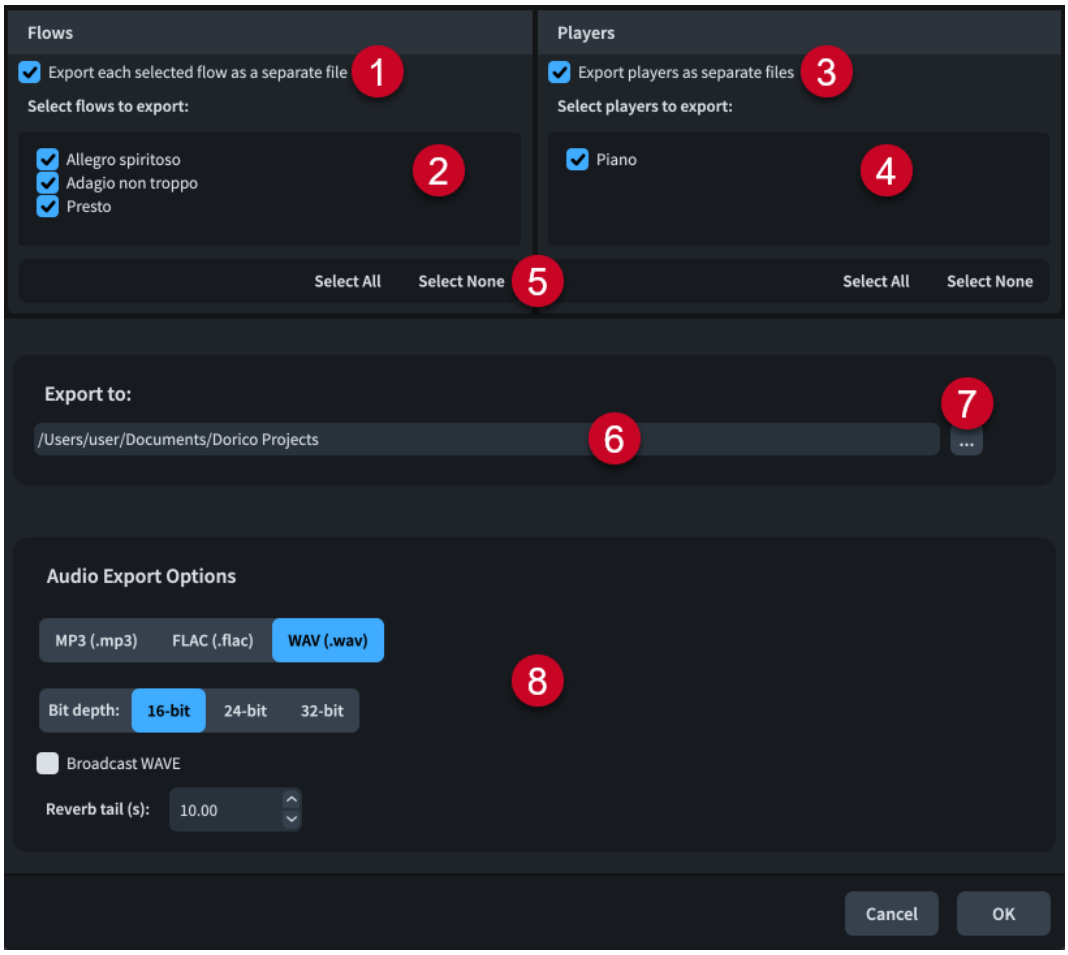
   You can also click **Select All** or **Select None** at the bottom of the list.
6. Click **Choose Folder** ... beside the **Export to** field to open the File Explorer/macOS Finder.
7. Locate and select the destination folder you want.
8. Click **Choose** to insert the new path in the **Export to** field.
9. In the **Audio Export Options** section, choose one of the following audio file formats:
   - **MP3 (.mp3)**
   - **FLAC (.flac)**
   - **WAV (.wav)**
10. Optional: If you chose **FLAC (.flac)** or **WAV (.wav)**, choose one of the following bit depths:
    - **16-bit**
    - **24-bit**
    - **32-bit** (WAV files only)
11. Optional: If you chose **WAV (.wav)**, activate/deactivate **Broadcast WAVE**.
12. Change the reverb tail duration by changing the value in the **Reverb tail (s)** value field.
13. Click **OK** to export the selected flows/players with the set audio export options and close the dialog.

RELATED LINKS
Reordering layouts on page 170
Layouts panel (Setup mode) on page 114
Assigning players to layouts on page 167

Export Audio dialog

The **Export Audio** dialog allows you to export projects as audio files in MP3, FLAC, or WAV formats, including exporting flows and players as separate files.

- You can open the **Export Audio** dialog by choosing **File** > **Export** > **Audio**.



The **Export Audio** dialog contains the following options and lists:

1 **Export each selected flow as a separate file**

Allows you to export each flow in the project as a separate audio file instead of as a single audio file.

2 **Select flows to export**

Contains a list of all the flows in the project. Flows are included in the export when their checkbox is activated.

3 **Export players as separate files**

Allows you to export each player in the project as a separate audio file instead of all players in a single audio file.

4 **Select players to export**

Contains a list of all the players in the project. Players are included in the export when their checkbox is activated. Only available if you have activated **Export players as separate files**.

5 **Selection options**

Allow you to select/deselect all the flows/players in the corresponding list. For example, you can deselect all flows and then activate the checkbox of a single flow you want to export.

6 **Export to field**

Displays the export path where exported audio files will be saved.

7 **Choose Folder**

Opens the File Explorer/macOS Finder and allows you to change the export path.

8 **Audio Export Options**

Contains the following options that allow you to control the audio file format and export:

- **File format**: Allows you to export audio as an **MP3 (.mp3)**, **FLAC (.flac)** or **WAV (.wav)** file.
- **Bit depth**: Allows you to export FLAC files as **16-bit** or **24-bit**, and WAV files as **16-bit**, **24-bit**, or **32-bit**.
- **Broadcast WAVE**: Allows you to export audio in Broadcast WAVE format, which includes start timecodes and markers.
- **Reverb tail (s)**: Allows you to change the duration of time added to the end of the exported audio to accommodate reverb effects.

Auto-save

The auto-save function stores a version of the currently active project at regular intervals, including new projects you have not explicitly saved yet. This reduces the chances of losing significant amounts of work if you accidentally close a project without saving or in the unlikely event that Dorico Elements or your computer crashes.

Dorico Elements saves auto-saved projects in an **AutoSave** folder inside the application data folder for your user account. You cannot change this location.

NOTE

- Dorico Elements might become less responsive briefly in order to perform auto-saves, particularly for larger projects.
- Dorico Elements does not generate preview images when auto-saving.

Auto-save with multiple projects open

Only the currently activated project is auto-saved at each auto-save interval if you have multiple projects open. This is because only a single project at a time can be activated for playback. If you are switching between multiple projects frequently, we recommend that you set a smaller auto-save interval.

Removal of auto-save files

All files in the **AutoSave** folder are automatically deleted when you close their corresponding projects and also when you quit Dorico Elements. You can find deleted auto-saved projects in the bin on your computer. Dorico Elements automatically adds “[AutoSave]” to the end of auto-saved project file names so you can identify them.

IMPORTANT

When Dorico Elements deletes files from the **AutoSave** folder, this includes any files in the folder, not just auto-saved Dorico projects. Therefore, it is important that you do not manually save anything in the **AutoSave** folder.

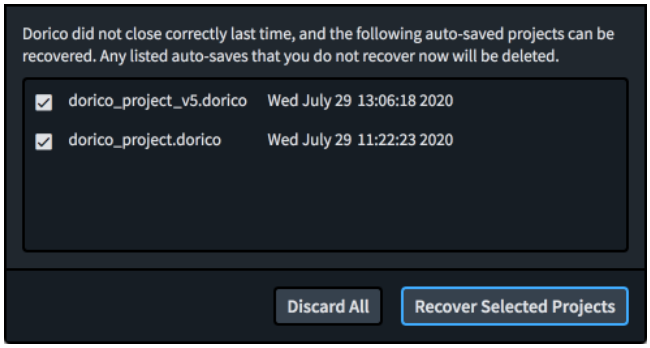
TIP

If you want to access earlier versions of projects, you can use project backups.

RELATED LINKS
Project backups on page 104
Toolbar on page 31

Recover Auto-saved Projects dialog

The **Recover Auto-saved Projects** dialog allows you to recover individual auto-saved projects; for example, if you accidentally closed a project without saving, or if Dorico Elements or your computer crashed.



The **Recover Auto-saved Projects** dialog contains the following:

Auto-saved projects list

Contains all the auto-saved projects that are available for recovery. Displays the file name of each project and the date and time of the auto-save.

You can activate the checkbox for each project you want to recover.

Discard All

Deletes all auto-saved projects in the list and moves them to the bin on your computer.

Recover Selected Projects

Recovers the selected auto-saved projects and opens them in separate project windows.

RELATED LINKS

Changing the auto-save frequency on page 104

Recovering auto-saved projects

If Dorico Elements crashes, you can recover the most recent auto-saved version of each project that was open.

PROCEDURE

1. Reopen Dorico Elements.
2. In the **Recover Auto-saved Projects** dialog that opens after the Dorico Elements splash screen, activate the checkbox for each auto-saved project you want to recover.

   NOTE

   Any auto-saved projects you do not recover are permanently deleted once you close the dialog.

3. Click **Recover Selected Projects** to recover the selected auto-saved projects and close the dialog.

RESULT

The selected auto-saved projects are recovered and opened in separate project windows.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

You can save auto-saved projects permanently in any folder location and with new file names if required.

Changing the auto-save frequency

You can change how frequently Dorico Elements auto-saves projects. By default, the auto-save interval is five minutes for the currently active project.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-,** to open **Preferences**.
2. In the category list, click **General**.
3. In the **Files** section, change the value for **Auto-save every [n] minutes**.
4. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

Disabling auto-save

You can disable auto-save completely; for example, if it is significantly affecting the performance of a large project.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-,** to open **Preferences**.
2. In the category list, click **General**.
3. In the **Files** section, deactivate **Auto-save every [n] minutes**.
4. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

Project backups

Dorico Elements stores backup versions of your projects each time you save them explicitly. By default, the previous five saves are stored as backups.

Their default location is in a folder named after the corresponding project file name in the **Backup Projects** folder in the **Dorico Projects** folder, whose default location is in the **Documents** folder for your user account.

You can find deleted project backups in the bin on your computer.

Changing the number of backups per project

You can change the number of backups that Dorico Elements stores for each project; for example, if you want to store a greater range of changes.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-,** to open **Preferences**.
2. In the category list, click **General**.
3. In the **Files** section, change the value for **Number of backups per project**.
4. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

Changing the backup location

You can change the folder that Dorico Elements uses to store project backups. By default, Dorico Elements uses the **Backup Projects** folder inside your **Dorico Projects** folder, whose default location is in the **Documents** folder for your user account.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-,** to open **Preferences**.
2. In the category list, click **General**.
3. In the **Files** section, click **Choose** beside the **Project backup folder** field to open the File Explorer/macOS Finder.
4. Locate and select the folder where you want to save project backups.
5. Click **Select Folder** (Windows)/**Open** (macOS) to insert the new path in the **Project backup folder** field.
6. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

The default folder for project backups is changed. If the folder specified does not exist, Dorico Elements creates it.

Read-only mode

Projects that contain more than your maximum number of players open in read-only mode. In read-only mode, you can view, play back, and print projects, but you cannot edit or save them.

- Read-only projects are indicated by the text `[Read-only]` after their file name in the project window.

RELATED LINKS

Opening projects/files on page 72
Playing back music on page 503
Printing layouts on page 538

Setup mode

Setup mode allows you to set up the fundamental elements of the project: instruments and the players that hold them, flows, layouts, and videos. You can also determine how they interact with each other; for example, by changing the players assigned to layouts.

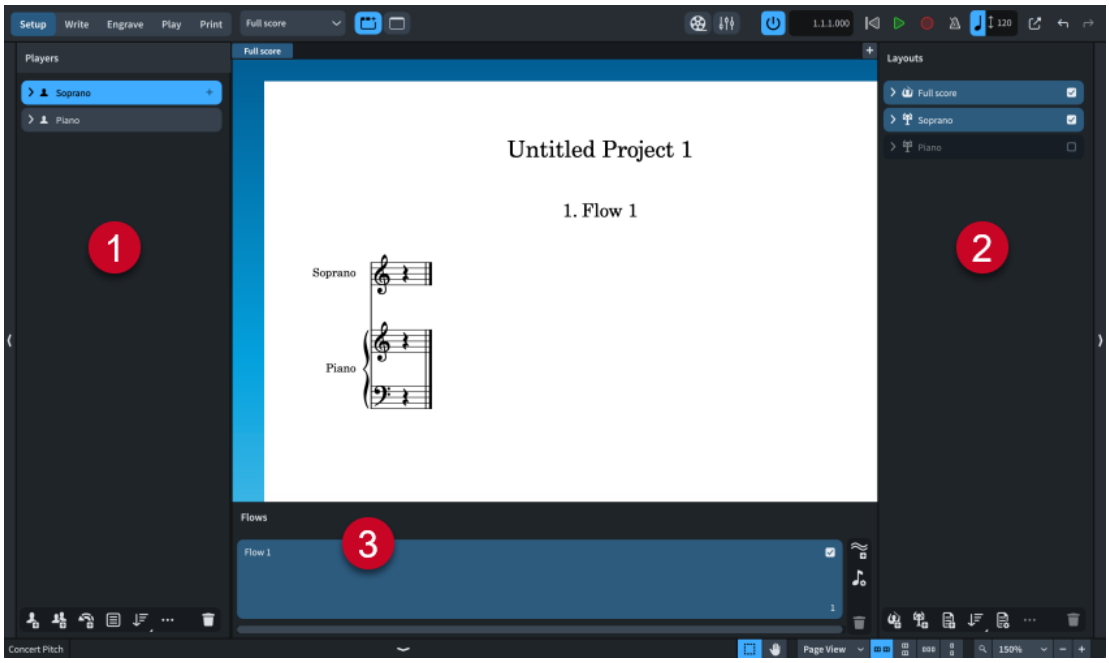
You can view music in the music area and switch between viewing other tabs and layouts, but you cannot select or interact with anything in the music area in Setup mode.

Project window in Setup mode

The project window in Setup mode contains panels with all the tools and functions that allow you to add players and instruments as well as to create layouts and flows for your project.

You can switch to Setup mode in any of the following ways:

- Press **Ctrl/Cmd-1**.
- In the toolbar, click **Setup**.
- Choose **Window** > **Setup**.



The following panels are available in Setup mode:

1 Players

Lists the players, instruments, and groups in your project. By default, players are assigned to all flows, all full score layouts, and their own part layout.

2 Layouts

Lists the layouts in your project. A single full score layout and a part layout for each player are created automatically, but you can create and delete layouts as required. By default, layouts contain all flows and full score layouts contain all players.

3 Flows

Shows the flows in your project, ordered left to right. By default, flows contain all players and are assigned to all layouts.

The three panels work together to allow you to control how and where the players, layouts, and flows in your project are used. When you select an item in one of the panels, that panel and the selected item are highlighted in a different color and checkboxes appear in cards in the other panels. You can activate/deactivate these checkboxes independently to change how material is distributed across players, layouts, and flows.

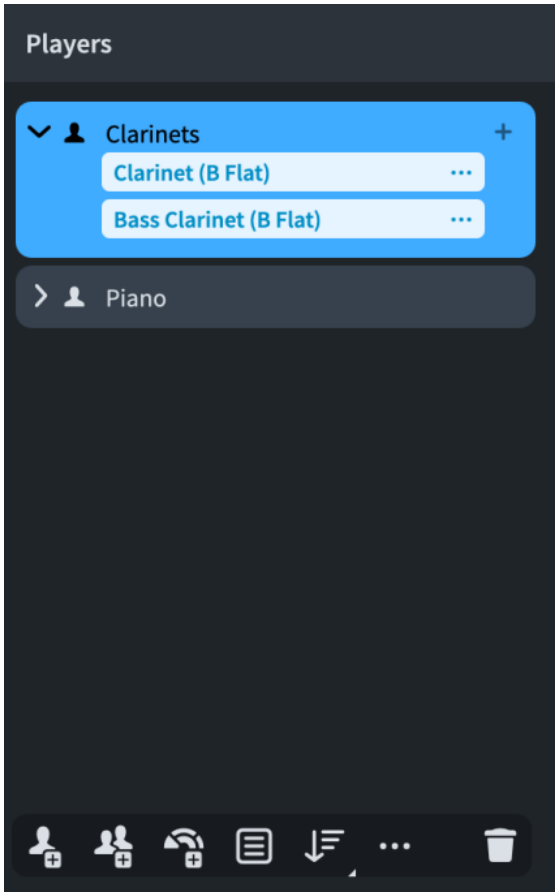
RELATED LINKS
Players, layouts, and flows on page 118
Project window on page 30
Layouts panel (Setup mode) on page 114
Flows panel on page 117
Starting new projects on page 71

Players panel

The **Players** panel contains all the players and groups in the project, shown in a list. It is located on the left of the window in Setup mode.

You can hide/show the **Players** panel in Setup mode in any of the following ways:

- Press **Ctrl/Cmd-7**.
- Click the disclosure arrow on the left edge of the main window.
- Choose **Window** > **Show Left Zone**.



The order in which players are listed in the Players panel sets the default player order used in all layouts. You can also set a custom player order in each layout independently.

In the **Players** panel, each player is shown as a card that contains the instruments held by that player. Each player card shows the following:

1 **Disclosure arrow**

Expands/Collapses the player card.

2 **Player type**

Shows the type of player from the following options:

- Single player
- Section player

3 **Player name**

Shows the name of the player. By default, player names contain the names of all instruments held by the player. You can also rename players manually.

4 **Add instruments icon**

Opens the instrument picker from which you can select an instrument for the player.

5 **Instrument labels**

Each instrument assigned to a player has its own instrument label. The instrument menu ··· in each instrument label opens a menu with further options that allow you to, for example, change the instrument names or move the instrument to another player.

Instrument labels appear blue. Kit instrument labels appear green.

The action bar at the bottom of the panel contains the following options:

Add Single Player

Adds a single player to your project. Dorico Elements also automatically adds a part layout for the player in the **Layouts** panel.

Add Section Player

Adds a section player to your project. Dorico Elements also automatically adds a part layout for the player in the **Layouts** panel.

Add Ensemble

Adds multiple players to your project. Dorico Elements also automatically adds part layouts for each player in the **Layouts** panel.

Add Group

Adds a player group to your project. If no players were selected, an empty player group is added. If existing players were selected, they are grouped together.

Sort Players

Sorts all players in the **Players** panel according to the current player sorting setting.

You can click and hold or right-click **Sort Players** to change the setting to one of the following options:

- **None**: New players are added at the bottom of the players list, regardless of their instrument.
- **Orchestral**: New players are sorted according to the accepted orchestral order convention. For example, woodwinds positioned above brass and strings.
- **Band**: New players are sorted according to the accepted wind/concert band convention. For example, strings positioned between brass and percussion.

Player Settings

Allows you to access settings and controls for the selected player; for example, to rename them or show chord symbols above their staves.

You can also access player settings by right-clicking players.

Delete Player

Deletes selected players or groups from the project. When you delete a player, a warning message appears that allows you to delete only the player but leave their part layouts in the project, delete both the player and their part layouts, or cancel.

RELATED LINKS
Players on page 120
Ensembles on page 125
Layouts panel (Setup mode) on page 114
Layout Options dialog on page 677
Changing the default player order on page 123
Setting custom player orders on page 123
Renaming players on page 173
Player groups on page 158

Instrument picker

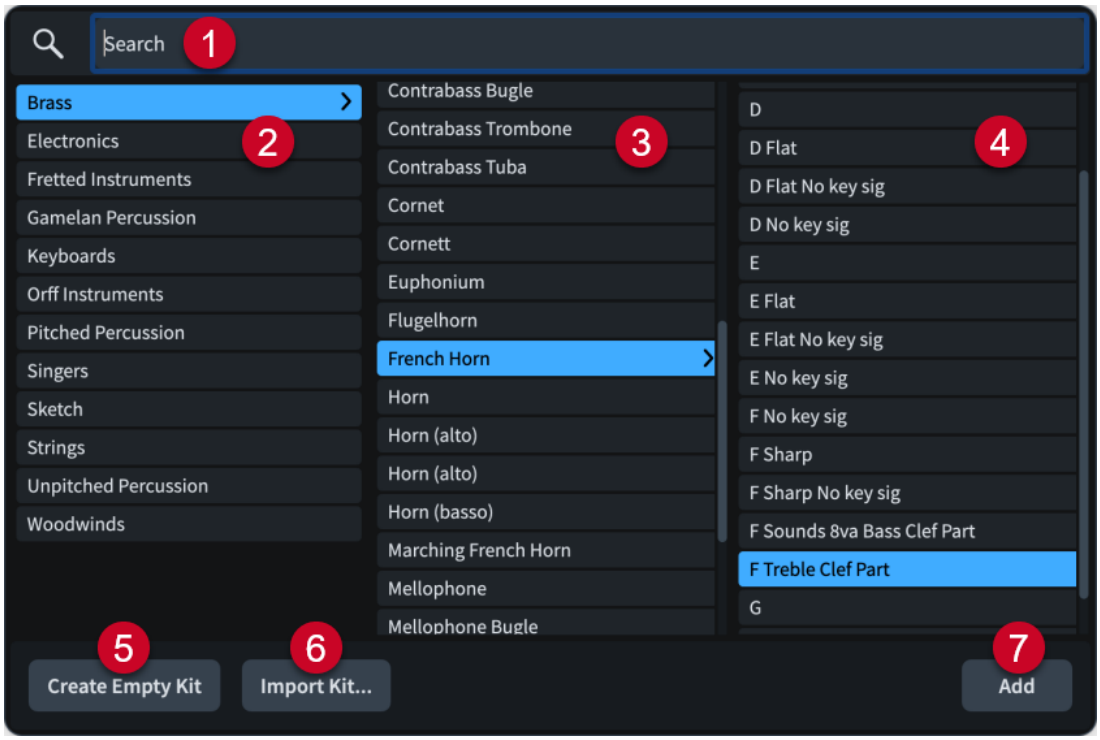
The instrument picker allows you to find and add instruments to your project. It contains multiple versions of some instruments that have specific formatting and tuning requirements, such as French Horn, which has a version whose part layouts are always in treble clef.

The instrument picker uses the application language.

You can open the instrument picker in Setup mode in any of the following ways:

- Add a new player.
- In the **Players** panel, click **Add Instrument to Player** in player cards.

- In the **Players** panel, select a player and press **Shift-I**.
- In the **Players** panel, select a player, then click **Player Settings** ··· in the action bar and choose **Add Instrument to Player**. You can also right-click players and choose this option from the context menu.



The instrument picker contains the following sections and options:

1 **Search field**

Allows you to enter the instrument you are searching for directly. You can enter only part of the instrument name, such as **cello** for Violoncello.

2 **Instrument family column**

Contains instrument families to help you focus your search.

3 **Instrument column**

Contains the instruments available in the selected instrument family.

4 **Instrument type column**

Contains options for multiple possible transpositions, tunings, key signature options, or different behavior in part layouts for the selected instrument. This column is not populated for instruments that do not have further options.

5 **Create Empty Kit**

Adds an empty percussion kit to the player.

6 **Import Kit**

Imports an existing percussion kit previously exported as a library file.

7 **Add**

Adds the selected instrument to the project.

In addition to entering the instrument you want directly into the **Search** field, you can click options in the instrument picker to select them, and you can also select other items in the same column by pressing **Up Arrow** / **Down Arrow**.

You can cycle forwards through the instrument picker by pressing **Tab**, which navigates in the following order: **Search field**, **Instrument**, **Instrument type**, **Instrument family**. You can also cycle backwards by pressing **Shift-Tab**, which navigates in the opposite direction.

An enclosure line shows which instrument family or instrument is selected when using the keyboard to navigate.

RELATED LINKS
Players on page 120
Instruments on page 127
Transposing instruments on page 133
Fretted instrument tuning on page 138
Capos on page 142
Adding players on page 121
Adding instruments to players on page 133
Changing instruments on page 136
Adding ensembles on page 126
Adding empty percussion kits to players on page 134
Importing percussion kits on page 1290
Changing the application language on page 56

Ensemble picker

The ensemble picker allows you to find and add ensembles containing multiple players to your project. You can select existing ensembles and build new ones.

The ensemble picker uses the application language.

You can open the ensemble picker in Setup mode in any of the following ways:

- Press **Shift-E**.
- In the **Players** panel, click **Add Ensemble** .
- In empty projects, click **Add Ensemble** in the project start area.

The ensemble picker contains **Build** and **Choose** tabs. You can switch between them using the options in the top left of the ensemble picker.

Build tab

The **Build** tab contains the following:

1 **Search field**

Allows you to specify the instruments you want to include in the ensemble in the following ways:

- Enter the name of an existing ensemble, such as **String Section**.
- Enter the names or abbreviations of instruments, with each name/abbreviation separated by a comma. You can prefix instruments with a number followed by a space. For example, enter **2 vln, 3 cl,bsn,tuba,marim** to build an ensemble containing two violins, three clarinets, a bassoon, a tuba, and a marimba.
- Enter the corresponding orchestral shorthand, with or without separators. For example, enter **2picc.2.2.2 / 4.3.3.1** to add two flutes, one piccolo, two oboes, two clarinets, and two bassoons followed by four horns, three trumpets, three trombones, and one tuba.

  To specify only brass instruments, prefix orchestral shorthand entries with **br**, such as **br4331**.

  NOTE

  You can only use single digit numbers for each instrument type.

2 **Player list**

Contains the instruments currently in the ensemble based on your entries in the **Search** field.

By default, instruments are held by single players. You can change the player type by double-clicking players in the list. Icons show the current player type from the following options:

- Single player
- Section player

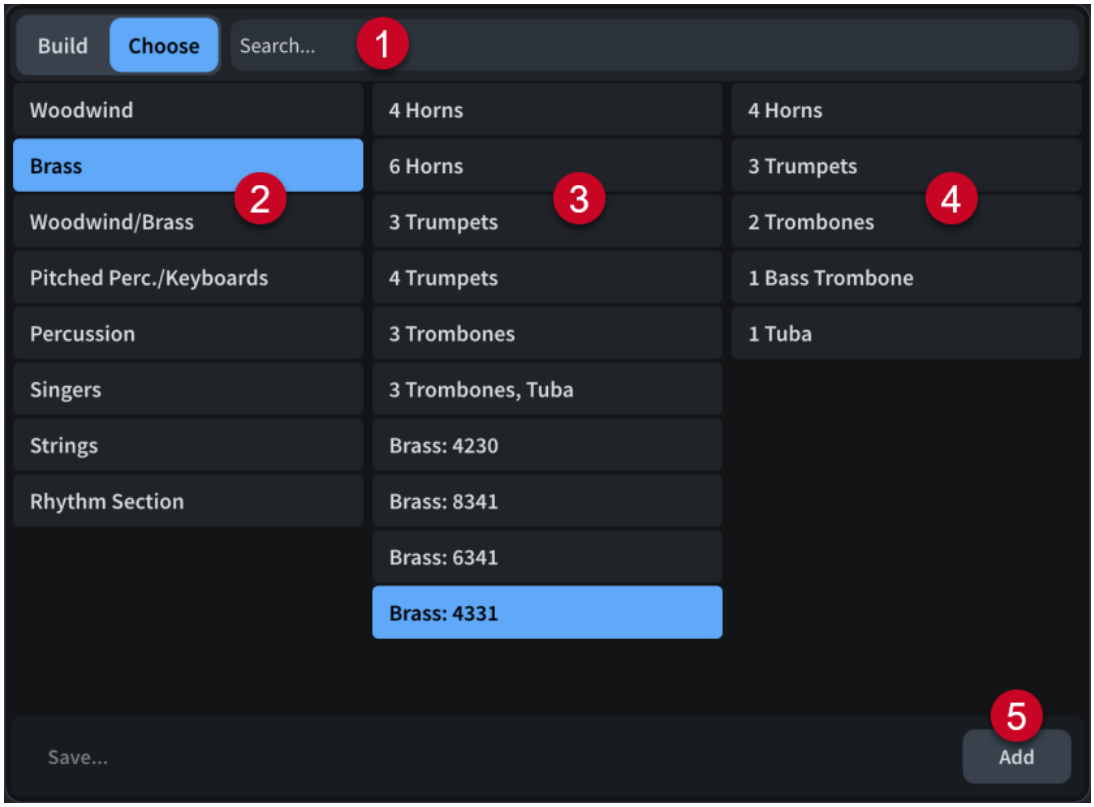
3 **Save**

Opens the **Save Custom Ensemble** dialog, which allows you to name and save your ensemble for reuse in future projects.

4 **Add**

Adds the players in the custom ensemble to the project.

Choose tab



The **Choose** tab contains the following:

1 **Search field**

Allows you to enter the ensemble you are searching for directly.

2 **Ensemble category column**

Contains ensemble categories to help you focus your ensemble search.

3 **Ensemble column**

Contains the ensembles available in the selected instrument family.

4 **Ensemble contents column**

Displays the instruments included in the selected ensemble.

5 **Add**

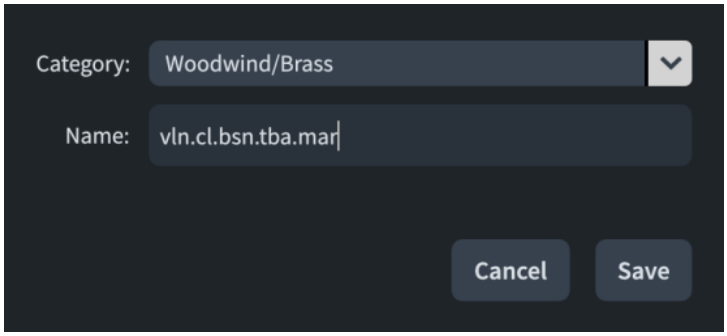
Adds the players in the selected ensemble to the project.

RELATED LINKS
Ensembles on page 125
Adding ensembles on page 126
Players on page 120
Adding players on page 121
Project templates on page 78
Changing the application language on page 56

Save Custom Ensemble dialog

The **Save Custom Ensemble** dialog allows you to name and save custom ensembles for reuse in future projects.

- You can open the **Save Custom Ensemble** dialog in Setup mode from inside the ensemble picker by building a custom ensemble and clicking **Save**.



The **Save Custom Ensemble** dialog contains the following options:

Category

Allows you to select an ensemble category for the custom ensemble.

Name

Allows you to enter a name for the custom ensemble.

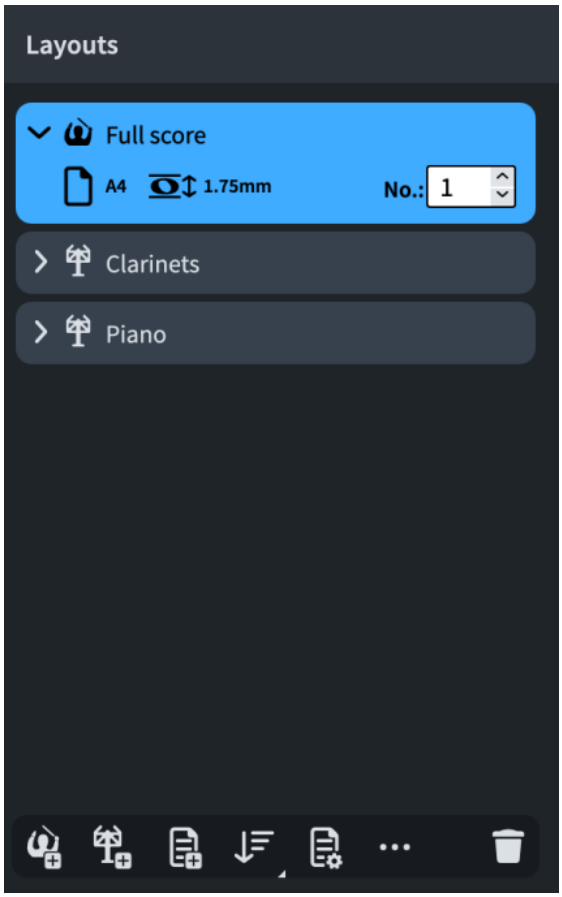
RELATED LINKS
Adding ensembles on page 126
Building and saving custom ensembles on page 127

Layouts panel (Setup mode)

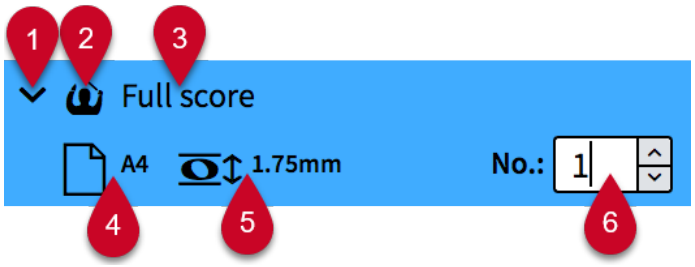
The **Layouts** panel contains all the layouts in the project, shown in a list. In Setup mode, it is located on the right of the window.

You can hide/show the **Layouts** panel in Setup mode in any of the following ways:

- Press **Ctrl/Cmd-9**.
- Click the disclosure arrow on the right edge of the main window.
- Choose **Window** > **Show Right Zone**.



In the **Layouts** panel, each layout is shown as a card. Each layout card shows the following:



1 **Disclosure arrow**

Expands/Collapses the layout card.

2 **Layout type**

Shows the type of layout from the following options:

- Full score layout
- Instrumental part layout
- Custom score layout

3 **Layout name**

Shows the name of the layout. Dorico Elements automatically adds default names depending on the name of the instrument that is assigned to a player and on the type of layout that is added. For example, if you assign a flute to a player, the instrumental part layout automatically gets the same name. If you add an empty instrumental part layout, the layout name shows **Empty part** and an incremental number if you add multiple empty part layouts.

4 **Page size and orientation**

Shows the size and orientation of the layout as set on the **Page Setup** page in **Layout Options**.

5 **Space size**

Shows the space size between two staff lines in points, as set on the **Page Setup** page in **Layout Options**. This indicates the size of staves in the layout.

6 **Layout number**

Allows you to set a unique number for the layout that can be used as part of its file name when exported as a graphic. This can be useful to ensure exported part layout files are organized in their orchestral order, as this is usually different to their alphabetical order.

There is a different layout number sequence for each layout type. For example, full score layouts are numbered independently of part layouts.

The action bar at the bottom of the panel contains the following options:

Add Full Score Layout

Adds a full score layout to your project. By default, every player and flow is included in the layout.

Add Instrumental Part Layout

Adds an empty instrumental part layout to your project. You can then assign one or multiple players to the layout. By default, part layouts contain all flows that originated in the project.

Add Custom Score Layout

Adds an empty custom score layout to your project. You can then assign players and flows to the layout.

Sort Layouts

Sorts all layouts in the **Layouts** panel according to their type in the following order: full score layouts, instrumental part layouts, custom score layouts.

You can click and hold or right-click **Sort Layouts** to change the setting to one of the following options:

- **Layout Number**: Sorts layouts within each category according to their current layout number.
- **Instrument Score Order**: Sorts layouts within each category according to the corresponding player order in the **Players** panel.

Layout Options

Opens the **Layout Options** dialog for the selected layouts.

Layout Settings

Allows you to access settings and controls for the selected layout; for example, to rename the layout.

You can also access layout settings by right-clicking layouts.

Delete Layout

Deletes selected layouts from the project.

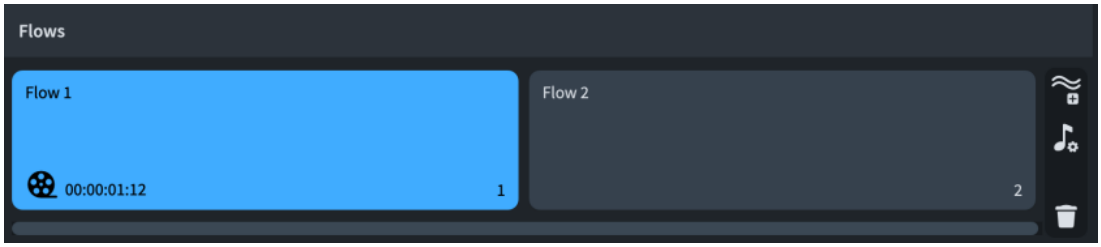
RELATED LINKS
Project window in Setup mode on page 106
Layouts on page 165
Layout Options dialog on page 677
Layouts panel (Print mode) on page 534
File import and export on page 78
Assigning players to layouts on page 167
Assigning flows to layouts on page 168

Flows panel

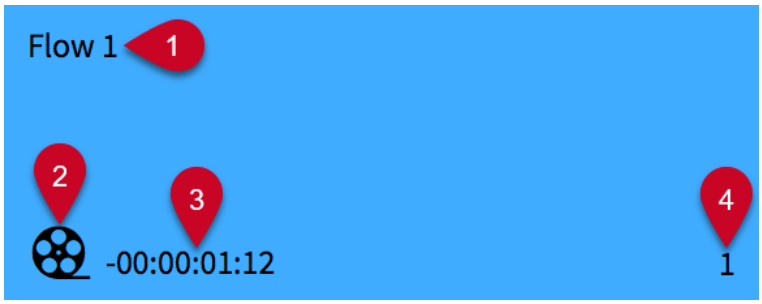
The **Flows** panel contains all the flows in the project, shown in a horizontal list. It is located at the bottom of the window in Setup mode.

You can hide/show the **Flows** panel in Setup mode in any of the following ways:

- Press **Ctrl/Cmd-8**.
- Click the disclosure arrow at the bottom of the main window.
- Choose **Window** > **Show Lower Zone**.



In the **Flows** panel, each flow is shown as a card. Each flow card shows the following:



1 **Flow name**

Shows the name of the flow. If you create multiple flows without renaming them, each flow name shows a number that increments with each new flow that you create.

2 **Film reel icon**

Indicates the flow has an attached video.

3 **Flow timecode**

Shows the start timecode for the flow.

4 **Flow number**

Shows the number of the flow. The number increments with each new flow that you create or import. The number also indicates the position of the flow in a layout.

The **Flows** panel contains the following options:

Add Flow

Adds a new flow to your project. By default, every new flow is included in all layouts, and every player is added to the new flow.

Notation Options

Opens the **Notation Options** dialog that provides multiple options that allow you to make changes that affect the way music is notated for each flow.

Delete Flow

Deletes the selected flows from the project.

RELATED LINKS
Project window in Setup mode on page 106
Flows on page 162
Videos on page 180
Notation Options dialog on page 679

Players, layouts, and flows

In Dorico Elements, players, layouts, and flows are all connected to each other. Because they exist in the project rather than in a single score, you can, for example, have players and flows saved in the project without showing them in the full score.

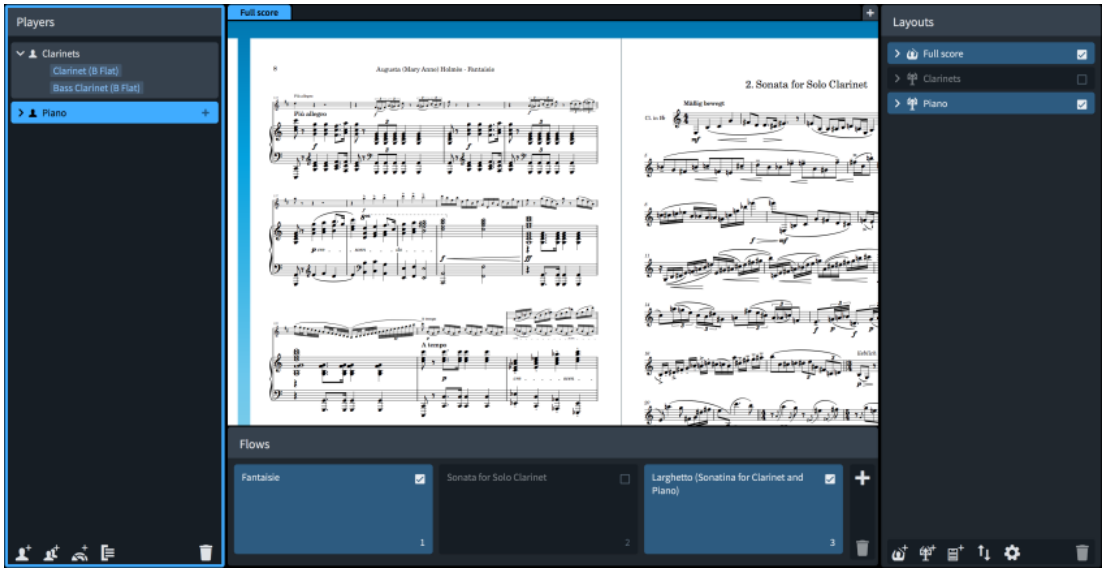
- Players can be assigned to any combination of layouts and flows. For example, you can assign a single player to both the full score layout and their own part layout, and remove them from flows in which they do not play. By default, players are assigned to all flows that originated in the project, all full score layouts, and their own part layout.
- Layouts can contain any combination of players and flows. For example, you can assign all the singers to a single part layout, then remove the flows in which they do not sing from the layout. By default, layouts contain all flows and full score layouts contain all players.
- Flows can contain any combination of players and be assigned to/removed from layouts. By default, flows contain all players and are assigned to all layouts.

NOTE

- If you remove a player from a flow, any notes you have already input for that player in that flow are deleted.
- Removing a flow from a layout automatically removes that layout from the flow, and vice versa. The same is true for players and layouts, and players and flows.

When you select a card in one of the panels in Setup mode, each card in the other panels shows a checkbox. Connected cards appear highlighted and have activated checkboxes, while unconnected cards are not highlighted and have deactivated checkboxes. For example, if you select a player card in the **Players** panel, all the flows to which the player is assigned are

highlighted and activated in the **Flows** panel, and all layouts to which the player is assigned are highlighted and activated in the **Layouts** panel.



A piano player selected in the **Players** panel with connected flows and layouts highlighted in the **Flows** and **Layouts** panels

EXAMPLE

A work for string quartet and choir is divided into three movements. The string quartet is tacet for the third movement, which the choir sings a cappella.

The Dorico project contains three flows (one for each movement), four single players for the string quartet, four section players for the choir, and another single player for a piano reduction. It uses the following layouts to produce the required performance materials:

- Four instrumental part layouts, one for each string quartet player. Each part layout contains all three flows but because the string players are not assigned to the third flow, automatic tacets are shown for it.
- One full score layout containing all three flows, the string quartet players, and the choir players but omitting the piano reduction player.
- One custom score layout for the vocal score. It contains all three flows, the choir players, and the piano reduction player.

RELATED LINKS

Project window in Setup mode on page 106
Project Info dialog on page 75
Flows on page 162
Layouts on page 165
Assigning flows to layouts on page 168
Assigning players to layouts on page 167
Assigning players to flows on page 164
File import and export on page 78
Tacets on page 592
Flow headings on page 603
Condensing on page 595

Players

In Dorico Elements, a player can represent an individual musician or multiple musicians in the same section. Players hold instruments, so you must add at least one player to your project before you can add instruments.

In Dorico Elements, there are the following types of players:

Single player

Represents an individual person who can play one or more instruments. For example, a clarinettist who doubles on alto saxophone or a percussionist who plays bass drum, clash cymbals, and triangle.

Section player

Represents multiple people who all play the same instrument. For example, a violin section player might represent all eight desks of the Violin I section in an orchestra, or a soprano section player might represent the whole soprano section in a mixed voice choir.

NOTE

Section players can only hold one instrument.

You can designate both single and section players as soloists, such as in a concerto for solo violin and orchestra.

When you add a player in Dorico Elements, the following happens automatically:

- A part layout is created and the new player is assigned to it.
- The player is added to any full score layouts that already exist. If no full score layouts exist, a new full score layout is created.
- The player is assigned to all existing flows that originated in the project. It is not added to any flows that you imported into the project.

NOTE

In Dorico Elements, the maximum number of players you can have in a single project is 24. If you open a project that contains more than 24 players, it opens in read-only mode.

RELATED LINKS
Read-only mode on page 105
Players, layouts, and flows on page 118
Flows on page 162
Layouts on page 165
Instruments on page 127
Adding players on page 121
Adding ensembles on page 126
Designating players as soloists on page 124
Changing the default player order on page 123
Setting custom player orders on page 123
Player, layout, and instrument names on page 172
Staff labels on page 1180
Showing instrument/player names in staff labels on page 1184
Brackets according to ensemble type on page 778
Instrument numbering on page 129
Instrument changes on page 130

Adding players

You can add both single and section players to your project. Single players can hold multiple instruments, while section players can only hold one instrument.

NOTE

In Dorico Elements, the maximum number of players you can have in a single project is 24.

PROCEDURE

1. In Setup mode, add an empty-handed player and open the instrument picker in any of the following ways:
   - To add a single player, press **Shift-P**.
   - To add a section player, press **Shift-Alt/Opt-P**.
   - In the **Players** panel, click **Add Single Player**.
   - In the **Players** panel, click **Add Section Player**.
   - In an empty project, click **Add Single Player** in the project start area.
   - In an empty project, click **Add Section Player** in the project start area.

   TIP

   You can also open the instrument picker by selecting an existing empty-handed or single player in the **Players** panel and pressing **Shift-I**.
2. Select the instrument you want in the instrument picker.
3. Press **Return** to add the selected instrument.

RESULT

The single/section player is added and is automatically named after the selected instrument. The player's order in the **Players** panel depends on your current player sorting setting.

The player is assigned to its own new part layout, all full score layouts, and all flows that originated in the project.

Dorico Elements automatically loads sounds for the instrument according to the current playback template.

NOTE

- Players are not automatically added to flows that you imported into the project.
- If you want to add multiple instruments to your project at the same time, you can add ensembles or use a project template.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

- If you added a single player and you want them to hold multiple instruments, you can add other instruments to the single player.
- You can designate the player as a soloist.
- You can change the default order of players in all layouts and set custom player orders in each layout independently.

RELATED LINKS

Players panel on page 107

Instrument picker on page 109
Players, layouts, and flows on page 118
Player, layout, and instrument names on page 172
Staff labels on page 1180
Showing instrument/player names in staff labels on page 1184
Instrument numbering on page 129
Designating players as soloists on page 124
Changing the default player order on page 123
Adding instruments to players on page 133
Adding ensembles on page 126
Changing the language for instrument names on page 57
Renaming players on page 173
Changing instrument names on page 175
Layouts on page 165
Project start area on page 35
Project templates on page 78
Playback templates on page 518
File import and export on page 78

Duplicating players

You can duplicate existing players. This adds another player of the same type holding the same instruments as the original.

NOTE

In Dorico Elements, the maximum number of players you can have in a single project is 24.

PROCEDURE

1. In Setup mode, in the **Players** panel, select the player you want to duplicate.
2. In the action bar, click **Player Settings** ··· and choose **Duplicate Player**.

RESULT

A new player is added, with the same instruments as the original player and is named after those instruments. By default, the player appears below the original player in the **Players** panel. The original and new players are automatically numbered to ensure their names are unique.

The new player is assigned to its own new part layout, all full score layouts, and all flows that originated in the project.

NOTE

- Any existing music belonging to the original player is not duplicated.
- You can also duplicate players by right-clicking them in the **Players** panel and choosing **Duplicate Player** from the context menu.

RELATED LINKS

Players panel on page 107
Renaming players on page 173
Players, layouts, and flows on page 118
Arranging tools on page 431
Copying and pasting notes/items on page 433
Setting custom player orders on page 123

Duplicating flows on page 163

Changing the default player order

You can change the default order in which players' staves appear in all layouts; for example, if your project requires an unconventional instrument order.

PROCEDURE

1. In Setup mode, in the **Players** panel, select the players whose default position you want to change.
2. Click and drag the selected players upwards/downwards.

   An insertion line indicates where the players will be positioned.

RESULT

The default player order is changed. This does not change the player order in layouts with custom player orders.

TIP

You can also automatically sort players according to their type by clicking **Sort Players** in the **Players** panel.

You can click and hold or right-click **Sort Players** to change the setting to one of the following options:

- **None**
- **Orchestral**
- **Band**

We recommend changing the setting to **None** when using an unconventional default player order.

RELATED LINKS

Players panel on page 107
Adding players on page 121

Setting custom player orders

You can change the order in which players' staves appear in each layout independently; for example, if you want to have a different player order in a custom score layout than the default player order for your other layouts, as set by the order of players in the **Players** panel.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-L** to open **Layout Options**.
2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layout in which you want to set a custom player order.

   NOTE

   You can only set custom player orders in one layout at a time. By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog.
3. In the category list, click **Players**.
4. In the **Players** section, activate **Uses custom player order**.

5. In the list, select a player whose position you want to change.
6. Change its position relative to other players in one of the following ways:
   - Click **Move up**.
   - Click **Move down**.
7. Optional: Repeat steps 5 to 6 for other players in the selected layout whose position you want to change.
8. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

The player order in the selected layout is changed. This overrides the default player order. Any subsequent changes you make to the default player order in the **Players** panel are not reflected in layouts with custom player orders.

RELATED LINKS

Layouts on page 165
Layout Options dialog on page 677

Designating players as soloists

You can designate both single and section players as soloists, such as in a concerto for solo violin and orchestra. You can have multiple soloists in a single project.

PREREQUISITE

You have added the players you want to designate as soloists.

PROCEDURE

1. In Setup mode, in the **Players** panel, select the player you want to designate as a soloist.
2. In the action bar, click **Player Settings** ··· and choose **Soloist**.

RESULT

The selected player is designated as a soloist.

Instruments held by players designated as soloists are not automatically numbered. Provided they have default instrument names, they are automatically given the prefix “Solo” as appropriate for the current instrument language setting, which appears in staff labels.

Soloists are automatically positioned in the conventional score position; that is, above the strings, and are bracketed separately from other players.

Choosing **Soloist** again, so that no tick appears beside it in the menu, returns soloists to being a normal player of their type.

TIP

You can also designate players as soloists by right-clicking them in the **Players** panel and choosing **Soloist** from the context menu.

RELATED LINKS

Players panel on page 107
Adding players on page 121
Instrument numbering on page 129
Brackets according to ensemble type on page 778

Changing the default player order on page 123
Changing the language for instrument names on page 57
Staff labels on page 1180
Staff label contents on page 1184

Deleting players

You can delete players from your project, which also deletes all instruments held by those players.

IMPORTANT

Deleting instruments permanently deletes any music that you have input on their staves.

PROCEDURE

1. In Setup mode, in the **Players** panel, select the players that you want to delete.
2. Delete the selected players in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Backspace or Delete**.
   - In the **Players** panel, click **Delete Player**.
3. Choose one of the following options in the warning message that appears:
   - **Delete Player Only**: Deletes the player and the music that you created for the instruments belonging to that player.
   - **Delete Player and Part Layouts**: Deletes the player, the music, and all part layouts to which the player is assigned.

     NOTE

     The part layout cannot be deleted if it also contains other players.

RELATED LINKS
Players panel on page 107
Deleting instruments on page 137
Deleting layouts on page 171
Restoring default layouts on page 171

Ensembles

Ensembles are sets of multiple players that are commonly used together, such as a double woodwind section that contains two flutes, two oboes, two clarinets, and two bassoons. Dorico Elements provides predefined ensembles, but you can also build custom ensembles.

Ensembles can contain single and/or section players, depending on the ensemble. For example, woodwind ensembles contain single players whereas string ensembles contain section players.

You can use ensembles to add multiple players to your project simultaneously and build up the instrumentation quickly.

NOTE

In Dorico Elements, the maximum number of players you can have in a single project is 24. If you open a project that contains more than 24 players, it opens in read-only mode.

RELATED LINKS
Players on page 120
Ensemble picker on page 111
Save Custom Ensemble dialog on page 114
Project templates on page 78

Adding ensembles

You can add multiple players simultaneously by adding ensembles, such as a complete string section or four-part choir. You can select existing ensembles and build new ones.

NOTE

In Dorico Elements, the maximum number of players you can have in a single project is 24. Only ensembles containing 24 or fewer players are available.

PROCEDURE

1. In Setup mode, open the ensemble picker in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Shift-E**.
   - In the **Players** panel, click **Add Ensemble**.
   - In an empty project, click **Add Ensemble** in the project start area.
2. Select or build the ensemble you want in the ensemble picker.
3. Optional: If you built a new ensemble that you want to reuse in future projects, click **Save** to open the **Save Custom Ensemble** dialog and save your ensemble.
4. Click **Add**.

RESULT

The players in the selected ensemble are added to the **Players** panel, as either single or section players depending on the ensemble type. They are assigned to all flows that originated in the project.

TIP

You can use project templates to start projects with multiple players.

RELATED LINKS
Players panel on page 107
Ensemble picker on page 111
Save Custom Ensemble dialog on page 114
Changing the language for instrument names on page 57
Renaming players on page 173
Project start area on page 35
Starting new projects on page 71
Project templates on page 78
Opening projects/files on page 72
Players, layouts, and flows on page 118
File import and export on page 78
Key Commands page in the Preferences dialog on page 59

Building and saving custom ensembles

You can build custom ensembles in the ensemble picker and save them for reuse in future projects; for example, if you frequently write music for an ensemble with unusual instrumentation.

PROCEDURE

1. In Setup mode, open the ensemble picker in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Shift-E**.
   - In the **Players** panel, click **Add Ensemble**.
   - In an empty project, click **Add Ensemble** in the project start area.
2. Click **Build** to switch to the **Build** tab.
3. Enter the instruments you want into the **Search** field.

   For example, enter **2 vln, 3 cl,bsn,tuba,marim** to build an ensemble containing two violins, three clarinets, a bassoon, a tuba, and a marimba.

   TIP

   You can also use orchestral shorthand to specify instruments.
4. Optional: To confirm the instruments identified by your current entry and clear the **Search** field, press **Tab**.
5. Optional: To change the player type, double-click players in the list.

   The icons for each player show whether they are single players or section players.
6. Click **Save** to open the **Save Custom Ensemble** dialog.
7. Select an ensemble category from the **Category** menu.
8. Enter a name for your ensemble in the **Name** field.
9. Click **Save** to save your ensemble and close the **Save Custom Ensemble** dialog.
10. Optional: Click **Add** to add the ensemble to the project and close the ensemble picker.

RESULT

Your ensemble is saved, allowing you to add it to future projects. If you clicked **Add** in the ensemble picker, the players in the ensemble are added to the project.

RELATED LINKS

Ensemble picker on page 111
Save Custom Ensemble dialog on page 114
Players on page 120
Adding players on page 121

Instruments

In Dorico Elements, an instrument is an individual musical instrument, such as a piano, a flute, or a violin. Human voices, such as soprano or tenor, are also considered instruments.

In Dorico Elements, instruments are held by players, just as real instruments are held by human players. Section players can only hold one instrument but single players can hold multiple instruments, which allows you to handle instrument changes easily, such as when an oboist doubling the cor anglais switches from one instrument to the other.

This means that before you can add instruments to a project, you must first add players or ensembles, which may in turn also be assigned to groups if needed. If you add ensembles, the appropriate instruments for the ensemble are automatically added to the players.

Each instrument automatically gets its own staff, but when instrument changes are allowed, the music for multiple instruments held by the same single player can appear on the same staff as long as no notes overlap. By default, Dorico Elements allows instrument changes in all layouts and automatically shows instrument change labels. This means that only the top instrument held by players is shown automatically in the music area. You can see staves for all instruments in galley view, and you can allow/disallow instrument changes in each layout independently. You can also hide/show empty staves in each layout independently.

Instruments in Dorico Elements do not have limited ranges; it is possible to notate any pitch in any register on every instrument. However, in the piano roll editor, only pitches that fall in the MIDI note range 0-127 can be represented. Similarly, if you input a pitch beyond the range of samples in the assigned VST instrument, the pitch does not sound in playback.

There are multiple versions of some instruments that have specific formatting and tuning requirements, such as French Horn, which has a version whose part layouts are always in treble clef.

You can change instruments at any time, add/delete them from players, and move them between players. You can also change the language for instrument names; for example, to recreate a French score.

RELATED LINKS

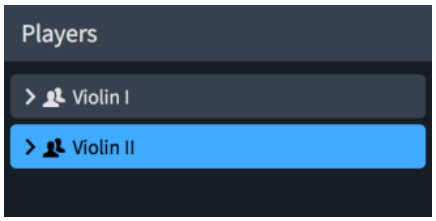
Players on page 120
Piano roll editor on page 630
Track Inspector on page 488
Unpitched percussion on page 1282
Instrument picker on page 109
Inputting notes on page 211
Adding players on page 121
Adding instruments to players on page 133
Player, layout, and instrument names on page 172
Changing the language for instrument names on page 57
Staff labels on page 1180
Brackets according to ensemble type on page 778
Changing the open pitches of fretted instrument strings on page 140
Changing instruments on page 136
Moving instruments on page 137
Designating players as soloists on page 124
Changing the default player order on page 123
Deleting instruments on page 137
Switching to galley/page view on page 50
Allowing/Disallowing instrument changes on page 130
Hiding/Showing empty staves on page 562
Edit Percussion Kit dialog on page 150

Instrument numbering

It is customary to number instruments when there is more than one in a piece so that they can be easily identified, such as Horn 1 and Horn 2. Dorico Elements automatically numbers instruments where there are multiple instruments of the same type in the same project.

For example, if there is only one flute in a project, it is called Flute, but if there are three flutes, they are automatically called Flute 1, Flute 2, and Flute 3.

One violin with no number



Adding a second violin automatically generates numbers for both violins

Instrument numbering applies to individual instruments, rather than players. For example, if an ensemble contains two flute players and a piccolo player, but the second flute is also holding a piccolo, then the instruments are numbered in the following way:

- Flute 1
- Flute 2 & Piccolo 1
- Piccolo 2

TIP

You can move individual instruments to different players if you want to change which numbered instruments are held by each player. For example, if you want the second flute to double second piccolo rather than first piccolo, you can swap the piccolo instruments between the players.

Dorico Elements automatically generates instrument numbers for players if the following criteria are met:

- The project contains multiple instruments with identical instrument names.
- The instruments have the same transposition.
- The players holding them are the same type, either single or section.
- The players are in the same group.

For example, if you have two flutes in your project, but one flute is a section player and the other flute is a single player, they are not numbered automatically. Similarly, if the two flutes are in different player groups, they are not numbered automatically.

NOTE

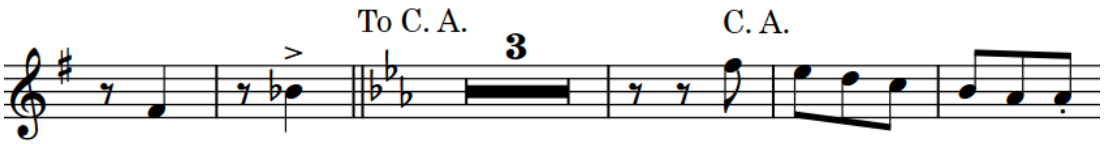
Instruments held by players designated as soloists are not automatically numbered.

RELATED LINKS
Player, layout, and instrument names on page 172
Changing instrument names on page 175
Player groups on page 158
Instrument transpositions in staff labels on page 1185

Moving instruments on page 137
Designating players as soloists on page 124
Staff label contents on page 1184
Transposing instruments on page 133

Instrument changes

Instruments changes are when a player holding multiple instruments switches from playing one instrument to a different instrument. They are usually indicated in full scores and parts with text indications both after the last note before the change and at the first note after the change.



An instrument change from Oboe to Cor Anglais

Dorico Elements handles instrument changes automatically, including showing the appropriate instrument change labels, when the following criteria are met:

- You have added a single player holding at least two instruments.
- You have input notes on at least two instrument staves held by the single player, such as inputting oboe notes on the Oboe staff and cor anglais notes on the Cor Anglais staff.
- Notes for different instruments held by the same single player do not overlap.
- Instrument changes are allowed in the layout.

You can see staves for all instruments in galley view, and you can allow/disallow instrument changes in each layout independently.

Instrument change labels use the appropriate prefix for the current instrument name language setting.

RELATED LINKS
Allowing/Disallowing instrument changes on page 130
Adding players on page 121
Adding instruments to players on page 133
Switching to galley/page view on page 50
Inputting notes on page 211
Hiding/Showing instrument change labels at the start of flows on page 1187
Changing the language for instrument names on page 57
Changing instruments on page 136

Allowing/Disallowing instrument changes

You can allow/disallow instrument changes in each layout independently; for example, if you want to show multiple percussion instruments on as few staves as possible in the score, but on separate staves for each percussion instrument in the percussion part.

Disallowing instrument changes shows all instrument staves in the selected layouts, including multiple instruments held by one single player.

TIP

If you want to input notes for other instruments held by single players but keep instrument changes in the layout, you can switch to galley view to see all staves in the project.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-L** to open **Layout Options**.
2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to allow/disallow instrument changes.

   By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar, clicking and dragging across multiple layouts, **Shift**-clicking adjacent layouts, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking individual layouts.
3. In the category list, click **Players**.
4. In the **Instrument Changes** section, activate/deactivate **Allow instrument changes**.
5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

Instrument changes are allowed in the selected layouts when **Allow instrument changes** is activated, and disallowed when it is deactivated.

NOTE

Multiple instruments can only appear on the same staff with an instrument change if none of their notes overlap. If any of their notes do overlap, multiple staves are shown.

RELATED LINKS

Instruments on page 127
Inputting notes on page 211
Hiding/Showing empty staves on page 562
Hiding/Showing instrument change labels at the start of flows on page 1187
Changing instruments on page 136

Editing the default instrument change label text

You can change the default instrument change label prefix and whether instrument change labels show full or short instrument names by default in each layout independently; for example, if you want to show full instrument names in part layouts but short instrument names in full score layouts.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-L** to open **Layout Options**.
2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to change the default content in instrument change labels.

   By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar, clicking and dragging across multiple layouts, **Shift**-clicking adjacent layouts, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking individual layouts.
3. In the category list, click **Players**.
4. In the **Instrument Changes** section, choose one of the following options for **Instrument names to use in change labels**:
   - **Full Names**
   - **Short Names**
5. Choose one of the following options for **Prefix for instrument change warnings**:

- **To**
- **Take**
- **Custom**

NOTE

To and **Take** prefixes appear as appropriate for the current instrument name language setting.

6. Optional: If you chose **Custom**, enter the text you want in the following fields, individually or together:
   - **Custom prefix**
   - **Custom suffix**
7. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

The length of instrument names and prefixes/suffixes in all instrument change labels in the selected layouts is changed.

RELATED LINKS

Hiding/Showing instrument change labels at the start of flows on page 1187
Changing the language for instrument names on page 57
Staff labels on page 1180

Editing instrument change label text individually

You can override the text shown in instrument change labels individually; for example, if you want to show the full instrument name in the first instrument change label in the flow.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the instrument change labels whose text you want to edit.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Custom text** in the **Instrument Changes** group.
3. Enter the text you want to appear in the instrument change labels into the value field.
4. Press **Return**.
5. Optional: Activate/Deactivate **Hide prefix**.

RESULT

The selected instrument change labels are changed to show the text you entered. If you activated **Hide prefix**, the prefix is hidden.

Deactivating **Custom text** returns the corresponding instrument change labels to their default text.

NOTE

- Deactivating properties permanently deletes any custom text entered.

- You can change the default instrument change label prefix and whether instrument change labels show full or short instrument names by default in each layout independently.

RELATED LINKS
Changing the language for instrument names on page 57

Transposing instruments

While most instruments produce notes at concert pitch, transposing instruments produce a note that is different to the one that is written. For example, two common orchestral transposing instruments are clarinet in B♭ and horn in F.

When a clarinet in B♭ plays a C, the sound produced is a B♭, one whole step (tone) below. When a horn in F plays a C, the sound produced is an F, a fifth below. Other instruments that conventionally produce a pitch different to the one notated include the piccolo (sounding an octave above written), double bass (sounding an octave below written), and glockenspiel (sounding two octaves above written).

Dorico Elements stores all note information in concert pitch and automatically transposes notes as appropriate for the transposition of the instrument. This means notes, key signatures, and chord symbols are automatically changed in transposing layouts compared to non-transposing layouts. You can also change instruments at any time, and the music is adjusted automatically to ensure the correct pitches are shown.

You can also change the octave of individual clefs and whether Dorico Elements respects or ignores clef octave indicators in each flow independently.

RELATED LINKS
Instrument picker on page 109
Instrument numbering on page 129
Instrument transpositions in staff labels on page 1185
Concert vs. transposed pitch on page 170
Making layouts transposing/concert pitch on page 169
Editing layout transposition text on page 895
Changing fretted instrument transpositions on page 145
Enharmonic equivalent key signatures on page 915
Changing instruments on page 136
Hiding/Showing clefs according to layout transpositions on page 817
Clefs with octave indicators on page 820
Fretted instrument tuning on page 138
Capos on page 142

Adding instruments to players

You can add instruments to both single and section players. Single players can hold multiple instruments, while section players can only hold one instrument.

PREREQUISITE

You have added at least one player.

PROCEDURE

1. In Setup mode, in the **Players** panel, select the player to which you want to add instruments.

NOTE

- You can only add instruments to one player at a time.
- You cannot add instruments to section players who are already holding one instrument.

2. Open the instrument picker in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Shift-I**.
   - Click the plus symbol in the player card.
3. Select the instrument you want in the instrument picker.
4. Press **Return** to add the selected instrument.

RESULT

The selected instrument is added to the selected player. Dorico Elements automatically loads sounds for the instrument according to the current playback template.

NOTE

- Before you have input any notes, only the first instrument held by single players is shown in full scores in page view. All instrument staves are shown in galley view, so we recommend switching to galley view to input notes for any other instruments held by single players; for example, to create instrument changes.
- If you want to add multiple players to your project at the same time, you can add ensembles or use a project template.

RELATED LINKS

Players on page 120
Players panel on page 107
Instrument picker on page 109
Adding players on page 121
Adding ensembles on page 126
Designating players as soloists on page 124
Starting new projects on page 71
Switching to galley/page view on page 50
Playback templates on page 518
Instrument changes on page 130
Player, layout, and instrument names on page 172
Changing the language for instrument names on page 57
Changing instrument names on page 175

Adding empty percussion kits to players

You can add empty percussion kits to players, to which you can then add unpitched percussion instruments.

NOTE

You cannot add percussion kits to section players that are already holding one instrument.

PREREQUISITE

You have added at least one player.

PROCEDURE

1. In Setup mode, in the **Players** panel, open the **Edit Percussion Kit** dialog in any of the following ways:
   - Select a player, press **Shift-I**, and click **Create Empty Kit** in the instrument picker.
   - Click the plus symbol in a player card and click **Create Empty Kit** in the instrument picker.
   - Select a player, then click **Player Settings** in the action bar and choose **Create Empty Kit**. You can also right-click players and choose this option from the context menu.
2. Add the percussion instruments you want to the kit in the **Edit Percussion Kit** dialog.

RELATED LINKS

Players panel on page 107
Percussion kits vs. individual percussion instruments on page 1288
Edit Percussion Kit dialog on page 150
Instrument picker on page 109
Percussion kit presentation types on page 1293
Changing the language for instrument names on page 57

Combining individual percussion instruments into kits

If a player is holding one or more individual percussion instruments, you can combine them into a percussion kit.

PROCEDURE

1. In Setup mode, in the **Players** panel, select the player whose percussion instruments you want to combine into a kit.
2. In the action bar, click **Player Settings** and choose **Combine Instruments into Kit** to open the **Edit Percussion Kit** dialog.

   TIP

   You can also right-click players and choose this option from the context menu.
3. Edit the new percussion kit.

   For example, you can change the order in which the instruments appear in a grid or on a five-line staff.

RESULT

A new kit is created containing all the instruments held by the player.

NOTE

If the player was already holding one or more kit instruments, all individual instruments and any other kits are combined into the first kit.

Changing instruments

You can change the type of instruments without affecting any music already entered onto their staves; for example, if your Clarinet part is very low and you want to change it to a Bass Clarinet, or you want to change the tuning of a guitar.

NOTE

- You cannot change percussion kits into other instruments, you can only change individual unpitched percussion instruments.
- You cannot change a pitched instrument into an unpitched instrument, and vice versa.
- These steps describe changing the instrument type, not an instrument change where a performer switches from one instrument to another partway through a flow.

PROCEDURE

1. In Setup mode, in the **Players** panel, expand the card of the player whose instrument you want to change.

   The card lists the instruments held by the player.

2. In the instrument label, click the instrument menu ··· and choose **Change Instrument** to open the instrument picker.
3. Select the instrument you want in the instrument picker.
4. Press **Return** to change to the selected instrument.

RESULT

The selected instrument is changed without affecting any music on its staff.

Where appropriate, different clefs are used by default. This means that notes can appear differently so that they are notated correctly according to the new clef.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

You can change the player order; for example, if the new instrument requires a different position according to orchestral convention.

RELATED LINKS

Players panel on page 107
Instrument picker on page 109
Fretted instrument tuning on page 138
Transposing instruments on page 133
Edit Strings and Tuning dialog on page 138
Instrument changes on page 130
Changing the language for instrument names on page 57
Hiding/Showing instrument transpositions in staff labels on page 1185
Changing the default player order on page 123

Moving instruments

You can move individual instruments without affecting any music already input for those instruments. You can move instruments between players, or to a different position in the instrument list for a single player; for example, if you want to change the order of staves in the score.

Changing the order of instruments held by a single player also affects its player name, if you have not already renamed the player.

PREREQUISITE

You have added the players to which you want to move instruments.

PROCEDURE

1. In Setup mode, in the **Players** panel, expand the cards of the players holding the instruments you want to move.
2. Move instruments in any of the following ways:
   - To change the order of instruments for a single player, click and drag a single instrument to the required position, then release the mouse.
   - To move instruments to another player, click and drag a single instrument to the required player card, then release the mouse.
   - To move instruments to another player, click the instrument menu ··· in the instrument label and choose **Move Instrument to Player** > **[Player]**.

RELATED LINKS

Players panel on page 107
Adding players on page 121
Changing the default player order on page 123
Renaming players on page 173
Resetting player names on page 174

Deleting instruments

You can delete individual instruments without deleting the player holding them or other instruments held by the same player.

IMPORTANT

Deleting instruments permanently deletes any music that you have input on their staves.

PROCEDURE

1. In Setup mode, in the **Players** panel, expand the card of the player holding the instrument you want to delete.
2. In the instrument label, click the instrument menu ··· and choose **Delete Instrument**.
3. Click **OK**.

RESULT

The instrument is deleted from the player.

TIP

If you want to delete all instruments held by a single player, you can also delete the player.

RELATED LINKS
Players panel on page 107
Deleting players on page 125

Fretted instrument tuning

Fretted instruments can have different numbers of strings and frets. In order to display tablature for fretted instruments in Dorico Elements, you must specify information about the tuning of fretted instruments.

Dorico Elements requires the following information to display tablature:

- The number of strings the instrument has
- The open pitch of each string
- The number of frets
- The fret number at which each string starts, such as for the fifth string on a banjo
- The pitch intervals between frets
- The fret number of the capo, if applicable

When you add a fretted instrument or change an existing instrument, any available tunings for that instrument are shown in the instrument picker.

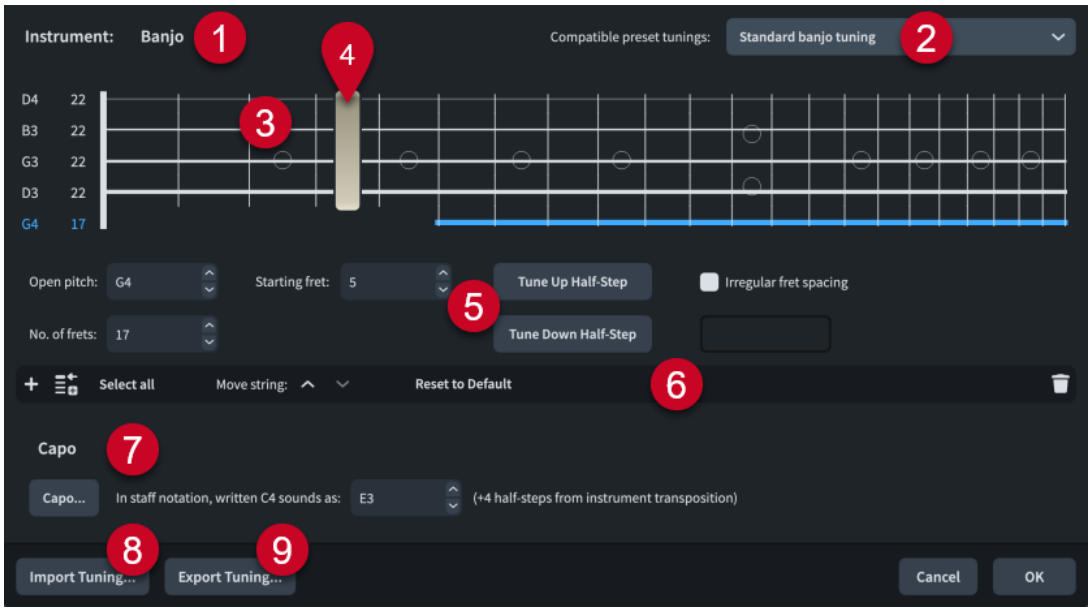
You can also customize all aspects of fretted instruments in the **Edit Strings and Tuning** dialog, including adding capos.

RELATED LINKS
Instrument picker on page 109
Changing instruments on page 136
Capos on page 142

Edit Strings and Tuning dialog

The **Edit Strings and Tuning** dialog allows you to customize the tuning of individual fretted instruments by changing the number of strings and frets they have, the pitches of their open strings, and the spacing of their frets. It also allows you to add/remove capos and change the fretted instrument transposition.

- You can open the **Edit Strings and Tuning** dialog in Setup mode by expanding the card of the player holding the fretted instrument in the **Players** panel, then clicking the instrument menu ··· in its instrument label and choosing **Edit Strings and Tuning**.



The **Edit Strings and Tuning** dialog comprises the following:

1 **Instrument**

Displays the name of the selected fretted instrument.

2 **Compatible preset tunings**

Allows you to select preset fretted instrument tunings with the same number of strings as the selected fretted instrument. If your changes in the dialog match a preset tuning, it is automatically selected.

3 **String editor**

Allows you to select and edit individual or all strings of the fretted instrument. The arrangement of strings in the editor matches that of the real instrument. The pitch and total number of frets of each string is shown to the left of the vertical line that represents the nut.

You can navigate through strings by pressing **Up Arrow**/**Down Arrow**, and to top/bottom strings by pressing Page Up/Page Down.

4 **Capo representation**

Indicates the fret position and extent of the capo added to the fretted instrument.

5 **Controls**

Allow you to edit individual or multiple strings. The following controls are available when at least one string is selected in the string editor:

- **Open pitch**: Allows you to set the open pitch of the string using the note name and octave, such as **C4** for middle C. If necessary, you can add **#** for sharp and **b** for flat.
- **No. of frets**: Allows you to set the number of frets for the selected strings.
- **Starting fret**: Allows you to set the number of the first fret on the selected strings. For example, the fifth string on the banjo starts at fret 5.
- **Tune Up Half-Step**: Allows you to raise the open pitch of the selected strings by a half-step (semitone).
- **Tune Down Half-Step**: Allows you to lower the open pitch of the selected strings by a half-step (semitone).
- **Irregular fret spacing**: Allows you to set non-chromatic fret arrangements for instruments with fretboards that correspond to other scales, such as the dulcimer. Enter

1 for a half-step and **2** for a whole step, with each step separated by a comma. For example, enter **2,2,1,2,2,2,1** to set the pattern for a major scale.

6 **Action bar**

Contains options that allow you to change the number and arrangement of strings.

- **Add String** : Adds a new string below the lowest currently selected string. The new string is a duplicate of the lowest currently selected string.
- **Add String at Top** : Adds a new string at the top of the fretboard. The new string is a duplicate of the previous top string.
- **Select all**: Selects all strings at once.
- **Move string buttons**: Allow you to move the currently selected strings up/down the fretboard.
- **Reset to Default**: Returns all strings and corresponding tunings to the factory default settings for the fretted instrument.
- **Delete String** : Deletes the selected strings.

7 **Capo section**

Contains options that allow you to change the capo and fretted instrument transposition.

- **Capo**: Opens the **Capo Definition** dialog, which allows you to add full and partial capos to fretted instruments.
- **In staff notation, written C4 sounds as**: Allows you to change the transposition of the selected fretted instrument. The pitch determines the spelling of notes and chord symbols for the corresponding number of half-steps.

8 **Import Tuning**

Opens the File Explorer/macOS Finder, where you can select the `.doricotuning` file that you want to import and apply to the fretted instrument.

9 **Export Tuning**

Opens the File Explorer/macOS Finder, where you can select the location to which you want to export the strings and tuning settings of the fretted instrument as a `.doricotuning` file. You can then import the `.doricotuning` file into other instruments/projects and share it with other users.

RELATED LINKS
Players panel on page 107
Chord diagrams on page 805
Tablature on page 1200
Fretted instrument tuning on page 138
Capos on page 142

Changing the open pitches of fretted instrument strings

You can change the open pitch of each fretted instrument string independently; for example, if your project requires an unconventional tuning that is not available as an instrument type in the instrument picker.

PROCEDURE

1. In Setup mode, in the **Players** panel, expand the card of the player holding the fretted instrument whose open pitches you want to change.
2. In the instrument label, click the instrument menu ··· and choose **Edit Strings and Tuning** to open the **Edit Strings and Tuning** dialog.

3. Select the string whose open pitch you want to change.
4. Change the **Open pitch** value; for example, to **G2**.
5. Optional: Repeat steps 3 and 4 to change the open pitch of other strings.
6. Click **OK** to save your changes and close the dialog.

RESULT

The open pitches of the selected strings are changed. This affects the tuning of the instrument and the pitch of all fret positions on those strings.

The new tuning becomes available for chord diagrams.

RELATED LINKS

Players panel on page 107
Chord diagrams on page 805
Hiding/Showing chord diagrams on page 806

Importing fretted instrument tunings

You can import custom fretted instrument tunings that you have already created and apply them to instruments. This allows you to reuse tunings without having to create them from scratch.

PROCEDURE

1. In Setup mode, in the **Players** panel, expand the card of the player holding the fretted instrument to which you want to apply an imported tuning.
2. In the instrument label, click the instrument menu ··· and choose **Edit Strings and Tuning** to open the **Edit Strings and Tuning** dialog.
3. Click **Import Tuning** at the bottom of the dialog to open the File Explorer/macOS Finder.
4. Locate and select the `.doricotuning` library file you want to import.
5. Click **Open**.

RESULT

The selected `.doricotuning` file is applied to the fretted instrument. The imported tuning becomes available for chord diagrams.

Exporting fretted instrument tunings

You can export fretted instrument tunings so you can reuse them for other instruments and in other projects. Fretted instrument tunings are exported as `.doricotuning` library files.

PROCEDURE

1. In Setup mode, in the **Players** panel, expand the card of the player holding the fretted instrument whose tuning you want to export.
2. In the instrument label, click the instrument menu ··· and choose **Edit Strings and Tuning** to open the **Edit Strings and Tuning** dialog.
3. Click **Export Tuning** at the bottom of the dialog to open the File Explorer/macOS Finder.
4. In the File Explorer/macOS Finder, specify a name and location for the library file.
5. Click **Save**.

RESULT

The tuning of the selected fretted instrument is exported and saved as a `.doricotuning` library file.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

You can import the library file into other projects to reuse the fretted instrument tuning.

Capos

Capos are devices that performers clamp onto the necks of fretted instruments to depress strings at a single fret position. This raises the sounding pitch of open strings affected by the capo, allowing performers to use the same fingerings and chord shapes but produce higher pitches.

In Dorico Elements, you can allow capos to affect your notated music in the following ways, independently of each other:

- You can change the pitches shown on tablature by adding capos to fretted instruments. Dorico Elements treats capos as fret 0 for fret numbers on tablature. Capos added to individual fretted instruments appear at the corresponding fret position and crossing the specified strings in the **Edit Strings and Tuning** dialog and in the Fretboard panel.
- You can change fretted instrument transpositions to reflect capos or detuned fretted instruments, and optionally allow fretted instrument transpositions to affect pitches on notation staves and in main chord symbols.
- You can define capos for chord symbols/diagrams in the music and/or used chord diagrams grids, and show only main chords, only capo chords, or both.

For example, you can show capo pitches on tablature but show sounding pitches on notation staves. You can also show both main and capo chords in chord symbols in layouts that do not contain a fretted instrument, such as when creating lead sheets in vocal part layouts.

RELATED LINKS

Edit Strings and Tuning dialog on page 138
Fretboard panel on page 199
Chord symbols on page 782
Chord diagrams on page 805
Fretted instrument tuning on page 138
Defining capos for chord symbols/diagrams on page 147
Defining capos for used chord diagrams grids on page 149
Layouts on page 165
Making layouts transposing/concert pitch on page 169
Assigning players to layouts on page 167

Capo vs. main chords

For the same chord symbol, Dorico Elements can show its original pitch only, its sounding pitch based on the defined capo only, or both with capo chords above or below main chords.

Main chord

The original chord symbol you input. Its displayed pitches depend on whether the layout is transposing or concert pitch, and whether the layout uses fretted instrument transpositions for main chord symbols. For example, in the transposed pitch part layout for a trumpet in B♭, a C7 chord symbol appears as D7.

Capo chord

The chord that the fretted instrument must play in order to produce the desired main chord, according to the fret position of the capo. For example, if a guitarist with a capo on the second fret plays Gm7, the chord that sounds is Am7.

By default, capo chords appear in italics when shown alongside main chords.

TIP

You can choose to show capo chords in parentheses instead and change the vertical gap between capo and main chord symbols in the **Capo** section of the **Chord Symbols Options** dialog.

RELATED LINKS

Concert vs. transposed pitch on page 170
Changing fretted instrument transpositions on page 145
Hiding/Showing capo chord symbols on page 147
Hiding/Showing capo chord symbols in used chord diagrams grids on page 150
Respelling chord symbols on page 794
Chord symbol appearance presets on page 783

Adding capos to fretted instruments

You can add capos to individual fretted instruments. This affects the pitches shown on tablature for the corresponding instruments, as Dorico Elements treats capos as fret 0. For example, if each flow in a project for guitar requires a capo at a different fret, you might add multiple players, each holding a guitar instrument with the required capo.

NOTE

These steps do not affect pitches on notation staves, chord symbols/diagrams in the music, or used chord diagram grids.

PROCEDURE

1. In Setup mode, in the **Players** panel, expand the card of the player holding the fretted instrument to which you want to add a capo.
2. In the instrument label, click the instrument menu ··· and choose **Edit Strings and Tuning** to open the **Edit Strings and Tuning** dialog.
3. In the **Capo** section, click **Capo** to open the **Capo Definition** dialog.
4. Choose one of the following options for **Capo**:
   - **Full Capo**
   - **Partial Capo**
5. Change the fret position of the capo by changing the value for **Fret**.
6. Optional: If you chose **Partial Capo**, change the strings across which the capo extends.
7. Click **OK** to save your changes and close the **Capo Definition** dialog.
8. Click **OK** to save your changes and close the **Edit Strings and Tuning** dialog.

RESULT

A capo is added to the selected instrument according to your settings. The capo appears at the corresponding fret position and crossing the specified strings in the **Edit Strings and Tuning** dialog and in the Fretboard panel for the selected instrument.

EXAMPLE

No capo

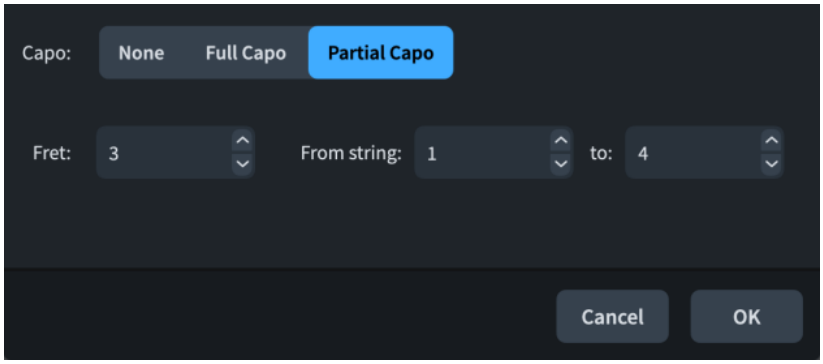
Capo added to the third fret

RELATED LINKS
Players panel on page 107
Edit Strings and Tuning dialog on page 138
Fretboard panel on page 199
Changing fretted instrument transpositions on page 145
Defining capos for chord symbols/diagrams on page 147
Defining capos for used chord diagrams grids on page 149

Capo Definition dialog

The **Capo Definition** dialog allows you to add full and partial capos to fretted instruments.

- You can open the **Capo Definition** dialog from inside the **Edit Strings and Tuning** dialog by clicking **Capo** in the **Capo** section.



The **Capo Definition** dialog contains the following options:

Capo

Allows you to choose one of the following capo types:

- **None**
- **Full Capo**
- **Partial Capo**

Fret

Allows you to change the fret position of the capo.

From string [n] to [n]

Allows you to set the first and last strings across which the capo extends. Only available when **Partial Capo** is chosen for **Capo**.

Removing capos from fretted instruments

You can remove capos from individual fretted instruments. This affects the pitches shown on tablature for the corresponding instruments.

PROCEDURE

1. In Setup mode, in the **Players** panel, expand the card of the player holding the fretted instrument whose capo you want to remove.
2. In the instrument label, click the instrument menu ··· and choose **Edit Strings and Tuning** to open the **Edit Strings and Tuning** dialog.
3. In the **Capo** section, click **Capo** to open the **Capo Definition** dialog.
4. Choose **None** for **Capo**.
5. Click **OK** to save your changes and close the **Capo Definition** dialog.
6. Click **OK** to save your changes and close the **Edit Strings and Tuning** dialog.

Changing fretted instrument transpositions

You can change the transposition of individual fretted instruments; for example, to reflect capos added to them, or for a fretted instrument whose strings have all been detuned. This can affect the pitches shown on notation staves and in main chord symbols in the music, depending on your per-layout setting for using fretted instrument transpositions.

NOTE

- You can find different tunings for each fretted instrument in the instrument picker.
- You can also change the open pitch of individual fretted instrument strings.
- Fretted instrument transpositions do not affect pitches shown on tablature, which use the instrument's capo, or used chord diagram grids.

PROCEDURE

1. In Setup mode, in the **Players** panel, expand the card of the player holding the fretted instrument whose transposition you want to change.
2. In the instrument label, click the instrument menu ··· and choose **Edit Strings and Tuning** to open the **Edit Strings and Tuning** dialog.
3. In the **Capo** section, change the pitch for **In staff notation, written C4 sounds as**.

   The pitch determines the spelling of notes and chord symbols for the corresponding number of half-steps.
4. Click **OK** to save your changes and close the dialog.

RELATED LINKS
Players panel on page 107
Edit Strings and Tuning dialog on page 138
Instrument picker on page 109
Changing the open pitches of fretted instrument strings on page 140
Making layouts transposing/concert pitch on page 169

Using fretted instrument transpositions

You can show transposed pitches on notation staves and in main chord symbols, according to the corresponding fretted instrument's transposition, in each layout independently and for each player holding at least one fretted instrument independently.

For example, if you have added a capo to a fretted instrument and want notation staves and main chord symbols to show the pitches the performer must play in order to produce the desired sounding pitch.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-L** to open **Layout Options**.
2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to use fretted instrument transpositions for notation staves and main chord symbols.

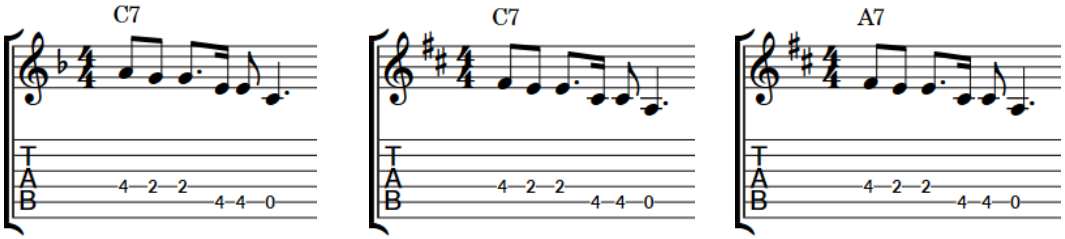
   By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar, clicking and dragging across multiple layouts, **Shift**-clicking adjacent layouts, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking individual layouts.
3. In the category list, click **Players**.
4. In the **Fretted Instruments** section, activate **Use fretted instrument transposition** for each player holding at least one fretted instrument in your project.
5. Choose one of the following options:
   - **For notation**
   - **For notation and main chord symbols**
6. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

Transpositions set for the corresponding fretted instruments are used for either notation staves only or both notation staves and main chord symbols in the selected layouts.

For example, you might choose **For notation** for fretted instruments with capos that are set to show capo chord symbols, and **For notation and main chord symbols** for detuned fretted instruments.

EXAMPLE



Fretted instrument transposition (reflecting capo at fret 3) not used for notation staff or main chord symbols

Fretted instrument transposition used for notation staff only

Fretted instrument transposition used for notation staff and main chord symbols

RELATED LINKS

Layout Options dialog on page 677

Players on page 120
Capo vs. main chords on page 142
Chord symbols on page 782
Hiding/Showing notation staves and tablature on page 1201
Hiding/Showing capo chord symbols on page 147

Defining capos for chord symbols/diagrams

You can define capos for chord symbols and chord diagrams on a per-player basis. This affects chord diagram shapes and the transposition of capo chord symbols. For example, you might show both main and capo chord symbols for the voice player when creating a lead sheet.

NOTE

These steps do not affect used chord diagram grids or pitches on notation staves/tablature.

PROCEDURE

1. In Setup mode, select a player in the **Players** panel for whom you want to define a capo for chord symbols/diagrams.
2. In the action bar, click **Player Settings** ··· and choose **Chord Symbols** > **Capo Chord Symbol Definition** to open the **Capo Chord Symbol Definition** dialog.

   TIP

   You can also right-click players and choose this option from the context menu.
3. Change the pitch for **In capo chord symbols, written C4 sounds as**.

   The pitch determines the spelling of capo chord symbols for the corresponding number of half-steps.
4. Click **OK** to save your changes and close the dialog.

RESULT

A capo with the set transposition and spelling is set for the selected player.

Hiding/Showing capo chord symbols

You can show only main chords, only capo chords, or both in chord symbols on a per-player basis. For example, if you want to show both for the guitar player but only main chords for the singer.

NOTE

Chord diagrams always reflect the capo set for the player.

PROCEDURE

1. In Setup mode, select a player in the **Players** panel for whom you want to hide/show capo chords in chord symbols.
2. In the action bar, click **Player Settings** ··· and choose one of the following options:
   - To show only main chords, choose **Chord Symbols** > **Show Main Chord Symbol for Capo**.
   - To show only capo chords, choose **Chord Symbols** > **Show Transposed Chord Symbol for Capo**.

- To show capo chords above main chords, choose **Chord Symbols** > **Show Capo Chord Symbol Above Main**.
- To show capo chords below main chords, choose **Chord Symbols** > **Show Capo Chord Symbol Below Main**.

TIP

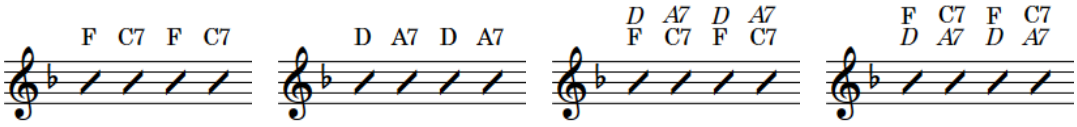
You can also right-click players and choose these options from the context menu.

RESULT

Main and/or capo chords are shown in chord symbols, according to the instrument staves and layouts set to show chord symbols for the selected player. By default, capo chords appear in italics when shown alongside main chords.

In layouts where chord symbols are only shown above the top staff in each system, the visibility of main/capo chords in chord symbols is determined by the setting for the player at the top of each system.

EXAMPLE



Main chords shown only | Capo chords shown only | Capo chords shown above main chords | Capo chords shown below main chords

RELATED LINKS

Capo vs. main chords on page 142
Positions of chord symbols on page 788
Hiding/Showing chord symbols on page 789
Hiding/Showing chord symbols in layouts on page 790
Showing chord symbols above one/multiple staves on page 790
Hiding/Showing empty staves on page 562
Showing only chord symbols or chord diagrams on page 808
Hiding/Showing chord diagrams on page 806
Chord symbol appearance presets on page 783
Inputting chord symbols on page 303

Showing only main or capo chord symbols

You can show only the main or capo chord in individual chord symbols on staves set to show both. For example, if you want to show both the first time each chord symbol appears but only show main chords for subsequent instances. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- The players on whose staves you want to show only main or capo chords are set to show both.
- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

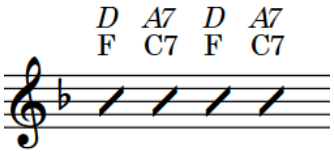
PROCEDURE

1. Select the chord symbols whose shown chords you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Show only** in the **Chord Symbols** group.
3. Choose one of the following options:
   - **Main Chord**
   - **Capo Chord**

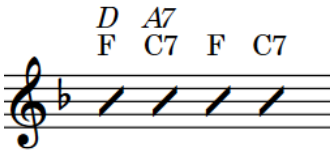
RESULT

The selected chord symbols show only main or capo chords. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

EXAMPLE



Both main and capo chords shown in all chord symbols



Only main chords shown in some chord symbols

Defining capos for used chord diagrams grids

You can define capos for used chord diagrams grids in each layout independently. This affects chord diagram shapes and the transposition of capo chord symbols. For example, you might show both main and capo chord symbols in used chord diagrams grids in the voice part layout when creating a lead sheet.

NOTE

These steps do not affect chord symbols/diagrams in the music or pitches on notation staves/tablature.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-L** to open **Layout Options**.
2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts for which you want to define capos for used chord diagrams grids.

   By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar, clicking and dragging across multiple layouts, **Shift**-clicking adjacent layouts, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking individual layouts.
3. In the category list, click **Chord Symbols and Diagrams**.
4. In the **Chord Diagrams** section, change the pitch for **Use capo with transposition**.

   The pitch determines the spelling of capo chord symbols for the corresponding number of half-steps.
5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RELATED LINKS
Hiding/Showing used chord diagrams grids on page 809
Capo vs. main chords on page 142
Adding capos to fretted instruments on page 143
Inputting chord symbols on page 303

Hiding/Showing capo chord symbols in used chord diagrams grids

You can show only main chords, only capo chords, or both in used chord symbol grids in each layout independently. For example, if you want to show both in the guitar part layout but only main chords in the vocal part layout.

NOTE

Chord diagrams in used chord diagrams grids always reflect the capo set for the layout.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-L** to open **Layout Options**.
2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to hide/show capo chord symbols in used chord diagrams grids.

   By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar, clicking and dragging across multiple layouts, **Shift**-clicking adjacent layouts, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking individual layouts.
3. In the category list, click **Chord Symbols and Diagrams**.
4. In the **Chord Diagrams** section, select one of the following options from the **Capo chord symbols** menu:
   - To show only main chords, select **Show Only Main Chord Symbol**.
   - To show only capo chords, select **Show Only Transposed Chord Symbol**.
   - To show capo chords above main chords, select **Show Above Main Chord Symbol**.
   - To show capo chords below main chords, select **Show Below Main Chord Symbol**.
5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

Main and/or capo chords are shown in used chord diagrams grids in the selected layouts. By default, capo chords appear in italics when shown alongside main chords.

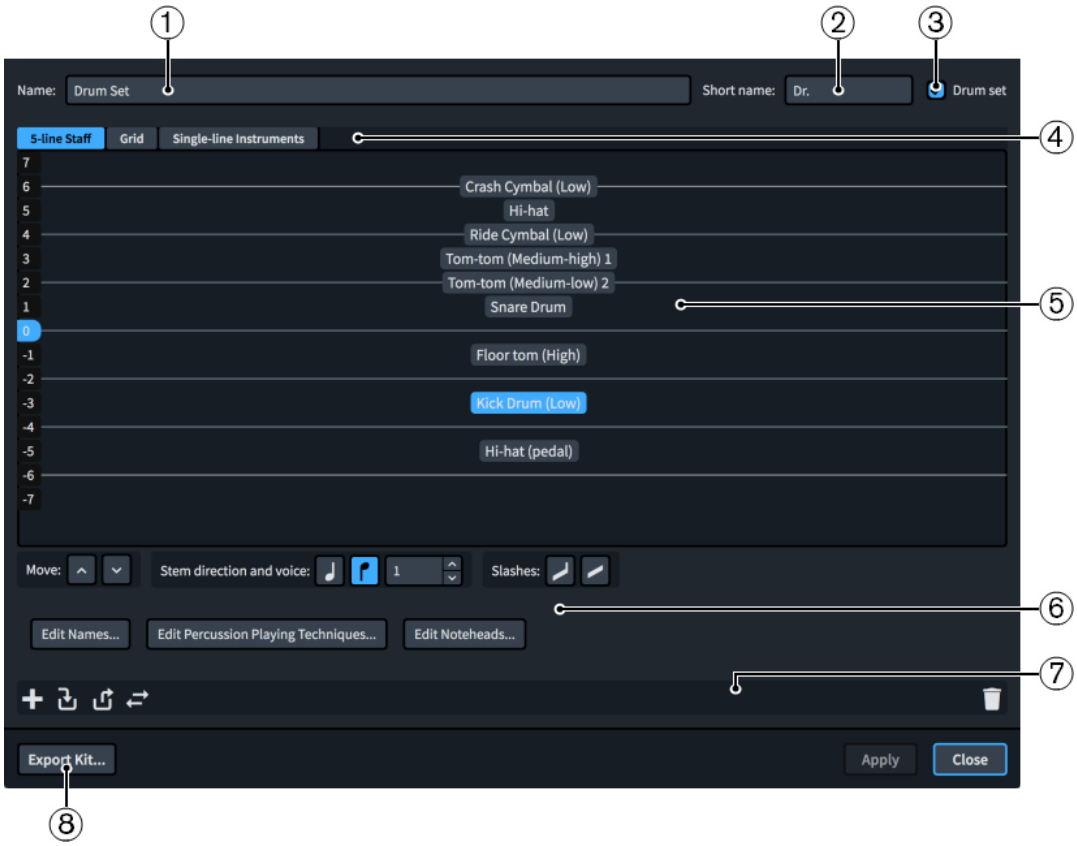
Edit Percussion Kit dialog

The **Edit Percussion Kit** dialog allows you to make changes to percussion kits, including which instruments are included in them and how instruments are arranged in the different available kit presentations.

- The **Edit Percussion Kit** dialog opens automatically when you create empty kits or combine existing instruments into a kit.
- You can also open the **Edit Percussion Kit** dialog manually for existing percussion kit instruments by expanding the card of the player holding the percussion kit in the **Players** panel in Setup mode, then clicking the instrument menu ··· in its kit instrument label and choosing **Edit Percussion Kit**.

NOTE

Percussion kit instrument labels are green in the **Players** panel in Setup mode.



1 Name

Allows you to enter or change the full name for the percussion kit. This is used in **Full** staff labels for percussion kits that use the five-line staff presentation type.

2 Short name

Allows you to enter or change the abbreviated name for the percussion kit. This is used in **Abbreviated** staff labels for percussion kits that use the five-line staff presentation type.

3 Drum set

Percussion kits are defined as drum sets when the checkbox is activated. Percussion kits that are defined as drum sets follow your settings for drum sets on the **Percussion** page in **Notation Options**, including for voicing and default stem directions.

4 Presentation types

Allows you to select a percussion kit presentation type in order to edit how the selected percussion kit appears in that presentation type.

- **5-line Staff**: Kit instruments are shown on a five-line staff. You can determine which instruments are shown on each line and in each space of the staff. A single staff label containing the name of the kit is shown.
- **Grid**: Kit instruments are shown on a grid, with each instrument on its own line. You can customize how large the gaps between each line are. Staff labels are shown for each instrument in a smaller font than normal staff labels.
- **Single-line Instruments**: Kit instruments are shown as individual instruments with their own lines. Normal-sized staff labels are shown for each instrument.

5 **Editor**

Displays the current arrangement of instruments in the selected percussion kit presentation type. You can change the order of instruments and the layout of lines and spaces in the grid presentation type by using the controls.

6 **Controls**

Allows you to change the order and stem direction of instruments in the selected percussion kit presentation type. It also allows you to add slash voices to the kit.

- **Edit Names**: Opens the **Edit Instrument Names** dialog, which allows you to change the names of the currently selected instrument.

  NOTE

  This changes the appearance of percussion instrument names in all presentations. Depending on the percussion kit presentation type, staff labels might use different information than these instrument names.

- **Edit Percussion Playing Techniques**: Opens the **Percussion Instrument Playing Techniques** dialog, which allows you to change how combinations of noteheads, articulations, and tremolos affect playback for the currently selected instrument.
- **Edit Noteheads**: Opens the **Override Percussion Noteheads** dialog, which allows you to override the noteheads used by the currently selected instrument in five-line staff kit presentations.

7 **Action bar**

Contains options that apply to all presentation types.

- **Add New Instrument**: Opens the instrument picker, which allows you to choose a new unpitched percussion instrument to be added to the kit.
- **Add Existing Instrument From Player**: Shows a menu listing the other players in your project that are holding individual percussion instruments not in kits. You can select a percussion instrument from another player to move to this kit, bringing its music with it.
- **Remove Instrument From Kit**: Removes the selected instrument from the kit, so it appears as an individual instrument. You can move individual instruments to other players or into other kit instruments.
- **Change Instrument**: Opens the instrument picker, which allows you to choose a new unpitched instrument to replace the selected instrument while retaining its music.
- **Delete Instrument**: Deletes the instrument from the kit, including its music.

8 **Export Kit**

Allows you to export the percussion kit as a library file so you can use it in other projects.

RELATED LINKS
Percussion kits and drum sets on page 1289
Voices in percussion kits on page 1300
Staff labels for percussion kits on page 1189
Percussion kit presentation types on page 1293
Edit Instrument Names dialog on page 176
Percussion Instrument Playing Techniques dialog on page 1283
Override Percussion Noteheads dialog on page 1285
Playing techniques for unpitched percussion instruments on page 1282
Playing technique-specific noteheads on page 1283
Specifying the stem direction/voice of instruments in percussion kits on page 1300

Adding instruments to percussion kits

You can add new instruments to percussion kits within the **Edit Percussion Kit** dialog.

PROCEDURE

1. In Setup mode, in the **Players** panel, expand the card of the player holding the kit to which you want to add instruments.
2. In the kit instrument label, click the instrument menu ··· and choose **Edit Percussion Kit** to open the **Edit Percussion Kit** dialog.
3. Click **Add New Instrument** + to open the instrument picker.
4. Select the percussion instrument you want in the instrument picker.
5. Press **Return** to add the selected instrument.
6. Click **Close**.

RESULT

The selected instrument is added to the percussion kit.

RELATED LINKS

Players panel on page 107
Changing the language for instrument names on page 57
Percussion kit presentation types on page 1293

Changing instruments in percussion kits

You can change existing instruments in percussion kits while retaining any existing music for that instrument.

PROCEDURE

1. In Setup mode, in the **Players** panel, expand the card of the player holding the kit in which you want to change instruments.
2. In the kit instrument label, click the instrument menu ··· and choose **Edit Percussion Kit** to open the **Edit Percussion Kit** dialog.
3. Click the instrument you want to change.
4. Click **Change Instrument** ⇄ in the action bar to open the instrument picker.
5. Select the percussion instrument you want in the instrument picker.
6. Press **Return** to change to the selected instrument.
7. Click **Close**.

RESULT

The instrument is changed to the one selected in the instrument picker. Any music input for the previous instrument is retained.

NOTE

Playing techniques expressed using playing technique-specific noteheads are not retained.

Defining percussion kits as drum sets

You can define individual percussion kits as drum sets. Drum sets follow your per-flow notation options for voicing in drum sets with five-line staff presentations.

PROCEDURE

1. In Setup mode, in the **Players** panel, expand the card of the player holding the kit you want to define as a drum set.
2. In the kit instrument label, click the instrument menu ··· and choose **Edit Percussion Kit** to open the **Edit Percussion Kit** dialog.
3. Activate **Drum set** in the top right of the dialog.
4. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

The selected percussion kit is defined as a drum set. The arrangement of voices for instruments in the kit when using the five-line staff presentation type follows your per-flow setting on the **Percussion** page in **Notation Options**.

NOTE

If you no longer want a percussion kit to be defined as a drum set, you can deactivate **Drum set** in the **Edit Percussion Kit** dialog for that kit.

RELATED LINKS

Players panel on page 107
Notation Options dialog on page 679
Percussion Instrument Playing Techniques dialog on page 1283

Creating groups of instruments within grid presentation percussion kits

You can create groups of instruments within percussion kits that use the grid presentation type in order to have a better overview of the instruments in the kit.

In grid presentation percussion kits, the name of each individual instrument is shown in the staff label. You can simplify the staff label of grid presentation percussion kits by creating groups; for example, to show “Wood Blocks” instead of “Wood Block (High)”, “Wood Block (Medium)”, and “Wood Block (Low)”.

PROCEDURE

1. In Setup mode, in the **Players** panel, expand the card of the player holding the kit in which you want to create groups in the grid presentation.
2. In the kit instrument label, click the instrument menu ··· and choose **Edit Percussion Kit** to open the **Edit Percussion Kit** dialog.
3. Click **Grid** at the top of the dialog.
4. Click the first instrument you want to include in the group.
5. **Shift**-click the last instrument you want to include in the group.

   NOTE

   You can only include adjacent instruments in groups.

6. Click **Add** .

RESULT

A group is created containing the selected instruments. The group is given a default name that you can change.

RELATED LINKS

Players panel on page 107
Percussion kit presentation types on page 1293

Renaming groups in grid presentation percussion kits

Group names are shown as instrument labels. You can change the names of groups in percussion kits using the grid presentation type.

PROCEDURE

1. In Setup mode, in the **Players** panel, expand the card of the player holding the kit whose grid presentation groups you want to rename.
2. In the kit instrument label, click the instrument menu and choose **Edit Percussion Kit** to open the **Edit Percussion Kit** dialog.
3. Click **Grid** at the top of the dialog.
4. Double-click the group you want to rename to open the **Edit Percussion Grid Group Names** dialog.

   Groups are shown as colored blocks in the column to the left of the list of percussion kit instruments.
5. Enter the names you want to give the group in the corresponding fields in the **Edit Percussion Grid Group Names** dialog:
   - **Full Name**
   - **Short Name**
6. Click **OK** to save your changes and close the dialog.

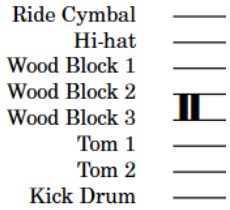
RESULT

The name of the group is changed. This also changes the staff label for the group.

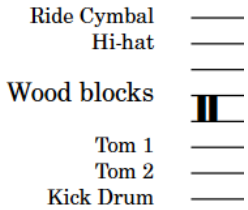
NOTE

Staff labels for groups in grid presentation percussion kits use a different paragraph style to the staff labels for non-grouped instruments in grid presentation percussion kits.

EXAMPLE



Ungrouped grid presentation percussion kit



Grid presentation percussion kit with wood blocks grouped

RELATED LINKS

Staff labels for percussion kits on page 1189

Deleting groups within grid presentation percussion kits

You can delete groups in percussion kits using the grid presentation type without deleting the instruments within the group.

PROCEDURE

1. In Setup mode, in the **Players** panel, expand the card of the player holding the kit from whose grid presentation you want to delete groups.
2. In the kit instrument label, click the instrument menu ··· and choose **Edit Percussion Kit** to open the **Edit Percussion Kit** dialog.
3. Click **Grid** at the top of the dialog.
4. Click the group you want to delete.

   Groups are shown as colored blocks in the column to the left of the list of percussion kit instruments.
5. Click **Delete** .

RESULT

The group is deleted. The individual staff labels for each instrument in the group are restored.

Changing the positions of instruments within percussion kits

You can change the positions of instruments within percussion kits of all presentation types to change the order in which the instruments appear in the score and parts. In five-line staff presentation types, you can also change the staff position of slash voices.

PROCEDURE

1. In Setup mode, in the **Players** panel, expand the card of the player holding the kit in which you want to change the positions of instruments.
2. In the kit instrument label, click the instrument menu ··· and choose **Edit Percussion Kit** to open the **Edit Percussion Kit** dialog.
3. Click the kit presentation type in which you want to change the order of instruments.

   For example, click **Grid** to change the order of instruments when the kit uses the grid presentation type.

4. Click the percussion instruments and/or slash voices whose position you want to change.

   NOTE

   When using the mouse, you can only move one instrument or slash voice at a time.

5. Change the position of the selected instruments/slash voices in any of the following ways:
   - Click **Move** up arrow to move them upwards.
   - Click **Move** down arrow to move them downwards.
   - Click and drag a single instrument upwards/downwards (five-line staff presentation only).
6. Optional: Repeat these steps for other instruments in the percussion kit, and for other kit presentation types for the same percussion kit.
7. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

The positions of the selected instruments and/or slash voices within the kit is changed. Multiple instruments can share the same staff position, but we recommend that they use different noteheads so that the player can tell them apart.

RELATED LINKS

Players panel on page 107
Moving notes to different instruments in percussion kits on page 1291

Changing the size of gaps between lines in percussion grids

You can change the size of gaps between lines in percussion kits using the grid presentation type.

PROCEDURE

1. In Setup mode, in the **Players** panel, expand the card of the player in whose percussion kit you want to change the size of gaps in the grid presentation.
2. In the kit instrument label, click the instrument menu ··· and choose **Edit Percussion Kit** to open the **Edit Percussion Kit** dialog.
3. Click **Grid** at the top of the dialog.
4. Click the instruments below which you want to change the gap size.
5. Change the value for **Gap**.
6. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

The size of the gaps below the selected instruments is changed.

Removing individual instruments from percussion kits

You can remove individual instruments from percussion kits without affecting other instruments in the kit. For example, if you want to move an instrument from one percussion kit to another player.

PROCEDURE

1. In Setup mode, in the **Players** panel, expand the card of the player holding the kit from which you want to remove instruments.
2. In the kit instrument label, click the instrument menu and choose **Edit Percussion Kit** to open the **Edit Percussion Kit** dialog.
3. Click the instruments you want to remove from the kit.
4. Click **Remove Instrument From Kit** in the action bar.
5. Click **Close**.

RESULT

The selected instruments are removed from the percussion kit. They appear as individual instruments belonging to the same player.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

You can move the instruments to other players if required.

RELATED LINKS

Players panel on page 107
Moving instruments on page 137

Player groups

A player group represents a collection of musicians that are considered together, such as one choir in a work for double choir or an off-stage ensemble. Player groups can have their own brackets, depending on the bracket grouping set for each layout.

Grouping players together means they are positioned together in the default player order, numbered independently of players outside the group, and are bracketed together according to the ensemble type set for each layout.

For example, if your project is for double choir (SATB/SATB), all voices are joined by a single bracket by default because they are in the same family. However, if you add each choir to its own group, they are bracketed separately. This is useful in works containing multiple groups, such as in Britten's “War Requiem”, which has three distinct groups, or in Walton's “Belshazzar's Feast” which requires two separate off-stage brass groups.

You can add as many player groups as required; for example, to allow easy separation of forces, or to prevent automatic instrument numbering for percussion instruments when multiple percussion players hold the same instrument to accommodate instrument changes.

You can also show player group labels for player groups in each layout independently.

RELATED LINKS

Instrument numbering on page 129
Brackets and braces on page 776
Brackets according to ensemble type on page 778
Changing the default player order on page 123

Setting custom player orders on page 123
Player group labels on page 1188
Player, layout, and instrument names on page 172

Adding player groups

You can organize players into groups; for example, if you want to bracket them together. Players in different groups are also numbered separately.

PROCEDURE

1. Optional: If you want to add a group that includes existing players, select those players in the **Players** panel in Setup mode.
2. In the **Players** panel, click **Add Group**.

RESULT

A new player group is added to the **Players** panel. If you selected players, those players are added to the group. If you did not select players, the new group is empty.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

- You can add players to groups and move them between groups.
- You can rename player groups and show player group labels.

RELATED LINKS

Players panel on page 107
Adding players to groups on page 159
Moving players between groups on page 161
Renaming player groups on page 160
Player group labels on page 1188

Adding players to groups

You can add new players to existing player groups.

NOTE

In Dorico Elements, the maximum number of players you can have in a single project is 24.

PROCEDURE

1. In Setup mode, in the **Players** panel, select the group to which you want to add new players.
2. Add new players in one of the following ways:
   - To add a single player, click **Add Single Player** in the action bar.
   - To add a section player, click **Add Section Player** in the action bar.

   The instrument picker opens.

   TIP

   You can also open the instrument picker by selecting an existing player in the **Players** panel and pressing **Shift-I**.
3. Select the instrument you want in the instrument picker.

4. Press **Return** to add the selected instrument.

RESULT

The corresponding type of player is added to the selected group.

TIP

You can also move existing players to, from, or between groups.

RELATED LINKS

Players panel on page 107
Instrument picker on page 109
Adding players on page 121
Moving players between groups on page 161
Player group labels on page 1188
Changing the language for instrument names on page 57

Renaming player groups

You can change the name of player groups after you have added them. This changes the name shown in player group labels.

PROCEDURE

1. In Setup mode, in the **Players** panel, select the player group you want to rename.
2. In the action bar, click **Player Settings** ··· and choose **Rename Player Group** to open the **Rename Player Group** dialog.

   TIP

   You can also right-click player groups and choose this option from the context menu.
3. Enter new names or edit the existing names in the following fields:
   - **Full name**
   - **Short name**
4. Click **OK** to save your changes and close the dialog.

RESULT

The corresponding names for the selected player group are changed.

Player group labels show full player group names by default. Short player group names are used when the full player group name is longer than the bracket.

RELATED LINKS

Players panel on page 107
Player group labels on page 1188
Player, layout, and instrument names on page 172

Deleting player groups

You can delete groups of players; for example, if you no longer need a group of players that you created when importing a MIDI file. When deleting player groups, you can choose to keep the players within the group or delete them as well.

PROCEDURE

1. In Setup mode, in the **Players** panel, select the groups that you want to delete.
2. Delete the selected groups in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Backspace or Delete**.
   - In the **Players** panel, click **Delete Player**.
3. Choose one of the following options in the warning message that opens:
   - **Keep Players**: Deletes the group but keeps the players.
   - **Delete Players**: Deletes the group and the players it contains.

Moving players between groups

You can move players to, from, or between player groups. For example, you can move ungrouped players into existing groups and move players from one group to another.

PROCEDURE

1. In Setup mode, in the **Players** panel, select the players that you want to move.
2. Click and drag the selected players to the position you want.

   An insertion line indicates where the players will be positioned.

RESULT

The players are moved to the new position.

TIP

- You can also add existing players to existing groups by right-clicking them in the **Players** panel and choosing **Add Player to Group** > **[Group]** from the context menu.
- You can also add new players to player groups.

RELATED LINKS

Adding players to groups on page 159

Removing players from groups

You can remove players from groups.

PROCEDURE

- In Setup mode, in the **Players** panel, remove players from groups in any of the following ways:
  - Select multiple players, then click and drag them out of the group.

- Select one player, then click **Player Settings** ··· in the action bar and choose **Remove Player from Group**. You can also right-click players and choose this option from the context menu.

RESULT

The players are removed from their groups but remain in the project as individual players.

Flows

Flows are separate spans of music that are completely independent in musical content, meaning they can contain completely different players from each other and have different time signatures and key signatures. A single project can contain any number of flows.

Depending on the purpose of each project, a flow could be, for example, a single song in an album, a movement in a sonata or symphony, a number in a stage musical, or a short scale or sight-reading exercise of only a few bars in length.

Dorico Elements automatically adds a flow to projects once you have added at least one player. You cannot add flows until you have added at least one player to the project.

When you add a flow in Dorico Elements, the following happens automatically:

- The flow is assigned to all full score and part layouts in the project.
- All players are assigned to the new flow.

By default, all layouts include all flows in the project. If necessary, you can change the layouts to which flows are assigned and which players are assigned to flows.

IMPORTANT

If you exclude a player from a flow, any notes that you have already input for that player in that flow are deleted.

You can change notation options, such as beam grouping and accidental duration rules, for each flow independently in the **Notation Options** dialog.

RELATED LINKS

Flows panel on page 117
Notation Options dialog on page 679
Players on page 120
Layouts on page 165
Tacets on page 592
Players, layouts, and flows on page 118
Importing flows on page 79
Exporting flows on page 80
Starting new projects on page 71
Opening projects/files on page 72
Flow headings on page 603

Adding flows

You can add any number of new flows to your project; for example, when engraving a large work that comprises multiple movements.

PROCEDURE

- In Setup mode, add a flow in any of the following ways:
  - Press **Shift-F**.
  - In the **Flows** panel, click **Add Flow**.

RESULT

A new flow is added to your project. All existing players are assigned to new flows, and new flows are automatically assigned to all existing full score and part layouts.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

- You can rename the flow.
- You can change the players assigned to the flow and the layouts to which the flow is assigned.

RELATED LINKS

Flows panel on page 117
Importing flows on page 79
Exporting flows on page 80
Starting new projects on page 71
Opening projects/files on page 72
Renaming flows on page 179
Adding players on page 121
Assigning players to flows on page 164
Assigning flows to layouts on page 168

Duplicating flows

You can duplicate flows; for example, if you want to experiment with some ideas without affecting the original flow, or if you want to copy material with any barlines you have added.

PROCEDURE

- In Setup mode, in the **Flows** panel, right-click the flow you want to duplicate and choose **Duplicate Flow** from the context menu.

RESULT

A new flow is added, containing all the music and players of the original flow. It is automatically added to all full score and part layouts.

Assigning players to flows

By default, all players in your project are added to all flows that originated in the project. You can assign players to and remove players from flows manually; for example, if the soloists in a choral work do not sing for an entire flow.

NOTE

If you remove a player from a flow, any notes you have already input for that player in that flow are deleted.

PROCEDURE

1. In Setup mode, in the **Flows** panel, select the flow whose assigned players you want to change.
2. In the **Players** panel, activate the checkbox in the card of each player you want to assign to the flow.

TIP

You can **Shift**-click to activate/deactivate the checkboxes in multiple player cards at once.

RESULT

Players are assigned to the selected flow when the checkbox in their player card is activated, and removed from the flow when the checkbox is deactivated.

RELATED LINKS

Flows panel on page 117
Tacets on page 592
Assigning flows to layouts on page 168
Assigning players to layouts on page 167

Reordering flows

You can change the order of flows; for example, if you want an imported flow to be the first flow rather than the last.

PROCEDURE

1. In Setup mode, in the **Flows** panel, select the flows whose order you want to change.
2. Click and drag the selected flows to the right/left.

RESULT

The selected flows are moved to the specified position. Their flow numbers are automatically updated, as is their order in the **Project Info** dialog and in layouts by default.

TIP

You can also reorder flows in the **Project Info** dialog by selecting them in the flows list and clicking **Move Down** or **Move Up** in the action bar. This can be an easier method of reordering flows in projects that contain many flows.

RELATED LINKS
Project Info dialog on page 75
Flow names and flow titles on page 178
Importing flows on page 79
Flow headings on page 603
Tokens on page 607

Deleting flows

You can delete flows that you no longer need. This deletes all music for all instruments and players in the flows.

PROCEDURE

1. In Setup mode, in the **Flows** panel, select the flows you want to delete.
2. Delete the selected flows in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Backspace or Delete**.
   - In the **Flows** panel, click **Delete Flow**.

RELATED LINKS
Importing flows on page 79
Exporting flows on page 80

Layouts

Layouts combine musical content, as represented by flows and players, with rules for page formatting and music engraving, and allow you to produce paginated music notation that can be printed or exported in various formats. For example, part layouts typically only show the music for one player, whereas full score layouts show the music of all players in the project.

Layouts can contain any combination of players and flows. They share the musical content of these players and flows, such as the notes each instrument plays. For example, when you change the pitch of a note in the full score, that note's pitch is also updated in the corresponding part layout.

You can control practically every aspect of page formatting in each layout independently, including note spacing, staff size, page size, margins, and casting off; that is, the positions of system breaks and page turns. Changing these aspects in one layout does not affect other layouts. For example, inserting systems breaks in a part layout does not change the casting off in the full score.

Similarly, you can change the visual appearance of many items only in one layout, without affecting other layouts, using local properties. For example, you can hide text items in the full score layout but show them in part layouts.

The default formatting of pages in layouts is determined by page templates. By default, full score layouts use a different page template set to part layouts; however, you can apply a different page template set to each layout.

Dorico Elements provides the following layout types:

Full score

A full score layout includes all players and all flows in your project by default. Full score layouts are concert pitch by default.

Dorico Elements automatically creates a single full score layout in every project.

Part

A part layout is automatically created when you add a player to your project. You can also create empty part layouts and assign players to them manually.

By default, instrumental part layouts contain all flows. They are also transposed pitch by default.

You can propagate the formatting of part layouts.

Custom score

A custom score layout initially does not contain any players or flows. This allows you to create your score manually and, for example, assign only one flow instead of all flows or only vocal and piano players to create a vocal score. Custom score layouts are concert pitch by default.

TIP

- You can create as many layouts of each type in each project as required.
- You can combine players, layouts, and flows together in any combination. For example, you might add all percussion players to a single part layout so that the performers can manage instrument changes themselves. In a large-scale work, you might also create a piano reduction for choir rehearsals, but only assign that piano player to the vocal score, meaning it does not appear in the orchestral full score at all.
- By default, respelling notes in score layouts also affects their spelling in all other layouts, but respelling notes in part layouts only affects their spelling in the current part layout.
- You can save options set in **Layout Options** as the default for score and part layouts independently. For example, full scores and part layouts often require different page and staff sizes.
- Deleting layouts does not delete any music from the project.

RELATED LINKS

Page formatting on page 555
Part formatting propagation on page 596
Flows on page 162
Players on page 120
Players, layouts, and flows on page 118
Page templates on page 599
Page template sets on page 600
Types of page templates on page 601
Applying page template sets to layouts on page 558
Properties on page 615
Local vs. global properties on page 616
Layout Options dialog on page 677
Player, layout, and instrument names on page 172
Renumbering layouts on page 171

Renaming layouts on page 174
Switching between layouts on page 43
Switching to galley/page view on page 50
Hiding/Showing staff labels on page 1181
Brackets according to ensemble type on page 778
Casting off on page 581
Condensing on page 595
Divisi on page 1199
Editing layout transposition text on page 895
Respelling notes on page 449
Hiding/Showing text items on page 1230

Creating layouts

You can create any number of full score, custom score, and part layouts in each project. By default, Dorico Elements creates a single full score layout and a part layout for each player.

PROCEDURE

- In Setup mode, in the **Layouts** panel, click one of the following layout types:
  - **Add Full Score Layout**
  - **Add Instrumental Part Layout**
  - **Add Custom Score Layout**

RESULT

The layout is added to the list of layouts in the **Layouts** panel.

NOTE

- Layouts are not available in the layout selector until you have assigned at least one player to them.
- You can also add new custom score layouts by pressing **Shift-L**.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

- You can assign players and flows to the layout.
- If you want to change the position of the new layout in the layouts list, you can reorder and renumber layouts.

RELATED LINKS

Layouts panel (Setup mode) on page 114
Workspace options on page 32
Reordering layouts on page 170
Renumbering layouts on page 171
Switching between layouts on page 43
Switching to galley/page view on page 50
Opening new tabs on page 45

Assigning players to layouts

By default, all players are included in full score layouts and each player is automatically assigned its own part layout. You can assign players to and exclude players from layouts manually; for

example, if you want to remove unnecessary players from the full score, or you want to add the soloists' music to the part for the accompanist.

PROCEDURE

1. In Setup mode, in the **Layouts** panel, select the layout whose assigned players you want to change.
2. In the **Players** panel, activate the checkbox in the card of each player you want to assign to the layout.

TIP

You can **Shift**-click to activate/deactivate the checkboxes in multiple player cards at once.

RESULT

Players are assigned to the selected layout when the checkbox in their player card is activated, and removed from the layout when the checkbox is deactivated. If you have not changed the name of the layout, it is automatically updated to reflect the players included in the layout.

RELATED LINKS

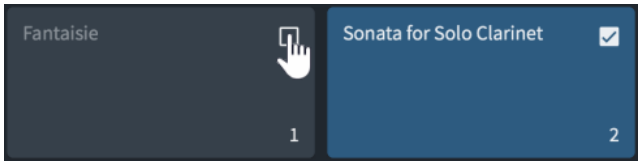
Players panel on page 107
Layouts panel (Setup mode) on page 114
Player, layout, and instrument names on page 172
Renaming layouts on page 174
Assigning players to flows on page 164

Assigning flows to layouts

By default, all flows in your project are added to all layouts. You can exclude flows that you do not want to show in a layout. You can assign flows to and remove flows from layouts manually; for example, if a flow in your project contains specific performance instructions for strings that you want to show in string part layouts but not in other part layouts.

PROCEDURE

1. In Setup mode, in the **Layouts** panel, select the layout whose assigned flows you want to change.
2. In the **Flows** panel, activate the checkbox in the flow card of each flow you want to assign to the layout.



TIP

You can **Shift**-click to activate/deactivate the checkboxes in multiple flow cards at once.

RESULT

Flows are assigned to the selected layout when the checkbox in their flow card is activated, and removed from the layout when the checkbox is deactivated.

Dorico Elements automatically creates enough pages to display the flows assigned to the layout.

RELATED LINKS

Layouts panel (Setup mode) on page 114
Flows panel on page 117

Making layouts transposing/concert pitch

You can change whether each layout in your project is transposing or concert pitch. In Dorico Elements, full score layouts are concert pitch and part layouts are transposing by default.

For example, full scores are often concert pitch, to show notes at their sounding pitch, but part layouts are transposing so the player can read the notes they must play in order to achieve the desired sounding pitch.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-L** to open **Layout Options**.
2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts you want to make transposing/non-transposing.

   By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar, clicking and dragging across multiple layouts, **Shift**-clicking adjacent layouts, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking individual layouts.
3. In the category list, click **Players**.
4. In the **Players** section, activate/deactivate **Transposing layout**.
5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

The selected layouts are transposed pitch when **Transposing layout** is activated, and concert pitch when it is deactivated.

TIP

You can also make layouts transposing by choosing **Edit** > **Transposed Pitch**, and concert pitch by choosing **Edit** > **Concert Pitch**. This automatically updates the layout option but only for the layout currently open in the music area.

RELATED LINKS

Transposing instruments on page 133
Fretted instrument tuning on page 138
Transposing selections on page 445
Changing the input pitch setting on page 218
Hiding/Showing clefs according to layout transpositions on page 817
Editing layout transposition text on page 895

Concert vs. transposed pitch

Layouts in Dorico Elements can use concert or transposed pitch. This affects the pitches and key signatures on staves belonging to transposing instruments.

Concert pitch

When music is in concert pitch, all notes are written as they sound. This means that players with transposing instruments reading music in concert pitch must transpose the music themselves. For example, if a clarinet in B♭ reads a C in concert pitch, they must play the note D on their instrument to produce the sounding note C.

Transposed pitch

When music is in transposed pitch, the notes written are the ones each instrument must play in order to produce the desired sounding pitch. For example, if a clarinet in B♭ reads a D in transposed pitch, the pitch that sounds from the instrument is C.

Transposed pitch layouts automatically transpose key signatures and chord symbols according to the transposition of the instrument. Transposing and concert pitch layouts can also use different clefs.

RELATED LINKS
Transposing selections on page 445
Enharmonic equivalent key signatures on page 915
Clefs with octave indicators on page 820
Capo vs. main chords on page 142
Editing layout transposition text on page 895

Reordering layouts

You can change the order in which layouts appear in the **Layouts** panel and the layout selector; for example, if you added a custom score layout and want it to be positioned at the top next to the full score layout.

PROCEDURE

1. In Setup mode, in the **Layouts** panel, select the layouts whose order you want to change.
2. Click and drag the selected layouts upwards/downwards.

RESULT

The selected layouts are moved to the specified position. This does not affect their layout numbers.

TIP

You can also automatically sort layouts according to their type by clicking **Sort Layouts** in the **Layouts** panel, which positions all full score layouts at the top, all part layouts in the middle, and all custom score layouts at the bottom.

You can click and hold or right-click **Sort Layouts** to change the setting to one of the following options:

- **Layout Number**
- **Instrument Score Order**

RELATED LINKS
Layouts panel (Setup mode) on page 114

Renumbering layouts

You can renumber all layouts according to their current position in the **Layouts** panel in Setup mode; for example, after you have dragged layouts to different positions.

PROCEDURE

1. In Setup mode, in the **Layouts** panel, select any layout.
2. In the action bar, click **Layout Settings** ··· and choose **Renumber Layouts**.

   TIP

   You can also right-click layouts and choose this option from the context menu.

RESULT

All layouts are renumbered according to their current position in the panel. Full score layouts, custom score layouts, and part layouts are all numbered separately.

Deleting layouts

You can delete layouts without removing the corresponding music from the project. For example, if you only want to use a combined Violin I and II part layout, you can delete their separate part layouts.

PROCEDURE

1. In Setup mode, in the **Layouts** panel, select the layouts that you want to delete.
2. Delete the selected layouts in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Backspace or Delete**.
   - In the **Layouts** panel, click **Delete Layout** 🗑.

RESULT

The selected layouts are deleted without removing any music from the project.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

You can later restore all the part layouts that Dorico Elements provides by default.

RELATED LINKS
Layouts panel (Setup mode) on page 114
Players, layouts, and flows on page 118

Restoring default layouts

You can recreate all the part layouts that Dorico Elements provides by default; for example, if you accidentally deleted some part layouts.

PROCEDURE

- In Setup mode, choose **Setup** > **Create Default Part Layouts**.

RESULT

The default set of part layouts is restored, recreating a single part layout for each player that contains all flows in the project. Any part layouts that were recreated are added at the bottom of the **Layouts** list. Their order matches the order of the corresponding players in the **Players** panel.

Player, layout, and instrument names

In Dorico Elements, you can use three different names to refer to the same player in different contexts. This allows you to show relevant information in different places, such as in staff labels and at the top of part layouts.

The following names relate to players and instruments:

Player name

The name of each player in the **Players** panel. They can be used in staff labels instead of instrument names.

Player names are automatically generated when you add instruments, and are linked to the corresponding instrument names until you rename the player.

Layout name

The name for each layout in the **Layouts** panel. By default, layout names appear with borders at the top of pages in part layouts that use the **First** page template.

Layout names for part layouts are automatically generated when you add instruments to the corresponding players, and are linked to the corresponding players' names until you rename the layout.

Instrument names

Used in staff labels by default. This means that the instrument label on each staff is relevant to the instrument or percussion kit currently being played by that player, rather than listing all instruments that player is playing in the flow.

For example, if a clarinettist is doubling bass clarinet, the staff label where the player plays clarinet automatically shows **Clarinet**, and the staff label automatically shows **Bass Clarinet** where the player plays bass clarinet.

All instruments in Dorico Elements come with a set of instrument names that you can change for individual instruments, independently of other players in the project holding the same instrument. You can change the language used for instrument names. You can also save changes to instrument names as default, which are then used whenever you add that instrument again in the current project and all future projects.

NOTE

- Changing the default instrument names does not change the instrument names of existing instruments of that type in your project.
- You can change various aspects of how instrument names appear in staff labels without changing instrument names, such as whether instrument transpositions are shown before or after instrument names.

RELATED LINKS

Instrument numbering on page 129
Page templates on page 599
Types of page templates on page 601
Tokens on page 607

Staff labels on page 1180
Instrument transpositions in staff labels on page 1185
Showing instrument/player names in staff labels on page 1184
Percussion legends on page 1295
Players on page 120
Layouts on page 165
Assigning players to layouts on page 167
Changing instrument names on page 175
Renaming player groups on page 160
Changing the language for instrument names on page 57

Renaming players

You can change the player names of players, and reset renamed players to their default names. Player names appear in guide instrument labels in galley view for players holding multiple instruments and can appear in staff labels.

PROCEDURE

1. In Setup mode, in the **Players** panel, select the player you want to rename.
2. In the action bar, click **Player Settings** ··· and choose **Rename Player** to open the **Rename Player** dialog.

   TIP

   You can also right-click players and choose this option from the context menu.
3. Enter new names or edit the existing names in the following fields:
   - **Full name**
   - **Short name**
4. Click **OK** to save your changes and close the dialog.

RESULT

The corresponding names for the selected player are changed. If you have not already renamed the corresponding part layout, its layout name is updated.

NOTE

- This does not affect staff labels that show instrument names, or the name at the top of part layouts if you have already renamed the layout. You can change instrument and layout names separately.
- Player names you have changed no longer get updated when you change the instruments or names of instruments held by the player.

RELATED LINKS

Players panel on page 107
Tokens on page 607
Changing instrument names on page 175
Renaming player groups on page 160
Moving instruments on page 137
Staff labels on page 1180
Showing instrument/player names in staff labels on page 1184
Switching to galley/page view on page 50

Resetting player names

You can reset both full and short player names to their defaults simultaneously. Default player names automatically update when you change the instruments or names of instruments held by the player.

PROCEDURE

1. In Setup mode, in the **Players** panel, select the player whose names you want to reset.
2. Press **Return** to open the player name text field.
3. Click **Reset to Default** .

RESULT

Both the full and short names for the corresponding player are reset to their defaults.

Renaming layouts

You can rename layouts and reset renamed layouts to their default name. By default, layout names appear with borders at the top of pages in part layouts that use the **First** page template.

PROCEDURE

1. In Setup mode, in the **Layouts** panel, select the layout you want to rename.
2. Press **Return** to open the layout name text field.
3. Rename the layout in any of the following ways:
   - Enter a new layout name or edit the existing name.
   - To revert the layout name to the player name, click **Reset to Default** .

   TIP

   If you want to include an accidental in the instrument transposition, you can enter the appropriate token, such as **{@flat@}** for ♭.
4. Press **Return**.

RESULT

The selected layout is renamed, or reverted to its default name.

NOTE

- Renaming layouts does not affect staff labels, which show either instrument or player names.
- Part layout names you have changed no longer get updated when you rename the corresponding players.

RELATED LINKS

Player, layout, and instrument names on page 172
Layouts panel (Setup mode) on page 114
Tokens on page 607
Page templates on page 599
Types of page templates on page 601
Staff labels on page 1180
Staff label contents on page 1184

Changing instrument names

By default, instrument names are used in staff labels and instrument change labels shown above the staff. You can change the different instrument names used for each instrument.

NOTE

- If you want to change instrument names because you want them to appear in a different language, you can instead change the default language for all instrument names.
- You can change various aspects of how instrument names appear in staff labels without changing instrument names, such as whether instrument transpositions are shown before or after instrument names.
- Changing instrument names does not change the name shown at the top of part layouts if you have already renamed the layout. You can rename layouts separately.

PROCEDURE

1. In Setup mode, in the **Players** panel, click the disclosure arrow in the card of the player holding the instrument whose names you want to change.

   This expands the card to show the instruments held by the player.
2. In the instrument label, click the instrument menu ··· and choose **Edit Names** to open the **Edit Instrument Names** dialog.
3. Enter new names in any of the name fields.
4. Optional: Activate **Save as default for instrument**.
5. Click **OK** to save your changes and close the dialog.

RESULT

The instrument names for the selected instrument are changed. If you have not already renamed the corresponding player, its player name is updated.

- If you did not save your changes as default, only the names of the selected instrument are changed. Any instruments of the same type added later or in future projects use the original default names.
- If you saved your changes as default, any instruments of the same type added later or in future projects use your new instrument names. This does not affect any existing instruments of that type unless you reset their names.

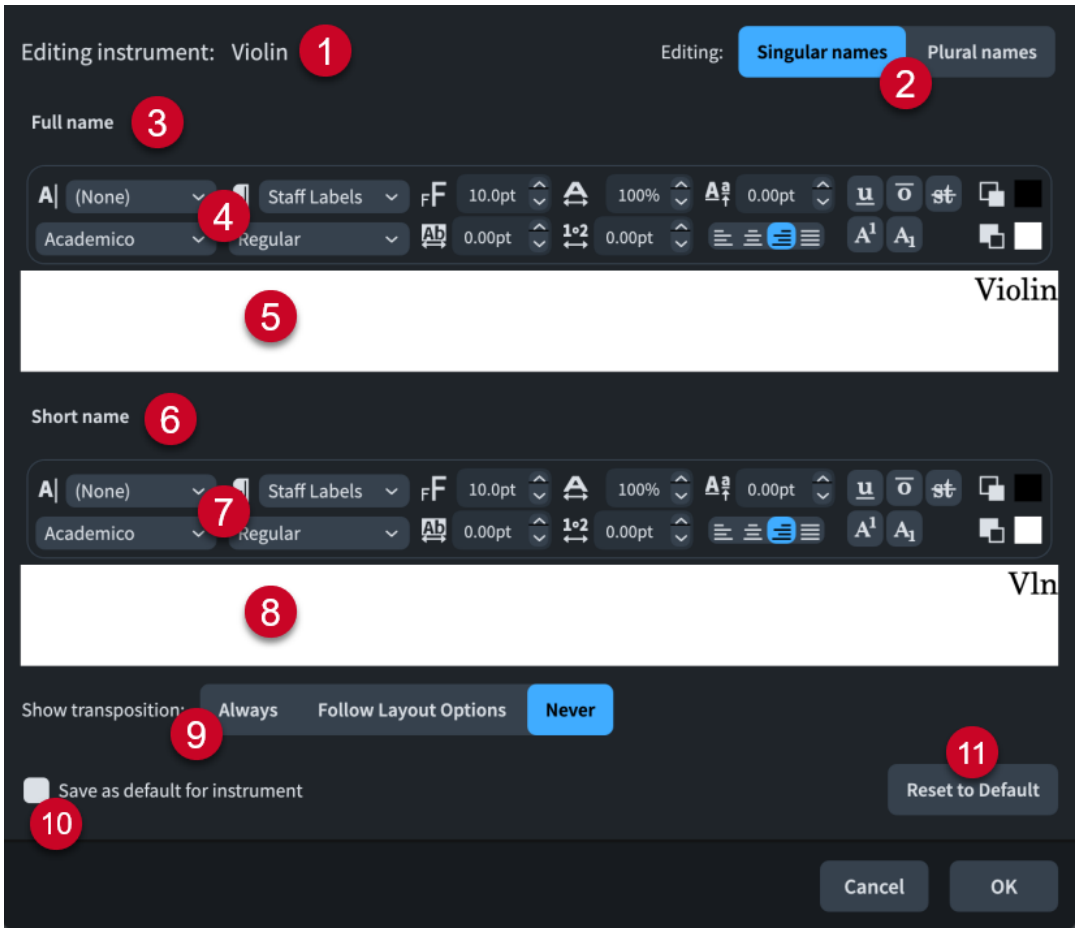
RELATED LINKS

Players panel on page 107
Instruments on page 127
Instrument changes on page 130
Instrument numbering on page 129
Player, layout, and instrument names on page 172
Staff labels on page 1180
Showing instrument/player names in staff labels on page 1184
Changing the appearance/position of instrument transpositions in staff labels on page 1186
Changing the language for instrument names on page 57
Editing the default instrument change label text on page 131

Edit Instrument Names dialog

The **Edit Instrument Names** dialog allows you to change the content and formatting of each instrument's names, which are used in staff labels and instrument change labels shown above the staff. You can edit both singular/plural full instrument names and singular/plural short instrument names.

- You can open the **Edit Instrument Names** dialog in Setup mode by clicking the instrument menu ··· in an instrument label in the **Players** panel and choosing **Edit Names**.



The **Edit Instrument Names** dialog contains the following options and sections:

1 **Editing instrument**

Displays the permanent underlying name of the instrument.

2 **Editing**

Allows you to switch between editing the **Singular names** and **Plural names** of the selected instrument.

Singular names are used when the staff contains one player, **Plural names** are used when the staff contains multiple players.

3 **Full name section**

Contains options that allow you to edit the appearance of the full instrument name.

4 **Full name text editor options**

Allows you to customize the font, size, and formatting of the selected part of the full instrument name.

5 **Full name text editing area**

Shows the current long name for the selected instrument, as it appears in **Full** staff labels. You can select any part of the instrument name and edit it independently of other parts; for example, if you want to add additional information on a new line and in italics. However, instrument names in instrument change labels are always shown on a single line.

Staff labels are right-aligned by default, so appear at the right edge of the text editing area.

6 **Short name section**

Contains options that allow you to edit the appearance of the short instrument name.

7 **Short name text editor options**

Allows you to customize the font, size, and formatting of the selected part of the short instrument name.

8 **Short name text editing area**

Shows the current short staff label for the selected instrument, as it appears in **Abbreviated** staff labels. You can select any part of the instrument name and edit it independently of other parts; for example, if you want to add additional information on a new line and in italics. However, instrument names in instrument change labels are always shown on a single line.

Staff labels are right-aligned by default, so appear at the right edge of the text editing area.

9 **Show transposition**

Allows you to choose when the transposition is shown in the instrument name for the selected instrument. It is common to see the transposition included in the name of transposing instruments, such as Clarinet in B♭.

You can choose when the transposition is shown from the following options:

- **Always**: Instrument transpositions are shown even if you have chosen to hide them on the **Staves and Systems** page in **Layout Options**.
- **Follow Layout Options**: Instrument transpositions can be hidden and shown, depending on your per-layout settings in **Layout Options**.
- **Never**: Instrument transpositions are never shown, even if you have chosen to show them in **Layout Options**.

10 **Save as default for instrument**

Activating the checkbox saves your changes in the dialog as the default. This affects all new instruments of that type that you add to the project and all future projects. It does not affect any existing instruments of that type unless you reset their names.

11 **Reset to Default**

Removes all your changes to the names of the selected instrument type and reverts them to the current default settings. If you changed the default name for an instrument type or the instrument name language setting after adding an instrument, resetting its names changes them to your new default names and language setting.

NOTE

Staff labels always use the horizontal alignment set for the paragraph style, they do not use the alignment set in the **Edit Instrument Names** dialog. This ensures consistent alignment across the whole system.

RELATED LINKS

Layout Options dialog on page 677
Changing the language for instrument names on page 57
Resetting instrument names on page 178
Staff labels on page 1180

Hiding/Showing staff labels on page 1181
Text editor options in Write mode on page 371

Resetting instrument names

You can reset all your changes to the names of individual instruments and revert them to the current default settings for their instrument type.

NOTE

Resetting instrument names does not change the name shown at the top of part layouts. If you want to change the name used at the top of part layouts, rename the layout.

PROCEDURE

1. In Setup mode, in the **Players** panel, click the disclosure arrow in the card of the player holding the instrument whose names you want to reset.

   This expands the card to show the instruments held by the player.
2. In the instrument label, click the instrument menu ··· and choose **Edit Names** to open the **Edit Instrument Names** dialog.
3. Click **Reset to Default**.
4. Click **OK** to save your changes and close the dialog.

RESULT

The instrument names for the selected instrument are reset to the current default settings for its instrument type. If you changed the default name for the instrument type or the instrument name language setting after adding the instrument, resetting its names changes them to your new default names and language setting.

TIP

You can assign a key command for **Reset Instrument Names** on the **Key Commands** page in **Preferences**, which resets all instrument names in the project to their default settings.

RELATED LINKS

Players panel on page 107
Key Commands page in the Preferences dialog on page 59
Renaming layouts on page 174
Changing the language for instrument names on page 57

Flow names and flow titles

Whenever you add a flow to a project, the default name of a flow is **Flow** plus an incremental number. In Dorico Elements, flows have both a flow name and a flow title, which are the same by default but can be different if, for example, you want to organize sketch versions of flows without affecting their displayed titles in the music.

Flow names

Set either in the **Flows** panel in Setup mode or in the flows list in the **Project Info** dialog.

Flow titles

Set in the **Title** field for each flow in the **Project Info** dialog.

Flow titles automatically match the flow name until you change the flow title independently. Changing flow titles removes the link between their flow title and flow name.

Titles shown in layouts are linked to the **Title** fields in the **Project Info** dialog, using the **{@projectTitle@}** and **{@flowTitle@}** tokens. This allows you to organize flows with different names to their displayed title in the music.

TIP

You can change both flow names and flow titles in the **Project Info** dialog, and you can also change flow names in the **Flows** panel in Setup mode.

RELATED LINKS
Tokens on page 607
Project Info dialog on page 75
Flows panel on page 117

Renaming flows

You can change the names of flows in Setup mode. This automatically updates the title of the corresponding flow until you change the title in the **Project Info** dialog.

PROCEDURE

1. In Setup mode, in the **Flows** panel, double-click the card of the flow you want to rename to open the flow name text field.
2. Enter a new name for the flow or edit the existing name.
3. Press **Return**.

RESULT

The name of the flow is changed. If you have not entered a different title for the flow in the **Project Info** dialog, the title shown in the music area is updated to match the new flow name.

TIP

You can also rename flows in the **Project Info** dialog.

RELATED LINKS
Flows panel on page 117

Changing flow titles

You can change flow titles in the **Project Info** dialog. Once you have done so, flow titles are no longer automatically changed if you change their flow name.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-I** to open the **Project Info** dialog.
2. Select the flow whose title you want to change in the flows list.
3. Enter a new title in the **Title** field.
4. Optional: Repeat steps 2 and 3 for other flows in your project.
5. Click **OK** to save your changes and close the dialog.

RESULT

The titles of the selected flows are changed.

NOTE

This breaks the link between flow names and the title shown in the music area.

RELATED LINKS

Project Info dialog on page 75

Videos

Dorico Elements supports the use of videos within the program as well as the associated notations, such as markers and timecodes, and allows you to find appropriate tempos based on where important markers occur.

Videos are a fast sequence of images that create the impression of a moving image. They can be any length, from only a few seconds up to several hours for feature-length films.

Videos in Dorico Elements are shown in a separate **Video** window and play back in sync with the music. Any existing audio in the video is also played back, and you can control the volume of this audio independently of the volume of the music.

TIP

You can use these features, including setting a project frame rate, without having a video attached.

RELATED LINKS

Adding videos on page 182
Frame rates on page 185
Timecodes on page 1103
Markers on page 1099
Changing the volume of video audio on page 184

Supported video formats

Dorico Elements uses the same video engine that was introduced in Cubase and Nuendo in 2017. It supports the most commonly-used video formats.

The following video formats are supported:

- MOV: Including H263, H264, Apple ProRes, DV/DVCPro and Avid DNxHR codecs
- MP4: Including H263 and H264
- AVI: Including DV/DVCPro and MJPEG/PhotoJPEG

All the common frame rates, such as 23.976, 24, 24.975, 25, 29.97, and 30 frames per second, are fully supported in Dorico Elements.

NOTE

- Videos with variable frame rates are not supported.
- Support for more formats is planned for future versions.

You can consult the Steinberg support site for more information about the supported formats as well as how to identify and change video formats.

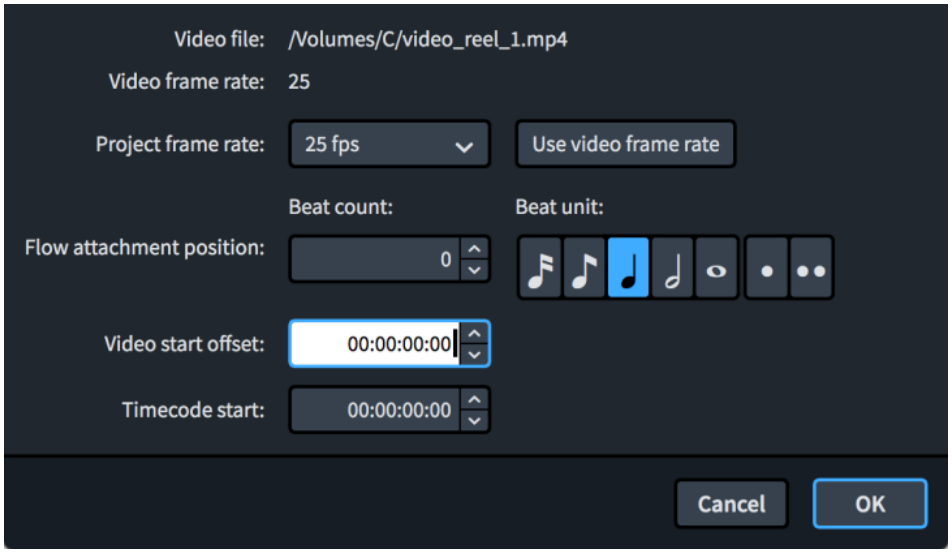
RELATED LINKS
Frame rates on page 185

Video Properties dialog

The **Video Properties** dialog allows you to change video-related settings, including their frame rate and start position.

- You can open the **Video Properties** dialog in Setup mode by right-clicking a flow in the **Flows** panel and choosing **Video** > **Properties** from the context menu.

  It also opens automatically when you add a new video.



The **Video Properties** dialog contains the following fields and options:

Video file

Shows the location of the video file on your computer. This field is read-only.

Video frame rate

Shows the frame rate of the video file. This field is read-only.

Project frame rate

Allows you to select a frame rate for your project from the menu. You can only have a single frame rate across the project.

Use video frame rate

Sets the project frame rate to be the same as the video file.

Flow attachment position

Allows you to set the rhythmic position at which the video attaches. This is set using the **Beat count** and **Beat unit** settings in combination, such as eight dotted quarter notes.

Video start offset

Allows you to set a position within the video that syncs with the flow attachment position; for example, you can set the fifth second of the video to attach to the start of the third bar.

Timecode start

Allows you to set the timecode at the start of the video. This also affects the timecode of the flow, but the initial timecode of the flow adjusts to accommodate the video. For example, if the initial timecode of the video is 02:00:00:00 but the video does not start until the start of the third bar in 4/4, the initial timecode of the flow is eight beats of time less than 02:00:00:00; if the tempo is 60 bpm, this makes the initial flow timecode 01:59:52:00.

NOTE

Flow timecodes are shown in their flow cards in the **Flows** panel.

RELATED LINKS
Timecodes on page 1103
Flows panel on page 117

Adding videos

You can add a video to each flow in your project. You can also follow these steps to reload videos previously added to the project that Dorico Elements can no longer locate.

Flows with missing videos show a warning icon ⚠ instead of the video icon in the flow card in the **Flows** panel. This can happen if you send a project to someone else without the video file.

PREREQUISITE

You have added at least one player to the project.

PROCEDURE

1. In Setup mode, in the **Flows** panel, right-click the flow to which you want to add/reload a video and choose **Video** > **Attach** from the context menu to open the File Explorer/macOS Finder.
2. Locate and select the video file you want to add.
3. Click **Open** to open the **Video Properties** dialog.
4. Change the settings as required.
5. Click **OK** to save your changes and close the dialog.

RESULT

The selected video file is added to the flow and is shown in the **Video** window. A video reel icon appears in the flow card in the **Flows** panel, beside a timecode indicating the combination of the **Video start offset** and **Timecode start**.

If you reloaded a video, all your previous settings are retained.

RELATED LINKS
Flows panel on page 117
Adding players on page 121
Timecodes on page 1103
Changing the initial timecode value on page 1104

Changing the start position of videos

You can change both the rhythmic position in the music at which videos start, and the position in the video that coincides with that rhythmic position; for example, if you want the fifth second of a video to sync with the start of the third bar of music.

PROCEDURE

1. In Setup mode, open the **Video Properties** dialog in one of the following ways:
   - Add a video to a flow.
   - In the **Flows** panel, right-click a flow and choose **Video** > **Properties** from the context menu.
2. Change the values for the following options, individually or together:
   - **Flow attachment position**
   - **Video start offset**
3. Click **OK** to save your changes and close the dialog.

RESULT

Changing the value for **Flow attachment position** changes the rhythmic position in the music at which the video starts.

Changing the value for **Video start offset** changes the position in the video that occurs at the **Flow attachment position**.

For example, if you change the **Video start offset** to **00:00:05:00** and the **Flow attachment position** to **8**, then the fifth second in the video happens on the eighth beat in the music.

NOTE

- The initial rhythmic position is 0. Therefore, if the **Flow attachment position** is set to **8** and the time signature is 4/4, the flow attachment occurs on the first beat in the third bar.
- Changing the **Video start offset** changes what part of the video coincides with the **Flow attachment position**, but this does not cut the video before this point. Any preceding video material is shown as long as it happens within the flow.

Hiding/Showing the Video window

You can hide and show the **Video** window at any time and in any mode; for example, if you do not want it in view when working on the music in the music area.

PROCEDURE

- Hide/Show the **Video** window in any of the following ways:
  - Press **F4**.
  - In the toolbar, click **Show Video** .
  - Choose **Window** > **Video**.

RELATED LINKS

Toolbar on page 31
Markers track on page 497

Changing the size of the Video window

You can change the size of the **Video** window at any time.

PREREQUISITE

The **Video** window is shown.

PROCEDURE

- Change the size of the **Video** window in any of the following ways:
  - Click and drag the corners/edges in any direction.
  - **Shift**-click and drag a corner/edge to change the size without changing the shape.

RESULT

The size of the **Video** window is changed. Dorico Elements saves the new size and shape and uses this for all projects until you change the size again.

Removing videos

You can remove videos from each flow independently.

PROCEDURE

- In Setup mode, in the **Flows** panel, right-click the flow from which you want to remove a video and choose **Video** > **Detach** from the context menu.

RESULT

The video is removed from the selected flow.

RELATED LINKS

Flows panel on page 117

Changing the volume of video audio

Any audio that is part of a video you have added is played back in sync with the music in the project. You can change the video volume manually.

PREREQUISITE

The Mixer is shown, either in the lower zone or in the **Mixer** window.

PROCEDURE

1. Optional: If the **Video** channel is not shown in the Mixer, click **Video** in the Mixer toolbar.
2. Do one of the following:
   - To change the volume of video audio, click and drag the **Video** channel fader upwards/downwards.
   - To mute video audio, click **Mute** m in the **Video** channel.

RESULT

The volume of audio from videos in your project is changed.

RELATED LINKS
Mixer panel on page 667
Mixer window on page 668
Muting/Soloing tracks on page 507
Deactivating mute/solo instrument states on page 508

Frame rates

The frame rate of a video is the number of still images that are used per unit of time in order to create the impression of a moving image, commonly measured in frames per second, or “fps”.

The number of frames per second required to create the impression of a moving image is determined by how fast the human eye processes movement, and so the most common frame rate is around 24 fps. However, recent major films have been released at 48 fps, which results in sharper images.

Dorico Elements supports frame rates from 23.976 fps to 60 fps. For example, the US and Canadian broadcast standard NTSC uses 29.97 fps.

Frame rates are closely linked to timecodes, as timecodes include both the time and the current frame position.

All the common frame rates, such as 23.976, 24, 24.975, 25, 29.97, and 30 frames per second, are fully supported in Dorico Elements.

By default, Dorico Elements uses the same frame rate for the project as the video file, but you can manually choose a different frame rate.

RELATED LINKS
Timecodes on page 1103

Changing the project frame rate

By default, Dorico Elements uses the video frame rate as the project frame rate. You can change the project frame rate if you want it to be different; for example, if your project contains multiple videos with different frame rates.

TIP

You can change the frame rate even if there are no videos in the project.

PROCEDURE

1. In Setup mode, open the **Video Properties** dialog in one of the following ways:
   - Add a video to a flow.
   - In the **Flows** panel, right-click a flow and choose **Video** > **Properties** from the context menu.
2. Select the frame rate you want to use for the project from the **Project frame rate** menu.
3. Click **OK** to save your changes and close the dialog.

RESULT

The project frame rate is changed.

Write mode

Write mode allows you to input and edit your music, including changing the rhythmic positions of items, changing the pitch of notes, and deleting notes and items. The available toolboxes and panels allow you to input all the notes and notation items that are most commonly used.

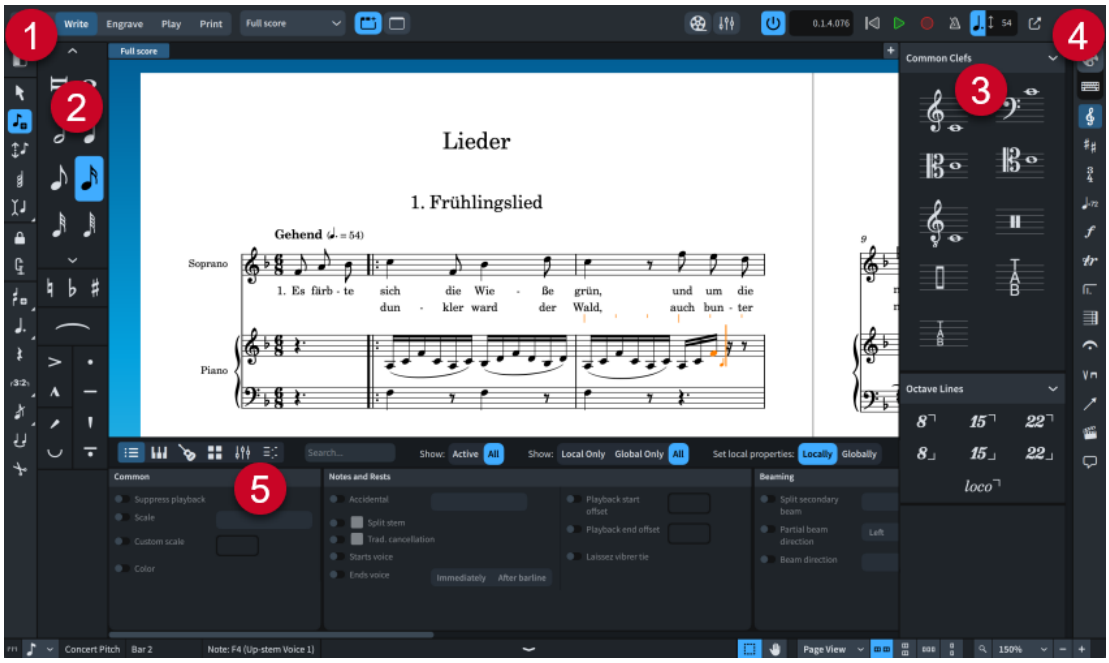
By design, you cannot move notes and items graphically in Write mode. Graphical adjustments are only possible in Engrave mode in Dorico Pro.

Project window in Write mode

The project window in Write mode contains toolboxes and panels with the tools and functions required to write your music.

You can switch to Write mode in any of the following ways:

- Press **Ctrl/Cmd-2**.
- In the toolbar, click **Write**.
- Choose **Window** > **Write**.



The following zones and toolboxes are available in Write mode:

1 Notes toolbox

Contains tools that affect note input and editing.

2 Left zone

Contains the Notes panel. The Notes panel provides the note durations, accidentals, and articulations that are most commonly used during note input.

3 Right zone

Can display different panels, according to the current selection in the Notations toolbox. Panels in the right zone contain notation items that you can add to your music, such as dynamics and playing techniques, divided into separate categories.

4 **Notations toolbox**

Contains either panel or popover buttons, depending on whether **Panels** or **Popovers** is active.

Allows you to show panels for different notations in the right zone, open popovers, and input certain items directly, such as rehearsal marks and text.

5 **Lower zone**

Can display different panels, according to the current selection in the lower zone toolbar. Panels in the lower zone include the Properties panel, which allows you to make individual modifications to the currently selected notes and notations, and the Keyboard panel, which allows you to input notes.

RELATED LINKS
Lower zone (Write mode) on page 196
Properties panel on page 615
Mixer panel on page 667
Copying property settings to other layouts/frame chains on page 599

Notes toolbox

The tools in the Notes toolbox allow you to start note input, modify notes, and change the type and scope of notes you input. The Notes toolbox is located on the left of the window in Write mode.

Show Left Zone

Hides/Shows the left zone.

Select

Activates/Deactivates mouse input. When **Select** is activated, mouse input is deactivated and you cannot input notes by clicking on the staff.

TIP

You can assign a key command for **Disable Mouse Input** on the **Key Commands** page in **Preferences**.

Start Note Input

Starts/Stops note input by showing/hiding the caret. If a note, rest, or item is selected in the music area, note input starts at the selected rhythmic position. If nothing is selected in the music area, note input starts at the earliest rhythmic position on the top staff in view.

Pitch Before Duration

When this option is activated, you can select the pitch before specifying the duration during note input. This allows you to experiment with pitches without having to stop note input because you only input the note when you specify the duration.

You can also activate/deactivate **Pitch Before Duration** by pressing **K**.

Chords

Allows you to add multiple notes at the same rhythmic position in order to build a chord during note input. This function prevents the caret from advancing automatically after inputting a note. Chord mode also affects some edits outside of note input, such as copying/pasting notes and items without overwriting existing material.

You can also start/stop chord input by pressing **Q**.

Insert

Allows you to insert notes before existing notes in the current voice ahead of the caret, instead of overwriting them, during note input. Insert mode also affects some edits outside of note input, such as deleting notes or changing their duration. For example, reducing the duration of notes with Insert mode activated pulls them closer together without leaving rests between the notes.

When inputting or changing time signatures, Insert mode instructs Dorico Elements to add any extra beats required to fill bars.

You can click and hold or right-click **Insert** to access the following options:

- **Voice** : Insert mode only affects the selected voices.
- **Player** : Insert mode affects all voices and instruments belonging to the selected players.
- **Global** : Insert mode affects all players in the flow.
- **Global Adjustment of Current Bar** : Insert mode affects all players in the flow, changes the duration of the current bar, and updates its time signature to reflect its new duration.

You can also activate/deactivate Insert mode by pressing **I**. You can cycle through the different Insert mode scopes by pressing **Alt/Opt-I**.

Lock to Duration

Allows you to maintain the duration of notes while you change their pitches. Only available during note input.

You can also activate/deactivate **Lock to Duration** by pressing **L**.

Force Duration

Allows you to input notes/rests with the explicit duration you have selected during note input, and fixes the current notated duration of existing notes outside of note input. For example, you can activate **Force Duration** to force the input of a dotted quarter note on the second quarter beat of 4/4, where Dorico Elements splits the note with a tie by default.

IMPORTANT

You can get unexpected results if you force the duration of notes and later change the time signature or move barlines, for example.

You can remove **Force Duration** from selected notes by resetting their appearance.

You can also activate/deactivate **Force Duration** by pressing **O**.

Create Voice

Allows you to create a new voice on the current staff into which you can input notes during note input. Outside of note input, **Create Voice** allows you to change the voice of existing notes.

You can click and hold or right-click **Create Voice** to access the following options:

- **Create Voice** : Creates a new voice on the current staff. You can also use the key command **Shift-V**.
- **Create Slash Voice** : Creates a new slash voice with each click. For example, the third new slash voice is stemless. You can also use the key command **Shift-Alt/Opt-V**.
- **Next Voice** : Cycles through active voices on the staff. You can also use the key command **V**.

Dotted Notes

Allows you to input dotted notes/rests based on the currently selected duration during note input. Outside of note input, **Dotted Notes** allows you to add rhythm dots to, and remove rhythm dots from, existing notes/rests.

You can click and hold or right-click **Dotted Notes** to access the following options:

- **One Rhythm Dot** : Inputs notes/rests with one rhythm dot during note input. Adds one rhythm dot to selected existing notes/rests outside of note input.
- **Two Rhythm Dots** : Inputs notes/rests with two rhythm dots during note input. Adds two rhythm dots to selected existing notes/rests outside of note input.
- **Three Rhythm Dots** : Inputs notes/rests with three rhythm dots during note input. Adds three rhythm dots to selected existing notes/rests outside of note input.
- **Four Rhythm Dots** : Inputs notes/rests with four rhythm dots during note input. Adds four rhythm dots to selected existing notes/rests outside of note input.

You can also activate/deactivate **Dotted Notes** by pressing **.**. You can cycle through the different numbers of rhythm dots by pressing **Alt/Opt-.**.

Rests

Allows you to input rests of the currently selected duration instead of notes.

You can also start/stop rest input by pressing **,**.

NOTE

If **Force Duration** is not activated, Dorico Elements automatically combines adjacent rests as appropriate for their position in relation to notes and according to the current meter.

Tuplets

Inputs a triplet based on the currently selected note duration at the caret position or at the selected rhythmic position.

You can click and hold or right-click **Tuplets** to access the following options:

- **2:3** : Inputs a duplet; that is, two notes in the space of three.
- **3:2** : Inputs a triplet; that is, three notes in the space of two.
- **4:3** : Inputs a quadruplet; that is, four notes in the space of three.
- **5:4** : Inputs a quintuplet; that is, five notes in the space of four.
- **6:4** : Inputs a sextuplet; that is, six notes in the space of four.
- **7:8** : Inputs a septuplet; that is, seven notes in the space of eight.
- **x:y** : Opens the tuplets popover, into which you can enter any tuplet ratio.

Grace Notes

Allows you to input grace notes instead of normal notes at the caret position. Only available during note input.

You can click and hold or right-click **Grace Notes** to access the following options:

- **Unslashed Grace Notes** : Selects unslashed grace notes.
- **Slashed Grace Notes** : Selects slashed grace notes.

You can also start/stop grace note input by pressing **/**. You can switch between slashed/unslashed grace notes by pressing **Alt/Opt-/**.

Tie

During note input, this ties the next note you input to the previous note of the same pitch, in the same voice, and on the same staff. Outside of note input, you can use this tool to tie together notes of the same pitch in different voices or to tie grace notes to rhythmic notes.

You can also activate **Tie** by pressing **T**.

NOTE

You cannot deactivate **Tie**. If you want to delete ties, you must use **Scissors**.

Scissors

Splits notes and explicit rests in two at the caret position during note input. Outside of note input, it deletes all ties in tie chains.

You can also activate **Scissors** by pressing **U**.

RELATED LINKS
Key Commands page in the Preferences dialog on page 59
Activating/Deactivating mouse input on page 219
Inputting notes with rhythm dots on page 219
Inputting chords on page 240
Inputting grace notes on page 239
Inputting tuplets on page 243
Tuplets popover on page 244
Input methods for time signatures and pick-up bars on page 270
Resetting the appearance of items on page 415

Notes panel

The Notes panel contains buttons that allow you to select note and rest durations, and to input accidentals, slurs, and articulations. It is located on the left of the window in Write mode.

You can hide/show the Notes panel in any of the following ways:

- Press **Ctrl/Cmd-7**.
- In the toolbox on the left, click **Show Left Zone**.
- Choose **Window** > **Show Left Zone**.

The upper part of the Notes panel contains note durations that you can select for input or to change the duration of existing notes. By default, only the most common note durations are shown. You can see all note durations by clicking the **Show/Hide All Notes** disclosure arrows at the top and bottom of the section.

In the middle part of the Notes panel, you can activate/deactivate accidentals and activate slurs.

In the bottom part of the Notes panel, you can activate/deactivate articulations.

RELATED LINKS
Inputting notes on page 211

Inputting accidentals on page 233
Inputting articulations on page 259
Inputting slurs on page 260
Inputting nested slurs on page 1167
Deleting notes/items on page 431
Deleting accidentals on page 712
Deleting articulations on page 724

Notations toolbox

The Notations toolbox allows you to access panels and popovers, which you can use to input the different notations available. It is located on the right of the window in Write mode.

Panels

Allows you to access panels from the Notations toolbox. Panels allow you to input notations by clicking them in the panel.

Popovers

Allows you to access popovers from the Notations toolbox. Popovers allow you to input notations by typing entries on your computer keyboard. Popovers open above the top staff on which the caret is active or an item is selected, and at the caret position or the rhythmic position of the earliest selected item.

NOTE

Popovers are only available during note input or when at least one note/item is selected in the music area.

Panel buttons

Clefs

Hides/Shows the Clefs panel, which contains sections for clefs and octave lines.

Key Signatures, Tonality Systems, and Accidentals

Hides/Shows the Key Signatures, Tonality Systems, and Accidentals panel, which contains sections for key signatures, tonality systems, and accidentals. You can also create and edit custom tonality systems from this panel.

Time Signatures (Meter)

Hides/Shows the Time Signatures (Meter) panel, which contains sections for the different types of time signatures, including a section where you can create custom time signatures, such as interchangeable time signatures and time signatures with pick-up bars.

Tempo

Hides/Shows the Tempo panel, which contains sections for the different types of tempo changes, including gradual tempo changes, metronome marks, and tempo equations.

Dynamics

Hides/Shows the Dynamics panel, which contains sections for the different types of dynamics, including immediate, gradual, and custom combined dynamics.

Ornaments

Hides/Shows the Ornaments panel, which contains sections for ornaments, arpeggio signs, glissando lines, and guitar techniques.

Repeat Structures

Hides/Shows the Repeat Structures panel, which contains sections for the different types of repeat structures, including repeat endings and segments, repeat markers, single-note and multi-note tremolos, bar repeats, and slash regions.

Bars and Barlines

Hides/Shows the Bars and Barlines panel, which contains sections for bars, bar rests, and barlines.

Holds and Pauses

Hides/Shows the Holds and Pauses panel, which contains sections for fermatas, breath marks, and caesuras.

Playing Techniques

Hides/Shows the Playing Techniques panel, which contains sections for the various instrument family groups. Each section contains playing techniques for the corresponding instrument family.

Lines

Hides/Shows the Lines panel, which contains sections for horizontal and vertical lines.

Video

Hides/Shows the Video panel, which allows you to open the **Video Properties** dialog, view and edit markers in the current flow, and to calculate suitable tempos for important markers.

Comments

Hides/Shows the Comments panel, which allows you to view, edit, and export comments in the current flow.

Popover and direct input buttons

Clefs

Opens the clefs and octave lines popover.

Key Signatures, Tonality Systems, and Accidentals

Opens the key signatures popover.

Time Signatures (Meter)

Opens the time signatures popover.

Tempo

Opens the tempo popover.

Dynamics

Opens the dynamics popover.

Ornaments

Opens the ornaments popover.

Repeat Structures

Opens the repeats popover.

Bars and Barlines

Opens the bars and barlines popover.

Holds and Pauses

Opens the holds and pauses popover.

Playing Techniques

Opens the playing techniques popover.

Rehearsal Marks

Inputs a rehearsal mark.

Text

Opens the text editor for inputting text items.

Lyrics

Opens the lyrics popover.

Chord Symbols

Opens the chord symbols popover.

Note Tools

Opens the note tools popover.

Fingering

Opens the fingerings popover.

Figured Bass

Opens the figured bass popover.

RELATED LINKS
Project window in Write mode on page 186
Notations input on page 259
Note tools popover on page 462
Text editor options in Write mode on page 371
Video Properties dialog on page 181
Comment dialog on page 471

Right zone (Write mode)

The right zone in Write mode can display different panels for the available notation items, according to your selection in the Notations toolbox. You can use panels in the right zone to input notations. The right zone is located on the right of the window in Write mode.

You can hide/show the right zone in any of the following ways; for example, if you want to find a notation to input but then want to increase the size of the music area after inputting it:

- Press **Ctrl/Cmd-9**.
- In the Notations toolbox, click the button for any panel you want to show, or the active button for the panel you want to hide.
- Choose **Window** > **Show Right Zone**.

RELATED LINKS
Hiding/Showing zones on page 44
Clefs panel on page 316
Key Signatures, Tonality Systems, and Accidentals panel on page 267

Time Signatures (Meter) panel on page 273
Tempo panel on page 283
Dynamics panel on page 298
Ornaments panel on page 330
Repeat Structures panel on page 390
Bars and Barlines panel on page 290
Holds and Pauses panel on page 322
Playing Techniques panel on page 355
Lines panel on page 367
Video panel on page 384
Comments panel on page 472

Lower zone (Write mode)

The lower zone in Write mode can display different panels for inputting notes and editing notes/items.

You can hide/show the lower zone in any of the following ways:

- Press **Ctrl/Cmd-8**.
- Click the disclosure arrow at the bottom of the main window.
- Choose **Window** > **Show Lower Zone**.

You can use the panel selectors in the top left of the lower zone to display the corresponding panel:

Properties

Shows the Properties panel, which allows you to edit individual notes and notations, such as by changing their appearance or position.

Keyboard

Shows the Keyboard panel, which allows you to input notes using a piano keyboard layout and displays the pitches of selected notes as depressed keys.

Fretboard

Shows the Fretboard panel, which allows you to input notes for fretted instruments using the corresponding fretboard layout for the selected instrument type.

Drum Pads

Shows the Drum Pads panel, which allows you to input notes for unpitched percussion instruments using a drum pads layout.

Mixer

Shows the Mixer panel, which allows you to control the sounds produced in playback by instruments in the project, both for the master output and each individual instrument's channel.

Key Editor

Shows the Key Editor panel, which allows you to view and edit notes belonging to the selected instrument in a continuous piano roll.

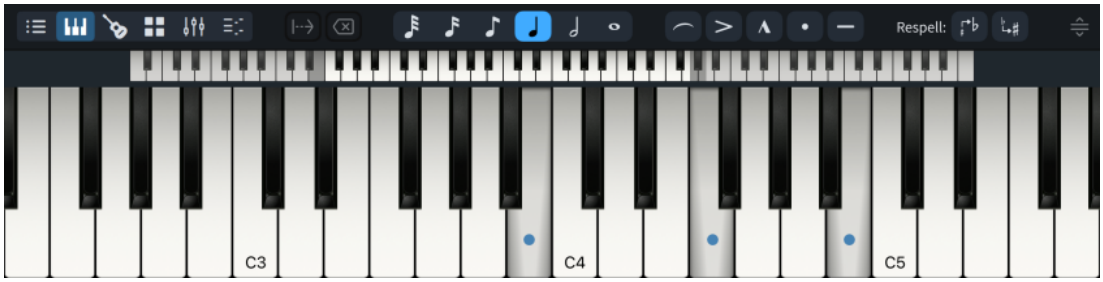
RELATED LINKS
Hiding/Showing zones on page 44
Properties panel on page 615
Keyboard panel on page 197
Fretboard panel on page 199
Drum Pads panel on page 200
Mixer panel on page 667
Key Editor panel on page 619
Note input on page 210
Notations input on page 259

Keyboard panel

The Keyboard panel allows you to input notes using a piano keyboard layout, and displays selected notes and sounding notes in playback as depressed keys with blue dots. It is located in the lower zone at the bottom of the window in Write mode.

During note input, the notes you press in the Keyboard panel are input. Outside of note input, Dorico Elements plays the notes you press using the instrument sounds of your most recent selection but does not input them.

- You can show the Keyboard panel by showing the lower zone, then clicking **Keyboard** in the lower zone toolbar.



Between the toolbar and the keyboard, there is a keyboard range selector. The brighter keys indicate the keys shown in the panel. The shaded keys at each end of the range allow you to change the keys shown in the panel; for example, if you want to show fewer, wider keys.

The Keyboard panel toolbar contains the following options:

Advance Caret

Advances the caret by the currently selected note duration without inputting notes. Extends notations with duration, such as gradual dynamics and pedal lines. Only available during note input.

You can also advance the caret by pressing **Space**.

Delete Left

Deletes notes at the previous rhythmic position and moves the caret back to that position. Only available during note input.

You can also delete notes/items during note input by pressing **Backspace**.

TIP

You can delete notes/items outside of note input by pressing **Backspace or Delete**.

Set Note Duration

Allows you to select a note duration, both for the next notes you input during note input and to change the duration of existing notes outside of note input.

You can also select note durations by pressing the corresponding key command or by clicking note durations in the Notes panel in the left zone.

Slur

Inputs a slur, starting from the currently selected note or spanning the selected notes. During note input, slurs extend automatically as you input notes.

You can also input slurs by pressing **S**.

Set Articulation

Allows you to activate/deactivate articulations, both for the next notes you input during note input and to add articulations to existing notes.

You can also activate/deactivate articulations by pressing the corresponding key command.

NOTE

Notes cannot have both accent and marcato articulations, or both staccato and tenuto articulations.

Respell Using Note Name Above

Respells the selected notes upwards to show the enharmonic equivalent using the note name above; for example, respelling F♯ as G♭.

Respell Using Note Name Below

Respells the selected notes downwards to show the enharmonic equivalent using the note name below, such as respelling G♭ as F♯.

Resize Lower Zone

Allows you to change the height of the lower zone.

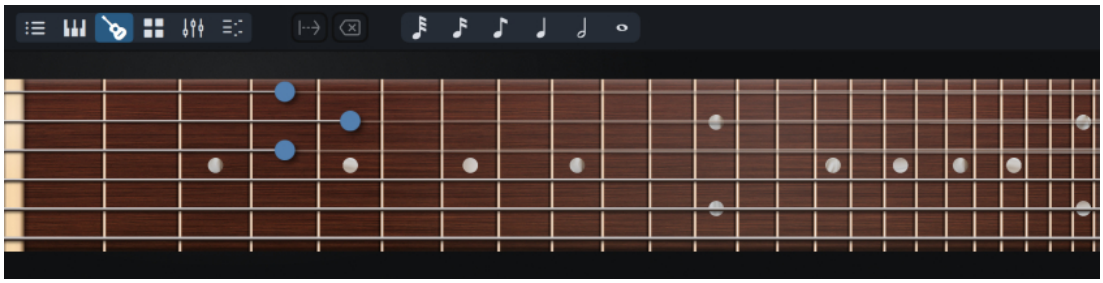
RELATED LINKS
Caret on page 205
Notes panel on page 191
Hiding/Showing zones on page 44
Inputting notes on page 211
Inputting chords on page 240
Deleting notes/items on page 431
Selecting note/rest durations on page 247
Inputting slurs on page 260
Inputting articulations on page 259
Respelling notes on page 449

Fretboard panel

The Fretboard panel allows you to input notes for fretted instruments using the corresponding fretboard layout for the selected instrument type, and displays the pitches of the earliest selected notes as stopped strings with blue dots. It is located in the lower zone at the bottom of the window in Write mode.

During note input, the notes you press in the Fretboard panel are input. Outside of note input, Dorico Elements plays the notes you press using the instrument sounds of your most recent selection but does not input them.

- You can show the Fretboard panel by showing the lower zone, then clicking **Fretboard** in the lower zone toolbar.



The Fretboard panel toolbar contains the following options:

Advance Caret

Advances the caret by the currently selected note duration without inputting notes. Extends notations with duration, such as gradual dynamics and pedal lines. Only available during note input.

You can also advance the caret by pressing **Space**.

Delete Left

Deletes notes at the previous rhythmic position and moves the caret back to that position. Only available during note input.

You can also delete notes/items during note input by pressing **Backspace**.

TIP

You can delete notes/items outside of note input by pressing **Backspace or Delete**.

Set Note Duration

Allows you to select a note duration, both for the next notes you input during note input and to change the duration of existing notes outside of note input.

You can also select note durations by pressing the corresponding key command or by clicking note durations in the Notes panel in the left zone.

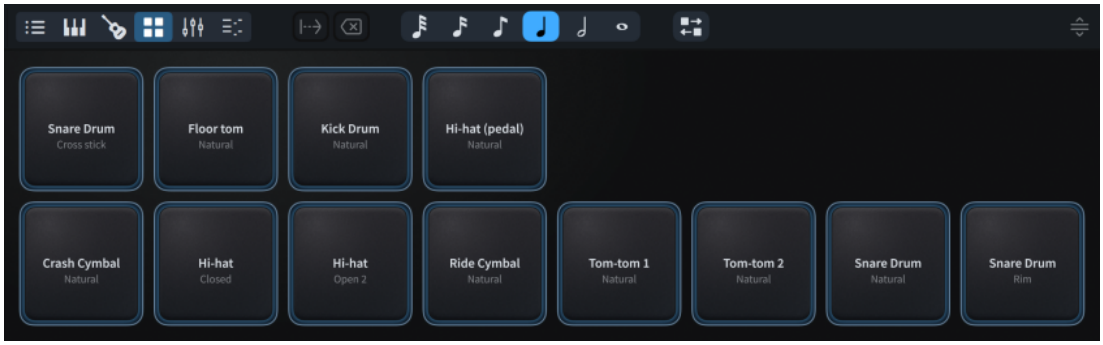
RELATED LINKS
Caret on page 205
Notes panel on page 191
Hiding/Showing zones on page 44
Inputting notes on page 211
Inputting notes on tablature on page 232
Inputting chords on page 240
Deleting notes/items on page 431
Selecting note/rest durations on page 247
Fretted instrument tuning on page 138
Tablature on page 1200
Hiding/Showing notation staves and tablature on page 1201

Drum Pads panel

The Drum Pads panel allows you to input notes for unpitched percussion instruments using a drum pads layout. It is located in the lower zone at the bottom of the window in Write mode.

During note input, the notes you press in the Drum Pads panel are input. Outside of note input, Dorico Elements plays sounds for the instruments and techniques you press but does not input them.

- You can show the Drum Pads panel by showing the lower zone, then clicking **Drum Pads** in the lower zone toolbar.



The Drum Pads panel toolbar contains the following options:

Advance Caret

Advances the caret by the currently selected note duration without inputting notes. Extends notations with duration, such as gradual dynamics and pedal lines. Only available during note input.

You can also advance the caret by pressing **Space**.

Delete Left

Deletes notes at the previous rhythmic position and moves the caret back to that position. Only available during note input.

You can also delete notes/items during note input by pressing **Backspace**.

TIP

You can delete notes/items outside of note input by pressing **Backspace or Delete**.

Set Note Duration

Allows you to select a note duration, both for the next notes you input during note input and to change the duration of existing notes outside of note input.

You can also select note durations by pressing the corresponding key command or by clicking note durations in the Notes panel in the left zone.

Reorder Drum Pads

Allows you to move drum pads in relation to each other; for example, to create a different arrangement for easier input in different circumstances.

Resize Lower Zone

Allows you to change the height of the lower zone.

RELATED LINKS
Caret on page 205
Notes panel on page 191
Hiding/Showing zones on page 44
Inputting notes for unpitched percussion on page 227
Deleting notes/items on page 431
Selecting note/rest durations on page 247
Unpitched percussion on page 1282
Percussion kits and drum sets on page 1289
Percussion kit presentation types on page 1293
Voices in percussion kits on page 1300

Inputting vs. editing

Dorico Elements distinguishes the processes for inputting and editing music.

Inputting

If you can see the caret, you are inputting new music. The caret must be activated in order to input notes and notations. If the caret is activated, selecting tools or items in the Notes toolbox and the Notes panel affects the note or chord that you are about to input, as you can specify the duration, rhythm dot, accidentals, and articulations. Then you specify the pitch by clicking the note into the score, by pressing the letter name of the note on your computer keyboard, or by playing the note or chord on your MIDI keyboard.

When the caret is activated, notes and notations are input at the caret position.

If no notes or chords are selected in the music area and you select a duration, either by pressing its key command or by clicking it in the Notes panel, mouse input is activated. If you move the mouse pointer over the staff, a shadow note is displayed to indicate where the note will be input if you click.

NOTE

Deactivating mouse input prevents Dorico Elements from starting mouse input in this circumstance.

Editing

If you cannot see the caret, you can edit existing music. Editing music includes deleting notes and notations, which you can only do in Write mode, although you can also delete notes in the Key Editor. You can switch back and forth between inputting and editing at any time.

When the caret is not activated, new items are input at the position of the first selected item in the music area. If there is no selection, the mouse pointer is loaded with the new item. The item is then created at the location where you click.

To edit existing notes and notations, you must select them in the music area. This allows you to update the selected notes or items when you select, for example, new note durations, accidentals, or articulations in the Notes panel.

We recommend that you spend a moment to understand the difference between how Dorico Elements behaves if the caret is shown and if it is not. In the latter case, all editing functions operate on the items that you have selected in the music area.

NOTE

The results of some edits outside of note input, including copying/pasting notes, can be affected by Insert mode and Chord mode.

RELATED LINKS
Editing items on page 409
Selecting notes/items on page 401
Caret on page 205
Note input on page 210
Notations input on page 259
Rhythmic grid on page 204
Insert mode on page 427
Chord mode on page 242
Key Editor on page 619

Mouse input settings

There are a number of different settings that you can choose from to determine how mouse input functions in Dorico Elements.

You can set your preferences for mouse input in the **Editing** section of the **Note Input and Editing** page in **Preferences**.

You can choose between the following options for mouse input:

- **Create item at selection**: Items are input at the position of selected items or notes in the music area.
- **Load pointer with item**: Items are loaded onto the mouse pointer so you can click in the music area where you want to input the item.

You can also activate/deactivate **Allow multiple items to be created with the mouse**. When this option is activated, you can load an item onto your mouse pointer and input the same item in the music area multiple times without having to reselect the item each time you input it. When this option is deactivated, you can only input an item loaded onto your mouse pointer once. If you want to input the item at multiple positions, you must reselect it each time.

NOTE

Changing your preferences permanently changes the functionality for the current project and all new projects.

RELATED LINKS
Preferences dialog on page 58

Changing your mouse input settings

You can change your mouse input settings; for example, if you want to load a playing technique on the pointer once and input it in multiple places without having to reselect the playing technique each time.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-,** to open **Preferences**.
2. In the category list, click **Note Input and Editing**.
3. In the **Editing** section, choose one of the following options for **Creating items with the mouse**:
   - **Create item at selection**
   - **Load pointer with item**
4. Optional: If you chose **Load pointer with item**, activate/deactivate **Allow multiple items to be created with the mouse**.
5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

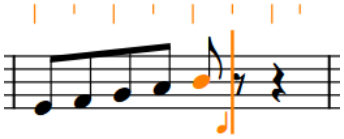
RESULT

Your mouse input settings are changed in the current project and for all future projects.

RELATED LINKS
Notations input on page 259

Rhythmic grid

The rhythmic grid is a unit of rhythmic duration whose value affects certain aspects of inputting and editing, such as the amount by which items move. However, it does not control the duration of notes and items that you input.



Rhythmic grid set to eighth notes (quavers) shown above the staff

The current rhythmic grid resolution is shown by the note value in the status bar, and by ruler markings above the staff on which the caret is active. Longer lines in the rhythmic grid indicate beat divisions, while shorter lines indicate beat subdivisions.

The rhythmic grid controls the following:

- The possible input positions when using the caret or the mouse, and when copying and pasting. For example, setting the rhythmic grid resolution to 32nd notes allows you to input notes and items at a greater number of possible rhythmic positions than when the rhythmic grid is set to quarter notes.
- The amount by which the caret moves when using **Right Arrow** / **Left Arrow**.
- The amount by which notes and items are lengthened/shortened.
- The amount by which notes and items move.
- The duration by which notes are split.

RELATED LINKS
Rhythmic position on page 26
Caret on page 205
Moving the caret manually on page 210
Changing the Key Editor rhythmic grid resolution on page 626
Inputting notes on page 211
Splitting notes by duration on page 249
Changing music area colors on page 54

Changing the rhythmic grid resolution

You can change the resolution of the rhythmic grid; for example, you might decrease the rhythmic grid resolution so you can shorten notes by smaller increments. The resolution is indicated by the note value symbol in the status bar and by the beat divisions/subdivisions in the ruler markings above the caret.

The rhythmic grid resolution is set to eighth notes (quavers) by default.

PROCEDURE

- Change the resolution of the rhythmic grid in any of the following ways:
  - To decrease the rhythmic grid resolution, press **Alt/Opt-]**.
  - To increase the rhythmic grid resolution, press **Alt/Opt-[**.
  - Choose **Write** > **Rhythmic Grid** > **Decrease Grid Resolution**.
  - Choose **Write** > **Rhythmic Grid** > **Increase Grid Resolution**.
  - Choose **Write** > **Rhythmic Grid** > **[Beat division]**.

- Select a value from the **Rhythmic Grid** selector in the status bar.

RESULT

Decreasing the rhythmic grid resolution makes it finer by making the note value shorter. Increasing the rhythmic grid resolution makes it coarser by making the note value longer.

RELATED LINKS

Status bar on page 39
Changing the Key Editor rhythmic grid resolution on page 626
Changing the duration of notes on page 248
Lengthening/Shortening items on page 410
Moving notes/items rhythmically on page 437

Caret

In Dorico Elements, the caret is a vertical line that extends above and below five-line staves but appears shorter on percussion staves and tablature. It shows the rhythmic position at which notes, chords, or notation items are input, which can be partway through tie chains.

A caret is a mark that is commonly used when proofreading published text to denote the position at which something should be inserted or added; for example, a missing letter or a word. In software, the caret shows where something is inserted. The caret is also known as an “insertion point” or “cursor”. In this documentation, we use “caret” to refer to the line that appears during note input, and “cursor” to refer to the line that appears during text input.

If you are inputting notes, the caret advances to the next rhythmic position automatically. If you are inputting chords or notes on tablature, the caret does not move automatically, and you must move it to the next rhythmic position manually.

The caret has a note symbol beside it, which indicates the stem direction and type of the currently selected voice. It is accompanied by a + symbol if the voice is new.

The caret

The appearance of the caret changes depending on the input mode and the currently selected voice number.

Multiple staves

The caret extends vertically across all the staves onto which notes and notations will be input. This allows you to input, for example, the same dynamics or playing techniques on multiple staves simultaneously or play in chords on a MIDI keyboard and distribute the notes in those chords onto multiple staves. The note symbol and rhythmic grid also appear for each included staff.

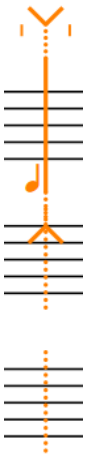
Caret when inputting notes onto multiple staves

Insert

The caret shows V and inverted V shapes at the top and bottom. Dotted lines are shown on staves affected by the Insert mode scope across which the caret does not already extend. In Insert mode, inserted notes shift existing notes after the caret along by the input duration instead of overwriting them.

Caret when **Insert (Voice)** is active

Caret when **Insert (Player)** is active



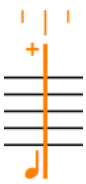
Caret when either **Insert (Global)** or **Insert (Global Adjustment of Current Bar)** is active

NOTE

Insert mode also affects some edits outside of note input, such as copying/pasting, deleting, and lengthening/shortening notes.

Chords

The caret shows a plus symbol at the top left. During chord input, you can input multiple notes at the same rhythmic position.



Caret when inputting chords

NOTE

Chord mode also affects some edits outside of note input, such as copying/pasting and lengthening/shortening notes and items.

Lock to Duration

The caret is dashed. **Lock to Duration** allows you to repitch notes without changing their duration or rhythm.

Caret when **Lock to Duration** is activated

Grace Notes

The caret is shorter than the default caret. It allows you to input grace notes at the caret position.

Caret when inputting grace notes

Voices

To identify voices, the caret shows the following:

- An up-stem or down-stem note symbol to indicate the stem direction of the voice
- The voice number into which you are about to input notes, for second voices and above
- A plus symbol at the bottom left, if the voice is new

Caret when inputting notes into the first up-stem voice

Caret when inputting notes into a new down-stem voice

Caret when inputting notes into a new, second up-stem voice

Slash voices

To identify slash voices, the caret shows the following:

- An up-stem or down-stem slash note symbol, indicating the stem direction of the slash voice, and whether it has stems or is stemless
- The number of the slash voice into which you are about to input notes, for second voices and above

- A plus symbol on the left at the bottom, if the slash voice is new

Caret when inputting notes into an up-stem slash voice

Caret when inputting notes into a new, second up-stem slash voice

Caret when inputting notes into a new, stemless slash voice

Percussion kits

The caret appears significantly smaller than usual when inputting notes into percussion kits. The name of the kit instrument into which you are currently inputting notes is shown above the rhythmic grid.

Caret when inputting notes into percussion kits

Tablature

The caret appears significantly smaller than usual when inputting notes into tablature. On tablature, the caret behaves as if chord input is always active, meaning you must advance the caret and move it to other string lines manually.

Caret when inputting notes on tablature

RELATED LINKS

Chord mode on page 242
Insert mode on page 427
Inputting chords on page 240
Inputting notes in Insert mode on page 226
Repitching notes without changing their rhythm on page 448
Inputting grace notes on page 239
Inputting notes into multiple voices on page 221
Inputting notes for unpitched percussion on page 227
Inputting notes on tablature on page 232
Changing music area colors on page 54
Ties on page 1232
Splitting tie chains on page 1241
Splitting notes by duration on page 249

Activating/Deactivating the caret

When the caret is activated, you can input notes and notations at the caret position; for example, if you want to input a dynamic in the middle of a tie chain. When the caret is deactivated, you cannot input notes, instead you can select and edit items in the music area.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, activate the caret and start note input in any of the following ways:
   - Select an item and press **Shift-N**.
   - In the Notes toolbox, click **Start Note Input**.
   - Double-click a rhythmic position on a staff.
2. Deactivate the caret and stop note input in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Shift-N**, **Return**, or **Esc**.
   - If you have deactivated mouse input, click any selectable item in the music area.
   - In the Notes toolbox, click **Start Note Input**.
   - Switch to another mode.

RELATED LINKS
Moving the caret manually on page 210
Activating/Deactivating mouse input on page 219
Inputting notes on page 211
Notations input on page 259

Extending the caret to multiple staves

You can extend the caret so it spans multiple staves. This allows you to input notes and notations onto multiple staves simultaneously, including automatically exploding the notes in chords that you play on a MIDI keyboard onto the appropriate staves.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, activate the caret in any of the following ways:
   - Select an item and press **Shift-N**.
   - In the Notes toolbox, click **Start Note Input**.
   - Double-click a rhythmic position on a staff.
2. Extend the caret to other staves in any of the following ways:
   - To extend to the staff above, press **Shift-Up Arrow**.
   - To extend to the staff below, press **Shift-Down Arrow**.
3. Optional: Repeat step 2 as many times as you require.

RELATED LINKS
Notes toolbox on page 187
Inputting notes and notations onto multiple staves on page 225

Moving the caret manually

During normal note input, the caret moves automatically as you input notes, but you can also move it manually. For example, the caret does not move automatically when **Chords** is activated.

PROCEDURE

- In Write mode, move the caret in any of the following ways:
  - To move the caret according to the current rhythmic grid resolution or to the next/previous note/rest, whichever is closest, press **Right Arrow** / **Left Arrow**.
  - To advance the caret according to the note value currently selected, press **Space** or click **Advance Caret** in the Keyboard, Fretboard, or Drum Pads panel toolbar.
  - To move the caret to the next/previous bar, press **Ctrl/Cmd-Right Arrow** / **Ctrl/Cmd-Left Arrow**.
  - To move the caret to the staff above/below, press **Up Arrow** / **Down Arrow**.
  - To move the caret to the top/bottom staff in the system, press **Ctrl/Cmd-Up Arrow** / **Ctrl/Cmd-Down Arrow**.

RELATED LINKS
Inputting chords on page 240
Keyboard panel on page 197
Fretboard panel on page 199
Drum Pads panel on page 200
Rhythmic grid on page 204

Note input

In Dorico Elements, you can only input notes during note input, which is when the caret is activated. This reduces the risk of you adding notes to staves accidentally.

You can also input notations at the same time as inputting notes. Notations are input at the caret position or on the selected note.

You can input notes in different ways and using any of the following devices, including switching between them at any time:

- MIDI keyboard
- Computer keyboard
- Mouse or touchpad
- Keyboard, Fretboard, and Drum Pads panels

TIP

A MIDI keyboard can be the fastest way to input notes.

RELATED LINKS
Notes on page 940
Inputting notes on page 211
Accidental selection during MIDI input on page 234
Keyboard panel on page 197
Fretboard panel on page 199

Drum Pads panel on page 200
Notations input on page 259
Arranging tools on page 431

Inputting notes

You can input notes into your project during note input, which is when the caret is activated. You can input notes with a computer keyboard, with the mouse, using panels in the lower zone, or by playing notes with a MIDI keyboard.

NOTE

- These steps describe inputting notes with the default preference of duration before pitch. However, you can also specify the pitch before duration instead.
- These steps describe selecting rhythm dots, articulations, and accidentals not in the prevailing key signature before inputting notes. However, you can also select them after inputting notes. If you change this setting, you must perform step 7 before steps 4 to 6.
- You do not have to input rests between notes, as Dorico Elements automatically shows implicit rests of the appropriate duration between the notes you input. Similarly, you do not have to input ties, as Dorico Elements shows notes as tie chains if necessary.
- You can also input notations alongside notes without deactivating note input.

PREREQUISITE

- You have chosen the appropriate input pitch setting.
- You have chosen the appropriate note-based notation input setting.
- You have connected any MIDI devices you want to use for note input.
- If you want to select note durations using the Notes panel, the left zone is shown.
- If you want to input notes into multiple instruments held by a single player or instruments not visible in the score in page view, you are in galley view.
- If your music requires a key signature, you have input that key signature.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, start note input in any of the following ways:
   - Select a note or rest on the staff where you want to input notes and press **Shift-N**.

     NOTE

     You can also press **Return**; however, if you select a notation, such as a dynamic, pressing **Return** opens the corresponding popover instead of starting note input.
   - Select a note or rest on the staff where you want to input notes and click **Start Note Input** in the Notes toolbox.
   - Double-click the staff where you want to input notes.
2. Optional: If you want to input notes onto multiple staves at once, extend the caret to those staves.
3. Select a note duration in any of the following ways:
   - Press the number on your computer keyboard that corresponds to the duration you want.

For example, press **6** for quarter notes (crotchets). Press smaller numbers for smaller durations, such as **5** for eighth notes (quavers) and **4** for 16th notes (semiquavers). Press larger numbers for larger durations, such as **7** for half notes (minims).

- In the Notes panel, click the duration you want.
- In the Keyboard, Fretboard, or Drum Pads panel toolbar, click the duration you want.

4. Optional: Select any required rhythm dots.
5. Optional: If you want to input a pitch whose accidental is not in the prevailing key signature, select the appropriate accidental.
6. Optional: Select any required articulations.
7. Input the pitches you want in any of the following ways:
   - Press the corresponding letters on your computer keyboard.

     TIP

     Dorico Elements automatically selects the note whose register is the smallest interval away from the previously input note. However, you can force a different register.

     - To input a note above the previously input note, press **Shift-Alt/Opt** as well as the letter for the note; for example, **Shift-Alt/Opt-A**.
     - To input a note below the previously input note, press **Ctrl-Alt (Windows) or Ctrl (macOS)** as well as the letter for the note; for example, **Ctrl-Alt-A (Windows) or Ctrl-A (macOS)**.

   - Click the staff at the rhythmic position of each note you want to input.

     A shadow notehead appears when inputting with the mouse to indicate where the note will be input.
   - In the Keyboard, Fretboard, or Drum Pads panel, play the notes you want.
   - Play the notes on a MIDI keyboard.
8. Optional: Advance the caret by the currently selected note duration without inputting notes in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Space**.
   - In the Keyboard, Fretboard, or Drum Pads panel toolbar, click **Advance Caret**.

   TIP

   You can also move the caret in different ways and by different increments.

9. Stop note input in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Esc** or **Return**.
   - In the Notes toolbox, click **Start Note Input**.

RESULT

Notes are input with the selected duration at the caret position or where you click and are played back as you input them by default. Their pitch follows the prevailing key signature. For example, if you press **F** in G major, an F♯ is input automatically.

If you selected rhythm dots or articulations, notes continue to be input with them until you deactivate them. However, accidentals not in the prevailing key signature are only added to the first note you input after selecting them.

Dorico Elements notates and beams notes appropriately according to their duration, the prevailing time signature, and their position in the bar. This includes showing notes as tie chains if required.

If you advance the caret without inputting notes, Dorico Elements fills the gaps between notes with implicit rests of the appropriate duration.

If you input notes on notation staves belonging to fretted instruments, Dorico Elements automatically allocates these notes to the strings on which they can be played closest to the nut. Because this calculation is done for each note separately, multiple notes can be allocated to the same string. In such cases, the notes are shown next to each other on tablature and are colored green. You can then select them individually and make your own string allocation.

NOTE

- The notes you input overwrite existing notes at the caret position in the voice indicated by the quarter note symbol beside the caret. If you want to add notes to an existing voice, you can input chords. You can also input notes into new voices.
- You can change the default beam, note, and rest grouping settings for each flow independently in **Notation Options**. You can also specify custom beat groupings within individual time signatures.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

- You can move notes to different rhythmic positions and other staves after they have been input.
- You can also show brackets on noteheads individually.

RELATED LINKS

Notes toolbox on page 187
Keyboard panel on page 197
Fretboard panel on page 199
Drum Pads panel on page 200
Inputting notes using pitch before duration on page 214
Changing the note-based notation input setting on page 218
Changing the input pitch setting on page 218
Hiding/Showing zones on page 44
Switching to galley/page view on page 50
Accidental selection during MIDI input on page 234
Respelling notes on page 449
Notation Options dialog on page 679
Notes panel on page 191
Rhythmic grid on page 204
Caret on page 205
Selecting note/rest durations on page 247
Inputting notes with rhythm dots on page 219
Inputting accidentals on page 233
Inputting articulations on page 259
Inputting chords on page 240
Inputting notes into multiple voices on page 221
Inputting rests on page 235
Inputting tuplets on page 243
Adding notes above/below existing notes on page 247
Moving notes/items rhythmically on page 437
Creating cross-staff beams/tremolos on page 764
Note and rest grouping on page 774

Beam grouping according to meters on page 755
Notations input on page 259
Playing/Muting notes during note input/selection on page 408
Changing the allocated string for notes on tablature on page 1202
Enabling/Disabling MIDI input devices on page 258
Implicit vs. explicit rests on page 1145
Ties on page 1232
Key signatures on page 911
Arranging tools on page 431
Bracketed noteheads on page 953

Register selection during note input

Dorico Elements automatically selects the register of pitches during note input, but you can override this and select the register manually.

During note input, Dorico Elements automatically selects the note whose register is the smallest interval away from the previously input note. For example, if you input an F and then press **A**, an A is input a third above the F, rather than a sixth below.

You can override this automatic register selection in the following ways:

- To input a note above the previously input note, press **Shift-Alt/Opt** as well as the letter for the note; for example, **Shift-Alt/Opt-A**.
- To input a note below the previously input note, press **Ctrl-Alt (Windows) or Ctrl (macOS)** as well as the letter for the note; for example, **Ctrl-Alt-A (Windows) or Ctrl-A (macOS)**.

Register selection when inputting chords

During chord input, Dorico Elements automatically inputs notes above the highest note at the caret position. For example, if you press **A** then **E** then **A**, a chord of A-E-A is input at the caret position.

You can input notes below the lowest note at the caret position instead by pressing **Ctrl-Alt (Windows) or Ctrl (macOS)** as well as the letter for the note name; for example, **Ctrl-Alt-A (Windows) or Ctrl-A (macOS)**.

RELATED LINKS

Changing the pitch of individual notes on page 444
Accidental selection during MIDI input on page 234
Respelling notes on page 449

Inputting notes using pitch before duration

You can input notes into your project by specifying their pitch before their duration, meaning you can test pitches before inputting them without leaving note input. You can input notes with a computer keyboard, with the mouse, using panels in the lower zone, or by playing notes with a MIDI keyboard.

By default in Dorico Elements, you must specify the duration before the pitch of notes.

NOTE

- These steps describe selecting the pitch before the duration when inputting notes. However, you can also specify the duration before the pitch instead, which is the default note input behavior in Dorico Elements.

- These steps describe selecting rhythm dots, articulations, and accidentals not in the prevailing key signature before inputting notes. However, you can also select them after inputting notes. If you change this setting, you must perform steps 7 and 8 before steps 4 to 6.
- When inputting notes on tablature using pitch before duration, you must select note durations by clicking them in the Notes panel.
- You do not have to input rests between notes, as Dorico Elements automatically shows implicit rests of the appropriate duration between the notes you input. Similarly, you do not have to input ties, as Dorico Elements shows notes as tie chains if necessary.
- You can also input notations alongside notes without deactivating note input.

PREREQUISITE

- You have chosen the appropriate input pitch setting.
- You have chosen the appropriate note-based notation input setting.
- You have connected any MIDI devices you want to use for note input.
- If you want to select note durations using the Notes panel, the left zone is shown.
- If you want to input notes into multiple instruments held by a single player or instruments not visible in the score in page view, you are in galley view.
- If your music requires a key signature, you have input that key signature.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, start note input in any of the following ways:
   - Select a note or rest on the staff where you want to input notes and press **Shift-N**.

     NOTE

     You can also press **Return**; however, if you select a notation, such as a dynamic, pressing **Return** opens the corresponding popover instead of starting note input.
   - Select a note or rest on the staff where you want to input notes and click **Start Note Input** in the Notes toolbox.
   - Double-click the staff where you want to input notes.
2. Activate **Pitch Before Duration** in any of the following ways:
   - Press **K**.
   - In the Notes toolbox, click **Pitch Before Duration**.
3. Optional: If you want to input notes onto multiple staves at once, extend the caret to those staves.
4. Optional: If you want to input a pitch whose accidental is not in the prevailing key signature, select the appropriate accidental.
5. Optional: Select any required articulations.
6. Optional: Select any required rhythm dots.
7. Select a pitch in any of the following ways:
   - Press the corresponding letters on your computer keyboard.

TIP

Dorico Elements automatically selects the note whose register is the smallest interval away from the previously input note. However, you can force a different register.

- To input a note above the previously input note, press **Shift-Alt/Opt** as well as the letter for the note; for example, **Shift-Alt/Opt-A**.
- To input a note below the previously input note, press **Ctrl-Alt (Windows) or Ctrl (macOS)** as well as the letter for the note; for example, **Ctrl-Alt-A (Windows) or Ctrl-A (macOS)**.

When inputting notes using pitch before duration, you can press these key commands multiple times to select higher/lower octaves.

- Click the staff at the rhythmic position of each note you want to input.

  A shadow notehead appears when inputting with the mouse to indicate where the note will be input.
- In the Keyboard, Fretboard, or Drum Pads panel, play the notes you want.
- Play the notes on a MIDI keyboard.

Once you have selected a pitch, a shadow note of the corresponding pitch appears at the caret position. You can release the pitch after selecting it.

8. Select a note duration and input the note in any of the following ways:
   - Press the number on your computer keyboard that corresponds to the duration you want.

     For example, press **6** for quarter notes (crotchets). Press smaller numbers for smaller durations, such as **5** for eighth notes (quavers) and **4** for 16th notes (semiquavers). Press larger numbers for larger durations, such as **7** for half notes (minims).
   - In the Notes panel, click the duration you want.

     NOTE

     When inputting notes on tablature, you must click durations in the Notes panel.
   - In the Keyboard, Fretboard, or Drum Pads panel toolbar, click the duration you want.
9. Optional: Advance the caret by the currently selected note duration without inputting notes in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Space**.
   - In the Keyboard, Fretboard, or Drum Pads panel toolbar, click **Advance Caret**.

   TIP

   You can also move the caret in different ways and by different increments.
10. Stop note input in any of the following ways:
    - Press **Esc** or **Return**.
    - In the Notes toolbox, click **Start Note Input**.

RESULT

Notes are input with the selected duration at the caret position or where you click and are played back as you input them by default. Their pitch follows the prevailing key signature. For example, if you press **F** in G major, an F♯ is input automatically.

If you selected rhythm dots or articulations, notes continue to be input with them until you deactivate them. However, accidentals not in the prevailing key signature are only added to the first note you input after selecting them.

Dorico Elements notates and beams notes appropriately according to their duration, the prevailing time signature, and their position in the bar. This includes showing notes as tie chains if required.

If you advance the caret without inputting notes, Dorico Elements fills the gaps between notes with implicit rests of the appropriate duration.

If you input notes on notation staves belonging to fretted instruments, Dorico Elements automatically allocates these notes to the strings on which they can be played closest to the nut. Because this calculation is done for each note separately, multiple notes can be allocated to the same string. Similarly, when you input chords on tablature using pitch before duration with a MIDI keyboard, all notes in the chord are allocated to the same string. In such cases, the notes are shown next to each other on tablature and are colored green. You can then select them individually and make your own string allocation.

NOTE

- The notes you input overwrite existing notes at the caret position in the voice indicated by the quarter note symbol beside the caret. If you want to add notes to an existing voice, you can input chords. You can also input notes into new voices.
- You can switch between using pitch before duration and duration before pitch note input at any time by pressing **K** or clicking **Pitch Before Duration** . For example, duration before pitch can be easier when inputting a sequence of notes with the same duration.
- You can change the default beam, note, and rest grouping settings for each flow independently in **Notation Options**. You can also specify custom beat groupings within individual time signatures.
- You can change whether note input uses pitch before duration or duration before pitch by default on the **Note Input and Editing** page in **Preferences**.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

You can move notes to different rhythmic positions and other staves after they have been input.

You can also show brackets on noteheads individually.

RELATED LINKS

Changing the note-based notation input setting on page 218
Changing the input pitch setting on page 218
Notes toolbox on page 187
Keyboard panel on page 197
Fretboard panel on page 199
Drum Pads panel on page 200
Inputting notes on page 211
Register selection during note input on page 214
Accidental selection during MIDI input on page 234
Hiding/Showing zones on page 44
Switching to galley/page view on page 50
Notes panel on page 191
Rhythmic grid on page 204
Caret on page 205
Inputting chords on page 240
Inputting notes into multiple voices on page 221
Adding notes above/below existing notes on page 247

Notations input on page 259
Enabling/Disabling MIDI input devices on page 258

Changing the input pitch setting

You can input and record notes at either sounding pitch or written pitch; for example, if you want to record notes at their sounding pitch in transposing part layouts.

In concert pitch layouts, written pitch and sounding pitch are the same.

PROCEDURE

- In Write mode, choose one of the following input pitch settings:
  - To input/record notes at their written pitch, choose **Write** > **Input Pitch** > **Written Pitch**.
  - To input/record notes at their sounding pitch, choose **Write** > **Input Pitch** > **Sounding Pitch**.

RESULT

The resulting pitch notated or recorded is changed. For example, if you input a C in a Horn in F transposing part layout with the input pitch set to **Sounding Pitch**, the note is written as a G.

RELATED LINKS

Inputting notes on page 211
Inputting notes using MIDI recording on page 253
Concert vs. transposed pitch on page 170

Changing the note-based notation input setting

You can change your default setting for whether rhythm dots, accidentals, and articulations apply to the last input note or the next note you input during note input. This setting also affects whether or not the last input note remains selected after entry when using pitch before duration for inputting notes.

For example, changing the setting to **After inputting note** when using pitch before duration for notes ensures the last input note remains selected after you input it, making it easier to change its enharmonic spelling when inputting notes using a MIDI keyboard. The last input note is always selected when using duration before pitch for notes, regardless of your note-based notation input setting.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-,** to open **Preferences**.
2. In the category list, click **Note Input and Editing**.
3. In the **Note Input** section, choose one of the following options for **Specify accidental, rhythm dot and articulations** in the **Pitch and Duration** subsection:
   - **After inputting note**
   - **Before inputting note**
4. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

The setting is changed in the current project and for all future projects. If you chose **Before inputting note**, notes do not remain selected after you input them during pitch before duration note input.

RELATED LINKS
Inputting notes on page 211
Inputting notes using pitch before duration on page 214
Inputting accidentals on page 233
Inputting notes with rhythm dots on page 219
Inputting articulations on page 259

Activating/Deactivating mouse input

You can activate/deactivate mouse input; for example, if you only want to input notes using your computer keyboard or MIDI device. Deactivating mouse input also allows you to click other items to stop note input.

PROCEDURE

- In Write mode, in the Notes toolbox, activate/deactivate **Select** .

RESULT

Mouse input is activated in the current project when **Select** is deactivated. Mouse input is deactivated in the current project when **Select** is activated.

TIP

You can change the default setting for whether mouse input is activated/deactivated by activating/deactivating **Enable note input using the mouse** on the **Note Input and Editing** page in **Preferences**.

RELATED LINKS
Notes toolbox on page 187
Preferences dialog on page 58

Inputting notes with rhythm dots

The **Dotted Notes** tool allows you to input notes with rhythm dots and add rhythm dots to existing notes. You can input notes with up to four rhythm dots.

NOTE

- These steps describe inputting notes with the default preference of duration before pitch. However, you can also specify the pitch before duration instead.
- These steps describe selecting rhythm dots before inputting notes. However, you can change this setting if you prefer to specify rhythm dots after inputting notes.
- You cannot add rhythm dots to grace notes.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:
   - Start note input.
   - Select existing notes to which you want to add rhythm dots.
2. Optional: If you want to input notes with rhythm dots onto multiple staves at once, extend the caret to those staves.
3. Select a note duration in any of the following ways:

- Press the number on your computer keyboard that corresponds to the duration you want.

  For example, press **6** for quarter notes (crotchets). Press smaller numbers for smaller durations, such as **5** for eighth notes (quavers) and **4** for 16th notes (semiquavers). Press larger numbers for larger durations, such as **7** for half notes (minims).
- In the Notes panel, click the duration you want.
- In the Keyboard, Fretboard, or Drum Pads panel toolbar, click the duration you want.

4. Activate **Dotted Notes** in any of the following ways:
   - Press **.**.
   - In the Notes toolbox, click **Dotted Notes**.
5. Optional: Change the number of rhythm dots in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Alt/Opt-.** to cycle through different numbers of rhythm dots.
   - In the Notes toolbox, click and hold **Dotted Notes**, then click the number of rhythm dots you want.

   Dotted Notes in the Notes toolbox updates to indicate the current number of rhythm dots. You can input notes with up to four rhythm dots.
6. Optional: Activate **Force Duration** in any of the following ways:
   - Press **O**.
   - In the Notes toolbox, click **Force Duration**.

   If **Force Duration** is not activated, the notes you input might be shown as tied notes rather than dotted notes, depending on their position in the bar and the prevailing meter.
7. Input the dotted notes you want.

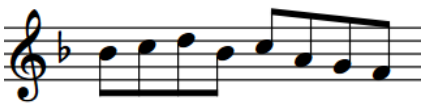
   Dotted Notes remains activated until you either select a different note duration or deactivate it.
8. Press **.** or click **Dotted Notes** again to deactivate **Dotted Notes**.
9. Stop note input in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Esc** or **Return**.
   - In the Notes toolbox, click **Start Note Input**.

RESULT

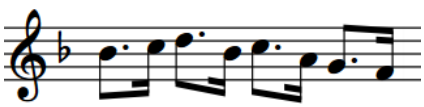
During note input, notes are input as dotted notes until you deactivate **Dotted Notes** or change the note duration.

When you add rhythm dots to multiple existing notes that would then overlap, Dorico Elements adjusts the duration of notes in the selection to avoid deleting notes at the end of the selection.

EXAMPLE



A phrase containing eighth notes



After adding rhythm dots to the whole selection

RELATED LINKS
Note and rest grouping on page 774
Notes toolbox on page 187
Notes panel on page 191
Caret on page 205
Insert mode on page 427
Chord mode on page 242
Selecting note/rest durations on page 247
Activating/Deactivating the caret on page 209
Extending the caret to multiple staves on page 209
Inputting notes in Insert mode on page 226
Changing the note-based notation input setting on page 218

Inputting notes into multiple voices

By default, notes are input into the first up-stem voice, as indicated by the symbol of an up-stem quarter note beside the caret. You can input notes directly into other voices during note input, and switch between voices as required.

You can also create new voices on staves with existing notes and input notes into those voices anywhere else on those staves.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select an item on the staff and at the rhythmic position where you want to input multiple voices.
2. Start note input in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Shift-N**.
   - In the Notes toolbox, click **Start Note Input**.
   - Double-click the staff.
3. Select the voice into which you want to input notes in one of the following ways:
   - To create a new voice, press **Shift-V** or click **Create Voice** in the Notes toolbox.

     When a new voice is added, a + sign appears beside the symbol of a quarter note beside the caret. The quarter note symbol indicates the stem direction, and the number beside the quarter note indicates the voice number if applicable.

Caret when adding the first down-stem voice

TIP

You can press **Shift-V** as many times as you require. For example, on a staff containing no notes, creating one new voice allows you to input notes into the first down-stem voice, but you can also create another new voice immediately if you want to input notes into the second up-stem voice.

Only voices that contain notes are preserved.

- To select an existing voice, press **V** or click **Next Voice** in the Notes toolbox to cycle through active voices on the staff.

  NOTE

  - You can switch between voices as often as you like.
  - If you have three or more voices on a single staff, you can only cycle through all the voices in a set order. For example, if you have two up-stem voices and two down-stem voices, the order is: first up-stem voice, first down-stem voice, second down-stem voice, second up-stem voice.

4. Input the notes you want.
5. Stop note input in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Esc** or **Return**.
   - In the Notes toolbox, click **Start Note Input**.

RESULT

Notes are input into the voice indicated by the quarter note symbol beside the caret.

If you are inputting notes into a new voice on a staff that already contains notes in another voice, the stem directions of existing notes at the same rhythmic position change automatically as necessary. Rests appear as required around notes in different voices.

NOTE

- Any voices that you created, but did not input notes into, are deleted.
- You can show voice colors to check which notes are in which voice. Additionally, when you select single notes or multiple notes in the same voice at the same rhythmic position, their pitches are shown in the status bar and as depressed keys in the Keyboard panel.

EXAMPLE

Caret when inputting notes into the first up-stem voice

Caret when inputting notes into the first down-stem voice

Caret when inputting notes into a new, second up-stem voice

RELATED LINKS

Caret on page 205
Notes toolbox on page 187
Notes panel on page 191
Rhythmic grid on page 204
Inputting notes on page 211
Inputting notes using pitch before duration on page 214
Inputting bar rests into specific voices on page 236
Adding notes above/below existing notes on page 247
Changing the voice of existing notes on page 442

Voices on page 1303
Stem direction on page 961
Implicit rests in multiple-voice contexts on page 1146
Unused voices on page 1309
Per-flow notation options for voices on page 1304
Status bar on page 39
Keyboard panel on page 197
Allowing/Disallowing noteheads in opposing voices to overlap on page 1305
Hiding/Showing bar rests in additional voices on page 1151
Hiding/Showing notes alongside slash regions on page 1136
Hiding/Showing voice colors on page 1304

Inputting notes into slash voices

You can input notes into multiple slash voices; for example, if you want to indicate a precise rhythm without specifying pitches. By default, the first slash voice is up-stem, but you can add extra slash voices both with and without stems, and switch between them as often as you want.

You can also input notes into new slash voices on a staff with existing notes. Once you have created a slash voice somewhere on a staff, you can input notes into that slash voice anywhere else on the same staff.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select an item on the staff and at the rhythmic position where you want to input slash voices.
2. Start note input in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Shift-N**.
   - In the Notes toolbox, click **Start Note Input**.
   - Double-click the staff.
3. Select the slash voice into which you want to input notes in one of the following ways:
   - To create a new slash voice, press **Shift-Alt/Opt-V**. You can also click and hold **Create Voice** in the Notes toolbox, then click **Create Slash Voice**.

     When a new slash voice is added, a + sign appears beside the symbol of a note beside the caret, which now appears as a slash note. The slash note symbol indicates the stem direction, and the number beside the slash note symbol indicates the voice number if applicable.

Caret when adding the first down-stem slash voice

TIP

You can press **Shift-Alt/Opt-V** as many times as you require. For example, on a staff containing no notes in slash voices, creating one new slash voice allows you to input notes into the first up-stem slash voice.

You can also create a second new slash voice immediately if you want to input notes into a down-stem slash voice, or a third new slash voice if you want to input notes into a stemless slash voice.

Only voices that contain notes are preserved.

- To select an existing slash voice, press **V** or click **Next Voice** in the Notes toolbox to cycle through active voices on the staff.

4. Input the notes you want.

   Notes in slash voices appear at the same staff position, regardless of their pitch. By default, this is the middle line of the staff, but this changes in multiple-slash-voice contexts.

5. Stop note input in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Esc** or **Return**.
   - In the Notes toolbox, click **Start Note Input**.

RESULT

Notes are input into new slash voices, as indicated by the caret indicator. The slash note symbol beside the caret changes to indicate which voice is currently selected and into which notes are input.

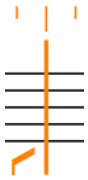
You can switch between voices as often as you like.

NOTE

- If you are inputting notes into a new slash voice on a staff that already contains notes in other voices/slash voices, the stem directions of existing notes and the staff positions of slash voices at the same rhythmic position change automatically as necessary. Rests appear as required around notes in different voices.
- If you have three or more voices of any type on a single staff, you must cycle through all the voices in a set order. For example, if you have two up-stem voices, two down-stem voices, and a slash voice, the order is: first up-stem voice, first down-stem voice, second down-stem voice, second up-stem voice, slash voice.
- Any voices that you created, but did not input notes into, are deleted.

EXAMPLE

Caret when inputting notes into the first up-stem slash voice



Caret when inputting notes into the first down-stem slash voice

Caret when inputting notes into a new stemless slash voice

Caret when inputting notes into a new, second up-stem slash voice

RELATED LINKS

Notes toolbox on page 187
Slash voices on page 1141
Rhythm slashes on page 1132

Inputting slash regions on page 398
Changing the voice of existing notes on page 442
Stem direction on page 961
Implicit rests in multiple-voice contexts on page 1146
Unused voices on page 1309

Inputting notes and notations onto multiple staves

You can input notes and notations onto multiple staves simultaneously, including automatically exploding the notes in chords that you play on a MIDI keyboard onto the appropriate staves. For example, if you want to input notes onto both piano staves or input the same dynamics for multiple instruments.

Inputting notes and notations onto multiple staves is most useful for multiple adjacent pitched instruments whose music is only a single voice.

PREREQUISITE

If you want to explode individual notes in chords onto multiple staves during note input, you have connected a MIDI keyboard. You can only input the different notes in chords onto separate staves when using a MIDI keyboard.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select an item at the rhythmic position where you want to input notes/notations onto multiple staves.
2. Start note input in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Shift-N**.
   - In the Notes toolbox, click **Start Note Input**.
   - Double-click the staff.
3. Extend the caret to another staff in any of the following ways:
   - To extend to the staff above, press **Shift-Up Arrow**.
   - To extend to the staff below, press **Shift-Down Arrow**.
4. Optional: Repeat step 3 for as many staves as you require.
5. Input the notes and notations you want.

   NOTE

   You must input notes using a computer keyboard or MIDI keyboard. If you use the mouse, notes are only input on the staff you click. Similarly, you must use the corresponding popover to input notations on multiple staves. When inputting notations using the corresponding panel, they are only input on the top staff.

6. Stop note input in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Esc** or **Return**.
   - In the Notes toolbox, click **Start Note Input**.

RESULT

The notes and notations you input are input at the caret position on all staves across which the caret extends. If the caret extends across both staves of a grand staff instrument, notes are input on either the top or bottom staff according to their pitch. However, this does not apply to grand staff instruments with extra staves.

When inputting notes using a MIDI keyboard, the individual notes in any chords you input are automatically exploded across the staves.

RELATED LINKS
Caret on page 205
Notes panel on page 191
Inputting notes on page 211
Inputting chords on page 240
Inputting notes using pitch before duration on page 214
Notations input on page 259
Preferences dialog on page 58
Exploding music onto multiple staves on page 441
MIDI Import Options dialog on page 86

Inputting notes in Insert mode

In Insert mode, you can input notes before existing notes in a single voice without overriding them. This allows you to push existing notes ahead at the same time as inputting new notes at their previous positions.

NOTE

- These steps describe inputting notes with the default preference of duration before pitch. However, you can also specify the pitch before duration instead.
- You can only input chords in Insert mode when using a MIDI keyboard.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, start note input.
2. Activate Insert mode in any of the following ways:
   - Press **I**.
   - In the Notes toolbox, click **Insert**.

   In Insert mode, the caret shows V and inverted V shapes at the top and bottom. Dotted lines are shown on staves affected by the Insert mode scope across which the caret does not already extend.

3. Choose the appropriate Insert mode scope.
4. Optional: If the Insert mode scope is set to **Voice**, press **V** until the voice you want is selected.
5. Optional: If the Insert mode scope is set to **Player** or **Voice** and you want to input notes in Insert mode onto multiple staves at once, extend the caret to those staves.
6. Input the notes you want.
7. Optional: Press **I** or click **Insert** again to deactivate Insert mode and return to normal note input.
8. Stop note input in any of the following ways:

- Press **Esc** or **Return**.
- In the Notes toolbox, click **Start Note Input**.

RESULT

Notes are inserted at the caret position or where you click without overwriting any existing notes at rhythmic positions after the caret. Instead, existing notes after the caret are pushed ahead to subsequent rhythmic positions.

The voices and staves affected by Insert mode depend on the Insert mode scope.

RELATED LINKS

Caret on page 205
Insert mode on page 427
Insert mode scopes on page 428
Changing the Insert mode scope on page 429
Notes toolbox on page 187
Rhythmic grid on page 204
Inputting notes on page 211
Inputting chords on page 240
Moving the caret manually on page 210

Inputting notes for unpitched percussion

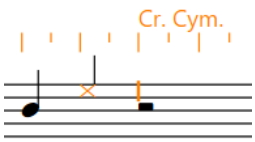
You can input notes for individual unpitched percussion instruments and on all percussion instruments in percussion kits using any presentation type, including selecting playing technique-specific noteheads for individual instruments.

When inputting notes in percussion kits, the caret is smaller than when inputting notes on pitched instrument or individual percussion instrument staves. Instead of occupying the whole height of the staff, the caret in percussion kits is positioned at a particular staff position.

The name of the percussion instrument or slash voice currently selected by the caret, and any applicable playing technique, is shown directly above the rhythmic grid display.

NOTE

- You can only input notes into slash voices in percussion kits when using the five-line staff presentation type.
- These steps describe inputting notes with the default preference of duration before pitch. However, you can also specify the pitch before duration instead.



Inputting notes on instruments with five-line staff kit presentation

PREREQUISITE

If you want to use additional playing technique-specific noteheads for percussion instruments, you have defined these in the **Percussion Instrument Playing Techniques** dialog for each instrument.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select an item on the unpitched percussion instrument/kit staff and at the rhythmic position where you want to input notes.
2. In Write mode, start note input in any of the following ways:
   - Select a note or rest on the staff where you want to input notes and press **Shift-N**.

     NOTE

     You can also press **Return**; however, if you select a notation, such as a dynamic, pressing **Return** opens the corresponding popover instead of starting note input.

   - Select a note or rest on the staff where you want to input notes and click **Start Note Input** in the Notes toolbox.
   - Double-click the staff where you want to input notes.
3. Optional: When inputting into percussion kits, move the caret up/down to other instruments in the kit in any of the following ways:
   - To move it up, press **Up Arrow**.
   - To move it down, press **Down Arrow**.
4. Select a note duration in any of the following ways:
   - Press the number on your computer keyboard that corresponds to the duration you want.

     For example, press **6** for quarter notes (crotchets). Press smaller numbers for smaller durations, such as **5** for eighth notes (quavers) and **4** for 16th notes (semiquavers). Press larger numbers for larger durations, such as **7** for half notes (minims).
   - In the Notes panel, click the duration you want.
   - In the Keyboard, Fretboard, or Drum Pads panel toolbar, click the duration you want.
5. Select an appropriate playing technique for the instrument currently selected by the caret before inputting notes.
   - To cycle upwards through playing techniques, press **Alt/Opt-Up Arrow**.
   - To cycle downwards through playing techniques, press **Alt/Opt-Down Arrow**.
   - Play the pitch for the playing technique you want on a MIDI keyboard.

     NOTE

     You can define MIDI pitches for playing techniques on the **Note Input and Editing** page in **Preferences**.

6. Input notes in one of the following ways:
   - Any kit presentation type/Individual instruments: Press **Y** to input notes for the instrument and playing technique shown above the rhythmic grid.
   - Any kit presentation type/Individual instruments: Click on the staff where you want to input notes, and at the rhythmic positions where you want them.
   - Five-line staff presentation type: Press letters on a computer keyboard or play notes on a MIDI keyboard, corresponding to staff positions for the clef set in **Preferences**. For example, press **B** to input notes for the instrument assigned to the middle line of a five-line staff when **Treble G clef** is set.
   - Grid and single-line instruments presentation types/Individual instruments: Press the letter of any note name **A** to **G** on a computer keyboard or play any note on a

MIDI keyboard to input notes for the instrument on whose line the caret is currently positioned.

NOTE

Notes played on MIDI keyboards are interpreted differently, depending on whether **Use percussion map** or **Use staff position** is set for the different kit presentation types in the **Note Input** section of the **Note Input and Editing** page in **Preferences**.

7. Optional: Advance the caret by the currently selected note duration without inputting notes in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Space**.
   - In the Keyboard, Fretboard, or Drum Pads panel toolbar, click **Advance Caret**.

   TIP

   You can also move the caret in different ways and by different increments.

8. Stop note input in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Esc** or **Return**.
   - In the Notes toolbox, click **Start Note Input**.

RESULT

Notes are input at the caret position or where you click with the selected duration and are played back as you input them by default. If you selected playing techniques, their noteheads appear as set in the **Percussion Instrument Playing Techniques** dialog for the corresponding instrument and playing technique, or in the **Override Percussion Noteheads** dialog for five-line staff presentations only.

If you selected rhythm dots or articulations, notes continue to be input with them until you deactivate them.

Dorico Elements notates and beams notes appropriately according to their duration, the prevailing time signature, and their position in the bar. This includes showing notes as tie chains if required.

If you advance the caret without inputting notes, Dorico Elements fills the gaps between notes with implicit rests of the appropriate duration.

TIP

You can change the default beam, note, and rest grouping settings for each flow independently in **Notation Options**. You can also specify custom beat groupings within individual time signatures.

RELATED LINKS

Notes toolbox on page 187
Notes panel on page 191
Caret on page 205
Percussion kits vs. individual percussion instruments on page 1288
Percussion kits and drum sets on page 1289
Playing techniques for unpitched percussion instruments on page 1282
Playing technique-specific noteheads on page 1283
Percussion Instrument Playing Techniques dialog on page 1283
Changing playing technique-specific noteheads on page 1286

Inputting notes using pitch before duration on page 214
Note and rest grouping on page 774
Beam grouping according to meters on page 755
Notation Options dialog on page 679
Deleting rests on page 1149
Inputting notes on page 211

Note input setup for percussion kits

Inputting music for unpitched percussion instruments works differently than for pitched instruments. You can use any of the usual methods for unpitched percussion input, but using a MIDI keyboard or a computer keyboard is most efficient.

- You can find options relating to note input for percussion in the **Note Input** section of the **Note Input and Editing** page in **Preferences**.

There is one set of options for input onto five-line staves, and another set of options for input onto grids and individual instruments.

The main choice affects input via MIDI keyboards and computer keyboards.

Use percussion map

A percussion map defines which MIDI notes produce which sound for a particular patch in a sound library. For example, in General MIDI percussion, C2 (note 36) produces bass drum, and D2 (note 38) produces snare drum, and so on.

If you know a particular mapping well, you may find it helpful to use the mapping directly for input.

Use staff position

This option uses the staff position defined in the **Edit Percussion Kit** dialog. For example, on a drum set, the bass drum is normally positioned in the bottom space of the staff, while the snare drum is positioned in the third space from the bottom.

You can think of staff positions relative to what they would be when using a treble G clef (F4 and C5 respectively) or using a bass F clef (A2 and E3 respectively).

You can choose which clef is used to interpret staff positions for five-line staves:

- **Treble G clef**
- **Bass F clef**

When you select **Use staff position**, you can designate one octave of your MIDI keyboard to input playing techniques.

By default, the **Input techniques from MIDI key** option is set to MIDI note 48, which is C3, the C one octave below middle C (C4 = MIDI note 60). You can click the MIDI learn button and then play a note on your MIDI keyboard to change the starting pitch. Assuming a starting pitch of C3, ascending notes operate as follows:

- C3 (48): Previous playing technique
- C♯3 (49): Next playing technique
- D3 (50): First mapped playing technique
- E♭3 (51): Second mapped playing technique
- E3 (52): Third mapped playing technique

And so on, up to:

- B3 (59): Tenth mapped playing technique

In general, we recommend that you set **Use staff position** for percussion input. **Use percussion map** is normally only useful when you are inputting notes onto a drum set and you have already memorized the General MIDI percussion map.

RELATED LINKS
Preferences dialog on page 58
Edit Percussion Kit dialog on page 150
Inputting notes for unpitched percussion on page 227
Changing playing technique-specific noteheads on page 1286

Default note selection during note input for percussion kits

During note input in percussion kits, you can press the letters on a computer keyboard that correspond to staff positions for kits using the five-line staff presentation type. For example, you can press **F** to input a note on the F space or line.

In **Preferences**, you can set options for inputting notes into percussion kits in the **Note Input** section of the **Note Input and Editing** page. For example, if you want to use staff positions to determine notes, choose **Use staff position** for **Input onto kit or grid**.

If you have the staff positions set relative to **Treble G clef**, then F could mean either the bottom space on the staff or the top line on the staff. In a standard drum set, this means either the kick drum in the bottom space, or the ride cymbal on the top line.

When inputting notes in pitched instruments, Dorico Elements chooses the lower or upper possible staff position based on which is closer to the current position of the caret.

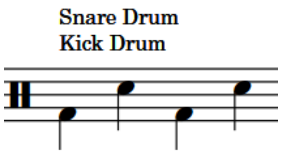
However, when inputting notes in percussion kits, Dorico Elements chooses the staff position of the note with the same stem direction as the last input note, rather than the staff position that is closest to the current position of the caret. This makes it easier to input common note patterns used in percussion kits.

For example, inputting kick drum and snare drum notes on a standard drum set is a common pattern. The kick drum is in the bottom space, and the snare drum is two spaces above: five staff positions away from the bottom space, and four staff positions away from the top line.

You can press **F** for the kick drum and **C** for the snare drum.

The default stem direction behavior for inputting notes in kits in Dorico Elements means that you can alternate pressing **F** and **C**, and the notes are input at the positions of the kick drum and snare drum, even though the top line is the closer position after inputting a snare drum note.

This is because the kick drum uses the same stem direction, and therefore voice, as the snare drum.



NOTE

Dorico Elements automatically changes the directions of stems according to the positions of notes on the staff when only one voice on the staff contains notes, regardless of their voice.

RELATED LINKS
Stem direction on page 961

Inputting notes on tablature

You can input notes directly into tablature in the same ways as inputting normal notes. When inputting notes on tablature, the caret is smaller than when inputting notes on standard five-line staves and behaves as if chord input is always active, meaning you must advance the caret manually to input notes at other rhythmic positions.

NOTE

These steps describe inputting notes with the default preference of duration before pitch. However, you can also specify the pitch before duration instead.

When inputting notes on tablature using pitch before duration, you must select note durations by clicking them in the Notes panel.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select an item on the tablature and at the rhythmic position where you want to input notes.

   NOTE

   If both notation staves and tablature are shown in the current layout, you must select an item on the notation staff and then move the caret to the tablature after starting note input.

2. Start note input in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Shift-N**.
   - In the Notes toolbox, click **Start Note Input**.
   - Double-click the staff.
3. Select a note duration in any of the following ways:
   - To select the next longer duration, press **=**.
   - To select the next shorter duration, press **-**.
   - In the Notes panel, click the duration you want.
   - In the Fretboard panel toolbar, click the duration you want.
4. Input the pitch you want for the current string in any of the following ways:
   - Press the number on your computer keyboard or numeric keypad that corresponds to the fret number you want. For example, press **6** for fret 6.

     For fret numbers 10 and above, press the two digits quickly.
   - Press the corresponding letters on your computer keyboard.

     NOTE

     When using letters, Dorico Elements automatically chooses the octave closest to the nut on the corresponding string.
   - In the Fretboard panel, click the corresponding string and fret position.
   - Play the note on a MIDI keyboard.
5. Move the caret up/down to input notes on different strings at the same rhythmic position in any of the following ways:
   - To move it up, press **Up Arrow**.
   - To move it down, press **Down Arrow**.

6. Move the caret to other rhythmic positions in any of the following ways:
   - To move the caret according to the current rhythmic grid resolution, press **Right Arrow** / **Left Arrow**.
   - To advance the caret according to the note duration currently selected, press **Space** or click **Advance Caret** in the Fretboard panel toolbar.
   - To move the caret to the next/previous bar, press **Ctrl/Cmd-Right Arrow** / **Ctrl/Cmd-Left Arrow**.

RESULT

Notes are input at the caret position with the selected duration on the string indicated by the caret and are played back as you input them by default. Notes continue to be input at the caret position until you move the caret manually and overwrite any previous note on the same string. If you attempt to input a note that is impossible on the current string, it is input on the closest available string in addition to any existing notes.

If you have input two or more notes on the same string at the same rhythmic position, they are shown next to each other on tablature and are colored green. Similarly, when you input chords on tablature using pitch before duration with a MIDI keyboard, all notes in the chord are allocated to the same string. You can then select them individually and change their string allocation.

RELATED LINKS

Caret on page 205
Moving the caret manually on page 210
Fretboard panel on page 199
Tablature on page 1200
Hiding/Showing notation staves and tablature on page 1201
Changing the allocated string for notes on tablature on page 1202
Inputting notes using pitch before duration on page 214

Inputting accidentals

You can input accidentals during note input and by adding them to existing notes. You can also change the accidentals of existing notes.

NOTE

- Accidentals that are part of the prevailing key signature are input automatically. For example, if you press **F** in G major, an F♯ is input automatically. You would only need to specify an accidental if you want to input an F♮, for example.

  This also applies if you are using a MIDI keyboard, though you can respell notes if the accidentals chosen automatically are not the ones that you expected.
- These steps describe selecting accidentals before inputting each note. However, you can change this setting if you prefer to specify accidentals after inputting notes.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:
   - Start note input.
   - Select the existing notes to which you want to add accidentals or whose accidentals you want to change.

2. Select the accidental you want to input in one of the following ways:
   - For a flat accidental, press **-**.
   - For a sharp accidental, press **=**.
   - For a natural accidental, press **0**.
   - In the Notes panel, click the accidental you want.

   TIP

   You can find more accidentals, such as double sharps/flats or microtonal accidentals, in the **Accidentals** section of the Key Signatures, Tonality Systems, and Accidentals panel on the right of the window.

3. Optional: During note input, input the note you want with your selected accidental.

RESULT

The accidental is added to the selected existing notes. If you selected existing notes with different accidentals, they are changed to have the accidental you selected.

During note input, the selected accidental is only input on the next note you input. You must reselect the accidental for each subsequent note.

NOTE

- Due to the default accidental duration rule in Dorico Elements, subsequent accidentals for the same note in the same register do not appear in the same bar.
- If you input notes using a MIDI device, Dorico Elements automatically shows an accidental if necessary. It selects a sharp, flat, or natural based on key signature and context. You can later respell notes so they are shown as their enharmonic equivalents with different accidentals.

RELATED LINKS

Notes panel on page 191
Hiding/Showing zones on page 44
Accidentals on page 712
Inputting notes on page 211
Changing the note-based notation input setting on page 218
Respelling notes on page 449
Changing the pitch of individual notes on page 444
Changing the size of accidentals on page 714
Accidental duration rules on page 719

Accidental selection during MIDI input

Dorico Elements interprets MIDI data to create accidentals, and automatically determines the spelling of notes according to preset rules.

Dorico Elements automatically displays an accidental if one is required. It selects a sharp or flat based on key signature and context.

The algorithm for this takes into account the key signature and the intervals between successive notes and chords. Therefore Dorico Elements prefers sharp accidentals in a key with sharps, and flats in a key with flats. If you change the spelling of an accidental, Dorico Elements follows your spelling preference whenever that note is used again in the score.

If you input notes with accidentals outside the key signature, Dorico Elements uses sharps if the figure is rising, and flats if it is falling. The spelling is also calculated vertically, meaning a simpler interval is produced where possible, such as a major third rather than a diminished fourth.

By default, Dorico Elements makes retrospective changes to how it has spelled accidentals, depending on how your music develops. For example, in C major, if you input a sequence of pitches C-E-G♯, but then input a G♭, the G♯ is respelled as an A♭.

Inputting rests

Dorico Elements automatically shows rests as appropriate in the gaps between the notes you input. However, you can also input rests manually; for example, to show fermatas on specific beats for players without notes in that bar.

NOTE

These steps describe selecting the duration before inputting rests. However, you can also input rests when **Pitch Before Duration** is active, in which case step 7 is unnecessary.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select an item on the staff and at the rhythmic position where you want to input rests.
2. Start note input in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Shift-N**.
   - In the Notes toolbox, click **Start Note Input**.
   - Double-click the staff.
3. Optional: If you want to input rests onto multiple staves at once, extend the caret to those staves.
4. Start rest input in any of the following ways:
   - Press **,**.
   - In the Notes toolbox, click **Rests**.
5. Activate **Force Duration** in any of the following ways:
   - Press **O**.
   - In the Notes toolbox, click **Force Duration**.
6. Select the rest duration you want.
7. Input rests in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Y** or any of the letters from **A** to **G**.
   - Click the staff at the rhythmic position of each rest you want to input.

     A shadow rest appears when inputting with the mouse to indicate where the rest will be input.
   - Play notes on a MIDI keyboard.
8. Optional: Press **,** or click **Rests** again to stop rest input.
9. Stop note input in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Esc** or **Return**.
   - In the Notes toolbox, click **Start Note Input**.

RESULT

Rests of the selected duration are input. If **Force Duration** is not activated, Dorico Elements automatically combines adjacent rests as appropriate for their position in relation to notes and according to the current meter.

RELATED LINKS

Rests on page 1144
Implicit vs. explicit rests on page 1145
Note and rest grouping on page 774
Notes toolbox on page 187
Notes panel on page 191
Caret on page 205
Extending the caret to multiple staves on page 209
Selecting note/rest durations on page 247
Forcing the duration of notes/rests on page 250
Inputting notes on page 211
Inputting notes using pitch before duration on page 214

Inputting bar rests into specific voices

When inputting music in multiple voices, rests are normally created automatically when there is a gap in the secondary voice. However, if you want secondary voices to begin with explicit bar rests in strict contrapuntal music, you can input a bar rest into those voices.

For music in a single voice, you do not have to input bar rests as they appear in each new bar automatically when you advance the caret. You can also hide/show bar rests in all empty bars in each layout independently.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, start note input.
2. Select the appropriate secondary voice by pressing **V** until the voice direction indicator shows the correct voice.

   Alternatively, if you want to input bar rests into a new voice, press **Shift-V** until the voice direction indicator shows the correct voice.
3. Open the bars and barlines popover in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Shift-B**.
   - In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers**, then **Bars and Barlines**.
4. Enter **rest** into the popover to add a bar rest.
5. Press **Return** to close the popover.
6. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Right Arrow** to advance the caret to the start of the next bar after the bar rest.
7. Optional: If you want to show bar rests in multiple bars for the selected voice, repeat steps 3 to 6 as many times as required.

   TIP

   If your notation options are set to show bar rests in additional voices, bar rests appear in all subsequent empty bars for the selected voice after you have input one bar rest.

RESULT

Bar rests are input into the selected voice at the caret position. If the caret position is within a bar that contains notes for the selected voice, these notes are replaced by the bar rest.

NOTE

Alternatively, you can click **Insert Bar Rest** in the **Insert Bar Rest** section of the Bars and Barlines panel to input bar rests during note input.

RELATED LINKS

Bars on page 729
Bars and barlines popover on page 288
Hiding/Showing bar rests in empty bars on page 1150
Hiding/Showing bar rests in additional voices on page 1151
Per-flow notation options for rests on page 1147
Inputting notes into multiple voices on page 221
Caret on page 205

Inputting ties

You can input ties manually to join two notes of the same pitch, both during note input and by joining two existing notes with a tie. You can tie existing notes in different voices or on different staves belonging to the same instrument, or that are not rhythmically adjacent.

For example, you might have input a melody across multiple voices in order to accommodate passing notes, but want to tie two notes together even though they are in different voices. Similarly, you might have written multiple notes before a chord that are all held down and want to reduce the number of tied notes.

TIP

Dorico Elements automatically creates ties as required for note durations in each meter. For example, if you want to input a tie between two quarter notes across a barline, you can input a half note at the rhythmic position where you want to input the first quarter note. Dorico Elements automatically splits the half note into two quarter notes, one on each side of the barline, and joins them with a tie.

PREREQUISITE

If you want to preserve the durations of existing notes, you have forced their duration. For example, if you want to specify subdivisions within a tie chain that are different than the prevailing meter.

We also recommend starting ties from the first note in the tie chain, as tied notes become a single note whose settings, including forced durations, come from the first note.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:
   - Start note input.
   - Select the note from which you want the tie to start. If you want to input a tie between two specific notes or between a grace note and a normal note, select those two notes.

NOTE

The two notes must be the same pitch, but can be in different voices or on different staves belonging to the same instrument.

2. Optional: During note input, input the note that you want at the start of the tie.
3. Input a tie in any of the following ways:
   - Press **T**.
   - In the Notes toolbox, click **Tie**.
4. Optional: During note input, input the note that you want at the end of the tie.

NOTE

The second note must be the same pitch as the first note.

RESULT

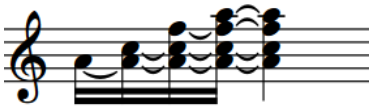
During note input, the two notes input are joined by a tie.

If you selected a single existing note, it is joined by a tie to the next note of the same pitch in the same voice and staff. If you selected two existing notes, they are tied together, provided they are the same pitch and belong to the same instrument.

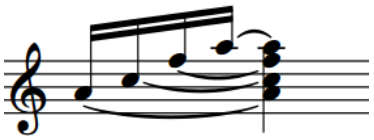
NOTE

- During note input, Dorico Elements ties the first note you input after inputting the tie to the previous note of the same pitch in the same voice and staff, even if there are other notes of other pitches between them.
- Depending on the prevailing time signature, the position of the start of the note in the bar, and your settings on the **Note Grouping** page in **Notation Options**, inputting a tie between two notes can instead create a single note of a different duration, such as a half note instead of two tied quarter notes. You can override your note grouping settings and fix your notated rhythm by forcing their duration. Dorico Elements then notates your input notes with the rhythmic durations specified, as long as they can fit inside the bar.

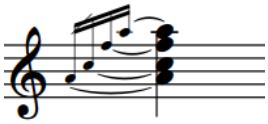
EXAMPLE



Ties between adjacent notes



Ties between non-adjacent notes



Ties between grace notes and normal notes

RELATED LINKS

Inputting notes on page 211
Forcing the duration of notes/rests on page 250
Notation Options dialog on page 679
Notes toolbox on page 187
Ties on page 1232
Ties vs. slurs on page 1233

Note and rest grouping on page 774
Beam grouping according to meters on page 755

Inputting grace notes

You input grace notes in the same ways as normal notes, and they can have any rhythmic note value, accidental, and articulation.

NOTE

- These steps describe inputting notes with the default preference of duration before pitch. However, you can also specify the pitch before duration instead.
- You cannot add rhythm dots to grace notes.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select an item on the staff and at the rhythmic position where you want to input grace notes.
2. Start note input in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Shift-N**.
   - In the Notes toolbox, click **Start Note Input**.
   - Double-click the staff.
3. Optional: If you want to input grace notes onto multiple staves at once, extend the caret to those staves.
4. Start grace note input in any of the following ways:
   - Press **/**.
   - In the Notes toolbox, click **Grace Notes**.
5. Press the number for the note duration you want. For example, press **5** for eighth grace notes.
6. Optional: Switch between inputting slashed/unslashed grace notes in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Alt/Opt-/**.
   - In the Notes toolbox, click and hold **Grace Notes**, then click **Unslashed Grace Notes** or **Slashed Grace Notes**.

   Grace Notes in the Notes toolbox updates to indicate the current grace note type.
7. Input the grace notes you want.

   TIP

   There is no limit to the number of grace notes that can exist at the same rhythmic position.
8. Press **/** or click **Grace Notes** again to stop grace note input and return to normal note input.

RESULT

The pitches you enter are input as grace notes at the caret position.

TIP

- You can also change the type of grace notes after they have been input.

- Slashed and unslashed grace notes are handled differently in playback.

RELATED LINKS
Grace notes on page 897
Grace notes in playback on page 904
Notes toolbox on page 187
Notes panel on page 191
Keyboard panel on page 197
Fretboard panel on page 199
Drum Pads panel on page 200
Caret on page 205
Extending the caret to multiple staves on page 209
Inputting notes on page 211
Selecting note/rest durations on page 247
Inputting ties on page 237
Inputting accidentals on page 233
Inputting articulations on page 259
Changing the type of grace notes on page 901
Turning existing notes into grace notes on page 899
Turning grace notes into normal notes on page 900
Inputting notes using pitch before duration on page 214

Inputting chords

You can input chords during note input when both note input and **Chords** are activated. You can input notes with a computer keyboard, with the mouse, using panels in the lower zone, or by playing notes with a MIDI keyboard.

NOTE

- These steps describe inputting notes with the default preference of duration before pitch. However, you can also specify the pitch before duration instead.

  When inputting chords using pitch before duration, you must use your computer keyboard or a MIDI keyboard and complete step 6 before step 5.
- You can only input chords in Insert mode when using a MIDI keyboard.
- You can input chords without activating **Chords** when using the Keyboard panel, Fretboard panel, or a MIDI keyboard.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select an item on the staff and at the rhythmic position where you want to input chords.
2. Start note input in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Shift-N**.
   - In the Notes toolbox, click **Start Note Input**.
   - Double-click the staff.
3. Start chord input in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Q**.
   - In the Notes toolbox, click **Chords**.

In chord input, a + sign appears at the top of the caret. This allows you to input multiple notes at the caret position.

4. Optional: If you want to input chords onto multiple staves at once, extend the caret to those staves.
5. Select a note duration in any of the following ways:
   - Press the number on your computer keyboard that corresponds to the duration you want.

     For example, press **6** for quarter notes (crotchets). Press smaller numbers for smaller durations, such as **5** for eighth notes (quavers) and **4** for 16th notes (semiquavers). Press larger numbers for larger durations, such as **7** for half notes (minims).
   - In the Notes panel, click the duration you want.
   - In the Keyboard, Fretboard, or Drum Pads panel toolbar, click the duration you want.
6. Input the pitches you want in any of the following ways:
   - Press the corresponding letters on your keyboard.

     TIP

     Dorico Elements automatically inputs notes above the highest note at the caret position when **Chords** is activated.

     You can input notes below the lowest note at the caret position instead by pressing **Ctrl-Alt (Windows) or Ctrl (macOS)** as well as the letter for the note name; for example, **Ctrl-Alt-A (Windows) or Ctrl-A (macOS)**.
   - Click the staff at the rhythmic positions where you want to input notes.

     A shadow notehead appears when inputting with the mouse to indicate where the note will be input.
   - In the Keyboard, Fretboard, or Drum Pads panel, play the notes you want.
   - Play the notes on a MIDI keyboard.
7. Optional: Advance the caret to input chords at other rhythmic positions in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Space**.
   - In the Keyboard, Fretboard, or Drum Pads panel toolbar, click **Advance Caret**.

   During chord input, notes are input at the same rhythmic position and above the previous note until you advance the caret manually.

   TIP

   You can also move the caret in different ways and by different increments.
8. Press **Q** or click **Chords** again to stop chord input.
9. Stop note input in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Esc** or **Return**.

- In the Notes toolbox, click **Start Note Input**.

RESULT

Multiple notes are input at the caret position.

- If entering pitches by clicking with the mouse, you can put the same pitch into the chord twice by clicking again on the same line.
- If entering pitches with the keyboard, repeated notes are automatically input an octave above. You can change the register of notes by forcing the register selection during note input, or by transposing them after they have been input.

NOTE

- You can stop chord input and immediately continue inputting notes as before, with a single note at each rhythmic position and the caret advancing automatically to the next rhythmic position.
- When chords contain two pitches in the same register but with different accidentals, that is known as an altered unison. Altered unisons are shown with either single stems or with split stems, depending on your settings on the **Accidentals** page in **Notation Options**.
- When you input chords on tablature using pitch before duration with a MIDI keyboard, all notes in the chord are allocated to the same string. In such cases, the notes are shown next to each other on tablature and are colored green. You can then select them individually and make your own string allocation.

RELATED LINKS

Notation Options dialog on page 679
Notes toolbox on page 187
Notes panel on page 191
Keyboard panel on page 197
Fretboard panel on page 199
Drum Pads panel on page 200
Register selection during note input on page 214
Caret on page 205
Extending the caret to multiple staves on page 209
Moving the caret manually on page 210
Altered unisons on page 717
Inputting notes using pitch before duration on page 214
Changing the note-based notation input setting on page 218

Chord mode

Chord mode changes how notes are input and how edits you make outside of note input affect the music. When Chord mode is activated, notes can overlap or stack on top of each other to create chords rather than overwriting existing notes. During chord input, the caret does not advance automatically.

Edits outside of chord input that are affected by Chord mode include copying/pasting notes or changing their duration. For example, if you copy four notes and paste them to a staff that already has notes with Chord mode activated, the existing notes are not overwritten but instead combine with the new notes to make chords.

- You can activate/deactivate Chord mode in Write mode by pressing **Q** or clicking **Chords** in the Notes toolbox.

NOTE

You cannot have both Insert mode and Chord mode activated simultaneously.

RELATED LINKS
Insert mode on page 427
Caret on page 205
Copying and pasting notes/items on page 433
Exploding music onto multiple staves on page 441
Changing the duration of notes on page 248
Inputting notes with rhythm dots on page 219

Inputting tuplets

You can input all types of tuplets using the tuplets popover. Tuplets can contain notes of any duration, such as a quarter note at the start of an eighth note triplet.

NOTE

These steps describe inputting notes with the default preference of duration before pitch. However, you can also specify the pitch before duration instead.

When inputting tuplets using pitch before duration, Dorico Elements determines the base value of the tuplet on either the first note you input after specifying the tuplet or the note value included in your tuplet ratio.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select an item on the staff and at the rhythmic position where you want to input tuplets.
2. Start note input in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Shift-N**.
   - In the Notes toolbox, click **Start Note Input**.
   - Double-click the staff.
3. Optional: If you want to input tuplets onto multiple staves at once, extend the caret to those staves.
4. Open the tuplets popover in any of the following ways:
   - Press **;**.
   - In the Notes toolbox, click and hold **Tuplets**, then click **x:y**.

   When inputting tuplets with the keyboard, Dorico Elements automatically continues inputting notes as the specified tuplet.
5. Enter the tuplet you want into the popover as a ratio followed by the beat unit.

   For example, enter **3:2e** to input eighth note triplets or **5:4x** to input sixteenth note quintuplets.

   NOTE

   If you do not specify the beat unit, the tuplet is based on the note value currently selected in the Notes panel.
6. Press **Return** to close the popover.

The tuplet is entered.

7. Optional: Change the selected note duration.

   For example, you can input a tuplet based on eighth notes but input a quarter note within that tuplet.

8. Enter or play in the pitches you want.

   When inputting tuplets with the keyboard, Dorico Elements automatically continues inputting notes as the specified tuplet.

9. Optional: Advance the caret to continue inputting tuplets of the same ratio at later rhythmic positions in any of the following ways:

   - Press **Space**.
   - In the Keyboard, Fretboard, or Drum Pads panel toolbar, click **Advance Caret**.

10. Stop tuplet input in one of the following ways:

    - To return to inputting normal notes, press **:** or move the caret with the arrow keys.
    - To stop note input completely, press **Esc**.

RESULT

The pitches you enter or play in are input as tuplets, starting from the caret position.

If you want to input a different type of tuplet immediately after inputting tuplets, you must stop the first type of tuplet before inputting the second type. If you do not stop the first type, the second type is input as a nested tuplet.

TIP

You can also input tuplets by clicking and holding **Tuplets** in the Notes toolbox, then clicking the tuplet you want.

RELATED LINKS

Tuplets on page 1271
Nested tuplets on page 1271
Turning existing notes into tuplets on page 1273
Turning tuplets into normal notes on page 1273
Notes toolbox on page 187
Notes panel on page 191
Notations toolbox on page 192
Keyboard panel on page 197
Fretboard panel on page 199
Drum Pads panel on page 200
Caret on page 205
Inputting notes on page 211
Extending the caret to multiple staves on page 209
Inputting notes using pitch before duration on page 214

Tuplets popover

The tuplets popover allows you to input tuplets of any ratio and based on any note duration. The table contains examples of what you can enter into the tuplets popover to input different types of tuplets.

You can open the tuplets popover in Write mode during note input or when notes are selected in any of the following ways:

- Press **;**.

  As tuplets are often described in ratios, such as 3:2, the tuplets popover uses the semicolon key to be memorable.
- In the Notes toolbox, click and hold **Tuplets**, then click **x:y**.
- Choose **Write** > **Create Tuplet**.

The icon on the left-hand side of the popover matches the corresponding button in the Notes toolbox on the right of the window.

Tuplets popover with an example entry

Tuplets button in the Notes toolbox

When inputting tuplets with the keyboard, Dorico Elements continues to input notes as the specified tuplet until any of the following happens:

- You press **:** to return to inputting normal notes.
- You move the caret with the arrow keys.
- You stop note input.

Type of tuplet	Popover entry
Triplet, three notes in the space of two	**3**, **3:2**, **3/2**, or **3 2**
Triplet, three notes in the space of four	**3:4**, **3/4**, or **3 4**
Quadruplet, four notes in the space of three	**4:3**, **4/3**, or **4 3**
Quintuplet, five notes in the space of two	**5:2**, **5/2**, or **5 2**
Quintuplet, five notes in the space of four	**5:4**, **5/4**, or **5 4**
Sextuplet, six notes in the space of four	**6:4**, **6/4**, or **6 4**
Septuplet, seven notes in the space of four	**7:4**, **7/4**, or **7 4**
Nonuplet, nine notes in the space of eight	**9:8**, **9/8**, or **9 8**
Duplet, two notes in the space of three. Often used in compound meters.	**2:3**, **2/3**, or **2 3**
Quintuplet, five notes in the space of six. Often used in compound meters.	**5:6**, **5/6**, or **5 6**

Type of tuplet	Popover entry
Quintuplet, five dotted quarter notes in the space of four NOTE When using a number to specify the beat unit, you must separate the tuplet ratio from the beat unit using a space or hyphen.	**5:4q.**, **5/4q.**, **5 4q.**, or **5:4-6.**

This list is not comprehensive. It is intended to illustrate how you can structure your entry to input different tuplets.

NOTE

Unless you specify a beat unit in your entry, the total duration of the tuplet depends on the note value selected when you open the popover. For example, if a quarter note is selected when you input a triplet, the triplet input is three quarter notes in the space of two.

Tuplet beat units

Tuplet beat unit	Popover entry
64th note	**z** or **2**
32nd note	**y** or **3**
16th note	**x** or **4**
Eighth note	**e** or **5**
Quarter note	**q** or **6**
Half note	**h** or **7**
Whole note	**w** or **8**
Double whole note	**2w** or **9**
Rhythm dot	**.** (period)

RELATED LINKS
Turning existing notes into tuplets on page 1273
Selecting note/rest durations on page 247

Adding notes above/below existing notes

You can add notes above/below existing notes. You can add multiple notes at the same time, according to their intervals relative to the existing notes.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the notes to which you want to add notes.
2. Open the note tools popover in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Shift-I**.
   - In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers**, then **Note Tools**.
3. Enter the intervals of the notes you want, relative to your selected notes.

   For example, enter **-m3,4** to add notes a minor third below and a fourth above the selected notes.
4. Press **Return** to close the popover.

RESULT

Notes are added to the selected notes according to the intervals specified.

RELATED LINKS
Notations toolbox on page 192
Note tools popover on page 462

Note durations

In Dorico Elements, you can change note durations both during note input and for existing notes.

RELATED LINKS
Notes and rests in Dorico on page 25
Note and rest grouping on page 774
Played vs. notated note durations on page 639

Selecting note/rest durations

You can select different durations for notes/rests, both during note input and for existing notes/rests.

PROCEDURE

1. Optional: If you want to select a note duration not shown in the Notes panel, click the **Show/Hide All Notes** disclosure arrows at the top and bottom of the notes list to show more note durations.
2. Select a note/rest duration in any of the following ways:
   - Press the number on your computer keyboard that corresponds to the duration you want.

     For example, press **6** for quarter notes (crotchets). Press smaller numbers for smaller durations, such as **5** for eighth notes (quavers) and **4** for 16th notes (semiquavers). Press larger numbers for larger durations, such as **7** for half notes (minims).
   - In the Notes panel, click the duration you want.

- In the Keyboard, Fretboard, or Drum Pads panel toolbar, click the duration you want.

3. Optional: Add rhythm dots to the duration in one of the following ways:
   - For a single rhythm dot, press **.**.
   - For multiple rhythm dots, press **Alt/Opt-.** to cycle through different numbers of rhythm dots. You can specify up to four rhythm dots.
   - In the Notes toolbox, click **Dotted Notes** to add the displayed number of rhythm dots.
   - In the Notes toolbox, click and hold **Dotted Notes** to access different numbers of rhythm dots.

   NOTE

   You cannot add rhythm dots to grace notes.

RELATED LINKS
Notes toolbox on page 187
Keyboard panel on page 197
Fretboard panel on page 199
Drum Pads panel on page 200
Notes panel on page 191
Caret on page 205
Key commands in Dorico on page 28
Inputting notes on page 211

Changing the duration of notes

You can lengthen/shorten the duration of notes after they have been input.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the notes whose duration you want to change.

   NOTE

   If you want to extend a note to the end of the current selection, select both that note and an item at the rhythmic position to which you want to extend the note.

2. Change the duration in any of the following ways:
   - Press the key command of the duration you want. For example, press **4** for a 16th note (semiquaver).
   - In the Notes panel, click the duration you want.
   - In the Keyboard, Fretboard, or Drum Pads panel toolbar, click the duration you want.
   - To lengthen notes by the current rhythmic grid resolution, press **Shift-Alt/Opt-Right Arrow**.
   - To shorten notes by the current rhythmic grid resolution, press **Shift-Alt/Opt-Left Arrow**.
   - To double the length of notes, press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-Alt/Opt-Right Arrow**.
   - To halve the length of notes, press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-Alt/Opt-Left Arrow**.
   - To lengthen notes by the current rhythmic grid resolution, choose **Write** > **Edit Duration** > **Lengthen Duration by Grid Value**.

- To shorten notes by the current rhythmic grid resolution, choose **Write** > **Edit Duration** > **Shorten Duration by Grid Value**.
- To double the length of notes, choose **Write** > **Edit Duration** > **Double Note Duration**.
- To halve the length of notes, choose **Write** > **Edit Duration** > **Halve Note Duration**.
- To lengthen notes up to the next existing note in their voice, choose **Write** > **Edit Duration** > **Extend to Next Note**.

  NOTE

  This does not apply to grace notes.

- To lengthen a single note up to the rhythmic position of the end of the current selection, choose **Write** > **Edit Duration** > **Extend to End of Selection**.
- To shorten overlapping notes in the same voice so that they no longer overlap, choose **Write** > **Edit Duration** > **Shorten to Next Note**.

RESULT

The duration of the selected notes is changed. Dorico Elements automatically notates and beams the notes appropriately according to their new duration, the prevailing time signature, and their position in the bar.

When extending notes, their duration fills in any intervening rests. Extending notes to the end of the current selection does not delete any intervening notes, instead they combine with the extended note to create chords where necessary.

TIP

You can assign your own key commands to lengthen/shorten notes by specific durations and to extend them. You can find these by searching for **Shorten duration by**, **Lengthen duration by**, and **Extend to** on the **Key Commands** page in **Preferences**.

RELATED LINKS

Notes panel on page 191
Notes toolbox on page 187
Keyboard panel on page 197
Fretboard panel on page 199
Drum Pads panel on page 200
Rhythmic grid on page 204
Key Commands page in the Preferences dialog on page 59
Insert mode on page 427
Chord mode on page 242
Lengthening/Shortening items on page 410
Played vs. notated note durations on page 639

Splitting notes by duration

You can split notes by either a specific duration, the current rhythmic grid resolution, or the duration between the start of the note and the caret position; for example, to turn a long tie chain into a sequence of eighth notes.

PROCEDURE

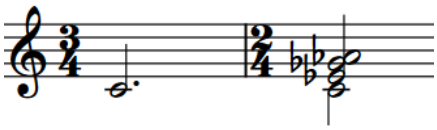
1. In Write mode, select the notes you want to split.
2. Split the selected notes in any of the following ways:

- To split them by the current rhythmic grid resolution, press **Alt/Opt-U** or choose **Write** > **Edit Duration** > **Split by Rhythmic Grid Resolution**.
- To split them by the duration between the start of the note and the caret position, activate the caret, extend it across the required staves, move the caret to the required position, then press **Alt/Opt-U**.
- To split them by a specific duration, choose **Write** > **Edit Duration** > **Split by Note Duration** > **[Note duration]**.

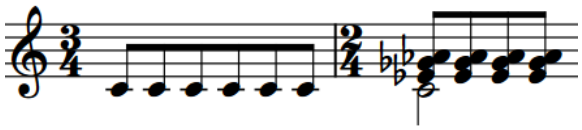
RESULT

The selected notes, or notes across which the caret extends, are split into multiple, shorter notes of the corresponding duration. If multiples of the selected duration do not fit exactly into the original notes, the final note is shortened.

EXAMPLE



A phrase containing long notes



Up-stem notes split into eighth notes

RELATED LINKS

Rhythmic grid on page 204
Caret on page 205
Activating/Deactivating the caret on page 209
Moving the caret manually on page 210
Extending the caret to multiple staves on page 209
Deleting ties on page 1241
Splitting tie chains on page 1241

Forcing the duration of notes/rests

Dorico Elements automatically notates and beams notes/rests appropriately according to the prevailing time signature and their position in the bar. You can force the duration of notes/rests to specify their notation.

For example, if you input a half note at the start of a 6/8 bar, it is notated as a dotted quarter note (crotchet) tied to an eighth note (quaver). This is because, according to convention, 6/8 bars are subdivided into two groups of three eighth notes. To reflect this for a half note (four eighth notes), Dorico Elements automatically divides the note to show the correct grouping, but you can force the note duration to show a half note instead.

TIP

If you want to force the duration of all notes on a staff to imply a different meter, for example, to show three quarter note groups in 6/8 to indicate a hemiola, you can also input a time signature only on those staves to group notes according to that meter. You can then hide the time signatures if required.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:
   - Start note input.
   - Select existing notes whose duration you want to force.

     TIP

     If you later want to tie notes together, we recommend forcing the duration of all notes you want in the tie chain.

2. Optional: If you want input rests with forced durations, start rest input in any of the following ways:
   - Press **,**.
   - In the Notes toolbox, click **Rests**.
3. Activate **Force Duration** in any of the following ways:
   - Press **O**.
   - In the Notes toolbox, click **Force Duration**.
4. Select the note/rest duration you want.

   TIP

   If you want tie chains to appear as single noteheads with the same total duration, you must first reduce their duration, then change it to the duration you want.

5. Optional: During note or rest input, input the notes or rests you want.

RESULT

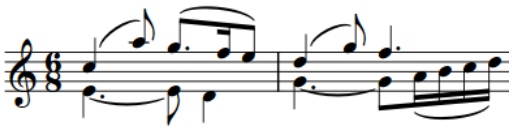
During note or rest input, any notes you input are notated with their whole rhythmic value, whatever their position in the bar. If you move them later, they keep the same notation. Rests are input as explicit rests. Notes that cross barlines are notated as tied notes.

Forcing the duration of existing notes or rests preserves their current duration or any duration to which you subsequently change them.

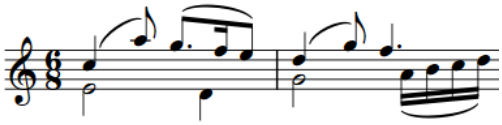
TIP

- **Force position and duration** in the **Notes and Rests** group of the Properties panel is activated automatically for rests input with forced durations. You can also use this property to force the duration and position of rests.
- You can choose whether or not **Force Duration** retains its previous state when you stop and restart note input in **Preferences** > **Note Input and Editing** > **Note Input**.
- You can change how notes are grouped in different contexts project-wide on the **Note Grouping** page in **Notation Options**.

EXAMPLE



Default notation of notes in 6/8



Notes in the down-stem voice input with forced durations

RELATED LINKS
Implicit vs. explicit rests on page 1145
Notes toolbox on page 187
Notes panel on page 191
Caret on page 205
Inputting notes on page 211
Inputting rests on page 235
Inputting ties on page 237
Selecting note/rest durations on page 247
Changing the duration of notes on page 248
Notation Options dialog on page 679
Beam grouping according to meters on page 755
Note and rest grouping on page 774
Creating custom beat groupings for meters on page 774
Turning explicit rests into implicit rests on page 1147

MIDI recording

MIDI recording is a way of inputting notes into Dorico Elements by playing them in real time on a MIDI device. This can be particularly useful if, for example, you prefer to improvise your music rather than plan pitches and note durations in advance.

In Dorico Elements, you can record MIDI notes using any MIDI device.

Dorico Elements automatically transcribes multiple simultaneous parts into separate voices, such as in contrapuntal piano music. Depending on your settings for MIDI recording and quantization, Dorico Elements can also detect slurs, tremolos, trills, pedal lines, tuplets, and grace notes.

Outside of note input, Dorico Elements uses the instrument sounds of your most recent selection for the notes you play on your MIDI device. In Play mode, this is the most recent track header you clicked, while in Write mode, this is the last instrument staff on which you selected an item, started note input, or into which you recorded MIDI. During note input, Dorico Elements always uses the instrument sounds of the instrument into which you are recording notes.

TIP

You can enable/disable MIDI thru on the **Play** page in **Preferences**. For example, if you do not want to hear sounds in Dorico Elements when playing on your MIDI keyboard.

As you play notes on your MIDI device, Dorico Elements uses an algorithm to produce the correct enharmonic spelling for those notes.

RELATED LINKS
Optimization for MIDI recording on page 256

Preferences dialog on page 58
Quantization options on page 94
MIDI Import Options dialog on page 86
Voices on page 1303
Pedal lines on page 1044
Slurs on page 1155
Tremolos on page 1264
Trills on page 981
Tuplets on page 1271
Grace notes on page 897

Inputting notes using MIDI recording

You can input notes by recording what you play on a MIDI device in real time. You can record notes in both concert and transposed pitch.

PREREQUISITE

- You have connected the MIDI device you want to use.
- You have set the quantization and recording options on the **Play** page in **Preferences** as required for the music you intend to record.
- You have input enough bars or empty rhythmic space for the amount of music you want to record. Dorico Elements does not automatically add extra bars or rhythmic space.
- If you want to hear a click during your recording, you have input a time signature. There is no click in open meter or when there is no time signature.
- You have chosen the appropriate input pitch setting.

PROCEDURE

1. Select a note or rest on the staff/instrument track into which you want to record notes, at the position from which you want to record. You can do this in Write mode and Play mode.

   NOTE

   - In Play mode you cannot select rests, meaning you can only record into instrument tracks that already contain at least one note.
   - You can also record MIDI during note input, but this prevents Dorico Elements from using both staves in grand staff instruments.

2. Optional: If you want to record notes without overwriting any existing notes on the staff, activate Chord mode in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Q**.
   - In the Notes toolbox, click **Chords** .
3. Optional: If you want to record into a specific voice on the staff, in Write mode, press **Shift-N** to start note input, then do one of the following:
   - If the voice you want already exists on the staff, press **V** until the note symbol beside the caret indicates the correct voice.
   - If the voice you want does not exist on the staff yet, press **Shift-V** until the note symbol beside the caret indicates the correct voice.
4. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-R** to start recording.

During recording, the playhead appears red and moves along in time. By default, there is one bar of count-in before the playhead reaches the rhythmic position of either your original selection or the caret.

5. Play the notes you want on your MIDI device.

   NOTE

   Notes do not appear until you stop recording.

6. Press **Space or Enter** or **Ctrl/Cmd-R** to stop recording.

RESULT

The notes you played on the MIDI device are input onto the selected staff.

If you did not specify the voice, notes are recorded into voices according to what you played. For example, if you played notes in rhythmic unison, they are recorded into a single voice. If you played notes with different rhythms, they are recorded into separate voices, up to two voices per staff.

If you activated **Chords**, the notes you played are merged into the first available voice on the staff without overwriting any existing notes.

The notated duration of the notes follows your quantization options, but their played durations are retained for playback.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

- If the notes you played in are not notated as you intended, you can requantize them.
- If you do not want to retain played durations for playback, you can reset playback overrides.

RELATED LINKS

Quantization options on page 94
Optimization for MIDI recording on page 256
Enabling/Disabling MIDI input devices on page 258
Changing the input pitch setting on page 218
Changing the sustain pedal controller settings for MIDI recording/import on page 258
Repeats in MIDI recording on page 255
Input methods for bars, beats, and barlines on page 287
Input methods for time signatures and pick-up bars on page 270
Inputting notes into multiple voices on page 221
Turning existing notes into grace notes on page 899
Resetting playback overrides on page 640
Preferences dialog on page 58

Retrieving played notes that you did not record

During playback, you can play notes on your MIDI keyboard and hear them without recording them into the score. You can use retrospective recording to retrieve these notes and input them into the project without previously explicitly recording them. For example, if you only intended to experiment with ideas, but afterwards decided you wanted to keep them.

PREREQUISITE

You have started playback, played notes on a MIDI device alongside playback, then stopped playback.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select a note or rest on the staff where you want to input the retrieved notes.

2. Optional: If you want to input retrieved notes without overwriting any existing notes on the staff, press **Q** to activate **Chords**.
3. Retrieve the notes you played in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Alt/Opt-R**.
   - In the **Transport** window, click **Retrospective Record**.

RESULT

All the notes you played on your MIDI device during the previous playback are input on the selected staff, starting from the selected rhythmic position. They are input into the first available voice on the staff and overwrite any existing notes in that voice by default. If you activated **Chords**, the retrieved notes are merged into the first available voice on the staff without overwriting any existing notes.

NOTE

The retrospective recording buffer is cleared each time you start playback, meaning you cannot retrieve music you played before the most recent playback.

RELATED LINKS

Playing back music on page 503
Transport window on page 515

Repeats in MIDI recording

When recording MIDI into flows that contain repeat structures, such as repeat barlines, Dorico Elements records the notes you play during each playthrough and merges them together into the same voice.

Any differences in rhythms between the recordings are notated according to the current meter.

Requantizing notes

You can requantize notes using different quantization options. For example, if you want to change notated rhythms after importing MIDI or recording notes using a MIDI device. This does not affect the played duration of notes in playback.

PROCEDURE

1. Select all the notes you want to requantize. You can do this in Write mode and Play mode.
2. Choose **Edit** > **Requantize** to open the **Requantize** dialog.
3. Change the quantization options as required.
4. Click **OK** to save your changes and close the dialog.

RESULT

The notated durations of all selected notes are changed according to the quantization options. This does not affect their played duration in playback.

RELATED LINKS

Quantization options on page 94
Resetting playback overrides on page 640
Large selections on page 403
Selecting/Deselecting notes and items individually on page 401

Optimization for MIDI recording

Depending on your operating system and the MIDI devices you use for recording, you might find that the notes you record are not notated with the durations or at the rhythmic positions you expected. Optimizing the settings related to MIDI recording can help you achieve better results.

- You can find options that affect MIDI recording on the **Play** page in **Preferences**.

Because there can be a time latency between you pressing keys on a MIDI device and the notes being picked up by Dorico Elements, we recommend that you check the latency by inputting a simple rhythm against the click; for example, recording quarter notes in a 4/4 time signature.

Depending on the results, there are different settings you can change:

- If your notes are notated with incorrect durations, such as sixteenth notes notated as eighth notes, we recommend that you change the quantization options.
- If notes are input with missing or incorrect notations, we recommend that you change the detected notations in **Preferences** > **Play** > **Recording**.

  NOTE

  Notation settings are linked between **Preferences** and the **MIDI Import Options** dialog.

- If your notes are notated ahead of the beat, we recommend that you increase the latency compensation value.
- If your notes are notated behind the beat, we recommend that you reduce the buffer size for your audio device to the lowest possible value that still produces stable playback with no drop-outs.

  NOTE

  The built-in audio device on Windows computers cannot always achieve a low enough latency for reliable input in real time. In such cases, we recommend that you use an external USB audio interface with ASIO support.

RELATED LINKS
Quantization options on page 94
MIDI Import Options dialog on page 86
Changing the sustain pedal controller settings for MIDI recording/import on page 258
Turning existing notes into grace notes on page 899
Changing the sound used for the click on page 496
Preferences dialog on page 58
Pedal lines on page 1044
Slurs on page 1155
Tremolos on page 1264
Trills on page 981
Tuplets on page 1271
Grace notes on page 897

Changing the MIDI latency compensation value

You can change the MIDI latency compensation value to correct any discrepancy between when you press keys during MIDI recording and where the corresponding notes are notated relative to the beat.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-,** to open **Preferences**.
2. In the category list, click **Play**.
3. In the **Recording** subsection, change the value for **MIDI input latency compensation**.
4. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

Increasing the latency compensation value increases the time between pressing the key and the note being notated. This is useful if the notes you record were previously notated ahead of the beat.

Decreasing the latency compensation value decreases the time between pressing the key and the note being notated. This is useful if the notes you record were previously notated behind the beat.

Changing the audio device buffer size

You can change the audio buffer size; for example, if the current buffer size is causing notes input using MIDI recording appear significantly after the beat.

NOTE

- If the notes you play when recording MIDI are notated behind the beat, we recommend that you reduce the buffer size for your audio device to the lowest possible value that still produces stable playback with no drop-outs.
- The built-in audio device on Windows computers cannot always achieve a low enough latency for reliable input in real time. In such cases, we recommend that you use an external USB audio interface with ASIO support.

PROCEDURE

1. Choose **Edit** > **Device Setup** to open the **Device Setup** dialog.
2. Select the audio device whose buffer size you want to change from the **ASIO Driver** menu.
3. Click **Device Control Panel** to open the device settings dialog for the selected audio device.
4. In the audio device settings dialog, change the buffer size in one of the following ways, as appropriate for your operating system:
   - For Windows systems, in the **Audio buffer size** section, either drag the slider to a different position or activate **User definable** and change the value in the **Selected buffer size** field.
   - For macOS systems, select a sample rate from the **Buffer Size** menu.
5. Click **OK** (Windows)/**Close** (macOS) to close the audio device settings dialog.
6. Click **Close** to close the **Device Setup** dialog.

Changing the sustain pedal controller settings for MIDI recording/import

You can change your default setting for whether Dorico Elements interprets sustain pedal controllers as pedal lines when recording MIDI and importing or opening MIDI files.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-,** to open **Preferences**.
2. In the category list, click **Play**.
3. In the **Recording** subsection, activate/deactivate **Import CC64 as pedal lines**.
4. Optional: If you activated **Import CC64 as pedal lines**, activate/deactivate **Snap pedal lines to previous beat**.
5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

When **Import CC64 as pedal lines** is activated, the MIDI controller CC64 is interpreted as pedal lines.

When **Snap pedal lines to previous beat** is activated, the start of pedal lines is automatically moved back to the start of the beat.

NOTE

These options are also available in the **MIDI Import Options** dialog, and your settings are linked between this dialog and **Preferences**.

RELATED LINKS

Preferences dialog on page 58
MIDI Import Options dialog on page 86

Enabling/Disabling MIDI input devices

By default, Dorico Elements accepts MIDI input from all connected MIDI devices, including virtual MIDI cables and inter-application buses. You can enable/disable MIDI devices individually; for example, if you are using devices that continuously output MIDI data or if you want particular devices to remain routed exclusively to another application.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-,** to open **Preferences**.
2. In the category list, click **Play**.
3. In the **MIDI Input Devices** subsection, activate/deactivate the checkbox for each MIDI input device.
4. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

Notations input

You can input many types of notations, both during note input and by adding them to existing notes and music. In Dorico Elements, “notation” is a broad term that includes many different items, including articulations, slurs, dynamics, and more.

In Dorico Elements, you can input most notations with the keyboard by using popovers and with the mouse by using panels.

Inputting articulations

You can input notes with articulations during note input, and you can add articulations to notes after they have been input.

NOTE

These steps describe selecting articulations before inputting notes. However, you can change this setting if you prefer to specify articulations after inputting notes.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:
   - Start note input.
   - Select the existing notes to which you want to add articulations.
2. Optional: If you want to input notes with articulations onto multiple staves at once, extend the caret to those staves.
3. Select the articulations you want to input in any of the following ways:
   - Press the key commands for the articulations you want.
   - In the Notes panel, click the articulations you want.
   - In the Keyboard panel toolbar, click the articulations you want.
4. Optional: During note input, input the notes or chords you want with your selected articulations.

RESULT

The selected articulations are added to the selected notes. They are positioned between noteheads or stems and tuplet brackets, so they are closer to the notes than tuplet brackets or tuplet numbers/ratios.

During note input, the selected articulations are added to all notes that are input until the articulations are deactivated.

NOTE

Some combinations of articulations on the same notes are not possible. For example, you cannot have both staccato and staccatissimo marks on the same notes, as both articulations indicate that notes are played shorter.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

You can enable independent voice playback for individual instruments to hear different sounds in different voices simultaneously; for example, if you have slurs in one voice and staccatos in another voice.

RELATED LINKS
Articulations on page 723
Note input on page 210
Notes panel on page 191
Keyboard panel on page 197
Copying and pasting articulations on page 724
Extending the caret to multiple staves on page 209
Hiding/Showing zones on page 44
Enabling independent voice playback on page 506

Key commands for articulations

In addition to clicking them in the Notes panel, you can input common articulations by pressing key commands on your computer keyboard.

You can use the following key commands to input articulations with the keyboard:

Type of articulation	Key command
Accent: >	**[**
Marcato: ^	**'**
Stressed: ˊ	**{**
Unstressed: ˘	**@ (Windows) or " (macOS)**
Staccato: ·	**]**
Tenuto: –	**# (Windows) or \ (macOS)**
Staccatissimo: ', ', or '	**}**
Combined tenuto and staccato: ⁼	**~ (Windows) or | (macOS)**

Inputting slurs

You can input slurs, both during note input and by adding them to existing notes. You can also add slurs to existing notes on multiple staves at the same time, and to notes in different voices or on different staves belonging to the same instrument; for example, when phrases span both staves of grand staff instruments.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:
   - Start note input.
   - Select the notes to which you want to add slurs.

     TIP

     - If you only select a single note, the slur connects that note to the next note in the same voice on the staff. To input slurs between notes in different voices, you must

select both notes; for example, by selecting the first note then **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking the second note.

- For instruments with multiple staves, such as piano and harp, you can select two existing notes, each on a different staff, to create cross-staff slurs. However, you cannot create cross-staff slurs between different instruments.
- You can select notes on multiple staves to input slurs on those staves simultaneously.

2. Optional: If you want to input notes and slurs onto multiple staves at once, extend the caret to those staves.
3. Input a slur in any of the following ways:
   - Press **S**.
   - In the Notes panel, click **Slur**.
   - In the Keyboard panel toolbar, click **Slur**.

   NOTE

   If you added slurs to existing notes, stop here.
4. During note input, input the notes you want.
   The slur extends automatically, even if there are rests between the notes you input.
5. During note input, end the slur on the currently selected note in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Shift-S**.
   - In the Keyboard panel toolbar, click **Slur**.

RESULT

During note input, slurs begin from the currently selected note on all staves across which the caret extends, not from the caret position. Slurs extend automatically as you input notes, and end on the currently selected note.

When adding slurs to existing notes, the selected notes are connected by slurs. For example, if you select two notes belonging to one instrument and two notes belonging to another, two slurs are input connecting the notes on each selected staff. If you selected notes on different staves belonging to the same instrument, a cross-staff slur is input.

Slurs are placed either above or below the notes, depending on the stem direction of the notes within the selection.

TIP

When nothing is selected, you can also click **Slur** in the Notes panel or Keyboard panel toolbar, and then click and drag to input a slur and extend it to your preferred length.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

- You can enable independent voice playback for individual instruments to hear different sounds in different voices simultaneously; for example, if you have slurs in one voice and staccatos in another voice.
- You can change the curvature direction of individual slurs.

RELATED LINKS

Notes panel on page 191

Keyboard panel on page 197
Hiding/Showing zones on page 44
Slurs on page 1155
Inputting nested slurs on page 1167
Inputting notes on page 211
Extending the caret to multiple staves on page 209
Slurs in playback on page 1178
Enabling independent voice playback on page 506
Cross-staff and cross-voice slurs on page 1166
Changing the curvature direction of slurs on page 1165
Moving notes/items rhythmically on page 437
Lengthening/Shortening items on page 410

Inputting fingerings

You can input fingerings on existing notes using the fingerings popover, both during note input and by adding them to existing notes.

NOTE

- You can only add fingerings to notes at one rhythmic position at a time, and you can only input as many fingerings as there are notes at each rhythmic position. For example, you can input three fingerings at the rhythmic position of a chord containing three notes, but only one fingering at the rhythmic position of a single note.
- If you select notes in multiple voices, fingerings are only input into the top voice.
- Although they contain two numbers, substitution fingerings are considered one fingering, meaning you can add substitution fingerings to single notes.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:
   - Start note input.
   - Select an existing note on a single staff to which you want to add fingering.

     If you want to add fingerings to all notes in a chord, select all the notes in the chord.
2. Optional: During note input, input at least one note.
3. Open the fingerings popover in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Shift-F**.
   - In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers**, then **Fingerings**.
4. Optional: If you are inputting fingerings for fretted instruments, change the hand in one of the following ways:
   - To switch to the right hand, press **Down Arrow**.
   - To switch to the left hand, press **Up Arrow**.

   The popover icon updates to show the current hand.

Fingerings popover when inputting right-hand fingerings

Fingerings popover when inputting left-hand fingerings

5. Enter the fingerings you want into the popover.

   For example, enter:

   - **3-2** for a substitution fingering from the third finger to the second finger.
   - **1,3,5** for a chord.
   - **12** to show the first two valves should be depressed on a valved brass instrument.
   - **p** for a right-hand thumb fingering or **t** for a left-hand thumb fingering.
   - **2/** for a fingering with a shift indicator.

6. Optional: When adding fingerings to existing notes, move the popover in one of the following ways:

   - To advance the popover to the next note/chord in the current voice, press **Space**.
   - To move the popover back to the previous note/chord in the current voice, press **Shift-Space**.
   - To advance the popover to the first note/chord in the current voice in the next bar, press **Tab**.
   - To move the popover back to the first note/chord in the current voice in the previous bar, press **Shift-Tab**.
   - To move the cursor and popover to the right/left and to the next/previous note/fingering in the current voice, press **Right Arrow** / **Left Arrow**.

7. Press **Return** to close the popover.

RESULT

The fingerings are input on the selected notes, including during note input. The popover advances through notes in the voice as indicated by the caret or in the same voice as your initial selection.

RELATED LINKS

Fingering on page 871
Changing the rhythmic position of substitution fingerings on page 873
Fingerings for valved brass instruments on page 887
Deleting fingerings on page 878
Hiding/Showing fingerings in chord diagrams on page 810

Fingerings popover

The following tables contain examples of what you can enter into the fingerings popover to input the different types of fingerings available. The fingerings popover behaves differently for fretted instruments compared to other instruments, so there is a separate table for fretted instrument fingerings.

You can open the fingerings popover in Write mode in any of the following ways when either a note is selected or the caret is active:

- Press **Shift-F**.
- In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers**, then **Fingerings**.
- Choose **Write** > **Create Fingerings**.

When inputting fingerings for non-fretted instruments, the icon on the left-hand side of the popover matches the corresponding button in the Notations toolbox. When inputting fingerings for fretted instruments, the icon on the left-hand side of the popover indicates whether you are inputting left-hand or right-hand fingerings.

Fingerings popover with an example entry for inputting a non-fretted instrument fingering

Fingerings popover with an example entry for a left-hand fretted instrument fingering

Fingerings popover with an example entry for a right-hand fretted instrument fingering

Fingering button in the Notations toolbox

Non-fretted instruments

Type of fingering	Example popover entry
Single fingerings for individual notes, including for brass valve numbers and trombone slide positions	**1**, **2**, **3**, and so on
Valved brass instruments	**12**
Single fingerings for each note in chords For keyboard instruments, Dorico Elements automatically orders numbers appropriately according to the hand playing the notes. The default is: • Right hand for the upper staff • Left hand for the lower staff	**1,3,5**
Left-hand fingerings (non-fretted instruments)	**L2**, **G2**, **S5**, **I2**, or **H2**
Right-hand fingerings (non-fretted instruments)	**R5**, **D5**, or **M5**
Thumb indicator (non-fretted instruments)	**T**
Multiple fingerings for individual notes; for example, for ornaments such as mordents or turns	**2343**
Single fingerings for multiple notes: enter the same fingering number for two adjacent notes. For example, in keyboard music the thumb may depress two keys simultaneously.	**1,1**
Alternative fingerings	**2(3)**

Type of fingering	Example popover entry
Editorial fingerings	**[4]**
Finger substitutions	**1-3**
Fingering shift indicator (string instruments)	**2/**

Fretted instruments

Type of fingering	Example popover entries
Left-hand fingerings	**0**, **1**, **2**, **3**, **4**, **5**
Left-hand thumb	**t**
Right-hand fingerings	**1**, **2**, **3**, **4**, **5** **p**, **i**, **m**, **a**, **e**
Right-hand thumb	**p**, **t**, or **1**
Right-hand pinky finger	**e**, **x**, **c**, **o**, or **5**

These lists are not comprehensive as there are many possible fingerings. It is intended to illustrate how you can structure your entries to input different types of fingerings.

NOTE

Finger substitutions are shown as immediate by default, but you can change the rhythmic position of the substitution by changing the deferral duration.

RELATED LINKS
Notations toolbox on page 192
Fingering on page 871
Changing the rhythmic position of substitution fingerings on page 873
Fingerings for valved brass instruments on page 887
Hiding/Showing fingerings in chord diagrams on page 810

Input methods for key signatures

You can input key signatures with the keyboard by using the key signatures popover, and with the mouse by using the Key Signatures, Tonality Systems, and Accidentals panel.

RELATED LINKS
Key signatures on page 911

Key signatures popover

The table contains the entries for the key signatures popover that you can use to input the different key signatures available.

You can open the key signatures popover in Write mode in any of the following ways when either an item is selected or the caret is active:

- Press **Shift-K**.
- In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers**, then **Key Signatures**.
- Select an existing key signature and press **Return**.
- Choose **Write** > **Create Key Signature**.

The icon on the left-hand side of the popover matches the corresponding button in the Notations toolbox on the right of the window.

Key signatures popover with an example entry

Key Signatures, Tonality Systems, and Accidentals button in the Notations toolbox

Type of key signature	Popover entry
Open or atonal key signature	**open** or **atonal**
Major keys (capital letters)	**C**, **D**, **G#**, **Ab**, and so on
Minor keys (lowercase letters)	**g**, **d**, **f#**, **bb**, and so on
Number of sharps NOTE Assumes the major key for that many sharps.	**3s**, **2#**, and so on
Number of flats NOTE Assumes the major key for that many flats.	**4f**, **5b**, and so on

This list is not comprehensive as you can input every possible key signature. It is intended to illustrate how you can structure your entry to input different types of key signatures.

RELATED LINKS
Notations toolbox on page 192
Key signatures on page 911
Types of key signatures on page 913

Key Signatures, Tonality Systems, and Accidentals panel

The Key Signatures, Tonality Systems, and Accidentals panel allows you to create and input common key signatures. It is located in the right zone in Write mode.

- You can hide/show the Key Signatures, Tonality Systems, and Accidentals panel by clicking **Panels**, then **Key Signatures, Tonality Systems, and Accidentals** in the Notations toolbox.

  You can also hide/show the right zone by pressing **Ctrl/Cmd-9**.

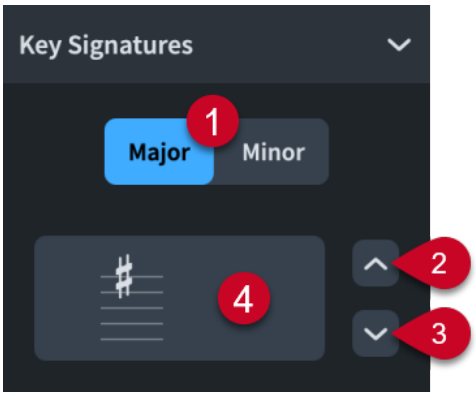
The Key Signatures, Tonality Systems, and Accidentals panel contains the following sections:

Used in This Flow

Contains all the key signatures currently used in the flow.

Key Signatures

Allows you to create key signatures.



The **Key Signatures** section contains the following parts:

1 **Major/Minor**

Allow you to choose whether your key signature is **Major** or **Minor**.

2 **More Sharps/Fewer Flats**

Each time you click, you add one sharp accidental to the key signature, or remove one flat accidental from the key signature.

3 **Fewer Sharps/More Flats**

Each time you click, you remove one sharp accidental from the key signature, or add one flat accidental to the key signature.

4 **Input key signature**

Shows how the key signature looks on a staff. Clicking this button inputs the displayed key signature. If nothing in the project is selected, the key signature is loaded onto the mouse pointer.

Accidentals

Contains all accidentals available in the currently selected tonality system.

RELATED LINKS
Notations toolbox on page 192
Key signatures on page 911
Tonality systems on page 918

Inputting key signatures with the popover

You can input key signatures using the key signatures popover, both during note input and by adding them to existing music. You can also input key signatures only on single staves.

NOTE

It is not necessary to input different key signatures for transposing instruments, as Dorico Elements automatically shows the appropriate key signatures for transposing instruments in transposing layouts.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:
   - Start note input.
   - Select an item at the rhythmic position where you want to input a key signature. If you want to input a key signature on a single staff, select an item that belongs to that staff only.
2. Optional: If you want to input key signatures onto multiple specific staves at once, extend the caret to those staves.
3. Open the key signatures popover in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Shift-K**.
   - In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers**, then **Key Signatures**.
4. Enter the key signature you want into the popover.

   For example, enter:
   - **G** or **1s** for G major.
   - **g** for G minor.
   - **open** for an atonal key signature.
5. Input the key signature and close the popover in one of the following ways:
   - To input a key signature on all staves, press **Return**.
   - To input a key signature only on the selected staff or staves across which the caret extends, press **Alt/Opt-Return**.

RESULT

During note input, key signatures are input at the caret position, even if this is in the middle of a bar. However, it is preferable to input key signature changes at barlines.

When adding key signatures to existing music, they are added at the rhythmic position of the earliest selected item. They appear to the right of barlines and clefs, and to the left of other items, even if this is in the middle of an existing bar. If you selected an existing key signature, the new key signature directly replaces the existing one.

All subsequently input notes follow the input key signature, until the next existing key signature or the end of the flow, whichever comes first. If playing in notes using a MIDI keyboard, accidentals are spelled according to the key signature.

Key signatures that do not show accidentals, such as A minor or open key signatures, are indicated by signposts.

NOTE

An individual key signature on a single staff is not intended for transposing instruments. Transpositions of notes and key signatures are done automatically for transposing instruments.

RELATED LINKS

Key signatures popover on page 266
Extending the caret to multiple staves on page 209
Accidental selection during MIDI input on page 234
Key signatures on page 911
Moving notes/items rhythmically on page 437
Transposing instruments on page 133
Making layouts transposing/concert pitch on page 169
Respelling notes on page 449
Changing the pitch of individual notes on page 444
Transposing selections on page 445
Mapping notes to scales on page 460
Signposts on page 426

Inputting key signatures with the panel

You can input key signatures using the Key Signatures, Tonality Systems, and Accidentals panel, both during note input and by adding them to existing music. You can also input key signatures only on single staves.

NOTE

- These steps describe inputting with the default mouse input preference **Create item at selection**.
- It is not necessary to input different key signatures for transposing instruments, as Dorico Elements automatically shows the appropriate key signatures for transposing instruments in transposing layouts.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:
   - Start note input.
   - Select an item at the rhythmic position where you want to input a key signature. If you want to input a key signature on a single staff, select an item that belongs to that staff only.
2. In the Notations toolbox, click **Panels**, then **Key Signatures, Tonality Systems, and Accidentals** to show the Key Signatures, Tonality Systems, and Accidentals panel.
3. Optional: If you have not already used the key signature you want in the current flow, create the key signature you want using the **Key Signatures** editor in the Key Signatures, Tonality Systems, and Accidentals panel.
4. Input the key signature you want in one of the following ways:
   - To input a key signature on all staves, click it in the Key Signatures, Tonality Systems, and Accidentals panel.
   - To input a key signature on the selected staff only, **Alt/Opt**-click it in the Key Signatures, Tonality Systems, and Accidentals panel.

RESULT

During note input, key signatures are input at the caret position, even if this is in the middle of a bar. However, it is preferable to input key signature changes at barlines.

When adding key signatures to existing music, they are added at the rhythmic position of the earliest selected item. They appear to the right of barlines and clefs, and to the left of other items, even if this is in the middle of an existing bar. If you selected an existing key signature, the new key signature directly replaces the existing one.

All subsequently input notes follow the input key signature, until the next existing key signature or the end of the flow, whichever comes first. If playing in notes using a MIDI keyboard, accidentals are spelled according to the key signature.

Key signatures that do not show accidentals, such as A minor or open key signatures, are indicated by signposts.

NOTE

An individual key signature on a single staff is not intended for transposing instruments. Transpositions of notes and key signatures are done automatically for transposing instruments.

RELATED LINKS

Notations toolbox on page 192
Key Signatures, Tonality Systems, and Accidentals panel on page 267
Key signatures on page 911
Accidental selection during MIDI input on page 234
Moving notes/items rhythmically on page 437
Changing your mouse input settings on page 203
Transposing instruments on page 133
Making layouts transposing/concert pitch on page 169
Respelling notes on page 449
Changing the pitch of individual notes on page 444
Transposing selections on page 445
Mapping notes to scales on page 460
Signposts on page 426

Input methods for time signatures and pick-up bars

You can input time signatures, including time signatures with pick-up bars, with the keyboard by using the time signatures popover, and with the mouse by using the Time Signatures (Meter) panel.

NOTE

You can create most types of custom time signatures using the **Create Time Signature** section of the Time Signatures (Meter) panel, but certain time signatures are only possible using the time signatures popover. For example, you can only specify beat subdivisions with the time signatures popover.

RELATED LINKS

Preferences dialog on page 58
Time signatures on page 1249
Types of time signatures on page 1250

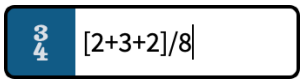
Time signatures popover

The table contains the entries for the time signatures popover that you can use to input the different types of time signatures available.

You can open the time signatures popover in Write mode in any of the following ways when either an item is selected or the caret is active:

- Press **Shift-M**.
- In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers**, then **Time Signatures (Meter)**.
- Select an existing time signature and press **Return**.
- Choose **Write** > **Create Time Signature**.

The icon on the left-hand side of the popover matches the corresponding button in the Notations toolbox on the right of the window.



Time signatures popover with an example entry

Time Signatures (Meter) button in the Notations toolbox

Time signatures

Type of time signature	Popover entry
Simple time signatures For example, 2/2 (two half notes per bar), 2/4 (two quarter notes per bar), 6/8 (six eighth notes per bar), 3/4, 5/4, and so on	**2/2**, **2/4**, **6/8**, **3/4**, **5/4**, and so on
Alternating time signatures, such as 6/8+3/4	**6/8 + 3/4** NOTE You must include spaces either side of the plus sign.
Common time, the equivalent of 4/4	**c**
Cut common time, the equivalent of 2/2	**cutc**, **cut**, or **¢**
Open meter indicated by X	**X** or **x**
Open meter with no indication NOTE A time signature signpost is shown at the position of the open meter.	**open**

Type of time signature	Popover entry
Additive time signature with explicit beat grouping	**3+2+2/8**, **3+2/4**, and so on
Beat grouping specified but not shown in the time signature For example, a time signature of 7/8 is shown but beams are subdivided into 2+3+2 eighth notes.	**[2+3+2]/8**
Aggregate time signature with dashed barlines shown in each bar, indicating the divisions between the different meters	**2/4|6/8**
Aggregate time signature without dashed barlines shown in each bar	**2/4:6/8**
Interchangeable time signature with different styles: parenthesized, slash, equals sign, and dashed	**2/4 (6/8)**, **2/4 / 6/8**, **2/4 = 6/8**, or **2/4 – 6/8** NOTE You must include spaces either side of the slashes, equals signs, or dashes, and before opening parentheses.

Pick-up bars

Example time signature with pick-up bar	Popover entry
4/4 time signature with a dotted quarter note pick-up	**4/4,1.5**
6/8 time signature with a pick-up of two eighth notes	**6/8,2**
2/2 time signature with a quarter note pick-up	**2/2,0.5**

TIP

The number after the comma indicates multiples of the rhythmic unit specified by the denominator of the time signature.

These lists are not comprehensive, as there are many possible time signatures and pick-up bars. They are intended to illustrate how you can structure your entry to input different time signatures and pick-up bars.

RELATED LINKS
Notations toolbox on page 192
Time signatures on page 1249

Types of time signatures on page 1250
Time signature styles on page 1256
Inputting time signatures with the popover on page 274
Inputting pick-up bars with the popover on page 277
Creating custom beat groupings for meters on page 774
Ending interchangeable time signatures on page 1262

Time Signatures (Meter) panel

The Time Signatures (Meter) panel allows you to input different time signatures. In the **Create Time Signature** section of the panel, you can create uncommon time signatures. It is located in the right zone in Write mode.

- You can hide/show the Time Signatures (Meter) panel by clicking **Panels**, then **Time Signatures (Meter)** in the Notations toolbox.

  You can also hide/show the right zone by pressing **Ctrl/Cmd-9**.

The Time Signatures (Meter) panel contains the following sections:

Used in This Flow

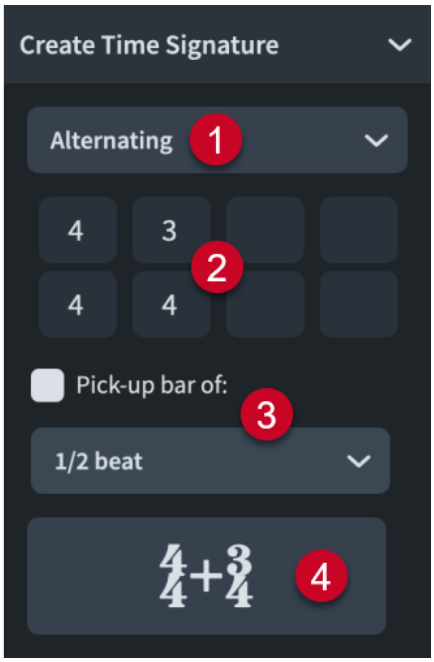
Contains any time signatures already used in the current flow.

Common

Contains common time signatures, such as 4/4, 3/4, 6/8, and 7/8.

Create Time Signature

Allows you to design your own time signatures, including alternating time signatures and aggregate time signatures.



The **Create Time Signature** section contains the following parts:

1 **Time signature type menu**

Allows you to select one of the following types of time signatures:

- **Regular**
- **Additive**
- **Interchangeable**

- **Aggregate**
- **Alternating**

2 **Time signature spaces**

Allows you to combine up to four time signatures. For example, you can specify only one time signature for a regular time signature, but for an alternating time signature, you might want to include three time signatures.

3 **Pick-up bar of**

Allows you to include a pick-up bar before the time signature. A pick-up bar is not a complete bar, and so allows you to include only a few beats before the first complete bar.

You can select one of the following options for the number of beats in a pick-up bar:

- **1/2 beat**
- **1 beat**
- **2 beats**
- **3 beats**

4 **Input time signature button**

Click the button that displays the time signature to input it. If nothing in the project is selected, the time signature is loaded onto the mouse pointer.

RELATED LINKS
Notations toolbox on page 192
Time signatures on page 1249
Types of time signatures on page 1250
Time signature styles on page 1256
Inputting time signatures with the panel on page 275
Inputting pick-up bars with the panel on page 278

Inputting time signatures with the popover

You can input time signatures using the time signatures popover, both during note input and by adding them to existing music. You can also input time signatures only on single staves.

NOTE

Dorico Elements does not automatically add beats to fill bars according to the new time signature at the end of the affected region unless Insert mode is activated.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:
   - Start note input.
   - Select an item at the rhythmic position where you want to input a time signature. If you want to input a time signature on a single staff, select an item that belongs to that staff only.
2. Optional: If you want to input time signatures onto multiple specific staves at once, extend the caret to those staves.
3. Optional: If you want Dorico Elements to add beats at the end of the region affected by the new time signature if required, activate Insert mode in any of the following ways:

- Press **I**.
- In the Notes toolbox, click **Insert**.

4. Open the time signatures popover in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Shift-M**.
   - In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers**, then **Time Signatures (Meter)**.
5. Enter the time signature you want into the popover.

   For example, enter **4/4** for a 4/4 time signature or **[2+2+3]/8** for a 7/8 time signature with a custom beat grouping.
6. Input the time signature and close the popover in one of the following ways:
   - To input a time signature on all staves, press **Return**.
   - To input a time signature only on the selected staff or staves across which the caret extends, press **Alt/Opt-Return**.

RESULT

During note input, time signatures are added at the caret position, even if this is in the middle of an existing bar.

When adding time signatures to existing music, they are added at the rhythmic position of the earliest selected item. They appear to the right of barlines, key signatures, and clefs, and to the left of other items, even if this is in the middle of an existing bar. If you selected an existing time signature, the new time signature directly replaces the existing one.

All subsequent bars follow the input time signature, until the next existing time signature or the end of the flow, whichever comes first. Dorico Elements automatically inputs and moves barlines as required so that subsequent music is barred correctly. However, in open meters, you must input barlines and add beats manually.

Any time signatures you input after an interchangeable time signature that are specified in it are hidden automatically until you end the interchangeable time signature.

RELATED LINKS

Time signatures popover on page 271
Extending the caret to multiple staves on page 209
Time signatures on page 1249
Pick-up bars on page 1253
Time signature styles on page 1256
Changing the separator style of interchangeable time signatures on page 1259
Inputting pick-up bars with the popover on page 277
Inputting barlines with the popover on page 293
Inputting bars/beats with the popover on page 290
Insert mode on page 427
Ending interchangeable time signatures on page 1262
Rhythmic position on page 26

Inputting time signatures with the panel

You can input time signatures using the Time Signatures (Meter) panel, both during note input and by adding them to existing music. You can also input time signatures only on single staves.

NOTE

- These steps describe inputting with the default mouse input preference **Create item at selection**.

- Dorico Elements does not automatically add beats to fill bars according to the new time signature at the end of the affected region unless Insert mode is activated.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:
   - Start note input.
   - Select an item at the rhythmic position where you want to input a time signature. If you want to input a time signature on a single staff, select an item that belongs to that staff only.
2. Optional: If you want Dorico Elements to add beats at the end of the region affected by the new time signature if required, activate Insert mode in any of the following ways:
   - Press **I**.
   - In the Notes toolbox, click **Insert**.
3. In the Notations toolbox, click **Panels**, then **Time Signatures (Meter)** to show the Time Signatures (Meter) panel.
4. Optional: If you want to input a time signature that is not available in the **Used in This Flow** or **Common** sections, select the type of time signature you want to input from the menu in the **Create Time Signature** section.
5. Optional: Enter the time signatures you want into the available spaces.
6. Input the time signature you want in one of the following ways:
   - To input a time signature on all staves, click it in the Time Signatures (Meter) panel.
   - To input a time signature on the selected staff only, **Alt/Opt**-click it in the Time Signatures (Meter) panel.

RESULT

During note input, time signatures are added at the caret position, even if this is in the middle of an existing bar.

When adding time signatures to existing music, they are added at the rhythmic position of the earliest selected item. They appear to the right of barlines, key signatures, and clefs, and to the left of other items, even if this is in the middle of an existing bar. If you selected an existing time signature, the new time signature directly replaces the existing one.

All subsequent bars follow the input time signature, until the next existing time signature or the end of the flow, whichever comes first. Dorico Elements automatically inputs and moves barlines as required so that subsequent music is barred correctly. However, in open meters, you must input barlines and add beats manually.

Any time signatures you input after an interchangeable time signature that are specified in it are hidden automatically until you end the interchangeable time signature.

RELATED LINKS

Notations toolbox on page 192
Time Signatures (Meter) panel on page 273
Changing your mouse input settings on page 203
Time signatures on page 1249
Pick-up bars on page 1253
Time signature styles on page 1256
Changing the separator style of interchangeable time signatures on page 1259
Inputting pick-up bars with the panel on page 278

Inputting barlines with the panel on page 294
Inputting bars/beats with the popover on page 290
Insert mode on page 427
Ending interchangeable time signatures on page 1262
Rhythmic position on page 26

Inputting pick-up bars with the popover

You can input pick-up bars as part of time signatures using the time signatures popover, both during note input and by adding them to existing music. You can also input time signatures with pick-up bars only on single staves.

NOTE

Dorico Elements does not automatically add beats to fill bars according to the new time signature at the end of the affected region unless Insert mode is activated.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:
   - Start note input.
   - Select an item at the rhythmic position where you want to input a pick-up bar. If you want to input a pick-up bar on a single staff, select an item that belongs to that staff only.
2. Optional: If you want to input a pick-up bar onto multiple specific staves at once, extend the caret to those staves.
3. Optional: If you want Dorico Elements to add beats at the end of the region affected by the pick-up bar if required, activate Insert mode in any of the following ways:
   - Press **I**.
   - In the Notes toolbox, click **Insert**.
4. Open the time signatures popover in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Shift-M**.
   - In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers**, then **Time Signatures (Meter)**.
5. Enter the time signature and the number of pick-up beats you want into the popover.

   For example, enter **3/4,0.75** for a 3/4 time signature with a dotted eighth note (dotted quaver) upbeat or **4/4,1** for a 4/4 time signature with one quarter note upbeat. The number after the comma indicates multiples of the rhythmic unit specified by the denominator of the time signature.
6. Input the pick-up bar and close the popover in one of the following ways:
   - To input a pick-up bar on all staves, press **Return**.
   - To input a pick-up bar only on the selected staff or staves across which the caret extends, press **Alt/Opt-Return**.

RESULT

During note input, pick-up bars are added at the caret position as part of the specified time signature, even if this is in the middle of an existing bar.

When adding pick-up bars to existing music, they are added at the rhythmic position of the earliest selected item as part of the specified time signature. They appear to the right of barlines, key signatures, and clefs, and to the left of other items, even if this is in the middle of an existing

bar. If you selected an existing time signature, the new time signature with pick-up bar directly replaces the existing one.

All subsequent bars follow the input time signature, until the next existing time signature or the end of the flow, whichever comes first. Dorico Elements automatically inputs and moves barlines as required so that subsequent music is barred correctly. However, in open meters, you must input barlines and add beats manually.

Any time signatures you input after an interchangeable time signature that are specified in it are hidden automatically until you end the interchangeable time signature.

NOTE

- Dorico Elements does not automatically insert beats at the start of existing music to which you add time signatures with pick-up bars. If you add a pick-up bar at the start of a flow, that flow now begins in the pick-up bar, not in the first full bar. You can insert beats at the start to push existing music to later rhythmic positions.
- You can use the **Global Adjustment of Current Bar** Insert mode scope to create and delete pick-up bars by deleting notes/rests in the first bar in the flow. You can also use it to shorten the last bar in flows that start with a pick-up bar.

RELATED LINKS

Time signatures popover on page 271
Pick-up bars on page 1253
Defining partial bars as pick-up bars or irregular bars on page 1253
Inputting time signatures with the popover on page 274
Inputting bars/beats with the popover on page 290
Inputting barlines with the popover on page 293
Rhythmic position on page 26
Inputting notes in Insert mode on page 226
Insert mode on page 427
Insert mode scopes on page 428
Ending interchangeable time signatures on page 1262

Inputting pick-up bars with the panel

You can input pick-up bars as part of time signatures using the Time Signatures (Meter) panel, both during note input and by adding them to existing music. You can also input time signatures only on single staves.

NOTE

- These steps describe inputting with the default mouse input preference **Create item at selection**.
- Dorico Elements does not automatically add beats to fill bars according to the new time signature at the end of the affected region unless Insert mode is activated.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:
   - Start note input.
   - Select an item at the rhythmic position where you want to input a pick-up bar. If you want to input a pick-up bar on a single staff, select an item that belongs to that staff only.

2. Optional: If you want Dorico Elements to add beats at the end of the region affected by the pick-up bar if required, activate Insert mode in any of the following ways:
   - Press **I**.
   - In the Notes toolbox, click **Insert**.
3. In the Notations toolbox, click **Panels**, then **Time Signatures (Meter)** to show the Time Signatures (Meter) panel.
4. In the **Create Time Signature** section, select the type of time signature you want from the menu.
5. Enter the time signatures you want into the available spaces.
6. Activate **Pick-up bar of** and select one of the following options:
   - **1/2 beat**
   - **1 beat**
   - **2 beats**
   - **3 beats**

   NOTE

   Not all pick-up bar lengths are possible when using the panel. For example, you cannot produce a single eighth note upbeat in 6/8 with the available options. In such cases, you must use the time signatures popover.
7. Input the pick-up bar in one of the following ways:
   - To input a pick-up bar on all staves, click the input time signature button in the **Create Time Signature** section.
   - To input a pick-up bar on the selected staff only, **Alt/Opt**-click the input time signature button in the **Create Time Signature** section.

RESULT

During note input, pick-up bars are added at the caret position as part of the specified time signature, even if this is in the middle of an existing bar.

When adding pick-up bars to existing music, they are added at the rhythmic position of the earliest selected item as part of the specified time signature. They appear to the right of barlines, key signatures, and clefs, and to the left of other items, even if this is in the middle of an existing bar. If you selected an existing time signature, the new time signature with pick-up bar directly replaces the existing one.

All subsequent bars follow the input time signature, until the next existing time signature or the end of the flow, whichever comes first. Dorico Elements automatically inputs and moves barlines as required so that subsequent music is barred correctly. However, in open meters, you must input barlines and add beats manually.

Any time signatures you input after an interchangeable time signature that are specified in it are hidden automatically until you end the interchangeable time signature.

NOTE

- Dorico Elements does not automatically insert beats at the start of existing music to which you add time signatures with pick-up bars. If you add a pick-up bar at the start of a flow, that flow now begins in the pick-up bar, not in the first full bar. You can insert beats at the start to push existing music to later rhythmic positions.

- You can use the **Global Adjustment of Current Bar** Insert mode scope to create and delete pick-up bars by deleting notes/rests in the first bar in the flow. You can also use it to shorten the last bar in flows that start with a pick-up bar.

RELATED LINKS
Notations toolbox on page 192
Time Signatures (Meter) panel on page 273
Pick-up bars on page 1253
Inputting pick-up bars with the popover on page 277
Defining partial bars as pick-up bars or irregular bars on page 1253
Inputting bars/beats with the popover on page 290
Inputting barlines with the panel on page 294
Rhythmic position on page 26
Inputting notes in Insert mode on page 226
Insert mode on page 427
Insert mode scopes on page 428
Ending interchangeable time signatures on page 1262
Changing your mouse input settings on page 203

Input methods for tempo marks

You can input tempo marks with the keyboard by using the tempo popover, with the mouse by using the Tempo panel, and in the Tempo editor. You can input a tempo mark containing just a text instruction, just a metronome mark, or a combination of the two.

RELATED LINKS
Tempo marks on page 1204
Tempo editor on page 656
Inputting tempo changes in the Tempo editor on page 657

Tempo popover

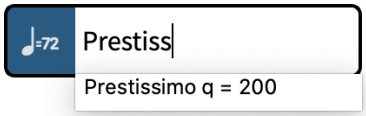
The following tables contain examples of what you can enter into the tempo popover to input tempo marks, tempo equations, and rhythmic feels for swing playback.

When you start entering a tempo into the tempo popover, a menu appears with suggestions containing the letters/words you enter. You can select one of these suggestions to input, or enter your own tempo into the popover.

You can open the tempo popover in Write mode in any of the following ways when either an item is selected or the caret is active:

- Press **Shift-T**.
- In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers**, then **Tempo**.
- Select an existing tempo mark and press **Return**.
- Choose **Write** > **Create Tempo**.

The icon on the left-hand side of the popover matches the corresponding button in the Notations toolbox on the right of the window.



Tempo popover with an example entry

Tempo button in the Notations toolbox

Tempo marks

Example tempo mark	Popover entry
Adagio	**Adagio**
Presto ♩ = 176	**Presto q = 176** or **Presto q=176**
Largo (𝅗𝅥 = 52)	**Largo (q = 52)** or **Largo (q=52)**
♩ = 96-112	**q = 96-112**, **q=96-112**, **6 = 96-112**, or **6=96-112**
♩. = 84	**q. = 84**, **q.=84**, **6. = 84**, or **6.=84**
𝅗𝅥 = 60	**h = 60**, **h=60**, **7 = 60**, or **7=60**
♪ = 120	**e = 120**, **e=120**, **5 = 120**, or **5=120**
rit.	**rit.** or **rit**
ritardando	**ritardando**
accel.	**accel.** or **accel**
accelerando	**accelerando**
più	**più**
meno	**meno**
Rubato	**Rubato**
Faster, with energy	**Faster, with energy**

This list is not comprehensive as you can enter tempos freely and there are many possible metronome marks and tempo marks. It is intended to illustrate how you can structure your entry to input different types of tempo marks and metronome marks.

NOTE

The tempo popover is case-sensitive. If you want your tempo mark to start with a capital letter, you must enter a capital letter into the popover.

Metronome mark beat units

Metronome mark beat unit	Popover entry
64th note	**z** or **2**
32nd note	**y** or **3**
16th note	**x** or **4**
Eighth note	**e** or **5**
Quarter note	**q** or **6**
Half note	**h** or **7**
Whole note	**w** or **8**
Double whole note	**2w** or **9**
Rhythm dot	**.** (period)

Tempo equations

Example tempo equation	Popover entry
♪ = ♪.	**e = e.** or **e=e.**
♩ = ♪	**q = e** or **q=e**
♩. = 𝅗𝅥	**q. = h** or **q.=h**

This list is not comprehensive as there are many possible tempo equations. It is intended to illustrate how you can structure your entry to input different tempo equations.

NOTE

Tempo equations do not yet include tuplet durations. This is planned for future versions.

Rhythmic feels for swing playback

Rhythmic feel	Popover entry
Light 16th note swing rhythmic feel	**light swing 16ths**
Light eighth note swing rhythmic feel	**light swing 8ths**
Medium 16th note swing rhythmic feel	**medium swing 16ths**

Rhythmic feel	Popover entry
Medium eighth note swing rhythmic feel	**medium swing 8ths**
Heavy 16th note swing rhythmic feel	**heavy swing 16ths**
Heavy eighth note swing rhythmic feel	**heavy swing 8ths**
Straight rhythmic feel	**straight (no swing)**
Triplet 16th fixed rhythmic feel	**2:1 swing 16ths (fixed)**
Triplet 8th fixed rhythmic feel	**2:1 swing 8ths (fixed)**
Dotted 16th-32nd fixed rhythmic feel	**3:1 swing 16ths (fixed)**
Dotted 8th-16th fixed rhythmic feel	**3:1 swing 8ths (fixed)**

RELATED LINKS
Notations toolbox on page 192
Tempo marks on page 1204
Types of tempo marks on page 1205
Tempo mark components on page 1206
Swing playback on page 512
Enabling swing playback on page 513
Changing the order of metronome marks on page 1214

Tempo panel

The Tempo panel contains the different types of tempo marks available in Dorico Elements, organized into sections. It is located in the right zone in Write mode.

- You can hide/show the Tempo panel by clicking **Panels**, then **Tempo** in the Notations toolbox.

  You can also hide/show the right zone by pressing **Ctrl/Cmd-9**.

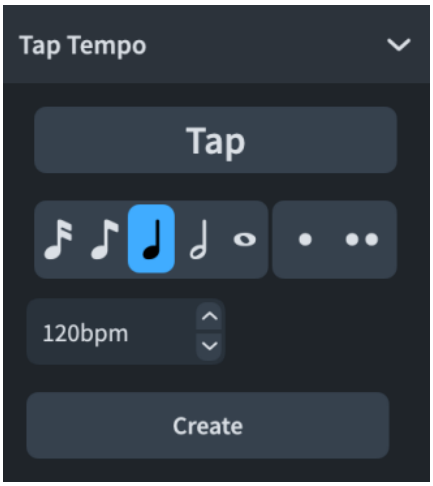
Used in This Flow

Contains any tempo marks already used in the flow, including custom tempo marks added using the tempo popover.

Tap Tempo

Allows you to create an absolute tempo change based on the speed with which you click the **Tap** button. It appears as a metronome mark with no text by default. The metronome mark value is always rounded to the nearest integer.

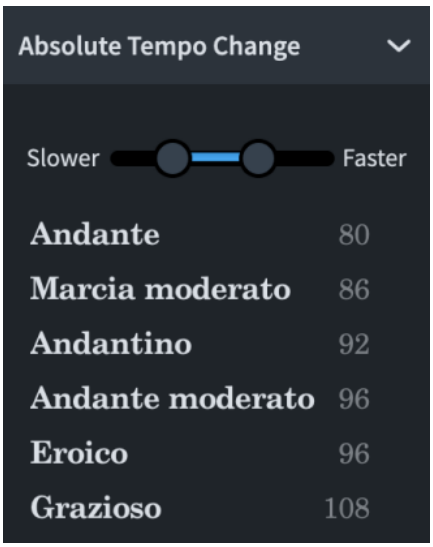
You can use the available options to set the beat unit on which you want to base the tempo.



Absolute Tempo Change

Contains a range of tempos with both an Italian tempo indication and a metronome mark. You can later choose to show or hide the metronome mark for individual tempo marks.

You can change the range shown in the list by adjusting the slider at the top.



Gradual Tempo Change

Contains tempo marks that indicate a change in tempo over a defined period of time, such as *rallentando* or *accelerando*.

You can add modifiers to gradual tempo changes. Available modifiers are shown at the top of the section.

Relative Tempo Change

Contains tempo marks that indicate a change in tempo that is relative to the previous tempo, such as *mosso* (movement, or with movement). They often include modifiers that qualify the change, such as *poco meno mosso* (a little less movement), and are not defined by a metronome mark.

You can add modifiers to relative tempo changes. Available modifiers are shown at the top of the section.

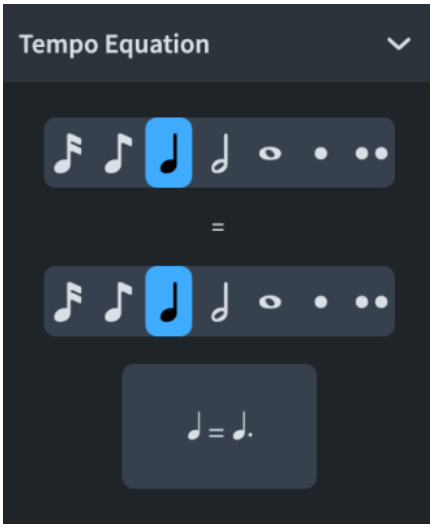
You can later set a relative metronome mark change as a percentage of the previous metronome mark for individual tempo marks.

Reset Tempo

Contains tempo marks that indicate a return to the previous tempo, such as *A tempo*, or a previously defined tempo, such as *Tempo primo*.

Tempo Equation

Allows you to input a tempo equation, using beat units from 16th notes to whole notes and up to two rhythm dots.



RELATED LINKS
Notations toolbox on page 192
Tempo marks on page 1204
Types of tempo marks on page 1205
Tempo mark components on page 1206
Changing the metronome mark value on page 1212

Inputting tempo marks with the popover

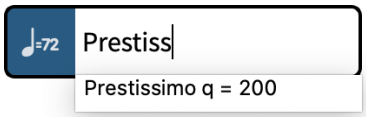
You can input tempo marks using the tempo popover, both during note input and by adding them to existing music.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:
   - Start note input.
   - Select an item at the rhythmic position where you want to input a tempo mark. If you want to input a gradual tempo change across a duration, select items that span that duration.
2. Open the tempo popover in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Shift-T**.
   - In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers**, then **Tempo**.
3. Enter the tempo you want into the popover.

   For example, enter **q=72** or **Allegretto**.

   When you start entering a tempo into the tempo popover, a menu appears that shows suggested tempos containing the letters/words you enter. You can select one of these suggestions or you can enter your own tempo into the popover.



NOTE

If you want to show gradual tempo changes separated into syllables spread across their duration, such as *rit-e-nu-to*, we recommend selecting a suggested entry from the menu. Only gradual tempo changes with valid full text appear separated into syllables.

4. Press **Return** to close the popover.

RESULT

During note input, tempo marks are input at the caret position. Gradual tempo changes, such as *rallentando*, are also input at the caret position with a default duration of a quarter note. Gradual tempo changes do not extend as you input notes.

When adding tempo marks to existing music, they are added at the rhythmic position of the earliest selected item. Gradual tempo changes span the duration of the selected items.

NOTE

Metronome mark values appear as integers without decimal places, even if you input decimal places. However, the exact metronome mark value you input is always reflected in playback.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

You can lengthen/shorten gradual tempo changes.

RELATED LINKS

Tempo marks on page 1204
Tempo track on page 496
Tempo editor on page 656
Tempo mark components on page 1206
Gradual tempo changes on page 1215
Metronome marks on page 1211
Tempo equations on page 1218
Lengthening/Shortening items on page 410
Changing the style of gradual tempo changes on page 1216
Changing the order of metronome marks on page 1214

Inputting tempo marks with the panel

You can input tempo marks using the Tempo panel, both during note input and by adding them to existing music.

NOTE

- These steps describe inputting with the default mouse input preference **Create item at selection**.
- You cannot specify decimal places for metronome marks using the panel. You can specify decimal places using the popover or by changing the metronome mark value of existing tempo marks.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:
   - Start note input.
   - Select an item at the rhythmic position where you want to input a tempo mark. If you want to input a gradual tempo change across a duration, select items that span that duration.
2. In the Notations toolbox, click **Panels**, then **Tempo** to show the Tempo panel.
3. In the Tempo panel, click the tempo mark you want.

   TIP

   If you want Dorico Elements to calculate the metronome mark for you, you can click **Tap** in the **Tap Tempo** section multiple times at the required speed.

4. Optional: Select a modifier from the available options.

   NOTE

   You can only add modifiers to a **Gradual Tempo Change** or a **Relative Tempo Change**.

RESULT

During note input, tempo marks are input at the caret position. Gradual tempo changes, such as *rallentando*, are also input at the caret position with a default duration of a quarter note. Gradual tempo changes do not extend as you input notes.

When adding tempo marks to existing music, they are added at the rhythmic position of the earliest selected item. Gradual tempo changes span the duration of the selected items.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

You can lengthen/shorten gradual tempo changes.

RELATED LINKS

Notations toolbox on page 192
Changing your mouse input settings on page 203
Tempo marks on page 1204
Tempo mark components on page 1206
Gradual tempo changes on page 1215
Metronome marks on page 1211
Tempo equations on page 1218
Changing the metronome mark value on page 1212
Changing the style of gradual tempo changes on page 1216
Changing the order of metronome marks on page 1214

Input methods for bars, beats, and barlines

You can input both bars and barlines with the keyboard by using the bars and barlines popover, and also with the mouse by using the available options in the Bars and Barlines panel. The bars and barlines popover also allows you to input beats. Additionally, you can input bars and beats using the system track.

Normally you do not need to create bars in Dorico Elements, as they are created automatically as needed when you input music. However, you can add bars in advance if, for example, you are copying or arranging an existing piece of music.

RELATED LINKS
Bars on page 729
Barlines on page 734
System track on page 404
Inputting bar rests into specific voices on page 236
Repeats in playback on page 509

Bars and barlines popover

The following tables contain examples of what you can enter into the bars and barlines popover to add and delete bars and beats, and the entries you can use to input the different barlines available.

You can open the bars and barlines popover in Write mode in any of the following ways when either an item is selected or the caret is active:

- Press **Shift-B**.
- In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers**, then **Bars and Barlines**.
- Choose **Write** > **Create Bar or Barline**.

The icon on the left-hand side of the popover matches the corresponding button in the Notations toolbox on the right of the window.

Bars and barlines popover with an example entry for inputting bars

Bars and barlines popover with an example entry for a barline

Bars and Barlines button in the Notations toolbox

Bars

Example action	Popover entry
Add two bars	**2** or **+2**
Add fourteen bars	**14** or **+14**
Delete one bar	**–1**
Delete six bars	**–6**
Add a bar rest	**rest**
Delete empty bars at the end of the flow	**trim**

This list is not comprehensive, as you can add and delete any number of bars using the popover. This table is intended to illustrate how you can structure your entry to input and delete bars, and input bar rests.

Beats

You can specify a number of beats that you want to add/delete by entering the number of beats you want followed by either the number that corresponds to the beat unit, such as **5** for eighth

notes, or the letter that corresponds to the beat unit, such as **h** for half notes. When using numbers for both the number of beats and the beat unit, you must separate them with a space or hyphen. You can also specify beats in the form of a time signature, such as 3/4 for three quarter note beats.

Example action	Popover entry
Add one whole note beat	**1w**, **1-8**, **1 8**, or **4/4**
Add two quarter note beats	**2q**, **2-6**, **2 6**, or **2/4**
Add four eighth note beats	**4e**, **4-5**, **4 5**, **4/8**, or **2/4**
Delete two quarter note beats	**–2q**, **-2-6**, **-2 6**, or **-2/4**
Delete empty beats at the end of the flow	**trim**

This list is not comprehensive, as you can add and delete any number of beats using the popover. This table is intended to illustrate how you can structure your entry to input and delete beats.

Beat unit	Popover entry
64th note	**z** or **2**
32nd note	**y** or **3**
16th note	**x** or **4**
Eighth note	**e** or **5**
Quarter note	**q** or **6**
Half note	**h** or **7**
Whole note	**w** or **8**
Double whole note	**2w** or **9**
Rhythm dot	**.** (period)

Barlines

Type of barline	Popover entry
Normal (Single)	**|**, **single**, or **normal**
Double	**||** or **double**

Type of barline	Popover entry
Final	**|]** or **final**
Start repeat	**|:** or **start**
End repeat	**:|** or **end**
End/Start repeat	**:|:**, **:||:**, **end-start**, or **endstart**

RELATED LINKS
Notations toolbox on page 192
Inputting bar rests into specific voices on page 236
Bars on page 729
Barlines on page 734
Deleting bars/beats on page 729
Repeats in playback on page 509

Bars and Barlines panel

The Bars and Barlines panel allows you to input bars, bar rests, and different types of barlines. It is located in the right zone in Write mode.

- You can hide/show the Bars and Barlines panel by clicking **Panels**, then **Bars and Barlines** in the Notations toolbox.

  You can also hide/show the right zone by pressing **Ctrl/Cmd-9**.

The Bars and Barlines panel contains the following sections:

Insert Bars

Allows you to determine how many bars you want to insert and where to insert them, such as at the end of the flow.

Insert Bar Rest

Allows you to insert a bar rest.

Create Barline

Contains the different barlines you can input.

RELATED LINKS
Notations toolbox on page 192
Repeats in playback on page 509
Hiding/Showing zones on page 44

Inputting bars/beats with the popover

You can input bars/beats using the bars and barlines popover, both during note input and by adding them to or inserting them into existing music. For example, if you want to extend a cadenza in an open meter.

PREREQUISITE

If you want to input bars, you have input a time signature.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:
   - Start note input.
   - Select an item at the rhythmic position where you want to add bars/beats. If you want to add bars/beats to a single staff, select an item that belongs to that staff only.

     Bars/Beats are added after selected barlines and before other selected items, including time signatures.
2. Optional: If you want to input bars/beats onto multiple specific staves at once, extend the caret to those staves.
3. Open the bars and barlines popover in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Shift-B**.
   - In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers**, then **Bars and Barlines**.
4. Enter the number of bars/beats you want to input.

   For example, enter **2** to input two bars or **2q** to input two quarter note beats.
5. Input the bars/beats and close the popover in one of the following ways:
   - To input bars/beats for all staves, press **Return**.
   - To input bars/beats only on the selected staff or staves across which the caret extends, press **Alt/Opt-Return**.

RESULT

The number of bars or beats specified is input.

During note input, bars/beats are input from the caret position. If the caret is in the middle of the bar when inputting bars, sufficient beats are added to ensure that the final bar created has the correct number of beats. The caret position stays at its previous position so you can continue inputting music from the same position.

When you add bars/beats to existing music, they are added after selected barlines and before other selected items, including time signatures.

TIP

Another way to add bars is by choosing a note duration, such as a whole note when in a 4/4 time signature, and pressing **Space** repeatedly during note input.

RELATED LINKS

Bars and barlines popover on page 288
Bars on page 729
Inputting time signatures with the popover on page 274
Types of time signatures on page 1250

Inputting bars with the panel

You can input bars using the Bars and Barlines panel, both during note input and by inserting them into existing music.

PREREQUISITE

You have input a time signature.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:
   - Start note input.
   - Select an existing barline after which you want to input bars.
   - Select an existing item before which you want to input bars.
2. In the Notations toolbox, click **Panels**, then **Bars and Barlines** to show the Bars and Barlines panel.
3. In the **Insert Bars** section of the Bars and Barlines panel, change the number of bars you want to input by changing the value in the value field.
4. Select one of the following options for where you want to input bars:
   - **Start of Flow**: Bars are input at the beginning of the flow.
   - **Start of Selection**: Bars are input from the selected note or rest.
   - **End of Flow**: Bars are input at the end of the flow.

     NOTE

     If you want to input bars from the caret position, make sure that you have selected **Start of Selection** from the menu.
5. Click **Insert Bars**.

RESULT

The number of bars specified is input. During note input, bars are input from the caret position.

If you selected **Start of Selection**, bars are input directly after a selected barline, and directly before a selected note, bar, or time signature.

TIP

Another way to add bars is by choosing a note duration, such as a whole note when in a 4/4 time signature, and pressing **Space** repeatedly during note input.

RELATED LINKS

Notations toolbox on page 192
Bars on page 729
Inputting time signatures with the panel on page 275

Inputting bars/beats with the system track

You can insert bars/beats into existing music using the system track; for example, if you decide you want to repeat several bars before the next section. You can insert whole bars and just a few beats.

NOTE

You cannot use the system track during note input.

PREREQUISITE

The system track is shown.

PROCEDURE

1. In the system track, select the region whose duration you want to insert.

   For example, if you want to insert two bars, select two bars in the system track immediately before where you want the two new bars to be input.

2. Click **Add** above the system track.

Add button above the system track

The **Add** button is highlighted when you hover over it

RESULT

The rhythmic duration selected in the system track is added immediately after the end of the selection. Existing music after the selection is pushed back after the inserted bars/beats.

RELATED LINKS

System track on page 404
Hiding/Showing the system track on page 406
Selecting bars with the system track on page 406
Selecting beats with the system track on page 407

Inputting barlines with the popover

You can input barlines using the bars and barlines popover, both during note input and by adding them to existing music. You can also change the type of existing barlines.

PREREQUISITE

If you want to input barlines onto single staves only, you have input an independent time signature on those staves.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:
   - Start note input.
   - Select an item at the rhythmic position where you want to input a barline. If you want to input a barline on a single staff, select an item that belongs to that staff only.

     TIP

     If you want to add repeat barlines at the start/end of a region simultaneously, select items that span the required duration.

2. Optional: If you want to input barlines onto multiple specific staves at once, extend the caret to those staves.
3. Open the bars and barlines popover in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Shift-B**.
   - In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers**, then **Bars and Barlines**.
4. Enter the barline you want into the popover.

   For example, enter **||** for a double barline, or **|:** for a start repeat barline.

5. Input the barline and close the popover in one of the following ways:
   - To input a barline on all staves, press **Return**.
   - To input a barline only on the selected staff or staves across which the caret extends, press **Alt/Opt-Return**.

     NOTE

     You can only input barlines onto single staves that already have an independent time signature.

RESULT

During note input, barlines are input at the caret position.

When you add barlines to existing music, they are added at the rhythmic position of the earliest selected item. They appear to the right of clefs and to the left of other items. If you selected an existing barline, the new barline directly replaces the existing one.

When you add start repeat barlines with a range of items selected, end repeat barlines are also added at the end of the selection.

Surrounding music automatically adjusts to accommodate the barline. For example, note grouping, rests, and tied notes all adjust if necessary. Inputting final barlines at the end of the last bar of flows can automatically trim the flow if there is no further music and depending on the time signature.

NOTE

Normal barlines that you have input directly, such as to replace an existing double barline, are still considered explicit barlines and break multi-bar rests. Deleting barlines resets them completely.

RELATED LINKS

Bars and barlines popover on page 288
Barlines on page 734
Inputting notes on page 211
Inputting time signatures with the popover on page 274
Extending the caret to multiple staves on page 209
Deleting notes/items on page 431
Deleting bars/beats on page 729
Repeats in playback on page 509
Changing the number of playthroughs at repeat barlines on page 510

Inputting barlines with the panel

You can input barlines using the Bars and Barlines panel, both during note input and by adding them to existing music. You can also change the type of existing barlines.

NOTE

These steps describe inputting with the default mouse input preference **Create item at selection**.

PREREQUISITE

If you want to input barlines onto single staves only, you have input an independent time signature on those staves.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:
   - Start note input.
   - Select an item at the rhythmic position where you want to input a barline. If you want to input a barline on a single staff, select an item that belongs to that staff only.

     TIP

     If you want to add repeat barlines at the start/end of a region simultaneously, select items that span the required duration.
2. In the Notations toolbox, click **Panels**, then **Bars and Barlines** to show the Bars and Barlines panel.
3. Input the barline you want in one of the following ways:
   - To input a barline on all staves, click it in the **Create Barline** section.
   - To input a barline on the selected staff only, **Alt/Opt**-click it in the **Create Barline** section.

     NOTE

     You can only input barlines onto single staves that already have an independent time signature.

RESULT

During note input, barlines are input at the caret position.

When you add barlines to existing music, they are added at the rhythmic position of the earliest selected item. They appear to the right of clefs and to the left of other items. If you selected an existing barline, the new barline directly replaces the existing one.

When you add start repeat barlines with a range of items selected, end repeat barlines are also added at the end of the selection.

Surrounding music automatically adjusts to accommodate the barline. For example, note grouping, rests, and tied notes all adjust if necessary. Inputting final barlines at the end of the last bar of flows can automatically trim the flow if there is no further music and depending on the time signature.

NOTE

Normal barlines that you have input directly, such as to replace an existing double barline, are still considered explicit barlines and break multi-bar rests. Deleting barlines resets them completely.

RELATED LINKS

Notations toolbox on page 192
Barlines on page 734
Bars and barlines popover on page 288
Inputting notes on page 211
Inputting time signatures with the panel on page 275
Changing your mouse input settings on page 203
Repeats in playback on page 509
Changing the number of playthroughs at repeat barlines on page 510

Input methods for dynamics

You can input dynamics with the keyboard by using the dynamics popover, and with the mouse by using the Dynamics panel.

You can also input dynamic points that affect playback, but do not appear in the music, in the Dynamics editor.

RELATED LINKS
Dynamics on page 828
Inputting dynamics with the popover on page 299
Inputting dynamics with the panel on page 302
Niente markings on page 851
Adding modifiers to existing dynamics on page 839
Dynamics editor on page 645

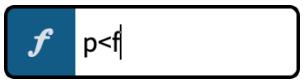
Dynamics popover

The table contains examples of what you can enter into the dynamics popover to input the different dynamics available.

You can open the dynamics popover in Write mode in any of the following ways when either an item is selected or the caret is active:

- Press **Shift-D**.
- In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers**, then **Dynamics**.
- Select an existing dynamic and press **Return**.
- Choose **Write** > **Create Dynamic**.

The icon on the left-hand side of the popover matches the corresponding button in the Notations toolbox on the right of the window.



Dynamics popover with an example entry

Dynamics button in the Notations toolbox

Dynamics popover entries

Dynamic or modifier	Popover entry
pianissimo: *pp*	**pp**
piano: *p*	**p**
mezzo piano: *mp*	**mp**
mezzo forte: *mf*	**mf**
forte: *f*	**f**
fortissimo: *ff*	**ff**

Dynamic or modifier	Popover entry
fortepiano without separator: ***fp***	**fp**
fortepiano with separator, such as ***f-p***	**f-p**, **f:p**, or **f/p**
subito	**subito**, **sub**, or **sub.**
possibile	**possibile**, **poss**, or **poss.**
poco	**poco**
molto	**molto**
più	**piu** or **più**
meno	**meno**
mosso	**mosso**
crescendo: ≺	**<**
cresc. (text)	**cresc**
diminuendo: ≻	**>**
dim. (text)	**dim**
messa di voce hairpin: ≺≻ (*crescendo* then *diminuendo*)	**<>**
messa di voce hairpin: ≻≺ (*diminuendo* then *crescendo*)	**><**
A pair of grouped hairpins that looks like a *messa di voce* hairpin	**< >** or **> <**
NOTE You must separate hairpins with a space.	
niente hairpins that start/end with a small circle	**o<** or **>o**
niente hairpins that start/end with the letter “n”	**n<** or **>n**
sforzando: ***sfz***	**sfz**
rinforzando: ***rfz***	**rfz**

This list is not comprehensive as you can enter anything as a dynamic modifier. It is intended to illustrate how you can structure your entry to input different types of dynamics.

NOTE

- Pairs of separate hairpins are treated differently than *messa di voce* hairpins. For example, separate hairpins each have start and end handles in Write mode, whereas *messa di voce* hairpins share a single center handle.
- You can input hairpins and *messa di voce* hairpins directly, without using the popover.
  - For a crescendo hairpin, press **<**.
  - For a diminuendo hairpin, press **>**.
  - For a crescendo/diminuendo *messa di voce* hairpin, press **Shift-Alt/Opt-,**.
  - For a diminuendo/crescendo *messa di voce* hairpin, press **Shift-Alt/Opt-.**.
- You can also change the appearance of individual gradual dynamics after they have been input.

Inputting modifiers into the dynamics popover

You can enter modifiers into the dynamics popover, such as *poco*, *molto*, *subito*, *espressivo*, or *dolce*. It appears in the correct italic font beside the dynamic. However, you must also enter an accompanying immediate dynamic, such as **p** or **f**, and separate the two with a space; for example, **f molto** or **p espressivo**.

You can hide immediate dynamics if you only want to show the modifier.

RELATED LINKS
Notations toolbox on page 192
Dynamics on page 828
Dynamic modifiers on page 839
Gradual dynamics on page 842
Messa di voce hairpins on page 849
Niente markings on page 851
Groups of dynamics on page 853
Hiding/Showing immediate dynamics on page 836
Changing the appearance of gradual dynamics on page 844
Hiding/Showing combined dynamic separators on page 837
Changing the appearance of sforzando/rinforzando dynamics on page 837
Changing the appearance/position of subito modifiers on page 840

Dynamics panel

The Dynamics panel contains the different dynamics available in Dorico Elements, including gradual dynamics and dynamic modifiers, such as *poco* and *possibile*. It is located in the right zone in Write mode.

- You can hide/show the Dynamics panel by clicking **Panels**, then **Dynamics** in the Notations toolbox.

  You can also hide/show the right zone by pressing **Ctrl/Cmd-9**.

The Dynamics panel contains the following sections:

Immediate Dynamics

Contains dynamics such as ***pp*** and ***f***, and modifiers, such as *subito* and *possibile*. Available modifiers are shown at the top of the section in boxes.

You can only input modifiers alongside a dynamic.

Gradual Dynamics

Contains dynamics such as ≺ and ≻, and modifiers, such as *poco* and *niente*. Available modifiers are shown at the top of the section in boxes.

You can only input modifiers alongside a dynamic.

NOTE

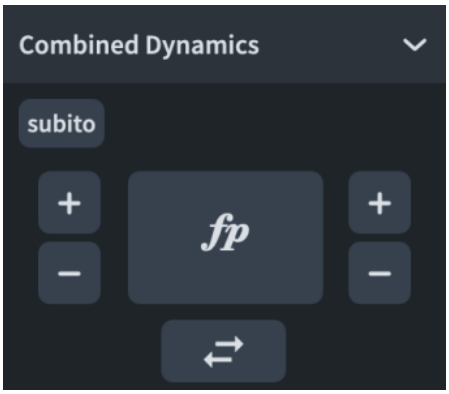
Pairs of separate hairpins are treated differently than *messa di voce* hairpins. For example, separate hairpins each have start and end handles in Write mode, whereas *messa di voce* hairpins share a single center handle.

Force/Intensity of Attack

Contains dynamics such as *sfz* and *fz*.

Combined Dynamics

Allows you to create custom combinations of dynamics, such as *fff pp*. The controls allow you to increase and decrease the dynamic on each side, and to swap their order.



RELATED LINKS
Notations toolbox on page 192
Dynamics on page 828
Dynamic modifiers on page 839
Gradual dynamics on page 842
Messa di voce hairpins on page 849
Niente markings on page 851
Hiding/Showing combined dynamic separators on page 837

Inputting dynamics with the popover

You can input dynamics and modifiers using the dynamics popover, both during note input and by adding them to existing music. You can also input different dynamics into each voice independently in multiple-voice contexts; for example, to give the separate staves of grand staff instruments different dynamics.

TIP

- If you want to input dynamics in the middle of tie chains, start note input, then move the caret to the required rhythmic position.
- You can also change dynamics during note input by following these steps when the caret is at the rhythmic position of the dynamic you want to change.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:
   - Start note input.

     NOTE

     If you want to input voice-specific dynamics, the caret must be active.

   - Select an item on each staff and at the rhythmic position where you want to input dynamics. If you want to input dynamics across a duration, select items on the staff that span that duration.
2. Optional: If you want to input notes and dynamics onto multiple staves at once, extend the caret to those staves.
3. Open the dynamics popover in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Shift-D**.
   - In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers**, then **Dynamics**.
4. Enter the dynamic you want into the popover.

   For example, **p**, **p<f>p**, or **f>**.
5. Input the dynamics and close the popover in one of the following ways:
   - To input the dynamics for all voices/staves belonging to the instrument, press **Return**.
   - During note input, input the dynamics only into the voice indicated by the caret indicator by pressing **Alt/Opt-Return**.
6. Optional: During note input, advance the caret and extend open-ended gradual dynamics, such as **p<**, in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Space**.
   - In the Keyboard, Fretboard, or Drum Pads panel toolbar, click **Advance Caret**.

   Open-ended gradual dynamics also extend automatically as you continue inputting notes.
7. Optional: During note input, stop open-ended dynamics in any of the following ways:
   - Press **?**.
   - Open the dynamics popover and input an immediate dynamic, such as **f**.

RESULT

The specified dynamics are input. Unless you input voice-specific dynamics, dynamics apply to all voices on all staves belonging to a single instrument, including grand staff instruments. Voice-specific dynamics are placed on the default side of the staff for the instrument type, regardless of the voice's stem direction.

Adjoining dynamics, or dynamics that were input together or in sequence, are automatically grouped together, both during note input and when adding dynamics to existing music.

During note input, dynamics are input at the caret position, and extend automatically if you included an open-ended gradual dynamic. Voice-specific dynamics are input in the voice indicated by the quarter note symbol beside the caret.

Outside of note input, immediate dynamics are added to the first selected item on each selected staff, while gradual dynamics are added across each selection on each selected staff.

NOTE

- If you entered a dynamic phrase into the popover during note input, such as **p<f>p**, each gradual dynamic lasts a quarter note (crotchet). You can lengthen/shorten gradual dynamics and groups of dynamics later.
- Some modifiers, such as *molto*, appear before immediate dynamics rather than after them, even if you do not enter them in that order. This follows the generally accepted practice for the placement of that text.

  You can add modifiers before and after existing dynamics. You can also hide immediate dynamics later if you only want to show the modifier.
- Pairs of separate hairpins are treated differently than *messa di voce* hairpins. For example, separate hairpins each have start and end handles in Write mode, whereas *messa di voce* hairpins share a single center handle.
- You can input hairpins and *messa di voce* hairpins directly, without using the popover.
  - For a crescendo hairpin, press **<**.
  - For a diminuendo hairpin, press **>**.
  - For a crescendo/diminuendo *messa di voce* hairpin, press **Shift-Alt/Opt-,**.
  - For a diminuendo/crescendo *messa di voce* hairpin, press **Shift-Alt/Opt-.**.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

You can move dynamics within dynamic phrases and change the placement of dynamics relative to the staff.

RELATED LINKS

Caret on page 205
Moving the caret manually on page 210
Extending the caret to multiple staves on page 209
Dynamics on page 828
Voice-specific dynamics on page 838
Notations toolbox on page 192
Keyboard panel on page 197
Fretboard panel on page 199
Drum Pads panel on page 200
Dynamics editor on page 645
Gradual dynamics on page 842
Messa di voce hairpins on page 849
Niente markings on page 851
Gradual dynamics in Engrave mode on page 843
Changing the appearance of gradual dynamics on page 844
Adding niente markings to existing gradual dynamics on page 852
Groups of dynamics on page 853
Dynamic modifiers on page 839
Changing the appearance/position of subito modifiers on page 840
Hiding/Showing combined dynamic separators on page 837
Changing dynamic levels on page 835
Moving notes/items rhythmically on page 437
Lengthening/Shortening items on page 410
Showing consecutive hairpins as continuous on page 845
Hiding/Showing immediate dynamics on page 836
Changing the staff-relative placement of items on page 414

Inputting dynamics with the panel

You can input dynamics and modifiers using the Dynamics panel, both during note input and by adding them to existing music. You can also input different dynamics into each voice independently in multiple-voice contexts; for example, to give the separate staves of grand staff instruments different dynamics.

NOTE

- If you want to input dynamics in the middle of tie chains, start note input, then move the caret to the required rhythmic position.
- You can also change dynamics during note input by following these steps when the caret is at the rhythmic position of the dynamic you want to change.
- These steps describe inputting with the default mouse input preference **Create item at selection**.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:
   - Start note input.

     NOTE

     If you want to input voice-specific dynamics, the caret must be active.

   - Select an item on each staff and at the rhythmic position where you want to input dynamics. If you want to input dynamics across a duration, select items on the staff that span that duration.
2. In the Notations toolbox, click **Panels**, then **Dynamics** to show the Dynamics panel.
3. Input the dynamics you want in one of the following ways:
   - To input dynamics for all voices/staves belonging to the instrument, click them in the Dynamics panel.
   - During note input, input the dynamics only into the voice indicated by the caret indicator by **Alt/Opt**-clicking them in the Dynamics panel.

   NOTE

   - If you want to add expressive or qualifying text to the dynamics, do not deselect them.
   - When inputting voice-specific dynamics, you can release **Alt/Opt** once you have input the dynamic level, such as *f*.
   - Gradual dynamics have a default duration of a quarter note. You can lengthen/shorten gradual dynamics later.
4. Optional: In the Dynamics panel, click the expressive/qualifying texts you want in the **Immediate Dynamics** and **Gradual Dynamics** sections.

RESULT

The specified dynamics are input. Unless you input voice-specific dynamics, dynamics apply to all voices on all staves belonging to a single instrument, including grand staff instruments. Voice-specific dynamics are placed on the default side of the staff for the instrument type, regardless of the voice's stem direction.

Adjoining dynamics, or dynamics that were input together or in sequence, are automatically grouped together, both during note input and when adding dynamics to existing music.

During note input, dynamics are input at the caret position. Gradual dynamics are input with a default duration of a quarter note. Voice-specific dynamics are input in the voice indicated by the quarter note symbol beside the caret.

Outside of note input, immediate dynamics are added to the first selected item on each selected staff, while gradual dynamics are added across each selection on each selected staff.

NOTE

- Some modifiers, such as *molto*, appear before immediate dynamics rather than after them, even if you do not enter them in that order. This follows the generally accepted practice for the placement of that text.

  You can add modifiers before and after existing dynamics. You can also hide immediate dynamics later if you only want to show the modifier.
- Pairs of separate hairpins are treated differently than *messa di voce* hairpins. For example, separate hairpins each have start and end handles in Write mode, whereas *messa di voce* hairpins share a single center handle.
- You can also input gradual dynamics by clicking the gradual dynamic you want in the Dynamics panel when nothing is selected in the music area. Then click and drag to input the gradual dynamic and extend it to the length you want.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

You can move dynamics within dynamic phrases and change the placement of dynamics relative to the staff.

RELATED LINKS

Notations toolbox on page 192
Caret on page 205
Moving the caret manually on page 210
Dynamics on page 828
Voices on page 1303
Gradual dynamics in Engrave mode on page 843
Changing the appearance of sforzando/rinforzando dynamics on page 837
Hiding/Showing combined dynamic separators on page 837
Changing dynamic levels on page 835
Hiding/Showing immediate dynamics on page 836
Changing your mouse input settings on page 203

Inputting chord symbols

You can input chord symbols using the chord symbols popover with the computer keyboard and any connected MIDI keyboard, both for all instruments or only for individual instruments. You can also open the chord symbols popover during note input; however, inputting a chord symbol stops note input.

PREREQUISITE

If you want to input chord symbols using a MIDI device, you have connected the MIDI device you want to use.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select an item on the staff and at the rhythmic position where you want to input a chord symbol.
2. Open the chord symbols popover in any of the following ways:

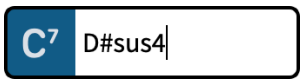
- Press **Shift-Q**.
- In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers**, then **Chord Symbols**.

NOTE

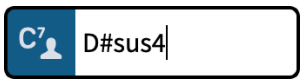
If you selected an item on a staff that has local chord symbols at earlier rhythmic positions, the chord symbols popover is automatically set to input local chord symbols when it opens.

3. Optional: Change the type of chord symbol you want to enter in one of the following ways:
   - To input local chord symbols, press **Alt/Opt-L**.
   - To input global chord symbols, press **Alt/Opt-G**.

   The popover icon updates to show the current type.



Chord symbols popover when inputting a global chord symbol



Chord symbols popover when inputting a local chord symbol

4. Enter the chord symbol you want into the chord symbols popover in any of the following ways:
   - Enter the appropriate letters and numbers using the computer keyboard. For example, enter **D#sus4** for a D#sus4 chord symbol or **CM7|D** for a Cmaj7/D polychord chord symbol.
   - Play the chord in the Keyboard panel.
   - Play the chord using a MIDI keyboard.

     TIP

     - To input a polychord chord symbol, play the first chord and keep the keys depressed, then play the second chord.
     - To input a chord symbol that consists only of the root note, just play a single note.
     - You can indicate root notes in any of the following ways:
       - First play the root with one finger, and then play the remaining notes of the chord while still holding down the root.
       - Play all the notes of the chord together, then release them all, then replay the root note.
     - You can indicate altered bass notes in any of the following ways:
       - Play all notes of the chord together with the altered bass note at the bottom.
       - Play the chord and its altered bass note separately: Hold down the keys for the chord, then play the altered bass note while keeping the rest of the keys of the chord depressed.

5. Optional: Press **Space** to advance the popover to the next beat according to the prevailing time signature.

   TIP

   You can also navigate the popover forwards and backwards by different amounts.

6. Optional: To input an individual local chord symbol when the popover is set to global, and vice versa, press **Alt/Opt-Return** to input the chord symbol.
7. Press **Return** to close the popover.

RESULT

The chord symbol specified is input. If you selected an item belonging to an instrument that was not already set to show chord symbols in the current layout, the corresponding player is automatically updated to show chord symbols for all instruments.

Global chord symbols apply to all instruments in the project and appear on all staves set to show chord symbols. Local chord symbols only apply to the selected instrument. Local chord symbols always appear, even if global chord symbols exist at the same rhythmic positions.

NOTE

- The chord symbol may look different to what you entered into the popover because Dorico Elements provides a single default chord symbol appearance preset that applies to all chord symbols.
- When you input chord symbols using a MIDI keyboard, the voicing you used is retained for chord symbol playback. You can reset the voicing of chord symbols input using MIDI keyboards.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

You can hide/show chord symbols above specific staves and hide/show chord diagrams alongside them.

RELATED LINKS

Notations toolbox on page 192
Keyboard panel on page 197
Chord symbols on page 782
Generating chord symbols from notes on page 311
Hiding/Showing chord symbols on page 789
Hiding/Showing chord symbols in layouts on page 790
Hiding/Showing chord diagrams on page 806
Inputting chord symbol regions on page 311
Inputting slash regions on page 398
Enabling/Disabling MIDI input devices on page 258
Chords track on page 498
Enabling chord symbol playback on page 499
Resetting the voicing of chord symbols on page 500

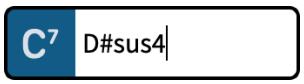
Chord symbols popover

The following tables contain examples of what you can enter into the chord symbols popover to input the different possible chord symbol components. You can enter them in any combination.

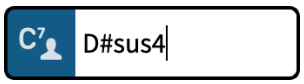
You can open the chord symbols popover in Write mode in any of the following ways when either an item is selected or the caret is active:

- Press **Shift-Q**.
- In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers**, then **Chord Symbols**.
- Select an existing chord symbol and press **Return**.
- Choose **Write** > **Create Chord Symbol**.

When inputting global chord symbols, the icon on the left-hand side of the popover matches the corresponding button in the Notations toolbox. When inputting local chord symbols, the icon on the left-hand side of the popover appears smaller and includes the icon for a single player.



Chord symbols popover with an example entry for a global chord symbol

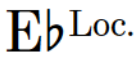


Chord symbols popover with an example entry for a local chord symbol

Chord Symbols button in the Notations toolbox

NOTE

You can combine multiple types of entries to create more complex chord symbols if you enter them one after another into the chord symbols popover without spaces between them. For example, enter **Eblocrian** for the following chord symbol:



Chord symbol roots

Type of chord symbol root	Popover entry
English note names C, D♭, F♯, B, and so on	**C**, **Db**, **F#**, **B**, and so on
German note names C, D♭, F♯, H, and so on	**C**, **Des**, **Fis**, **H**, and so on
Fixed-do solfège C, D♭, F, F♯, B, and so on	**do**, **reb**, **fa**, **fa#**, **ti**, and so on
Nashville numbers representing scale degrees Assuming C major: C, D♭, F♯, B, and so on	**1**, **2b**, **4#**, **7**, and so on

TIP

When using a MIDI keyboard, you can also indicate root notes in any of the following ways:

- First play the root with one finger, and then play the remaining notes of the chord while still holding down the root.
- Play all the notes of the chord together, then release them all, then replay the root note.

Chord symbol qualities

Chord symbol quality	Popover entry
Major	**maj**, **M**, **ma**, or nothing after entering the root.
Minor	**m**, **min**, or **mi**
Diminished	**dim**, **di**, or **o**
Augmented	**aug**, **au**, **ag**, or **+**
Half-diminished	**half-dim**, **halfdim**, or **hd**
6/9	**6/9**, **69**, or **%**

NOTE

M and **m** entries for major and minor are case-sensitive.

Chord symbol intervals

Interval	Popover entry
Major 7th	**^7** or **^**
Major 9th	**^9**, **maj9**, or **9maj7**

Chord symbol alterations

Type of chord symbol alteration	Popover entry
Alterations	**b5**, **-5**, **#9**, **+9**, **b10**, and so on
Added notes	**add#11**, **add+11**, **addb9**, **add-9**, **addF#**, **addBb**, and so on
Suspensions	**sus4**, **sus9**, and so on
Omissions	**omit3**, **no7**, and so on

Chord symbols with altered bass notes

Example altered bass note chord symbols	Popover entry
G7/D	**G7/D**, **G7,D**, **Gmaj7/D** or **Gmaj7,D**

Example altered bass note chord symbols	Popover entry
C(♭5)/E♭	**CMb5/Eb**, **CMb5,Eb**, **Cmajb5/Eb**, or **Cmajb5,Eb**
Fm/D♯	**Fm/D#**, **Fm,D#**, **Fmi/D#**, or **Fmi,D#**

TIP

When using a MIDI keyboard, you can also indicate altered bass notes in any of the following ways:

- Play all notes of the chord together with the altered bass note at the bottom.
- Play the chord and its altered bass note separately: Hold down the keys for the chord, then play the altered bass note while keeping the rest of the keys of the chord depressed.

Polychord chord symbols

Example polychord chord symbols	Popover entry
G/E	**G|E**, **G;E**, **Gmaj|E**, or **Gmaj;E**
Cmaj7/D	**CM7|D**, **CM7;D**, **Cmaj7|D**, or **Cmaj7;D**
Fm/D♯	**Fm|D#**, **Fm;D#**, **Fmi|D#**, or **Fmi;D#**

TIP

When using a MIDI keyboard, you can also input polychord symbols by playing the first chord and keeping the keys depressed, then playing the second chord.

No chord symbols

No chord symbol	Popover entry
No chord	**N.C.**, **NC**, **no chord**, or **none**

Modal chord symbols

Modal chord symbol	Popover entry
Ionian	**ionian**
Dorian	**dorian**
Phrygian	**phrygian**
Lydian	**lydian**

Modal chord symbol	Popover entry
Mixolydian	**mixolydian**
Aeolian	**aeolian**
Locrian	**locrian**
Melodic minor	**melodicminor**
Harmonic minor	**harmonicminor**
Whole tone	**wholetone**
Half-whole diminished or octatonic	**diminishedhalfwhole**, **diminishedsemitonetone**, **octatonichalfwhole**, or **octatonicsemitonetone**
Whole-half diminished or octatonic	**diminishedwholehalf**, **diminishedtonesemitone**, **octatonicwholehalf**, or **octatonictonesemitone**

This list is not comprehensive, as there are many possible chord symbols. It is intended to illustrate the different components you can use to input different chord symbols.

NOTE

The appearance of the resulting chord symbols is determined by Dorico Elements's default settings. The structure of your entry in the chord symbols popover is not considered. For example, entering a C major chord as **C**, **Cmaj**, or **CM** results in the same chord symbol.

Parenthesized chord symbols

Example parenthesized chord symbol	Popover entry
(Cmaj7)	**(Cmaj7)**

Chord symbol regions

Chord symbol region	Popover entry
New chord symbol region	**reg**

RELATED LINKS
Notations toolbox on page 192
Chord symbols on page 782
Parenthesized chord symbols on page 799

Navigation during chord symbol input

You can move the chord symbols popover manually by different amounts to input chord symbols at other positions without closing and reopening the popover each time.

Navigating with a computer keyboard

Popover navigation	Key command
Advance the popover to the next beat, according to the prevailing time signature.	**Space**
Move the popover back to the previous beat, according to the prevailing time signature.	**Shift-Space**
Advance the popover to the start of the next bar.	**Tab**
Move the popover back to the start of the previous bar.	**Shift-Tab**
Move the cursor and popover to one of the following positions, whichever is closest: • Next/Previous note or rest • Next/Previous rhythmic grid position • Next/Previous character in existing chord symbol's entry	**Right Arrow** / **Left Arrow**
Move the popover to the next/previous chord symbol.	**Ctrl/Cmd-Right Arrow** / **Ctrl/Cmd-Left Arrow**

Navigating with a MIDI keyboard

When inputting chord symbols using a MIDI keyboard, by default the popover advances automatically to the next beat after you play a chord.

You can define specific keys or buttons on your MIDI keyboard to trigger different navigation behaviors. Use the **MIDI Learn** button on the **Key Commands** page in **Preferences** to assign specific keys to the **Note Input** > **Advance Chord Symbol Input** commands.

RELATED LINKS
Key Commands page in the Preferences dialog on page 59
Assigning MIDI commands on page 63
Assigning key commands on page 63

Inputting chord symbol regions

You can input specific regions in which you want to show chord symbols; for example, if an instrument that does not need chord symbols for most of the project has an improvisation section that requires chord symbols to be shown.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:
   - Start note input.
   - Select the region on the staff where you want to show chord symbols.
2. Open the chord symbols popover in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Shift-Q**.
   - In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers**, then **Chord Symbols**.
3. Enter **reg** into the popover.
4. Press **Return** to close the popover.

RESULT

During note input, chord symbol regions are input spanning the duration of the selected note or item, which is usually the last input note. When adding chord symbol regions to existing music, they span the selected duration.

The player holding the corresponding instrument is automatically set to show chord symbols in chord symbol regions and slash regions, even if it was set to hide all chord symbols before.

TIP

You can also input chord symbol regions by choosing **Write** > **Create Chord Symbol Region**. You can assign a key command for this option on the **Key Commands** page in **Preferences**.

RELATED LINKS

Chord symbols popover on page 305
Chord symbol regions on page 793
Hiding/Showing chord symbols on page 789
Inputting slash regions on page 398
Key Commands page in the Preferences dialog on page 59

Generating chord symbols from notes

You can automatically generate chord symbols based on the harmony of notes you have already input. You can specify the musical context you want to consider in the calculation, such as which note durations and inversions to include.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the notes from which you want to generate chord symbols.

   TIP

   You can select notes on multiple staves.

2. Choose **Edit** > **Notations** > **Chord Symbols and Diagrams** > **Generate Chord Symbols from Selection** to open the **Generate Chord Symbols From Notes** dialog. You can also choose this option from the context menu.

3. Change the settings as required.

   For example, you can change the minimum note duration you want to include in chord symbols, and disallow the creation of open fifth chord symbols.

4. Click **OK** to save your changes and close the dialog.

RESULT

Chord symbols are generated based on the selected notes and your settings. Chord symbols are input at the rhythmic positions of chords comprising at least two or three notes, depending on your settings.

All instruments included in your selection are set to show chord symbols.

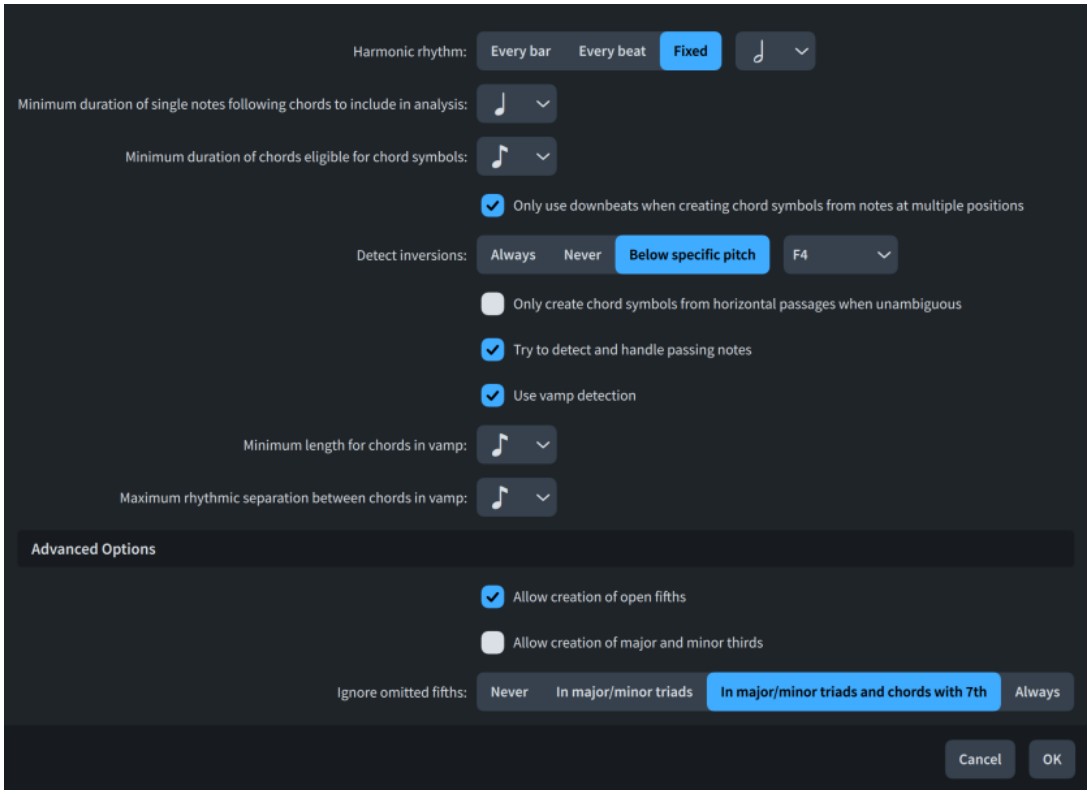
RELATED LINKS

Hiding/Showing chord symbols on page 789
Calculating harp pedal diagrams based on existing music on page 363

Generate Chord Symbols From Selection dialog

The **Generate Chord Symbols From Selection** dialog allows you to generate chord symbols based on the harmony of notes you have already input, and specify the musical context you want to consider in the calculation.

- You can open the **Generate Chord Symbols From Selection** dialog in Write mode when at least one chord is selected in the music area by choosing **Edit** > **Notations** > **Chord Symbols and Diagrams** > **Generate Chord Symbols from Selection**. You can also choose this option from the context menu.



The **Generate Chord Symbols From Selection** dialog contains the following options:

Harmonic rhythm

Allows you to set the minimum rhythmic interval between generated chord symbols.

- **Every bar**: Chord symbols are created at least every bar.
- **Every beat**: Chord symbols are created at least every beat, according to the prevailing time signature.
- **Fixed**: Chord symbols are created at the specified interval.

Minimum duration of single notes following chords to include in analysis

Allows you to set the shortest note value for single notes that you want to include in the chord symbol calculation. This allows you to exclude passing notes shorter than the set duration.

Minimum duration of chords eligible for chord symbols

Allows you to set the shortest note value for chords that you want to include in the chord symbol calculation. This allows you to exclude transitory chords shorter than the set duration.

Only use downbeats when creating chord symbols from notes at multiple positions

When activated, only notes that start on strong beats in each bar are included in the chord symbol calculation.

Detect inversions

Allows you to change how inversions are handled in the chord symbol calculation.

- **Always**: Inversions are always considered.
- **Never**: Inversions are never considered. This is particularly useful when calculating chord symbols from notes belonging to multiple instruments.
- **Below specific pitch**: Inversions are only considered for notes below the specified pitch.

Only create chord symbols from horizontal passages when unambiguous

When activated, chord symbols are only created from notes at multiple rhythmic positions if the resulting chord is simple.

Try to detect and handle passing notes

When activated, Dorico Elements detects passing notes where possible and excludes them from the chord symbol calculation.

Use vamp detection

When activated, Dorico Elements detects rhythmic patterns and textures often used when vamping and considers them in the chord symbol calculation.

Minimum length for chords in vamp

Allows you to change the minimum note value for chords in vamp sections.

Maximum rhythmic separation between chords in vamp

Allows you to change the maximum gap between chords in vamp sections.

Allow creation of open fifths

When activated, Dorico Elements creates chord symbols from chords comprising only two notes, a fifth apart.

Allow creation of major and minor thirds

When activated, Dorico Elements creates chord symbols from chords comprising only two notes, a third apart.

Ignore omitted fifths

Allows you to change how chords with omitted fifths are handled.

- **Never**: Omitted fifths are never ignored, meaning chords are considered according to the notes available.
- **In major/minor triads**: Omitted fifths are only ignored in chords comprising only two notes, a third apart.
- **In major/minor triads and chords with 7th**: Omitted fifths are ignored in chords comprising only two notes, a third apart, and chords with a seventh.
- **Always**: Omitted fifths are always ignored, meaning chord symbols are created as if the fifth were present.

RELATED LINKS
Chord symbols on page 782
Inputting chord symbols on page 303
Hiding/Showing chord symbols on page 789
Calculating harp pedal diagrams based on existing music on page 363
Types of time signatures on page 1250

Input methods for clefs and octave lines

You can input clefs and octave lines with the keyboard by using the clefs and octave lines popover, and also with the mouse by using the Clefs panel.

Clefs and octave lines share the same popover and panel as both affect the pitch and register of notes.

RELATED LINKS
Clefs on page 816
Octave lines on page 822

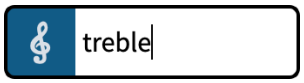
Clefs and octave lines popover

The following tables contain the entries for the clefs and octave lines popover that you can use to input the different clefs and octave lines available.

You can open the clefs and octave lines popover in Write mode in any of the following ways when either an item is selected or the caret is active:

- Press **Shift-C**.
- In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers**, then **Clefs**.
- Select an existing clef or octave line and press **Return**.
- Choose **Write** > **Create Clef**.

The icon on the left-hand side of the popover matches the corresponding button in the Notations toolbox on the right of the window.



Clefs and octave lines popover with an example entry for a clef

Clefs and octave lines popover with an example entry for an octave line

Clefs button in the Notations toolbox

Clefs

Type of clef	Popover entry
Treble G clef	**g**, **G**, **g2**, **sol**, or **treble**
Bass F clef	**f**, **F**, **f4**, **fa**, or **bass**
Tenor C clef	**ct**, **CT**, **c4**, **ut4**, or **tenor**
Alto C clef	**ca**, **CA**, **c3**, **ut3**, or **alto**
Treble G clef, octave below	**g8ba**, **G8ba**, **g8d**, **G8d**, **treble8ba**, or **treble8d**
Unpitched percussion	**perc**
4-string tablature	**tab4**
6-string tablature	**tab6**

TIP

The rectangular percussion clef is available in the Clefs panel.

Octave shifts for clefs

Function of octave shifts	Popover entry
Shift notes up by one octave	**+1**
Shift notes up by two octaves	**+2**
Shift notes down by one octave	**-1**
Shift notes down by two octaves	**-2**
Set octave shift for concert pitch	**c**
Set octave shift for transposed pitch	**t**

For example, enter **treble+1t** for a treble clef shifted up one octave in transposed pitch layouts, causing notes after the clef in transposed pitch layouts to appear an octave lower than they appear with a normal treble clef.

Octave lines

Function of octave line	Popover entry
Shift notes up by one octave	**8va**, **8**, **8u**, or **1u**
Shift notes up by two octaves	**15ma**, **15**, **15u**, or **2u**
Shift notes up by three octaves	**22ma**, **22**, **22u**, or **3u**
Shift notes down by one octave	**8ba**, **8vb**, **8d**, or **1d**
Shift notes down by two octaves	**15ba**, **15vb**, **15d**, or **2d**
Shift notes down by three octaves	**22ba**, **22vb**, **22d**, or **3d**
Loco indication	**loco**
End of octave line For example, enter **stop** to specify where an octave line ends during note input.	| or **stop**

RELATED LINKS
Notations toolbox on page 192
Clefs on page 816
Octave lines on page 822
Changing the octave of clefs on page 819
Respecting/Ignoring clef octave indicators on page 820

Clefs panel

The Clefs panel contains the different types of clefs and octave lines available in Dorico Elements. It is located in the right zone in Write mode.

- You can hide/show the Clefs panel by clicking **Panels**, then **Clefs** in the Notations toolbox.

  You can also hide/show the right zone by pressing **Ctrl/Cmd-9**.

The Clefs panel contains the following sections:

Common Clefs

Contains the clefs you are most likely to need, including treble clef and bass clef.

Octave Lines

Contains octave lines, indicating up to three octaves above and below, and a *loco* line.

RELATED LINKS
Notations toolbox on page 192
Clefs on page 816
Octave lines on page 822
Inputting clefs with the panel on page 318
Inputting octave lines with the panel on page 320

Inputting clefs with the popover

You can input clefs using the clefs and octave lines popover, both during note input and by adding them to existing music. You can also use the popover to change the type of existing clefs.

NOTE

- If you do not want to show any clef in any layout, you must input an invisible clef. You can also hide/show clefs according to the layout transposition.
- Many instruments in Dorico Elements have different types that show alternative clefs by default. You can select the appropriate instrument type from the instrument picker when adding or changing instruments.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:
   - Start note input.
   - Select an item on the staff and at the rhythmic position where you want to input a clef. If you want to add a restorative clef at a later position, select items on the staff that span the required duration.
2. Optional: If you want to input clefs onto multiple staves at once, extend the caret to those staves.
3. Open the clefs and octave lines popover in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Shift-C**.
   - In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers**, then **Clefs**.
4. Enter the appropriate entry for the clef you want into the popover.

   For example, enter **bass** for a bass clef, **alto** for an alto clef, or **treble+1t** for a treble clef shifted up one octave in transposed pitch layouts.
5. Press **Return** to close the popover.

RESULT

During note input, clefs are input at the caret position. Note input continues after inputting the clef, so you can continue inputting notes and clefs as required.

When you add clefs to existing music, clefs are added directly before a selected notehead, and apply to all notes on that staff until the next clef, or the end of the flow. When you add clefs to a range of selected items, restorative clefs are also added at the end of the selection.

Clefs apply to all notes on the staff until the next clef or the end of the flow, whichever comes first.

RELATED LINKS

Clefs on page 816
Extending the caret to multiple staves on page 209
Hiding/Showing clefs according to layout transpositions on page 817
Changing the octave of clefs on page 819
Respecting/Ignoring clef octave indicators on page 820
Changing instruments on page 136
Adding instruments to players on page 133

Inputting clefs with the panel

You can input clefs using the Clefs panel, both during note input and by adding them to existing music.

NOTE

- If you do not want to show any clef in any layout, you must input an invisible clef. You can also hide/show clefs according to the layout transposition.
- These steps describe inputting with the default mouse input preference **Create item at selection**.
- Many instruments in Dorico Elements have different types that show alternative clefs by default. You can select the appropriate instrument type from the instrument picker when adding or changing instruments.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:
   - Start note input.
   - Select an item on the staff and at the rhythmic position where you want to input a clef. If you want to add a restorative clef at a later position, select items on the staff that span the required duration.
2. In the Notations toolbox, click **Panels**, then **Clefs** to show the Clefs panel.
3. In the Clefs panel, click the clef you want.

RESULT

During note input, clefs are input at the caret position. Note input continues after inputting the clef, so you can continue inputting notes and clefs as required.

When you add clefs to existing music, clefs are added directly before a selected notehead, and apply to all notes on that staff until the next clef, or the end of the flow. When you add clefs to a range of selected items, restorative clefs are also added at the end of the selection.

Clefs apply to all notes on the staff until the next clef or the end of the flow, whichever comes first.

RELATED LINKS

Notations toolbox on page 192
Clefs on page 816
Changing your mouse input settings on page 203
Universal Indian Drum Notation on page 1301

Inputting octave lines with the popover

You can input octave lines using the clefs and octave lines popover, both during note input and by adding them to existing music. You can also input octave lines only into specific voices in multiple-voice contexts.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:
   - Start note input.
   - Select the notes to which you want to add an octave line. If you want to add an octave line for a single voice, only select notes in that voice.

2. Optional: If you want to input octave lines onto multiple staves at once, extend the caret to those staves.
3. Open the clefs and octave lines popover in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Shift-C**.
   - In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers**, then **Clefs**.
4. Enter the appropriate entry for the octave line you want into the popover.

   For example, enter **8va** for an octave line that shifts notes up one octave.
5. Input the octave line and close the popover in one of the following ways:
   - To input an octave line for all voices on the staff, press **Return**.
   - To input an octave line only for the currently selected voice, press **Alt/Opt-Return**.
6. Optional: During note input, advance the caret and extend the octave line in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Space**.
   - In the Keyboard, Fretboard, or Drum Pads panel toolbar, click **Advance Caret**.

   The octave line also extends automatically as you continue inputting notes.
7. Optional: During note input, stop any octave line by opening the clefs and octave lines popover again and entering **|** or **stop**.

RESULT

During note input, octave lines are input from the caret position. When you stop octave lines, they end at the caret position.

When adding octave lines to existing music, they are input either above or below your selection, depending on whether the octave line indicates that notes are played higher or lower than notated.

The pitches of notes within octave lines are adjusted automatically. For example, notes within octave above lines appear an octave lower than they do without the octave above line.

TIP

You can also lengthen/shorten octave lines after they have been input.

RELATED LINKS

Clefs and octave lines popover on page 314
Octave lines on page 822
Lengthening/Shortening items on page 410
Changing the pitch of individual notes on page 444
Extending the caret to multiple staves on page 209
Notations toolbox on page 192
Keyboard panel on page 197
Fretboard panel on page 199
Drum Pads panel on page 200

Inputting octave lines with the panel

You can input octave lines using the Clefs panel, both during note input and by adding them to existing music. You can also input octave lines only into specific voices in multiple-voice contexts.

NOTE

These steps describe inputting with the default mouse input preference **Create item at selection**.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:
   - Start note input.
   - Select the notes to which you want to add an octave line. If you want to add an octave line for a single voice, only select notes in that voice.
2. In the Notations toolbox, click **Panels**, then **Clefs** to show the Clefs panel.
3. Input the octave line you want in one of the following ways:
   - To input an octave line for all voices on the staff, click it in the **Octave Lines** section.
   - To input an octave line only for the currently selected voice, **Alt/Opt**-click it in the **Octave Lines** section.

   Alternatively, when adding octave lines to existing music, you can click the octave line you want in the Clefs panel first, and then click and drag it to the length you want.

RESULT

During note input, octave lines are input at the caret position. They are input with a default duration of a quarter note.

When adding octave lines to existing music, they are input either above or below your selection, depending on whether the octave line indicates that notes are played higher or lower than notated.

The pitches of notes within octave lines are adjusted automatically. For example, notes within octave above lines appear an octave lower than they do without the octave above line.

TIP

You can also lengthen/shorten octave lines after they have been input.

RELATED LINKS

Notations toolbox on page 192
Octave lines on page 822
Lengthening/Shortening items on page 410
Changing the pitch of individual notes on page 444
Changing your mouse input settings on page 203

Input methods for holds and pauses

You can input holds and pauses with the keyboard by using the holds and pauses popover in Write mode, and with the mouse by using the Holds and Pauses panel.

RELATED LINKS

Holds and pauses on page 905

Correct positioning for caesura input on page 325

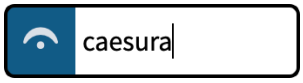
Holds and pauses popover

The table contains the entries for the holds and pauses popover that you can use to input the different holds and pauses available.

You can open the holds and pauses popover in Write mode in any of the following ways when either an item is selected or the caret is active:

- Press **Shift-H**.
- In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers**, then **Holds and Pauses**.
- Select an existing hold or pause and press **Return**.
- Choose **Write** > **Create Hold or Pause**.

The icon on the left-hand side of the popover matches the corresponding button in the Notations toolbox on the right of the window.



Holds and pauses popover with an example entry

Holds and Pauses button in the Notations toolbox

Fermatas

Type of fermata	Popover entry
Fermata	**fer** or **fermata**
Very long fermata	**fermataverylong**
Long fermata	**fermatalong**
Short fermata	**fermatashort**
Very short fermata	**fermataveryshort**
Short fermata (Henze)	**fermatashorthenze**
Long fermata (Henze)	**fermatalonghenze**
Curlew (Britten)	**curlew**

NOTE

The Curlew mark was originally devised by Benjamin Britten for “Curlew River”, a parable for church performance inspired by Japanese Noh theater. It indicates that a player should hold a note or a rest until a synchronization point in asynchronous music.

Caesuras

Type of caesura	Popover entry
Caesura	**caes**, **caesura**, or **//**
Thick caesura	**caesurathick**, **thickcaesura**, or **thick//**
Curved caesura	**caesuracurved**, **curvedcaesura**, or **curved//**
Short caesura	**caesurashort**, **shortcaesura**, or **short//**
Single-stroke caesura	**caesurasingle**, **singlecaesura**, or **single//**

Breath marks

Type of breath mark	Popover entry
Breath mark (Comma-like) ,	**breathmarkcomma**, **comma**, or **,** (comma)
Breath mark (Tick-like) ✓	**breathmarktick**
Breath mark (Upbow-like) ∨	**breathmarkupbow**
Breath mark (Salzedo)	**breathmarksalzedo**

RELATED LINKS
Notations toolbox on page 192
Holds and pauses on page 905
Types of fermatas on page 906
Types of caesuras on page 907
Types of breath marks on page 907

Holds and Pauses panel

The Holds and Pauses panel allows you to input all the different types of holds and pauses available in Dorico Elements, including alternative versions of fermatas. It is located in the right zone in Write mode.

- You can hide/show the Holds and Pauses panel by clicking **Panels**, then **Holds and Pauses** in the Notations toolbox.

  You can also hide/show the right zone by pressing **Ctrl/Cmd-9**.

The Holds and Pauses panel contains the following sections:

- **Fermatas**
- **Breath Marks**
- **Caesuras**

NOTE

Holds and pauses do not currently have an effect in playback, but this is planned for future versions.

RELATED LINKS
Notations toolbox on page 192
Inputting holds and pauses with the panel on page 324
Holds and pauses on page 905
Types of fermatas on page 906
Types of caesuras on page 907
Types of breath marks on page 907

Inputting holds and pauses with the popover

You can input holds and pauses using the holds and pauses popover, both during note input and by adding them to existing music.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:
   - Start note input.
   - Select an item at the rhythmic position where you want to input a hold or pause. If you want to input a breath mark on a specific staff, select an item that belongs to that staff only.

     NOTE

     You can only input one hold or pause at a time.
2. Optional: If you want to input breath marks onto multiple staves at once, extend the caret to those staves.
3. Open the holds and pauses popover in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Shift-H**.
   - In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers**, then **Holds and Pauses**.
4. Enter the hold or pause you want into the popover.
   For example, enter **fermata** for a pause or **caesura** for a caesura.
5. Press **Return** to close the popover.

RESULT

During note input, the specified hold or pause is input at the caret position. When adding holds or pauses to existing music, they are input at the rhythmic position of the earliest selected item.

- Fermatas appear on all staves at the rhythmic position of the note, chord, or rest that corresponds with the end of the fermata.
- Breath marks appear to the right of the caret or selected note.
- Caesuras appear on all staves to the left of the caret or selected note.

RELATED LINKS
Extending the caret to multiple staves on page 209
Holds and pauses on page 905

Types of fermatas on page 906
Types of breath marks on page 907
Types of caesuras on page 907
Positions of holds and pauses on page 907

Inputting holds and pauses with the panel

You can input holds and pauses using the Holds and Pauses panel, both during note input and by adding them to existing music.

NOTE

These steps describe inputting with the default mouse input preference **Create item at selection**.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:
   - Start note input.
   - Select an item at the rhythmic position where you want to input a hold or pause. If you want to input a breath mark on a specific staff, select an item that belongs to that staff only.

     NOTE

     You can only input one hold or pause at a time.
2. In the Notations toolbox, click **Panels**, then **Holds and Pauses** to show the Holds and Pauses panel.
3. In the Holds and Pauses panel, click the hold or pause you want.

RESULT

During note input, the specified hold or pause is input at the caret position. When adding holds or pauses to existing music, they are input at the rhythmic position of the earliest selected item.

- Fermatas appear on all staves at the rhythmic position of the note, chord, or rest that corresponds with the end of the fermata.
- Breath marks appear to the right of the caret or selected note.
- Caesuras appear on all staves to the left of the caret or selected note.

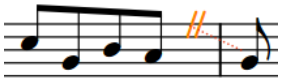
RELATED LINKS

Notations toolbox on page 192
Holds and pauses on page 905
Positions of holds and pauses on page 907
Changing your mouse input settings on page 203

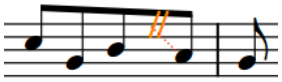
Correct positioning for caesura input

Caesuras are commonly placed at the end of a bar, before a barline. In Dorico Elements, caesuras must be attached to the note immediately after the position where you want it to appear, as then Dorico Elements can automatically position them correctly.

If you input caesuras with your mouse input preference set to **Load pointer with item**, you must click the first note in the next bar for a caesura to appear to the left of the barline. You can also click directly on the barline.



A correctly input caesura. The dotted attachment lines are attached to the notehead after the barline, meaning the caesura is correctly positioned before the barline.



An incorrectly input caesura. By clicking to the left of the barline, the caesura is attached to the last eighth note in the bar.

When input correctly, the dotted attachment lines link the caesura to the notehead immediately after the barline.

If your dotted attachment lines do not link the caesura to the notehead immediately after the barline, delete the caesura and re-input it. Caesuras can cause spacing issues when input incorrectly.

RELATED LINKS
Holds and pauses on page 905
Types of caesuras on page 907

Input methods for ornaments, arpeggio signs, glissando lines, and jazz articulations

You can input ornaments, including arpeggio signs, glissando lines, and jazz articulations with the keyboard by using the ornaments popover, and with the mouse by using the Ornaments panel.

You can input ornaments and arpeggio signs during note input and by adding them to existing notes, but you cannot input glissando lines during note input. You can only input glissando lines by adding them to existing notes.

You can specify the type/length of jazz articulations when using the Ornaments panel but not when using the ornaments popover.

RELATED LINKS
Ornaments on page 977
Arpeggio signs on page 994
Glissando lines on page 1000
Jazz articulations on page 1028
Jazz ornaments on page 1029
Lines on page 1075
Input methods for lines on page 367

Ornaments popover

The following tables contain the entries for the ornaments popover that you can use to input the different ornaments, arpeggio signs, glissando lines, and jazz articulations available.

You can open the ornaments popover in Write mode in any of the following ways when either an item is selected or the caret is active:

- Press **Shift-O**.
- In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers**, then **Ornaments**.
- Select an existing ornament and press **Return**.
- Choose **Write** > **Create Ornament**.

The icon on the left-hand side of the popover matches the corresponding button in the Notations toolbox on the right of the window.

Ornaments popover with an example entry

Ornaments button in the Notations toolbox

Ornaments

Type of ornament	Popover entry
Trill:	**tr** or **trill**
Short trill:	**shorttr**
Mordent:	**mor** or **mordent**
Turn:	**turn**
Inverted turn:	**invturn** or **invertedturn**

Trill intervals

Trill interval or quality	Popover entry
Interval degree Unison, second, third, fourth, fifth, sixth, seventh, octave	**1**, **2**, **3**, **4**, **5**, **6**, **7**, **8**
Major	**M**, **maj**, or **major**
Minor	**m**, **min**, or **minor**
Perfect	**p**, **per**, or **perf**

Trill interval or quality	Popover entry
Diminished	**d**, **dim**, or **diminished**
Augmented	**a**, **aug**, or **augmented**

EXAMPLE

To input a trill with a perfect fifth interval, enter **tr p5**.

Jazz ornaments

Type of jazz ornament	Popover entry
Bend ∪	**brassbend**
Flip ⩘	**flip**
Jazz turn	**jazz** or **shake**
Smear ~	**smear**

Jazz articulations

Type of jazz articulation	Popover entry
Plop (bend)	**plop**
Plop (smooth)	**plopsmooth**
Scoop	**scoop**
Doit (bend)	**doit**
Doit (smooth)	**doitsmooth**
Fall (bend)	**fall**
Fall (smooth)	**fallsmooth**

TIP

Other ornaments are available in the Ornaments panel. You can specify the type/length of jazz articulations when using the Ornaments panel but not when using the ornaments popover.

Arpeggio signs

Type of arpeggio sign	Popover entry
Up arpeggio sign	**arp**, **arpup**, or **arpeggioup**
Down arpeggio sign	**arpdown** or **arpeggiodown**
Non arpeggio sign	**nonarp** or **nonarpeggio**
Curved arpeggio sign	**slurarp**

Glissando lines

Type of glissando line	Popover entry
Default style glissando line	**gliss**
Straight glissando line	**glissstraight**
Wavy glissando line	**glisswavy**

Guitar techniques

Type of guitar technique	Popover entry
Guitar bend	**bend**
Vibrato bar dive and return	**vibbend**
Vibrato bar scoop	**vibscoop**
Vibrato bar dip	**vibdip**
Vibrato bar line NOTE Must have duration to show its line.	**wbar** or **w/bar**
Hammer-on NOTE You must select at least two notes assigned to the same string with ascending pitch directions, such as C-D.	**ho** or **hammer**

Type of guitar technique	Popover entry
Pull-off NOTE You must select at least two notes assigned to the same string with descending pitch directions, such as D-C.	**po** or **pull**
Hammer-on then pull-off or pull-off then hammer-on (*ligado*) NOTE You must select at least three notes assigned to the same string with alternating pitch directions, such as C-D-C or D-C-D.	**hp**, **hopo**, **hammerpull**, **lig**, or **ligado**
Right-hand tapping	**tap**
Right-hand tapping with pull-off NOTE You must select at least two notes assigned to the same string with descending pitch directions, such as D-C.	**tappull**
Left-hand tapping	**lhtap**
Left-hand tapping with pull-off NOTE You must select at least two notes assigned to the same string with descending pitch directions, such as D-C.	**lhtappull**

RELATED LINKS
Notations toolbox on page 192
Inputting arpeggio signs with the popover on page 332
Inputting glissando lines with the popover on page 334
Inputting jazz articulations with the popover on page 336
Inputting guitar bends with the popover on page 338
Inputting vibrato bar dives on page 341
Inputting vibrato bar dives and returns with the popover on page 343
Inputting vibrato bar scoops with the popover on page 345
Inputting vibrato bar dips with the popover on page 346
Inputting hammer-ons/pull-offs on page 349
Inputting tapping on page 350

Assigning notes to strings on page 947
Changing the allocated string for notes on tablature on page 1202
Ornaments on page 977
Trill intervals on page 984
Arpeggio signs on page 994
Glissando lines on page 1000
Guitar bends on page 1006
Guitar techniques on page 1021
Jazz articulations on page 1028
Jazz ornaments on page 1029
Playing technique duration on page 1068

Ornaments panel

The Ornaments panel allows you to input all the different types of ornaments available, including jazz articulations, as well as arpeggio signs, glissando lines, guitar bends, and vibrato bar techniques. It is located in the right zone in Write mode.

- You can hide/show the Ornaments panel by clicking **Panels**, then **Ornaments** in the Notations toolbox.

  You can also hide/show the right zone by pressing **Ctrl/Cmd-9**.

The Ornaments panel contains the following sections:

Jazz

Contains ornaments and pitch alterations commonly used in jazz music, such as bends, scoops, and falls.

Baroque and Classical

Contains ornaments commonly used in Baroque and Classical music, such as mordents, turns, and trills.

Arpeggiation

Contains the different types of arpeggio signs.

NOTE

You cannot input arpeggio signs with the mouse during note input.

Glissandi

Contains the different types of glissando lines.

Guitar

Contains techniques and pitch alterations commonly associated with guitars, such as guitar bends and vibrato bar scoops.

RELATED LINKS

Notations toolbox on page 192
Inputting ornaments/trills with the panel on page 332
Inputting arpeggio signs with the panel on page 333
Inputting glissando lines with the panel on page 335
Inputting jazz articulations with the panel on page 337
Input methods for guitar bends and guitar techniques on page 338

Inputting ornaments/trills with the popover

You can input ornaments, trills, and jazz ornaments using the ornaments popover, both during note input and by adding them to existing notes. When inputting trills, you can specify the trill interval, such as a minor third.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:
   - Start note input.
   - Select an item on the staff and at the rhythmic position where you want to input an ornament. If you want to input a trill with a specific duration, select items on the staff that span that duration.
2. Optional: If you want to input ornaments onto multiple staves at once, extend the caret to those staves.
3. Open the ornaments popover in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Shift-O**.
   - In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers**, then **Ornaments**.
4. Enter the appropriate entry for the ornament you want into the popover.
   For example, enter **tr m3** for a trill with a minor third interval or **mor** for a mordent.
5. Press **Return** to close the popover.
6. Optional: When inputting trills during note input, input a note or press **Space** to advance the caret and input the trill.

RESULT

During note input, ornaments are input at the caret position. Trills last the duration of the rhythmic value of the note input at the caret position or the duration by which the caret advanced. Trills have a default interval of a second, either major or minor depending on the context. If you specified an interval for your trill, the interval applies only to the first note in the selection, but you can also change the interval partway through trills.

When adding ornaments to existing music, they are input at the rhythmic position of the earliest selected item. Trills are input at the rhythmic position of the earliest selected item, with an extender line across the rest of the selection.

RELATED LINKS

Ornaments on page 977
Trills on page 981
Trill intervals on page 984
Changing trill intervals on page 986
Changing trill intervals partway through trills on page 987
Trill interval appearance on page 989
Jazz ornaments on page 1029
Inputting notes on page 211
Inputting jazz articulations with the popover on page 336
Extending the caret to multiple staves on page 209

Inputting ornaments/trills with the panel

You can input ornaments, trills, and jazz ornaments using the Ornaments panel, both during note input and by adding them to existing notes.

NOTE

These steps describe inputting with the default mouse input preference **Create item at selection**.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:
   - Start note input.
   - Select an item on the staff and at the rhythmic position where you want to input an ornament. If you want to input a trill with a specific duration, select items on the staff that span that duration.
2. In the Notations toolbox, click **Panels**, then **Ornaments** to show the Ornaments panel.
3. In the Ornaments panel, click the ornament you want.

RESULT

During note input, ornaments are input at the caret position. Trills are input with a default duration of a quarter note.

When adding ornaments to existing music, they are input at the rhythmic position of the earliest selected item. Trills are input at the rhythmic position of the earliest selected item, with an extender line across the rest of the selection.

TIP

You can specify trill intervals when inputting trills using the popover.

RELATED LINKS
Notations toolbox on page 192
Ornaments panel on page 330
Inputting jazz articulations with the panel on page 337
Changing your mouse input settings on page 203

Inputting arpeggio signs with the popover

You can input arpeggio signs using the ornaments popover, both during note input and by adding them to existing notes. You can also input arpeggio signs across notes in multiple voices and on different staves that belong to the same instrument, such as piano or harp.

NOTE

You can only input one arpeggio sign at a time.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:
   - Start note input.
   - Select at least one note in each voice to which you want to add an arpeggio sign.

NOTE

- For instruments with multiple staves, such as piano and harp, you can select existing notes on multiple staves to create cross-staff arpeggio signs. However, you cannot create cross-staff arpeggio signs between different instruments.
- Arpeggio signs are added to all notes in the selected voices at the selected rhythmic position.

2. Optional: If you started note input, press **Q** to start chord input.

   NOTE

   You can only input arpeggio signs during chord input.

3. Open the ornaments popover in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Shift-O**.
   - In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers**, then **Ornaments**.
4. Enter the appropriate entry for the arpeggio sign you want into the popover.
   For example, enter **arpup** for an up arpeggio sign or **arpdown** for a down arpeggio sign.
5. Press **Return** to close the popover.
6. Optional: During chord input, input the notes you want.

RESULT

During chord input, arpeggio signs are input at the caret position.

When adding arpeggio signs to existing notes, they are input to the left of the selected notes.

Arpeggio signs automatically span the pitch range of all notes at that rhythmic position in the current voice during chord input, and all notes in the selected voices/staves when adding arpeggio signs to existing notes.

RELATED LINKS

Ornaments popover on page 326
Arpeggio signs on page 994
Inputting notes on page 211
Inputting chords on page 240

Inputting arpeggio signs with the panel

You can input arpeggio signs on existing notes using the Ornaments panel. You can also input arpeggio signs across notes in multiple voices and on different staves that belong to the same instrument, such as piano or harp.

NOTE

- You can only input one arpeggio sign at a time, and you cannot input arpeggio signs with the mouse during note input.
- These steps describe inputting with the default mouse input preference **Create item at selection**. You cannot create cross-staff and cross-voice arpeggio signs if your preference is set to **Load pointer with item**.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select at least one note in each voice to which you want to add an arpeggio sign.

   NOTE

   - For instruments with multiple staves, such as piano and harp, you can select existing notes on multiple staves to create cross-staff arpeggio signs. However, you cannot create cross-staff arpeggio signs between different instruments.
   - Arpeggio signs are added to all notes in the selected voices at the selected rhythmic position.

2. In the Notations toolbox, click **Panels**, then **Ornaments** to show the Ornaments panel.
3. In the **Arpeggiation** section, click the arpeggio sign you want.

RESULT

The arpeggio sign specified is input to the left of the selected note or chord. Arpeggio signs automatically span the pitch range of all notes in the selected voices/staves at that rhythmic position.

RELATED LINKS

Notations toolbox on page 192
Ornaments panel on page 330
Arpeggio signs on page 994
Changing your mouse input settings on page 203

Inputting glissando lines with the popover

You can input glissando lines between existing notes using the ornaments popover. You can input glissando lines between both adjacent and non-adjacent notes.

NOTE

You cannot input glissando lines during note input or on the last note on a staff. Instead, you can input a jazz articulation.

PREREQUISITE

You have input at least two notes that you want to join with a glissando.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the two notes you want to join with a glissando line.

   For example, select a grace note and a normal note, two notes in different voices, or two notes on different staves belonging to the same instrument.

2. Open the ornaments popover in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Shift-O**.
   - In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers**, then **Ornaments**.
3. Enter the appropriate entry for the glissando line you want into the popover.
   - For a default style glissando line, enter **gliss**.
   - For a straight glissando line, enter **glissstraight**.
   - For a wavy glissando line, enter **glisswavy**.

4. Press **Return** to close the popover.

RESULT

The glissando line specified is input between the selected notes.

NOTE

- If you select a single note and input a glissando line, the glissando line specified starts from the selected note and ends at the next note in the same voice on the staff, even if this crosses rests.
- Glissando lines do not automatically adjust around any notes or rests between the selected notes. If glissando text is shown, the text can collide with notes or rests, in which case we recommend that you make further adjustments, such as not showing glissando text for that glissando line.
- By default, glissando line text is hidden on staves belonging to fretted instruments. However, you can show glissando line text manually.

RELATED LINKS

Ornaments popover on page 326
Glissando lines on page 1000
Changing glissando line text on page 1002
Changing when glissando line text is shown on page 1002
Changing the style of glissando lines on page 1001
Inputting jazz articulations with the panel on page 337

Inputting glissando lines with the panel

You can input glissando lines between existing notes using the Ornaments panel. You can input glissando lines between both adjacent and non-adjacent notes.

NOTE

- These steps describe inputting with the default mouse input preference **Create item at selection**. If your preference is set to **Load pointer with item**, you can only input glissando lines between the note you click on and the note immediately following it.
- You cannot input glissando lines during note input or on the last note on a staff. Instead, you can input a jazz articulation.

PREREQUISITE

You have input at least two notes that you want to join with a glissando.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the two notes you want to join with a glissando line.

   For example, select a grace note and a normal note, two notes in different voices, or two notes on different staves belonging to the same instrument.

2. In the Notations toolbox, click **Panels**, then **Ornaments** to show the Ornaments panel.
3. In the **Glissandi** section, click the style of glissando line you want.
   - **Glissando (Straight)**
   - **Glissando (Wavy)**

RESULT

The glissando line specified is input between the selected notes.

NOTE

- If you select a single note and input a glissando line, the glissando line specified starts from the selected note and ends at the next note in the same voice on the staff, even if this crosses rests.
- Glissando lines do not automatically adjust around any notes or rests between the selected notes. If glissando text is shown, the text can collide with notes or rests, in which case we recommend that you make further adjustments, such as not showing glissando text for that glissando line.
- By default, glissando line text is hidden on staves belonging to fretted instruments. However, you can show glissando line text manually.

RELATED LINKS

Notations toolbox on page 192
Ornaments panel on page 330
Glissando lines on page 1000
Changing glissando line text on page 1002
Changing when glissando line text is shown on page 1002
Inputting jazz articulations with the panel on page 337
Changing your mouse input settings on page 203

Inputting jazz articulations with the popover

You can input jazz articulations using the ornaments popover, both during note input and by adding them to existing notes.

NOTE

You can input jazz ornaments, such as flips or jazz turns, in the same ways as inputting ornaments.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:
   - Start note input.

     TIP

     During note input, you can select additional notes before/after the last input note without deactivating the caret by pressing **Shift-Right Arrow**/**Shift-Left Arrow**.

   - Select the notes to which you want to add jazz articulations.
2. Optional: If you want to input jazz articulations onto multiple staves at once, extend the caret to those staves.
3. Optional: During note input, input at least one note.
4. Open the ornaments popover in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Shift-O**.
   - In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers**, then **Ornaments**.
5. Enter the appropriate entry for the jazz articulation you want into the popover.

For example, enter **scoop** for a scoop or **fall** for a fall.

6. Press **Return** to close the popover.

RESULT

The jazz articulation you specify is input on all selected notes. During note input, this is usually the last note you input.

NOTE

When using the popover, all jazz articulations are input with a default line style for their type. You can change their type/length after they have been input.

When using the panel, you can specify the line style of jazz articulations when you input them.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

You can enable independent voice playback for individual instruments to hear different jazz articulations in different voices simultaneously.

RELATED LINKS

Ornaments popover on page 326
Inputting ornaments/trills with the popover on page 331
Extending the caret to multiple staves on page 209
Jazz articulations on page 1028
Changing the type/length of existing jazz articulations on page 1030
Changing the line style of smooth jazz articulations on page 1031
Enabling independent voice playback on page 506
Playback techniques on page 706

Inputting jazz articulations with the panel

You can input jazz articulations using the Ornaments panel, both during note input and by adding them to existing notes.

NOTE

- You can input jazz ornaments, such as flips or jazz turns, in the same ways as inputting ornaments.
- These steps describe inputting with the default mouse input preference **Create item at selection**.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:
   - Start note input.

     TIP

     During note input, you can select additional notes before/after the last input note without deactivating the caret by pressing **Shift-Right Arrow**/**Shift-Left Arrow**.

   - Select the notes to which you want to add jazz articulations.
2. Optional: If you want to input jazz articulations onto multiple staves at once, extend the caret to those staves.
3. Optional: During note input, input at least one note.

4. In the Notations toolbox, click **Panels**, then **Ornaments** to show the Ornaments panel.
5. In the **Jazz** section, click the jazz articulation you want.

RESULT

The jazz articulation you specify is input on all selected notes. During note input, this is usually the last note you input.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

You can enable independent voice playback for individual instruments to hear different jazz articulations in different voices simultaneously.

RELATED LINKS

Notations toolbox on page 192
Ornaments panel on page 330
Inputting ornaments/trills with the panel on page 332
Extending the caret to multiple staves on page 209
Changing your mouse input settings on page 203
Enabling independent voice playback on page 506
Playback techniques on page 706

Input methods for guitar bends and guitar techniques

You can input guitar bends (including pre-bends and post-bends), vibrato bar techniques (including dips, dives, scoops, and dives and returns) and tapping, hammer-on, and pull-off indications with the keyboard by using the ornaments popover, and with the mouse by using the Ornaments panel.

You can also input guitar pre-bends, post-bends, and vibrato bar pre-dives using properties in the Properties panel.

You can input guitar techniques during note input and by adding them to existing notes, but you cannot input guitar bends during note input. You can only input guitar bends by adding them to existing notes.

RELATED LINKS

Ornaments popover on page 326
Ornaments panel on page 330
Guitar bends on page 1006
Guitar pre-bends and pre-dives on page 1008
Guitar post-bends on page 1009
Vibrato bar dives and returns on page 1011
Vibrato bar techniques on page 1021
Tapping on page 1022
Hammer-ons and pull-offs on page 1023

Inputting guitar bends with the popover

You can input guitar bends between existing notes, including between grace notes and normal notes, using the ornaments popover. You can input guitar bends between both adjacent and non-adjacent notes.

NOTE

You cannot input guitar bends during note input or on the last note on a staff.

PREREQUISITE

You have input at least two notes that you want to join with a guitar bend.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the two notes you want to join with a guitar bend.

   For example, select a grace note and a normal note or two notes in different voices.
2. Open the ornaments popover in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Shift-O**.
   - In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers**, then **Ornaments**.
3. Enter **bend** into the popover.
4. Press **Return** to close the popover.

RESULT

The guitar bend is input between the selected notes.

Guitar bends automatically appear as guitar bends or returns on tablature according to the pitch direction of the notes they join.

TIP

- If you select a single note and input a guitar bend, the guitar bend starts from the selected note and ends at the next note in the same voice on the staff, even if this crosses rests.
- You can assign a key command for **Create Guitar Bend** on the **Key Commands** page in **Preferences**.

RELATED LINKS

Ornaments popover on page 326
Guitar bends on page 1006
Inputting guitar pre-bends/pre-dives on page 340
Inputting guitar post-bends on page 341
Key Commands page in the Preferences dialog on page 59

Inputting guitar bends with the panel

You can input guitar bends between existing notes, including between grace notes and normal notes, using the Ornaments panel. You can input guitar bends between both adjacent and non-adjacent notes.

NOTE

- These steps describe inputting with the default mouse input preference **Create item at selection**. If your preference is set to **Load pointer with item**, you can only input guitar bends between the note you click on and the note immediately following it.
- You cannot input guitar bends during note input or on the last note on a staff.

PREREQUISITE

You have input at least two notes that you want to join with a guitar bend.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the two notes you want to join with a guitar bend.

   For example, select a grace note and a normal note or two notes in different voices.

2. In the Notations toolbox, click **Panels**, then **Ornaments** to show the Ornaments panel.
3. In the **Guitar** section, click **Guitar Bend**.

RESULT

The guitar bend is input between the selected notes.

Guitar bends automatically appear as guitar bends or returns on tablature according to the pitch direction of the notes they join.

TIP

- If you select a single note and input a guitar bend, the guitar bend starts from the selected note and ends at the next note in the same voice on the staff, even if this crosses rests.
- You can assign a key command for **Create Guitar Bend** on the **Key Commands** page in **Preferences**.

RELATED LINKS

Notations toolbox on page 192
Ornaments panel on page 330
Guitar bends on page 1006
Changing your mouse input settings on page 203

Inputting guitar pre-bends/pre-dives

You can input guitar pre-bends on any existing notes belonging to fretted instruments. You can also specify that pre-bends should be played using the vibrato bar, a technique that is known as a “pre-dive”.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the notes before which you want to input guitar pre-bends/pre-dives. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Pre-bend interval** in the **Guitar Pre-bends** group.
3. Change the interval as required.
4. Optional: To turn the guitar pre-bends into guitar pre-dives, activate **Vibrato bar pre-bend** and the corresponding checkbox in the **Guitar Pre-bends** group.

RESULT

Guitar pre-bends of the specified interval are input before the selected notes. They are shown as guitar pre-dives when **Vibrato bar pre-bend** and the corresponding checkbox are both activated.

RELATED LINKS

Guitar pre-bends and pre-dives on page 1008
Vibrato bar techniques on page 1021
Properties panel on page 615

Inputting guitar post-bends

You can input guitar post-bends on any existing notes belonging to fretted instruments. You can also specify that post-bends are microtonal.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the notes after which you want to input guitar post-bends. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Post-bend interval** in the **Guitar Post-bends** group.
3. Do one of the following:
   - Change the interval as required.
   - To turn the guitar post-bends into microtonal post-bends, activate **Microtone bend** in the **Guitar Post-bends** group.

RESULT

Guitar post-bends of the specified interval are input after the selected notes. They are shown as microtonal when **Microtone bend** is activated.

RELATED LINKS

Guitar post-bends on page 1009
Properties panel on page 615
Inputting guitar bends with the popover on page 338

Inputting vibrato bar dives

You can input vibrato bar dives, both during note input and by adding them to existing notes.

Vibrato bar dives are notated using a smooth fall jazz articulation combined with a vibrato bar indication.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:
   - Start note input.

     TIP

     During note input, you can select additional notes before/after the last input note without deactivating the caret by pressing **Shift-Right Arrow**/**Shift-Left Arrow**.

   - Select the notes to which you want to add vibrato bar dives.
2. Optional: If you want to input vibrato bar dives onto multiple staves at once, extend the caret to those staves.
3. Optional: During note input, input at least one note.
4. Open the ornaments popover in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Shift-O**.
   - In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers**, then **Ornaments**.

5. Enter **fallsmooth** into the popover to input a smooth fall jazz articulation.
6. Press **Return** to close the popover.
7. Optional: During note input, move the caret back to the position of the note with the smooth fall.
8. Open the ornaments popover in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Shift-O**.
   - In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers**, then **Ornaments**.
9. Enter **wbar** into the popover to input a vibrato bar indication.
10. Press **Return** to close the popover.
11. Optional: During note input, input a note or press **Space** to advance the caret and input the vibrato bar indication.

RESULT

The smooth fall jazz articulation is input on all selected notes. During note input, this is usually the last note you input.

During note input, vibrato bar indications are input at the caret position. When adding vibrato bar indications to existing music, they are added at the rhythmic position of the earliest selected item.

NOTE

When using the popover, all jazz articulations are input with a default line style for their type. You can change their type/length after they have been input.

You can also input both smooth fall jazz articulations and vibrato bar indications using the Ornaments panel. When using the panel, you can specify the line style of jazz articulations when you input them.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

If you want vibrato bar indications to show a line, you can lengthen them to give them duration.

RELATED LINKS

Vibrato bar techniques on page 1021
Notations toolbox on page 192
Ornaments popover on page 326
Ornaments panel on page 330
Extending the caret to multiple staves on page 209
Moving the caret manually on page 210
Jazz articulations on page 1028
Inputting jazz articulations with the popover on page 336
Inputting jazz articulations with the panel on page 337
Changing the type/length of existing jazz articulations on page 1030
Changing the line style of smooth jazz articulations on page 1031
Deleting jazz articulations on page 1032
Lengthening/Shortening items on page 410
Playing technique duration on page 1068

Inputting vibrato bar dives and returns with the popover

You can input vibrato bar dives and returns between existing notes using the ornaments popover. You can input vibrato bar dives and returns between both adjacent and non-adjacent notes.

NOTE

You cannot input vibrato bar dives and returns during note input or on the last note on a staff.

PREREQUISITE

You have input at least three notes with alternating pitch directions, such as D-C-D, that you want to join with a vibrato bar dive and return.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the two notes you want to join with a vibrato bar dive.

   NOTE

   The notes must be on the same staff and have a descending pitch direction, such as D-C.

2. Open the ornaments popover in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Shift-O**.
   - In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers**, then **Ornaments**.
3. Enter **vibbend** into the popover to input the dive.
4. Press **Return** to close the popover.
5. Select the two notes you want to join with a vibrato bar return.

   NOTE

   The notes must be on the same staff and have an ascending pitch direction, such as C-D.

6. Open the ornaments popover in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Shift-O**.
   - In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers**, then **Ornaments**.
7. Enter **vibbend** into the popover to input the return.
8. Press **Return** to close the popover.

RESULT

Vibrato bar dives are input between notes with descending pitch directions, and vibrato bar returns are input between notes with ascending pitch directions. If a vibrato bar dive ends on the same note that a vibrato bar return starts on, they appear as a V on tablature with the bend interval shown at the point. If you input vibrato bar dives on consecutive notes with the same pitch direction, such as E-D-C, they are notated on tablature with an additional line protrusion beyond the staff and bend interval for each vibrato bar dive.

Vibrato bar dives and returns automatically point upwards or downwards on tablature according to the pitch direction of the notes they join.

RELATED LINKS

Ornaments popover on page 326
Vibrato bar dives and returns on page 1011

Vibrato bar techniques on page 1021
Guitar bends on page 1006
Inputting guitar bends with the popover on page 338

Inputting vibrato bar dives and returns with the panel

You can input vibrato bar dives and returns between existing notes using the Ornaments panel. You can input vibrato bar dives and returns between both adjacent and non-adjacent notes.

NOTE

- These steps describe inputting with the default mouse input preference **Create item at selection**. If your preference is set to **Load pointer with item**, you can only input vibrato bar dives and returns between the note you click on and the note immediately following it.
- You cannot input vibrato bar dives and returns during note input or on the last note on a staff.

PREREQUISITE

You have input at least three notes with alternating pitch directions, such as D-C-D, that you want to join with a vibrato bar dive and return.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the two notes you want to join with a vibrato bar dive.

   NOTE

   The notes must be on the same staff and have a descending pitch direction, such as D-C.

2. In the Notations toolbox, click **Panels**, then **Ornaments** to show the Ornaments panel.
3. In the **Guitar** section, click **Guitar Bend with Vibrato Bar** to input the vibrato bar dive.
4. Select the two notes you want to join with a vibrato bar return.

   NOTE

   The notes must be on the same staff and have an ascending pitch direction, such as C-D.

5. Click **Guitar Bend with Vibrato Bar** to input the vibrato bar return.

RESULT

Vibrato bar dives are input between notes with descending pitch directions, and vibrato bar returns are input between notes with ascending pitch directions. If a vibrato bar dive ends on the same note that a vibrato bar return starts on, they appear as a V on tablature with the bend interval shown at the point. If you input vibrato bar dives on consecutive notes with the same pitch direction, such as E-D-C, they are notated on tablature with an additional line protrusion beyond the staff and bend interval for each vibrato bar dive.

Vibrato bar dives and returns automatically point upwards or downwards on tablature according to the pitch direction of the notes they join.

RELATED LINKS

Notations toolbox on page 192
Ornaments panel on page 330
Vibrato bar dives and returns on page 1011
Vibrato bar techniques on page 1021

Guitar bends on page 1006
Inputting vibrato bar dives on page 341
Changing your mouse input settings on page 203

Inputting vibrato bar scoops with the popover

You can input vibrato bar scoops using the ornaments popover, both during note input and by adding them to existing notes.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:
   - Start note input.

     TIP

     During note input, you can select additional notes before/after the last input note without deactivating the caret by pressing **Shift-Right Arrow**/**Shift-Left Arrow**.
   - Select the notes to which you want to add vibrato bar scoops.
2. Optional: If you want to input vibrato bar scoops onto multiple staves at once, extend the caret to those staves.
3. Optional: During note input, input at least one note.
4. Open the ornaments popover in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Shift-O**.
   - In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers**, then **Ornaments**.
5. Enter **vibscoop** into the popover.
6. Press **Return** to close the popover.

RESULT

Vibrato bar scoops are input on the selected notes. During note input, this is usually the last note you input.

By default, vibrato bar scoops only appear on notation staves, not tablature. They are positioned to the left of notes.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

You can input vibrato bar indications to clarify the vibrato bar scoops should be played using the vibrato bar.

RELATED LINKS

Ornaments popover on page 326
Vibrato bar techniques on page 1021
Inputting vibrato bar indications/lines with the popover on page 347
Deleting guitar techniques on page 1027

Inputting vibrato bar scoops with the panel

You can input vibrato bar scoops using the Ornaments panel, both during note input and by adding them to existing notes.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:

- Start note input.

  TIP

  During note input, you can select additional notes before/after the last input note without deactivating the caret by pressing **Shift-Right Arrow**/**Shift-Left Arrow**.

- Select the notes to which you want to add vibrato bar scoops.

2. Optional: If you want to input vibrato bar scoops onto multiple staves at once, extend the caret to those staves.
3. Optional: During note input, input at least one note.
4. In the Notations toolbox, click **Panels**, then **Ornaments** to show the Ornaments panel.
5. In the **Guitar** section, click **Vibrato Bar Scoop**.

RESULT

Vibrato bar scoops are input on the selected notes. During note input, this is usually the last note you input.

By default, vibrato bar scoops only appear on notation staves, not tablature. They are positioned to the left of notes.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

You can input vibrato bar indications to clarify the vibrato bar scoops should be played using the vibrato bar.

RELATED LINKS

Notations toolbox on page 192
Ornaments panel on page 330
Vibrato bar techniques on page 1021
Inputting vibrato bar indications/lines with the panel on page 348
Deleting guitar techniques on page 1027

Inputting vibrato bar dips with the popover

You can input vibrato bar dips using the ornaments popover, both during note input and by adding them to existing music.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:
   - Start note input.
   - Select an item on the staff at the rhythmic position where you want to input a vibrato bar dip.
2. Optional: If you want to input vibrato bar dips onto multiple staves at once, extend the caret to those staves.
3. Open the ornaments popover in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Shift-O**.
   - In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers**, then **Ornaments**.
4. Enter **vibdip** into the popover.
5. Press **Return** to close the popover.

6. Optional: During note input, input a note or press **Space** to advance the caret and input the vibrato bar dip.

RESULT

During note input, vibrato bar dips are input at the caret position. When adding vibrato bar dips to existing music, they are input at the position of the earliest selected item.

By default, vibrato bar dips have half step intervals, are placed above the staff, and only appear on notation staves, not tablature.

RELATED LINKS

Ornaments popover on page 326
Vibrato bar techniques on page 1021
Changing vibrato bar dip intervals on page 1026
Inputting vibrato bar indications/lines with the popover on page 347
Changing the staff-relative placement of items on page 414

Inputting vibrato bar dips with the panel

You can input vibrato bar dips using the Ornaments panel, both during note input and by adding them to existing music.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:
   - Start note input.
   - Select an item on the staff at the rhythmic position where you want to input a vibrato bar dip.
2. In the Notations toolbox, click **Panels**, then **Ornaments** to show the Ornaments panel.
3. In the **Guitar** section, click **Vibrato Bar Dip**.

RESULT

During note input, vibrato bar dips are input at the caret position. When adding vibrato bar dips to existing music, they are input at the position of the earliest selected item.

By default, vibrato bar dips have half step intervals, are placed above the staff, and only appear on notation staves, not tablature.

RELATED LINKS

Notations toolbox on page 192
Ornaments panel on page 330
Vibrato bar techniques on page 1021
Changing vibrato bar dip intervals on page 1026
Inputting vibrato bar indications/lines with the panel on page 348
Changing the staff-relative placement of items on page 414

Inputting vibrato bar indications/lines with the popover

You can input vibrato bar indications/lines using the ornaments popover, both during note input and by adding them to existing music. When vibrato bar indications are input across a range of items, they are input with duration and show a duration line, which is dashed by default.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:

- Start note input.
- Select an item on the staff and at the rhythmic position where you want to input a vibrato bar indication. If you want to input a vibrato bar line, select items on the staff that span the required duration.

2. Optional: If you want to input vibrato bar indications onto multiple staves at once, extend the caret to those staves.
3. Open the ornaments popover in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Shift-O**.
   - In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers**, then **Ornaments**.
4. Enter **wbar** into the popover to input the vibrato bar indication.
5. Press **Return** to close the popover.
6. Optional: During note input, input a note or press **Space** to advance the caret and input the vibrato bar indication.

RESULT

During note input, vibrato bar indications are input at the caret position.

When adding vibrato bar indications to a single selected item, they are input at that rhythmic position only and have no duration. When adding vibrato bar indications to a range of selected items, they are input at the rhythmic position of the earliest selected item and have duration, which applies until the end of the selection. Vibrato bar indications with duration show a duration line, which is dashed by default.

By default, vibrato bar indications/lines are placed below the staff and only appear on notation staves, not tablature.

RELATED LINKS

Ornaments popover on page 326
Vibrato bar techniques on page 1021
Extending the caret to multiple staves on page 209
Lengthening/Shortening items on page 410
Playing technique duration on page 1068

Inputting vibrato bar indications/lines with the panel

You can input vibrato bar indications/lines using the Ornaments panel, both during note input and by adding them to existing music. When vibrato bar indications are input across a range of items, they are input with duration and show a duration line, which is dashed by default.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:
   - Start note input.
   - Select an item on the staff and at the rhythmic position where you want to input a vibrato bar indication. If you want to input a vibrato bar line, select items on the staff that span the required duration.
2. In the Notations toolbox, click **Panels**, then **Ornaments** to show the Ornaments panel.
3. In the **Guitar** section, click **Vibrato Bar Line** w/ bar.

RESULT

During note input, vibrato bar indications are input at the caret position.

When adding vibrato bar indications to a single selected item, they are input at that rhythmic position only and have no duration. When adding vibrato bar indications to a range of selected items, they are input at the rhythmic position of the earliest selected item and have duration, which applies until the end of the selection. Vibrato bar indications with duration show a duration line, which is dashed by default.

By default, vibrato bar indications/lines are placed below the staff and only appear on notation staves, not tablature.

RELATED LINKS
Ornaments panel on page 330
Vibrato bar techniques on page 1021
Lengthening/Shortening items on page 410
Playing technique duration on page 1068

Inputting hammer-ons/pull-offs

You can input hammer-ons/pull-offs on any notes belonging to fretted instruments using the ornaments popover, both during note input and by adding them to existing notes. If you select multiple notes, Dorico Elements automatically inputs the appropriate slurs. You can also add tapping with hammer-ons/pull-offs to existing notes.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:
   - Start note input.

     TIP

     During note input, you can select additional notes before/after the last input note without deactivating the caret by pressing **Shift-Right Arrow**/**Shift-Left Arrow**.
   - Select the notes to which you want to add hammer-ons/pull-offs.

     NOTE

     - If you want to input hammer-ons, you must select at least two notes assigned to the same string with ascending pitch directions, such as C-D.
     - If you want to input pull-offs or tapping with pull-offs, you must select at least two notes assigned to the same string with descending pitch directions, such as D-C.
     - If you want to input *ligados*, you must select at least three notes assigned to the same string with alternating pitch directions, such as C-D-C for a hammer-on then pull-off or D-C-D for a pull-off then hammer-on.
2. Optional: If you want to input hammer-ons/pull-offs onto multiple fretted instrument staves at once, extend the caret to those staves.
3. Optional: During note input, input at least one note.
4. Open the ornaments popover in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Shift-O**.
   - In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers**, then **Ornaments**.
5. Enter the appropriate entry for the hammer-on/pull-off you want into the popover.

   For example, enter **ho** for a hammer-on or **hopo** for a hammer-on then pull-off.
6. Press **Return** to close the popover.

RESULT

The hammer-on/pull-off you specify is input on the selected notes. During note input, this is usually the last note you input.

If you selected multiple adjacent notes assigned to the same string, Dorico Elements automatically inputs slurs spanning the selected notes and centers hammer-on/pull-off indications on the slurs. For slurs with multiple hammer-on/pull-off indications, each indication is centered over the range of notes in the corresponding direction.

By default, hammer-ons/pull-offs appear on both notation staves and tablature and are placed above the staff.

TIP

You can also add hammer-ons/pull-offs to existing notes by selecting them, activating **Technique** in the **Guitar Techniques** group of the Properties panel, and selecting the appropriate indication from the menu. To show hammer-on/pull-off indications centered on slurs, select all notes except the first note under each slur.

RELATED LINKS

Ornaments popover on page 326
Hammer-ons and pull-offs on page 1023
Changing the staff-relative placement of guitar techniques on page 1026
Assigning notes to strings on page 947
Changing the allocated string for notes on tablature on page 1202
Deleting guitar techniques on page 1027

Inputting tapping

You can input right-hand and left-hand tapping indications on any notes belonging to fretted instruments using the ornaments popover, both during note input and by adding them to existing notes. You can also add tapping with hammer-ons/pull-offs to existing notes.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:
   - Start note input.

     TIP

     During note input, you can select additional notes before/after the last input note without deactivating the caret by pressing **Shift-Right Arrow**/**Shift-Left Arrow**.
   - Select the notes to which you want to add tapping indications.

     NOTE

     If you want to input tapping with pull-offs, you must select at least two notes assigned to the same string with descending pitch directions, such as D-C.
2. Optional: If you want to input tapping onto multiple fretted instrument staves at once, extend the caret to those staves.
3. Optional: During note input, input at least one note.
4. Open the ornaments popover in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Shift-O**.
   - In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers**, then **Ornaments**.

5. Enter the appropriate entry for the tapping indication you want into the popover.

   For example, enter **tap** for right-hand tapping or **lhtappull** for left-hand tapping with pull-off.

6. Press **Return** to close the popover.

RESULT

The tapping indication you specify is input on the selected notes. During note input, this is usually the last note you input.

By default, tapping indications appear on both notation staves and tablature and are placed above the staff.

TIP

You can also add tapping indications to existing notes by selecting them, activating **Technique** in the **Guitar Techniques** group of the Properties panel, and selecting the appropriate indication from the menu.

RELATED LINKS

Ornaments popover on page 326
Tapping on page 1022
Changing the staff-relative placement of guitar techniques on page 1026
Assigning notes to strings on page 947
Changing the allocated string for notes on tablature on page 1202
Extending the caret to multiple staves on page 209
Deleting guitar techniques on page 1027

Input methods for playing techniques, pedal lines, string indicators, and harp pedal diagrams

You can input playing techniques with the keyboard by using the playing techniques popover, and with the mouse by using the Playing Techniques panel. Pedal lines are considered playing techniques in Dorico Elements because both affect the sound that the instrument produces.

You can input string indicators outside the staff in the same ways, using either the playing techniques popover or Playing Techniques panel. However, you can only input harp pedal diagrams using the playing techniques popover.

You can input string indicators inside the staff using a property in the **String Indicators** group of the Properties panel.

RELATED LINKS

Playing techniques on page 1062
Pedal lines on page 1044
Harp pedaling on page 1036
String indicators on page 891
Inputting playing techniques with the popover on page 356
Inputting playing techniques with the panel on page 358
Inputting pedal lines with the popover on page 359
Inputting pedal lines with the panel on page 361
Inputting harp pedal diagrams on page 362
Inputting string indicators outside the staff with the popover on page 364
Inputting string indicators outside the staff with the panel on page 365
Inputting string indicators inside the staff on page 366

Playing techniques popover

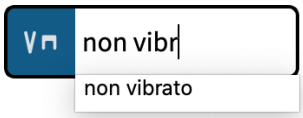
The following tables contain the entries for the playing techniques popover that you can use to input playing techniques, pedal lines, and retakes.

When you start entering a playing technique into the playing techniques popover, a menu appears that shows valid playing techniques containing the letters/words you enter. You can then select one of these playing techniques to input.

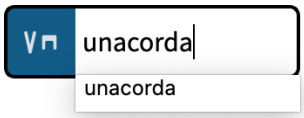
You can open the playing techniques popover in Write mode in any of the following ways when either an item is selected or the caret is active:

- Press **Shift-P**.
- In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers**, then **Playing Techniques**.
- Select an existing playing technique and press **Return**.
- Choose **Write** > **Create Playing Technique**.

The icon on the left-hand side of the popover matches the corresponding button in the Notations toolbox on the right of the window.



Playing techniques popover with an example entry for inputting a playing technique



Playing techniques popover with an example entry for inputting a pedal line

Playing Techniques button in the Notations toolbox

Playing techniques

Playing technique	Popover entry
Vibrato	**vibrato**
Senza vibrato	**senza vibrato**
Naturale (nat.)	**nat**
Con sord.	**con sord**
Strong air pressure	**strong air pressure**
Double-tongue	**double-tongue**
Down bow	**downbow**
Up bow	**upbow**
Sul ponticello	**sul pont**
Sul tasto	**sul tasto**

Playing technique	Popover entry
Poco sul tasto	**pst**
Pizzicato	**pizz**
Spiccato	**spicc**
Arco	**arco**
Tongue click (Stockhausen)	**tongue click**
Finger click (Stockhausen)	**finger click**
Vibraphone motor on	**motor on**
Vibraphone motor off	**motor off**
Open	**open**
Damp	**damp**
Damp (large)	**damp large**
Full barré	**full barre**
Half barré	**half barre**
Strum up	**strum up**
Strum down	**strum down**
Left hand	**lh**
Right hand	**rh**

This list is not comprehensive as there are many valid playing techniques. It is intended to illustrate how you can structure your entry to input different types of common playing techniques.

If you do not know the correct entry for a playing technique, start entering part of the playing technique and see if it becomes available in the popover menu.

NOTE

- To give playing techniques duration, add **->** at the end of your entry, such as **vibrato->**. During note input, the duration of the playing technique extends as you continue inputting notes or advance the caret. When adding playing techniques to existing music, they are added as a group.
- As playing techniques correspond to specific samples, they must be input as described or selected from the popover menu.

Pedal lines

Type of pedal line or retake	Popover entry
Sustain pedal line	**ped**
Retake in sustain pedal line	**^**, **notch**, or **retake**
Remove retake in sustain pedal line	**nonotch**
Stop sustain pedal line	*****
Sostenuto pedal line	**sost**
Stop *sostenuto* pedal line	**s***
Una corda pedal line	**unacorda**
Stop *una corda* pedal line	**u***

Harp pedaling

Example harp pedaling	Popover entry
D, C, B♭, E♭, F, G, A	**DCBbEbFGA**, **BbEb**, or **--^|^---**
D, C♯, B, E, F♯, G♯, A	**DC#BEF#G#A**, **C#F#G#**, or **-v-|-vv-**

TIP

The pipe character is optional.

String indicators outside the staff

Example string indicator	Popover entry
1	**string1**
3	**string3**

RELATED LINKS
Notations toolbox on page 192
Playing techniques on page 1062
Groups of playing techniques on page 1072
Pedal lines on page 1044
Sustain pedal retakes and pedal level changes on page 1045
Harp pedaling on page 1036
String indicators on page 891

Adding retakes with the popover on page 360
Inputting harp pedal diagrams on page 362
Inputting string indicators outside the staff with the popover on page 364

Playing Techniques panel

The Playing Techniques panel contains the different playing techniques available in Dorico Elements, divided into instrument families. It is located in the right zone in Write mode. Pedal lines are included in the **Keyboard** section.

- You can hide/show the Playing Techniques panel by clicking **Panels**, then **Playing Techniques** in the Notations toolbox.

  You can also hide/show the right zone by pressing **Ctrl/Cmd-9**.

The Playing Techniques panel contains the following sections:

Common

Contains commonly used playing techniques that also apply to multiple different instrument families, such as “mute” and “legato”.

Wind

Contains playing techniques typically only used for wind instruments, such as “key clicks” and “whistle tones”.

Brass

Contains playing techniques typically only used for brass instruments, such as “cup mute” and “stopped”.

Unpitched Percussion

Contains playing techniques typically only used for unpitched percussion instruments, such as “rim” and “scrape”.

Pitched Percussion

Contains playing techniques typically only used for pitched percussion instruments, such as “motor on” and “½ Ped.” for vibraphones.

Keyboard

Contains playing techniques typically only used for keyboard instruments, such as “Ped.” and different pedal depression levels.

Choral

Contains playing techniques typically only used for the voice, such as “mouth open” and “tongue click”.

Strings

Contains playing techniques typically only used for string instruments, such as “col legno battuto” and “down bow”.

Guitar

Contains playing techniques typically only used for guitars and fretted instruments, such as string indicators, “half barré”, and “strum up”.

TIP

You can hover your mouse pointer over the options in each section to show the name of each playing technique.

RELATED LINKS
Notations toolbox on page 192
Inputting string indicators outside the staff with the panel on page 365
Playing techniques on page 1062
Pedal lines on page 1044
String indicators on page 891

Inputting playing techniques with the popover

You can input playing techniques using the playing techniques popover, both during note input and by adding them to existing music.

NOTE

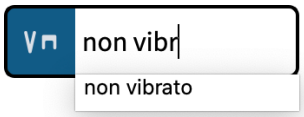
- You can only enter one playing technique into the popover during note input. You can enter two playing techniques when adding playing techniques to existing music if they are separated by **->**.
- If you want to input playing techniques in the middle of tie chains, start note input, then move the caret to the required rhythmic position.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:
   - Start note input.
   - Select an item on the staff and at the rhythmic position where you want to input a playing technique. If you want to input playing techniques with duration, select items on the staff that span that duration.
2. Optional: If you want to input playing techniques onto multiple staves at once, extend the caret to those staves.
3. Open the playing techniques popover in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Shift-P**.
   - In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers**, then **Playing Techniques**.
4. Enter the appropriate entry for the playing technique you want into the popover.

   For example, enter **pizz** or **non vibrato->**.

   When you start entering a playing technique into the playing techniques popover, a menu appears that shows valid playing techniques containing the letters/words you enter, which you can select. If you want the playing technique to have duration, you can add **->** at the end.

5. Press **Return** to close the popover.

   Open-ended playing techniques, such as **non vibrato->**, automatically extend during note input as you continue inputting notes, or if you advance the caret by pressing **Space** or clicking **Advance Caret** in the Keyboard, Fretboard, or Drum Pads panel toolbar.
6. Optional: During note input, stop open-ended playing techniques by opening the playing techniques popover again and entering one of the following entries:

- To end the current playing technique with another playing technique, enter that playing technique. For example, enter **vibrato**. This joins the current playing technique to the following one with a continuation line.
- To end the current playing technique with another open-ended playing technique, enter that playing technique followed by **->**. For example, enter **vibrato->**. This joins the current playing technique to the following one with a continuation line.
- To end the current playing technique without inputting another playing technique, enter **?** into the popover. This leaves the current playing technique with a duration line rather than a continuation line.

RESULT

The specified playing techniques are input. They are considered voice-specific by default, meaning they only apply to the voice indicated by the caret indicator during step input or the selected voice when adding playing techniques to existing notes. They are automatically placed above the staff for up-stem voices and below the staff for down-stem voices.

Adjoining playing techniques, or playing techniques that were input together or in sequence, are automatically grouped together, both during note input and when adding playing techniques to existing notes.

During note input, playing techniques are input at the caret position and extend automatically if you included an open-ended playing technique with duration.

When adding playing techniques to a single selected item, they are input at that rhythmic position only and have no duration. When adding playing techniques to a range of selected items, they are input at the rhythmic position of the earliest select item and have duration, which applies until the end of the selection. For playing techniques whose continuation type is set to show lines, the appropriate continuation line is shown.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

- You can move playing techniques within playing technique groups, lengthen/shorten playing techniques, and hide/show playing technique duration lines.
- You can enable independent voice playback for individual instruments to hear different playing techniques in different voices simultaneously.

RELATED LINKS

Groups of playing techniques on page 1072
Playing technique continuation lines on page 1067
Hiding/Showing playing technique duration lines on page 1070
Lengthening/Shortening items on page 410
Moving notes/items rhythmically on page 437
Caret on page 205
Moving the caret manually on page 210
Extending the caret to multiple staves on page 209
Enabling independent voice playback on page 506
Playback techniques on page 706

Inputting playing techniques with the panel

You can input playing techniques using the Playing Techniques panel, both during note input and by adding them to existing music.

NOTE

- You cannot input playing techniques with duration in sequence, which automatically groups them, when using the panel. If you want to input playing techniques with duration in sequence, you can use the popover.
- If you want to input playing techniques in the middle of tie chains, start note input, then move the caret to the required rhythmic position.
- These steps describe inputting with the default mouse input preference **Create item at selection**. If you want to input the same playing technique in multiple places, change your mouse input preference to **Load pointer with item** so that you do not have to reselect the playing technique for each note.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:
   - Start note input.
   - Select an item on the staff and at the rhythmic position where you want to input a playing technique. If you want to input playing techniques with duration, select items on the staff that span that duration.
2. In the Notations toolbox, click **Panels**, then **Playing Techniques** to show the Playing Techniques panel.
3. In the Playing Techniques panel, click the playing technique you want.

RESULT

The specified playing technique is input. It is considered voice-specific by default, meaning it only applies to the voice indicated by the caret indicator during step input or the selected voice when adding playing techniques to existing notes. It is automatically placed above the staff for up-stem voices and below the staff for down-stem voices.

During note input, playing techniques are input at the caret position, even if your preference is set to **Load pointer with item**.

When adding playing techniques to a single selected item, they are input at that rhythmic position only and have no duration. When adding playing techniques to a range of selected items, they are input at the rhythmic position of the earliest select item and have duration, which applies until the end of the selection. For playing techniques whose continuation type is set to show lines, the appropriate continuation line is shown.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

- If you want to show transition lines between playing techniques, you can group them together.
- You can enable independent voice playback for individual instruments to hear different playing techniques in different voices simultaneously.

RELATED LINKS

Notations toolbox on page 192
Changing your mouse input settings on page 203
Caret on page 205
Moving the caret manually on page 210

Lengthening/Shortening items on page 410
Grouping playing techniques together on page 1073
Enabling independent voice playback on page 506
Playback techniques on page 706

Inputting pedal lines with the popover

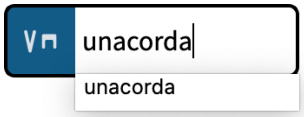
You can input pedal lines using the playing techniques popover, both during note input and by adding them to existing music. Because pedal lines extend automatically as you input notes during note input, you can also input retakes when you reach the appropriate rhythmic position.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:
   - Start note input.
   - On the staff where you want to input a pedal line, select items that span the required duration.
2. Open the playing techniques popover in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Shift-P**.
   - In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers**, then **Playing Techniques**.
3. Enter the appropriate entry for the pedal line you want into the popover.

   For example, enter **ped** for a sustain pedal line.

   When you start entering a pedal line into the playing techniques popover, a menu appears that shows valid pedal lines containing the letters/words you enter, which you can select.

4. Press **Return** to close the popover.

   The pedal line is input.
5. Optional: During note input, advance the caret and extend the pedal line in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Space**.
   - In the Keyboard, Fretboard, or Drum Pads panel toolbar, click **Advance Caret**.

   The pedal line also extends automatically as you continue inputting notes.
6. Optional: During note input, input retakes by opening the playing techniques popover again at the appropriate rhythmic position and entering **^** or **retake** into the popover.
7. Optional: During note input, stop the pedal line by opening the playing techniques popover again and enter the appropriate entry into the popover.

   For example, enter ***** to stop a sustain pedal line.
8. Press **Return** to close the popover.

RESULT

During note input, pedal lines start at the caret position, and end at the caret position.

When you add pedal lines to existing music, pedal lines are added across the selected items.

NOTE

Retakes only appear for sustain pedal lines with the **Line** continuation type.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

You can change the continuation type used for individual pedal lines; for example, to show a sign at the end.

RELATED LINKS

Sustain pedal retakes and pedal level changes on page 1045
Positions of pedal lines on page 1050
Changing the pedal line continuation type on page 1056
Inputting notes on page 211
Notations toolbox on page 192
Keyboard panel on page 197
Fretboard panel on page 199
Drum Pads panel on page 200

Adding retakes with the popover

You can add retakes to sustain pedal lines using the playing techniques popover, both during note input and by adding them to existing music.

NOTE

You cannot add retakes to *sostenuto* or *una corda* pedal lines. Retakes only appear for sustain pedal lines with the **Line** continuation type.

PREREQUISITE

You have input a sustain pedal line.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:
   - Start note input.
   - Select an item on each staff and at each rhythmic position where you want to input retakes.
2. Optional: If you want to input notes and retakes onto multiple staves with sustain pedal lines at once, extend the caret to those staves.
3. Open the playing techniques popover in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Shift-P**.
   - In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers**, then **Playing Techniques**.
4. Enter **^** or **retake** into the popover.
5. Press **Return** to close the popover.

RESULT

During note input, retakes are input at the caret position.

Outside of note input, retakes are input at each selected rhythmic position on each selected staff.

TIP

You can also input retakes by selecting notes within the ranges of sustain pedal lines and choosing **Edit** > **Notations** > **Pedal Lines** > **Add Retake**. You can also choose this option from the context menu.

RELATED LINKS
Sustain pedal retakes and pedal level changes on page 1045
Playing techniques popover on page 352
Changing the pedal line continuation type on page 1056
Moving the caret manually on page 210
Removing retakes and pedal level changes on page 1050

Inputting pedal lines with the panel

You can input pedal lines using the Playing Techniques panel.

NOTE

- When using the panel, you cannot input pedal lines during note input.
- These steps describe inputting with the default mouse input preference **Create item at selection**.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select items on the staff where you want to input a pedal line that span the required duration.
2. In the Notations toolbox, click **Panels**, then **Playing Techniques** to show the Playing Techniques panel.
3. In the Playing Techniques panel, expand the **Keyboard** section.
4. Click the pedal line you want.

RESULT

The pedal line is input across the selected range.

TIP

Alternatively, when nothing is selected, you can click the pedal line you want in the **Keyboard** section of the Playing Techniques panel, then click and drag in the music area to input a pedal line and extend it to the duration you want.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

- You can change the continuation type used for individual pedal lines; for example, to show a sign at the end.
- You can add retakes within the ranges of sustain pedal lines.

  NOTE

  Retakes only appear for sustain pedal lines with the **Line** continuation type.

RELATED LINKS
Playing Techniques panel on page 355

Sustain pedal retakes and pedal level changes on page 1045
Changing the pedal line continuation type on page 1056
Changing your mouse input settings on page 203

Adding retakes with the panel

You can add retakes to existing sustain pedal lines using the Playing Techniques panel.

NOTE

You cannot add retakes to *sostenuto* or *una corda* pedal lines. Retakes only appear for sustain pedal lines with the **Line** continuation type.

PREREQUISITE

You have input a sustain pedal line.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select an item on each staff and at each rhythmic position where you want to input retakes.
2. In the Notations toolbox, click **Panels**, then **Playing Techniques** to show the Playing Techniques panel.
3. In the Playing Techniques panel, expand the **Keyboard** section.
4. Click **Retake Pedal**.

RESULT

The retake is input at each selected rhythmic position on each selected staff.

TIP

- Alternatively, when nothing is selected in the music area, you can click **Retake Pedal** in the **Keyboard** section of the Playing Techniques panel, and then click at each rhythmic position where you want to input the retake.
- You can also input retakes by selecting notes within the ranges of sustain pedal lines and choosing **Edit** > **Notations** > **Pedal Lines** > **Add Retake**. You can also choose this option from the context menu.

RELATED LINKS

Sustain pedal retakes and pedal level changes on page 1045
Playing Techniques panel on page 355
Changing the pedal line continuation type on page 1056
Removing retakes and pedal level changes on page 1050

Inputting harp pedal diagrams

You can input harp pedal diagrams using the playing techniques popover, both during note input and by adding them to existing music.

If you do not input any harp pedaling, Dorico Elements assumes all harp pedals are in their natural setting, as they would be for C major. Any pitches that do not fit with the current harp pedaling, excluding the two lowest harp strings, appear red when colors for notes out of range are shown.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:
   - Start note input on a harp staff.
   - Select an item on a harp staff at the rhythmic position where you want to input a harp pedal diagram.
2. Open the playing techniques popover in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Shift-P**.
   - In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers**, then **Playing Techniques**.
3. Enter the appropriate entry for the harp pedals you want.

   For example, enter **C#F#G#** for C♯, F♯, and G♯ pedals, such as in A major, or **BbEb** for B♭ and E♭ pedals, such as in B♭ major.
4. Press **Return** to close the popover.

RESULT

The corresponding harp pedal diagram is input at the selected rhythmic position. Depending on your per-layout settings, it is either displayed as a diagram, using note names, or not shown and instead indicated by a signpost.

During note input, harp pedal diagrams are input at the caret position.

RELATED LINKS

Playing techniques popover on page 352
Harp pedaling on page 1036
Hiding/Showing harp pedaling in layouts on page 1038
Changing the appearance of harp pedal diagrams on page 1037
Hiding/Showing colors for notes out of range on page 951

Calculating harp pedal diagrams based on existing music

You can automatically calculate suitable harp pedal diagrams based on the notes you have already input, either from a single point onwards or within a selected region.

If you do not input any harp pedaling, Dorico Elements assumes all harp pedals are in their natural setting, as they would be for C major. Any pitches that do not fit with the current harp pedaling, excluding the two lowest harp strings, appear red when colors for notes out of range are shown.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the region you want to use to calculate harp pedaling in one of the following ways:
   - Select an existing single note from which you want to calculate harp pedaling.
   - Select a range of notes for which you want to calculate harp pedaling.

   NOTE

   Dorico Elements ignores the lowest two harp strings, C and D, when calculating harp pedals.
2. Choose **Write** > **Calculate Harp Pedals**.

RESULT

A harp pedal diagram is input at the start of your selection. Depending on your per-layout settings, it is either displayed as a diagram, using note names, or not shown and instead indicated by a signpost.

RELATED LINKS

Generating chord symbols from notes on page 311

Inputting string indicators outside the staff with the popover

You can input string indicators outside the staff using the playing techniques popover, both during note input and by adding them to existing music.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:
   - Start note input.
   - Select an item on the staff and at the rhythmic position where you want to input a string indicator outside the staff. If you want to input a string indicator with a duration line, select items on the staff that span that duration.
2. Optional: If you want to input string indicators onto multiple staves at once, extend the caret to those staves.
3. Open the playing techniques popover in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Shift-P**.
   - In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers**, then **Playing Techniques**.
4. Enter the appropriate entry for the string indicator you want into the popover.

   For example, enter **string1** for just a string 1 indicator or **string3->** for a string 3 indicator with duration.
5. Press **Return** to close the popover.

   Open-ended string indicators, such as **string3->**, automatically extend during note input as you continue inputting notes, or if you advance the caret by pressing **Space** or clicking **Advance Caret** in the Keyboard, Fretboard, or Drum Pads panel toolbar.
6. Optional: During note input, stop open-ended string indicators by opening the playing techniques popover again and entering **?** into the popover.

   This leaves the current string indicator with a duration line. You can also enter another string indicator into the popover, but this joins the current string indicator to the following one with a continuation line rather than a duration line, which is a less common notation.

RESULT

The specified string indicators are input. They are considered voice-specific by default, meaning they only apply to the voice indicated by the caret indicator during step input or the selected voice when adding string indicators to existing notes. They are automatically placed above the staff for up-stem voices and below the staff for down-stem voices.

During note input, string indicators are input at the caret position, and extend automatically if you included an open-ended string indicator with duration.

When adding string indicators to a single existing note, they are added to the selected note only and have no duration. When adding string indicators to a range of notes, they are added to the first note in the selection and have duration, which applies until the end of the selection.

By default, string indicators have dashed duration lines with a hook cap at the end.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

- If you input string indicators without duration but want to show dashed duration lines, you can add them.
- You can change the staff-relative placement of string indicators.

RELATED LINKS

Playing techniques popover on page 352
String indicators on page 891
Lengthening/Shortening items on page 410
Extending the caret to multiple staves on page 209
Changing the staff-relative placement of items on page 414
Notations toolbox on page 192
Keyboard panel on page 197
Fretboard panel on page 199
Drum Pads panel on page 200

Inputting string indicators outside the staff with the panel

You can input string indicators outside the staff using the Playing Techniques panel, both during note input and by adding them to existing music.

NOTE

- You cannot input string indicators with duration during note input when using the panel. You can only do so when using the popover.
- These steps describe inputting with the default mouse input preference **Create item at selection**. If you want to input the same string indicator in multiple places, change your mouse input preference to **Load pointer with item** so that you do not have to reselect the string indicator for each note.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:
   - Start note input.
   - Select an item on the staff and at the rhythmic position where you want to input a string indicator outside the staff. If you want to input a string indicator with a duration line, select items on the staff that span that duration.
2. In the Notations toolbox, click **Panels**, then **Playing Techniques** to show the Playing Techniques panel.
3. In the Playing Techniques panel, expand the **Guitar** section.
4. Click the string indicator you want.

RESULT

The specified string indicator is input. It is considered voice-specific by default, meaning it only applies to the voice indicated by the caret indicator during step input or the selected voice when adding string indicators to existing notes. It is automatically placed above the staff for up-stem voices and below the staff for down-stem voices.

During note input, string indicators are input at the caret position, even if your preference is set to **Load pointer with item**.

When adding string indicators to a single existing note, they are added to the selected note only and have no duration. When adding string indicators to a range of notes, they are added to the first note in the selection and have duration, which applies until the end of the selection.

By default, string indicators have dashed duration lines with a hook cap at the end.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

- If you input string indicators without duration but want to show dashed duration lines, you can add them.
- You can change the staff-relative placement of string indicators.

RELATED LINKS
Playing Techniques panel on page 355
Changing your mouse input settings on page 203

Inputting string indicators inside the staff

You can show a string indicator inside the staff for each fretted instrument note. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains. Dorico Elements automatically detects a string that each pitch could be played on, but you can also specify the string manually.

NOTE

These steps only apply to notes belonging to fretted instruments.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the notes belonging to fretted instruments beside which you want to show string indicators. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Show** in the **String Indicators** group.

RESULT

String indicators are shown in the staff beside each selected note. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

Unless you have specified a string for each note, the string number shown in the string indicators is calculated automatically. String indicators inside the staff for open strings appear as a bold number zero without a circle enclosure.

By default, string indicators appear on the left of noteheads without left-hand fingerings and on the right of noteheads with left-hand fingerings.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

- You can specify the string on which notes are played, which affects the number shown in their corresponding string indicators.
- You can change the notehead-relative position of string indicators.

RELATED LINKS
String indicators on page 891

Fingerings for fretted instruments on page 880
Fretted instrument tuning on page 138
Assigning notes to strings on page 947
Changing the notehead-relative position of string indicators on page 893
Changing the property scope on page 617
Copying property settings to other layouts/frame chains on page 599

Input methods for lines

You can input both horizontal and vertical lines by using the Lines panel. There is no popover for lines.

TIP

If you want lines to represent specific notations that affect playback if applicable, you can instead input these notations directly. For example, dynamics, arpeggios, glissandi, and trills all have dedicated features in Dorico Elements.

RELATED LINKS

Lines on page 1075
Input methods for dynamics on page 296
Input methods for ornaments, arpeggio signs, glissando lines, and jazz articulations on page 325
Input methods for playing techniques, pedal lines, string indicators, and harp pedal diagrams on page 351
Input methods for clefs and octave lines on page 314
Input methods for tempo marks on page 280
Input methods for repeats and tremolos on page 386

Lines panel

The Lines panel contains the different types of lines available in Dorico Elements. It is located in the right zone in Write mode.

- You can hide/show the Lines panel by clicking **Panels**, then **Lines** in the Notations toolbox.

  You can also hide/show the right zone by pressing **Ctrl/Cmd-9**.

The Lines panel contains the following sections:

Horizontal

Contains the different horizontal lines available. The options at the top of the section allow you to determine the attachment type for the start and end of horizontal lines you subsequently input. Horizontal lines can be attached to noteheads, barlines, or rhythmic positions, and the start and end can have different attachment types.

Vertical

Contains the different vertical lines available.

RELATED LINKS

Notations toolbox on page 192
Lines on page 1075
Line components on page 1077

Inputting horizontal lines

You can input horizontal lines between existing notes or spanning a specified duration using the Lines panel. Horizontal lines can be attached to noteheads, barlines, or rhythmic positions, and can have different attachment types at their start and end.

You can also input barline-/rhythmic position-attached lines that apply to all staves.

NOTE

- You cannot change the attachment type of horizontal lines after they have been input.
- If you want to input notehead-attached horizontal lines to represent glissandi, you can instead input glissando lines directly.
- These steps describe inputting with the default mouse input preference **Create item at selection**.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select one of the following:
   - If you want to input a notehead-attached line, select the notes you want to join with a line.

     TIP

     The notes can be in different voices, on different staves, and belong to any instruments held by the same player.

   - If you want to input a barline-/rhythmic position-attached line, select items that span the required duration of the line.
   - If you want to input a horizontal line that is attached to noteheads at one end but barlines/rhythmic positions at the other end, select the required note and any item at the required rhythmic position of the other end.
2. In the Notations toolbox, click **Panels**, then **Lines** to show the Lines panel.
3. In the **Horizontal** section, choose one of the following options for both **Start** and **End**:
   - **Attach to notehead**
   - **Attach to barline (where available)**
   - **Attach to rhythmic position**
4. Input a line with the specified attachments in one of the following ways:
   - To input a notehead-attached line or barline-/rhythmic position-attached line on the selected staff only, click it in the **Horizontal** section.
   - To input a barline-/rhythmic position-attached line that applies to all staves, **Alt/Opt**-click it in the **Horizontal** section.

RESULT

A horizontal line with the specified attachments is input. They are positioned according to their attachment types and their rhythmic positions.

Horizontal lines that apply to all staves are categorized as system objects. Therefore, they follow your per-layout settings for the visibility and positioning of system objects.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

- You can change the placement and staff position of barline-/rhythmic position-attached lines.
- You can add text to lines.

RELATED LINKS

Notations toolbox on page 192
Lines on page 1075
Positions of lines on page 1078
Length of lines on page 1082
System objects on page 1196
Changing the positions of system objects on page 1197
Adding text to lines on page 1088
Changing the placement of horizontal lines on page 1081
Inputting glissando lines with the popover on page 334
Mouse input settings on page 202

Inputting vertical lines

You can input vertical lines on existing notes using the Lines panel, including across notes in multiple voices and on different staves that belong to the same instrument, such as piano or harp.

NOTE

- If you want to input vertical lines to represent arpeggios, you can instead input arpeggio signs directly.
- You can only input one vertical line at a time.
- These steps describe inputting with the default mouse input preference **Create item at selection**. You cannot create cross-staff and cross-voice vertical lines if your preference is set to **Load pointer with item**.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select at least one note at the same rhythmic position in each voice to which you want to add a vertical line.

   NOTE

   - For instruments with multiple staves, such as piano and harp, you can select existing notes on multiple staves to create cross-staff vertical lines. However, you cannot create cross-staff vertical lines between different instruments, even if they are held by the same player.
   - Vertical lines are added to all notes in the selected voices at the selected rhythmic position.

2. In the Notations toolbox, click **Panels**, then **Lines** to show the Lines panel.
3. In the **Vertical** section, click the line you want.

RESULT

The vertical line specified is input to the left of the selected notes. Its length is adjusted automatically so that it spans the range of all notes in the selected voices/staves at that rhythmic position.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

- You can change the order of lines when multiple exist at the same rhythmic position and show vertical lines on the right of notes.
- You can lengthen/shorten vertical lines.
- You can add text to lines.

RELATED LINKS

Notations toolbox on page 192
Lines on page 1075
Length of lines on page 1082
Lengthening/Shortening vertical lines on page 1084
Adding text to lines on page 1088
Showing vertical lines on the right/left of notes on page 1079
Changing the horizontal order of vertical lines on page 1079
Inputting arpeggio signs with the popover on page 332
Changing your mouse input settings on page 203

Inputting text items

You can input text at specific rhythmic positions in the score using text items. You can input staff-attached text for single staves or input system-attached text that applies to all staves and appears in all applicable layouts.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:
   - Start note input.
   - Select an item on the staff and at the rhythmic position where you want to input text.
2. Open the text editor in any of the following ways:
   - To input staff-attached text, press **Shift-X** or click **Popovers**, then **Text** in the Notations toolbox.
   - To input staff-attached text with a specific paragraph style, choose **Write** > **Create Text** > **[Paragraph style]**.
   - To input system-attached text, press **Shift-Alt/Opt-X**.
   - To input system-attached text with a specific paragraph style, choose **Write** > **Create System Text** > **[Paragraph style]**.
3. Enter the text you want.
   - To insert a music symbol, right-click in the text item and choose **Insert Music Text** from the context menu to open the **Insert Music Text** dialog. Select the music symbol you want to insert, then click **OK**.
   - To insert a line break, press **Return**.
4. Optional: Format the text using the text editor options.
5. Press **Esc** or **Ctrl/Cmd** - **Return** to close the text editor.

RESULT

During note input, the text you entered into the text editor is input at the caret position. When adding text to existing music, it is input at the position of the earliest selected item.

If you did not change or specify the paragraph style, the text item uses the **Default Text** paragraph style.

Text items are automatically placed above the staves to which they apply and follow the default settings for the vertical position of text.

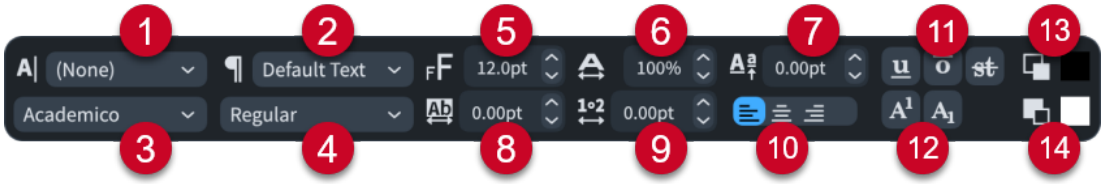
NOTE

- In Dorico Elements, system-attached text is categorized as a system object. Therefore, system-attached text follows your per-layout settings for the visibility and positioning of system objects.
- You can assign key commands for inputting text with specific paragraph styles, for both **Create Text** and **Create System Text**, on the **Key Commands** page in **Preferences**.

RELATED LINKS
Notations toolbox on page 192
Changing the staff-relative placement of items on page 414
Types of text on page 1221
Text items on page 1220
System objects on page 1196
Key Commands page in the Preferences dialog on page 59

Text editor options in Write mode

The text editor allows you to add and format text. In Write mode, it opens when you add or edit text items.



The text editor provides the following options:

1 **Character Style**

Allows you to change the appearance of selected text within paragraphs. This overrides the paragraph style applied to the corresponding paragraph.

2 **Paragraph Style**

Allows you to change the paragraph style applied to the whole text item. Depending on the paragraph style, this can change the appearance, formatting, and alignment of the text.

3 **Font**

Allows you to change the font family of selected text.

4 **Font Style**

Allows you to change the font style of selected text.

NOTE

- Depending on the font selected, some font styles might not be available.
- You can also change the font style using the following standard key commands:
  - **Ctrl/Cmd-B** for bold
  - **Ctrl/Cmd-I** for italic

5 **Font Size**

Allows you to change the size of selected text.

TIP

You can also change the font size using the following key commands:

- **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-.** to increase the font size
- **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-,** to decrease the font size

6 **Font Stretch**

Allows you to make selected text wider or narrower.

7 **Baseline Shift**

Allows you to shift the baseline of selected text gradually up or down.

8 **Letter Spacing**

Allows you to increase/decrease the space between the characters of selected text.

9 **Word Spacing**

Allows you to increase/decrease the space between the words of selected text.

10 **Alignment**

Allows you to choose one of the following alignments for the text item relative to its rhythmic position:

- **Align Left**
- **Align Center**
- **Align Right**

11 **Line Types**

Allows you to show any of the following types of lines, in any combination, on selected text:

- **Underline**
- **Overline**
- **Strikethrough**

TIP

You can also make selected text underlined by pressing **Ctrl/Cmd-U**.

12 **Script Types**

Allows you to position selected text in one of the following positions relative to the text on the baseline:

- **Superscript**
- **Subscript**

13 **Foreground Color**

Allows you to change the color of selected text.

14 **Background Color**

Allows you to change the background color of selected text.

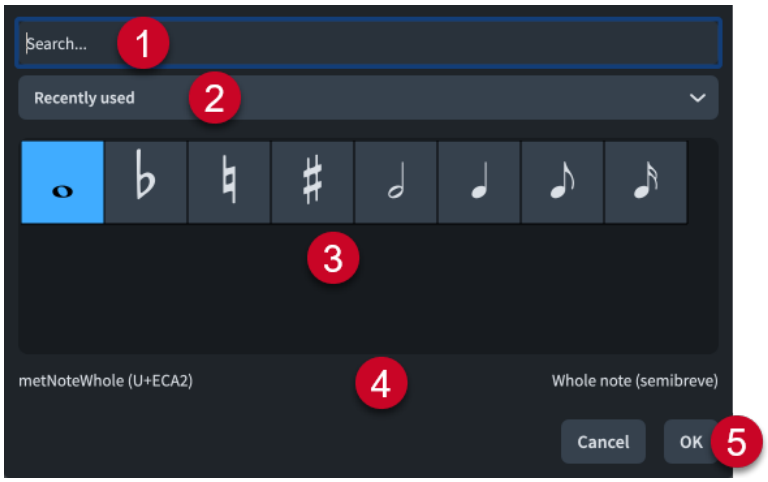
RELATED LINKS

Types of text on page 1221
Text items on page 1220
Missing Fonts dialog on page 74

Insert Music Text dialog

The **Insert Music Text** dialog allows you to add music symbols, such as accidentals and note symbols, to text items.

- You can open the **Insert Music Text** dialog when inputting or editing text in a text item by right-clicking and choosing **Insert Music Text** from the context menu.



The **Insert Music Text** dialog comprises the following:

1 **Search field**

Allows you to search for music symbols by their SMuFL name. When you start entering text, a menu appears that shows valid music symbols containing the letters/words you enter, which you can select.

2 **Range menu**

Allows you to select which SMuFL glyph range is available in the music symbol selector. By default, **Recently used** is selected, which contains common accidentals and note symbols in addition to music symbols you have used in recent projects.

3 **Music symbol selector**

Contains the available music symbols in the selected range or that match your entry.

4 **Name**

Displays the SMuFL name and description, where available, of the selected music symbol.

5 **OK**

Inserts the selected music symbol at the cursor position with the **Music Text** character style applied to them automatically.

You can also insert music symbols by pressing **Return**.

Editing text in text items

You can edit the text shown in text items; for example, to replace individual words or to change their formatting.

PROCEDURE

1. Open the text editor for an existing text item in any of the following ways:
   - Select the text item and press **Return**.
   - Double-click the text item.
2. Edit the text in the text item.

For example, you can format the text using the text editor options.

3. Press **Esc** or **Ctrl/Cmd**-**Return** to close the text editor.

Inputting lyrics

You can input lyrics by entering text into the lyrics popover, and you can advance the lyrics popover to the next note on the staff without closing and reopening it for every note.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the note on the staff from which you want to start inputting lyrics.
2. Open the lyrics popover in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Shift-L**.
   - In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers**, then **Lyrics**.
3. Optional: Change the type of lyric in one of the following ways:
   - To change the lyric line number, press **Down Arrow**.
   - To input lyrics above the staff, press **Shift**-**Up Arrow**.
   - To input chorus lines, press **Up Arrow**.
   - To input lyric line translations, press **Alt/Opt**-**Down Arrow**.
4. Enter the word or syllable you want to add to the selected note into the popover.
   - To enter multiple words on a single note, press **Shift-Alt/Opt-Space**.
   - To include a hyphen within a single word or syllable, press **Alt/Opt--** (hyphen).
   - To include an elision in a lyric, press **_** (underscore).
5. Advance the popover to the next note in one of the following ways:
   - If you entered a complete word, or the final syllable in a multi-syllabic word, press **Space**.
   - If you entered one syllable of a multi-syllabic word that is not the final syllable, press **-** (hyphen).
   - If you do not want the syllable to be followed by an extension line or hyphen, press **Right Arrow**.

   TIP

   For lyrics sung over multiple notes, you can press these key commands multiple times until the lyrics popover reaches the note where you want to input the next lyric.
6. Continue entering words and syllables into the popover for the rest of the notes to which you want to add lyrics.
7. Press **Return** or **Esc** to close the popover.

   The popover closes automatically when you reach the last note on the staff.

RESULT

The text you entered into the popover is input as lyrics of the type indicated by the icon on the left-hand side of the popover.

When you advance the popover to the next note by pressing **-**, a hyphen appears after the last entered lyric. This is used for multi-syllabic words across multiple notes.

When you advance the popover by pressing **Space**, a gap appears after the last entered lyric. This is used for single-syllable words or for the final syllable in multi-syllabic words.

TIP

- You can later change whether a gap or a hyphen appears between lyrics by changing their syllable type.
- You can also input lyrics by copying and pasting them; for example, from an external text editor.

RELATED LINKS
Notations toolbox on page 192
Copying and pasting lyrics on page 922
Lyrics on page 919
Navigation during lyric input on page 376
Types of lyrics on page 919
Types of syllables in lyrics on page 921
Lyric line numbers on page 935
Lyric hyphens and lyric extender lines on page 934
Elision slurs on page 938
Lyric text editing on page 930

Lyrics popover

You can input lyrics, including chorus lines and lyric line translations, using the lyrics popover. You can use key commands to change the type of lyric being input at any time.

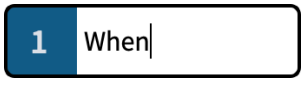
You can open the lyrics popover in Write mode in any of the following ways when either an item is selected or the caret is active:

- Press **Shift-L**.
- In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers**, then **Lyrics**.
- Select an existing lyric and press **Return**.
- Choose **Write** > **Create Lyrics**.

Lyric lines

The popover automatically opens ready to input lyrics into Line 1, except if you are changing an existing lyric.

The number shown on the left-hand side of the lyrics popover indicates the lyric line into which the lyric is input.



The lyrics popover with an example entry for Line 1

You can change the lyric line number by pressing **Up Arrow** and **Down Arrow** when the lyrics popover is open.

The lyrics popover with an example entry for Line 2

Lyric lines above the staff

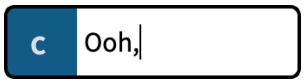
You can input lyrics into lines above the staff by pressing **Shift**-**Up Arrow** when the lyrics popover is open.

You can then press **Up Arrow** and **Down Arrow** to change the lyric line number above the staff.

Chorus lines

You can input chorus lines by pressing **Up Arrow** when the lyrics popover is open. You can do this when inputting lyrics below the staff and above the staff.

A **c**, for "chorus lines", is shown on the left-hand side of the popover.

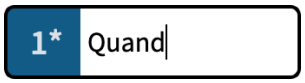


The lyrics popover with an example entry for a chorus line

Lyric line translations

You can input lyric line translations by pressing **Alt/Opt**-**Down Arrow** when the lyrics popover is open.

An asterisk (*****) is shown beside the lyric line number for which you are inputting a lyric line translation on the left-hand side of the popover.



The lyrics popover with an example entry for a lyric line translation

Navigation during lyric input

You can move the lyrics popover to input new lyrics and edit existing lyrics without having to close and reopen the lyrics popover.

Popover navigation	Key command
Finish the current word and advance the popover to the next note or chord.	**Space**
Finish the current syllable and advance the popover to the next note or chord.	**-** (hyphen)
Advance the popover to the next note without showing an extension line or hyphen.	**Right Arrow**
Move the cursor to the next/previous letter. If the next/previous letter is in another lyric, the popover advances to that lyric.	**Right Arrow** / **Left Arrow**
Move the popover forwards/backwards from syllable to syllable within lines of lyrics.	**Alt/Opt-Right Arrow** / **Alt/Opt-Left Arrow**
Add spaces within a word or syllable without advancing the popover.	**Shift-Alt/Opt-Space**
Add a hyphen within a single word or syllable without advancing the popover.	**Alt/Opt--** (hyphen)
Add an elision slur within a word or syllable.	**_** (underscore)

Inputting figured bass

You can input figured bass using the figured bass popover, both for all instruments or only for individual instruments. You can also open the figured bass popover during note input; however, inputting a figure stops note input.

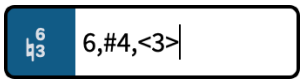
PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select an item on the staff and at the rhythmic position where you want to start inputting figured bass.
2. Open the figured bass popover in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Shift-G**.
   - In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers**, then **Figured Bass**.

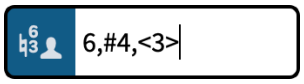
   NOTE

   If you selected an item on a staff that has local figures at earlier rhythmic positions, the figured bass popover is automatically set to input local figures when it opens.
3. Optional: Change the type of figure you want to enter in one of the following ways:
   - To input local figures, press **Alt/Opt-L**.
   - To input global figures, press **Alt/Opt-G**.

   The popover icon updates to show the current type.



Figured bass popover when inputting a global figure



Figured bass popover when inputting a local figure

4. Enter the figure you want into the figured bass popover.

   For example, enter **4->3d=4r=2** for a 4-3 suspension that lasts a whole note, with the resolution to the third after a half note. For bracketed figures, include parentheses around the required figures or accidentals, such as **(#)64(3)**.

   If you want Dorico Elements to follow your entry exactly, include **O**, **o**, or **!** at the start of your entry. For example, to force Dorico Elements to show 5,3 figures.
5. Optional: Press **Space** to advance the popover to the next beat according to the prevailing time signature.

   TIP

   You can also navigate the popover forwards and backwards by different amounts.
6. Optional: To input an individual local figure when the popover is set to global, and vice versa, press **Alt/Opt-Return** to input the figure.
7. Press **Return** to close the popover.

RESULT

The figured bass specified is input. If you selected an item belonging to an instrument that was not already set to show figured bass in the current layout, its player is automatically updated to show them. If Dorico Elements cannot identify the bass note at the position of a figure, such as if you input a figure on a rest, it appears as a signpost.

Dorico Elements calculates and saves the pitches implied by the figures you enter in relation to the lowest note at that rhythmic position. This semantic understanding of the harmony implied by figures allows Dorico Elements to update the displayed figures on different staves and if you transpose or change the pitch of notes.

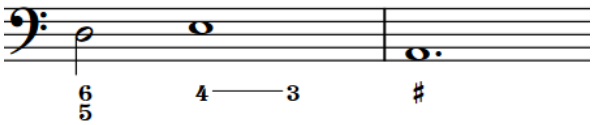
Global figures apply to all instruments in the project and appear on all staves whose players are set to show figured bass. Local figures only apply to the selected instrument, and by default refer to its lowest staff. Local figures always appear, even if global figures exist at the same rhythmic positions.

NOTE

- Unless you included an entry for **Follow input literally** at the start of your popover entry, the appearance of the resulting figure is determined by the default settings in Dorico Elements
- You can move figures graphically in Engrave mode, including changing the graphical length of hold lines.

EXAMPLE

Entering **4->3d=4r=2** into the figured bass popover produces a 4-3 suspension that lasts a whole note, with the resolution to the third after a half note.



AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

- You can hide/show figured bass above specific players in each layout independently.
- You can simplify compound figures; that is, figures 9 and above.
- You can show figures on individual rests.

RELATED LINKS

Figured bass on page 858
Figured bass hold lines on page 861
Navigation during figured bass input on page 381
Hiding/Showing figured bass in layouts on page 859
Hiding/Showing figured bass hold/suspension lines on page 862
Lengthening/Shortening figured bass hold lines on page 863
Moving figured bass resolutions on page 867
Showing single brackets on figured bass on page 861
Showing brackets on figured bass hold lines on page 864
Simplifying figured bass compound intervals on page 869
Showing figured bass on rests on page 860
Fixing the current appearance of figured bass on page 869

Figured bass popover

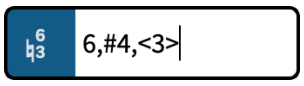
The following tables contain examples of what you can enter into the figured bass popover to input the different possible figured bass figures, including alterations and suspensions.

You can open the figured bass popover in Write mode in any of the following ways when either a note is selected or the caret is active:

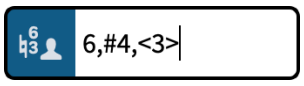
- Press **Shift-G**.

- In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers**, then **Figured Bass**.
- Choose **Write** > **Create Figured Bass**.

When inputting global figured bass, the icon on the left-hand side of the popover matches the corresponding button in the Notations toolbox. When inputting local figured bass, the icon on the left-hand side of the popover appears smaller and includes the icon for a single player.



Figured bass popover with an example entry for a global figure



Figured bass popover with an example entry for a local figure

Figured Bass button in the Notations toolbox

Figures and suspensions

Type of figure	Example popover entry
Figures (1-19)	**1**, **2**, **3**, and so on, up to **19**
Bracketed figures or accidentals	**(#643)**, **#64(3)**, **(#)643**, and so on
Figures determined by chord symbols Dorico Elements automatically converts chord symbols, as you would enter into the chord symbols popover, into correct figured bass.	**Em7**, **Amaj7**, or **G/B**, and so on
tasto solo	**ts** or **tasto**
Hold duration	**d=2** (number of quarter notes) or **d=1/2n** (fraction of bass note duration)
Multiple figures TIP You can separate figures with commas to remove ambiguity.	**6#42** or **6,#4,2**
Hide figures	**<3>** or **{3}**
Suspensions	**4->3**, **4_3**, or **4~3**
Suspension duration; that is, the duration between suspension and resolution figures	**r=2** (number of quarter notes) or **r=1/2n** (fraction of bass note duration)
Hold and suspension durations both specified For example, a 4-3 suspension that lasts a whole note, with the resolution to the third after a half note.	**4->3d=4r=2** or **4->3d=1nr=1/2n**

Type of figure	Example popover entry
Follow Engraving Options for this figure only NOTE Must be at the start of the popover entry.	**R**, **r**, **V**, **v**, or **?**
Follow input literally for this figure only NOTE Must be at the start of the popover entry.	**O**, **o**, or **!**

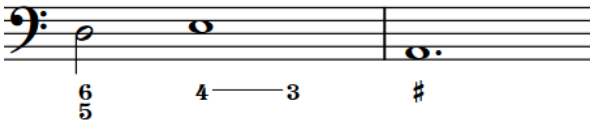
This list is not comprehensive. It is intended to illustrate how you can structure your entry to input different figures.

NOTE

Unless you include an entry for **Follow input literally** at the start of your popover entry, the appearance of resulting figures is determined by Dorico Elements's default settings.

EXAMPLE

Entering **4->3d=4r=2** into the figured bass popover produces a 4-3 suspension that lasts a whole note, with the resolution to the third after a half note.



Accidentals and alterations

Type of accidental/alteration	Popover entry
Sharp TIP For raised thirds, you can enter just without the number.	**#** or **s**
Flat	**b** or **f**
Natural	**N** or **n**
Double sharp	**x**, **##**, or **ds**
Triple sharp	**x#**, **#x**, **###**, or **ts**

Type of accidental/alteration	Popover entry
Double flat	**bb** or **db**
Triple flat	**bbb** or **tb**
Raise figure by a half-step (semitone)	**+**
Lower figure by a half-step (semitone)	**-**
Diminished figure	**d**
Unaltered figure	**u**

RELATED LINKS
Notations toolbox on page 192
Figured bass on page 858
Figured bass hold lines on page 861
Hiding/Showing figured bass hold/suspension lines on page 862
Lengthening/Shortening figured bass hold lines on page 863
Showing brackets on figured bass hold lines on page 864
Showing single brackets on figured bass on page 861
Chord symbols popover on page 305

Navigation during figured bass input

You can move the figured bass popover manually by different amounts to input figured bass figures at other positions without closing and reopening the popover each time.

Popover navigation	Key command
Advance the popover to the next beat, according to the prevailing time signature.	**Space**
Move the popover back to the previous beat, according to the prevailing time signature.	**Shift-Space**
Advance the popover to the start of the next bar.	**Tab**
Move the popover back to the start of the previous bar.	**Shift-Tab**
Move the cursor and popover to one of the following positions, whichever is closest: • Next/Previous note or rest • Next/Previous rhythmic grid position • Next/Previous character in existing figure's entry	**Right Arrow** / **Left Arrow**

Popover navigation	Key command
Move the popover to the next/previous figure.	**Ctrl/Cmd-Right Arrow** / **Ctrl/Cmd-Left Arrow**

RELATED LINKS
Key Commands page in the Preferences dialog on page 59

Inputting rehearsal marks

You can input rehearsal marks with the mouse and the keyboard. You can input rehearsal marks during note input and later by adding them to existing music.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:
   - Start note input.
   - Select an item at the rhythmic position where you want to input a rehearsal mark. For example, a barline or a note.

     NOTE

     You can only input one rehearsal mark at a time, even if multiple items are selected.
2. Input a rehearsal mark in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Shift-A**.
   - In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers**, then **Rehearsal Marks**.

RESULT

A rehearsal mark is input at the selected barline, or at the rhythmic position of other selected items.

The order of rehearsal marks is updated automatically, meaning you can input them in any order, including before and between existing rehearsal marks.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

If you want to change the letter/number displayed in the rehearsal mark, you can change its index and/or sequence type.

RELATED LINKS
Notations toolbox on page 192
Rehearsal marks on page 1095
Changing the index of rehearsal marks on page 1096
Changing the rehearsal mark sequence type on page 1097
Adding prefixes/suffixes to rehearsal marks on page 1098
Going to rehearsal marks on page 419
Mouse input settings on page 202

Inputting markers/timecodes

You can input markers at specific positions in time. In Dorico Elements, timecodes are automatically shown alongside markers.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, move the playhead to the time position where you want to input a marker.
2. Press **Shift-Alt/Opt-M** to open the **Add Marker** dialog.
3. Enter the marker text you want into the **Text** field.
4. Optional: Change the timecode in the **Timecode** field.
5. Click **OK** to input the marker and close the dialog.

RESULT

A marker is input at the timecode position set in the **Add Marker** dialog, which by default is the position of the playhead. It shows the text you entered, or the default text “Marker” if you did not change the marker text, and a timecode reflecting its position.

TIP

You can also input markers by clicking **Add Marker** in the **Markers** section of the Video panel, or by using the Markers track in Play mode.

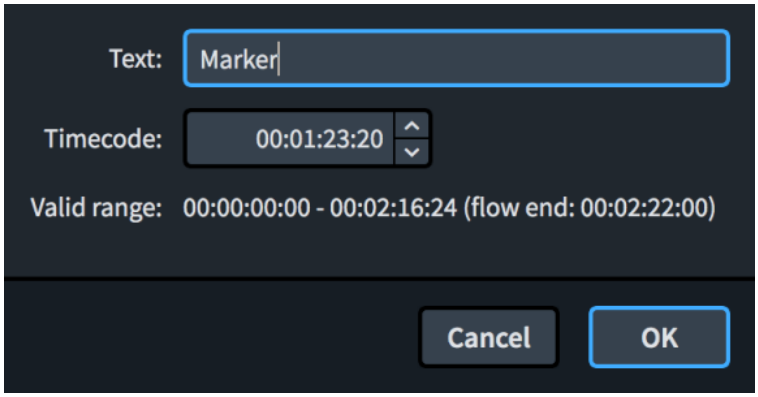
RELATED LINKS

Markers on page 1099
Timecodes on page 1103
Moving the playhead on page 502
Editing marker text on page 1101
Changing the timecodes of markers on page 1102
Video panel on page 384
Markers track on page 497

Add Marker dialog

The **Add Marker** dialog allows you to input markers with custom text at specific timecodes.

- The **Add Marker** dialog opens automatically when you input markers in Write mode, either by pressing **Shift-Alt/Opt-M** or by clicking **Add Marker** in the **Markers** section of the Video panel.



The **Add Marker** dialog contains the following options:

Text

Allows you to enter custom text that is shown in the marker.

Timecode

Allows you to specify the timecode at which you want to input the marker. For example, if you already know the timecodes for each marker, you can enter them directly rather than positioning the playhead at the position of each marker.

Valid range

Displays the timecode range of the flow.

Video panel

The Video panel in Write mode allows you to access the **Video Properties** dialog, and to input and edit markers and timecodes. You can also define markers as important and calculate suitable tempos for them. It is located in the right zone in Write mode.

- You can hide/show the Video panel by clicking **Panels**, then **Video** in the Notations toolbox.

  You can also hide/show the right zone by pressing **Ctrl/Cmd-9**.

In the **Video** section of the Video panel, you can click **Properties** to open the **Video Properties** dialog.

The **Markers** section of the Video panel contains a table of markers, divided into the following columns:

Timecode

Shows the timecode of the marker. You can edit the timecode by double-clicking in the field.

Text

Shows the text of the marker. You can edit the text by double-clicking in the field.

Imp.

Stands for “important”. Allows you to define markers as important by activating their checkbox in this column.

When markers are defined as important, their entry uses a bold font in the table and they are considered when finding a suitable tempo in the **Find Tempo** dialog.

The action bar at the bottom of the table contains the following options:

- **Add Marker**: Adds a marker at the playhead position.
- **Delete Marker**: Deletes the selected marker.

  NOTE

  You can only delete one marker at a time.

RELATED LINKS
Notations toolbox on page 192
Video Properties dialog on page 181

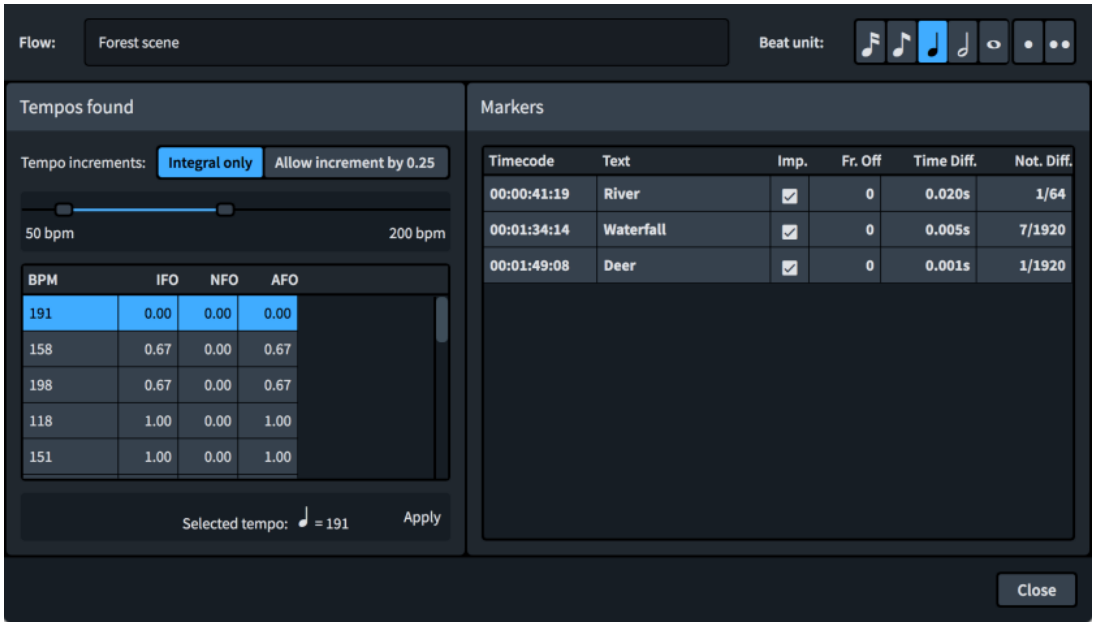
Find Tempo dialog

The **Find Tempo** dialog allows you to calculate tempos that best accommodate your important markers; for example, by identifying which tempos cause markers to coincide as closely as possible with strong beats.

- You can open the **Find Tempo** dialog in Write mode by clicking **Find Tempo** in the **Markers** section of the Video panel.

NOTE

- The **Find Tempo** dialog only considers markers in a single flow. You can change which flow by selecting an item in the corresponding flow and then opening the dialog.
- The **Find Tempo** dialog is only available if you have input at least one marker in the flow and defined at least one marker as important.



The **Find Tempo** dialog contains the following options and sections:

Flow

Shows the name of the flow whose tempo you are determining. This field is read-only.

Beat unit

Allows you to change the beat unit considered for the tempo. For example, if the time signature for the flow is 6/8, you might want to change the beat unit to a dotted quarter note.

Tempo range

Allows you to set the minimum/maximum tempos you want to consider.

Tempo increments

Allows you to filter the suggested tempos according to their precision.

- **Integral only**: Only whole number tempos, that is, tempos without decimal places, are suggested.
- **Allow increment by 0.25**: Allows tempos with decimal places of .25, .5, and .75 to be suggested.

Tempos found

Contains a list of possible tempos that you can select to see how they affect the position of your markers relative to beats. The list is updated automatically when you change options such as **Tempo range** and **Beat unit**.

The list contains columns for the following information:

- **BPM**: Stands for “beats per minute”. Lists different possible tempos according to their metronome mark value.
- **IFO**: Stands for “important frames off”. Indicates the average number of frames by which important markers miss significant beats, either before or after.
- **NFO**: Stands for “non-important frames off”. Indicates the average number of frames by which non-important markers miss significant beats, either before or after.
- **AFO**: Stands for “all frames off”. Indicates the average number of frames by which all markers in the flow miss significant beats, either before or after.

Found tempos are listed in descending order of average frames off for important markers.

Markers

Shows the impact that the tempo currently selected in the **Tempos found** list would have on each marker in the flow in more detail.

- **Timecode**: Shows the exact timecode of each marker.
- **Text**: Shows the marker text of each marker to help you identify them.
- **Imp.**: Indicates whether a marker has been defined as important.
- **Fr. Off**: Stands for “frames off”. Shows the average number of frames by which each marker misses being aligned to beats.
- **Time Diff.**: Stands for “time difference”. Shows the time difference between the position of the marker and the position of the nearest beat, expressed in fractions of a second.
- **Not. Diff.**: Stands for “notated difference”. Shows the notated difference between the position of the marker and the position of the nearest beat, expressed in fractions of a whole note.

Selected tempo

Displays the currently selected tempo for the flow.

Apply

Applies the selected tempo to the flow by inputting it as a tempo mark at the beginning of the flow. Any other tempo marks in the flow are automatically deleted.

RELATED LINKS
Defining markers as important on page 1102
Metronome marks on page 1211

Input methods for repeats and tremolos

You can input repeats and tremolos, including repeat endings, repeat markers, and rhythm slashes, with the keyboard by using the repeats popover, and with the mouse by using the Repeat Structures panel.

Tremolos are included in the Repeat Structures panel because they indicate that notes are repeated, either individually as single-note tremolos or in sequences as multi-note tremolos.

TIP

To indicate repeats using repeat barlines, you can input repeat barlines using the available input methods for barlines.

RELATED LINKS
Input methods for bars, beats, and barlines on page 287
Barlines on page 734
Types of barlines on page 735
Repeat endings on page 1107
Repeat markers on page 1113
Tremolos on page 1264
Rhythm slashes on page 1132
Bar repeats on page 1120
Numbered bar regions on page 1127
Repeats in playback on page 509

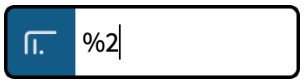
Repeats popover

The following tables contain the entries for the repeats popover that you can use to input the different tremolos, repeat markers, repeat endings, and bar repeat, slash, and numbered bar regions available.

You can open the repeats popover in Write mode in any of the following ways when either an item is selected or the caret is active:

- Press **Shift-R**.
- In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers**, then **Repeats**.
- Select an existing repeat marker, slash region, or bar repeat and press **Return**.
- Choose **Write** > **Create Repeat**.

The icon on the left-hand side of the popover matches the corresponding button in the Notations toolbox on the right of the window.



Repeats popover with an example entry

Repeat Structures button in the Notations toolbox

Repeat endings

Part of repeat ending	Popover entry
Whole repeat ending	**end** or **ending**
Additional repeat ending segment	**add**

Repeat markers

Type of repeat marker	Popover entry
D.C.	**dc**, **D.C.**, **da capo**, and so on
D.C. al Fine	**dcalf**, **DC al Fine**, **D.C. al Fine**, and so on
D.C. al Coda	**dcalc**, **DC al Coda**, **D.C. al Coda**, and so on
D.S.	**ds**, **D.S.**, **dal segno**, and so on
D.S. al Fine	**dsalf**, **DS al Fine**, **D.S. al Fine**, and so on
D.S. al Coda	**dsalc**, **DS al Coda**, **D.S. al Coda**, and so on
to Coda	**toc**, **tc**, **to coda**, **To Coda**, and so on
Segno	**s**, **seg**, **segno**, and so on
Fine	**f**, **fin**, **fine**, and so on
Coda	**c**, **co**, **coda**, and so on

The list of entries for repeat markers is not comprehensive, as the flexibility of the popover means you can enter any reasonable version or abbreviation of the type of repeat marker you want, and the popover recognizes it in most cases.

Single-note tremolos

Type of tremolo	Popover entry
One stroke	**/**, ****, or **1**
Two strokes	**//**, ****, or **2**
Three strokes	**///**, ****, or **3**
Four strokes	**////**, ****, or **4**
Z on stem (buzz roll)	**z** or **zonstem**
Tremolo with release; for example, two-strokes with release	**rel**; for example, **//rel** or **2rel**
Tremolo with attack; for example, two-strokes with attack	**att**; for example, **//att** or **2att**
Remove all tremolos	**0** or **clear**

Multi-note tremolos

Type of tremolo	Popover entry
One stroke	**/2**, **\2**, or **12**
Two strokes	**//2**, **\\2**, or **22**
Three strokes	**///2**, **\\\2**, or **32**
Four strokes	**////2**, **\\\\2**, or **42**
Remove all tremolos	**0** or **clear**

Slash regions

Slash region	Popover entry
New slash region	**slash**

Numbered bar regions

Numbered bar region	Popover entry
New numbered bar region	**nb**, **num**, **numbars**, or **number bars**

Bar repeats

Type of bar repeat	Popover entry
Repeat last bar	**%** or **%1**
Repeat last 2 bars	**%2**
Repeat last 4 bars	**%4**
Repeat last bar, group in 2	**%1,2**
Repeat last bar, group in 4	**%1,4**
Repeat last 2 bars, group in 4	**%2,4**

RELATED LINKS
Notations toolbox on page 192
Inputting repeat endings with the popover on page 391
Inputting repeat markers with the popover on page 394

Inputting tremolos with the popover on page 395
Inputting slash regions on page 398
Inputting bar repeats on page 399
Inputting numbered bar regions on page 400
Bars and barlines popover on page 288
Repeat endings on page 1107
Repeat markers on page 1113
Tremolos on page 1264
Rhythm slashes on page 1132
Bar repeats on page 1120
Numbered bar regions on page 1127

Repeat Structures panel

The Repeat Structures panel contains the different types of repeat notations available in Dorico Elements, including repeat endings, tremolos, and bar repeats. It is located in the right zone in Write mode.

Tremolos are included in the Repeat Structures panel because they indicate that notes are repeated, either individually as single-note tremolos or in sequences as multi-note tremolos.

- You can hide/show the Repeat Structures panel by clicking **Panels**, then **Repeat Structures** in the Notations toolbox.

  You can also hide/show the right zone by pressing **Ctrl/Cmd-9**.

The Repeat Structures panel contains the following sections:

Repeat Endings

Contains options that allow you to input new repeat endings and add additional endings to existing repeat endings.

Repeat Jumps

Contains different types of repeat markers that instruct players to jump to a specific point in the piece, such as “D.S. al Coda”.

Repeat Sections

Contains different sections used in conjunction with repeat jumps, such as “Coda”.

Tremolos

Contains different types of single-note and multi-note tremolos.

Rhythm Slashes

Allows you to input a region that displays rhythm slashes that are automatically formatted to be compatible with the prevailing time signature.

Bar Repeats

Allows you to input a region that indicates that the preceding bar is repeated without re-notating the bar.

TIP

You can input bar repeat regions with different bar groupings when using the repeats popover.

Numbered Bars

Allows you to input a region that displays bar counts without additional notations.

RELATED LINKS
Notations toolbox on page 192
Repeats popover on page 387

Inputting repeat endings with the popover

You can input repeat endings using the repeats popover, both during note input and by adding them to existing music.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:
   - Start note input.

     TIP

     During note input, you can select additional notes before/after the last input note without deactivating the caret by pressing **Shift-Right Arrow**/**Shift-Left Arrow**.

   - Select at least one item in each bar that you want to include in the first ending.
2. Open the repeats popover in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Shift-R**.
   - In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers**, then **Repeats**.
3. Enter **end** or **ending** into the popover.
4. Press **Return** to close the popover.

RESULT

The repeat ending is input, with the first ending segment covering the bars in which you selected items, and a second ending segment created automatically in the following bar.

An end repeat barline is created at the end of the first ending if none exists already.

RELATED LINKS
Repeats popover on page 387
Repeat endings on page 1107

Adding additional repeat endings with the popover

You can have more than two possible endings in each repeat ending structure by adding additional segments using the repeats popover. You can add repeat ending segments both during note input and by adding them to existing music.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:
   - Start note input.

     TIP

     During note input, you can select additional notes before/after the last input note without deactivating the caret by pressing **Shift-Right Arrow**/**Shift-Left Arrow**.

   - Select the bars that you want to include in the additional ending.

NOTE

Your selection must start from the first bar following the previous repeat ending segment.

2. Open the repeats popover in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Shift-R**.
   - In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers**, then **Repeats**.
3. Enter **add** into the popover.
4. Press **Return** to close the popover.
5. Optional: Repeat these steps as many times as required for the number of additional endings you want.

RESULT

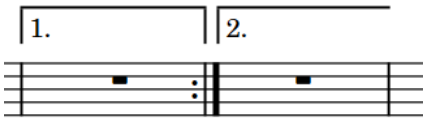
A new repeat ending segment is added. The existing previous repeat ending segment now ends with a closed line, with an end repeat barline created if necessary.

TIP

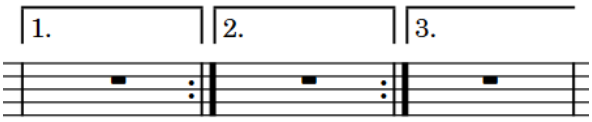
You can also add additional repeat ending segments by selecting the repeat ending and changing the value for **No. endings** in the **Repeat Endings** group of the Properties panel.

However, **No. endings** only adds additional repeat ending segments that contain one bar, and does not automatically input or reposition repeat barlines. You must input repeat barlines as appropriate manually.

EXAMPLE



Default repeat ending structure with two endings



Repeat ending structure with additional third ending

Inputting repeat endings with the panel

You can input repeat endings using the Repeat Structures panel, both during note input and by adding them to existing music.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:
   - Start note input.

     TIP

     During note input, you can select additional notes before/after the last input note without deactivating the caret by pressing **Shift-Right Arrow**/**Shift-Left Arrow**.

   - Select at least one item in each bar that you want to include in the first ending.

2. In the Notations toolbox, click **Panels**, then **Repeat Structures** to show the Repeat Structures panel.
3. In the **Repeat Endings** section, click **Create Repeat Ending**.

RESULT

The repeat ending is input, with the first ending segment covering the bars in which you selected items, and a second ending segment created automatically in the following bar.

An end repeat barline is created at the end of the first ending if none exists already.

RELATED LINKS

Repeat Structures panel on page 390

Adding additional repeat endings with the panel

You can have more than two possible endings in each repeat ending structure by adding additional segments using the Repeat Structures panel. You can add repeat ending segments both during note input and by adding them to existing music.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:
   - Start note input.

     TIP

     During note input, you can select additional notes before/after the last input note without deactivating the caret by pressing **Shift-Right Arrow** / **Shift-Left Arrow**.
   - Select the bars that you want to include in the additional ending.

     NOTE

     Your selection must start from the first bar following the previous repeat ending segment.
2. In the Notations toolbox, click **Panels**, then **Repeat Structures** to show the Repeat Structures panel.
3. In the **Repeat Endings** section, click **Add Section To Repeat Ending**.

   NOTE

   If increasing the number of endings makes the repeat ending collide with any part of another repeat ending, the other repeat ending is deleted. However, its repeat barlines are not deleted.
4. Optional: Repeat these steps as many times as required for the number of additional endings you want.

RESULT

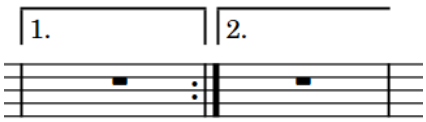
A new repeat ending segment is added. The existing previous repeat ending segment now ends with a closed line, with an end repeat barline created if necessary.

TIP

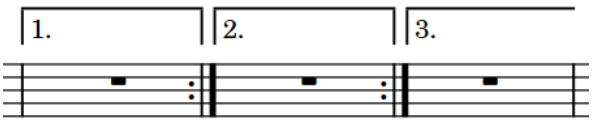
You can also add additional repeat ending segments by selecting the repeat ending and changing the value for **No. endings** in the **Repeat Endings** group of the Properties panel.

However, **No. endings** only adds additional repeat ending segments that contain one bar, and does not automatically input or reposition repeat barlines. You must input repeat barlines as appropriate manually.

EXAMPLE



Default repeat ending structure with two endings



Repeat ending structure with additional third ending

Inputting repeat markers with the popover

You can input repeat markers, including repeat jumps and repeat sections, using the repeats popover, both during note input and by adding them to existing music.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:
   - Start note input.

     TIP

     During note input, you can select additional notes before/after the last input note without deactivating the caret by pressing **Shift-Right Arrow**/**Shift-Left Arrow**.

   - Select an item at the rhythmic position where you want to input a repeat marker.

     For repeat jumps, we recommend that you select the barline with which you want the end of the jump instruction to align. For repeat sections, we recommend that you select the barline with which you want the start of the section marker to align.
2. Open the repeats popover in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Shift-R**.
   - In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers**, then **Repeats**.
3. Enter the appropriate entry for the type of repeat marker you want into the popover.

   For example, enter **coda** to input a coda section or enter **$** to input a segno.
4. Press **Return** to close the popover.

RESULT

During note input, repeat markers are input at the caret position. Coda sections are automatically formatted so that there is a gap between the coda and the preceding material.

When adding repeat markers to existing music, they are input at the rhythmic position of the earliest selected item.

Repeat markers that indicate the end of a section, such as *Fine* and *D.C. al Coda*, are right-aligned with the selected rhythmic position.

RELATED LINKS
Repeats popover on page 387
Repeat markers on page 1113
Repeats in playback on page 509
Hiding/Showing repeat markers on page 1116

Inputting repeat markers with the panel

You can input repeat markers using the Repeat Structures panel, both during note input and by adding them to existing music.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:
   - Start note input.

     TIP

     During note input, you can select additional notes before/after the last input note without deactivating the caret by pressing **Shift-Right Arrow** / **Shift-Left Arrow**.
   - Select an item at the rhythmic position where you want to input a repeat marker.

     For repeat jumps, we recommend that you select the barline with which you want the end of the jump instruction to align. For repeat sections, we recommend that you select the barline with which you want the start of the section marker to align.
2. In the Notations toolbox, click **Panels**, then **Repeat Structures** to show the Repeat Structures panel.
3. Click the repeat marker you want to input in any of the following sections:
   - **Repeat Jumps**
   - **Repeat Sections**

RESULT

During note input, repeat markers are input at the caret position. Coda sections are automatically formatted so that there is a gap between the coda and the preceding material.

When adding repeat markers to existing music, they are input at the rhythmic position of the earliest selected item.

Repeat markers that indicate the end of a section, such as *Fine* and *D.C. al Coda*, are right-aligned with the selected rhythmic position.

Inputting tremolos with the popover

You can input both single-note and multi-note tremolos using the repeats popover, both during note input and by adding them to existing notes.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:
   - Start note input.

TIP

During note input, you can select additional notes before/after the last input note without deactivating the caret by pressing **Shift-Right Arrow**/**Shift-Left Arrow**.

- Select the notes to which you want to add tremolos.

NOTE

If you want to input multi-note tremolos, you must select at least two notes that are in the same voice, have the same duration, and are notated using a single notehead. The notes can also be tuplets and cross-staff notes.

2. Open the repeats popover in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Shift-R**.
   - In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers**, then **Repeats**.
3. Enter the appropriate entry for the type of tremolo you want into the popover.

   For example, enter:
   - **//** for single-note tremolos with two strokes.
   - **///2** for multi-note tremolos with three strokes.
   - **//rel** for two-stroke single-note tremolos with release.
4. Press **Return** to close the popover.

RESULT

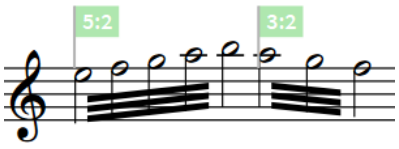
Single-note tremolos are input on the selected notes with the number of tremolo strokes specified. They appear on all notes in tie chains.

Tremolos with release show single-note tremolo strokes on all notes in tie chains apart from the last note. Tremolos with attack show single-note tremolo strokes on all notes in tie chains apart from the first note.

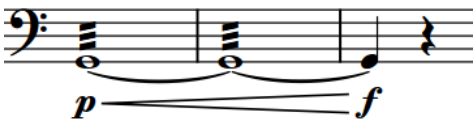
Multi-note tremolos with the number of tremolo strokes specified are input between selected individual notes and the notes immediately after them, or between selected pairs of notes. The notated duration of notes in multi-note tremolos is automatically updated. For example, two quarter notes joined by a multi-note tremolo both appear as half notes.

When tuplets are selected, multi-note tremolos are input across the selected tuplets, with the tremolo strokes positioned in the center of all notes in the tuplet. The tuplet bracket is hidden, and a signpost is shown at the start of each tuplet indicating its ratio.

EXAMPLE



Multi-note tremolos with three tremolo strokes across tuplets



Tremolo with release added to tie chain

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

You can enable independent voice playback for individual instruments to hear different sounds in different voices simultaneously; for example, if you have tremolos in one voice and slurs in another voice.

RELATED LINKS

Repeats popover on page 387
Tremolos on page 1264
Tremolos in tie chains on page 1266
Deleting tremolos on page 1268
Enabling independent voice playback on page 506
Forcing the duration of notes/rests on page 250
Creating cross-staff beams/tremolos on page 764
Tuplets on page 1271

Inputting tremolos with the panel

You can input both single-note and multi-note tremolos using the Repeat Structures panel, both during note input and by adding them to existing notes.

Tremolos are included in the Repeat Structures panel because they indicate that notes are repeated, either individually as single-note tremolos or in sequences as multi-note tremolos.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:
   - Start note input.

     TIP

     During note input, you can select additional notes before/after the last input note without deactivating the caret by pressing **Shift-Right Arrow**/**Shift-Left Arrow**.
   - Select the notes to which you want to add tremolos.

     NOTE

     If you want to input multi-note tremolos, you must select at least two notes that are in the same voice, have the same duration, and are notated using a single notehead. The notes can also be tuplets and cross-staff notes.
2. In the Notations toolbox, click **Panels**, then **Repeat Structures** to show the Repeat Structures panel.
3. In the **Tremolos** section, click the tremolo you want to input.

   For example, click:
   - **Two Strokes Single-note Tremolo** for single-note tremolos with two strokes.
   - **Three Strokes Multi-note Tremolo** for multi-note tremolos with three strokes.
   - **Tremolo With Release** for three-stroke single-note tremolos with release.

RESULT

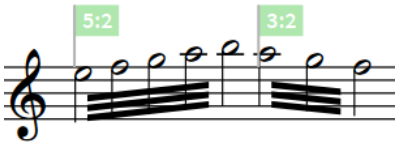
Single-note tremolos are input on the selected notes with the number of tremolo strokes specified. They appear on all notes in tie chains.

Tremolos with release show single-note tremolo strokes on all notes in tie chains apart from the last note. Tremolos with attack show single-note tremolo strokes on all notes in tie chains apart from the first note.

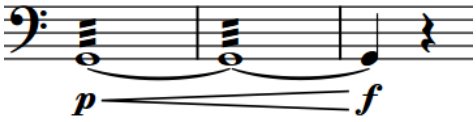
Multi-note tremolos with the number of tremolo strokes specified are input between selected individual notes and the notes immediately after them, or between selected pairs of notes. The notated duration of notes in multi-note tremolos is automatically updated. For example, two quarter notes joined by a multi-note tremolo both appear as half notes.

When tuplets are selected, multi-note tremolos are input across the selected tuplets, with the tremolo strokes positioned in the center of all notes in the tuplet. The tuplet bracket is hidden, and a signpost is shown at the start of each tuplet indicating its ratio.

EXAMPLE



Multi-note tremolos with three tremolo strokes across tuplets



Tremolo with release added to tie chain

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

You can enable independent voice playback for individual instruments to hear different sounds in different voices simultaneously; for example, if you have tremolos in one voice and slurs in another voice.

RELATED LINKS

Repeat Structures panel on page 390
Enabling independent voice playback on page 506
Forcing the duration of notes/rests on page 250
Creating cross-staff beams/tremolos on page 764
Tuplets on page 1271

Inputting slash regions

You can input slash regions using the repeats popover.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:
   - Start note input.
   - On the staff where you want to input a slash region, select items that span the required duration.
2. Open the repeats popover in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Shift-R**.
   - In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers**, then **Repeats**.
3. Enter **slash** into the popover.
4. Press **Return** to close the popover.

RESULT

During note input, slash regions are input spanning the duration of the selected note or item, which is usually the last input note. When adding slash regions to existing music, they span the selected duration.

Slash regions are automatically formatted as appropriate for the meter. If you later change the time signature, slash regions retain their duration but the appearance of slashes within them automatically updates.

TIP

You can also input slash regions by clicking **Create Slash Region** in the **Rhythm Slashes** section of the Repeat Structures panel, or by choosing **Write** > **Create Slash Region**. You can assign a key command for this option on the **Key Commands** page in **Preferences**.

RELATED LINKS

Repeats popover on page 387
Repeat Structures panel on page 390
Rhythm slashes on page 1132
Slash regions on page 1132
Slash voices on page 1141
Inputting chord symbol regions on page 311
Hiding/Showing chord symbols on page 789
Lengthening/Shortening items on page 410
Key Commands page in the Preferences dialog on page 59

Inputting bar repeats

You can input bar repeat regions when at least one bar before the region contains notes.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, on the staff where you want to input a bar repeat region, select items that span the required duration.

   NOTE

   You cannot input bar repeat regions in the first bar of a flow.

2. Open the repeats popover in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Shift-R**.
   - In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers**, then **Repeats**.
3. Enter the appropriate entry for the type of bar repeat region you want into the popover.

   For example, enter **%2,4** to repeat the previous two bars, grouped in four.
4. Press **Return** to close the popover.

RESULT

A region of the selected duration is input, in which the specified type of bar repeat symbol is shown in the staff at the intervals specified.

NOTE

- You can also input bar repeat regions during note input; however, this inputs bar repeat regions from the bar containing the currently selected note. As bar repeats are mostly shown in empty bars, this is likely to produce unintended results.
- You can also input one-bar repeat regions by clicking **Create Bar Repeat Region** in the **Bar Repeats** section of the Repeat Structures panel, or by choosing **Write** > **Create Bar Repeat Region**. You can assign a key command for this option on the **Key Commands** page in **Preferences**.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

You can change how bar repeats are grouped.

RELATED LINKS

Bar repeats on page 1120
Bar repeat grouping on page 1125
Changing bar repeat grouping on page 1125

Inputting numbered bar regions

You can input numbered bar regions using the repeats popover.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, on the staff where you want to number bars, select items that span the required duration.
2. Open the repeats popover in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Shift-R**.
   - In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers**, then **Repeats**.
3. Enter **numbars** into the popover.
4. Press **Return** to close the popover.

RESULT

A numbered bar region spanning the selected duration is input.

By default, bar counts are shown on every bar in the region. If the numbered bar region lasts four or more bars, Dorico Elements adds the total range in parentheses to the count on the first bar, such as showing “1 (-8)” on the first bar in a numbered bar region lasting eight bars.

NOTE

- You can also input numbered bar regions during note input; however, this only inputs a numbered bar region in the bar containing the currently selected note.
- You can also input numbered bar regions by clicking **Create Numbered Bar Region** in the **Numbered Bars** section of the Repeat Structures panel, or by choosing **Write** > **Create Numbered Bar Region**. You can assign a key command for this option on the **Key Commands** page in **Preferences**.
- Numbered bar regions are hidden in full score layouts and shown in part layouts by default, but you can choose to hide/show numbered bar regions in any layout.

RELATED LINKS

Repeats popover on page 387

Repeat Structures panel on page 390
Numbered bar regions on page 1127
Numbered bar region counts on page 1128
Hiding/Showing numbered bar regions on page 1128
Lengthening/Shortening items on page 410

Selecting notes/items

In Dorico Elements, there are multiple different ways you can select notes and items in your project, from selecting items individually to making large selections covering multiple staves. You can also change whether notes play back during note input/selection.

RELATED LINKS

Large selections on page 403
System track on page 404
Filters on page 407
Selection tools on page 41
Playing/Muting notes during note input/selection on page 408
Playing all/individual notes in chords during note input/selection on page 409
Selecting items in the Key Editor on page 627

Selecting/Deselecting notes and items individually

You can select/deselect existing notes and other notation items individually in the music area; for example, if you want to add articulations to a selection of notes or delete a short passage of music.

TIP

If you want to select a large number of notes/items, we recommend that you use one of the larger selection methods.

PROCEDURE

1. Select individual notes/items in the music area in any of the following ways:
   - Click a single note/item.

     TIP

     If the item you want to select is behind another item, **Shift**-**Alt/Opt**-click it.

   - **Ctrl/Cmd**-click individual notes/items.
   - **Shift**-click adjacent notes/items.
   - To select all notes in a beam group, click the beam.
   - To select all notes in a chord, click the stem.
   - To select everything in a bar, click on the staff in that bar, but not on any notes, stems, or items.
   - Make a marquee selection around multiple notes/items.
   - Navigate to other items from an existing selection.
   - If nothing is selected in the music area, press any arrow key on your computer keyboard to select the first note, rest, or other item on the top staff in the current layout.
2. Deselect all currently selected items in any of the following ways:

- Press **Ctrl/Cmd-D**.
- Choose **Edit** > **Select None**.
- Click outside of the staves within the music area.

RELATED LINKS
Selecting multiple items using marquee selections on page 403
Selecting items in the Key Editor on page 627
Playing/Muting notes during note input/selection on page 408
Navigating to other items in the music area on page 417
Filters on page 407

Selecting more items of the same type

You can incrementally extend your current selection to more items of the same type and notes in the same voices, which is particularly helpful if you want to select multiple different items at once, such as dynamics and lyrics.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the notes and items you want to select more of. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.

   TIP

   You can select notes and items on multiple staves and in specific voices; for example, if you only want to select notes in up-stem voices on four staves.

2. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-A** to expand your selection.
3. Optional: Continue pressing **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-A** to extend your selection further.

RESULT

More of the same types of items and notes in the same voices as your original selection are selected, with the range of selected items expanding each time you press the key command: firstly to the boundaries of the bar, secondly to the boundaries of the system, and finally to the rest of the flow. If there are no other items available in the bar, Dorico Elements automatically advances to the second expansion. In galley view, the second expansion is to the entire flow directly as there is only a single system in galley view.

For items that span multiple bars and systems, they are selected in the earliest bar/system in which they exist.

NOTE

Dorico Elements selects the following items differently if you select only a single one of them:

- Lyrics: The selection expands only to other lyrics with the same line number, placement, and line type as the originally selected lyric.
- Dynamics: The first expansion is to all other dynamics in the same group and on the same staves as the original selection, with further expansions selecting other dynamics in other groups.
- Playing techniques: The selection expands only to playing techniques of the same category, such as **Strings** or **Choral**. Additionally, if you select either an up bow or down bow playing technique, the selection expands only to other up bow and down bow playing techniques. It does not select any other playing techniques.

Selecting multiple items using marquee selections

You can use a marquee selection to select multiple notes and notations at the same time within a specific area in Write, Engrave, and Play modes.

PROCEDURE

1. In the status bar, click **Marquee Tool** .
2. In the music area, click and drag across the area where you want to select everything.

   A gray rectangle indicates which notes and notations will be selected. We recommend that you click in one corner of the area you want to select and drag diagonally across to the other corner.

RESULT

When you release the mouse, all notes and notations in the area within the gray rectangle are selected.

NOTE

Only items completely within the area are selected. However, if any part of a note/tie chain is within the area, the whole note/tie chain is selected.

RELATED LINKS

Status bar on page 39
Selection tools on page 41
Selecting items in the Key Editor on page 627
Changing values using the Transform tool on page 664

Large selections

You can make large selections, including selecting the contents of whole staves or the whole flow.

Select everything in a specific area

You can use the **Marquee Tool** to specify an area in which you want to select everything.

Select everything in the whole flow

- Press **Ctrl/Cmd-A**.
- Choose **Edit** > **Select All**.

Select everything on a single staff

- Select the first note on the staff, hold down **Shift**, then select the last note on the staff.
- Select the first note on the staff and choose **Edit** > **Select To End Of System** or **Edit** > **Select To End Of Flow**.

Select everything on multiple adjacent staves

- Select one whole staff at the top/bottom of the range of staves you want to select and press **Shift-Up Arrow** or **Shift-Down Arrow** until all the staves you want are selected.
- Select one whole staff at the top/bottom of the range of staves you want to select and **Shift**-click the staff at the other end of the range of staves you want to select.

Select more of the currently selected types of items

You can use **Edit** > **Select More** (**Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-A**) to expand your current selection horizontally and incrementally to other items of the same types and in the selected voices and staves in Write mode. For items that span multiple bars and systems, they are selected in the earliest bar/system in which they exist.

1. The first expansion is to the boundaries of the current bar, both to the left and right. If there is nothing to select within the bar, such as if you selected a whole note in a 4/4 bar, Dorico Elements automatically advances to the second expansion.
2. The second expansion in page view is to the boundaries of the current system, both to the left and right. In galley view, the second expansion is to the rest of the flow, as there is only a single system in galley view.
3. In page view, the third expansion is to the entire flow.

Select everything in the system within a range of beats/bars

You can use the system track to select a region of beats/bars and then select everything on all staves in the system within that region.

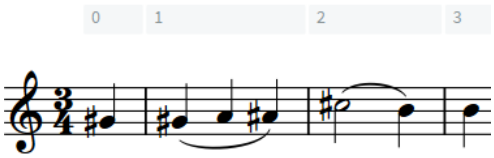
TIP

If you want to select only a certain type of item, such as lyrics or dynamics, you can then use the corresponding filters.

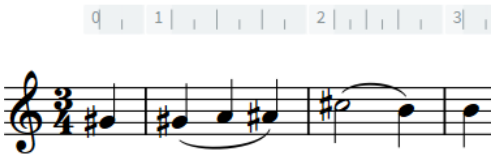
RELATED LINKS
Filters on page 407
Selecting/Deselecting notes and items individually on page 401
Selecting items in the Key Editor on page 627
Selecting more items of the same type on page 402
Histogram tool on page 659

System track

The system track is a translucent line above the top of each system in Write mode. It allows you to add and delete bars and beats, and to select everything on all staves in the system.



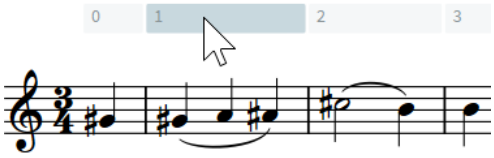
The system track above a staff, showing bars



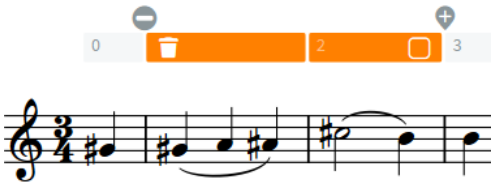
The system track above a staff, showing beat units reflecting the current rhythmic grid resolution (available when you hold **Alt/Opt**)

The color of the system track changes depending on how you are interacting with it.

- When you hover the mouse over it, it becomes more opaque.
- When you select a region in the system track, it appears highlighted.



The system track when the mouse pointer hovers over it



The system track with a region selected

When you have selected a region in the system track, the following options are available:

1 **Set Edit Stop Position**

Allows you to set and delete Insert mode stop positions.

2 **Delete**

Allows you to delete the selected region.

NOTE

When you hover over **Delete**, the highlight color of the selected region changes.

3 **System Track Select**

Allows you to select all items, including system objects, on all staves in the system across the selected region.

4 **Add**

Allows you to add bars or beats of the same duration as the selection in the system track. The extra time is inserted immediately after the end of the selection.

NOTE

Selections on the system track are cleared whenever you make any other kind of selection, or when you switch layouts. However, selections on the system track are retained when switching between page and galley view.

RELATED LINKS

Inputting bars/beats with the system track on page 292
Deleting bars/beats with the system track on page 730
System objects on page 1196
Rhythmic grid on page 204
Insert mode on page 427

Hiding/Showing the system track

The system track is shown by default in new projects, but you can hide/show it in Write mode at any time.

PROCEDURE

- Hide/Show the system track in any of the following ways:
  - Press **Alt/Opt-T**.
  - Choose **View** > **System Track**.

RESULT

The system track is hidden/shown.

TIP

If you do not want the system track to be shown in all future projects by default, deactivate **Show system track in new projects** in the **View** section of the **General** page in **Preferences**.

RELATED LINKS

Preferences dialog on page 58

Selecting bars with the system track

The system track allows you to select all items, including system objects, on all staves in the system across the selected bars.

PREREQUISITE

The system track is shown.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, click a bar in the system track.
2. Optional: Select additional bars in any of the following ways:
   - **Shift**-click bars to the right/left along the system track.
   - Click and drag to the right/left along the system track.
3. Click **System Track Select** in the system track. It can also appear above the system track if your selection is narrow.

   System Track Select appears filled in when you hover your mouse pointer over it.

RESULT

Everything on all staves in the selected bars is selected and highlighted, including system objects, notations, and signposts.

NOTE

If you then delete your selection, any signposts included are also deleted. This can affect the page layout; for example, by removing ossia staves whose signposts were included in the selection.

Selecting beats with the system track

The system track allows you to select all items, including system objects, on all staves in the system across the selected beats.

PREREQUISITE

The system track is shown.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, press and hold **Alt/Opt**.
   Grid lines that match the current rhythmic grid resolution appear in the system track.
2. Without releasing **Alt/Opt**, click and drag to the right/left along the system track.

   NOTE

   You cannot **Shift**-click when selecting beats.
3. Click **System Track Select** in the system track. It can also appear above the system track if your selection is narrow.
   System Track Select appears filled in when you hover your mouse pointer over it.

RESULT

Everything on all staves in the selected beats is selected and highlighted, including system objects, notations, and signposts.

NOTE

If you then delete your selection, any signposts included are also deleted. This can affect the page layout; for example, by removing ossia staves whose signposts were included in the selection.

RELATED LINKS

Deleting the contents of bars on page 731
Deleting bars/beats with the system track on page 730
System objects on page 1196
Rhythmic grid on page 204

Filters

Filters in Dorico Elements allow you to select only a specific type of item from a larger selection. Dorico Elements includes a filter for every notation item.

- You can find the available filters by choosing **Edit** > **Filter** > **[Item]** > **[Item type]**. You can also choose filters from the context menu.

All significant notation items have their own filter; for example, arpeggio signs, chord symbols, key signatures, and playing techniques. You can also filter for note spacing changes.

The following items have multiple filters because they have multiple types:

Notes

Allows you to filter notes, grace notes, and chords. You can also filter notes according to their position in chords.

Voices

Allows you to filter voices according to their stem direction. You can also filter slash voices.

Dynamics

Allows you to filter all dynamics, or just gradual or immediate dynamics.

Tempos

Allows you to filter all tempo marks, or just absolute, relative, or gradual tempo changes.

Lyrics

Allows you to filter all lyrics, or just lyrics with a specific line number, type, or staff-relative placement.

NOTE

There is no filter for barlines. You also cannot filter notations that are considered part of the notes to which they apply, including fingerings, beams, articulations, and tremolos.

RELATED LINKS

Filters for lyrics on page 924
Selecting more items of the same type on page 402

Changing filters to select/deselect

You can change whether the available filter options select or deselect the specified items. By default, filters select items, meaning that the resulting selection only includes the item being filtered.

When filters are set to deselect, the resulting selection includes everything except the item being filtered.

PROCEDURE

- Change the filter behavior in one of the following ways:
  - To change filters to select, choose **Edit** > **Filter** > **Select Only**.
  - To change filters to deselect, choose **Edit** > **Filter** > **Deselect Only**.

  TIP

  You can also choose these options from the context menu.

Playing/Muting notes during note input/selection

You can change your default setting for whether notes are played back as you input them or not. By default, notes are played back with the prevailing dynamic but you can set a fixed volume instead.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-,** to open **Preferences**.
2. In the category list, click **Note Input and Editing**.
3. In the **Note Input** section, activate/deactivate **Play notes during note input and selection** in the **Auditioning** subsection.

4. Optional: If you want notes to play back with a fixed volume instead of the prevailing dynamic, activate **Use fixed volume to play selected notes** and change the value in the value field.
5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

When the option is activated, notes play back as you input them during note input and when you select them. When it is deactivated, notes do not play back.

When **Use fixed volume to play selected notes** is activated, notes play back with the set volume. When it is deactivated, notes play back with the prevailing dynamic.

RELATED LINKS

Inputting notes on page 211
Selecting/Deselecting notes and items individually on page 401
Playing back music on page 503
Mixer panel on page 667
Input methods for dynamics on page 296

Playing all/individual notes in chords during note input/selection

You can change your default setting for whether all notes in chords are played when you select any note in the chord or whether only the selected notes are played.

PREREQUISITE

Notes are played during note input/selection.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-,** to open **Preferences**.
2. In the category list, click **Note Input and Editing**.
3. In the **Note Input** section, activate/deactivate **Play all notes in chord when any is selected** in the **Auditioning** subsection.
4. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

When the option is activated, all notes in chords are played when any note in the chord is selected. When it is deactivated, only the selected notes are played.

Editing items

In Dorico Elements, there are editing methods that are common to most notations, including lengthening/shortening items and changing their staff-relative placement.

RELATED LINKS

Selecting notes/items on page 401
Arranging tools on page 431
Moving notes/items rhythmically on page 437

Lengthening/Shortening items

You can lengthen/shorten items with duration rhythmically after they have been input; for example, if you want an octave line to cover more/fewer notes.

Lengthening figured bass or playing techniques, including string indicators outside the staff and vibrato bar indications, that were input without a specified duration gives them duration and shows duration or hold lines if required.

PREREQUISITE

You have chosen the appropriate rhythmic grid resolution.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the items you want to lengthen/shorten.

   NOTE

   - When multiple items are selected, you can only lengthen/shorten them by the current rhythmic grid resolution.
   - You can only lengthen/shorten one of the following items at a time: slurs, gradual dynamics, groups of gradual dynamics, and bar repeat regions.
   - When using the mouse, you can only lengthen/shorten a single item at a time. Figured bass and playing techniques, including string indicators and vibrato bar lines, must have duration already.
   - When lengthening/shortening multiple figured bass or playing techniques using the keyboard, they must all have duration already.
   - You can only lengthen/shorten non-grouped playing techniques or the last playing technique in a group.
   - You can only lengthen/shorten cross-staff slurs to notes on the same staff as the corresponding endpoint, and you can only lengthen/shorten cross-voice slurs to notes in the same voice as the corresponding endpoint.

2. Lengthen/Shorten the selected items in any of the following ways:

   - To lengthen them by the current rhythmic grid resolution or to the next notehead, whichever is closer, press **Shift-Alt/Opt-Right Arrow**.
   - To shorten them by the current rhythmic grid resolution or to the previous notehead, whichever is closer, press **Shift-Alt/Opt-Left Arrow**.

     NOTE

     Bar repeat regions are lengthened/shortened by the duration of their grouping.

   - To lengthen a single item to the next notehead, press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-Alt/Opt-Right Arrow**.
   - To shorten a single item to the previous notehead, press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-Alt/Opt-Left Arrow**.
   - Click and drag the circular handle at the start/end to the right/left.

     NOTE

     Playing technique groups only have a single handle at their start and end, not individual handles for each playing technique within the group.

RESULT

The selected items are lengthened/shortened by moving their end rhythmically to the right/left. Most items are lengthened/shortened either by the current rhythmic grid resolution or to the next/previous notehead, whichever is closer, or directly to the next/previous notehead.

Bar repeat regions are lengthened/shortened by the duration of their grouping. Numbered bar regions are lengthened/shortened by bars. Slurs are lengthened/shortened to notes.

If figured bass or playing techniques previously had no duration, they now have duration and show duration or hold lines if required.

If any part of slash regions now overlap rhythmic positions with other slash regions, the staff positions of slashes are automatically adjusted to accommodate multiple slash regions at the same positions.

Dynamic groups are lengthened/shortened proportionally by lengthening/shortening the gradual dynamics and moving any other type of dynamic in the group. This retains the relative durations of the gradual dynamics in the group.

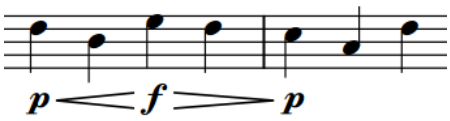
NOTE

- The minimum length of a bar repeat region is one bar. If you shorten regions with longer groupings, such as every four bars, the length of the region is halved until a one-bar repeat region remains.
- Only a single bar repeat region or chord symbol region can exist at each rhythmic position on each staff. If a bar repeat region or chord symbol region collides with another item of the same type when it is lengthened/shortened, the existing item is deleted or shortened accordingly. For bar repeat regions, this can mean the grouping of other bar repeat regions is changed.

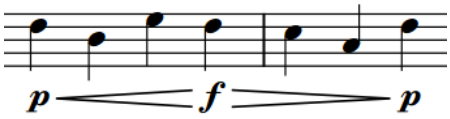
  You can undo this action and restore the previous lengths of the other regions. However, if you lengthened/shortened a bar repeat region or chord symbol region using the mouse and it overwrote another region of the same type completely, the other region is permanently deleted.
- You can move items graphically in Engrave mode, including changing their graphical length.

EXAMPLE

In the example, lengthening the phrase moves the ***p*** at the end two quarter notes to the right, but moves the ***f*** in the middle only one quarter note to the right. This keeps the lengths of the gradual dynamics equal.



Original dynamic phrase



Lengthened dynamic phrase

RELATED LINKS

Rhythmic grid on page 204
Changing the duration of notes on page 248
Lengthening/Shortening segments in repeat endings on page 1109
Moving notes/items rhythmically on page 437
Moving items graphically on page 481
Hiding/Showing playing technique duration lines on page 1070

Notations input on page 259
Bar repeat grouping on page 1125
Playing technique continuation lines on page 1067
Playing technique duration on page 1068
Pedal line start signs, hooks, and continuation lines on page 1053
Sustain pedal retakes and pedal level changes on page 1045
Slashes in multiple-voice contexts on page 1134
Octave lines in Engrave mode on page 824
Slurs in Engrave mode on page 1171
Cross-staff and cross-voice slurs on page 1166
Groups of dynamics on page 853
Showing consecutive hairpins as continuous on page 845
Hiding/Showing figured bass hold/suspension lines on page 862

Changing existing items

You can change all items that have an associated popover, rather than deleting them and inputting new ones. For example, if you want to change an 8va octave line into a 15va octave line or change a short fermata into a long fermata.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the item or the signpost of the item you want to change.
2. Open the popover for that item in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Return**.
   - Double-click the item.
3. Change the existing entry in the popover.
   For chord symbols, you can also play the new chord on your MIDI keyboard.
4. Press **Return** to close the popover.

RESULT

The selected item is changed according to the new entry in the popover. This changes different parameters for different items, such as the duration of a hold or pause or the volume of a dynamic.

NOTE

- Any properties previously set on the item are reset.
- If you change a fermata to a breath mark, only the fermata on the top staff is changed to a breath mark. If you change a caesura to a breath mark, a breath mark is input on the top staff at the end of the bar to which the caesura is attached. However, the existing caesura also remains on all staves.
- If you open the playing techniques popover in this way, Dorico Elements inputs your new entry as a separate playing technique and does not delete the previous one.
- If you change an immediate dynamic to a combined dynamic, such as *f* to *fp*, or vice versa, Dorico Elements inputs your new entry as a separate dynamic and does not delete the previous one.

RELATED LINKS

Popovers on page 24
Properties panel on page 615

Changing the text of existing lyrics on page 931
Assigning key commands on page 63
Changing dynamic levels on page 835

Changing the size of notes/items

You can change the size of individual notes and items using the default scale sizes for cues, grace notes, a custom scale size, or a custom scale size in addition to a default scale size. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

TIP

If you want to change the size of notes because you want them to be grace notes or cues, you can input them as either grace notes or cues instead.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the notes/items whose size you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate any of the following properties in the **Common** group:
   - If you want to use a default scale size, activate **Scale**.
   - If you want to use a custom scale size, activate **Custom scale**.
   - If you want to use a custom scale size based on a default scale size, activate both **Scale** and **Custom scale**.
3. Optional: If you activated **Scale**, select one of the following options from the menu:
   - **Normal**
   - **Grace**
   - **Cue**
   - **Cue grace**
4. Optional: If you activated **Custom scale**, change the value in the value field.

RESULT

The size of the selected notes/items is changed. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

- If you activated **Scale**, the selected notes/items are changed to the selected default scale size.
- If you activated **Custom Scale**, the selected notes/items are changed to the custom percentage scale size you set.
- If you activated both **Scale** and **Custom Scale**, the selected notes/items are changed to the custom percentage scale size of the selected default scale size. For example, if you selected **Grace** for **Scale** then set **Custom Scale** to **50**, the size of the selected notes/items is half the size of grace notes.

RELATED LINKS
Grace notes on page 897
Inputting grace notes on page 239
Cues on page 827
Notehead set designs on page 941
Changing the property scope on page 617
Copying property settings to other layouts/frame chains on page 599
Changing the size of accidentals on page 714
Changing the size of fingerings on page 876

Changing the staff-relative placement of items

You can flip any item that can be placed both above/below the staff to change their staff-relative placement; for example, if you want to change the stem direction of notes quickly. For many items, you can do this for the current layout and frame chain only or for all layouts and frame chains.

NOTE

These steps do not apply to text in text frames or pedal lines.

PREREQUISITE

You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the items you want to flip. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.

   NOTE

   - You cannot flip items during note input. You cannot flip text items when the text editor is open.
   - If you want to select parts of items, such as articulations, a single notehead within a tie chain, or a single fermata, you must be in Engrave mode.
   - To select multiple items of the same type, you can use large selections and/or filters.

2. Press **F**.

RESULT

The staff-relative placement of the selected items is changed by setting **Placement**, **Position**, or **Direction** properties appropriately in the corresponding groups of the Properties panel. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain for items whose staff-relative placement properties are local.

Deactivating these properties resets items to their default placement.

NOTE

If you flipped multiple multi-segment slurs or tuplet brackets with different hook directions at the same time, all selected items are set to either above or below the staff, unless they all originally had compatible directions set.

RELATED LINKS
Filters on page 407
Large selections on page 403

Local vs. global properties on page 616
Changing the property scope on page 617
Copying property settings to other layouts/frame chains on page 599
Tucking index properties on page 825
Changing the stem direction of notes on page 963
Changing the staff-relative placement of beams on page 759
Changing the staff-relative placement of fingerings on page 874
Changing the staff-relative placement of tuplet brackets on page 1277
Moving items graphically on page 481
Positions of lyrics on page 925

Resetting the appearance of items

You can reset all changes you have made to the appearance of individual items, which returns them to the default settings. For some items, you can do this for the current layout and frame chain only or for all layouts and frame chains.

Properties relating to the appearance of items include those that change their style, type, and some additions, such as *poco a poco* text for dynamics.

PREREQUISITE

You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the items whose appearance you want to reset. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.

   TIP

   To select multiple items of the same type, you can use large selections and/or filters.

2. Choose **Edit** > **Reset Appearance**.

RESULT

All properties that affect the appearance of the selected items are reset to their default settings. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, any properties that are layout-specific and frame chain-specific are only reset in the current layout and frame chain.

RELATED LINKS

Notation Options dialog on page 679
Local vs. global properties on page 616
Changing the property scope on page 617
Copying property settings to other layouts/frame chains on page 599
Filters on page 407
Large selections on page 403

Resetting the position of items

You can reset the position of individual items you have moved graphically, which returns them to their default position. For some items, you can do this for the current layout and frame chain only or for all layouts and frame chains.

Properties relating to the position of items include horizontal and vertical offsets, beat-relative position, and staff-relative placement.

PREREQUISITE

You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the items whose position you want to reset. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.

   TIP

   To select multiple items of the same type, you can use large selections and/or filters.

2. Choose **Edit** > **Reset Position**.

RESULT

All properties that affect the position of the selected items are reset to their default settings. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, any properties that are layout-specific and frame chain-specific are only reset in the current layout and frame chain.

Hiding non-printing elements

You can temporarily hide all visible elements that do not print, such as signposts and selection highlights. This allows you to view the current layout as it will appear when printed/exported without switching to Print mode.

PROCEDURE

- Press and hold **\ (Windows) or ` (macOS)**.

RESULT

All non-printing elements in the current layout are hidden until you release the key command. Printing elements appear as they will when printed/exported.

TIP

You can also hide/show individual non-printing elements permanently.

RELATED LINKS

Annotations on page 554
Printing layouts on page 538
Exporting layouts as graphics files on page 542
Signposts on page 426
Hiding/Showing signposts on page 427
Hiding/Showing the system track on page 406
Hiding/Showing guide bar numbers on page 745
Hiding/Showing colors for notes out of range on page 951
Hiding/Showing voice colors on page 1304
Hiding/Showing region highlights on page 1122
Hiding/Showing slash region highlights on page 1134

Navigation

There are different ways you can navigate around the layout currently open in the music area, such as moving the selection to different items or bringing specific bar numbers or pages into view. Many navigation methods function in multiple modes.

If you have an item selected, you can navigate to other notes/items, which moves the selection to those notes/items.

RELATED LINKS
Workspace setup on page 43
Going to locations with the jump bar on page 66
Jump bar on page 65
Moving the caret manually on page 210

Navigating to other items in the music area

You can navigate to other notes and items in the music area after you have selected a note/item; for example, if you want to move the selection to other notes along the staff without using the mouse.

PROCEDURE

1. Select an item in the music area.
   - If you want to navigate through notes, select a note.
   - If you want to navigate through a particular type of item, such as rehearsal marks, select an item of that type.

     NOTE

     You can only navigate forwards/backwards through items on the same staff. You cannot navigate to other items of the same type on other staves.
2. Navigate to other notes or items in any of the following ways:
   - To navigate to the next item or note in the same voice, press **Right Arrow**.
   - To navigate to the previous item or note in the same voice, press **Left Arrow**.
   - To navigate to the closest note above the current selection, press **Up Arrow**.

     This navigates to any existing notes on the same staff first, then to the lowest note/rest on the staff above. If a whole chord was selected, this leaves the bottom note in the chord selected.
   - To navigate to the closest note below the current selection, press **Down Arrow**.

     This navigates to any existing notes on the same staff first, then to the highest note/rest on the staff below. If a whole chord was selected, this leaves the top note in the chord selected.
   - To navigate forwards to the note/rest at the start of the next bar, press **Ctrl/Cmd-Right Arrow**.
   - To navigate backwards to the note/rest at the start of the previous bar, press **Ctrl/Cmd-Left Arrow**.
   - To navigate to the top staff in the system, press **Ctrl/Cmd-Up Arrow**.
   - To navigate to the bottom staff in the system, press **Ctrl/Cmd-Down Arrow**.

3. Optional: Switch the selection to another type of item at the same rhythmic position in one of the following ways:
   - To cycle forwards through items, press **Tab**.
   - To cycle backwards through items, press **Shift-Tab**.

   NOTE

   You cannot switch the selection to system objects, such as system-attached text or rehearsal marks. However, you can select system objects directly and navigate through them.

4. Optional: After switching the selection to another type of item, navigate to other items of that type.

RELATED LINKS
System objects on page 1196

Going to flows

You can go to the next/previous flow in the current layout, which automatically brings the start of that flow into view in the music area. This is particularly useful when navigating around layouts that contain many flows.

These steps function in Setup, Write, and Engrave modes.

PROCEDURE

- Go to a different flow in one of the following ways:
  - To go to the previous flow in the layout, choose **Edit** > **Go To** > **Go To Previous Flow**.
  - To go to the next flow in the layout, choose **Edit** > **Go To** > **Go To Next Flow**.

RESULT

The music area updates to show the start of the corresponding flow. Dorico Elements automatically positions the top staff towards the top left of the music area.

TIP

You can assign key commands to both **Go To Previous Flow** and **Go To Next Flow** on the **Key Commands** page in **Preferences**.

Going to pages

You can go to any specified page in the current layout using its page number; for example, to jump quickly to the exact page that requires changes when editing music.

These steps function in Setup, Write, and Engrave modes.

PROCEDURE

1. Choose **Edit** > **Go To** > **Go To Page** to open the **Go To Page** dialog.
2. Enter the page number to which you want to go into the **Page** field.
3. Click **OK**.

RESULT

The music area updates to show the start of the corresponding page. Dorico Elements automatically centers the top of the page in the music area.

TIP

- You can assign a key command for **Go To Page** on the **Key Commands** page in **Preferences**.
- You can also move the view and navigate to other pages in the layout in other ways.

RELATED LINKS

Key Commands page in the Preferences dialog on page 59
Page arrangements for page view on page 42
Moving the view in the music area on page 420
Zooming in/out of the music area on page 420

Going to bars

You can go to any specific bar in any flow in the current layout; for example, to jump quickly to the exact bar that requires changes when editing music.

These steps function in Setup, Write, Engrave, and Play modes.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-G** to open the **Go To Bar** dialog.
2. Select the flow containing the bar to which you want to go from the **Flow** menu.
3. Enter the bar number to which you want to go into the **Bar** field.
4. Click **OK**.

RESULT

The music area updates to show the corresponding bar. Dorico Elements automatically positions the top staff towards the top left of the music area.

In Play mode, the playhead moves to the start of the corresponding bar. Dorico Elements automatically positions the playhead at the start of the ruler.

Going to rehearsal marks

You can go to any specific rehearsal mark in any flow in the current layout; for example, to jump quickly to passages that require changes when editing music.

These steps function in Setup, Write, and Engrave modes.

PROCEDURE

1. Choose **Edit** > **Go To** > **Go To Rehearsal Mark** to open the **Go To Rehearsal Mark** dialog.
2. Select the flow containing the rehearsal mark to which you want to go from the **Flow** menu.
3. Enter the rehearsal mark to which you want to go into the **Rehearsal mark** field.
4. Click **OK**.

RESULT

The music area updates to show the corresponding rehearsal mark.

TIP

You can assign a key command for **Go To Rehearsal Mark** on the **Key Commands** page in **Preferences**.

Moving the view in the music area

You can move the view in the music area to show different parts of layouts. For example, you can scroll through a layout to view each page in sequence.

PROCEDURE

- Move the view in any of the following ways:
  - To move the view upwards/downwards, scroll upwards/downwards on a mouse wheel or swipe upwards/downwards on a touchpad.
  - To move the view to the right/left, **Shift**-scroll upwards/downwards on a mouse wheel or swipe to the right/left on a touchpad.
  - To navigate to the next page, press **End (horizontal page arrangements) or Page Down (vertical page arrangements)**.
  - To navigate to the previous page, press **Home (horizontal page arrangements) or Page Up (vertical page arrangements)**.
  - To navigate to the first page, press **Ctrl/Cmd-Home**.
  - To navigate to the last page, press **Ctrl/Cmd-End**.
  - In the status bar, click **Hand Tool**, then click and drag in any empty space within the page boundaries in the music area.

    The mouse pointer changes into a hand symbol during the move.

RESULT

The view in the music area is moved.

TIP

- You change the maximum overscroll amount, that is, how far beyond the edges of pages you can move the view, on the **General** page in **Preferences**.
- You can assign a key command for **Center Selection** on the **Key Commands** page in **Preferences**. This command automatically brings the selection into view.

RELATED LINKS

Status bar on page 39
Selection tools on page 41

Zooming in/out of the music area

You can change the zoom level in the music area; for example, if you want a larger overview when inputting notes, but want to see notes and notations more closely when making detailed graphical amendments.

PREREQUISITE

If you want to keep a specific item in the center of the music area when you zoom in/out, you have selected that item.

PROCEDURE

1. Zoom in in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Ctrl/Cmd-= or Z**.
   - Spread two fingers outwards on a touchpad.
   - **Ctrl/Cmd**-scroll upwards on a mouse wheel.
   - Use the zoom options in the status bar.
2. Zoom out in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Ctrl/Cmd-- or X**.
   - Pinch two fingers together on a touchpad.
   - **Ctrl/Cmd**-scroll downwards on a mouse wheel.
   - Use the zoom options in the status bar.

RESULT

The zoom level in the music area is changed. If you had anything selected, Dorico Elements uses your selection as the focal point of the zoom. If you had nothing selected, Dorico Elements focuses on the area previously in the center of the view.

RELATED LINKS

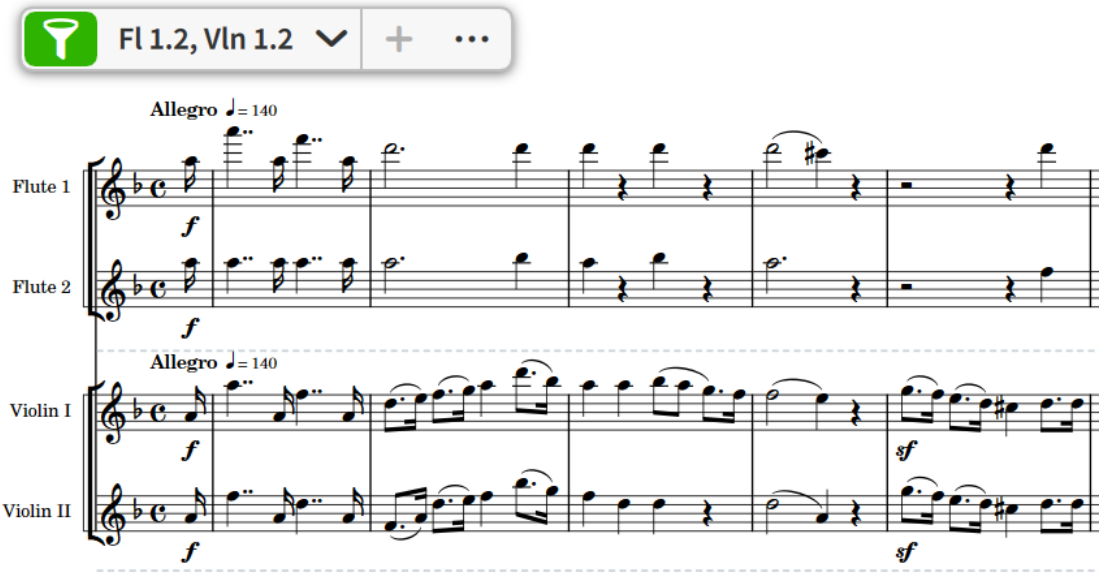
Zoom options on page 42
Zooming in/out of tracks on page 501
Workspace setup on page 43

Instrument filters

Instrument filters allow you to show only the staves of selected instruments in galley view in Write mode. This can be useful in large projects when you want to focus on a specific set of instruments, such as only the woodwinds or strings.

When instrument filters are active, dashed lines are shown at the vertical positions of hidden staves, and you can only select and edit music on visible staves.

Instrument filters are layout-specific.



Instrument filter containing flute and violin instruments active in galley view

TIP

You can assign key commands for up to ten instrument filter presets on the **Key Commands** page in **Preferences**. The instruments filtered by these commands vary in each layout and project.

RELATED LINKS
Switching to galley/page view on page 50
Selecting notes/items on page 401
Editing items on page 409
Arranging tools on page 431
Hiding/Showing empty staves on page 562

Instrument filter overlay

The instrument filter overlay allows you to apply instrument filters to layouts and add new instrument filters. It only appears in galley view in Write mode.

- You can hide/show the instrument filter overlay in Write mode by choosing **View** > **Instrument Filter Overlay**.

The instrument filter overlay contains the following options:

Filter

Activates/Deactivates the selected instrument filter. Only available when the layout contains at least one instrument filter.

Filter when deactivated

Filter when activated

Instrument filter menu

Allows you to select the instrument filter you want to apply to the current layout. Only available when **Filter** is activated.

Add Instrument Filter

Adds an instrument filter containing the instruments on which you have selected items. Only available when at least one item is selected in the music area.

Manage Instrument Filters

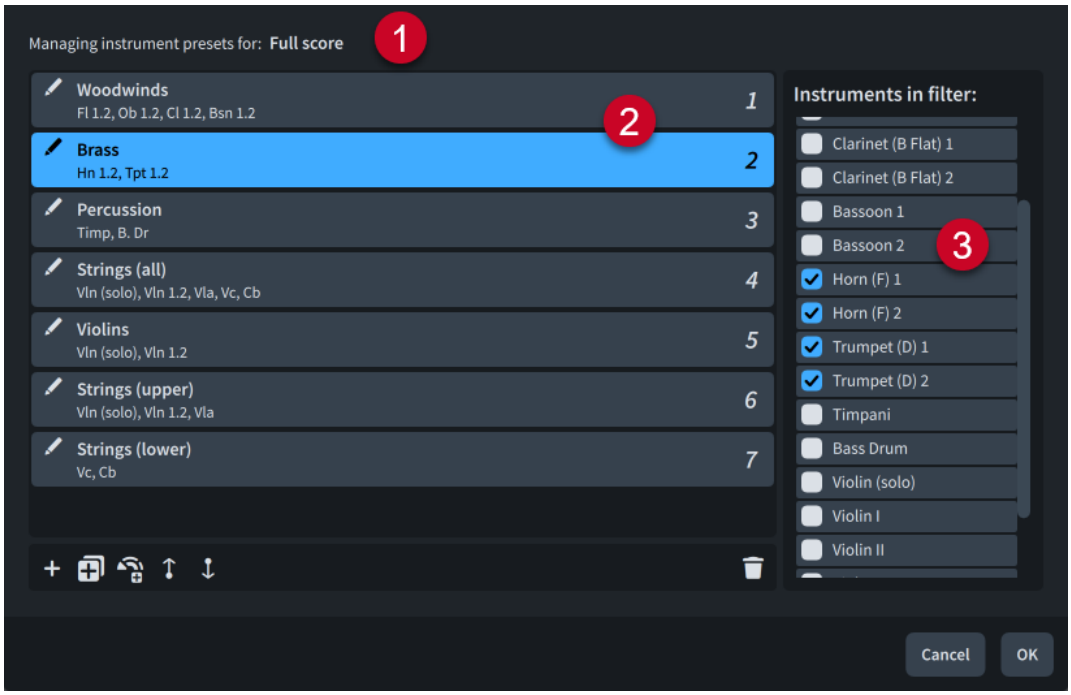
Opens the **Manage Instrument Filters** dialog, which allows you to add, edit, and delete instrument filters for the current layout.

Manage Instrument Filters dialog

The **Manage Instrument Filters** dialog allows you to add, edit, and delete instrument filters for the current layout.

You can open the **Manage Instrument Filters** dialog in Write mode in any of the following ways:

- In the instrument filter overlay, click **Manage Instrument Filters** ···.
- Choose **Write** > **Instrument Visibility** > **Edit Instrument Filter Presets**.



The **Manage Instrument Filters** dialog comprises the following:

1 Managing instrument presets for

Displays the name of the layout whose instrument filters are listed in the dialog.

2 Instrument filters list

Contains the instrument filters set for the layout. Each instrument filter displays its name and the instruments it contains. If multiple instrument filters contain the same instruments, Dorico Elements displays a warning.

The first ten instrument filters show a number corresponding to their order in the list. This denotes the instrument filters for which you can assign key commands on the **Key Commands** page in **Preferences**.

Rename Instrument Filter allows you to rename each instrument filter.

The action bar at the bottom of the list contains the following options:

- **Add Filter Preset**: Adds a new empty instrument filter.
- **Duplicate Filter Preset**: Creates a copy of an existing instrument filter that you can edit separately from the original.
- **Add Presets From Instrument Families**: Generates an instrument filter for each instrument family in the layout automatically, such as woodwind and brass.
- **Move Up**: Moves the selected instrument filter up the list, which can change its key command.
- **Move Down**: Moves the selected instrument filter down the list, which can change its key command.

3 **Instruments in filter list**

Contains the instruments in the layout. Allows you to change the instruments included in the selected instrument filter by activating/deactivating instrument checkboxes.

Activating/Deactivating instrument filters

You can activate/deactivate instrument filters at any time in each layout independently. For example, if you want to show only woodwind staves whilst working on the woodwind section.

PREREQUISITE

- You are in galley view.
- The instrument filter overlay is shown.
- You have added the instrument filters you want to use.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, open the layout in which you want to activate/deactivate instrument filters.
2. In the instrument filter overlay, click **Filter**.

Filter when activated

Filter when deactivated

3. Optional: If you activated instrument filters, select the instrument filter you want to use from the menu.

RESULT

Instrument filters are activated/deactivated. When instrument filters are active, dashed lines are shown at the vertical positions of hidden staves and you can only select and edit music on visible staves.

TIP

- You can also activate/deactivate and select instrument filters from the **Write** > **Instrument Visibility** menu.
- You can assign a key command for **Use Instrument Filter** on the **Key Commands** page in **Preferences**.
- You can assign key commands for up to ten instrument filter presets on the **Key Commands** page in **Preferences**. The instruments filtered by these commands vary in each layout and project.

RELATED LINKS
Switching to galley/page view on page 50
Switching between layouts on page 43
Selecting notes/items on page 401
Editing items on page 409
Arranging tools on page 431
Hiding/Showing empty staves on page 562
Key Commands page in the Preferences dialog on page 59

Adding instrument filters

You can add any number of instrument filters to each layout independently.

PREREQUISITE

- You are in galley view.
- The instrument filter overlay is shown.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, open the layout to which you want to add instrument filters.
2. Select at least one item belonging to each instrument you want to include in the instrument filter.
3. In the instrument filter overlay, click **Add Instrument Filter** `+`.

RESULT

A new instrument filter containing the selected instruments is added to the layout open in the music area. Dorico Elements automatically activates instrument filters in the layout and selects the new instrument filter.

TIP

- You can also add, edit, and delete instrument filters in the **Manage Instrument Filters** dialog.
- You can assign key commands for up to ten instrument filter presets on the **Key Commands** page in **Preferences**. The instruments filtered by these commands vary in each layout and project.

Deleting instrument filters

You can delete instrument filters you no longer need from each layout independently.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, open the layout from which you want to delete instrument filters.
2. Choose **Write** > **Instrument Visibility** > **Edit Instrument Filter Presets** to open the **Manage Instrument Filters** dialog.
3. Select the instrument filter you want to delete.
4. In the action bar, click **Delete Filter Preset** .

RESULT

The selected instrument filter is deleted from the layout open in the music area.

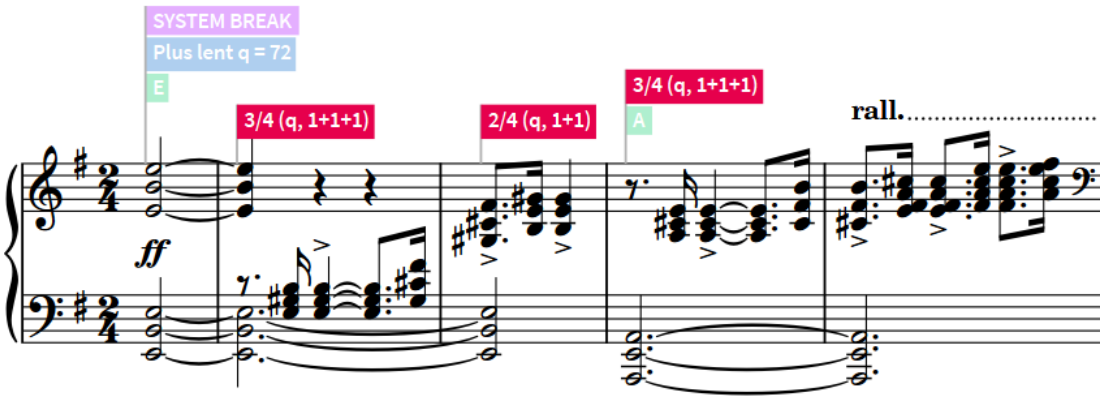
Signposts

In Dorico Elements, signposts indicate the positions of important items or changes that cannot be seen in the score, such as key signatures with no accidentals, hidden items, and rhythmic feel changes.

Signposts have different colors depending on the item they mark because many items can show signposts, such as hidden bar numbers and time signatures. They are selectable, meaning you can use signposts to change properties of hidden/invisible items; for example, by selecting system break signposts in order to change the staff size from that position. Selected signposts appear solid, while unselected signposts appear translucent.

Signposts include a text summary of the hidden/invisible item to help you identify it. For example, time signature signposts include the time signature, expressed as a fraction, and its beat subdivision.

When multiple signposts exist at the same rhythmic position or in close proximity to each other, they stack vertically so that they do not overlap and remain legible.



Multiple signposts for different items above the staff, with time signature signposts selected

NOTE

By default, signposts are not printed or included when you export graphics files.

RELATED LINKS

Annotations on page 554

Hiding/Showing signposts

You can hide/show all signposts or only hide/show signposts for specific items at any time in Setup, Write, and Engrave modes.

PROCEDURE

- Hide/Show signposts in any of the following ways:
  - To hide/show all signposts, choose **View** > **Signposts** > **Hide Signposts**.
  - To hide/show signposts for specific items, choose **View** > **Signposts** > **[Type of item]**.

Insert mode

Insert mode changes how notes are input and how edits you make outside of note input affect the music. When Insert mode is activated, notes are pushed to subsequent rhythmic positions instead of being overwritten if you input new notes or lengthen existing notes. Similarly, deleting notes or reducing their duration with Insert mode activated pulls surrounding notes closer together without leaving rests between them.

For example, if you input four quarter notes with Insert mode activated, all subsequent notes are pushed four quarter note beats back to accommodate the new notes.

Edits outside of note input that are affected by Insert mode include copying/pasting notes, deleting notes, changing the duration of notes including by adding/removing rhythm dots, or inputting time signatures.

The voices and staves affected by Insert mode depend on the Insert mode scope. The current Insert mode scope is indicated in the Notes toolbox and by the caret during note input.

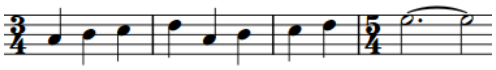
You can set a single rhythmic position in each flow as an Insert mode stop position, which prevents any material beyond the stop point being affected by inserted notes. For example, if you want to insert notes at the start of a flow but want to preserve material from a specific position later in the flow. Stop positions appear as a vertical translucent line that spans all staves.

- You can activate/deactivate Insert mode in Write mode by pressing **I** or clicking **Insert** in the Notes toolbox.

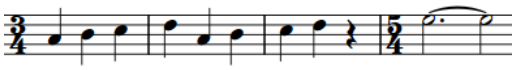
NOTE

You cannot have both Insert mode and Chord mode activated simultaneously.

When Insert mode is not activated, Dorico Elements does not add extra beats before an existing time signature if you change a previous time signature. When Insert mode is activated, Dorico Elements inserts beats before existing time signatures to fill the final bar.



3/4 time signature input without Insert mode activated



3/4 time signature input with Insert mode activated

RELATED LINKS
Inputting notes in Insert mode on page 226
Rhythmic position on page 26
Chord mode on page 242

Caret on page 205
System track on page 404
Inputting notes on page 211
Copying and pasting notes/items on page 433
Exploding music onto multiple staves on page 441
Changing the duration of notes on page 248
Inputting notes with rhythm dots on page 219
Deleting notes/items on page 431

Insert mode scopes

Insert mode has different scopes, from affecting only selected voices to affecting all players and changing the duration of the current bar. All scopes apply until the Insert mode stop position or the end of the flow, whichever comes first.

You can change the Insert mode scope in Write mode in any of the following ways:

- Press **Alt/Opt-I** to cycle through the different Insert mode scopes.
- In the Notes toolbox, click and hold **Insert**, then click the scope you want.
- Choose **Write** > **Insert Scope** > **[Scope]**.

In Dorico Elements, there are the following Insert mode scopes:

Voice

Insert mode only affects the selected voices. During note input, this is the voice indicated by the caret indicator. Outside of note input, this includes all selected voices, such as when you copy and paste material across multiple staves.

Player

Insert mode affects all voices and instruments belonging to the selected players. During note input, dotted lines are shown on staves affected by the Insert mode scope across which the caret does not already extend.

Global

Insert mode affects all players in the flow. During note input, dotted lines are shown on staves affected by the Insert mode scope across which the caret does not already extend.

Global Adjustment of Current Bar

Insert mode affects all players in the flow, changes the duration of the current bar, and updates its time signature to reflect its new duration. For example, inputting notes extends the duration of bars while deleting notes shortens the duration of bars.

During note input, dotted lines are shown on staves affected by the Insert mode scope across which the caret does not already extend.

TIP

You can use the **Global Adjustment of Current Bar** Insert mode scope to create and delete pick-up bars by deleting notes/rests in the first bar in the flow. You can also use it to shorten the last bar in flows that start with a pick-up bar.

RELATED LINKS
Caret on page 205
Deleting notes/items on page 431
Arranging tools on page 431
Players on page 120
Voices on page 1303
Time signatures on page 1249
Pick-up bars on page 1253

Changing the Insert mode scope

You can change the Insert mode scope; for example, if you want to switch from inserting notes into the selected voice only to inserting rhythmic time for all players.

The current Insert mode scope is indicated in the Notes toolbox and by the caret during note input.

PROCEDURE

- In Write mode, change the Insert mode scope in any of the following ways:
  - Press **Alt/Opt-I** to cycle through the different Insert mode scopes.
  - In the Notes toolbox, click and hold **Insert**, then click the scope you want.
  - Choose **Write** > **Insert Scope** > **[Scope]**.

RELATED LINKS
Notes toolbox on page 187
Caret on page 205
Inputting notes in Insert mode on page 226

Setting Insert mode stop positions

You can set a single rhythmic position in each flow as an Insert mode stop position, which prevents any material beyond the stop point being affected by inserted notes. For example, if you want to insert notes at the start of a flow but want to preserve material from a specific position later in the flow.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the rhythmic position that you want to be the Insert mode stop position in any of the following ways:
   - Select an item in the music area.
   - In the system track, select the bar whose start barline you want to set as the stop position.
2. Set the Insert mode stop position in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Shift-Alt/Opt-I**.

- In the system track, click **Set Edit Stop Position** ⛔.
- Choose **Write** > **Insert Scope** > **Set Edit Stop Position**.

RESULT

The Insert mode stop position for the flow is set at the selected rhythmic position. It appears as a vertical translucent line that spans all staves.

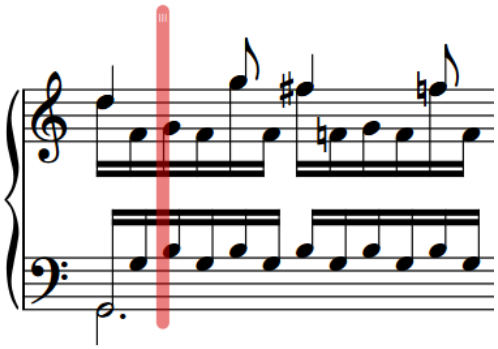
Because each flow can only have a single stop position, any existing stop position elsewhere in the flow is deleted.

When Insert mode is activated, existing notes that would otherwise be pushed beyond the stop position are deleted.

TIP

You can also move stop positions to barlines by clicking the top handle and dragging to the right/left.

EXAMPLE



Insert mode stop position across two piano staves

RELATED LINKS

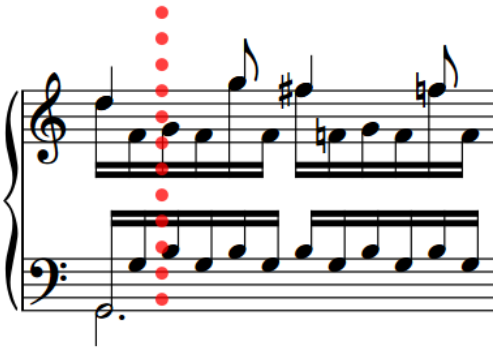
System track on page 404

Deleting Insert mode stop positions

You can delete Insert mode stop positions after they have been set.

PROCEDURE

- In Write mode, delete Insert mode stop positions in any of the following ways:
  - Select an item at the rhythmic position of the Insert mode stop position and press **Shift-Alt/Opt-I**.
  - In the system track, click **Set Edit Stop Position** ⛔ above existing stop positions.
  - Click the stop position top handle and drag it in any direction until the mouse pointer is outside the music, then release the mouse.



TIP

When the mouse pointer is in the correct position, the stop position appears as a dotted line.

Arranging tools

Arranging tools in Dorico Elements allow you to allocate notes to different staves and voices quickly and efficiently.

These tools include copying notes and items to multiple staves at the same time, and multiple times within a selected range, moving notes between staves, and changing the voices of notes.

RELATED LINKS
Filters on page 407
Transposing tools on page 444
Selecting notes/items on page 401
Copying and pasting articulations on page 724
Changing the duration of notes on page 248
Repitching notes without changing their rhythm on page 448
Splitting notes by duration on page 249
Rhythmic grid on page 204
Insert mode on page 427
Chord mode on page 242
Musical transformations on page 453

Deleting notes/items

You can delete any notes/items you have input into your project independently of each other, such as deleting repeat endings without deleting the notes in them. However, you must be in Write mode. You cannot delete notes and items in Setup, Engrave, or Print modes.

You can also delete notes in the Key Editor, but not other notation items.

NOTE

You cannot delete initial clefs at the start of flows or clefs shown automatically at the start of each system. If you do not want any clef to appear on a staff, you can input an invisible clef.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the notes, items, and/or the signposts of items you want to delete.

NOTE

- You must select barlines directly, not their signposts.
- If you delete some but not all dynamics from a dynamics group that is linked to other staves, the selected dynamics are also deleted from all linked staves.
- Deleting only tuplets does not delete the notes within them, and vice versa.
- To select multiple items of the same type, you can use large selections and/or filters.

2. Press **Backspace or Delete**.

RESULT

All selected notes/items are deleted from your project. Dorico Elements moves your selection to the most logical and nearby item to the deleted items. For example, if you deleted a note, Dorico Elements's first choice is the nearest note in the same voice.

If Insert mode was activated, notes following deleted notes move up to fill the gap. If Insert mode was deactivated, deleted notes are replaced by implicit rests as appropriate.

TIP

You can also delete markers by selecting them in the **Markers** section of the Video panel and clicking **Delete** in the action bar.

If a slur began or ended on a deleted note, the slur is automatically repositioned to the next/previous notehead. If only one note is left under a slur, the slur is automatically deleted.

Holds and pauses are not automatically deleted if they are not selected when you delete notes. They are positioned above the note/rest closest to their rhythmic position, or over whole bar rests if you delete all notes in a bar.

Any repeat barlines input as part of repeat endings are not deleted automatically when you delete repeat endings.

When you delete barlines, the two bars on either side combine into one bar, containing the same number of beats but without changing the time signature. This might cause note, rest, and beam groupings to change.

When you delete time signatures, subsequent bars are re-barred according to the previous time signature in the score, up until the next time signature or the end of the flow, whichever comes first. Flows without time signatures are notated in an open meter, but notes and items retain their duration and positions.

When you delete clefs and key signatures, the pitches of notes are not changed but they are automatically notated according to the previous clef and key signature on the staff, such as with additional accidentals, up to the next existing one or the end of the flow, whichever comes first. Flows without any key signatures are treated as if there were an open/atonal key signature rather than A minor or C major.

When you delete octave lines, any notes to which the deleted octave lines previously applied are shown at either concert pitch or transposed pitch, depending on your current setting for the layout.

If you delete some but not all dynamics in a dynamics group that is linked to other staves, the selected dynamics are also deleted from all linked staves. However, if you select and delete the whole group of dynamics from a single staff, those dynamics are not deleted from other linked staves. Deleting immediate dynamics immediately before/after hairpins can automatically adjust the length of hairpins, depending on the context.

When you delete rehearsal marks, any subsequent rehearsal marks are adjusted until the next change in the sequence or the end of the flow, whichever comes first. For example, if you delete

the first rehearsal mark, the second rehearsal mark shows either the letter A, the number 1, or the bar number, depending on your choice of sequence type.

Deleting tempo marks also removes them from the Tempo editor and the Tempo track in Play mode. The tempo in playback follows the previous tempo mark, or the default tempo of 120 bpm if there is no previous tempo mark.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

If you deleted notes/items because you want to change where they occur, you can input new notes/items at the new positions.

RELATED LINKS

Signposts on page 426
Editing items on page 409
Selecting notes/items on page 401
Filters on page 407
Selecting lyrics using filters on page 925
Deleting rests on page 1149
Deleting notes in the Key Editor on page 638
Note and rest grouping on page 774
Turning existing notes into tuplets on page 1273
Turning tuplets into normal notes on page 1273
Insert mode on page 427
Insert mode scopes on page 428
Groups of dynamics on page 853
Linked dynamics on page 855
Accidental duration rules on page 719
Changing the rehearsal mark sequence type on page 1097
Inputting notes on page 211
Notations input on page 259

Copying and pasting notes/items

You can copy and paste items, including notes and notations, to other rhythmic positions and staves in different ways.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the notes/items you want to copy.

   TIP

   To select multiple items of the same type, you can use large selections and/or filters.

2. Copy the selected notes/items to other rhythmic positions in any of the following ways:
   - **Alt/Opt**-click each position to which you want to paste them.
   - Press **Ctrl/Cmd-C**, select the position to which you want to paste them, then press **Ctrl/Cmd-V**.
   - To repeat the material directly after itself, press **R**.
   - To copy notes/items to the staff above, select them and choose **Edit** > **Paste Special** > **Duplicate to Staff Above**.
   - To copy notes/items to the staff below, select them and choose **Edit** > **Paste Special** > **Duplicate to Staff Below**.

RESULT

The selected notes/items are copied without deleting them from their original positions. By default, any MIDI CC points in the copied range are also pasted.

If you copied dynamics or slurs to other staves at the same rhythmic position, they are automatically linked by default.

TIP

You can assign key commands for **Duplicate to Staff Above** and **Duplicate to Staff Below** on the **Key Commands** page in **Preferences**.

RELATED LINKS

Disabling automatic copying of MIDI data when pasting on page 436
Copying and pasting articulations on page 724
Copying and pasting lyrics on page 922
Copying and pasting notes in the Key Editor on page 637
Copying and pasting points in the Key Editor on page 628
Copying dynamic points to other instruments on page 649
Copying MIDI points to other instruments on page 655
Filters on page 407
Large selections on page 403
Selecting/Deselecting notes and items individually on page 401
Exploding music onto multiple staves on page 441
Moving notes/items to other staves on page 440
Resetting notes crossed to other staves on page 768
Moving notes/items rhythmically on page 437
Lengthening/Shortening items on page 410
Changing the duration of notes on page 248
Splitting notes by duration on page 249
Disabling automatic linking of dynamics and slurs when pasting on page 436
Repitching notes without changing their rhythm on page 448
Key Commands page in the Preferences dialog on page 59
Linked dynamics on page 855
Linked slurs on page 1169
Musical transformations on page 453
Numbered bar regions on page 1127
Insert mode on page 427
Chord mode on page 242

Copying and pasting notes/items to multiple staves

You can copy and paste notes and other items to multiple staves at once; for example, to copy a single phrase to all the woodwind staves when they are playing in unison.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the notes/items you want to copy to multiple staves.

   TIP

   To select multiple items of the same type, you can use large selections and/or filters.

2. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-C** to copy the selected notes/items.
3. Select an item on each staff to which you want to paste the selected items.

NOTE

The earliest selected item on the top selected staff determines the rhythmic position for pasted items on all staves.

4. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-V** to paste the selected notes/items.

RESULT

The selected notes/items are copied to all of the selected staves. By default, any MIDI CC points in the copied range are also pasted.

If you copied dynamics or slurs to other staves at the same rhythmic position, they are automatically linked by default.

TIP

If you selected a range of notes/items on each staff, the selected notes/items are also pasted multiple times to fill the selected range.

RELATED LINKS

Filters on page 407
Large selections on page 403
Disabling automatic copying of MIDI data when pasting on page 436
Linked dynamics on page 855
Linked slurs on page 1169
Resetting notes crossed to other staves on page 768

Copying and pasting notes/items to fill a selected range

You can copy and paste items, including notes and notations, multiple times within a selected range at once; for example, if you want to fill multiple bars with the same phrase.

NOTE

You can only copy and paste items that have a duration to fill a selection. For example, you can copy and paste gradual dynamics to fill a selection but not immediate dynamics.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the notes/items you want to copy throughout a range.

   TIP

   To select multiple items of the same type, you can use large selections and/or filters.

2. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-C** to copy the selected notes/items.
3. Select the range throughout which you want to paste the selected notes/items.
4. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-V** to paste the selected notes/items.

RESULT

The selected notes/items are copied as many times as will fit within the selected range without extending beyond it. By default, any MIDI CC points in the copied range are also pasted.

If you copied dynamics or slurs to other staves at the same rhythmic position, they are automatically linked by default.

TIP

If you selected a range on multiple staves, the selected items are also pasted to multiple staves.

RELATED LINKS
Filters on page 407
Large selections on page 403
Splitting notes by duration on page 249

Disabling automatic linking of dynamics and slurs when pasting

By default, dynamics and slurs are automatically linked when you copy them to other staves at the same rhythmic position. You can disable this behavior so dynamics and slurs are not linked by default.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-,** to open **Preferences**.
2. In the category list, click **Note Input and Editing**.
3. In the **Editing** section, deactivate **Link dynamics and slurs to existing items when pasting**.
4. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RELATED LINKS
Preferences dialog on page 58
Linked dynamics on page 855
Linked slurs on page 1169

Disabling automatic copying of MIDI data when pasting

By default, all MIDI CC, MIDI pitch bend, and dynamic points are copied when you copy the notes to which they apply. You can disable this behavior for all future projects on your computer.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-,** to open **Preferences**.
2. In the category list, click **Note Input and Editing**.
3. In the **Note Input** section, deactivate **Include MIDI CC, pitch bend and dynamics from Key Editor when copying music**.
4. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RELATED LINKS
Preferences dialog on page 58
Copying and pasting notes/items on page 433
Copying and pasting notes in the Key Editor on page 637

Moving notes/items rhythmically

You can move notes and items to new rhythmic positions to the right/left along staves after they have been input. For example, if you want a *cresc.* dynamic to start a beat later. You can also move individual dynamics and playing techniques within a group.

NOTE

- These steps do not apply to the following items: barlines, notehead brackets, glissando lines, notehead-attached horizontal lines, fingerings and fingering slides, jazz articulations, guitar bends, vibrato bar dives/returns, pedal retakes, and tremolo strokes. If you want to change the rhythmic positions of these items, you must delete them from their original positions and input new ones at the new positions.

  We recommend deleting and inputting new arpeggio signs and vertical lines rather than moving them. If you move arpeggio signs and vertical lines to the rhythmic position of a rest, they are deleted.
- Because markers have a fixed position in time, moving markers relative to the notated music automatically changes the tempo on either side of the marker. If you want to move a marker to a new time position, you must change the timecode of the marker; for example, if you want to move it from 25 seconds to 28 seconds.

PREREQUISITE

You have chosen the appropriate rhythmic grid resolution.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the notes, items, or signposts that you want to move.

   NOTE

   - If you want tuplet notes to remain tuplets, you must also select their tuplet numbers/ratios, brackets, or tuplet signposts, otherwise notes become normal notes of their rhythmic value when you move them beyond the boundaries of tuplets.
   - You can only move a single slur, marker, repeat ending, or bar repeat region at a time.
   - When using the mouse, you can only move a single item at a time. You cannot move notes or the following items using the mouse: tuplets, lyrics, slash regions, time signatures, arpeggio signs, and vertical lines.
   - You can only select clefs that you have input. You cannot select initial clefs at the start of flows or clefs shown automatically at the start of each system.
   - To move a single dynamic within a group, you must click and drag it with the mouse. If you use the key commands, the whole group is moved.
   - Moving multiple playing techniques or dynamics in the same group at the same time ungroups them.

2. Optional: If you selected notes and do not want them to overwrite existing notes they pass over as part of their move, activate one of the following:

   - If you want the selected notes to overlap with existing notes, activate Chord mode by pressing **Q** or clicking **Chords** in the Notes toolbox.
   - If you want the selected notes to move through existing notes, activate Insert mode in Write mode by pressing **I** or clicking **Insert** in the Notes toolbox.

NOTE

Moving notes rhythmically with Insert mode activated can affect the durations of existing notes the selected notes move through.

3. Move the notes, items, and/or signposts in any of the following ways:
   - To move them to the right, press **Alt/Opt-Right Arrow**.
   - To move them to the left, press **Alt/Opt-Left Arrow**.

     NOTE

     Most items move according to the current rhythmic grid resolution. A single selection of the following items moves to adjacent noteheads, bars, or barlines: dynamics, ornaments, slurs, lines, octave lines, pedal lines, playing techniques, rehearsal marks, repeat endings, and bar repeat regions.

   - To move items to the right according to the current rhythmic grid resolution, press **Ctrl/Cmd-Alt/Opt-Right Arrow**.
   - To move items to the left according to the current rhythmic grid resolution, press **Ctrl/Cmd-Alt/Opt-Left Arrow**.
   - Click and drag the selected item to the right/left.

     NOTE

     The following items move to adjacent noteheads, bars, or barlines: dynamics, ornaments, slurs, horizontal lines, octave lines, pedal lines, playing techniques, rehearsal marks, repeat endings, and bar repeat regions.

RESULT

The selected notes, items, and/or signposts are moved to new rhythmic positions. Attachment lines link items to the rhythmic positions to which they apply.

Most items move according to the current rhythmic grid resolution. However, a single selection of some items automatically moves to adjacent noteheads, bars, or barlines. When multiple items are selected, they move as a block according to the current rhythmic grid resolution.

NOTE

Only a single instance of many items, such as tempo marks and clefs, can exist at each rhythmic position on each staff. If an item passes over another item of the same type as part of its move, the existing item is deleted or shortened accordingly.

You can undo this action, but any items deleted in the process are only restored if you moved items using the keyboard.

Items that can have multiple instances at the same rhythmic position on the same staff include dynamics, octave lines, playing techniques, horizontal lines, slash regions, and text items. However, if you move multiple items together, any existing items of the same type between the selected items or that they pass over as part of the move are deleted or shortened accordingly unless Insert mode is activated.

Notes are automatically positioned according to their rhythmic duration and position relative to other notes.

If a tuplet number/ratio or tuplet bracket is included in the selection, the whole tuplet is moved along the staff. If it crosses a barline, the tuplet is automatically adjusted to compensate.

However, tuplets are not automatically adjusted at the mid-point of bars, where it is convention to split tuplets to show the beat division. You must enter two tuplets manually to show the beat division at the mid-point of bars.

Items such as clefs, key signatures, and time signatures take effect from their new positions until the next item of the same type or the end of the flow, whichever comes first. Barlines on either side of a moved time signature are automatically updated up to the previous/next existing time signature, or the start/end of the flow.

If you moved divisi change signposts, any music on divisi staves outside of divisi passages is automatically hidden, and any unison ranges before/after divisi passages are automatically updated.

If you moved harp pedal diagrams and colors are shown for notes out of range, any notes that no longer fit with the prevailing harp pedal diagram appear red.

The position of holds and pauses you have moved might not appear to change. For example, if one staff has a bar rest and you move a fermata rhythmically within the bar, the fermata still appears above the bar rest.

The rhythmic duration of slurs is usually maintained. However, depending on the rhythms they cross as they move, slurs may cover longer/shorter durations than before the move.

Moving repeat endings does not automatically input, delete, or move repeat barlines.

When you move markers, their fixed position in time is not changed. Therefore, the tempo immediately preceding the marker automatically updates so that the marker occurs at the correct time. For example, moving a marker to the right increases the preceding tempo. Any gradual tempo changes between the preceding tempo change or the start of the flow and the marker are removed. The tempo change affects the positions of all other markers in the flow relative to the notated music.

RELATED LINKS

Rhythmic grid on page 204
Notes toolbox on page 187
Note spacing on page 579
Chord mode on page 242
Insert mode on page 427
Note and rest grouping on page 774
Tuplet brackets on page 1276
Tuplet numbers/ratios on page 1279
Changing the duration of notes on page 248
Lengthening/Shortening items on page 410
Changing the staff-relative placement of items on page 414
Moving notes/items to other staves on page 440
Creating cross-staff beams/tremolos on page 764
Moving figured bass resolutions on page 867
Moving the center of messa di voce hairpins on page 849
Splitting pedal lines on page 1052
Moving items graphically on page 481
Hiding/Showing colors for notes out of range on page 951
Groups of dynamics on page 853
Groups of playing techniques on page 1072
Deleting notes/items on page 431
Input methods for lines on page 367
Input methods for ornaments, arpeggio signs, glissando lines, and jazz articulations on page 325
Input methods for guitar bends and guitar techniques on page 338
Input methods for clefs and octave lines on page 314
Input methods for repeats and tremolos on page 386

Adding retakes with the popover on page 360
Adding retakes with the panel on page 362
Inputting fingerings on page 262
Hiding/Showing fingering slides on page 886
Showing brackets on noteheads on page 954
Changing the timecodes of markers on page 1102

Moving notes/items to other staves

You can move notes and items to other staves of any type; for example, if you want to move individual notes from one keyboard staff to another after importing a keyboard part from a MIDI file.

NOTE

- These steps do not apply to pedal lines or system objects.
- If you want notes to appear on a different staff but remain attached to their original staff, such as to create a cross-staff beam, you can cross notes to other staves instead.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the notes and/or items you want to move to another staff.

   TIP

   To select multiple items of the same type, you can use large selections and/or filters.

2. Move the selected notes/items another staff in one of the following ways:
   - To move them to the staff above, press **Alt/Opt-N**.
   - To move them to the staff below, press **Alt/Opt-M**.
   - Choose **Edit** > **Paste Special** > **Move to Staff Above**.
   - Choose **Edit** > **Paste Special** > **Move to Staff Below**.

   TIP

   You can also choose these options from the context menu.

RESULT

The selected notes and/or items are moved to another staff by cutting them from their original staff and pasting them to the new staff. By default, notes are pasted into the first voice active on that staff.

Notes within tuplets remain tuplets even if you did not select the tuplet bracket, tuplet number/ratio, or tuplet signpost.

RELATED LINKS

Filters on page 407
Large selections on page 403
Creating cross-staff beams/tremolos on page 764
Moving notes/items rhythmically on page 437
Copying and pasting notes/items to multiple staves on page 434
Changing the duration of notes on page 248
Changing the pitch of individual notes on page 444
Changing the positions of system objects on page 1197

Input methods for playing techniques, pedal lines, string indicators, and harp pedal diagrams on page 351

Reducing music onto fewer staves

You can reduce music onto fewer staves than it was originally notated across; for example, to create a piano reduction of a choral piece.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the music you want to reduce.

   TIP

   We recommend reducing sections in rhythmic unison separately from sections with different rhythms.

2. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-C** to copy the music.
3. Select the staves onto which you want to reduce the selected music.
4. Choose **Edit** > **Paste Special** > **Reduce**. You can also choose this option from the context menu.

RESULT

The selected music is reduced onto the selected staves.

If the rhythms match throughout the selection, Dorico Elements merges the music into a single voice by default. Unison notes are removed so that only a single note of the same pitch is pasted at a single rhythmic position, and clef changes, octave lines, and cues are also deleted. If the rhythms are different at any point in the selection, Dorico Elements uses as many voices as needed to preserve the rhythms.

Each destination staff receives the music of at least one instrument, and the division of the music to be reduced is calculated from the top selected staff downwards. For example, if you copy material from five instruments and reduce it to three, the top selected staff is assigned the music from the first and second instruments, the second selected staff is assigned music from the third and fourth instruments, and the third selected staff is assigned music from the fifth instrument.

RELATED LINKS

Moving notes/items to other staves on page 440
Changing the voice of existing notes on page 442

Exploding music onto multiple staves

You can explode music onto more staves than it was originally notated for; for example, to get notes in dense piano chords onto all the woodwind staves quickly.

PREREQUISITE

You have reset any cross-staff notes to their default staves.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the music you want to explode.
2. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-C** to copy the music.
3. Select the staves onto which you want to explode the selected music.

4. Choose **Edit** > **Paste Special** > **Explode**. You can also choose this option from the context menu.

RESULT

The selected music is exploded onto the selected staves. By default, each destination staff receives at least one of the notes in the source chords, allocated from the top selected instrument staff downwards.

- If the number of notes in the chord matches the number of destination staves, each instrument receives one note.
- If the number of notes in the chord is less than the number of destination staves, then the same note is allocated to multiple staves. Notations, such as slurs and dynamics, are duplicated to each destination staff.
- If the number of notes in the chord is more than the number of destination staves, then the notes are spread as equally as possible across the destination staves. If the chord contained an odd number of notes, Dorico Elements prefers to allocate extra notes to the upper staves.

RELATED LINKS

Creating cross-staff beams/tremolos on page 764
Insert mode on page 427
Chord mode on page 242

Changing the voice of existing notes

You can change the voice of notes after they have been input, including notes in slash voices. For example, you can change notes in an up-stem voice to a down-stem voice or a slash voice.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the notes whose voice you want to change.

   TIP

   You can use large selections and filters to select many notes in the same voice quickly.

2. Change the voice in any of the following ways:
   - To change the selected notes to a new normal voice, press **Shift-V** or click **Create Voice** in the Notes toolbox.
   - To change the selected notes to a new slash voice, press **Shift-Alt/Opt-V**. You can also click and hold **Create Voice** in the Notes toolbox, then click **Create Slash Voice**.
   - To change the selected notes to an existing voice, press **V** or click **Next Voice** in the Notes toolbox to cycle through active voices on the staff.

RESULT

The voice of the selected notes is changed, which might cause Dorico Elements to change the stem directions of the selected notes and other notes on the staff. Rests appear as required around notes in different voices.

If you changed notes to a slash voice, they no longer play back.

TIP

You can also change the voice of selected notes by choosing **Edit** > **Notations** > **Voices** > **Change Voice** > **[Voice]**. You can also choose these options from the context menu. If there is only one voice on the staff, you can create a new voice for your selected notes.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

- You can later delete or hide rests and change the stem direction of notes manually.
- You can also change whole voices into slash voices.

RELATED LINKS

Notes toolbox on page 187
Hiding/Showing voice colors on page 1304
Inputting notes into multiple voices on page 221
Inputting notes into slash voices on page 223
Large selections on page 403
Filters on page 407
Implicit rests in multiple-voice contexts on page 1146
Deleting rests on page 1149
Changing the stem direction of notes on page 963
Changing the slash voice type on page 1142
Changing the duration of notes on page 248
Tuplets on page 1271
Signposts on page 426

Swapping the contents of voices

You can swap the contents of two voices that contain musical material.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the notes in two voices that you want to swap.
2. Choose **Edit** > **Notations** > **Voices** > **Swap Voice Contents**. You can also choose this option from the context menu.

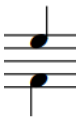
RESULT

The contents of the voices are swapped. For example, the notes previously in an up-stem voice are now in a down-stem voice, and the notes previously in a down-stem voice are now in an up-stem voice.

NOTE

Depending on the pitches involved in the swap and their stem directions, the notes might overlap. Dorico Elements automatically positions notes with the noteheads partially overlapping, in order to minimize the horizontal space they occupy and maintain the clarity of the rhythm. However, if you want to change this arrangement, you can change the order of voices or change the voice column index.

EXAMPLE



An E is in the up-stem voice, an F in the down-stem voice.

After swapping their voice contents, the E is in the down-stem voice, and the F is in the up-stem voice.

RELATED LINKS
Swapping the order of voices on page 1307
Voice column index on page 1307

Transposing tools

In Dorico Elements, you can change the pitches of existing notes in a variety of ways.

RELATED LINKS
Arranging tools on page 431
Transposing instruments on page 133
Concert vs. transposed pitch on page 170
Transposing notes in the piano roll editor on page 636

Changing the pitch of individual notes

You can raise/lower the pitch and register of individual notes, including grace notes, after they have been input by octave divisions, staff position, and octaves.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the notes whose pitches you want to change.
2. Raise/Lower the pitches of the selected notes in any of the following ways:
   - To move notes up one staff position, such as from C to D, press **Alt/Opt-Up Arrow**.
   - To move notes down one staff position, such as from D to C, press **Alt/Opt-Down Arrow**.
   - To transpose notes up a single octave division, such as a half-step (semitone) in 12-EDO or a quarter tone in 24-EDO, press **Shift-Alt/Opt-Up Arrow**.
   - To transpose notes down a single octave division, such as a half-step (semitone) in 12-EDO or a quarter tone in 24-EDO, press **Shift-Alt/Opt-Down Arrow**.
   - To transpose notes up an octave, press **Ctrl/Cmd-Alt/Opt-Up Arrow**.
   - To transpose notes down an octave, press **Ctrl/Cmd-Alt/Opt-Down Arrow**.

RESULT

The pitch or register of the selected notes is changed. Any figured bass shown on the affected staves is updated automatically.

If the pitch is now impossible to play on a fretted instrument, such as if a note would have to be played below the nut on the lowest string, it appears on tablature as a question mark.

NOTE

You can press **Alt/Opt-Up Arrow** and **Alt/Opt-Down Arrow** to change the staff positions of notes in percussion kits using grid and five-line staff presentation types. However, this also changes the instrument playing the note.

RELATED LINKS
Equal Division of the Octave (EDO) on page 918
Adding notes above/below existing notes on page 247
Respelling notes on page 449
Inputting accidentals on page 233
Transposing notes in the piano roll editor on page 636
Figured bass on page 858
Arranging tools on page 431
Musical transformations on page 453
Inverting pitches on page 453
Reversing pitches/rhythms on page 454
Rotating pitches/rhythms on page 456
Mapping notes to pitches on page 458
Mapping notes to scales on page 460

Transposing selections

You can transpose whole flows or specific selections, including selected key signatures, using the **Transpose** dialog.

TIP

Dorico Elements automatically shows the appropriate key signatures for transposing instruments in transposing layouts.

PROCEDURE

1. Optional: In Write mode, select the region you want to transpose.

   NOTE

   - If you want to transpose key signatures, you must include them in your selection.
   - If nothing is selected, the whole flow in which you last selected a note/item is transposed.

2. Choose **Write** > **Transpose** to open the **Transpose** dialog.
3. Adjust the parameters required for your transposition, such as interval and quality.

   TIP

   - We recommend using the **Calculate interval** section to determine your required settings; for example, if you want to transpose from G♭ major to G major.
   - Different intervals have different possible qualities. For example, you can specify a major third but not a major octave. Therefore, if you want to set your transposition parameters manually, we recommend selecting the interval before the quality.

4. Optional: If you want to transpose any key signatures in the flow or included in your selection, activate **Transpose key signatures**.

5. Click **OK** to save your changes and close the dialog.

RESULT

All notes in your selection, or all notes in the flow if nothing was selected, are transposed according to the interval or number of divisions of the octave specified in the **Transpose** dialog. If your selection included key signatures and you activated **Transpose key signatures**, all key signatures in the selection are also transposed.

Any figured bass shown on the affected staves is also transposed accordingly.

Key signatures that apply to all staves are transposed on all staves in the layout, even if your selection did not include all staves. Key signatures that apply only to single staves are transposed if they are included in a selection, but this does not affect any other staff in the layout.

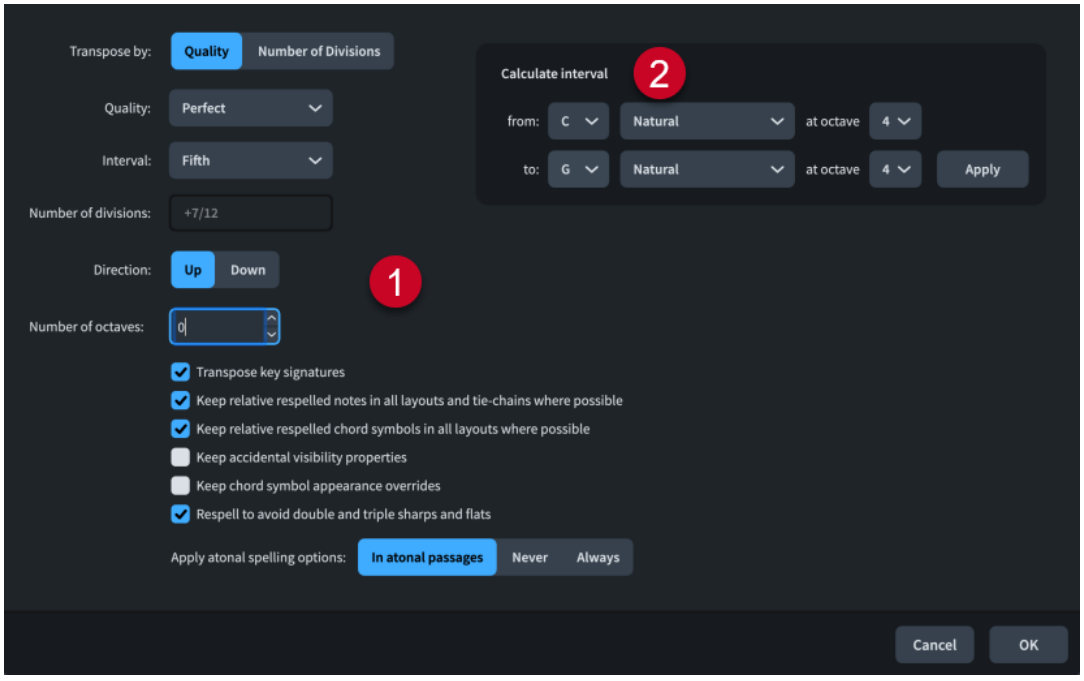
RELATED LINKS

Large selections on page 403
Selecting/Deselecting notes and items individually on page 401
Figured bass on page 858
Enharmonic equivalent key signatures on page 915
Concert vs. transposed pitch on page 170
Making layouts transposing/concert pitch on page 169

Transpose dialog

The **Transpose** dialog allows you to transpose whole flows or selections of notes, including key signatures. You can transpose according to an interval and quality or by a set number of octave divisions.

- You can open the **Transpose** dialog in Write mode by choosing **Write** > **Transpose**.



The **Transpose** dialog contains the following sections:

1 Transposition options

Contains options that allow you to specify the transposition you want. For example, you can choose to transpose by an interval quality, such as a major third, or by a set number of divisions of the octave. You can choose the direction of the transposition, whether it includes

octaves, and the interval and quality or number of divisions by which you want to transpose your selection.

According to convention, different intervals have different possible qualities. For example, you can specify a major third but not a major octave. Therefore, we recommend selecting the interval before the quality.

Additional options also allow you to transpose any key signatures included in your selection, keep relative respelled notes and chord symbols where possible, and avoid double and triple accidentals.

NOTE

You can only use **Respell to avoid double and triple sharps and flats** when transposing music in tonality systems that are compatible with 12-EDO.

2 **Calculate interval**

Allows you to set transposition options according to a starting note and the resulting note you want. For example, if you want to transpose a selection relative to a C♮ becoming a G♯ but you are not certain of the interval and quality required, you can enter those two notes in the **Calculate interval** section, click **Apply**, and Dorico Elements automatically sets the required transposition options for you.

NOTE

The **Transpose** dialog does not allow transpositions that would result in impossible notations, such as sharper than a triple sharp, or that require a microtonal accidental that does not exist in the tonality system in place at the position of your selection.

RELATED LINKS
Note tools popover on page 462
Equal Division of the Octave (EDO) on page 918
Tonality systems on page 918
Arranging tools on page 431
Musical transformations on page 453
Mapping notes to pitches on page 458
Mapping notes to scales on page 460

Transposing existing notes with the note tools popover

You can change the pitch of notes after they have been input using the note tools popover.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the notes you want to transpose.
2. Open the note tools popover in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Shift-I**.
   - In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers**, then **Note Tools**.
3. Enter the transposition interval you want into the popover.

   For example, enter **t3** to transpose the notes up a third, or **t-min6** to transpose the notes down a minor sixth.
4. Press **Return** to close the popover.

RESULT

The selected notes are transposed by the degree specified. Any figured bass shown on the affected staves is also transposed accordingly.

RELATED LINKS

Notations toolbox on page 192
Note tools popover on page 462
Figured bass on page 858

Repitching notes without changing their rhythm

You can repitch notes after you have input them while keeping their durations the same. For example, if you want to duplicate the rhythm but have different pitches.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the first note you want to repitch.
2. Start note input in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Shift-N**.
   - In the Notes toolbox, click **Start Note Input**.
   - Double-click the staff.
3. Optional: If you want to repitch notes on multiple staves at once, extend the caret to those staves.
4. Activate **Lock to Duration** in any of the following ways:
   - Press **L**.
   - In the Notes toolbox, click **Lock to Duration**.
5. Enter the pitches you want.
6. Optional: Press **L** or click **Lock to Duration** again to deactivate **Lock to Duration**.

   NOTE

   Lock to Duration automatically deactivates when you reach the last existing note on the staff. By default, normal note input continues using the previous note value selected before you activated **Lock to Duration**.

RESULT

Existing notes on the selected staff are repitched without their rhythms being changed. The caret automatically advances from note to note, even if there are large rests between notes on the staff.

TIP

You can set a maximum number of rests over which you want to advance when repitching notes in **Preferences** > **Note Input and Editing** > **Note Input** > **Lock Duration**.

RELATED LINKS

Caret on page 205
Extending the caret to multiple staves on page 209
Arranging tools on page 431
Musical transformations on page 453

Mapping notes to pitches on page 458
Mapping notes to scales on page 460
Copying and pasting articulations on page 724
Preferences dialog on page 58

Respelling notes

You can change the enharmonic spelling of notes so they are shown as their enharmonic equivalents; for example, to show the stepwise movement in a phrase clearly, or to avoid altered unisons in a chord. You can do this for all layouts or only in the current part layout.

By default, Dorico Elements uses an algorithm that automatically decides the spelling of pitches, based on key signature and context.

There are always at least three options for every pitch, as Dorico Elements allows enharmonic spellings to show up to two accidental glyphs. This means the same note can be spelled four ways if the original pitch can be spelled with the note name either two notes below or two notes above, using a maximum of two accidental glyphs. For example, B𝄫♯ is a possible enharmonic spelling of G♯ because a triple-flat uses a single accidental glyph, whereas an F𝄪 uses two accidental glyphs.

PROCEDURE

1. In the music area, open the layout in which you want to respell accidentals. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.

   NOTE

   By default, respelling notes in score layouts also affects their spelling in all other layouts, but respelling notes in part layouts only affects their spelling in the current part layout.

2. Select the notes you want to respell.

   NOTE

   If you want to respell individual noteheads in tie chains, you must be in Engrave mode.

3. Respell the selected notes in any of the following ways:
   - To respell them upwards, press **Alt/Opt-=** or click **Respell Using Note Name Above** in the Keyboard panel toolbar.
   - To respell them downwards, press **Alt/Opt--** or click **Respell Using Note Name Below** in the Keyboard panel toolbar.
   - To respell them automatically, choose **Write** > **Respell** > **Respell Notes Automatically** to open the **Respell Notes Automatically** dialog.
4. Optional: If you opened the **Respell Notes Automatically** dialog, change the settings for respelling as required, then click **OK** to close the dialog and respell the selected notes.

RESULT

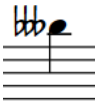
The enharmonic spelling of the selected notes is changed.

EXAMPLE

A G sharp

When respelled downwards, the G sharp becomes an F triple-sharp

When respelled upwards, the G sharp becomes an A flat



When respelled upwards again, the G sharp becomes a B triple-flat

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

You can copy note spellings to other layouts, such as if you respelled notes in a part layout but want the same spelling to appear in the full score layout.

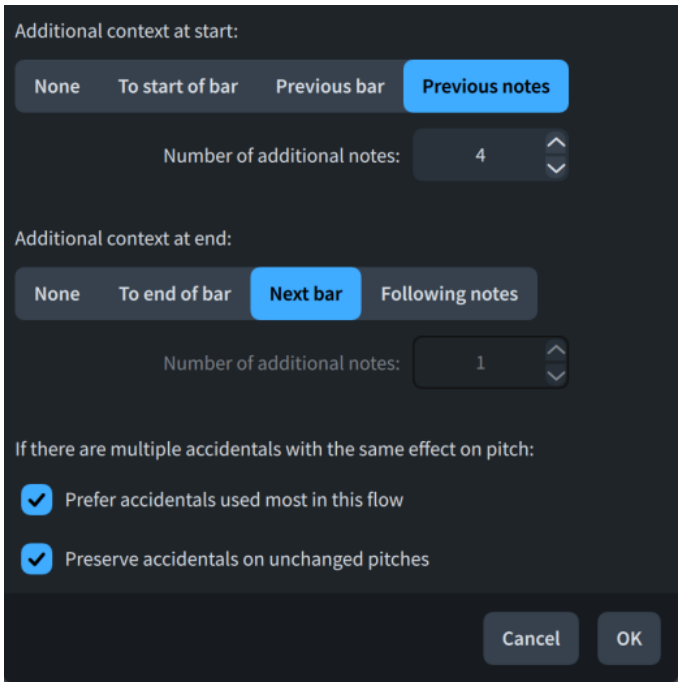
RELATED LINKS

Keyboard panel on page 197
Switching between layouts on page 43
Selecting notes/items on page 401
Accidentals on page 712
Accidental selection during MIDI input on page 234
Key signatures on page 911
Tonality systems on page 918
Input methods for key signatures on page 265
Copying note spellings to other layouts on page 452
Resetting note spellings on page 452
Mapping notes to pitches on page 458
Mapping notes to scales on page 460

Respell Notes Automatically dialog

The **Respell Notes Automatically** dialog allows you to simplify the note spelling of all notes in specific selections based on the musical context, including respelling some notes upwards and other notes downwards.

- You can open the **Respell Notes Automatically** dialog in Write mode when at least one note is selected in the music area by choosing **Write** > **Respell** > **Respell Notes Automatically**.



The **Respell Notes Automatically** dialog contains the following options:

Additional context at start

Allows you to specify additional musical context before the selected notes that you want Dorico Elements to consider when calculating automatic note spellings.

- **None**: Only notes in the selection.
- **To start of bar**: Includes notes back to the start of the earliest selected bar.
- **Previous bar**: Includes notes back to the start of the previous bar.
- **Previous notes**: Includes a specified number of notes before the selection.
- **Number of additional notes**: Allows you to specify the number of additional notes you want to consider. Only available if you have activated **Previous notes**.

Additional context at end

Allows you to specify additional musical context after the selected notes that you want Dorico Elements to consider when calculating automatic note spellings.

- **None**: Only notes in the selection.
- **To end of bar**: Includes notes up to the end of the last selected bar.
- **Next bar**: Includes notes up to the end of the next bar.
- **Following notes**: Includes a specified number of notes after the selection.
- **Number of additional notes**: Allows you to specify the number of additional notes you want to consider. Only available if you have activated **Following notes**.

Prefer accidentals used most in this flow

Allows you to specify whether to choose accidentals based on how frequently they are used in the flow or the default accidental for the corresponding pitch delta. Useful in tonality systems that contain multiple accidentals with the same pitch delta.

Preserve accidentals on unchanged pitches

Allows you to specify whether existing accidentals on notes that are not respelled are retained or chosen according to your setting for **Prefer accidentals used most in this**

flow. Useful in tonality systems that contain multiple accidentals with the same pitch delta.

RELATED LINKS
Selecting notes/items on page 401
Respelling notes on page 449
Changing the pitch of individual notes on page 444
Inputting accidentals on page 233
Accidental selection during MIDI input on page 234
Tonality systems on page 918

Copying note spellings to other layouts

You can copy note spellings to other layouts; for example, if you originally respelled notes in a part layout but want those spellings to appear in the full score layout as well.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, open the layout containing the note spellings you want to copy.
2. Select the notes you want to respell.
3. Choose **Write** > **Respell** > **Propagate Note Spellings**.

RESULT

The spellings of the selected notes in the current layout are copied to all other layouts in which those notes appear.

RELATED LINKS
Switching between layouts on page 43
Part formatting propagation on page 596

Resetting note spellings

You can reset changes to note spellings so they follow the spelling in score layouts; for example, if you want future revisions to note spellings you make in the full score layout to affect notes whose spelling you previously overrode in a part layout. You can do this in either one part layout only or in all layouts.

PROCEDURE

1. Optional: If you want to reset note spellings in one part layout only, open that layout in the music area.
2. In Write mode, select the notes whose spellings you want to reset.
3. Reset their note spellings in one of the following ways:
   - Choose **Write** > **Respell** > **Reset Note Spellings in Current Layout**.
   - Choose **Write** > **Respell** > **Reset Note Spellings in All Layouts**.

RESULT

The spellings of the selected notes are reset either in the current part layout only or in all layouts. Their link to the score note spelling is restored, meaning all future changes you make to the spelling of the selected notes in score layouts also affect their spelling in either the current part layout or all layouts.

RELATED LINKS
Switching between layouts on page 43
Respelling notes on page 449
Transposing selections on page 445

Musical transformations

Dorico Elements provides multiple tools for transforming pitches and rhythms, including reversing and inverting pitches and rotating rhythms.

In Dorico Elements, the term “musical transformations” covers the following methods of changing the pitch and/or rhythm of notes:

Inversion

The melodic contours of phrases are switched upside-down by forcing pitch intervals between notes in the opposite direction, such as a note originally a fifth above the previous note becoming a fifth below the previous note.

Reversal

The order of notes, including pitches and/or rhythms, and items is reversed so they are played backwards; for example, the first note of a phrase becoming the last note. Also known as “retrograde”.

Rotation

Notes, including pitches and/or rhythms, and items are shifted along by a specified number of steps either forwards or backwards, so that, for example, the first note in a phrase’s original pitch is given to the second note, the second note’s pitch to the third note, and so on.

Repetition

The pitches of the specified number of notes at the start of a phrase is repeated across all subsequent notes in the selection.

Pitch mapping

Specified pitches are transposed to become other specified pitches, such as mapping all C♯s to D♭s.

Scale mapping

All notes in the specified source scale are transposed to become the equivalent notes in the destination scale according to their scale degree.

RELATED LINKS
Arranging tools on page 431
Note tools popover on page 462
Adding notes above/below existing notes on page 247
Transposing existing notes with the note tools popover on page 447

Inverting pitches

You can invert the pitches of selected notes, which switches the melodic contour of phrases upside-down by forcing pitch intervals between notes in the opposite direction, such as a note originally a fifth above the previous note becoming a fifth below the previous note. This transformation is also known as “inversion”.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the notes you want to invert.

2. Do one of the following:
   - To invert pitches only, choose **Write** > **Transform** > **Pitches** > **Invert Pitches** to open the **Invert Pitches** dialog.
   - To invert and reverse pitches, choose **Write** > **Transform** > **Pitches** > **Reverse and Invert Pitches** to open the **Reverse and Invert Pitches** dialog.
   - To invert and reverse pitches and reverse rhythms, choose **Write** > **Transform** > **All** > **Reverse and Invert Pitches and Reverse Rhythms** to open the **Reverse and Invert Pitches and Reverse Rhythms** dialog.
3. Change the settings as required for your inversion.
4. Click **OK** to save your changes and close the dialog.

RESULT

The selected notes are transformed according to your initial menu selection and your settings in the dialog.

TIP

You can also invert pitches using the note tools popover.

RELATED LINKS

Reverse and Invert Pitches and Reverse Rhythms dialogs on page 455
Note tools popover on page 462
Large selections on page 403
Arranging tools on page 431
Inputting notes on page 211

Reversing pitches/rhythms

You can reverse notes, including pitches and/or rhythms, and staff-attached items so that selections are played backwards; for example, the first note of a phrase becomes the last note. This transformation is also known as “retrograde”.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the notes and staff-attached items whose pitches and/or rhythms you want to reverse.

   For example, to reverse dynamics alongside notes, include dynamics in your selection.
2. Do one of the following:
   - To reverse pitches only, choose **Write** > **Transform** > **Pitches** > **Reverse Pitches**.
   - To reverse rhythms only, choose **Write** > **Transform** > **Rhythm** > **Reverse Rhythms**.
   - To reverse pitches and rhythms, choose **Write** > **Transform** > **All** > **Reverse Pitches and Rhythms**.
   - To reverse and invert pitches, choose **Write** > **Transform** > **Pitches** > **Reverse and Invert Pitches** to open the **Reverse and Invert Pitches** dialog.
   - To reverse and invert pitches and reverse rhythms, choose **Write** > **Transform** > **All** > **Reverse and Invert Pitches and Reverse Rhythms** to open the **Reverse and Invert Pitches and Reverse Rhythms** dialog.
3. Optional: If you chose to reverse and invert pitches, change the settings as required for your inversion.

4. Click **OK** to save your changes and close the dialog.

RESULT

The selected notes and staff-attached items are transformed according to your initial menu selection and optionally your settings in the dialog.

TIP

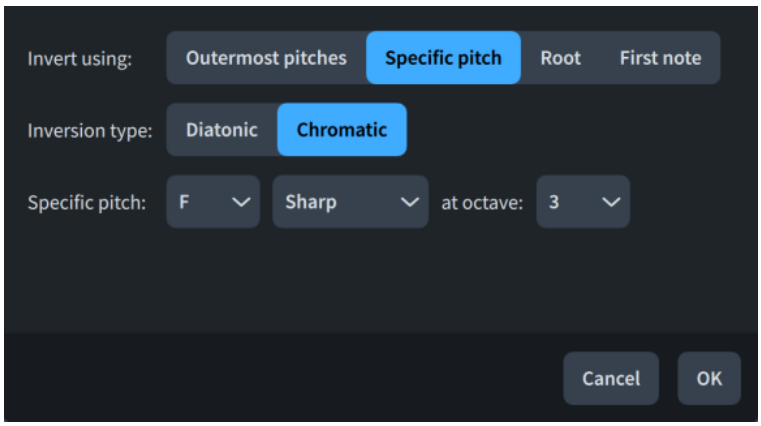
You can also reverse pitches/rhythms using the note tools popover.

Reverse and Invert Pitches and Reverse Rhythms dialogs

The **Invert Pitches**, **Reverse and Invert Pitches**, and **Reverse and Invert Pitches and Reverse Rhythms** dialogs allow you to invert and reverse the pitches and reverse the rhythms of selected notes. These transformations are also known as “inversion” and “retrograde inversion”.

You can open these dialogs in Write mode when at least one note is selected in the music area in the following ways:

- To open the **Invert Pitches** dialog, choose **Write** > **Transform** > **Pitches** > **Invert Pitches**.
- To open the **Reverse and Invert Pitches** dialog, choose **Write** > **Transform** > **Pitches** > **Reverse and Invert Pitches**.
- To open the **Reverse and Invert Pitches and Reverse Rhythms** dialog, choose **Write** > **Transform** > **All** > **Reverse and Invert Pitches and Reverse Rhythms**.



The dialogs contain the following options:

Invert using

Allows you to change the inversion behavior.

- **Outermost pitches**: Inverts pitches within the range of the highest and lowest notes in the selection.
- **Specific pitch**: Inverts pitches around the specified pitch.
- **Root**: Inverts pitches around the root of the prevailing key. In open keys or music without key signatures, C is used.
- **First note**: Inverts pitches around the first note in the selection.

Inversion type

Allows you to change how intervals are handled in the inversion.

- **Diatonic**: Inversions use the interval degree, according to the scale degrees in the prevailing key signature. Diatonic inversions preserve the interval relationship

between pitches, which can result in, for example, a minor second interval below becoming a major second interval above.

- **Chromatic**: Inversions use the specified number of half-steps (semitones), regardless of the prevailing key signature.

Not available when **Outermost pitches** is chosen for **Invert using**.

Specific pitch

Allows you to specify the central pitch for inversion. You can select the note name, accidental, and octave. The available accidentals depend on the prevailing tonality system.

Only available when **Specific pitch** is chosen for **Invert using**.

When first note is a chord, use

Allows you to specify which pitch to use as the central pitch for inversion when the first note is part of a chord.

- **Top note of chord**: The highest note in the chord is used.
- **Bottom note of chord**: The lowest note in the chord is used.

Only available when **First note** is chosen for **Invert using**.

RELATED LINKS
Tonality systems on page 918

Rotating pitches/rhythms

You can rotate notes, including pitches and/or rhythms, and staff-attached items by a specified number of steps either forwards or backwards, so that, for example, the first note in a phrase's original pitch is given to the second note, the second note's pitch to the third note, and so on.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the notes and staff-attached items whose pitches and/or rhythms you want to rotate.

   For example, to rotate dynamics alongside notes, include dynamics in your selection.

2. Do one of the following:
   - To rotate pitches only, choose **Write** > **Transform** > **Pitches** > **Rotate Pitches** to open the **Rotate Pitches** dialog.
   - To rotate rhythms only, choose **Write** > **Transform** > **Rhythm** > **Rotate Rhythms** to open the **Rotate Rhythms** dialog.
   - To rotate pitches and rhythms, choose **Write** > **Transform** > **All** > **Rotate Pitches and Rhythms** to open the **Rotate Pitches and Rhythms** dialog.
3. Change the settings as required for your rotation.
4. Click **OK** to save your changes and close the dialog.

RESULT

The selected notes and staff-attached items are rotated according to your settings in the dialog.

TIP

You can also rotate pitches/rhythms using the note tools popover.

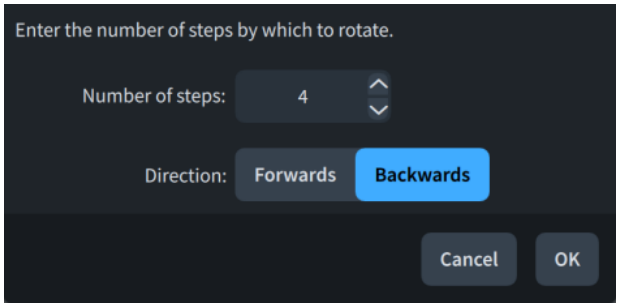
RELATED LINKS
Note tools popover on page 462
Large selections on page 403
Arranging tools on page 431
Inputting notes on page 211

Rotate Pitches/Rhythms dialogs

The **Rotate Pitches**, **Rotate Rhythms**, and **Rotate Pitches and Rhythms** dialogs allow you to rotate the pitches and/or rhythms of selected notes.

You can open these dialogs in Write mode when at least one note is selected in the music area in the following ways:

- To open the **Rotate Pitches** dialog, choose **Write** > **Transform** > **Pitches** > **Rotate Pitches**.
- To open the **Rotate Rhythms** dialog, choose **Write** > **Transform** > **Rhythm** > **Rotate Rhythms**.
- To open the **Rotate Pitches and Rhythms** dialog, choose **Write** > **Transform** > **All** > **Rotate Pitches and Rhythms**.



The dialogs contain the following options:

Number of steps

Allows you to set the number of steps in the rotation.

Direction

Allows you to set the rotation direction.

- **Forwards**: Rotates forwards; that is, pitches/rhythms shift to the right.
- **Backwards**: Rotates backwards; that is, pitches/rhythms shift to the left.

Repeating pitches across notes

You can repeat a specified number of pitches across all subsequent notes in the selection; for example, if you want to change the harmonic pattern for a passage.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, make a selection that includes both of the following:
   - The notes whose pitches you want to repeat
   - The notes across which you want to repeat pitches
2. Choose **Write** > **Transform** > **Pitches** > **Repeat Pitches** to open the **Repeat Pitches** dialog.
3. Change the value in the value field.
4. Click **OK** to save your changes and close the dialog.

RESULT

The specified number of pitches at the start of the selection is repeated across the following notes in the selection.

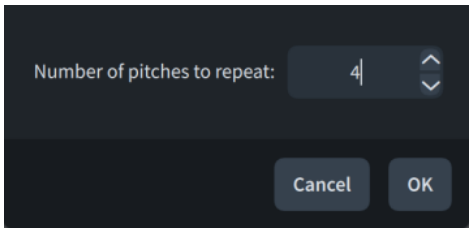
TIP

You can also repeat pitches using the note tools popover.

Repeat Pitches dialog

The **Repeat Pitches** dialog allows you to set the number of pitches you want to repeat across all subsequent notes in the selection.

- You can open the **Repeat Pitches** dialog in Write mode when at least one note is selected in the music area by choosing **Write** > **Transform** > **Pitches** > **Repeat Pitches**.



The **Repeat Pitches** dialog contains the following option:

Number of pitches to repeat

Allows you to set the number of pitches you want to repeat across the selection, starting from the first selected note.

Mapping notes to pitches

You can map multiple source pitches to destination pitches in a single transformation; for example, if you want to transform all C♯s, F♯s, and A♯s into D♭s, G♭s, and B♭s.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the notes whose pitches you want to map.
2. Choose **Write** > **Transform** > **Pitches** > **Map Pitches** to open the **Map Pitches** dialog.
3. Change the settings for **Map pitch** to specify the source pitch.
4. Activate/Deactivate **Include enharmonic equivalents**.
5. Change the settings for **To** to specify the destination pitch.
6. Click **Add mapping**.
7. Optional: Repeat steps 3 to 6 for each pitch you want to map.
8. Click **OK** to save your changes and close the dialog.

RESULT

The specified source pitches are mapped to the specified destination pitches according to your settings.

TIP

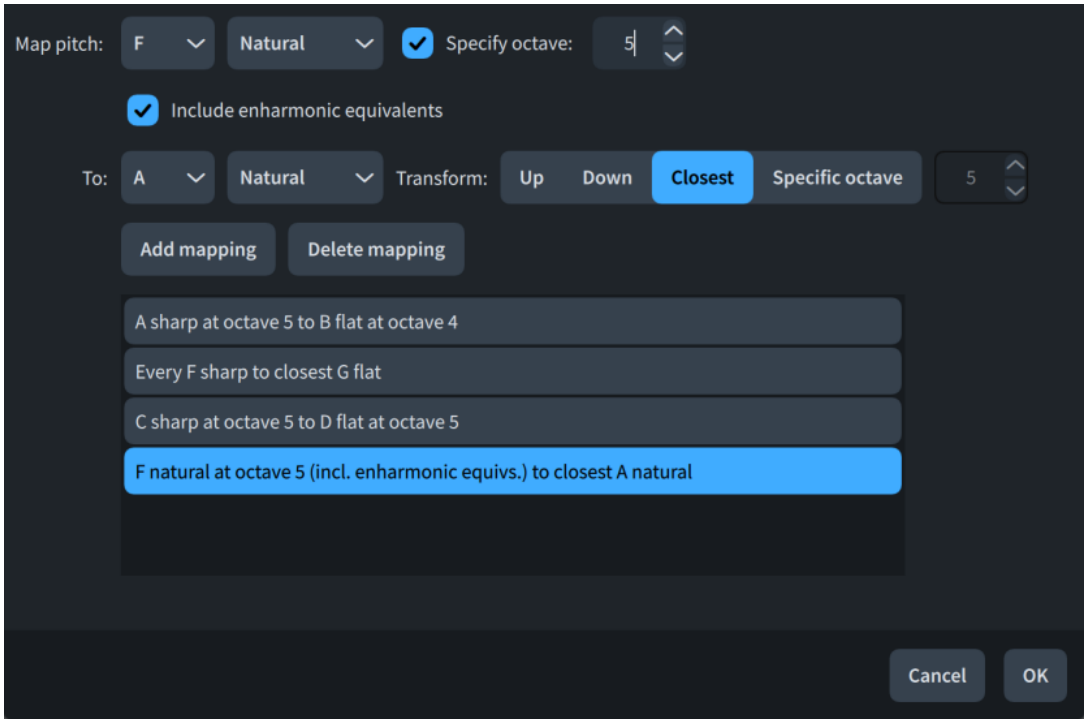
You can also map pitches using the note tools popover.

RELATED LINKS
Note tools popover on page 462
Large selections on page 403
Respelling notes on page 449
Arranging tools on page 431
Inputting notes on page 211

Map Pitches dialog

The **Map Pitches** dialog allows you to set multiple pitch mappings in a single transformation; for example, if you want to transform all C♯s, F♯s, and A♯s into D♭s, G♭s, and B♭s.

- You can open the **Map Pitches** dialog in Write mode when at least one note is selected in the music area by choosing **Write** > **Transform** > **Pitches** > **Map Pitches**.



The **Map Pitches** dialog contains the following options:

Map pitch

Allows you to specify the source pitch you want to map to the destination pitch. You can select a note name and accidental, and you can also optionally specify the octave. The available accidentals depend on the prevailing tonality system.

Include enharmonic equivalents

When activated, enharmonic equivalents to the specified source pitch are included in the mapping. For example, if you want to map A♯s and B♭s to Gs.

When deactivated, enharmonic equivalents to the specified source pitch are excluded from the mapping.

To

Allows you to specify the destination pitch to which you want to map the source pitch. You can select a note name and accidental. The available accidentals depend on the prevailing tonality system.

Transform

Allows you to specify the octave selection for the mapping.

- **Up**: Destination pitches are higher than the source pitch.
- **Down**: Destination pitches are lower than the source pitch.
- **Closest**: Destination pitches use the octave the smallest interval from the source pitch.
- **Specific octave**: Destination pitches use the octave specified in the value field.

Add mapping

Adds the set mapping to the mapping list.

Delete mapping

Removes the selected mapping from the mapping list.

Mapping list

Contains the set mappings for the transformation.

Mapping notes to scales

You can map all notes in a specified source scale to equivalent degrees of a destination scale; for example, if you want to transform a passage from major to minor with the same root.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the notes whose pitches you want to map.
2. Choose **Write** > **Transform** > **Pitches** > **Map Scale** to open the **Map Scale** dialog.
3. Adjust the parameters required for your scale mapping, such as scale roots and scale patterns.
4. Click **OK** to save your changes and close the dialog.

RESULT

The specified pitches in the source scale are mapped to the specified pitches in the destination scale according to your settings.

TIP

You can also map scales using the note tools popover.

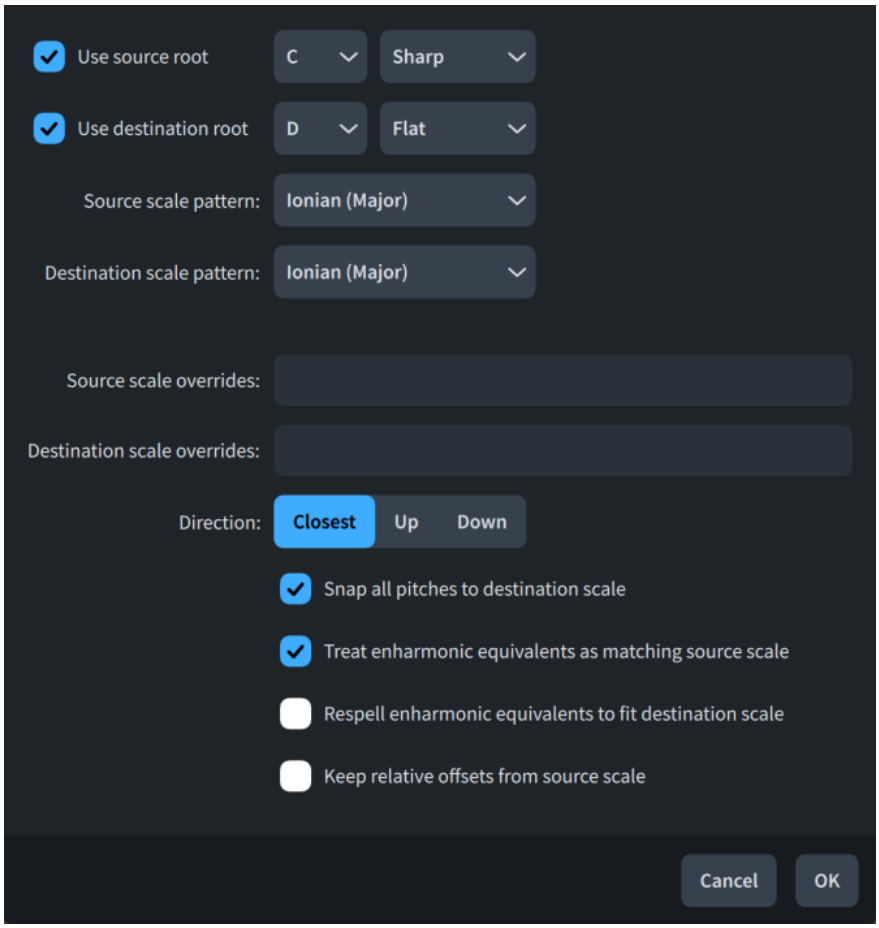
RELATED LINKS

Note tools popover on page 462
Large selections on page 403
Respelling notes on page 449
Arranging tools on page 431
Inputting notes on page 211

Map Scale dialog

The **Map Scale** dialog allows you to map all notes in the specified source scale to equivalent degrees of the destination scale; for example, if you want to transform a passage from major to minor with the same root.

- You can open the **Map Scale** dialog in Write mode when at least one note is selected in the music area by choosing **Write** > **Transform** > **Pitches** > **Map Scale**.



The **Map Scale** dialog contains the following options:

Use source root

When activated, allows you to specify the source scale root you want to map to the destination scale root. You can select a note name and accidental. The available accidentals depend on the prevailing tonality system.

When deactivated, Dorico Elements uses the scale root implied by the prevailing key signature.

Use destination root

When activated, allows you to specify the destination scale root to which you want to map the source scale root. You can select a note name and accidental. The available accidentals depend on the prevailing tonality system.

When deactivated, Dorico Elements uses the scale root implied by the prevailing key signature.

Source scale pattern

Allows you to select the scale type of the source scale.

Destination scale pattern

Allows you to select the scale type of the destination scale.

Source scale overrides

Allows you to customize the source scale by specifying pitches that deviate from its preset pattern. Notes are mapped relative to the customized scale pattern. For example, if you add a sharp sixth source scale override when mapping C major to C harmonic minor, A♮s are treated as flattened sixths and become A♭s.

- To specify flat scale degrees, enter **b[n]**, such as **b2**.
- To specify sharp scale degrees, enter **#[n]**, such as **#6**.

Destination scale overrides

Allows you to customize the destination scale by specifying pitches that deviate from its preset pattern. Notes are mapped relative to the customized scale pattern. For example, if you add a flattened second destination scale override when mapping C major to C harmonic minor, D♮s become D♭s.

- To specify flat scale degrees, enter **b[n]**, such as **b2**.
- To specify sharp scale degrees, enter **#[n]**, such as **#6**.

Direction

Allows you to specify the octave selection for the mapping.

- **Closest**: Destination pitches use the octave the smallest interval from the source pitch.
- **Up**: Destination pitches are higher than the source pitch.
- **Down**: Destination pitches are lower than the source pitch.

Snap all pitches to destination scale

When activated, all notes are snapped to the nearest pitch in the destination scale, including notes outside the source scale. When deactivated, only notes in the source scale are mapped to the destination scale.

Treat enharmonic equivalents as matching source scale

When activated, notes that are enharmonic equivalents to notes in the source scale are included in the mapping. When deactivated, only notes whose enharmonic spelling is in the source scale are mapped to the destination scale.

Respell enharmonic equivalents to fit destination scale

When activated, enharmonic equivalent notes included in the mapping are respelled to fit the destination scale. When deactivated, enharmonic equivalent notes are transposed according to the scale mapping without being respelled.

Only available when **Treat enharmonic equivalents as matching source scale** is activated.

Keep relative offsets from source scale

When activated, Dorico Elements preserves the relative offsets between notes in the source scale. For example, if you map C major to D Aeolian, a B♭ would be mapped to C♭.

When deactivated, Dorico Elements changes the relative offsets between notes in the source scale if different intervals are more appropriate in the destination scale. For example, if you map C major to D Aeolian, a B♭ would be mapped to C♮.

Note tools popover

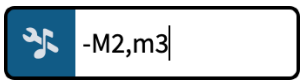
The note tools popover allows you to add notes above and below existing notes, transpose existing notes, and transform the pitches and rhythms of selected notes.

It makes much of the functionality provided by the **Add Notes Above or Below**, **Transpose**, **Reverse and Invert Pitches/Rhythms**, **Rotate Pitches/Rhythms**, **Map Pitches**, **Map Scale**, and **Repeat Pitches** dialogs accessible directly via the keyboard.

You can open the note tools popover in Write mode in any of the following ways when notes are selected, including during note input:

- Press **Shift-I**.
- In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers**, then **Note Tools**.
- Choose **Write** > **Add Intervals**.

The icon on the left-hand side of the popover matches the corresponding button in the Notations toolbox on the right of the window.



Note tools popover with an example entry

Note Tools button in the Notations toolbox

The following tables contain examples of what you can enter into the note tools popover to transform selections, transpose notes, or add notes above/below existing notes.

Intervals

Interval or quality	Popover entry
Interval degree Unison, second, third, fourth, fifth, and so on, up to two octaves	**1**, **2**, **3**, **4**, **5**, and so on, up to **15**
Major	**M**, **maj**, or **major**
Minor	**m**, **min**, or **minor**
Perfect	**p**, **per**, or **perf**
Diminished	**d**, **dim**, or **diminished**
Augmented	**a**, **aug**, or **augmented**
Diatonic	**diat** or **diatonic**
[n] octave divisions in any tonality system	**[n] d**, **[n] div**, or **[n] divisions**
[n] half-steps (semitones) in 12-EDO	**[n] s**, **[n] st**, **[n] semi**, or **[n] semitones**
[n] quarter tones in 24-EDO	**[n] q**, **[n] qt**, or **[n] quartertones**

NOTE

- You must include an interval degree before a specified total number of octave divisions, such as **5 8 div**. Together, they specify the desired note name and accidental.
- **M** and **m** entries for major and minor are case-sensitive.

Note additions

Type of addition	Popover entry
Add notes a third above	**3** or **3rd**
Add notes a fourth below	**-4** or **-4th**
Add notes [n] octave divisions above, using the note name a fifth above	**5 8 div** in any tonality system **5 8 st** in 12-EDO **5 16 qt** in 24-EDO
Add notes [n] octave divisions below, using the note name a sixth below	**-6 9 div** in any tonality system **-6 9 st** in 12-EDO **-6 18 qt** in 24-EDO
Add chords containing multiple notes	**3,6** or **-3,3,4**
Add notes only to the top notes in chords	**top**
Add notes only to the bottom notes in chords	**bottom**

NOTE

- When adding multiple notes, you must separate notes with commas, not spaces.
- If you do not specify the interval quality, the interval degree follows the prevailing key signature. For example, in C major, if you enter **3** to add a third above a D♮, the added note is an F♮. You can specify the interval quality by including it before the interval degree, such as **maj3**.

EXAMPLE

- To add notes a major second below and minor third above the bottom notes in the selected chords, enter **-M2,m3 bottom**.
- To add G♯s above C♮s in 24-EDO, enter **5 16 qt**.

Transposition

Example transposition	Popover entry
Transpose notes upwards by a third	**t3**
Transpose notes downwards by a sixth	**t-6**

Example transposition	Popover entry
Transpose notes upwards by [n] octave divisions, using the note name a fifth above	**t 5 8 div** in any tonality system **t 5 8 st** in 12-EDO **t 5 16 qt** in 24-EDO
Transpose notes downwards by [n] octave divisions, using the note name a sixth below	**t -6 9 div** in any tonality system **t -6 9 st** in 12-EDO **t -6 18 qt** in 24-EDO

EXAMPLE

To transpose C♮ upwards by nine quarter tones in 24-EDO, you can enter **t 3 9 qt** for E𝄲 or **t 4 9 qt** for F𝄳.

Inversion

Type of inversion	Popover entry
Invert pitches within the range of the highest and lowest notes in the selection	**inv**, **invert**, **inversion**, or **mirror**
Specify the central pitch for inversion For example, C4, E♭4, F5, G♯6, and so on	**C4**, **eb4**, **F5**, **g#6**, and so on
Specify the central octave division for inversion For example, D𝄲4 or A𝄳5 in 24-EDO	**d1/24 4** or **A-3/24 5**
Specify root of prevailing key as central pitch for inversion NOTE In open keys or music without key signatures, C is used.	**root**
Specify first note as central pitch for inversion	**first**
Specify top note in first chord as central pitch for inversion	**top**
Specify bottom note in first chord as central pitch for inversion	**bottom**
Diatonic inversion	**diatonic** or **diat**
Chromatic inversion	**chromatic** or **chrom**

EXAMPLE

To invert pitches around E♭4, enter **inveb4**.

Reversal

Type of reversal	Popover entry
Reverse the selection, including pitches and rhythms	**retrograde**, **ret**, **reverse**, or **rev**
Specify pitches only	**pitch** or **pt**
Specify rhythms only	**rhythm** or **rm**
Reverse and invert pitches	**ret invert**, **rev inv**, and so on
TIP You can also include additional specifications for the inversion.	
Include additional items belonging to the same player as the selection	**player**
Include only items belonging to the same voice as the selection	**voice**

EXAMPLE

To reverse the pitches and items in the selected voice only, enter **rev pt voice**.

Rotation

Type of rotation	Popover entry
Rotate the selection, including pitches and rhythms	**rotate** or **rot**
Specify pitches only	**pitch** or **pit**
Specify rhythms only	**rhythm**, **rhy**, or **rm**
Specify number of steps forwards	**1**, **2**, **3**, **4**, and so on
Specify number of steps backwards	**-1**, **backwards 2**, **bw 3**, **prev 4**, and so on

EXAMPLE

To rotate only the rhythms of the selected notes backwards three steps, enter **rot rm bw 3**.

Repetition

Type of repetition	Popover entry
Repeat the first two pitches in the selection across the selection	**repeat 2 pitches**
Repeat the first eight pitches in the selection across the selection	**repeat 8 pitches**

This list is not comprehensive as you can repeat any number of pitches. It is intended to illustrate how you can structure your entry.

Pitch mapping

Type of pitch mapping	Popover entry
Specify source and destination pitches For example, to map C4 to E♭4, F4 to G4, and A4 to B♭4. NOTE • Separate source and destination pitches with equals signs, and pairs of pitches with commas. • The octave number is optional.	**c4=eb4,f4=g4,a4=bb5**
Include enharmonic equivalents of specified notes	***** after note name and octave, if specified
Specify that destination pitch is higher than source pitch	**up**
Specify that destination pitch is lower than source pitch	**down**

EXAMPLE
To map A♯s and enharmonic equivalents, including B♭s, to the G below, enter **a#*=Gdown**.

Scale mapping

Type of scale mapping or scale	Popover entry
Scale mapping structure	**[source scale] to [destination scale]**, such as **c M to c m** or **Fmin to Dmaj**

Type of scale mapping or scale	Popover entry
Snap pitches outside the source scale to the nearest pitch by interval in the destination scale	**snap**
Specify snapped pitches should be raised	**up** or **higher**
Specify snapped pitches should be lowered	**down** or **lower**
Respell notes to the specified scale	**spell [scale]**, such as **spell Cmaj**
Snap notes to the specified scale	**snap [scale]**, such as **snap cmin**
Scale roots	**c**, **Db**, **e**, **f#**, **g**, and so on
Alterations	**#4**, **b6**, and so on
Major	**maj** or **M**
Minor	**min** or **m**
Ionian major	**ion maj** or **ion M**
Harmonic minor	**harm m** or **hmc min**
Melodic minor (ascending)	**me m** or **mdc min**
Dorian	**dor** or **drn**
Phrygian	**phryg**, **phry**, or **phr**
Lydian	**lyd**
Mixolydian	**mixlyd**, **mlyd**, **mixo**, **mix**, or **ml**
Aeolian or natural minor	**aeol m**, **aeo m**, **aln min**, or **nat min**
Locrian	**loc**
Super Locrian (altered scale)	**super loc**, **sup loc**, or **spr loc**
Major pentatonic	**pent maj**, **5tonic M**, or **5ton M**
Minor pentatonic	**pent min**, **5tonic m**, **5ton m**
Major blues	**blue maj** or **bls M**
Minor blues	**blue min** or **bls m**

Type of scale mapping or scale	Popover entry
Whole tone	**wholetone**, **whole-tone**, **wtone**, **wton**, **whole**, or **wt**
Half-whole diminished	**half whole dimin**, **halfwhole dimin**, **hw dim**, **half-tone dimin**, **half tone dimin**, **halftone dimin**, **htone dim**, **hton dim**, **half dim**, or **ht dim**
Half-whole octatonic	**half whole octa**, **halfwhole octa**, **hw oct**, **half-tone octa**, **half tone octa**, **halftone octa**, **htone oct**, **hton oct**, **half oct**, or **ht oct**
Whole-half diminished	**whole half dimin**, **wholehalf dimin**, **wh dim**, **whole tone dimin**, **whole-tone dimin**, **wholetone dimin**, **wtone dim**, **wton dim**, **whole dim**, or **wt dim**
Whole-half octatonic	**whole half octa**, **wholehalf octa**, **wh oct**, **whole tone octa**, **whole-tone octa**, **wholetone octa**, **wtone oct**, **wton oct**, **whole oct**, or **wt oct**
Locrian ♭7 or harmonic major mode 7	**loc maj mode7** or **harm M mod7**
Super locrian ♭7 or harmonic minor mode 7	**sup loc min mode7** or **spr loc m mod7**

NOTE

- You can use scale type entries in any combination, such as **me min**, **me m**, **mdc min**, and **mdc m**.
- **M** and **m** entries for major and minor are case-sensitive.
- You must separate roots from **M** and **m** with a space, such as **c M**.

EXAMPLE

To respell all F♭s in a selection as E♮s, and snap A♭s to A♮s, enter **spell snap Cmaj**.

RELATED LINKS

Notations toolbox on page 192
Large selections on page 403
Equal Division of the Octave (EDO) on page 918
Adding notes above/below existing notes on page 247
Transposing existing notes with the note tools popover on page 447
Inverting pitches on page 453
Reversing pitches/rhythms on page 454
Reverse and Invert Pitches and Reverse Rhythms dialogs on page 455
Rotating pitches/rhythms on page 456
Rotate Pitches/Rhythms dialogs on page 457
Mapping notes to pitches on page 458
Map Pitches dialog on page 459

Mapping notes to scales on page 460
Map Scale dialog on page 460
Repeating pitches across notes on page 457
Arranging tools on page 431
Inputting notes on page 211

Splitting flows

You can split flows at specific rhythmic positions. For example, if you want the music from a specific bar onwards to be a new flow, separate from the preceding music.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select a note or item at the position where you want to split the flow.
2. Choose **Write** > **Split Flow**.

RESULT

The flow is split into two flows: the existing flow, and a new flow that begins from the position of the item you selected. By default, new flows in full score layouts start on a new page in page view, and are shown on a separate background in galley view.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

You can set options for each flow independently in the **Notation Options** dialog.

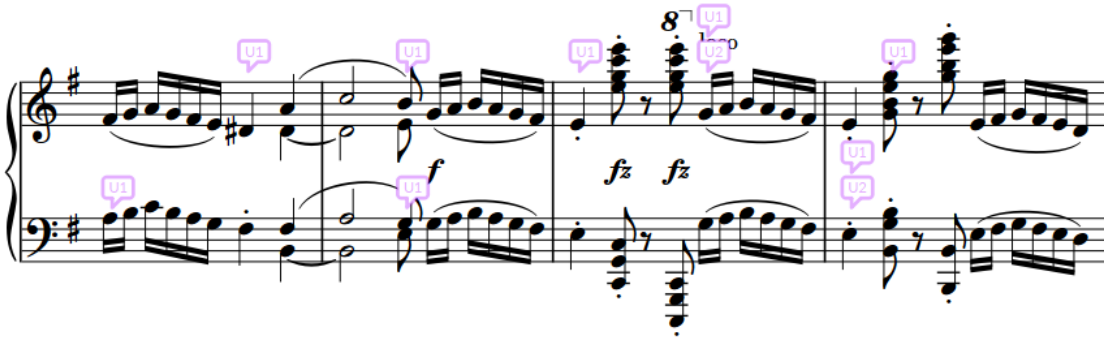
RELATED LINKS

Flows on page 162
Adding flows on page 163
Duplicating flows on page 163
Deleting flows on page 165
Notation Options dialog on page 679
Deleting empty bars/beats at the end of flows on page 731
Allowing/Disallowing multiple flows on the same page on page 565
Switching between layouts on page 43
Switching to galley/page view on page 50

Comments

Comments allow you to add notes or instructions at precise positions in your project without affecting the music. They are considered annotations in Dorico Elements, meaning they are not printed by default.

Comments exist outside of the music, so they do not affect note spacing, vertical spacing, or casting off. However, you can attach them to specific items and staves in order to show the precise subject of each comment.



A passage with comments and replies

By default, comments are shown in the music area. They appear as speech bubble symbols as close as possible to their attached position. Comments that are replies are stacked vertically below the original comment.

All comments in the current layout are listed in the Comments panel in Write mode. Clicking a comment, either in the Comments panel or in the music area, automatically moves the view to bring that rhythmic position into focus.

In addition to its content, each comment identifies the following:

- Author of the comment, using either the current user account name or a custom name

  On macOS, the user account name uses the long account name; on Windows, it uses the full name associated with the account. If Dorico Elements cannot determine your account name, a dialog appears into which you can add the name and initials you want to use for comments. You can also change these in **Preferences**.
- Date the comment was added
- Instrument to which the comment applies
- Bars to which the comment applies

NOTE

In the music area, only the initials of the author are shown. In the Comments panel, all information is shown.

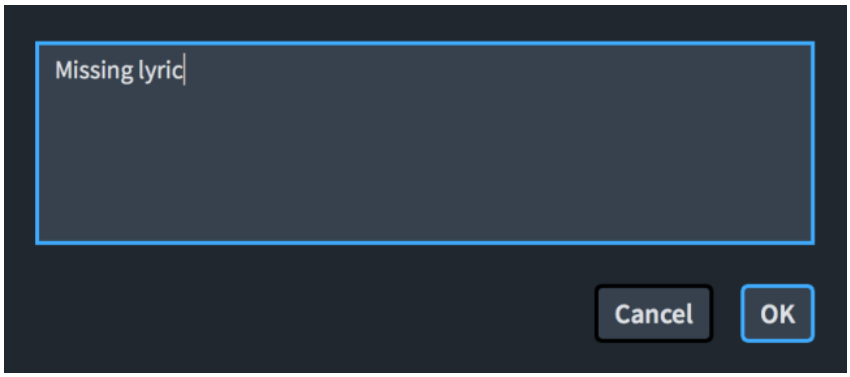
You can hide/show comments at any time, and you can choose to include them, alongside other view options, when printing/exporting layouts.

RELATED LINKS
Deleting notes/items on page 431
Changing the author name used for comments on page 475
Annotations on page 554

Comment dialog

The **Comment** dialog allows you to enter and edit text as comments.

- You can open the **Comment** dialog by adding a comment, replying to a comment, or double-clicking an existing comment, either in the music area or in the Comments panel.

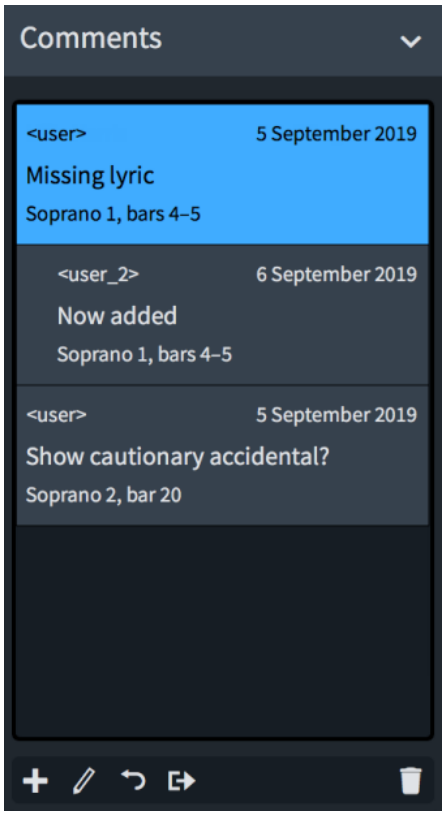


Comments panel

The Comments panel shows all the comments in the current layout as a list. Replies to comments are indented to indicate their relationship to the original comment. The Comments panel is located in the right zone in Write mode.

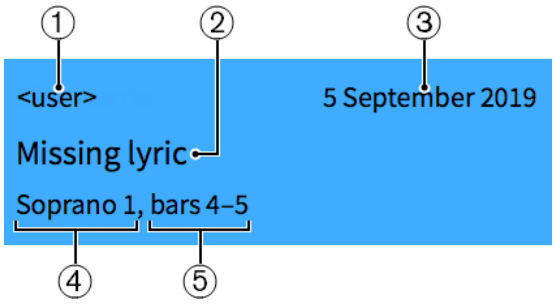
- You can hide/show the Comments panel by clicking **Panels**, then **Comments** in the Notations toolbox.

  You can also hide/show the right zone by pressing **Ctrl/Cmd-9**.



Comments panel

Each comment in the panel shows the following:



1 **Author name**: This uses either the current user account or a custom name, depending on the preference that was set when the comment was added.

2 **Comment content**

3 **Date the comment was added to the project**

4 **Instrument to which the comment applies**

5 **Bars to which the comment applies**

The action bar at the bottom of the panel contains the following options:

Create Comment

Adds a comment to the selected rhythmic position and staff.

Edit Comment

Opens the selected comment in the **Comment** dialog and allows you to change its content.

Reply to Comment

Adds a comment that is a reply to the selected comment. Replies are shown indented in the Comments panel and stacked in the music area.

Export Comments

Exports all the comments in the project as an HTML file, which opens automatically in your default web browser. The HTML file is automatically saved in the same location as the project.

Delete Comment

Deletes the selected comments.

RELATED LINKS
Notations toolbox on page 192
Changing the author name used for comments on page 475
Exporting comments on page 476

Adding comments

You can add comments at any rhythmic position in your project, including adding different comments to multiple staves at the same rhythmic position.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select an item on the staff and at the rhythmic position where you want to add a comment. If you want your comment to apply to a range, select multiple items.
2. Press **Alt/Opt-C** to open the **Comment** dialog.
3. Enter your comment into the dialog.
4. Click **OK** to close the dialog and add the comment.

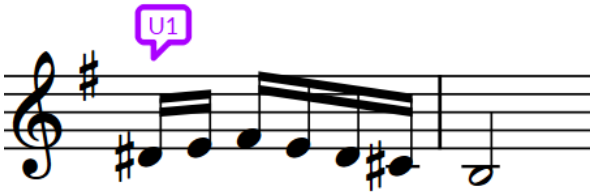
RESULT

The text you entered into the dialog is saved as a comment. In the music area, it is indicated by a speech bubble symbol that contains your initials. In the Comments panel, the text you entered is shown alongside your full username, the date, and the instrument and bar number to which you added the comment.

TIP

You can also add comments by clicking **Create Comment** in the Comments panel, or by choosing **Write** > **Create Comment**.

EXAMPLE



A comment in the music area

Replying to comments

You can add replies to existing comments, which is useful when co-ordinating with others as this organizes the list of comments in the Comments panel into clear sections.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the comment to which you want to reply. You can do this in the music area and in the Comments panel.
2. Press **Alt/Opt-R** to open the **Comment** dialog.
3. Enter your reply into the dialog.
4. Click **OK** to close the dialog and add the reply.

RESULT

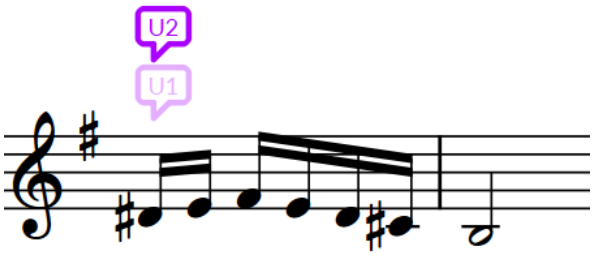
The text you entered into the dialog is saved as a reply to the selected comment. In the music area, it is indicated by a speech bubble symbol that contains your initials and is positioned immediately below the selected comment.

In the Comments panel, the reply is indented below the selected comment.

TIP

You can also reply to comments by clicking **Reply to Comment** in the Comments panel, or by choosing **Write** > **Reply to Comment**.

EXAMPLE



A reply to a comment

Editing existing comments

You can change the contents of existing comments after you have added them; for example, to correct misspellings or add further information.

PROCEDURE

1. Double-click the comment you want to edit to open the **Comment** dialog. You can do this in the music area and in the Comments panel.
2. Change the text in the dialog.
3. Click **OK** to save your changes and close the dialog.

Changing the author name used for comments

You can change the author name used for comments to either your user account name or a custom name. This affects subsequent comments you add to the project without changing the author name used for existing comments.

For the custom name, you can specify both the full name that is shown in the Comments panel and the initials shown in the music area.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-,** to open **Preferences**.
2. In the category list, click **General**.
3. In the **Comments** subsection, choose one of the following options for **Author name for comments**:
   - **User Name**
   - **Custom Name**
4. Optional: If you chose **Custom Name**, enter the full name you want to use into the **Full name** field.
5. Optional: If you chose **Custom Name**, enter the initials you want to use into the **Initials** field.

6. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

Exporting comments

You can export all comments from all flows in the layout currently open in the music area to an HTML file. For example, if you want to view them all in a single place.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, open the layout whose comments you want to export.
2. In the Notations toolbox, click **Panels**, then **Comments** to show the Comments panel.
3. In the **Comments** section action bar, click **Export Comments**.

RESULT

All comments in the layout currently open in the music area are saved as an HTML file, which opens automatically in your default web browser. The comments are displayed in a table.

The HTML file is automatically saved in the same location as the project. Its file name includes the layout name.

RELATED LINKS

Switching between layouts on page 43
Annotations on page 554
Printing layouts on page 538
Exporting layouts as graphics files on page 542
Exporting lyrics on page 924

Hiding/Showing comments

You can hide/show comments at their positions in the music; for example, if you want to hide them when inputting music but show them when engraving.

Comments are considered annotations in Dorico Elements, meaning they are not printed by default.

PROCEDURE

- Choose **View** > **Comments**.

RESULT

Comments are hidden/shown. When shown, comments appear in the music as speech bubbles.

Engrave mode

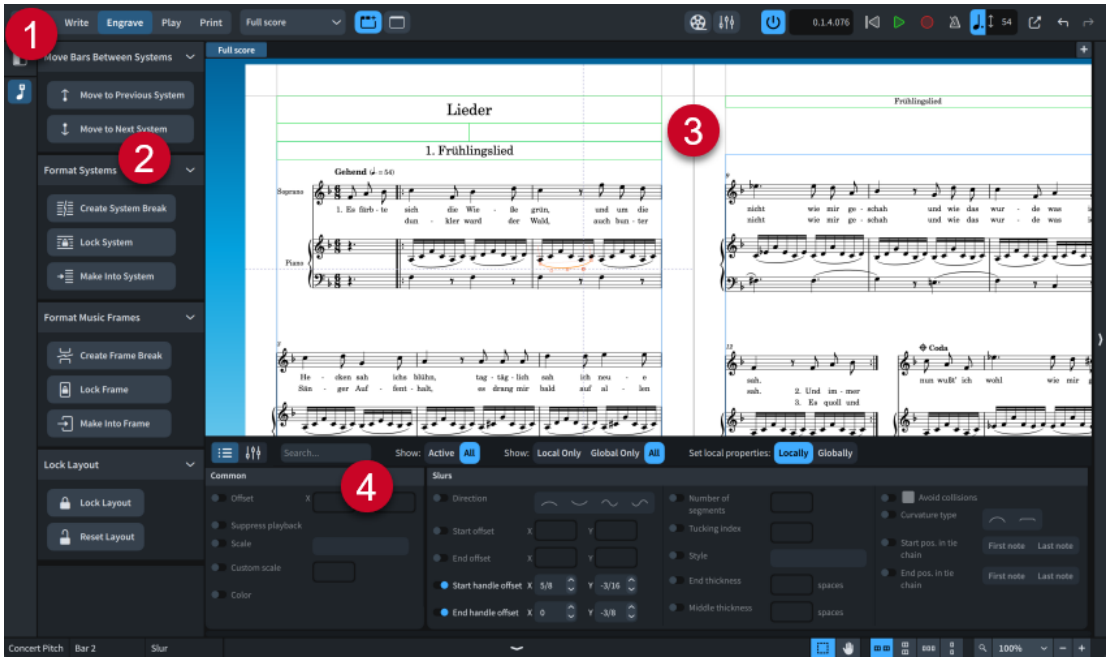
Engrave mode allows you to manipulate and modify every item in your project, but without deleting them, moving them rhythmically, or changing the pitch of notes. You can also determine the casting off in each layout of your project using system and frame breaks.

Project window in Engrave mode

The project window in Engrave mode contains a toolbox and panels with all the tools and functions that allow you to format the pages, systems, and properties of individual notations in your score.

You can switch to Engrave mode in any of the following ways:

- Press **Ctrl/Cmd-3**.
- In the toolbar, click **Engrave**.
- Choose **Window** > **Engrave**.



The project window in Engrave mode contains the following:

1 Engrave toolbox

Allows you to hide/show the left zone.

2 Left zone

Contains the Formatting panel, which allows you to change how systems and frames are formatted on pages, including inserting system/frame breaks.

3 Music area

Displays layouts in page view. In Engrave mode, frame outlines and system/frame fullness indicators are shown on pages.

4 Lower zone

Can display either the Properties panel or Mixer panel, according to the current selection in the lower zone toolbar.

RELATED LINKS
Project window on page 30
Music area on page 35
Properties panel on page 615
Mixer panel on page 667
System fullness indicators on page 480
Frame fullness indicators on page 480
Hiding/Showing crosshairs on page 484

Formatting panel

The Formatting panel allows you to change how systems and frames are formatted on pages, including inserting system/frame breaks. It is located in the left zone in Engrave mode.

- You can show the Formatting panel by showing the left zone, then clicking **Graphic Editing** in the Engrave toolbox.

The Formatting panel contains the following sections:

Moving Bars Between Systems

The **Moving Bars Between Systems** allows you to move selected bars to other systems.

Move to Previous System

Moves the selected bars to the previous system. Inserts system breaks at the start and end of the system to which the bars were moved.

You can also move bars to the previous system by pressing **,**.

Move to Next System

Moves the selected bars to the next system. Inserts system breaks at the start and end of the system to which the bars were moved.

You can also move bars to the next system by pressing **.**.

Format Systems

The **Format Systems** section allows you to change how the music in the layout currently open in the music area is arranged into systems.

Insert System Break

Forces music from the selected item onwards onto the next system. Depending on your staff size and other settings, this may mean the music is forced onto the next page.

You can insert system breaks by pressing **Shift-F**.

Lock System

Fixes the formatting of the selected systems, even if you change the formatting of surrounding musical material and other systems.

Make into System

Forces all music between the selected items into the same system.

Format Music Frames

The **Format Music Frames** section allows you to change how the music in the layout currently open in the music area is arranged into frames.

Insert Frame Break

Forces music from the selected item onwards onto the next frame, which is often on the next page. This allows you to control what music appears on each page.

You can insert frame breaks by pressing **Shift-F**.

Lock Frame

Fixes the formatting of the selected frames, even if you change the formatting of surrounding frames.

Make into Frame

Forces all music between the selected items into the same frame. You can use this option to force music onto a single page.

Lock Layout

The **Lock Layout** section allows you to fix and reset all systems and pages in the current layout.

Lock Layout

Inserts system and frame breaks on all systems in the current layout as required to fix its current casting off.

Reset Layout

Removes all system and frame breaks from the current layout.

RELATED LINKS
Hiding/Showing zones on page 44
Project window in Engrave mode on page 477
Frame breaks on page 589
System breaks on page 586
Page templates on page 599
Page formatting on page 555
Casting off on page 581

System fullness indicators

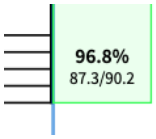
System fullness indicators are highlighted regions that are shown to the right of systems in Engrave mode. They use colors and percentages to indicate the horizontal fullness of the corresponding system.

The following colors are used in the system fullness indicator:

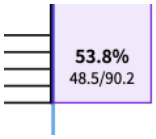
- Green: the system is comfortably full. Notes have enough horizontal space to be legible but are not too far apart. Systems that are 60-100% full are considered comfortably full.
- Purple: the system is under-full, meaning notes might appear overly stretched. Systems that are less than 60% full are considered under-full.
- Red: the system is over-full, meaning notes might appear squashed with not enough horizontal space between them. Systems that are more than 100% full are considered over-full.

The fullness of systems is also expressed using a percentage. The percentage indicated is calculated by dividing the number of spaces occupied in the system by the total number of available spaces in the system, which is measured from the start of the rhythmic space to the right of the initial clef/time signature/key signature up to the final barline in the system.

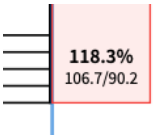
System comfortably full



System under-full



System over-full



RELATED LINKS
Project window in Engrave mode on page 477
Frame fullness indicators on page 480
Margins on page 570

Frame fullness indicators

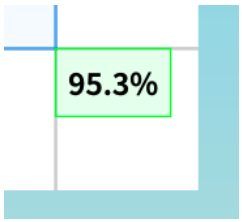
Frame fullness indicators are highlighted regions that are shown outside the bottom right corners of music frames in Engrave mode. They use colors and percentages to indicate the vertical fullness of the corresponding music frame, which in most cases represents a full page.

The following colors are used in the frame fullness indicator:

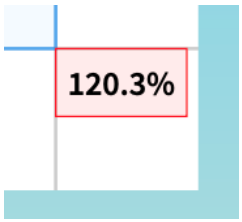
- Green: the frame is comfortably full. Staves and systems have enough vertical space to be legible but are not too far apart. Frames that are 60-100% full are considered comfortably full.
- Red: the frame is over-full, meaning staves and systems might appear squashed with not enough vertical space between them. Frames that are more than 100% full are considered over-full.

The fullness of frames is also expressed using a percentage. The percentage indicated is calculated by dividing the number of spaces occupied in the frame by the total number of available spaces in the frame, which is measured using the vertical distance between the top and bottom music frame padding margins.

Frame comfortably full



Frame over-full



RELATED LINKS
Per-layout vertical spacing options on page 577
Changing the default staff/system spacing on page 559
Changing the vertical justification of staves/systems on page 560
Project window in Engrave mode on page 477
System fullness indicators on page 480
Margins on page 570

Moving items graphically

You can move items graphically without changing the rhythmic positions or notes to which they are attached; for example, to offset individual items on specific pages without moving other items of the same type elsewhere in the layout. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

You can move individual instances of system objects, such as tempo marks or system-attached text, independently of other instances shown at different staff positions. You can also move each end of items with duration, such as gradual dynamics or octave lines, independently, allowing you to adjust their graphical length and angle.

NOTE

- These steps do not apply to the following: text in text frames, accidentals, notes, clefs, barlines, key signatures, or time signatures shown on staves.
- You can only move some items and handles in specific directions. For example, you can move articulations upwards/downwards but not to the right/left. Similarly, you can only move the end handles on octave lines to the right/left. When using the mouse, you can only move whole guitar bends and vibrato bar dives/returns upwards/downwards. You cannot move individual lyrics upwards/downwards, but you can move lyric lines upwards/downwards on a per-system basis.

PREREQUISITE

You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select any of the following that you want to move.
   - Whole items or segments of items that cross system/frame breaks
   - Lines extending from items, such as figured bass hold lines or lyric extender lines
   - Individual handles on items

   TIP

   - You can cycle through handles on a selected item by pressing **Tab**.

2. Move the selected items in any of the following ways:
   - To move items a standard amount to the right, left, up, or down, press **Alt/Opt** plus the corresponding arrow key. For example, press **Alt/Opt-Left Arrow** to move items to the left. This moves beams by 1/4 space and all other items by 1/8 space per press.
   - To move items a large amount, press **Ctrl/Cmd** plus the standard key command; for example, **Ctrl/Cmd-Alt/Opt-Left Arrow**. This moves items by 1 space per press.
   - To move items a moderate amount, press **Shift** plus the standard key command; for example, **Shift-Alt/Opt-Left Arrow**. This moves items by 1/2 space per press.
   - To move items a small amount, press **Ctrl/Cmd**-**Shift** plus the standard key command; for example, **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-Alt/Opt-Left Arrow**. This moves items by 1/32 space per press.
   - Click and drag them in any direction.

     NOTE

     You cannot move vibrato bar scoops using the mouse.

RESULT

The selected items are moved graphically without changing the rhythmic positions or notes to which they are attached. Attachment lines link items to the rhythmic positions to which they apply, so it is always clear where they belong. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

Moving some items, such as notehead brackets and jazz articulations, causes other nearby items, such as ties and slurs, to move automatically to avoid collisions. This might affect note spacing and casting off.

If you move dynamics linked to other dynamics, all dynamics linked to the selected dynamics in the current layout are also moved.

Moving items with continuation or hold lines, such as playing techniques or figured bass, moves them both together. Moving continuation/hold lines or continuation/hold line handles moves the continuation/hold lines independently of the item. Dorico Elements automatically lengthens hold lines between figured bass suspensions and resolutions when you move resolution figures.

Lengthening/Shortening lyric hyphens does not change the size or shape of the hyphens themselves. Instead, you increase/decrease the distance between the handles in which hyphens can appear.

By default, player labels erase their backgrounds if positioned in the staff so they do not collide with staff lines.

NOTE

- Moving the start handle of hairpins with the keyboard changes the vertical position of whole hairpins, not their angles. You must change the end offset position as well to change the angle of hairpins. Dragging hairpin handles with the mouse always changes the angle.
- Properties that control the graphic offsets of items are activated automatically when you move items. You can find these properties in the corresponding group of the Properties panel for the item, or in the **Common** group for some items, such as text items and lyrics.

  Some offset properties have separate value fields for horizontal offsets on the X axis and vertical offsets on the Y axis. Similarly, items with length or duration have separate offset properties for each end.

You can also use these properties to move items graphically by changing the values in the value fields. Deactivating offset properties resets the selected items to their default positions.

RELATED LINKS
Changing the property scope on page 617
Copying property settings to other layouts/frame chains on page 599
Moving notes/items rhythmically on page 437
Moving figured bass resolutions on page 867
Lengthening/Shortening items on page 410
Changing the vertical order of playing techniques on page 1067
Properties panel on page 615
Casting off on page 581
Note spacing on page 579
Moving accidentals graphically on page 717
Changing the alignment of chord symbols relative to notes on page 791
Guitar bends in Engrave mode on page 1015
Notehead brackets in Engrave mode on page 958
Positions of lyrics on page 925
Lyric hyphens and lyric extender lines on page 934
Octave lines in Engrave mode on page 824
Sustain pedal lines in Engrave mode on page 1046
Slurs in Engrave mode on page 1171
Lines in Engrave mode on page 1094
Frames on page 605

Selecting handles on items

In Engrave mode, you can select individual handles on items; for example, if you want to move the graphical end of a gradual dynamic without moving its start.

PROCEDURE

1. Select a handle in any of the following ways:
   - Select the whole item and press **Tab** until the handle you want is selected.
   - Click the handle you want.
2. Optional: Select handles on other items as well by **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking them.

   NOTE

   You cannot select subsequent handles on other items by selecting the items and pressing **Tab**.

RELATED LINKS
Gradual dynamics on page 842
Changing the shape/angle of ties on page 1243

Hiding/Showing crosshairs

You can hide/show crosshairs in Engrave mode for selected items and/or when dragging items using the mouse. Crosshairs can make it easier to align items graphically.

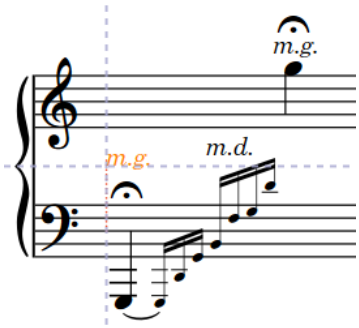
PROCEDURE

- In Engrave mode, do one or both of the following:
  - To hide/show crosshairs when dragging items, choose **Engrave** > **Crosshairs** > **Show When Dragging**.
  - To hide/show crosshairs for selected items, choose **Engrave** > **Crosshairs** > **Show When Selected**.

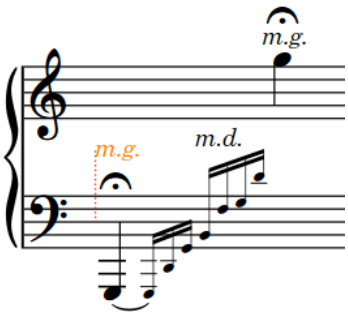
RESULT

Crosshairs are hidden/shown in the corresponding context.

EXAMPLE



Crosshairs shown



Crosshairs hidden

RELATED LINKS

Moving items graphically on page 481
Selecting/Deselecting notes and items individually on page 401
Large selections on page 403
Hiding/Showing signposts on page 427
Hiding non-printing elements on page 416
Annotations on page 554

Play mode

Play mode allows you to change how your music sounds in playback, including by adjusting the mix, changing the playback template, and assigning VST instruments.

Project window in Play mode

The project window in Play mode contains all the tools and functions for setting up your project for playback. In Play mode, your project appears in a similar way to that used in a digital audio workstation, or “DAW”, such as Cubase.

You can switch to Play mode in any of the following ways:

- Press **Ctrl/Cmd-4**.
- In the toolbar, click **Play**.
- Choose **Window** > **Play**.

The project window in Play mode comprises the following:

1 **Left zone**

Can display either the Track Inspector or VST and MIDI panel, according to the current selection at the top of the left zone.

2 **Track overview**

Allows you to view the tracks in the selected flow, mute/solo instrument tracks, and select the track whose music you want to show in the Key Editor or whose sounds you want to edit in the Track Inspector.

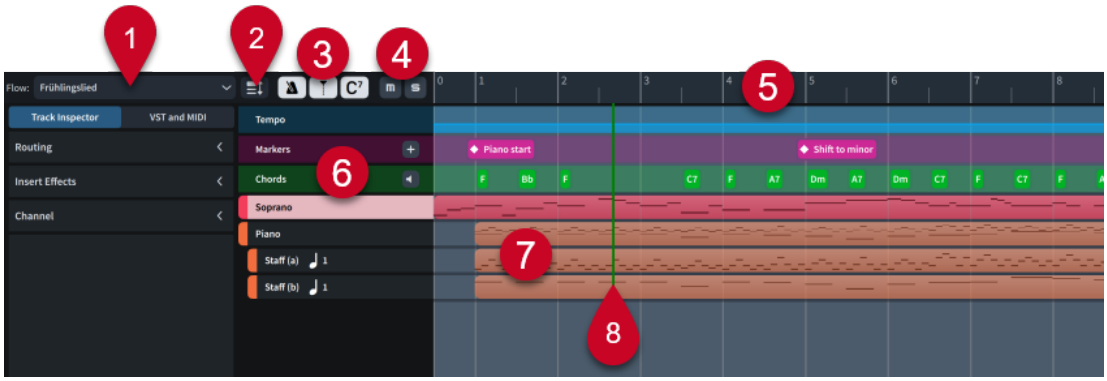
3 **Lower zone**

Can display either the Key Editor panel or Mixer panel, according to the current selection in the lower zone toolbar.

RELATED LINKS
Project window on page 30
Track overview on page 486
Track Inspector on page 488
VST and MIDI panel on page 491
Key Editor panel on page 619
Mixer panel on page 667
Hiding/Showing zones on page 44

Track overview

The track overview allows you to view the tracks in the selected layout and flow, and to mute and solo instrument tracks. It also allows you to select a single track whose music you want to show in the Key Editor, if it is unlocked, or whose sounds you want to edit in the Track Inspector. It is the central part of the window in Play mode.



The track overview contains the following:

1 **Flow selector**

Allows you to select the flow you want to show in the track overview. Only a single flow can be shown at a time. Only available when nothing is selected in any flow.

2 **Track height button**

Allows you to cycle through different heights for all tracks in the track overview.

3 **Track visibility buttons**

Allow you to hide/show the corresponding track.

- **Tempo** : Hides/Shows the Tempo track.
- **Markers** : Hides/Shows the Markers track.
- **Chords** : Hides/Shows the Chords track.

4 **Mute /Solo buttons**

Allow you to mute/solo tracks. Shown in track headers when tracks are sufficiently tall, and at the top of the track overview when tracks appear short. They apply to the corresponding track when shown in track headers, and the selected track when shown at the top of the track overview.

5 **Ruler**

Displays bar numbers and shows beat divisions.

6 **Track headers**

Display the name of each track and contain appropriate options for the track type.

7 **Tracks**

Rows that display an overview of the corresponding musical element, such as notes in instrument tracks and chord symbols in the chord symbols track.

8 **Playhead**

Shows the current rhythmic position in playback.

RELATED LINKS
Tracks on page 494
Instrument tracks on page 495
Tempo track on page 496
Markers track on page 497
Chords track on page 498
Key Editor on page 619
Showing instruments in the Key Editor on page 623
Track Inspector on page 488
Hiding/Showing tracks on page 500
Muting/Soloing tracks on page 507
Playhead on page 501
Changing the height of tracks on page 500
Zooming in/out of tracks on page 501
Hiding/Showing zones on page 44
Switching between layouts on page 43

Switching between flows in the track overview

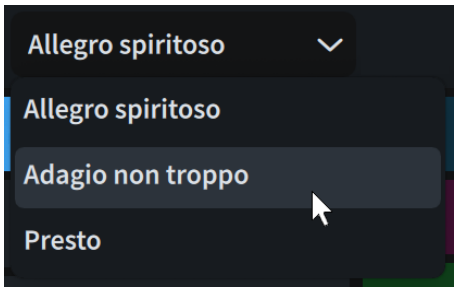
You can change which flow is displayed in the track overview in Play mode manually. Only a single flow can be shown at a time.

PREREQUISITE

You have deselected all notes/items. You cannot switch flows when notes/items are selected.

PROCEDURE

- In Play mode, click the flow selector at the top of the track overview and select a flow from the menu.



RELATED LINKS
Selecting/Deselecting notes and items individually on page 401
Switching between layouts on page 43

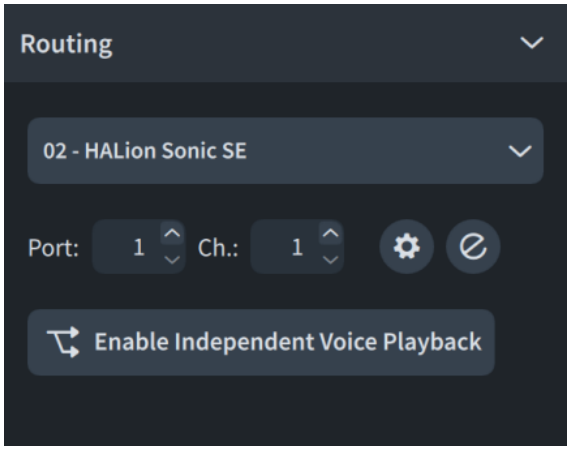
Track Inspector

The Track Inspector allows you to edit sounds for the track currently selected in the track overview. It is located in the left zone in Play mode.

The Track Inspector contains the following sections:

Routing

Allows you to change the sound routing of the selected track.



The following routing controls are available:

Audio plug-in menu

Allows you to select the VST or MIDI instrument plug-in you want to use for the selected track. Only plug-ins already loaded in the project are available.

Port field

Allows you to change the endpoint to which the selected track is assigned by entering the port you want to use. Only necessary when using a plug-in that has multiple ports of 16 channels.

Channel field

Allows you to change the endpoint to which the selected track is assigned by entering the channel you want to use in the loaded VST or MIDI instrument.

NOTE

- You must assign a VST or MIDI instrument and a channel for the Chords track in order to hear chords in playback.
- If you manually load sounds into the channel you selected for your Chords track and later add more instruments to your project, the sounds for the new instruments overwrite the sounds you manually loaded in that channel.

Enable independent voice playback

Allows you to enable independent voice playback for the selected instrument track. This shows each voice belonging to the instrument as a separate voice track below the instrument track.

Dorico Elements automatically loads enough additional channels, and additional plug-in instances if necessary, to accommodate all voices belonging to the corresponding instrument project-wide, according to the current playback template. Voices are automatically assigned to endpoints according to their voice order.

Disable independent voice playback

Allows you to disable independent voice playback for the selected instrument track and return it to using a single endpoint for all voices.

Endpoint Setup

Opens the **Endpoint Setup** dialog for the corresponding plug-in instance.

Edit Instrument

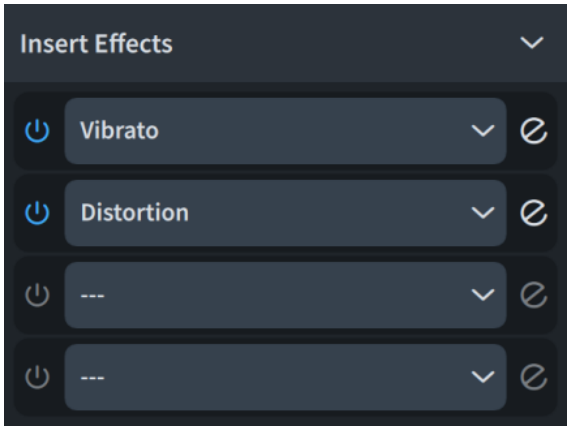
Opens the corresponding VST or MIDI instrument in a window, which allows you to edit its settings.

Edits apply to

Allows you to determine whether changing the routing of the selected voice affects the current flow only or all flows in the project. Only applies to future changes you make immediately after choosing either **This flow** or **All flows**. Only available for voice tracks belonging to instruments with independent voice playback enabled.

Insert Effects

Allows you to add and manage inserts on the Mixer channel for the selected instrument track. Each instrument track's Mixer channel has four insert slots.



Each slot contains the following:

Activate Insert

Activates/Deactivates the insert slot.

Insert menu

Allows you to select an insert to load into the slot.

Edit Insert

Opens the corresponding effect in a window, which allows you to edit its settings.

TIP

- You can also access inserts for all channels in the Mixer.
- For more information about the plug-ins included with Dorico Elements, see the separate document **Plug-in Reference**.

Channel

Shows the Mixer channel strip for the selected track and allows you to adjust the channel.

TIP

You can also access all channels in the Mixer.

RELATED LINKS
Track overview on page 486
Instrument tracks on page 495
Endpoint Setup dialog on page 526
Mixer on page 667
Mixer channel strips on page 671
Enabling independent voice playback on page 506
Changing the sound used for chord symbol playback on page 499
Loading VST/MIDI instruments manually on page 493

VST and MIDI panel

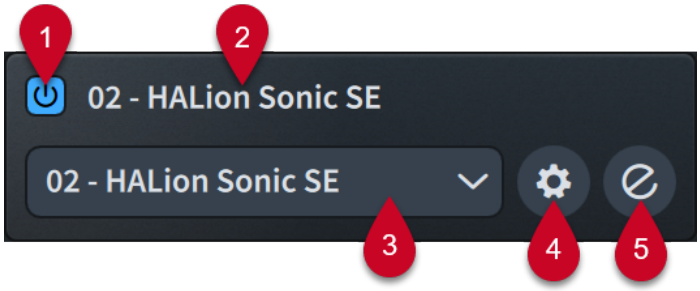
The VST and MIDI panel contains the VST and MIDI instruments available and used in your project, and allows you to edit their settings. It is located in the left zone in Play mode.

VST Instruments

The **VST Instruments** section of the panel contains plug-in instances that each contain a VST instrument plug-in. Dorico Elements automatically loads plug-ins and enough plug-in instances for the instruments you add to your project according to the current playback template, but you can also load VST instruments manually.

NOTE

Dorico Elements only shows VST 3 instruments in the **VST Instruments** section by default. If you also want VST 2 instruments to be available, you must allow them. Only Kontakt and NotePerformer are allowed by default.



Each VST plug-in instance contains the following:

1 **Activate Instance**

Activates/Deactivates the plug-in instance.

2 **Name**

Displays the number and name of the plug-in instance. Plug-in instances are automatically numbered to help you differentiate between instances when you have multiple instances of the same plug-in.

3 **VST Instruments menu**

Displays the VST instrument currently loaded in the plug-in instance and allows you to select another available VST instrument from the menu.

4 **Endpoint Setup**

Opens the **Endpoint Setup** dialog for the corresponding plug-in instance.

5 **Edit Instrument**

Opens/Closes the VST instrument window.

The action bar at the bottom of the section contains the following options:

- **Add** : Adds a new empty plug-in instance.
- **Duplicate** : Creates a copy of the selected plug-in instance that you can edit separately from the original.
- **Save Endpoint Configuration** : Opens the **Save Endpoint Configuration** dialog, which allows you to save the current state of all plug-in instances in the section as a custom endpoint configuration.
- **Delete** : Deletes the selected plug-in instance.

MIDI Instruments

The **MIDI Instruments** section of the panel contains plug-in instances that each contain a MIDI device to use for output during playback. Which MIDI devices are available depends on your operating system.

- On Windows, you can select any MIDI device that is plugged into your computer.
- On macOS, you can select any MIDI device that is plugged into your computer, and any other device set up in the Audio MIDI Setup application. For example, this allows you to use MIDI from one application in another application.

TIP

We recommend plugging MIDI devices into your computer before starting Dorico Elements. Similarly, if your device is not recognized, we recommend restarting Dorico Elements.

Each MIDI plug-in instance contains the following:

1 **Name**

Displays the number and name of the plug-in instance. Plug-in instances are automatically numbered to help you differentiate between instances when you have multiple instances of the same plug-in.

2 **MIDI Instruments menu**

Displays the MIDI device currently loaded in the plug-in instance and allows you to select another available MIDI device from the menu.

3 **Endpoint Setup**

Opens the **Endpoint Setup** dialog for the corresponding plug-in instance.

The action bar at the bottom of the section contains the following options:

- **Add** : Adds a new empty plug-in instance.
- **Save Endpoint Configuration** : Opens the **Save Endpoint Configuration** dialog, which allows you to save the current state of all plug-in instances in the section as a custom endpoint configuration.
- **Delete** : Deletes the selected plug-in instance.

RELATED LINKS
Project window in Play mode on page 485
Playback templates on page 518
Endpoints on page 525
Endpoint Setup dialog on page 526
Custom endpoint configurations on page 528
Save Endpoint Configuration dialog on page 529
Allowing/Blocking VST plug-ins on page 505

Loading VST/MIDI instruments manually

Dorico Elements automatically loads plug-in instances as required, according to the instruments in the project and the current playback template. However, you can also load VST/MIDI instruments manually, either into new plug-in instances or into existing ones to replace existing VST/MIDI instruments.

PREREQUISITE

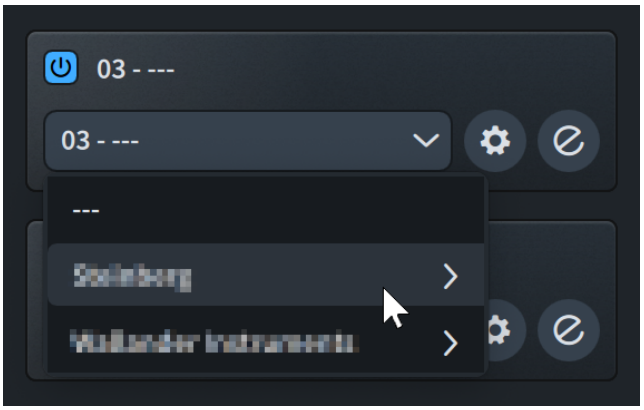
- Any VST instruments you want to use are saved on your computer.
- You have connected any MIDI devices you want to use.

TIP

We recommend plugging MIDI devices into your computer before starting Dorico Elements. Similarly, if your device is not recognized, we recommend restarting Dorico Elements.

PROCEDURE

1. In Play mode, choose **VST and MIDI** in the left zone to show the VST and MIDI panel.
2. Optional: If you want to load a VST/MIDI instrument into a new plug-in instance, click **Add** in the corresponding section of the VST and MIDI panel.
3. In the plug-in instance into which you want to load a new VST/MIDI instrument, select the one you want to load from the menu.



4. Optional: If you loaded a VST instrument, click **Edit Instrument** to open the VST/MIDI instrument window, where you can load sounds into channels.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

- You can assign instruments/voices and expression/percussion maps to endpoints in the VST/MIDI instruments you loaded.
- If you loaded a MIDI instrument, we strongly recommend disabling it for MIDI input to avoid feedback loops.

RELATED LINKS

Playback templates on page 518
VST and MIDI panel on page 491
Endpoint Setup dialog on page 526
Assigning instruments/voices to endpoints on page 530
Assigning expression/percussion maps to endpoints on page 531
Enabling/Disabling MIDI input devices on page 258

Tracks

Tracks are rows that represent a musical element across time, extending from left to right. They allow you to control multiple musical elements in a project simultaneously but independently of each other.

The term was established when audio mixing was done on tapes, and multitracking allowed separate elements of the music to be recorded and edited independently of each other before being combined into the final piece of music.

In modern programs, such as Cubase, tracks can contain many types of sounds, including audio recordings and software instruments. Tracks containing audio recordings often display the waveform of the audio, while tracks containing software instruments often display the pitches as rectangular note events positioned horizontally in time and vertically in pitch on a piano roll.

Dorico Elements provides the following types of tracks in Play mode:

Instrument tracks

Display previews of the notes belonging to the corresponding instrument. Each instrument in the project has its own instrument track, including when a single player holds multiple instruments.

Selecting an instrument track shows its music in the Key Editor, if it is unlocked, and its track settings in the Track Inspector.

Tempo track

Displays a preview of any tempo changes in the flow. Each project contains a single Tempo track.

Selecting the Tempo track shows the Tempo editor in the Key Editor panel, if it is unlocked, and its track settings in the Track Inspector.

Markers track

Displays any markers in the flow, including their text. Each project contains a single Markers track.

Chords track

Displays any chord symbols in the flow. Each project contains a single Chords track.

Selecting the Chords track shows its track settings in the Track Inspector.

RELATED LINKS

Track overview on page 486
Track Inspector on page 488
Key Editor on page 619
Showing instruments in the Key Editor on page 623
Tempo track on page 496
Chords track on page 498
Markers track on page 497
Changing the height of tracks on page 500
Hiding/Showing tracks on page 500
Hiding/Showing zones on page 44
Mixer channels on page 669

Instrument tracks

Instrument tracks allow you to preview notes belonging to the corresponding instrument and select the instrument you want to show in the Key Editor.

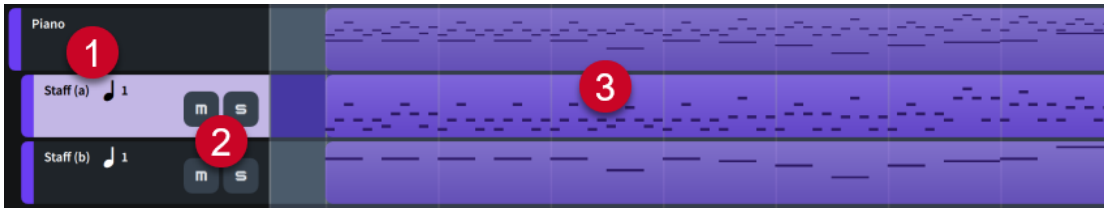
Each instrument in the project has its own instrument track in Play mode, including when a single player holds multiple instruments. Instrument tracks are labeled using the full instrument name set for each instrument.

When independent voice playback is enabled, each voice belonging to the corresponding instrument appears as a separate voice track below the instrument track.

Instruments are automatically assigned a color according to their player order in the current layout, so that you can tell them apart more easily. This color is used consistently for the corresponding instrument, including in the Mixer and Key Editor.

When an instrument track is selected in the track overview, you can do the following:

- View and edit its notes and data in the Key Editor panel, if it is unlocked.
- Use the Track Inspector to change the routing of the track.



Piano instrument track with two voice tracks below

Each instrument track comprises the following:

1 Track name

Shows the name of the track.

- Instrument tracks display the full instrument name set for the instrument.
- Voice tracks display the stem direction and number of the corresponding voice. For instruments with multiple staves, the staff of the corresponding voice is also included.

2 Mute m/Solo s buttons

Allow you to mute/solo the track. Shown in track headers when tracks are sufficiently tall, and at the top of the track overview when tracks appear short. They apply to the corresponding track when shown in track headers, and the selected track when shown at the top of the track overview.

3 Track preview

Displays a preview of notes belonging to the instrument.

RELATED LINKS

Key Editor on page 619
Piano roll editor on page 630
Percussion editor on page 631
Showing instruments in the Key Editor on page 623
Velocity editor on page 642
Dynamics editor on page 645
Playing Techniques editor on page 641
MIDI CC editor on page 651
Player, layout, and instrument names on page 172
Changing instrument names on page 175

Inputting notes into multiple voices on page 221
Voices on page 1303
Endpoint Setup dialog on page 526
Muting/Soloing tracks on page 507
Enabling independent voice playback on page 506
Assigning instruments/voices to endpoints on page 530
Changing the default player order on page 123
Setting custom player orders on page 123
Changing the height of tracks on page 500

Tempo track

The Tempo track displays tempo changes in the selected flow. It appears at the top of the track overview in Play mode, and is one of the tracks you can hide/show. Each project contains a single Tempo track.

Tempo track

When the Tempo track is selected in the track overview, you can do the following:

- Edit and input tempo changes in the Tempo editor in the Key Editor panel, if it is unlocked.
- Use the Track Inspector to change the sound used for the click.

RELATED LINKS

Hiding/Showing tracks on page 500
Track Inspector on page 488
Key Editor on page 619
Tempo editor on page 656
Showing instruments in the Key Editor on page 623
Tempo marks on page 1204
Input methods for tempo marks on page 280
Changing the type and appearance of absolute tempo changes on page 1207
Signposts on page 426
Hiding/Showing tempo marks on page 1211
Exporting MIDI on page 95

Changing the sound used for the click

You can change the sound used for the click in playback by assigning the Tempo track to the required endpoint, including loading a new sound manually if required; for example, if you want to use a sound that is not provided by default.

PREREQUISITE

- The Tempo track is shown.
- You have loaded the VST/MIDI instrument you want to use for the click.

PROCEDURE

1. In Play mode, select the Tempo track in the track overview.
2. In the Track Inspector, in the **Routing** section, select the VST/MIDI instrument plug-in you want to use for the click from the audio plug-in menu.

3. Optional: If the sound you want to use is not already loaded in the plug-in instance, click **Edit Instrument** to open the corresponding VST or MIDI instrument in a window, then load the required sound into an available channel.
4. Select the required endpoint in the plug-in instance using the following value fields, individually or together:
   - To assign the Tempo track to a different port in the selected plug-in instance, enter the required port in the **Port** field.

     NOTE

     Only necessary when using a plug-in that has multiple ports of 16 channels.
   - To assign the Tempo track to a different channel in the selected port, enter the required channel in the **Ch.** field.

RELATED LINKS
Loading VST/MIDI instruments manually on page 493
Track Inspector on page 488
Endpoints on page 525
Endpoint Setup dialog on page 526

Markers track

The Markers track displays markers in the selected flow and allows you to input new markers. It appears at the top of the track overview in Play mode, and is one of the tracks you can hide/show. Each project contains a single Markers track.

The Markers track comprises the following:

1 **Add Marker**

Opens the **Add Marker** dialog, which allows you to input a marker.

2 **Markers**

Show the position of each marker in the flow, including their text.

RELATED LINKS
Hiding/Showing tracks on page 500
Markers on page 1099
Videos on page 180
Editing marker text on page 1101

Inputting markers in the Markers track

You can input markers directly into the Markers track in Play mode.

PREREQUISITE

The Markers track is shown.

PROCEDURE

1. In Play mode, move the playhead to the time position where you want to input a marker.

NOTE

You cannot input markers in negative time, such as when a video starts three bars into the flow, causing the initial timecode of the flow to be in negative time.

2. In the Markers track header, click **Add Marker** to open the **Add Marker** dialog.
3. Enter the marker text you want into the **Text** field.
4. Optional: Change the timecode in the **Timecode** field.
5. Click **OK** to input the marker and close the dialog.

RESULT

A marker is input at the position of the playhead. It shows the text you entered, or the default text “Marker” if you did not change the marker text.

EXAMPLE

Marker in the Markers track

RELATED LINKS

Moving the playhead on page 502
Add Marker dialog on page 383
Editing marker text on page 1101
Changing the start position of videos on page 183

Chords track

The Chords track displays chord symbols in the selected flow and allows you to hear the corresponding chords in playback. It appears at the top of the track overview in Play mode, and is one of the tracks you can hide/show. Each project contains a single Chords track.

When the Chords track is selected in the track overview, you can use the Track Inspector to change its routing.

The Chords track comprises the following:

1 **Enable Chords Playback**

Allows you to include chords in, or exclude chords from, playback.

2 **Chords**

Indicates where chord symbols exist in the flow and shows the chord symbol name.

RELATED LINKS

Chord symbols on page 782
Track Inspector on page 488
Loading VST/MIDI instruments manually on page 493
Hiding/Showing tracks on page 500

Enabling chord symbol playback

You can include chord symbols in playback. They are played as sustained chords, with their duration taken from the gap between one chord symbol and the next. Chord symbols input via a MIDI keyboard use the voicing you played when inputting them, whereas chord symbols input via a computer keyboard use a default voicing.

PREREQUISITE

The Chords track is shown.

PROCEDURE

- In Play mode, activate **Enable Chords Playback** in the Chords track header.

RELATED LINKS

Hiding/Showing tracks on page 500
Track overview on page 486

Changing the sound used for chord symbol playback

You can change the sound used for chord symbol playback by assigning the Chords track to the required endpoint, including loading a new sound manually if required; for example, if you want to use a sound that is not used by any of the instrument tracks in your project.

PREREQUISITE

- The Chords track is shown.
- You have loaded the VST/MIDI instrument you want to use for chord symbol playback.

PROCEDURE

1. In Play mode, select the Chords track in the track overview.
2. In the Track Inspector, in the **Routing** section, select the VST/MIDI instrument plug-in you want to use for chord symbol playback from the audio plug-in menu.
3. Optional: If the sound you want to use is not already loaded in the plug-in instance, click **Edit Instrument** to open the corresponding VST or MIDI instrument in a window, then load the required sound into an available channel.
4. Select the required endpoint in the plug-in instance using the following value fields, individually or together:
   - To assign the Chords track to a different port in the selected plug-in instance, enter the required port in the **Port** field.

     NOTE

     Only necessary when using a plug-in that has multiple ports of 16 channels.

   - To assign the Chords track to a different channel in the selected port, enter the required channel in the **Ch.** field.

RELATED LINKS

Loading VST/MIDI instruments manually on page 493
Track Inspector on page 488
Endpoints on page 525
Endpoint Setup dialog on page 526

Resetting the voicing of chord symbols

When you input chord symbols via a MIDI keyboard, the voicing you used is retained for chord symbol playback. You can reset the voicing of chord symbols input using MIDI keyboards; for example, if you prefer to hear the default voicing for that chord symbol in playback.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the chord symbols whose voicing you want to reset.
2. Choose **Edit** > **Notations** > **Chord Symbols and Diagrams** > **Clear Chord Symbol Played Pitches**. You can also choose this option from the context menu.

RELATED LINKS
Inputting chord symbols on page 303

Hiding/Showing tracks

You can hide/show the Tempo, Markers, and Chords tracks at the top of the track overview independently of each other.

NOTE

You cannot hide/show player and instrument tracks.

PROCEDURE

- At the top of the track overview, hide/show tracks in the following ways:
  - To show/hide the Tempo track, activate/deactivate **Tempo** .
  - To show/hide the Markers track, activate/deactivate **Markers** .
  - To show/hide the Chords track, activate/deactivate **Chords** .

RELATED LINKS
Track overview on page 486
Tracks on page 494
Key Editor panel on page 619

Changing the height of tracks

You can change the height of all types of tracks; for example, to preview more tracks simultaneously. This does not affect the width of tracks.

PROCEDURE

- In Play mode, click **Track height** at the top left of the track overview to cycle through different track heights.

  NOTE

  When tracks appear short, **Mute** and **Solo** buttons appear at the top of the track overview. They only appear in each track header when there is sufficient vertical space.

RELATED LINKS
Changing the height of the Key Editor on page 625
Zooming in/out of the Key Editor on page 625

Zooming in/out of tracks

You can change the width of tracks in the track overview; for example, to preview more bars simultaneously. This does not affect the height of tracks.

PROCEDURE

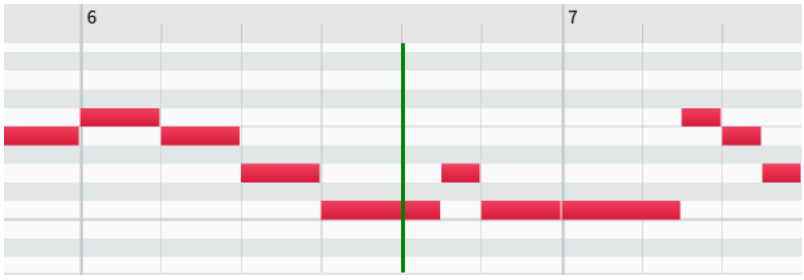
1. Zoom in horizontally in any of the following ways:
   - Click in the ruler and drag upwards.
   - **Ctrl/Cmd**-scroll upwards in the ruler.
   - Click **Zoom In** at the bottom of the track overview.
2. Zoom out horizontally in any of the following ways:
   - Click in the ruler and drag downwards.
   - **Ctrl/Cmd**-scroll downwards in the ruler.
   - Click **Zoom Out** at the bottom of the track overview.

RELATED LINKS
Tracks on page 494
Track overview on page 486
Key Editor panel on page 619
Piano roll editor on page 630
Zooming in/out of the Key Editor on page 625

Playhead

The playhead is a vertical line that moves during playback, showing the current rhythmic position. It is also known as a “playback line”.

The playhead appears at all times in Play mode and during playback in other modes, and its current position is displayed in both the **Transport** window and the mini transport in the toolbar. You can also choose to show the playhead when playback is stopped in other modes.



The playhead in the Key Editor

Dorico Elements automatically keeps the playhead in view during playback by moving it along with the music, but you can also move the playhead manually. Dorico Elements tries to keep systems in the same place on the screen when it scrolls along with the playhead for consistency as you follow your music.

NOTE

The playhead never appears in Print mode.

RELATED LINKS
Transport window on page 515
Mini transport on page 33
Hiding/Showing the playhead on page 503
Changing music area colors on page 54

Moving the playhead

The playhead automatically moves along with the music during playback, but you can also move the playhead manually in any mode.

You can move the playhead both when it is stopped and during playback, but not all methods of moving the playhead work during playback.

By default, the playhead is only shown during playback but you can choose to show the playhead at all times.

PROCEDURE

- Move the playhead in any of the following ways:
  - To move the playhead forwards, press **Num +** (plus on a numeric keypad) or click **Fast Forward** in the **Transport** window.
  - To move the playhead backwards, press **Num -** (minus on a numeric keypad) or click **Rewind** in the **Transport** window.
  - To move the playhead back to the start of the flow, press **Num .** (period on a numeric keypad) or click **Rewind to Beginning of Flow** in the **Transport** window or mini transport.
  - To move the playhead to the start of the earliest selected item, press **Alt/Opt-P**.
  - To move the playhead forwards by frames, press **Ctrl/Cmd-Num + or Ctrl/Cmd-F9**.
  - To move the playhead backwards by frames, press **Ctrl/Cmd-Num - or Ctrl/Cmd-F7**.
  - In Play mode or the Key Editor, click the ruler at any position.

    NOTE

    You cannot click the ruler to move the playhead during playback.

RELATED LINKS
Transport window on page 515
Mini transport on page 33
Preferences dialog on page 58
Frame rates on page 185

Hiding/Showing the playhead

You can hide/show the playhead when playback is stopped; for example, to help line up your music when working with timecodes and video. By default, the playhead is hidden when playback is stopped, except in Play mode, where it always appears.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-,** to open **Preferences**.
2. In the category list, click **Play**.
3. In the **Playhead** subsection, activate/deactivate **Show playhead when stopped**.
4. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

The playhead is shown outside of playback when **Show playhead when stopped** is activated, and hidden when it is deactivated.

NOTE

This does not apply to Play mode or Print mode. The playhead always appears in Play mode and never appears in Print mode.

Playing back music

You can listen to the music you have written from the beginning of your project or from a specific point. You can use playback key commands in any mode.

PREREQUISITE

- You have applied a playback template to the project that includes sounds for the instruments in your project.
- If you want to use different sounds for different voices, you have enabled independent voice playback for those instruments.

PROCEDURE

1. Start playback in one of the following ways:
   - To play back from the earliest selected item, make a selection, then either press **P**, click **Play From Selection** in the **Transport** window, or choose **Play** > **Play From Selection**.

     TIP

     - To play back all instruments, select a single note.
     - To play back only a single staff, select multiple items on the staff.
     - To play back multiple staves, select items on multiple staves.

     This does not affect which channels are soloed or muted in the Mixer.

   - To continue playback from the playhead position, either press **Space or Enter**, click **Play** in the mini transport, click **Play From Playhead Position** in the **Transport** window, or choose **Play** > **Play From Playhead Position**.

- To play back from the last playback start position, press **Shift-Space** or choose **Play** > **Play From Last Start Position**. This works even if you have since deselected the item at that position.
- To play back from the start of the flow, press **Shift-Alt/Opt-Space** or choose **Play** > **Play From Start of Flow**.
- To play back from the start of the project, choose **Play** > **Play From Start of Project**.

2. Optional: Move the playhead during playback to later/earlier positions.
3. Optional: To enable/disable the metronome click, click **Click** in the **Transport** window or mini transport.

   TIP

   You can assign a key command for **Enable Click** on the **Key Commands** page in **Preferences**.

4. Stop playback in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Space or Enter** or **P**.
   - Press **Num 0** (0 on a numeric keypad).
   - In the mini transport, click **Stop**.
   - In the **Transport** window, click **Stop**.

   TIP

   If you notice a change in sound when stopping playback, you can deactivate **Reset controllers and send 'all notes off' when stopping playback** on the **Play** page in **Preferences**.

RELATED LINKS
Playback templates on page 518
Applying/Resetting playback templates on page 523
Allowing/Blocking VST plug-ins on page 505
Enabling independent voice playback on page 506
Playhead on page 501
Mixer on page 667
Muting/Soloing tracks on page 507
Endpoint Setup dialog on page 526
Transport window on page 515
Mini transport on page 33
Key Commands page in the Preferences dialog on page 59
Status bar on page 39
Preferences dialog on page 58

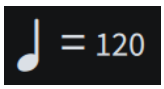
Changing the tempo mode

You can switch the tempo mode at any time between using a single fixed tempo and following tempo changes; for example, if you have a project with multiple tempo changes but want to use a single fixed tempo when recording MIDI.

PROCEDURE

1. Change the tempo mode in any of the following ways:

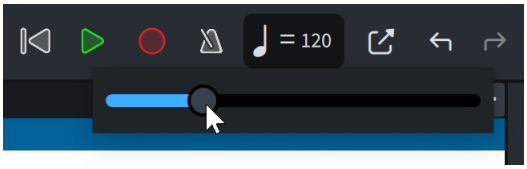
- Click **Tempo Mode** in the toolbar.
- Choose **Play** > **Fixed Tempo Mode**.



Fixed Tempo Mode

Follow Tempo Mode

2. Optional: When **Fixed Tempo Mode** is active, change the metronome mark value by clicking the **Fixed Tempo Mode** number in the toolbar to show a slider, then dragging the slider to the right/left.



RESULT

In follow tempo mode, the tempo for playback and recording is set by tempo marks in the project.

In fixed tempo mode, the tempo for playback and recording is a single tempo, as determined by the **Fixed Tempo Mode** metronome mark value.

RELATED LINKS

Toolbar on page 31
Tempo marks on page 1204
Tempo track on page 496
Tempo editor on page 656
MIDI recording on page 252
Playing back music on page 503
Transport window on page 515

Allowing/Blocking VST plug-ins

You can allow individual VST 2 instrument plug-ins that you want to use in Dorico Elements and block plug-ins you want to prevent Dorico Elements from using. Allowed plug-ins are subsequently available in any project.

Dorico Elements automatically blocks plug-ins that crash and plug-ins that Steinberg has not already qualified for use with Dorico Elements. Only Kontakt and NotePerformer are allowed by default.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-,** to open **Preferences**.
2. In the category list, click **VST Plug-ins**.
3. In the **Allowed VST 2 Plug-ins** subsection, allow plug-ins in any of the following ways:
   - To allow individual blocked plug-ins, select them in the **Blocked Plug-ins** list and click **Allow selected plug-ins** in the action bar.
   - To allow all blocked plug-ins, click **Allow All** in the **Blocked Plug-ins** list action bar.

- To allow a plug-in not included in the **Blocked Plug-ins** list, click **Add plug-in name** in the **Allowed Plug-ins** list action bar, then enter the name of the plug-in in the new entry.

4. Block plug-ins in any of the following ways:
   - To block individual allowed plug-ins, select them in the **Allowed Plug-ins** list and click **Block selected plug-ins** in the action bar.
   - To block all allowed plug-ins, click **Block All** in the **Allowed Plug-ins** list action bar.
5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.
6. Quit Dorico Elements.

RESULT

When Dorico Elements next opens, your allowed VST plug-in entries are available for use in the program.

RELATED LINKS

Preferences dialog on page 58
Track Inspector on page 488
Playing back music on page 503
Playback templates on page 518

Enabling independent voice playback

By default, all voices belonging to a single instrument, including divisi staves, use the same endpoint for playback. You can enable independent voice playback for individual instruments; for example, to hear the different playing techniques in playback for a string divisi where some parts are *pizzicato* and some parts are *arco*.

NOTE

You cannot enable independent voice playback for unpitched percussion instruments and percussion kits.

PROCEDURE

1. In Play mode, in the track overview, select the instrument track for which you want to enable independent voice playback.
2. In the Track Inspector, click **Enable Independent Voice Playback** in the **Routing** section.

RESULT

Independent voice playback is enabled for the selected instrument. Each voice belonging to the instrument appears as a separate voice track below the instrument track.

Dorico Elements automatically loads enough additional channels, and additional plug-in instances if necessary, to accommodate all voices belonging to the corresponding instrument project-wide, according to the current playback template. Voices are automatically assigned to endpoints according to their voice order.

NOTE

When independent voice playback is enabled, you can only change the routing and effects of each voice track.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

You can change the routing and effects of each voice track, including in each flow independently; for example, if some voices in some flows require a solo sound instead of an ensemble one.

RELATED LINKS

Track overview on page 486
Track Inspector on page 488
Playback templates on page 518
Endpoints on page 525
Instrument tracks on page 495
Piano roll editor on page 630
Velocity editor on page 642
Dynamics editor on page 645
MIDI CC editor on page 651
Playing Techniques editor on page 641
Assigning instruments/voices to endpoints on page 530

Disabling independent voice playback

You can disable independent voice playback for individual instrument tracks and return them to using a single endpoint for all voices.

PROCEDURE

1. In Play mode, in the track overview, select the instrument track for which you want to disable independent voice playback.

   NOTE

   You must select the instrument track, not any of its voice tracks.

2. In the Track Inspector, click **Disable Independent Voice Playback** in the **Routing** section.

RESULT

Independent voice playback is disabled for the selected instrument. Its voice tracks disappear from the track overview, and all voices belonging to the instrument return to using a single endpoint for playback.

Muting/Soloing tracks

You can mute/solo individual tracks, instruments, and voices belonging to instruments with independent voice playback enabled. This can be useful if you want to ensure only certain instruments are played back while you are working on a specific section of a project.

PROCEDURE

1. Mute tracks in any of the following ways:
   - In the Mixer, click **Mute** in the corresponding channels.
   - In Play mode, click **Mute** for the corresponding tracks in the track overview.
2. Solo tracks in any of the following ways:
   - In the Mixer, click **Solo** in the corresponding channels.
   - In Play mode, click **Solo** for the corresponding tracks in the track overview.

- To solo selected instruments and mute other instruments, select at least one note belonging to each instrument you want to solo, then press **Alt/Opt-S** or choose **Play** > **Solo Selected Instruments**.

RESULT

The corresponding tracks are muted/soloed. This affects playback until you change which tracks are muted/soloed, meaning you do not have to reselect the tracks you want to hear each time.

NOTE

- Soloing tracks automatically mutes all other tracks. If you solo a track that was muted, it is automatically unmuted.
- You can also play back only specific tracks/staves temporarily by selecting notes/items on each track/staff you want to hear, then starting playback.

EXAMPLE

Mute when enabled

Solo when enabled

RELATED LINKS

Track overview on page 486
Mixer on page 667
Playing back music on page 503

Deactivating mute/solo instrument states

You can deactivate the mute and solo states of all instruments in your project; for example, if you want to hear all instruments in playback after soloing a small selection.

PROCEDURE

- Deactivate mute/solo instrument states in the following ways:
  - To deactivate all mute instrument states, press **Alt/Opt-U** or click **Deactivate All Mute States** in the Mixer.
  - To deactivate all solo instrument states, press **Shift-Alt/Opt-S** or click **Deactivate All Solo States** in the Mixer.

RESULT

All instruments in the project have the corresponding state removed. For example, removing both mute and solo instrument states reverts all instruments to their default state, causing all instruments to be included in playback.

Muting notes/items individually

You can mute individual notes and items to exclude them from playback without deleting them; for example, to hear chords without their arpeggios, a passage with multiple dynamics at a single volume level, or without tempo changes from specific tempo marks.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the notes/items you want to mute.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Suppress playback** in the **Common** group.

RELATED LINKS
Properties panel on page 615
Hiding/Showing zones on page 44
Changing the tempo mode on page 504

Hiding/Showing colors for muted notes/items

You can hide/show colors for individual notes/items whose playback you have suppressed, which causes them to appear gray.

PROCEDURE

- Choose **View** > **Note And Rest Colors** > **Suppressed Playback**.

RELATED LINKS
Viewing options for notes and rests on page 951
Hiding/Showing rest colors on page 1148
Hiding/Showing voice colors on page 1304

Repeats in playback

Dorico Elements supports the playback of repeat structures, including repeat endings, repeat barlines, and repeat markers, provided all the correct jumps and sections are in place.

There is no limit to the number of repeat structures you can have in a single flow and still obtain correct playback.

By default, Dorico Elements plays sections between repeat barlines twice and includes repeats in playback, except after repeat jumps, such as D.S. al Coda.

During playback, the bars/beats and time displays in the mini transport and **Transport** window reflect the playhead position in repeat structures.

Dynamics and tempo marks are reflected in repeats. Repeats are also included in both audio and MIDI exports.

NOTE

When repeat structures are unbalanced and would play back infinitely, Dorico Elements automatically excludes repeats from playback.

RELATED LINKS
Transport window on page 515
Mini transport on page 33
Repeat endings on page 1107
Repeat markers on page 1113
Types of barlines on page 735
Tremolos on page 1264
Rhythm slashes on page 1132
Bar repeats on page 1120

Including/Excluding repeats in playback after repeat jumps

By default, Dorico Elements plays back all playthroughs in all types of repeat structures. You can manually include/exclude repeats indicated by repeat markers, repeat endings, and repeat barlines in playback after individual repeat jumps.

NOTE

You can only include/exclude repeats after repeat jumps, such as *D.C. al Fine* and *D.S. al Coda*.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the repeat jumps after which you want to include/exclude repeats in playback. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Replay repeats** in the **Repeat Markers** group.
3. Activate/Deactivate the corresponding checkbox.

RESULT

Repeats are included in playback after the selected repeat jumps when the checkbox is activated, and excluded from playback when the checkbox is deactivated.

Changing the number of playthroughs at repeat barlines

End repeat barlines typically indicate that the preceding music is played through twice. You can change the number of playthroughs for each end repeat barline individually.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the end repeat barlines whose number of playthroughs you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Play n times** in the **Time Signatures** group.
3. Change the value in the value field.

   NOTE

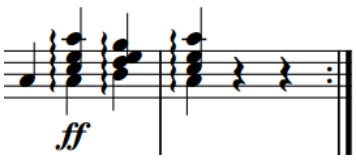
   The minimum value is **2**.

RESULT

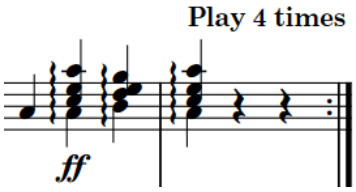
The number of times the music preceding the selected end repeat barlines is played through is changed.

When repeats are included in playback, repeat counts are shown at system object positions for end repeat barlines set to have three or more playthroughs.

EXAMPLE



Final repeat barline with the default 2 playthroughs set



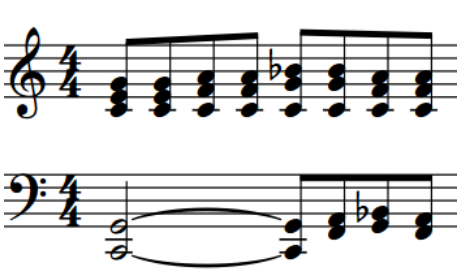
Final repeat barline with 4 playthroughs set and repeat count shown

RELATED LINKS

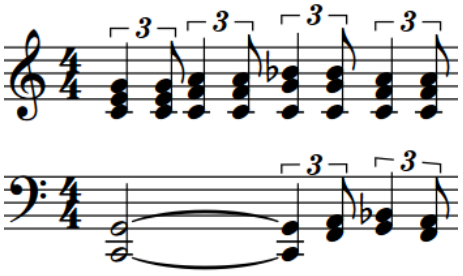
Repeat counts on page 1118
Types of barlines on page 735
Input methods for bars, beats, and barlines on page 287
Including/Excluding repeats in playback after repeat jumps on page 510
Changing the total number of playthroughs in repeat endings on page 1107
Properties panel on page 615

Swing playback

Swing is a style of performance where equally-notated notes are played in a regular pattern of alternating longer and shorter notes, which commonly entails eighth notes being played as a quarter note triplet followed by an eighth note triplet.



A swing phrase with simplified straight notation



How the same phrase sounds with a 2:1 swing ratio

Swing playback allows you to hear the uneven rhythms you want whilst retaining their simplified notation, including if the second eighth note beat is divided into two 16th notes. In Dorico Elements, you can enable swing playback for certain sections and for individual instruments only. You can swing either eighth notes or 16th notes.

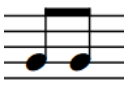
Based on academic research into the rendering of swing by musicians, swing patterns in Dorico Elements are tempo-dependent by default. This means that the swing feels more pronounced at lower tempos, and straighter at higher tempos.

RELATED LINKS
Enabling swing playback on page 513

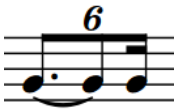
Swing ratios and rhythmic feels

Swing ratios express the strength of the swing using beat units. For example, a swing ratio of 2:1 means the first note in each pair is twice as long as the second, creating a triplet swing.

A swing ratio of 1:1 means the music is played straight, while a swing ratio of 5:1 means each pair of notes is played as if they were sextuplets, with the first note in the pair lasting five divisions and the second note lasting one.



Swing ratio 1:1



Swing ratio 5:1

The following rhythmic feels and swing ratios are provided by default in Dorico Elements:

2:1 swing 16ths (fixed)

Extends the first note in a pair of 16th notes to be twice as long as the second, creating a strict triplet 2:1 ratio. This is also known as a “triplet swing”. This ratio is maintained regardless of the tempo by default.

2:1 swing 8ths (fixed)

Extends the first note in a pair of eighth notes to be twice as long as the second, creating a strict triplet 2:1 ratio. This is also known as a “triplet swing”. This ratio is maintained regardless of the tempo by default.

3:1 swing 16ths (fixed)

Extends the first note in a pair of 16th notes to be three times as long as the second, creating a dotted 16th-32nd ratio (dotted semiquaver-demisemiquaver). This ratio is maintained regardless of the tempo by default.

3:1 swing 8ths (fixed)

Extends the first note in a pair of eighth notes to be three times as long as the second, creating a dotted eighth-16th ratio (dotted quaver-semiquaver). This ratio is maintained regardless of the tempo by default.

Heavy swing 16ths

Produces a tempo-dependent 16th note swing ratio of between 3:1 at low tempos and 1.5:1 at high tempos.

Heavy swing 8ths

Produces a tempo-dependent eighth note swing ratio of between 3:1 at low tempos and 1.5:1 at high tempos.

Light swing 16ths

Produces a tempo-dependent 16th note swing ratio of between 1.5:1 at low tempos and 1:1 at high tempos.

Light swing 8ths

Produces a tempo-dependent eighth note swing ratio of between 1.5:1 at low tempos and 1:1 at high tempos.

Medium swing 16ths

Produces a tempo-dependent 16th note swing ratio of between 2:1 at low tempos and 1.5:1 at high tempos.

Medium swing 8ths

Produces a tempo-dependent eighth note swing ratio of between 2:1 at low tempos and 1.5:1 at high tempos.

Straight (no swing)

Produces no swing; that is, even eighth notes in the ratio 1:1 at all tempos.

You can change the swing ratio used for specific sections and for individual players.

Enabling swing playback

You can enable swing playback for specific sections in your project and for individual instruments independently; for example, if you want only the trumpet player to swing for a twelve-bar section, or if you only want swing playback in one flow.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select one of the following:
   - If you want to enable swing playback from a specific rhythmic position onwards, select a single item at the start of the bar where you want swing playback/a different rhythmic feel to start.

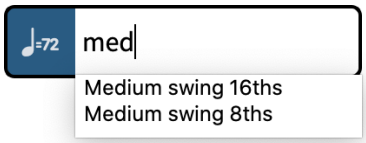
- If you want to enable swing playback within a section then return to straight playback, select multiple items that span the duration where you want swing playback/a different rhythmic feel.

NOTE

- If you want to enable swing playback for a single instrument, select items that belong to that instrument only.
- If you select an item in the middle of a bar, the rhythmic feel change only takes effect from the start of the next bar.

2. Open the tempo popover in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Shift-T**.
   - In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers**, then **Tempo**.
3. Enter the appropriate entry for the rhythmic feel you want into the popover.

   When you start entering a rhythmic feel into the tempo popover, a menu appears that shows valid rhythmic feels containing the letters/words you enter, which you can select.



NOTE

If you do not enter the name of a rhythmic feel that exists in your project, the text you entered into the popover is input as a tempo mark and does not enable swing playback.

4. Input the rhythmic feel change and close the popover in one of the following ways:
   - To input a rhythmic feel change for all staves, press **Return**.
   - To input a rhythmic feel change only for the selected instrument, press **Alt/Opt-Return**.

RESULT

The rhythmic feel used for swing playback is changed from the start of the bar containing the earliest selected item, or the start of the next bar if you selected an item in the middle of a bar.

If you selected multiple items, the rhythmic feel is automatically reset at the position of the last selected item.

If you pressed **Alt/Opt-Return**, the rhythmic feel change only applies to the instrument on whose staff you selected an item or items. Rhythmic feels added to single instruments apply to all staves belonging to those instruments.

A signpost appears showing the name of the rhythmic feel you input. It is shown above the top staff in the system for rhythmic feel changes that apply to all staves, and directly above the top staff of the instrument for rhythmic feel changes that apply only to single instruments.

RELATED LINKS

Tempo popover on page 280
Signposts on page 426
Hiding/Showing signposts on page 427

Deleting rhythmic feel changes

You can delete rhythmic feel changes you have enabled for specific sections or for individual players only.

PREREQUISITE

Rhythmic change signposts are shown.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the signposts of the rhythmic changes you want to delete.
2. Press **Backspace or Delete**.

RESULT

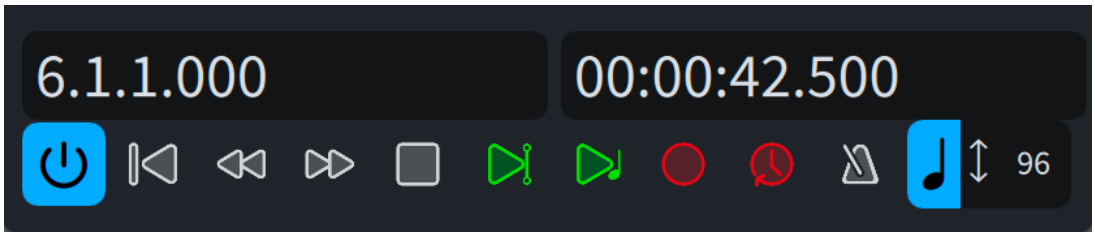
The rhythmic changes are deleted. The affected staves return to the default non-swing playback until the next existing rhythmic change signpost, if applicable.

Transport window

The **Transport** window contains playback and MIDI recording functions, such as rewinding and fast-forwarding. It contains additional and more precise versions of the playback functions available in the toolbar.

You can hide/show the **Transport** window in any of the following ways:

- Press **F2**.
- In the toolbar, click **Show Transport Bar**.



The **Transport** window contains the following information and functions:

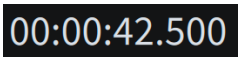
Bars/Beats display

Shows the position of the playhead relative to bars and beats in the current flow in the following order of units: bars, beats, 16th notes, 120ths of a 16th note.

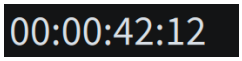
Time display

Shows the position of the playhead in one of the following formats:

- Elapsed time in the following order of units: hours, minutes, seconds, milliseconds
- Timecode in the following order of units: hours, minutes, seconds, frames



Time display showing elapsed time



Time display showing the timecode

You can change the content shown in the time display by clicking it.

Activate Project

Activates/Deactivates playback in the project. When playback is deactivated, transport and playback functions are disabled.

Rewind to Beginning of Flow

Moves the playhead back to the beginning of the flow.

Rewind

Moves the playhead back by a half note each time you click.

Fast Forward

Moves the playhead forwards by a half note each time you click.

Stop

Stops playback.

Play From Playhead Position

Plays back from the position of the playhead.

Play From Selection

Plays back from the position of the first selected item in the music area.

If you select items on multiple staves, or multiple items on a single staff, only the selected staves are played back.

Record

Starts/Stops MIDI recording.

Record outside of MIDI recording

Record during MIDI recording

Retrospective Record

Retrieves any MIDI notes you played during the previous playback and allows you to input them on any staff, even if you were not recording them explicitly.

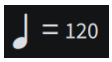
Click

Plays/Mutes the metronome click during playback and recording.

Tempo Mode

Displays the tempo used for both playback and recording. The value changes according to the playhead position, and its appearance changes according to its mode.

- You can change the tempo mode by clicking the beat unit.
- You can change the metronome mark value used in fixed tempo mode by clicking the number to show a slider, then dragging the slider to the right/left.



Fixed Tempo Mode

Follow Tempo Mode

RELATED LINKS
Toolbar on page 31
Mini transport on page 33
Playing back music on page 503
Changing the tempo mode on page 504
MIDI recording on page 252
Changing the sound used for the click on page 496
Timecodes on page 1103

Changing the content shown in the transport display

You can switch between showing the timecode, the total elapsed time, and the current rhythmic position of the playhead expressed in bars, beats, and ticks in both the mini transport in the toolbar and the **Transport** window.

PROCEDURE

- In either the mini transport in the toolbar or the **Transport** window, click the transport display until the content you want appears.

  In the **Transport** window, this is the display on the right.

RESULT

Each time you click in the mini transport display, it cycles through showing the rhythmic position of the playhead, elapsed time, and the timecode.

In the **Transport** window, it only switches between the timecode and elapsed time, as the rhythmic position of the playhead is shown permanently on the left of the window.

TIP

You can change what is shown in the mini transport by default for all future projects on the **Play** page in **Preferences**.

RELATED LINKS
Toolbar on page 31
Mini transport on page 33
Timecodes on page 1103
Preferences dialog on page 58

Playback templates

Dorico Elements uses playback templates to allocate sounds from VST instruments and MIDI devices to the instruments in your project.

Playback templates combine the following information in order to obtain correct playback:

- The instrument sounds, articulations, and playback techniques provided by plug-ins, such as VST instruments
- The expression/percussion maps required to obtain those sounds
- The endpoint configurations required for the sounds for each instrument

When you add instruments to players in a project, Dorico Elements automatically loads plug-ins for them according to the current playback template and sets up expression maps and percussion maps as required. Dorico Elements also automatically loads enough plug-in instances, as many plug-ins can only load a limited number of sounds in each instance.

You can override playback templates and make your own manual changes to the sounds used by instruments in your project, such as by changing the expression maps assigned to endpoints. You can then save such changes as custom endpoint configurations, which you can include in your own custom playback templates.

You can also export custom playback templates; for example, to share them with other users. Playback templates are saved as `.dorico_pt` files.

NOTE

- Playback templates are available in all projects you open or create on your computer, meaning any changes you make to playback templates affect all projects that use those playback templates.
- Dorico Elements automatically loads sounds for any new instruments you add to the project, using the sounds included in the current playback template. Therefore, we recommend that you always include a factory default playback template at the bottom of custom playback templates as a fallback to ensure that all instruments are assigned sounds.
- Any changes you make within plug-ins are saved when you save the project but are not communicated to Dorico Elements, which can lead to unexpected low notes sounding in playback because Dorico Elements is still using the expression and percussion maps for the original sounds. If you make changes in plug-ins, you must manually assign the correct expression and percussion maps to the appropriate endpoints.

RELATED LINKS

Edit Playback Template dialog on page 520
Applying/Resetting playback templates on page 523
Creating custom playback templates on page 523
Exporting playback templates on page 525
Endpoint Setup dialog on page 526
Assigning expression/percussion maps to endpoints on page 531
Endpoints on page 525
Custom endpoint configurations on page 528
Edit Endpoint Configurations dialog on page 530
Allowing/Blocking VST plug-ins on page 505

Apply Playback Template dialog

The **Apply Playback Template** dialog allows you to change the playback template applied to the current project and to import/export playback templates. It also allows you to access the **Edit Playback Template** dialog.

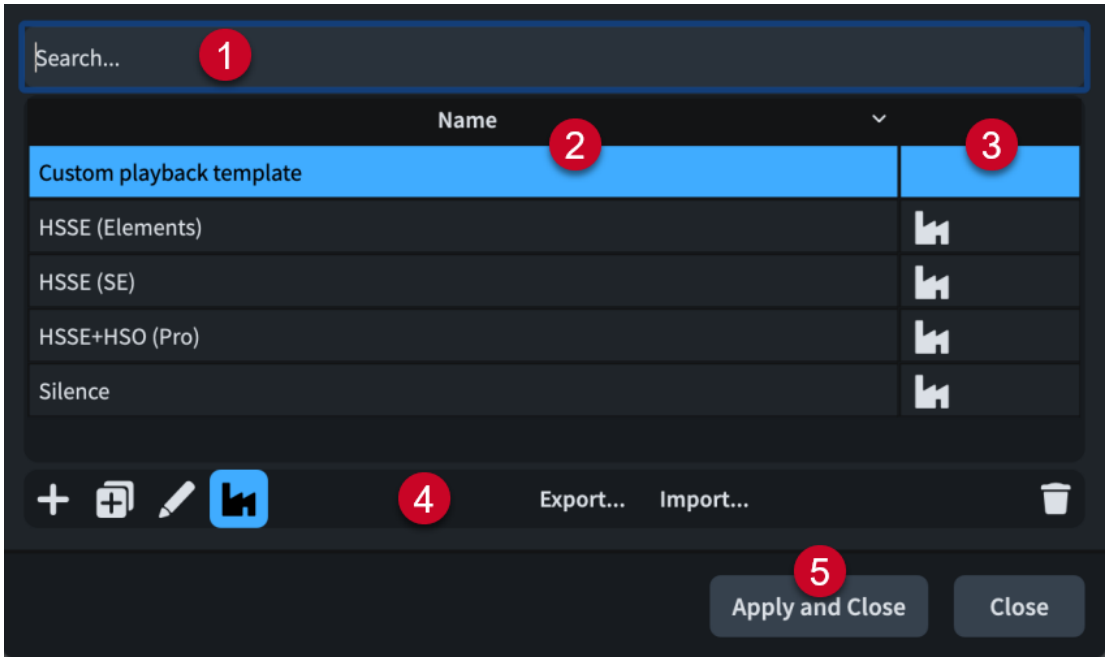
- You can open the **Apply Playback Template** dialog by choosing **Play** > **Playback Template**.

The **Apply Playback Template** dialog shows all the playback templates available on your computer in a table. Dorico Elements provides the following factory default playback templates:

- **HSSE (Elements)**: Intended for use with HALion Sonic SE.
- **HSSE+HSO (Pro)**: Intended for use with both HALion Sonic SE and HALion Symphonic Orchestra.
- **Silence**: Prevents Dorico Elements from loading sounds.

TIP

- Choosing the **Silence** template makes Dorico Elements project files significantly smaller; for example, if you want to send them electronically.
- We recommend that you only use the **HSSE+HSO (Pro)** playback template if you own a separate HALion Symphonic Orchestra license, as Dorico Elements only includes HALion Sonic SE.



The **Apply Playback Template** dialog comprises the following:

1 **Search field**

Allows you to filter playback templates in the list according to your entry.

2 **Name column**

Contains a list of the playback templates available on your computer. You can click the column header to change the sorting order.

3 **Factory column**

Contains the factory symbol if the playback template in the corresponding row is a factory default playback template. You can click the column header to change the sorting order.

4 **Action bar**

Contains the following options for playback templates:

- **Add Playback Template**: Opens the **Edit Playback Template** dialog and allows you to create a new playback template.
- **Duplicate Playback Template**: Opens the **Edit Playback Template** dialog and allows you to create a new playback template that starts as a duplicate of the selected one.
- **Edit Playback Template**: Opens the **Edit Playback Template** dialog and allows you to edit the existing selected playback template.

  NOTE

  You cannot edit factory default playback templates.

- **Show Factory**: Allows you to hide/show factory default playback templates in the table.
- **Export**: Opens the File Explorer/macOS Finder, where you can select the location to which you want to export the currently selected playback templates as `.dorico_pt` files. You can then import the `.dorico_pt` files into Dorico Elements on other computers and share them with other users.
- **Import**: Opens the File Explorer/macOS Finder, where you can select the `.dorico_pt` files that you want to import as playback templates.
- **Delete**: Deletes the selected playback templates.

  NOTE

  You cannot delete factory default playback templates.

5 **Apply and Close**

Applies the selected playback template to the project and closes the dialog.

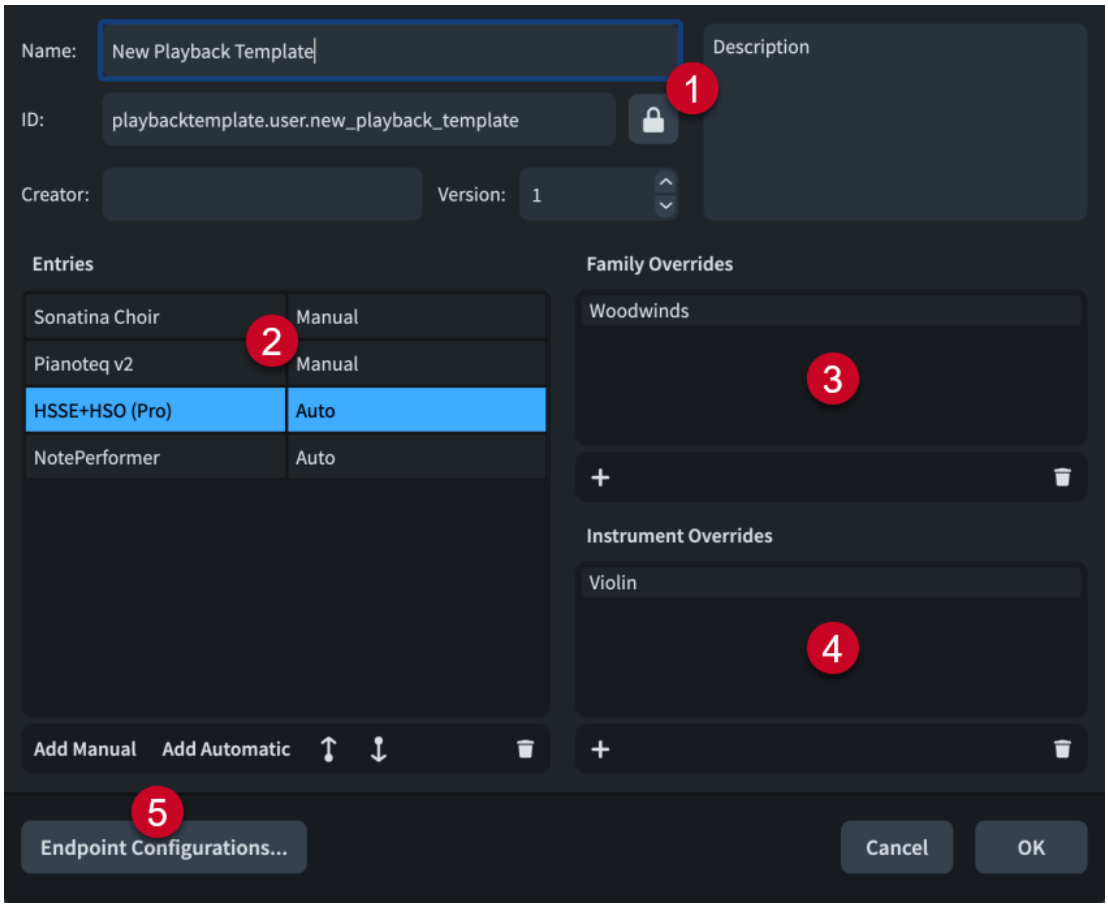
RELATED LINKS
Edit Endpoint Configurations dialog on page 530

Edit Playback Template dialog

The **Edit Playback Template** dialog allows you to create new custom playback templates and edit existing ones. You can use any combination of custom endpoint configurations and existing playback templates and specify the order in which they should be used.

Playback templates are available in all projects you open or create on your computer.

- You can open the **Edit Playback Template** dialog from inside the **Apply Playback Template** dialog by clicking **Add Playback Template**, **Duplicate Playback Template**, or **Edit Playback Template**.



The **Edit Playback Template** dialog contains the following sections and options:

1 **Playback template data**

Allows you to specify the following identifying information for the selected custom playback template:

- **Name**: Allows you to set the name of the playback template that appears in the program; for example, in the **Apply Playback Template** dialog.
- **ID**: Allows you to set the unique ID of the playback template. Dorico Elements automatically populates the **ID** field with the information you enter into the **Name** field.
- **Creator**: Allows you to name the creator if you are sharing your playback template with other users.
- **Version**: Allows you to indicate the playback template version so you can identify the most recent one; for example, you can increase the **Version** number each time you make changes to the playback template.
- **Description**: Allows you to add any other information about the playback template.

NOTE

All fields in the playback template data section, except for **Name**, are locked by the **Lock Info** button. You must click this button in order to change the information in the fields.

2 **Entries**

Contains a table of all the custom endpoint configurations and existing playback templates used by the selected custom playback template. Entries are listed in order of priority, meaning that Dorico Elements assigns sounds from the top entry first. We recommend that

you always include a factory default playback template at the bottom of the list as a fallback to ensure that all instruments are assigned sounds.

In most cases, listing entries in your order of preference in the **Entries** section is sufficient to achieve your desired playback. However, if multiple entries in your custom playback template provide sounds for the same instrument, you must set family and/or instrument overrides; for example, if you only want to use woodwind sounds from the first entry and use all other sounds from the second entry.

The column on the right identifies the type of the entry in the corresponding row.

- **Manual**: Entries that cannot load sounds automatically, including custom endpoint configurations
- **Auto**: Entries that can load sounds automatically; that is, factory default playback templates

The action bar at the bottom of the section contains the following options:

- **Add Manual**: Allows you to add a manual entry to the playback template.
- **Add Automatic**: Allows you to add an automatic entry to the playback template.
- **Move Up**: Moves the selected entry up the list.
- **Move Down**: Moves the selected entry down the list.
- **Delete**: Removes the selected entry from the playback template.

3 Family Overrides

Contains a list of family overrides applied to the selected entry and allows you to add/remove overrides. Family overrides allow you to specify the instrument family sounds you want to use; for example, if you only want to use the woodwind sounds from an entry that also includes brass and string sounds.

The action bar at the bottom of the section contains the following options:

- **Add Instrument Family**: Allows you to select an instrument family to apply as an override to the selected entry.
- **Delete Instrument Family**: Removes the selected family override from the selected entry.

4 Instrument Overrides

Contains a list of instrument overrides applied to the selected entry and allows you to add/remove overrides. Instrument overrides allow you to specify individual instrument sounds you want to use; for example, if you only want to use a solo violin sound from an entry that also includes ensemble string sounds.

The action bar at the bottom of the section contains the following options:

- **Add Instrument**: Allows you to select an instrument to apply as an override to the selected entry.
- **Delete Instrument**: Removes the selected instrument override from the selected entry.

5 Endpoint Configurations

Opens the **Edit Endpoint Configurations** dialog, which allows you to rename and delete custom endpoint configurations, and view the plug-ins and players they contain.

RELATED LINKS
Endpoints on page 525
Edit Endpoint Configurations dialog on page 530
Custom endpoint configurations on page 528

Applying/Resetting playback templates

You can change the playback template applied to the current project; for example, if you want to use a different sound library for playback. Re-selecting playback templates resets them to their default settings.

PROCEDURE

1. Choose **Play** > **Playback Template** to open the **Apply Playback Template** dialog.
2. Select the playback template you want to use.
3. Click **Apply and Close**.

RESULT

The playback template applied to the current project is changed. If you re-selected the playback template already in use, the playback template is reset.

Sounds are loaded into plug-in instances in their score order.

TIP

- You can change the default playback template used for all future projects on the **Play** page in **Preferences**.
- You can also load sounds just for instruments without assigned sounds by choosing **Play** > **Load Sounds for Unassigned Instruments**.

RELATED LINKS

Preferences dialog on page 58

Creating custom playback templates

You can create custom playback templates that can include combinations of factory default playback templates, custom endpoint configurations, and other non-factory default playback templates that cannot load sounds automatically.

PROCEDURE

1. Choose **Play** > **Playback Template** to open the **Apply Playback Template** dialog.
2. Open the **Edit Playback Template** dialog to create a new playback template in one of the following ways:
   - To create an empty playback template, click **Add Playback Template** in the action bar.
   - To create a copy of an existing playback template, select it and click **Duplicate Playback Template** in the action bar.
3. In the **Edit Playback Template** dialog, click **Lock Info** to unlock the data fields.
4. Enter information for your playback template in the relevant fields.
5. In the **Entries** section, add the custom endpoint configurations and/or factory default playback templates you want.
   - To add a custom endpoint configuration or non-factory default playback template, click **Add Manual** and select the one you want from the menu.
   - To add a factory default playback template, click **Add Automatic** and select the one you want from the menu.

TIP

We recommend that you always include a factory default playback template at the bottom of the list as a fallback to ensure that all instruments are assigned sounds.

6. Optional: To change the order of entries and their order of preference in the playback template, select an entry and click one of the following options in the action bar:
   - To move the selected entry upwards, click **Move Up**.
   - To move the selected entry downwards, click **Move Down**.
7. Optional: Repeat step 6 until all the entries are in the correct order of preference.
8. Optional: Select an entry for which you want to specify instrument family overrides.
9. In the **Family Overrides** section action bar, click **Add Instrument Family** and select the one you want from the menu.

   For example, if you only want to use the woodwind sounds from a sound library that also has string sounds, select **Woodwinds**.
10. Optional: Select an entry for which you want to specify individual instrument overrides.
11. In the **Instrument Overrides** section action bar, click **Add Instrument** and select the one you want in the instrument picker.

    For example, if you only want to use the piano sound from a sound library that has other keyboard instrument sounds, select **Piano**.
12. Optional: Repeat steps 8 to 11 for other entries for which you want to specify instrument family and instrument overrides.
13. Click **OK** to save your changes and close the dialog.

RESULT

Your new custom playback template is created. It is available to use in the current project and all projects you create/open on your computer.

RELATED LINKS

Apply Playback Template dialog on page 519
Edit Playback Template dialog on page 520
Endpoint Setup dialog on page 526
Custom endpoint configurations on page 528
Allowing/Blocking VST plug-ins on page 505

Importing playback templates

You can import playback templates into projects; for example, if someone you are working with exported their custom playback template for you to use. Playback templates are saved as `.dorico_pt` files.

PROCEDURE

1. Choose **Play** > **Playback Template** to open the **Apply Playback Template** dialog.
2. Click **Import** to open the File Explorer/macOS Finder.
3. Locate and select the playback template file you want to import.
4. Click **Open**.

RESULT

The selected playback template is imported. It becomes available in the current project and all projects you create/open on your computer.

TIP

You can also import playback templates by dragging `.dorico_pt` files into a Dorico Elements project window.

Exporting playback templates

You can export playback templates so you can send them to other users or use them on other computers. By default, any playback templates you create are available in all projects on your computer.

PROCEDURE

1. Choose **Play** > **Playback Template** to open the **Apply Playback Template** dialog.
2. Select the playback templates you want to export.
3. Click **Export** to open the File Explorer/macOS Finder.
4. Specify a name and location for the playback template files.
5. Click **Choose**.

RESULT

The selected playback templates are exported and saved in the selected location as separate `.dorico_pt` files.

Endpoints

“Endpoint” is the term used for the unique combination of inputs and outputs that together allow the correct sounds to be played for each instrument.

In Dorico Elements, each endpoint brings together the following:

- A VST instrument or MIDI output device instance
- A specific channel on that VST instrument or MIDI output device
- The patch or program assigned to that channel
- The expression map and/or percussion map that describes the instrument or instruments that can be played by that patch or program, and the playback techniques and articulations provided

Each instrument in your project is connected to a specific endpoint. Assigning an expression/percussion map to the same endpoint allows Dorico Elements to translate any playing technique changes and articulations you input into the key switches and controller switches necessary to produce the required sounds for the instrument in playback.

When you use a factory default playback template, Dorico Elements sets up endpoints and expression/percussion maps automatically. If you want to load other plug-ins or change the patches within HALion Sonic SE, you can do so in the **Endpoint Setup** dialog.

NOTE

Any changes you make within plug-ins are not communicated to Dorico Elements; for example, changing a sound that the expression map expects to use a modulation wheel for dynamics to one that uses note velocity instead. This can lead to unexpected low notes sounding in playback because Dorico Elements is still using the expression and percussion maps for the original sounds. If you make changes in plug-ins, you must manually assign the correct expression and percussion maps to the appropriate endpoints.

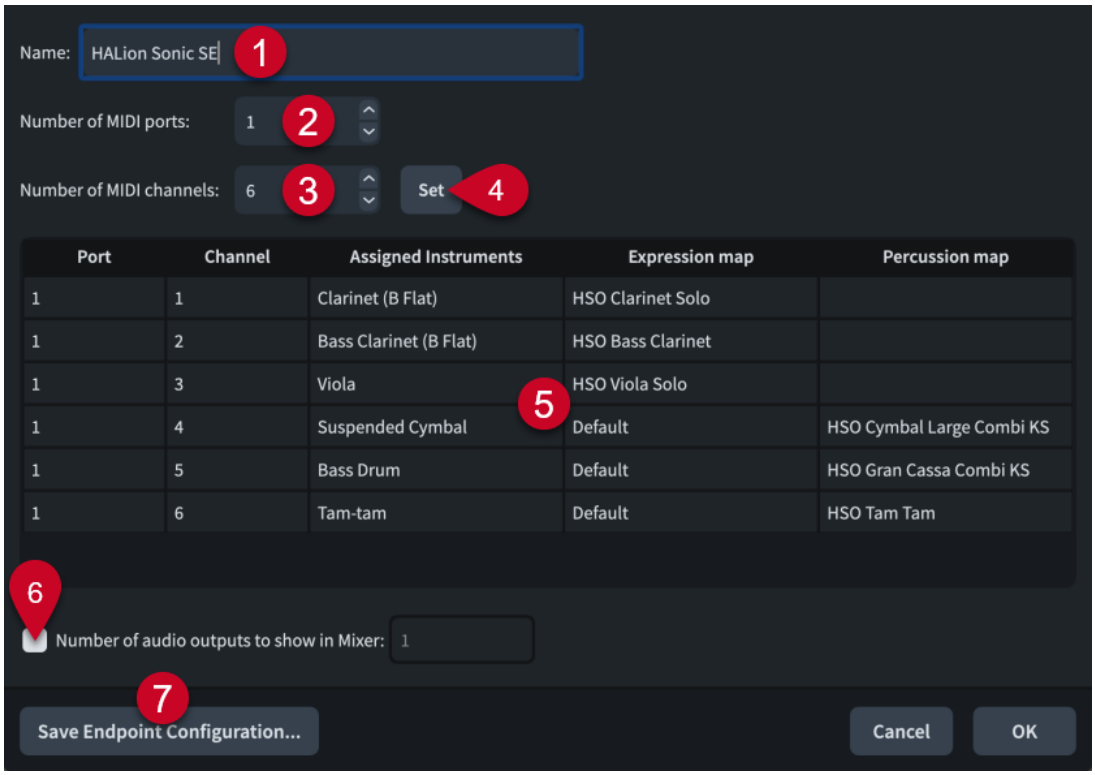
You can then save your changes as a custom endpoint configuration if you want to reuse them in other projects.

RELATED LINKS
Custom endpoint configurations on page 528
Edit Endpoint Configurations dialog on page 530

Endpoint Setup dialog

The **Endpoint Setup** dialog displays which expression and percussion maps are currently linked to each endpoint in the corresponding plug-in instance, and allows you to change these settings. It also allows you to save your current settings as custom endpoint configurations, which you can then include in custom playback templates.

- You can open the **Endpoint Setup** dialog by clicking **Endpoint Setup** in each plug-in instance in the VST and MIDI panel, or in the **Routing** section of the Track Inspector.



The **Endpoint Setup** dialog contains the following options and sections:

1 Name

Allows you to change the name of the selected plug-in instance. This affects the name shown in the VST and MIDI panel and in the Mixer.

2 **Number of MIDI ports**

Displays the number of MIDI ports the corresponding plug-in instance currently uses.

You can change the number of MIDI ports; for example, if you are using a plug-in that uses more than one port. Dorico Elements does not load multiple MIDI ports by default.

3 **Number of MIDI channels**

Displays the number of MIDI channels the corresponding plug-in instance currently uses.

You can change the number of channels; for example, if you have a monotimbral plug-in such as a piano sampler which only has one MIDI channel, or a multitimbral plug-in with 16 MIDI channels and 16 audio outputs.

4 **Set**

Sets the plug-in instance to have the number of MIDI ports and channels specified in the **Number of MIDI ports** and **Number of MIDI channels** value fields. This changes the number of rows in the table.

5 **Endpoint setup table**

Contains the settings for the corresponding plug-in instance, arranged into the following columns:

- **Port**: Displays the port used by the instrument in the corresponding row of the table.

  NOTE

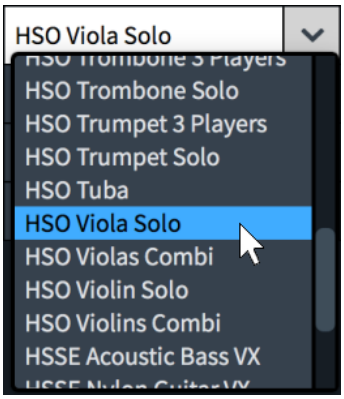
  You cannot change the port from within the **Endpoint Setup** dialog. You must change the port in the Track Inspector.

- **Channel**: Displays the channel used by the instrument in the corresponding row of the table.

  NOTE

  You cannot change the channel from within the **Endpoint Setup** dialog. You must change the channel in the Track Inspector.

- **Assigned Instruments**: Displays the full name of the instrument in the corresponding row, as set for that instrument in the **Edit Instrument Names** dialog, and its instrument number, if applicable.
- **Expression map**: Displays the expression map currently assigned to the instrument in the corresponding row. You can change the expression map by double-clicking it and selecting another expression map from the menu.



- **Percussion map**: Displays the percussion map currently assigned to the instrument in the corresponding row. You can change the percussion map by double-clicking it and selecting another percussion map from the menu.

6 **Number of audio outputs to show in Mixer**

Allows you to change the number of audio outputs shown in the Mixer; for example, if you want to hide unused outputs when using plug-ins that provide more audio outputs than Dorico Elements uses.

7 **Save Endpoint Configuration**

Opens the **Save Endpoint Configuration** dialog, which allows you to enter a name for the current endpoint configuration and save it as a custom endpoint configuration.

RELATED LINKS
Track Inspector on page 488
VST and MIDI panel on page 491
Playback templates on page 518
Expression Maps dialog on page 683
Edit Instrument Names dialog on page 176
Mixer on page 667

Custom endpoint configurations

Custom endpoint configurations save the current state and settings of plug-ins in your project, such as the number and type of VST/MIDI instruments loaded and the instruments and expression/percussion maps assigned to endpoints.

You can save custom endpoint configurations that include the settings for all plug-ins currently loaded or only a single one.

Custom endpoint configurations are available in all projects you open or create on your computer. You can view, rename, and delete the custom endpoint configurations on your computer in the **Edit Endpoint Configurations** dialog.

Saving custom endpoint configurations

You can save any overrides you have made to endpoint configurations, such as changing the instruments and expression maps assigned to particular endpoints. This allows you to use these overrides in custom playback templates and re-use the same endpoint configurations in other projects.

PREREQUISITE

- You have opened a project containing all instruments and plug-ins that are necessary for the custom endpoint configuration.
- You have created any necessary expression maps and playback technique combinations.
- You have created any necessary custom playing techniques.

PROCEDURE

1. Load the plug-ins you want.

   You can do this by applying a playback template or by adding plug-in instances manually in the VST and MIDI panel in Play mode.

2. Change the settings for the endpoints as required.

   For example, change the instruments or expression maps assigned to each endpoint.

3. Open the **Save Endpoint Configuration** dialog in one of the following ways:

   - To save a custom endpoint configuration for only a single plug-in instance, open the **Endpoint Setup** dialog for that plug-in instance and click **Save Endpoint Configuration**.

- To save a custom endpoint configuration that includes all VST instrument or MIDI instrument plug-in instances, click **Save Endpoint Configuration** in the action bar of the corresponding section of the VST and MIDI panel.

4. Enter a name for your custom endpoint configuration in the **Name** field.

   NOTE

   If you enter a name that already exists, or select an existing custom endpoint configuration from the menu, the existing custom endpoint configuration is overwritten.

5. Click **OK** to save your changes and close the dialog.

RESULT

The current state of either the selected plug-in instance or all plug-in instances in the corresponding section is saved as a custom endpoint configuration. This includes any custom playing techniques included in any of the expression/percussion maps.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

You can include custom endpoint configurations in custom playback templates, which allows you to use endpoint configurations in other projects.

RELATED LINKS

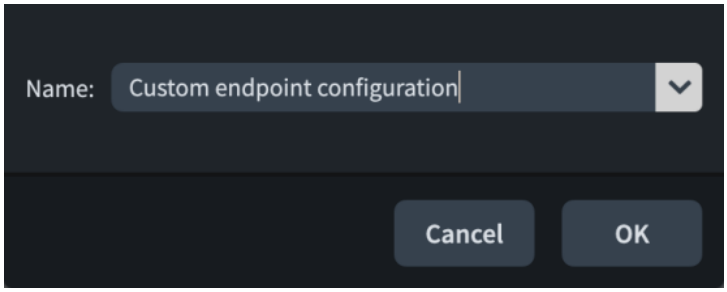
Playback templates on page 518
Adding/Editing switches in expression maps on page 697

Save Endpoint Configuration dialog

The **Save Endpoint Configuration** dialog allows you to save the current state and settings of plug-ins in your project. Saving custom endpoint configurations allows you to re-use them in other projects and include them in custom playback templates.

You can open the **Save Endpoint Configuration** dialog in Play mode in any of the following ways:

- In the VST and MIDI panel, click **Save Endpoint Configuration** in the **VST Instruments** or **MIDI Instruments** action bar. This saves the current state of all plug-ins in the corresponding section of the panel.
- In the **Endpoint Setup** dialog, click **Save Endpoint Configuration**. This saves the current state of the selected plug-in only.



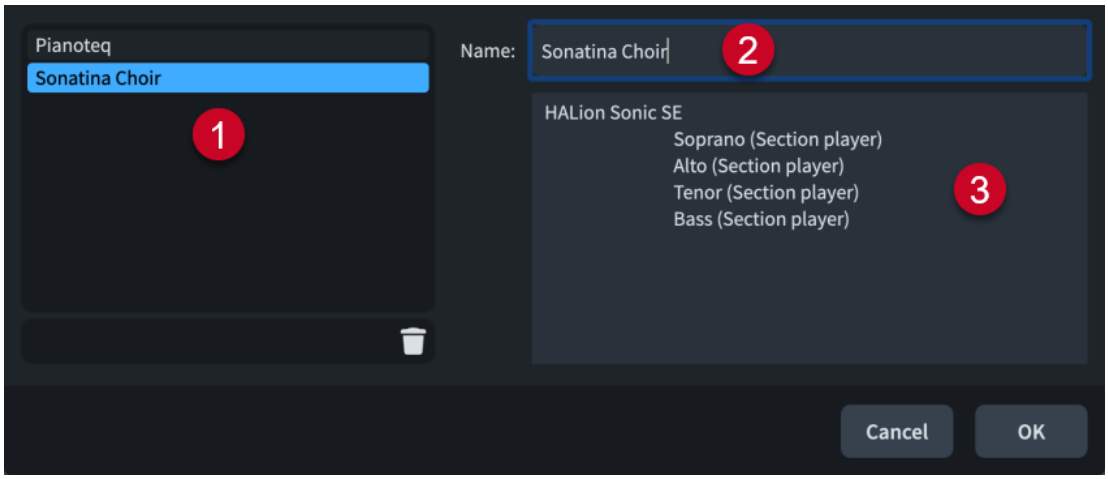
The **Save Endpoint Configuration** dialog contains a **Name** field that allows you to enter a name for the endpoint configuration you are saving. The arrow at the end of the field allows you to select an existing custom endpoint configuration to use to populate the field.

If you enter a name that already exists, you can overwrite the existing custom endpoint configuration. When you overwrite existing custom endpoint configurations, Dorico Elements moves the previous version to your recycle bin.

Edit Endpoint Configurations dialog

The **Edit Endpoint Configurations** dialog allows you to rename and delete custom endpoint configurations, and view the plug-ins and players they contain.

- You can open the **Edit Endpoint Configurations** dialog by clicking **Endpoint Configurations** in the **Edit Playback Template** dialog.



The **Edit Endpoint Configurations** dialog comprises the following:

1 **Endpoint configurations list**

Contains all the endpoint configurations on your computer.

Delete Endpoint Configuration in the action bar at the bottom of the list allows you to delete the selected endpoint configuration from your computer.

2 **Name**

Allows you to set the name of the selected endpoint configuration that appears in the program; for example, in the **Edit Playback Template** dialog.

3 **Plug-ins and players list**

Contains all the plug-ins and players contained within the selected endpoint configuration. If the endpoint configuration contains multiple instances of the same plug-in, each plug-in instance is listed separately.

Assigning instruments/voices to endpoints

You can assign instruments to any endpoint; for example, if you have loaded a plug-in with multiple ports and want to change the endpoint of an existing instrument to an endpoint on one of your new ports. For instruments with independent voice playback enabled, you can assign each voice to a different endpoint.

PREREQUISITE

- If you want to assign different voices belonging to the same instrument to different endpoints, you have enabled independent voice playback.
- If you want to assign instruments to endpoints in specific plug-in instances, you have loaded those plug-in instances. You can do this by applying a suitable playback template or by loading VST/MIDI instruments manually.

PROCEDURE

1. In Play mode, in the track overview, select the instrument/voice track whose assigned endpoint you want to change.

2. Optional: If you selected a voice track, choose one of the following options for **Edits apply to** in the **Routing** section of the Track Inspector:
   - To change the assigned endpoint for the selected voice in the current flow only, choose **This flow**.
   - To change the assigned endpoint for the selected voice in all flows, choose **All flows**.
3. Optional: To assign the instrument/voice to an endpoint in a different plug-in instance, select that plug-in instance from the audio plug-in menu in the **Routing** section of the Track Inspector.
4. Change the endpoint using the following value fields, individually or together:
   - To assign the instrument/voice to a different port in the selected plug-in instance, enter the required port in the **Port** field.

     NOTE

     Only necessary when using a plug-in that has multiple ports of 16 channels.
   - To assign the instrument/voice to a different channel in the selected port, enter the required channel in the **Ch.** field.

RELATED LINKS
Track overview on page 486
Track Inspector on page 488
Endpoints on page 525
Expression Maps dialog on page 683
Instrument tracks on page 495
Applying/Resetting playback templates on page 523
Loading VST/MIDI instruments manually on page 493
Enabling independent voice playback on page 506

Assigning expression/percussion maps to endpoints

You can assign expression/percussion maps to the endpoints in your project; for example, if you have created a custom percussion map and must link it to the endpoint for the corresponding VST patch.

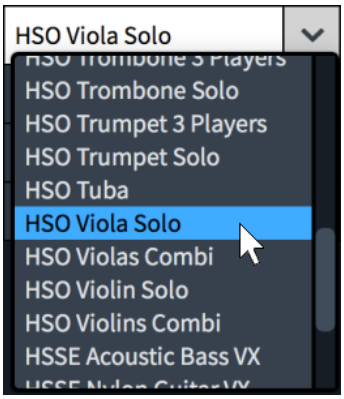
PREREQUISITE

You have made or imported any expression/percussion maps that you require but do not exist on your computer.

PROCEDURE

1. In Play mode, in the VST and MIDI panel, click **Endpoint Setup** in the plug-in instance in which you want to change the expression/percussion maps assigned to endpoints to open the **Endpoint Setup** dialog.
2. Double-click the expression/percussion map you want to change.
3. Click the disclosure arrow to the right of the field.

   A menu appears containing all maps of the same type currently loaded in your project.



4. Select the expression/percussion map you want from the menu.
5. Press **Return**.
6. Optional: Repeat steps 2 to 5 for any other endpoints whose assigned expression/percussion maps you want to change.
7. Click **OK** to save your changes and close the dialog.

RELATED LINKS
VST and MIDI panel on page 491
Expression maps on page 682
Percussion maps on page 700

Print mode

Print mode allows you to print your layouts or to export them as graphics files, such as PDF and SVG.

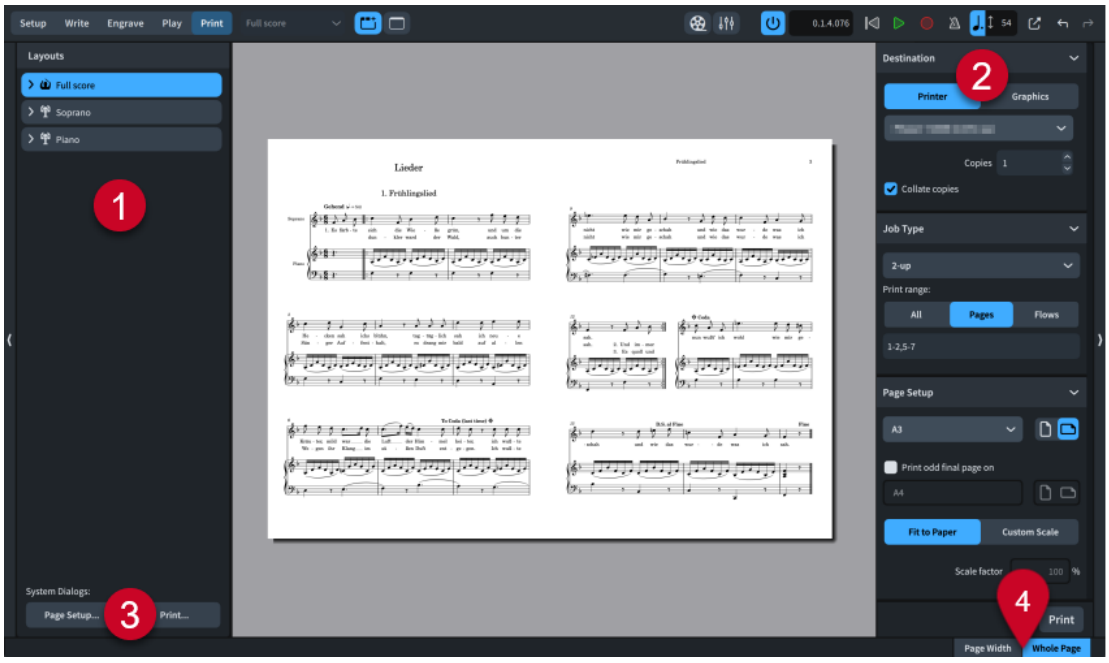
- When printing layouts, you can specify the paper size and other options, such as duplex or booklet printing.
- When exporting layouts, you can specify different graphics file types and the information you want to include in their exported file names.

Project window in Print mode

The project window in Print mode contains the print preview area and panels that provide all the necessary tools and functions for printing and exporting layouts.

You can switch to Print mode in any of the following ways:

- Press **Ctrl/Cmd-5**.
- In the toolbar, click **Print**.
- Choose **Window** > **Print**.



The following panels and options are available in Print mode:

1 Layouts panel

Shows a list of all layouts in your project and allows you to select the layouts you want to print or export.

NOTE

The layout selector in the toolbar is disabled in Print mode. To show a different layout in the print preview area, select it in the **Layouts** panel.

2 **Print Options panel**

Contains options for printing or exporting your layouts.

3 **System Dialogs** (macOS only)

Contains macOS-specific printing options.

4 **View options**

Allows you to change the print preview area to show pages in one of the following views:

- **Page Width**: The page fills the width of the print preview area, which might not show the whole page depending on the orientation and format of the page.
- **Whole Page**: Shows the whole page in the print preview area.

TIP

You can go directly to the first page in the layout by pressing **Home**, and to the last page by pressing **End**. You can change these key commands on the **Key Commands** page in **Preferences**.

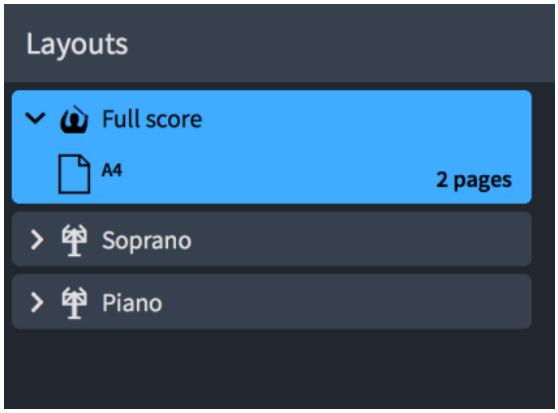
RELATED LINKS
Project window on page 30
Print Options panel on page 535
Toolbar on page 31
Print preview area on page 37
Key Commands page in the Preferences dialog on page 59

Layouts panel (Print mode)

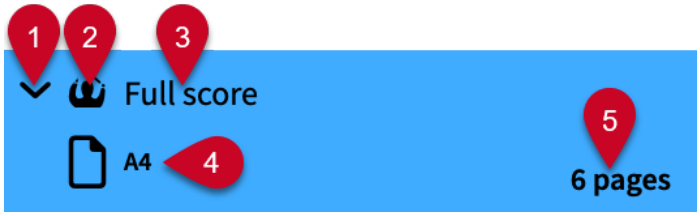
In Print mode, the **Layouts** panel shows a list of all layouts in your project and allows you to select layouts to preview, print, and export. It is located on the left of the window.

You can hide/show the **Layouts** panel in Print mode in any of the following ways:

- Press **Ctrl/Cmd-7**.
- Click the disclosure arrow on the left edge of the main window.
- Choose **Window** > **Show Left Zone**.



The **Layouts** panel contains all the layouts in your project, displayed as cards. Each layout card shows the following:



1 **Disclosure arrow**

Expands/Collapses the layout card.

2 **Layout type**

Shows the type of layout from the following options:

- Full score layout
- Instrumental part layout
- Custom score layout

3 **Layout name**

Shows the name of the layout. Dorico Elements automatically adds default names depending on the name of the instrument that is assigned to a player and on the type of layout that is added. For example, if you assign a flute to a player, the instrumental part layout automatically gets the same name. If you add an empty instrumental part layout, the layout name shows **Empty part** and an incremental number if you add multiple empty part layouts.

4 **Page size and orientation**

Shows the size and orientation of the layout as set on the **Page Setup** page in **Layout Options**.

5 **Layout length**

Shows the number of pages in the layout. You can use this in combination with its page size and orientation to determine the best job type for printing/exporting.

TIP

A layout with two pages might best be printed as 2-up, while a layout with five pages might best be printed as spreads with the final page printed on a different paper size. A layout with 12 pages might best be printed as a booklet.

The selected layouts are printed/exported when you click **Print** or **Export** in the Print Options panel. If you have selected some layouts set to print and some set to export graphics, the button reads **Print and Export**.

RELATED LINKS
Project window in Print mode on page 533
Page arrangements for printing/exporting on page 547
Booklet printing on page 548

Print Options panel

The Print Options panel contains options for printing or exporting your layouts. It is located on the right of the window in Print mode.

You can hide/show the Print Options panel in any of the following ways:

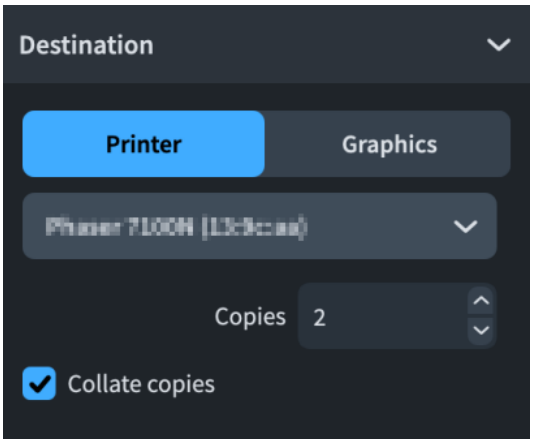
- Press **Ctrl/Cmd-9**.
- Click the disclosure arrow on the right edge of the main window.
- Choose **Window** > **Show Right Zone**.

All the options that you set in the Print Options panel are saved with your project. The options are divided into the following sections:

Destination

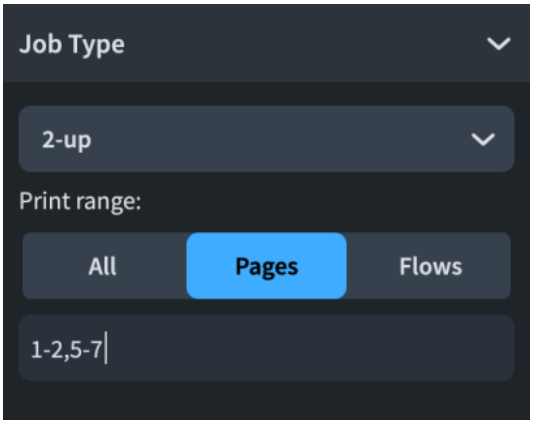
Allows you to select a physical printer for printing or a file location for exporting a graphics file.

- For layouts set to print, you can change the number of copies.
- For layouts set to export as graphics files, you can specify the format, color mode, image resolution, file name, and directory of the saved file.



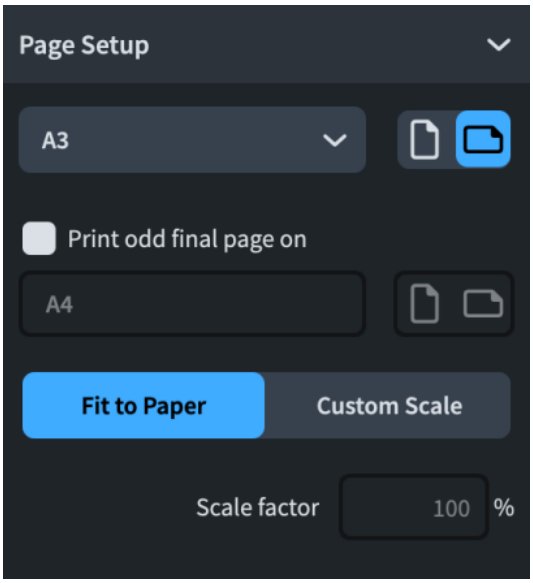
Job Type

Allows you to choose the pages to be printed or exported, and how they are arranged. You can choose all pages, a range of pages, or a range of flows.



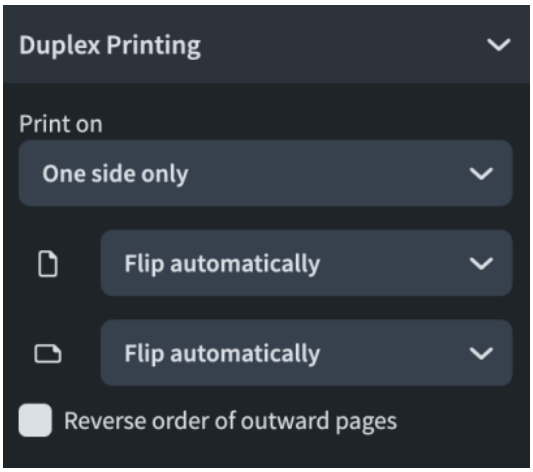
Page Setup

Allows you to set the paper size and orientation. You can specify the scale factor of the image to be printed or exported.



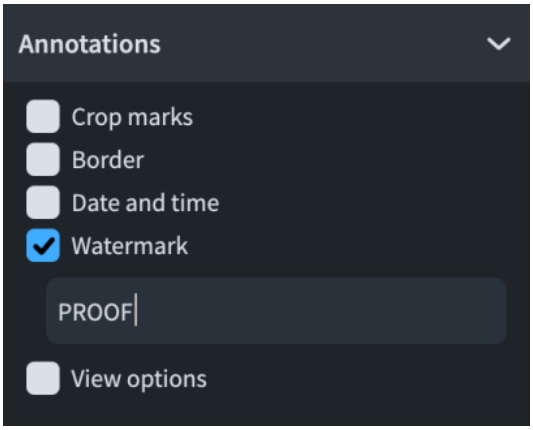
Duplex Printing

Allows you to specify whether to print on one or on both sides of each sheet of paper. Only available when **Printer** is selected in the **Destination** section.



Annotations

Allows you to activate options that are often required by publishing houses or printing agencies, such as crop marks or a border around the printed image.



Print button

Allows you to print/export selected layouts according to the settings you have set in the Print Options panel.

Depending on your selection, the print button can appear in one of the following ways:

- **Print**
- **Export**
- **Print and Export**

For example, if you selected layouts that are all set to print, **Print** is shown. If you selected some layouts set to export graphics and some layouts set to print, **Print and Export** is shown.

RELATED LINKS
Project window in Print mode on page 533
Exporting layouts as graphics files on page 542
Printers on page 546
Duplex printing on page 549
Page arrangements for printing/exporting on page 547
Page vs. paper size on page 550
Graphics file formats on page 552
Annotations on page 554

Printing layouts

You can print hard copies of individual layouts or multiple layouts together. You can specify print settings for each layout independently; for example, you can set different numbers of copies or select different printers for layouts in the same project.

Dorico Elements uses settings for layouts to create automatic print settings, so you might find that many print options are already appropriate for the layouts you want to print. For example, if you are connected to a printer that can print A3 paper and the page size of your full score layout is set to A3 in **Layout Options**, Dorico Elements automatically selects A3 in the **Page Setup** section of the Print Options panel.

TIP

- If you want to save layouts in graphics files formats, such as PDF or PNG, we recommend that you export them.
- You can select individual layouts and set up their printing options without printing straight away. Once you have set up the printing options you want for different layouts, you can then select all the layouts you want to print and click **Print**. Your existing print settings are applied, even if your selection contains layouts with different print settings.

  For example, you can set your full score layout to print **3** booklet copies and the part layouts to print **1** 2-up copy each. You can then select all layouts to print them together and the previously set values are followed.

PROCEDURE

1. In the **Layouts** panel, select the layouts that you want to print.

NOTE

The layout selector in the toolbar is disabled in Print mode. To show a different layout in the print preview area, select it in the **Layouts** panel.

2. In the Print Options panel, enter the number of copies you want into the **Copies** field in the **Destination** section.

   NOTE

   The **Copies** field appears blank when you have selected layouts with different values.

3. Activate/Deactivate **Collate copies**.
4. In the **Destination** section, choose **Printer** and select a printer from the menu.
5. In the **Job Type** section, select the page arrangement you want from the menu.
6. Optional: Specify a range of pages/flows.
7. In the **Page Setup** section, select a paper size from the menu.
8. Choose the paper orientation you want.
9. Optional: If you selected **Spreads** or **2-up** for the job type, activate/deactivate **Print odd final page on** to specify the paper size on which you want to print final pages for layouts with odd numbers of pages.
10. Select a paper size and paper orientation for the odd final page.
11. Choose one of the following size options:
    - **Fit to Paper**
    - **Custom Scale**
12. Optional: If you selected **Custom Scale**, enter the scale factor you want into the **Scale factor** field.
13. In the **Duplex Printing** section, select one of the printing options from the **Print on** menu.
14. Optional: If you selected a duplex printing option, use the bottom two menus to select how the printed image is flipped when printing on the reverse side of the paper.
15. In the **Annotations** section, activate each annotation you want to add to the selected layouts.
16. Click **Print**.

RESULT

The selected layouts are printed according to the print settings you have applied.

If your selection included part layouts set to concert pitch that contain transposing instruments, Dorico Elements shows a warning and offers to switch them all to transposed pitch before printing/exporting. You can also select which layouts you want to switch to transposed pitch or proceed anyway with no changes.

TIP

- You can choose to show a warning when printing/exporting concert or transposed pitch full score and custom score layouts in **Preferences** > **General** > **Files**.
- You can assign key commands to different printing and exporting commands on the **Key Commands** page in **Preferences**.

RELATED LINKS
Preferences dialog on page 58
Key Commands page in the Preferences dialog on page 59
Printers on page 546
Paper size and orientation setup on page 551
Export File Names dialog on page 545
Page arrangements for printing/exporting on page 547
Print Options panel on page 535
Duplex printing on page 549
Annotations on page 554
Changing the page size and/or orientation on page 556
Exporting layouts as graphics files on page 542

Specifying ranges of pages/flows

By default, Dorico Elements prints/exports all pages in the selected layouts. You can specify ranges of either pages or flows for each layout independently.

NOTE

You can only print booklets using the complete range of pages. You cannot specify page or flow ranges.

PROCEDURE

1. In the **Layouts** panel, select the layouts for which you want to specify ranges of pages/flows.
2. In the Print Options panel, in the **Job Type** section, choose one of the following options for **Print range**:
   - To specify ranges of pages, choose **Pages**.
   - To specify ranges of flows, choose **Flows**.
3. If you chose **Pages**, enter the pages you want into the value field.
   - To specify a range of pages, enter the first page and last page separated with a dash, such as **1-4**.
   - To specify individual pages or separate ranges, enter each page/range separated with commas, such as **1,3,5-8**.

     NOTE

     Separate ranges are exported as separate files.
4. If you chose **Flows**, click **Choose** to open the **Print Flows** dialog. Select the flows you want to print/export, then click **OK**.

RESULT

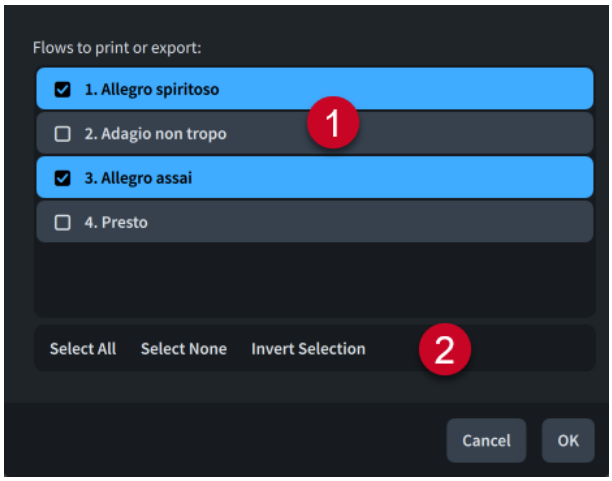
The pages set to be printed/exported from the selected layouts are changed. Ranges of flows include all pages on which those flows appear, in full or in part.

RELATED LINKS
Print Options panel on page 535
Export File Names dialog on page 545
Page arrangements for printing/exporting on page 547
Exporting flows on page 80

Print Flows dialog

The **Print Flows** dialog allows you to select the flows you want to print/export from the selected layouts. Ranges of flows include all pages on which those flows appear, in full or in part.

- You can open the **Print Flows** dialog in Print mode by clicking **Choose** in the **Job Type** section of the Print Options panel. **Choose** is available when the selected layouts are set to print/export a range of flows.



1 **Flows to print or export**

Contains a list of all the flows in the selected layouts. Flows are included in the page range to be printed/exported when their checkbox is activated.

2 **Selection options**

Allow you to select/deselect flows. The following selection options are available:

- **Select All**: Selects all flows.
- **Select None**: Deselects all flows.
- **Invert Selection**: Switches your selection to include all flows not previously selected.

Specifying printing options (macOS only)

Dorico Elements allows you to access the standard printing options of your operating system.

NOTE

If you use the standard printing options of your operating system, the settings in the Print Options panel are ignored. macOS-specific print settings are not saved with your project. These must be set each time you want to print, whereas the Dorico Elements print options are always saved with your project.

PROCEDURE

1. In the **Layouts** panel, click **Page Setup** in the **OS X Dialogs** section to open the macOS **Page Setup** dialog.
2. In the **Page Setup** dialog, set the paper size.
3. Click **OK**.
4. In the **OS X Dialogs** section, click **Print** to open the macOS **Print**.
5. In the **Print** dialog, set up the printing options you want.

Exporting layouts as graphics files

You can export layouts as a variety of graphics files, such as PDF or PNG.

TIP

You can export layouts with different image settings and export paths simultaneously.

PROCEDURE

1. In the **Layouts** panel, select the layouts you want to export.

   NOTE

   The layout selector in the toolbar is disabled in Print mode. To show a different layout in the print preview area, select it in the **Layouts** panel.

2. In the Print Options panel, choose **Graphics** in the **Destination** section.
3. Optional: Change the image settings for the selected layouts.
4. Optional: Change the export path for the selected layouts.
5. Optional: If you want to change the file name recipe, click **File Name Options** to open the **Export File Names** dialog.
6. Optional: In the **Export File Names** dialog, change the file name recipe for your selected graphics file formats.

   TIP

   We recommend including the **Page number** token for PNG, SVG, and TIFF files as each page in layouts using these formats is exported as a separate file.

7. Optional: Specify a range of pages/flows.
8. In the **Page Setup** section, choose the page orientation you want.
9. In the **Annotations** section, activate each annotation you want to add to the selected layouts.

   NOTE

   Watermarks are only included in layouts exported as **Color** graphics.

10. Click **Export**.

RESULT

The selected layouts are exported as the selected graphics format using the file name recipe set for their graphics file format in the **Export File Names** dialog. They are saved in the folder set in the **Destination folder** field, or in the same folder as the project file if the set export path is no longer accessible.

Exported layouts use the page size set for the layout on the **Page Setup** page in **Layout Options**.

If your selection included part layouts set to concert pitch that contain transposing instruments, Dorico Elements shows a warning and offers to switch them all to transposed pitch before printing/exporting. You can also select which layouts you want to switch to transposed pitch or proceed anyway with no changes.

TIP

- You can choose to show a warning when printing/exporting concert or transposed pitch full score and custom score layouts in **Preferences** > **General** > **Files**.
- You can assign key commands to different printing and exporting commands on the **Key Commands** page in **Preferences**.

RELATED LINKS
Specifying ranges of pages/flows on page 540
Changing the page size and/or orientation on page 556
Export File Names dialog on page 545
Annotations on page 554
Graphics file formats on page 552
Image resolution on page 552
Monochrome and color graphics processing on page 553
Embedding of fonts in PDF and SVG files on page 553
Preferences dialog on page 58
Key Commands page in the Preferences dialog on page 59
Layout Options dialog on page 677
Page vs. paper size on page 550
Exporting flows on page 80

Changing the image settings for layouts

You can change the graphics file format, color mode, and image resolution of layouts individually; for example, if you want to export some layouts as PDF files but others as PNG files.

PROCEDURE

1. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts whose export path you want to change.
2. In the Print Options panel, choose **Graphics** in the **Destination** section.
3. Select a graphics file format from the menu.
4. Optional: If you selected **PNG** or **TIFF**, select a resolution from the **Resolution** menu.

   TIP

   The **Resolution** setting does not affect **PDF** and **SVG** files as they are vector formats.

5. Choose a color mode.
   - **Mono** exports the graphic in black and white.
   - **Color** exports the graphic in full color.

   NOTE

   - For layouts that you want to export with watermarks, or that contain colored or not completely transparent elements, you must choose **Color**. If you select **Mono**, such elements appear black in the exported file.
   - When exporting graphics files with a resolution of 72 dpi, we recommend that you select **Color**. If you select **Mono**, staff lines can disappear.

RESULT

The image settings for the selected layouts are changed. This also changes the file name recipe used for the corresponding layouts when you export them.

RELATED LINKS

Graphics file formats on page 552
Image resolution on page 552
Monochrome and color graphics processing on page 553
Embedding of fonts in PDF and SVG files on page 553
Hiding/Showing noteheads on page 949

Changing the export path for layouts

You can specify an export path to any folder to which you want to export layouts as graphics files. You can specify a different export path for each layout and still export them all simultaneously.

By default, Dorico Elements exports graphics files into the same folder as your project file. If you have not saved your project yet, graphics files are saved in your **Dorico Projects** folder.

PROCEDURE

1. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts whose export path you want to change.
2. In the **Destination** section of the Print Options panel, click **Choose Folder** ... beside the **Destination folder** field to open the File Explorer/macOS Finder.
3. Locate and select the destination folder you want.
4. Click **Select Folder** (Windows)/**Open** (macOS) to insert the new path in the **Destination folder** field.
5. Optional: Repeat steps 1 to 4 for other layouts whose export path you want to change.
6. Optional: If you want to change the file name recipe, click **File Name Options** to open the **Export File Names** dialog.
7. Optional: In the **Export File Names** dialog, change the file name recipe for your selected graphics file formats.

   TIP

   We recommend including the **Page number** token for PNG, SVG, and TIFF files as each page in layouts using these formats is exported as a separate file.

RESULT

The export path for the selected layouts is changed. When exported, the layouts use the file name recipe set for their graphics file format in the **Export File Names** dialog.

NOTE

If the export path specified is no longer accessible, such as if you receive a project from someone who uses a different operating system, Dorico Elements automatically updates the export path to the same location as the project file.

Export File Names dialog

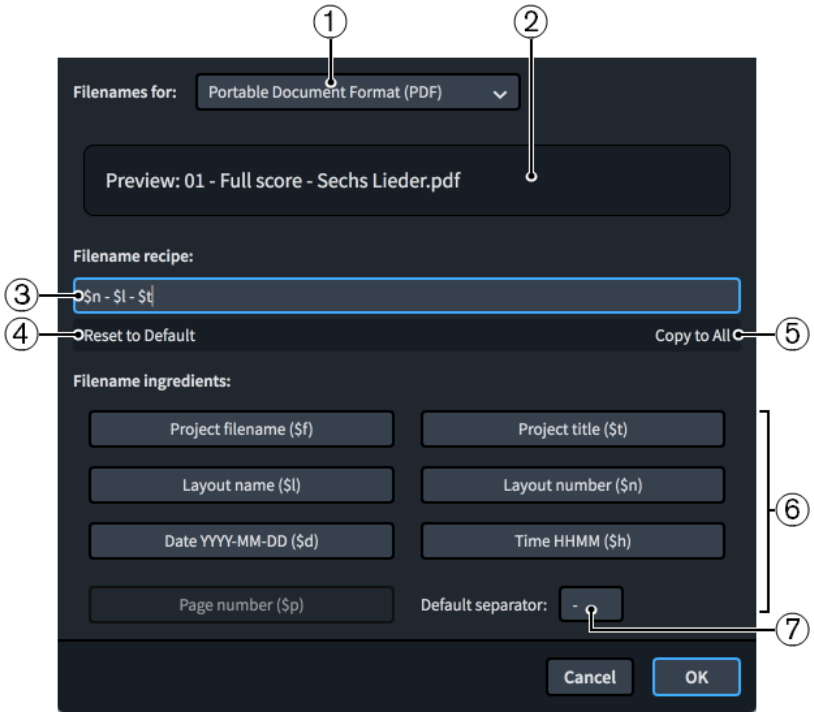
The **Export File Names** dialog allows you to determine the contents of file names for each graphics file format independently. You can use universal ingredients that update to show the correct information for each layout automatically, and you can enter text that is the same for all layouts.

You can open the **Export File Names** dialog in any of the following ways:

- In Print mode, click **File Name Options** in the **Destination** section of the Print Options panel when the currently selected layout is set to **Graphics**.
- In **Preferences** > **General** > **Exporting Files**, click **Edit**.

NOTE

Your settings are linked between both ways of accessing the dialog and are saved as the default for all future projects.



The **Export File Names** dialog contains the following options:

1 File names for

Allows you to select different graphics file formats. You can set different file name recipes for each graphics file format.

2 Preview

Displays an example file name based on the current recipe. The layout used for the preview is the one shown in the layout selector in the toolbar.

For example, the preview for a full score PDF file name using the default recipe might be `01 - Full score - Lieder.pdf`.

3 File name recipe

Displays the recipe for the selected graphics file format. You can enter text directly into this field, and click ingredients to add them automatically.

For example, the default PDF file name recipe is **$n - $l - $t**.

4 **Reset to Default**

Resets the file name recipe to the default for the selected graphics file format.

5 **Copy to All**

Copies the file name recipe to all layouts in the project.

6 **File name ingredients**

Allow you to add ingredients to the file name recipe quickly that are automatically populated as appropriate for each layout. For example, the ingredient **$I** becomes `Piano` when used to export a piano part layout.

The buttons for each ingredient display both the information to which the ingredient refers and the characters for it.

When you click file name ingredients, they are added to the end of the file name recipe. They are automatically separated from the previous ingredient using the default separator.

NOTE

The page number ingredient is not available for the PDF file name recipe as it is a multi-page format.

7 **Default separator**

Allows you to set the characters used to separate ingredients in the file name recipe by default.

RELATED LINKS
Exporting layouts as graphics files on page 542

Printers

You can print layouts from Dorico Elements projects to any printer to which your computer is connected.

You can select different printers for each layout in your project. This allows you to send layouts to the most appropriate printer for their requirements. You can select a printer when **Printer** is chosen in the **Destination** section of the Print Options panel.

Dorico Elements uses the same printer as designated by the operating system by default, unless you specify another printer. In this case, the settings in the following sections in the Print Options panel can change:

- In the **Page Setup** section, the list of available paper sizes lists only paper sizes that the chosen printer provides.
- In the **Duplex Printing** section, the option for automatic duplex printing is only available if the chosen printer has this function.

NOTE

The printer menu in the **Destination** section only shows the name of a printer if all currently selected layouts are set to print to the same printer. If you select a new printer from the menu, all selected layouts are set to print to that printer.

RELATED LINKS
Print Options panel on page 535
Printing layouts on page 538

Page arrangements for printing/exporting

Dorico Elements provides several page arrangements that you can use for printing/exporting your layouts.

In the **Job Type** section of the Print Options panel, you can specify how you want the layouts to be printed/exported. You can select the following job types from the **Job Type** menu:

Normal

Prints one page on each sheet of paper. This produces single-sided pages; for example, for instrumental parts that do not have regular page turns and must be bound in a continuous line.

Spreads

Prints two pages on each sheet of paper, with odd-numbered pages on the right-hand side and even-numbered pages on the left-hand side.

You can also specify a paper size on which to print odd final pages; for example, if you are printing a layout containing five pages.

2-up

Prints two pages on each sheet of paper. The first page in the range is printed on the left-hand side of the first sheet of paper. This can be useful for printing instrument parts as it reduces the number of edges that must be bound, because pages can also be folded in half.

You can also specify a paper size on which to print odd final pages; for example, if you are printing a layout containing five pages.

Booklet

Prints two pages on each sheet of paper according to imposition requirements. This means that if the paper is folded, the pages are laid out like a book. This can be useful for scores and choir parts in particular as they often contain more pages than instrumental parts.

NOTE

You can only print booklets using the complete range of pages. You cannot specify page or flow ranges.

NOTE

- Depending on the job type that you choose, Dorico Elements switches the page orientation automatically. The changed orientation is immediately displayed in the music area. If this is not what you want, you can override the orientation in the **Page Setup** section.
- All of the job types allow printing either onto a single side of each sheet of paper or on both sides of the paper.
- It is usual to print booklets, spreads, and 2-up onto paper in landscape orientation. Printing one page to each sheet typically uses portrait orientation, unless the layout itself uses landscape orientation.

Also in the **Job Type** section, you can choose which pages you want to print/export.

All

Allows you to print/export all pages in the selected layouts.

Pages

Allows you to set a range of pages to be printed/exported. Choosing **Pages** makes the value field available.

- To specify a range, enter the first page and last page separated with a dash, such as **1-4**.
- To specify individual pages or separate ranges, enter each page/range separated with commas, such as **1,3,5-8**.

Flows

Allows you to set a range of flows to be printed/exported. When **Flows** is chosen, you can click **Choose** to open the **Print Flows** dialog, which allows you to select the flows you want to print/export.

RELATED LINKS
Paper size and orientation setup on page 551
Specifying ranges of pages/flows on page 540
Margins on page 570

Booklet printing

Booklets are documents printed on both sides of the paper and folded to resemble the pages in a book. When printed as a booklet, pages are reordered so that you can fold the printed pages and read the content in the same order as they were in the project.

Printing layouts as a booklet can be much quicker than printing pages single-sided or double-sided. For example, if your full score is twenty pages long and you print it on both sides automatically, you must then bind one edge of the printed pages in order to keep them together. However, if you print the full score as a booklet, you can simply fold the printed pages in the middle.

Booklet printing settings reorder pages so that they appear in the correct order on the printed page. For example, a layout containing four pages printed as a booklet is laid out as follows:

- First side: page four on the left, page one on the right
- Reverse side: page two on the left, page three on the right

If the layout you are printing as a booklet contains an odd number of pages, Dorico Elements automatically places any empty last pages at the end of the booklet. This follows the convention of showing odd-numbered pages on the right. For example, if you print a layout containing six pages as a booklet, a total of eight pages are printed with the last two pages in the booklet left blank. If you want the empty pages to be positioned differently, you can add extra pages to the layout; for example, a title page.

NOTE

- You can only print booklets using the complete range of pages. You cannot specify page or flow ranges.
- If the order of inward pages is incorrect when you are printing booklets using manual duplexing, you can activate **Reverse order of outward pages** in the **Duplex Printing** section of the Print Options panel, which instructs Dorico Elements to output the first set of pages in the opposite order.

RELATED LINKS
Printing layouts on page 538
Duplex printing on page 549

Duplex printing

Dorico Elements allows duplex printing, which means that you can print on both sides of each sheet of paper.

If your printer supports automatic duplex printing, you can use this function in Dorico Elements. If your printer can only print on one side of each sheet of paper, there is a manual duplex printing option.

The **Print on** menu in the **Duplex Printing** section of the Print Options panel contains the following options:

One side only

Prints on one side of each sheet of paper.

Both sides manually

Prints on both sides of each sheet of paper. Use this option if you printer lacks an automatic duplex printing function. After all outward pages have been sent to the printer, a message box informs you to turn over the stack of printed pages and put them back into the printer. Click **OK** to continue printing the inward pages.

Both sides automatically

Prints on both sides of each sheet of paper automatically. This option is only available if your printer supports this type of printing.

The other menus in the **Duplex Printing** section allow you to set how the printed image is flipped when printing on the reverse side of the paper.

Flip image (portrait)

Determines how the image is flipped for reverse side printing in portrait orientation.

- **Flip automatically** uses the printer's default settings for printing on the reverse side. If you find that the printer flips on a different edge than expected, use one of the other options.
- **Flip long side** sets the printer to flip the pages on the long edge.
- **Flip short side** sets the printer to flip the pages on the short edge.

Flip image (landscape)

Determines how the image is flipped for reverse side printing in landscape orientation.

- **Flip automatically** uses the printer's default settings for printing on the reverse side. If you find that the printer flips on a different edge than expected, use one of the other options.
- **Flip long side** sets the printer to flip the pages on the long edge.
- **Flip short side** sets the printer to flip the pages on the short edge.

Reverse order of outward pages at the bottom of the section instructs Dorico Elements, when activated, to output the first set of pages in the opposite order when printing booklets using manual duplexing. This is necessary for some printers so that you do not have to reverse sort the pages manually before returning them to the printer to print the other sides.

RELATED LINKS
Printing layouts on page 538

Page vs. paper size

In Dorico Elements, page sizes and paper sizes use different settings. This means that you can print layouts with any page size onto paper with a different paper size.

For each layout in your project, you can define a page size on the **Page Setup** page in **Layout Options**, which sets the dimensions of the layout.

When exporting layouts as graphics files, the layout's page size is always used. When printing layouts, you must usually choose a paper size that is provided by the printer that you are using.

Normally, the layout's page size and the printed paper size match. However, if you define a layout with an unusual page size that is not supported by your printer, such as 10" x 13", one of the standard page sizes for instrumental parts, you may have to print the layout onto a different paper size. You can change the paper size in the **Page Setup** section of the Print Options panel according to your needs. As long as your printer supports sufficiently large paper for your page size settings, and they match a standard paper size, your dimensions are included in the menu. Changing the paper size has no effect on your layout's page size, and does not, therefore, affect the way the music is laid out.

If you do not select a specific paper size, Dorico Elements automatically chooses a paper size that is based on your computer's locale settings. For example, if these are set to a European country, an international ISO standard might be used, such as A4. If they are set to a North American country, one of their typical standards might be used, such as US Letter.

If you have defined a page size for your layout that is larger than a typical standard, Dorico Elements automatically chooses the next larger paper size, provided that your printer supports this. For example, if the layout's page size is larger than A4/US Letter, A3/Tabloid is used.

If you print to a different paper size than the layout's page size, Dorico Elements automatically scales the image to fit the paper. You can change this setting by specifying a custom scale factor in the **Page Setup** section.

RELATED LINKS
Layout Options dialog on page 677
Changing the page size and/or orientation on page 556
Printing layouts on page 538
Exporting layouts as graphics files on page 542
Margins on page 570

Paper orientation

Paper orientation is the direction of rectangular paper for viewing and printing. Paper can have either landscape or portrait orientation.

Instrumental parts are most often printed using portrait orientation, as this allows two or three pages to be spread out at a time on most music stands.

Full scores for conductors are also commonly printed using portrait orientation, as this allows more staves to fit on the page than with landscape orientation. However, full scores for small ensembles might use landscape orientation as fewer staves have to fit on the page. Having more horizontal room on the page allows more bars to fit on each page, reducing the number of page turns required.

In Dorico Elements, you can set the orientation of pages independently of the paper orientation; for example, you can print portrait pages on landscape paper. You can also separately set the paper orientation of the odd final page in layouts using the **Spreads** and **2-up** page arrangements.

RELATED LINKS
Changing the page size and/or orientation on page 556

Paper size and orientation setup

Layouts can have different paper sizes and orientation settings.

NOTE

If you have selected **Graphics** in the **Destination** section of the Print Options panel, you can only change the paper orientation. No other options are available.

The **Page Setup** section of the Print Options panel contains the following options when you have chosen **Printer** in the **Destination** section:

Paper size

Allows you to select one of the available paper sizes from the menu. The paper sizes available depend on the capabilities of the selected printer.

Paper orientation

Allows you to choose one of the following paper orientation options:

- **Portrait**
- **Landscape**

Print odd final page on

For **Spreads** and **2-up** job types only: If this is activated, you can select a different paper size or orientation for the odd final page.

This setting is useful when printing layouts with an odd number of pages on A3 paper in landscape orientation. For example, if your layout contains five pages, the first four pages fit onto two sheets of A3, while the fifth page would occupy only the left-hand side of a third sheet of A3. This setting allows you to print the odd final page on A4 paper in portrait orientation instead.

Fit to Paper

The whole page is scaled to fit the paper size selected. For example, if you select a layout with a page size of A4 and select a paper size of A3, pages in the layout are enlarged to fit the larger paper size.

Custom Scale

The page is scaled to the set percentage of its original size. For example, if you are printing a layout with a page size of A3, select a paper size of A4, and set **Custom Scale** to **100**, the original page remains at its original size, exceeding the boundaries of the A4 paper.

RELATED LINKS
Page arrangements for printing/exporting on page 547
Changing the page size and/or orientation on page 556
Margins on page 570

Graphics file formats

Dorico Elements supports multiple graphics file formats as which you can export your layouts.

PDF

Stands for Portable Document Format. Exporting layouts to PDF allows you to create a platform-independent document that contains a fixed version of each layout; for example, to send to someone who does not have access to Dorico Elements.

PNG

Stands for Portable Network Graphics. PNG files are losslessly compressed, meaning they produce high-quality images.

SVG

Stands for Scalable Vector Graphics. Because SVG is an XML-based text format, it can be scaled to any size without any loss of quality. Dorico Elements renders SVG graphics using drawing instructions rather than rasterizing them, resulting in better resolutions and smaller file sizes.

TIFF

Stands for Tagged Image File Format. TIFF files are not compressed, which means their file sizes can be larger than other formats and the quality of the image is not reduced.

RELATED LINKS
Exporting layouts as graphics files on page 542
Monochrome and color graphics processing on page 553
Embedding of fonts in PDF and SVG files on page 553

Image resolution

Image resolution refers to the number of pixels contained in an image. The larger the number of pixels, the sharper and clearer the image appears.

In Dorico Elements, you can export PNG and TIFF files with different image resolutions. The image resolution is measured in dots per inch, or “dpi”.

- **72**
- **150**
- **300**
- **600**
- **1200**

NOTE

A resolution of 72 dpi is suitable for display on screen so that you can embed the graphic in an e-mail or on a web page. If you choose 300, 600, or 1200 dpi, a high-resolution image is saved that you can include as an illustration in a word processing or desktop publishing document.

RELATED LINKS
Exporting layouts as graphics files on page 542

Monochrome and color graphics processing

Dorico Elements applies different settings when you export monochrome and color graphics. The most appropriate setting depends on your intended purpose for the graphics.

Most musical scores are monochrome, meaning they use only black ink and are normally printed on white/near-white paper. Some educational books occasionally use colors to highlight particular notations; for example, to identify clefs, or to color notes according to their pitch. If you export graphics files and print them with your own printer, you can leave **Color** selected in the **Destination** section.

However, if you export graphics files in PDF format for direct printing on a platesetter or for further production work in a page layout program, select **Mono**, unless your layout actually contains elements with color or opacity set. If you select **Mono**, Dorico Elements uses a different color space for the resulting PDF, ensuring that the printed image only uses black ink. If you choose **Color**, then the black items in your layout are exported as rich black; that is, black produced by combining multiple colored inks. This can cause problems in production when making color separations at the pre-press stage.

Dorico Elements specifies colors using the RGB color model, rather than the CMYK color model that is used by platesetters and other professional printing machines. If you have colored objects in your layouts and your layouts are printed professionally, you must post-process the graphics files that are exported from Dorico Elements in another graphics application to convert the colors from RGB to CMYK.

Embedding of fonts in PDF and SVG files

How fonts are handled in PDF and SVG files mainly depends on the fonts that you use in the project.

PDF Files

The music and text fonts, and their sub-sets, that are supplied with Dorico Elements are embedded in PDF files during the export. If you open the PDF files on a different computer, they look the same, even if that computer does not have the fonts installed that are used in the document. If you use different fonts, make sure that these permit embedding.

SVG Files

SVG (Scalable Vector Graphics) files do not embed fonts directly. Some font characters, such as note heads, articulations, and accidentals, are converted into outlines, so that they do not depend on the font from which they are taken. Other font characters, such as time signature and tuplet digits, are only encoded using references to the font from which they are taken. The latter also applies to regular text, such as staff labels, tempo instructions, and dynamics. This means that the SVG file looks incorrect if rendered by a web browser on a computer that does not have the fonts installed. The appearance of SVG files depends on the browser or the rendering software, and on the fonts that are installed on the computer.

To ensure that the SVG file appears correctly if embedded in a web page, you can open the SVG file in an illustration program and convert all font characters to outline paths, then re-export the SVG file and embed that file. Alternatively, you can use web fonts to ensure that the necessary fonts are available on the web server.

SVG graphics that are exported from Dorico Elements conform to the SVG Tiny 1.1 specification, which defines a subset of features in the full SVG specification.

For information about using web fonts with SVG, refer to the Help Center on the Steinberg website.

RELATED LINKS
Exporting layouts as graphics files on page 542
Graphics file formats on page 552
Image resolution on page 552
Monochrome and color graphics processing on page 553

Annotations

Annotations provide additional information for printed or exported documents, such as the date and time it was printed. Publishers and printing agencies can use these to identify and register printed images correctly or to embed exported graphics files into a desktop publishing application.

When printing/exporting your layouts for publication, you can include typical annotations. You can also allow Dorico Elements to print or export any view options that you have activated in your project.

NOTE

Crop marks and the border can only be printed if the page size is smaller than the paper size.

The **Annotations** section of the Print Options panel contains the following options:

Crop marks

Adds short vertical and horizontal lines at each of the four corners of the page.

Border

Adds an outline around the edge of the page dimensions.

Date and time

Adds the date and time of printing at the bottom of each page.

Watermark

Adds large translucent text across the middle of each page. This is useful for indicating that this version is a draft, proof, or perusal score.

In the **Watermark** field at the bottom of the section, you can enter the text that you want to show on each page.

TIP

Watermarks are only included in layouts exported as **Color** graphics.

View options

Adds all active view options, such as signposts, comments, and note and rest colors, to the printout or exported graphic.

RELATED LINKS
Signposts on page 426
Comments on page 470
Printing layouts on page 538
Exporting layouts as graphics files on page 542
Hiding non-printing elements on page 416

Page formatting

The formatting of pages in Dorico Elements is determined by a number of factors, including the layout's staff size, page margins, the page template applied to them, any casting off values applied to them, system and frame breaks, and frame padding.

The most important factors that determine how pages are formatted in Dorico Elements are:

Staff size

Staff size refers to the distance between the top and bottom lines of staves. The most appropriate staff size depends on the intended purpose and contents of the layout. In many cases, changing the staff size is the quickest way to produce legible layouts.

Staff spacing

Staff spacing mostly involves the height of staves and the necessary gaps between staves and systems.

Casting off

"Casting off" is the term used to encompass fixing the layout of pages of music, such as setting the number of systems per page.

System and frame breaks

System and frame breaks allow you to adjust layouts at a more granular level, by determining which bars are shown on each system and where music is pushed into the next frame.

Page margins

Page margins determine the dimensions of pages in layouts. Frames cannot exceed the boundaries set by the margins of the layout, which you can change on the **Page Setup** page in **Layout Options**. You can change the size of margins on each edge of each page.

Page templates

All pages in your layouts inherit their layout formats from page templates. Although you cannot create or edit page templates in Dorico Elements, we recommend being familiar with them as a concept, so you are aware of how pages are formatted. For example, if you override a page template, such as by editing the title directly in the music area, empty pages that are no longer required might not be deleted automatically.

TIP

The default page templates in Dorico Elements contain tokens for the project title, lyricist, and composer on the first pages in layouts, and the flow title (score layouts) or layout name (part layouts) at the top of subsequent pages. Part layouts also automatically show the layout name in the top left of the first page. These tokens refer to information in the **Project Info** dialog, so we recommend entering information in the **Project Info** dialog in order to show it in your layouts.

Flow headings

Flow headings show the number and title of each flow immediately above their first system automatically. They have no fixed vertical position and follow the music if it moves. The default flow heading contains tokens to display the flow number and flow

title; in a new project, this appears as “1. Flow 1”. In Dorico Elements, you cannot edit flow headings or create new ones.

You can hide/show flow headings on a per-layout basis. Deleting or editing individual flow headings is considered a page template override, which is a type of page format change.

Music frame margins

Music frames have margins at the top and bottom. Music frame margins provide padding to ensure that musical material displayed within the frame remains on the page. For example, if music frames have no padding, the top line on the top staff in the frame is positioned at the top of the frame. Any notes that require ledger lines above the staff might then be positioned off the top of the page. You can change the music frame margins for each layout.

We recommend familiarizing yourself with these concepts, and how to use them together and in different contexts, in order to produce well-formatted layouts.

RELATED LINKS

Layout Options dialog on page 677
Staff size on page 573
Staff spacing on page 576
Casting off on page 581
System breaks on page 586
Frame breaks on page 589
Page templates on page 599
Flow headings on page 603
Hiding/Showing flow headings on page 567
Removing page template overrides on page 602
Tacets on page 592
Margins on page 570
Hiding/Showing empty staves on page 562
Hiding/Showing used chord diagrams grids on page 809
Layouts on page 165
Flows on page 162
Players on page 120
Project Info dialog on page 75
Project templates on page 78

Changing the page size and/or orientation

You can change the page size and/or orientation of each layout independently. For example, you can use a large, landscape page in full score layouts and a small, portrait page for part layouts.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-L** to open **Layout Options**.
2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to change the page size and/or orientation.

   By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar, clicking and dragging across multiple layouts, **Shift**-clicking adjacent layouts, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking individual layouts.
3. In the category list, click **Page Setup**.

4. In the **Page Size** section, select a page size from the **Size** menu.

   For example, you can select fixed page sizes, such as **A3** or **Letter**, or select **Custom** to define your own page size.

5. Optional: If you selected **Custom**, change the **Width** and **Height** of the page by changing the values in the value fields.

6. Choose one of the following options for **Orientation**:

   - **Portrait**
   - **Landscape**

7. Optional: Repeat steps 2 to 6 for other layouts whose page size/orientation you want to change.

8. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

The page size and/or orientation is changed for all the selected layouts.

NOTE

Changing the page size of layouts might not change the paper size automatically selected for those layouts in the Print Options panel in Print mode. For example, if your default printer cannot print the page size selected for layouts, the largest paper size the printer can handle is selected. Similarly, if you had already set options for printing layouts before changing the page size in **Layout Options**, Dorico Elements attempts to preserve your original print options.

Similarly, the page orientation is independent of the paper orientation. We recommend that you check that layouts have the correct paper orientation set for their page orientation in the Print Options panel in Print mode before printing/exporting, as it is possible to print landscape layouts on portrait paper and vice versa.

RELATED LINKS

Paper size and orientation setup on page 551
Printing layouts on page 538
Exporting layouts as graphics files on page 542

Changing page margins

You can change the page margins of each layout independently; for example, if you want wider margins for layouts in your project that will be spiral bound.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-L** to open **Layout Options**.

2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to change the page margins.

   By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar, clicking and dragging across multiple layouts, **Shift**-clicking adjacent layouts, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking individual layouts.

3. In the category list, click **Page Setup**.

4. In the **Page Margins** section, choose one of the following options for **Page margins**:

   - **Same**: All pages in the selected layouts have the same margins.

- **Different**: Left and right pages in the selected layouts can have completely different margins.
- **Mirrored**: Left and right pages in the selected layouts use the same margin values but they correspond to the inside/outside edges of pages.

5. Optional: Change the margins by changing the values in the value fields.
6. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

The page margins in the selected layouts are changed.

RELATED LINKS

Margins on page 570
Changing the first system indent on page 1198
Hiding/Showing staff labels on page 1181
Hiding/Showing used chord diagrams grids on page 809

Applying page template sets to layouts

You can change the page template set used by each layout in your project; for example, if you want a custom score layout to use the **Default Part** page template set because that set shows the layout name on the first page.

By default, full score and custom score layouts use the **Default Full Score** page template set and part layouts use the **Default Part** page template set.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-L** to open **Layout Options**.
2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts whose page template set you want to change.

   By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar, clicking and dragging across multiple layouts, **Shift**-clicking adjacent layouts, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking individual layouts.
3. In the category list, click **Page Setup**.
4. In the **Page Template** section, select the page template set you want from the **Page template set** menu.
5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

The selected page template set is applied to the selected layouts.

RELATED LINKS

Page template sets on page 600
Changing when the First page template is used on page 566
Allowing/Disallowing multiple flows on the same page on page 565
Hiding/Showing flow headings on page 567

Changing the default staff size

You can change the default size of staves in each layout independently. For example, you can have a small staff size in full score layouts but a larger staff size in part layouts.

NOTE

If the size of system object font styles is set to **Staff-relative**, the staff size of the top staff in each instrument family group affects the size of system objects if they are shown above that bracketed group. Font styles that are set to **Absolute** are unaffected by staff size.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-L** to open **Layout Options**.
2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts whose staff size you want to change.

   By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar, clicking and dragging across multiple layouts, **Shift**-clicking adjacent layouts, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking individual layouts.
3. In the category list, click **Page Setup**.
4. In the **Space Size** section, select the staff size you want from the **Rastral size** menu.

   NOTE

   If you select **Custom**, you can set a custom value in the **Space size** field, expressed in your preferred unit of measurement.

   You can also set a **Custom** value by changing the value when any **Rastral size** is selected.
5. Optional: Repeat steps 2 to 4 for other layouts.
6. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

The staff size is changed throughout the selected layouts.

TIP

You can also change the size of individual staves.

RELATED LINKS

Staff size on page 573
Brackets and braces on page 776
System objects on page 1196

Changing the default staff/system spacing

You can change the default gaps between staves and systems in each layout independently. For example, you can have smaller gaps between staves in full score layouts to accommodate more

staves, and larger gaps between systems in part layouts to give players space to add pencil markings.

TIP

- If the staves in a layout are very close together, just decreasing the staff size might be sufficient to produce good results.
- We recommend that you set the ideal gaps to the minimum value acceptable to you, as Dorico Elements automatically allocates additional space for other items, such as system objects and dynamics, and avoids collisions between notes and staves above/below.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-L** to open **Layout Options**.
2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to change the default staff/system spacing.

   By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar, clicking and dragging across multiple layouts, **Shift**-clicking adjacent layouts, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking individual layouts.
3. In the category list, click **Vertical Spacing**.
4. In the **Ideal Gaps** section, change the values for the different contexts as required.
5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

The minimum gaps between staves and systems in the corresponding contexts are changed. This affects how much space Dorico Elements allows for staves/systems in its casting off estimations and whether frames are considered full enough to justify vertically automatically.

RELATED LINKS

Staff spacing on page 576
Locking layouts on page 584
Note spacing on page 579
Changing the first system indent on page 1198
Hiding/Showing staff labels on page 1181
Hiding/Showing empty staves on page 562
Changing the default player order on page 123

Changing the vertical justification of staves/systems

You can change the minimum fullness threshold above which Dorico Elements automatically vertically justifies staves and systems, which means they are evenly distributed to fill the height of frames. You can also control whether staves and systems are both vertically justified or only systems are vertically justified.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-L** to open **Layout Options**.
2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to change the automatic vertical justification of staves/systems.

   By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar, clicking

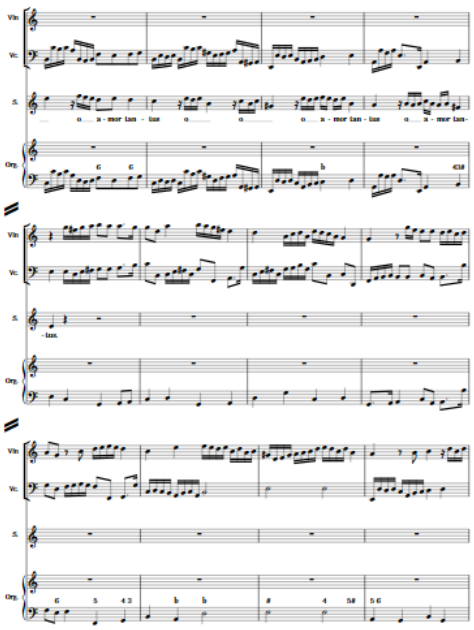
and dragging across multiple layouts, **Shift**-clicking adjacent layouts, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking individual layouts.

3. In the category list, click **Vertical Spacing**.
4. In the **Ideal Gaps** section, choose one of the following options for **Gap to use for divisi staves**:
   - **Staff to staff**
   - **Braced staff to braced staff**
5. In the **Vertical Justification** section, change the values for the following options, individually or together:
   - **Justify distance between staves and systems when frame is at least [n]% full**
   - **Justify distance only between systems when frame is at least [n]% full**
6. Activate/Deactivate **Justify staves when frame with single system is above this threshold**.
7. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

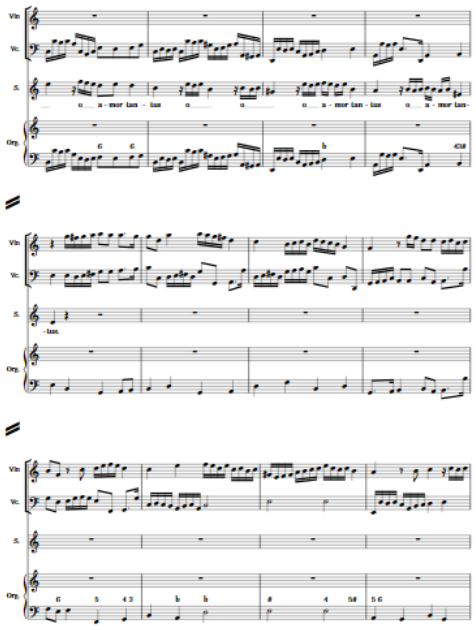
RESULT

The automatic vertical justification of staves and systems in the selected layouts is changed. Braced staves are never vertically justified.

EXAMPLE



A page with staves and systems both justified



The same page with only systems justified

RELATED LINKS

Per-layout vertical spacing options on page 577

Hiding/Showing empty staves

You can hide/show empty staves differently in each layout independently. For example, you can show all staves, including empty staves, in a full score layout for the conductor but hide empty staves in a full score layout intended for reference only.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-L** to open **Layout Options**.
2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to hide/show empty staves.

   By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar, clicking and dragging across multiple layouts, **Shift**-clicking adjacent layouts, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking individual layouts.
3. In the category list, click **Vertical Spacing**.
4. In the **Staff Visibility** section, choose one of the following options for **Hide empty staves**:
   - **After first system**
   - **All systems**
   - **Never**
5. Activate/Deactivate **Allow individual staves of multi-staff instruments to be hidden**.
6. Optional: For **Players excluded from Hide Empty Staves**, activate the checkbox for each instrument you want to be shown regardless of your choice for **Hide empty staves**.
7. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

Empty staves in the selected layouts are hidden/shown according to your choice. If you activated **Allow individual staves of multi-staff instruments to be hidden**, any single empty staves in multi-staff instruments, such as piano or harp, can be hidden in the selected layouts.

RELATED LINKS

Extra staves on page 1193
Divisi on page 1199
Per-layout vertical spacing options on page 577
Hiding/Showing blank staves after final flows on page 564
Changing the default player order on page 123
Hiding/Showing system dividers on page 1195
Instrument filters on page 421

Hiding/Showing staves from system/frame breaks

You can manually change staff visibility from the rhythmic positions of system/frame breaks onwards by hiding, showing, and resetting individual staves. For example, if you have hidden empty staves in the layout but want specific empty staves to appear in some sections, or you want to hide staves with music on them in some layouts.

PROCEDURE

1. Optional: If you want to change staff visibility manually from a rhythmic position that does not yet have a system/frame break, select an item at the position from which you want to change staff visibility.
2. Open the **Manual Staff Visibility** dialog in one of the following ways:

- If a system/frame break signpost exists at the position where you want to change staff visibility, select it and press **Return** or double-click it.
- If no system/frame break exists, choose **Edit** > **Notations** > **Staff** > **Manual Staff Visibility**. You can also choose this option from the context menu.

3. Change staff visibility as required.

   For example, you can activate and change the setting for individual staves, or use the options in the action bar to change the setting for all staves simultaneously.

4. Click **OK** to save your changes and close the dialog.

RESULT

Staff visibility is changed from the selected rhythmic position or system/frame break signpost onwards until the next staff visibility change or the end of the flow, whichever comes first and whether the staves are empty or not.

If a system/frame break signpost did not yet exist at the selected rhythmic position, a system break with your staff visibility settings is inserted at the selected rhythmic position.

RELATED LINKS

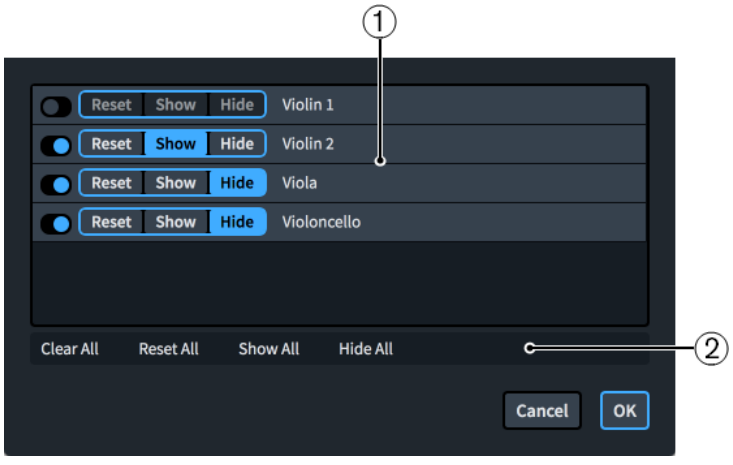
Frame breaks on page 589
System breaks on page 586
Staff spacing on page 576

Manual Staff Visibility dialog

The **Manual Staff Visibility** dialog allows you to hide, show, and reset individual staves manually from system/frame breaks.

You can open the **Manual Staff Visibility** dialog in Write mode in any of the following ways:

- Choose **Edit** > **Notations** > **Staff** > **Manual Staff Visibility** when an item is selected in the music area. You can also choose this option from the context menu.
- Select a system/frame break signpost and press **Return**, or double-click a system/frame break signpost.



The **Manual Staff Visibility** dialog comprises the following:

1 Staff list

Contains all the staves that exist at the selected rhythmic position, including hidden empty staves. Activating staves includes them in the manual staff visibility change.

For each staff, the following staff visibility options are available:

- **Reset**: Resets the visibility of the staff to the default setting in the layout, as set on the **Vertical Spacing** page in **Layout Options**.
- **Show**: Shows the staff from the selected rhythmic position onwards, whether it is empty or not.
- **Hide**: Hides the staff from the selected rhythmic position onwards, whether it is empty or not.

2 **Action bar**

Contains options that allow you to change the staff visibility setting of all staves simultaneously.

- **Clear All**: Deactivates all staves.
- **Reset All**: Activates all staves and sets them to **Reset**.
- **Show All**: Activates all staves and sets them to **Show**.
- **Hide All**: Activates all staves and sets them to **Hide**.

Hiding/Showing blank staves after final flows

You can hide/show additional blank staves to fill the page after the final flow in each layout independently; for example, if you want to emulate the convention of showing additional blank staves between the final system and the bottom of the page when formatting part layouts for recording sessions.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-L** to open **Layout Options**.
2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to hide/show blank staves after the ends of flows.

   By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar, clicking and dragging across multiple layouts, **Shift**-clicking adjacent layouts, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking individual layouts.
3. In the category list, click **Page Setup**.
4. In the **Flows** section, activate/deactivate **Fill frame with blank staves**.
5. If you activated **Fill frame with blank staves**, activate/deactivate **Show blank staves in systems identical to final flow**.
6. Customize the appearance of blank staves in one of the following ways:
   - If you activated **Show blank staves in systems identical to final flow** and want to show clefs that follow the previous flow on blank staves, choose **Include clefs**.
   - If you activated **Show blank staves in systems identical to final flow** and want to hide clefs on blank staves, choose **Exclude clefs**.
   - If you deactivated **Show blank staves in systems identical to final flow**, change the number of staff lines in blank staves by changing the value for **Number of staff lines for blank staves**.

RESULT

Blank staves are shown after the final flow in the selected layouts when **Fill frame with blank staves** is activated, and hidden when it is deactivated. When shown, blank staves appear below the final system in the final flow and fill the width of the final system if it is not fully horizontally justified.

When **Show blank staves in systems identical to final flow** is activated, blank staves follow the staff grouping of the final flow, such as two bracketed staves in a part layout with two players assigned to it. When it is deactivated, single blank staves without clefs are shown.

NOTE

You cannot input music or change brackets/braces on blank staves.

RELATED LINKS
Per-layout vertical spacing options on page 577
Changing the horizontal justification of final systems on page 569
Staff labels on page 1180
Brackets and braces on page 776

Starting layouts on left-hand pages

By default, all layouts start on a right-hand page, as convention dictates that odd numbered pages are always on the right-hand page. However, you can set individual layouts to start on a left-hand page; for example, to facilitate page turns better in that layout.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-L** to open **Layout Options**.
2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts you want to start on a left-hand page.

   By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar, clicking and dragging across multiple layouts, **Shift**-clicking adjacent layouts, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking individual layouts.
3. In the category list, click **Page Setup**.
4. In the **Page Numbers** section, change the value for **Initial page number** to an even number.
5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

The first page in the selected layouts is shown on a left-hand page when the initial page number is even.

Allowing/Disallowing multiple flows on the same page

You can allow/disallow new flows to be shown on the same page as previous flows if there is space; for example, to reduce the number of pages required for parts in works with multiple movements. By default, new flows are allowed on the same page in part layouts and are not allowed in full score layouts.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-L** to open **Layout Options**.
2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to allow multiple flows to be shown on each page.

   By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar, clicking

and dragging across multiple layouts, **Shift**-clicking adjacent layouts, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking individual layouts.

3. In the category list, click **Page Setup**.
4. In the **Flows** section, choose one of the following options for **New flows**:
   - **Always start new page**
   - **Allow on existing page**
5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

Always start new page ensures flows in the selected layouts always begin at the start of the next page after the end of the previous flow.

Allow on existing page allows flows in the selected layouts to continue immediately after each other, including within the same music frame if there is sufficient space. Flow headings are automatically shown above the start of flows if you have chosen to show flow headings in the selected layouts.

NOTE

Flows are not automatically split into separate music frames. You must insert frame breaks manually to divide flows into separate music frames if required.

RELATED LINKS

Tokens on page 607
Casting off on page 581
Assigning flows to layouts on page 168
Assigning players to flows on page 164
Hiding/Showing information in running headers above flow headings on page 568
Hiding/Showing blank staves after final flows on page 564

Changing when the First page template is used

You can change the circumstances when the **First** page template is used in each layout independently; for example, if you want to use it for the start of every flow in the full score but only want to use it for the first flow in part layouts, even when subsequent flows start at the top of the page.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-L** to open **Layout Options**.
2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to change when the **First** page template is used.

   By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar, clicking and dragging across multiple layouts, **Shift**-clicking adjacent layouts, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking individual layouts.
3. In the category list, click **Page Setup**.
4. In the **Flows** section, choose one of the following options for **Use 'First' page template**:
   - **Never**
   - **First flow only**

- **Any flow starting at top of page**

5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

- Choosing **Never** means the **First** page template is not used for any page in the selected layouts.
- Choosing **First flow only** means the **First** page template is used for the first page in the layout but no other pages, even if some subsequent flows start at the top of a page.
- Choosing **Any flow starting at top of page** means the **First** page template is used for all pages in the layout that begin with the start of a flow.

RELATED LINKS
Layout Options dialog on page 677
Types of page templates on page 601

Hiding/Showing flow headings

You can hide/show flow headings in each layout independently; for example, if your project only contains a single flow and you only want to show the project title. You can also hide the heading for the first flow but show flow headings for subsequent flows.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-L** to open **Layout Options**.
2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to hide/show flow headings.

   By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar, clicking and dragging across multiple layouts, **Shift**-clicking adjacent layouts, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking individual layouts.
3. In the category list, click **Page Setup**.
4. In the **Flows** section, choose one of the following options for **Show flow headings**:
   - **Never**
   - **Not for first flow**
   - **For all flows**
5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

Flow headings are shown above the first system in each flow in the selected layouts when you choose **For all flows**, hidden when you choose **Never**, and hidden above the first system in the first flow but shown above all other flows when you choose **Not for first flow**.

They are automatically positioned above each flow and below the preceding flow according to the margins set for each layout.

NOTE

Hiding flow headings does not hide the flow title shown at the top of the second page onwards by default.

RELATED LINKS
Flow headings on page 603
Allowing/Disallowing multiple flows on the same page on page 565
Hiding/Showing information in running headers above flow headings on page 568
Changing when the First page template is used on page 566

Hiding/Showing information in running headers above flow headings

You can hide/show flow titles, page numbers, and flow page numbers separately when they appear above flow headings at the top of a new page in each layout independently. Hiding such information in running headers is a custom in publishing.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-L** to open **Layout Options**.
2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to hide/show information in running headers above flow headings.

   By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar, clicking and dragging across multiple layouts, **Shift**-clicking adjacent layouts, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking individual layouts.
3. In the category list, click **Page Setup**.
4. In the **Flows** section, choose one of the following options for **Flow title in header**:
   - **Show above flow heading**
   - **Hide above flow heading**
5. Choose one of the following options for **Page number in header**:
   - **Show above flow heading**
   - **Hide above flow heading**
6. Choose one of the following options for **Flow page number in header**:
   - **Show above flow heading**
   - **Hide above flow heading**
7. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

The corresponding information is hidden/shown when they appear above flow headings at the top of the page.

NOTE

In order to hide running header information, the top of the music frame containing the flow heading frame must be lower than the top of text frames containing the corresponding information. If the top of the music frame is the same height as a running header text frame, any corresponding information in the text frame is shown, regardless of your setting.

RELATED LINKS
Frames on page 605
Page templates on page 599

Hiding/Showing page numbers on page 1034

Changing the horizontal justification of final systems

You can change whether the final systems of flows always fill the width of frames or only do so above a certain fullness threshold in each layout independently. By default in Dorico Elements, the final systems of flows only justify to the full width of the frame when they are more than half full.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-L** to open **Layout Options**.
2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to change the justification of the final systems in flows.

   By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar, clicking and dragging across multiple layouts, **Shift**-clicking adjacent layouts, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking individual layouts.
3. In the category list, click **Note Spacing**.
4. Change the justification of final systems in flows in one of the following ways:
   - If you always want the final systems in flows to justify fully, deactivate **Only justify final system in flow when more than [n]% full**.
   - If you want to change the minimum fullness of final systems before they justify, change the value for **Only justify final system in flow when more than [n]% full**.
5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

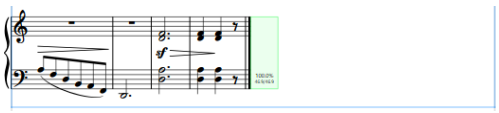
RESULT

The automatic justification of the final systems in flows in the selected layouts is changed.

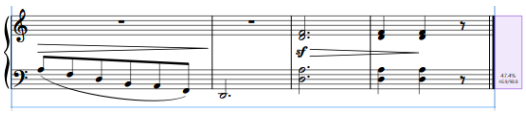
TIP

You can also change the width of individual systems independently of your default settings by changing their start/end positions.

EXAMPLE



Final system below fullness threshold, unjustified



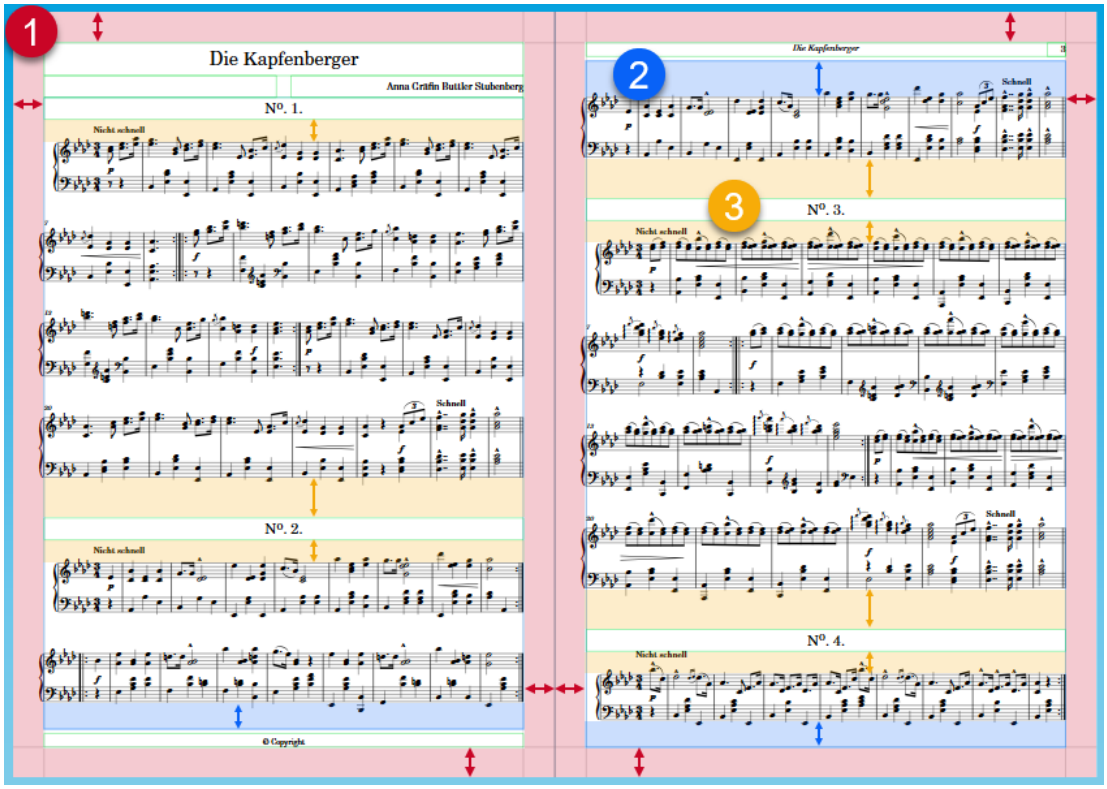
Final system justified

RELATED LINKS

Note spacing on page 579
Changing the first system indent on page 1198
Fixing the number of bars per system on page 582
Hiding/Showing blank staves after final flows on page 564
Hiding/Showing bar rests in empty bars on page 1150
Deleting rests on page 1149

Margins

Margins determine the spacing around music on pages, such as on all four edges of each page and above/below flow headings.



In Dorico Elements, there are the following types of margins:

1 **Page margins**

The gaps between the four edges of pages and the boundary of the content on them. For example, systems that are horizontally justified span the full width of pages between the left and right page margins. You cannot position frames beyond the page margins.

2 **Music frame margins**

The gaps at the top and bottom of music frames. Also known as “music frame padding”.

- Top music frame margins set the gap between the top edges of music frames and the top staff line of the highest staff in the frame.
- Bottom music frame margins set the gap between the bottom edges of music frames and the bottom staff line of the lowest staff in the frame.

3 **Flow heading margins**

The gaps above and below flow headings. When flow headings are positioned at the top of music frames, the flow heading bottom margin sets the gap at the top of the music frame, rather than the music frame margin.

- Flow heading top margins set the gap between the top of flow headings and the bottom staff line of the preceding flow, if applicable.
- Flow heading bottom margins set the gap between the bottom of flow headings and the top staff line of the next flow.

NOTE

Notes and notations above the highest staff and below the lowest staff extend into margins.

RELATED LINKS

Flow headings on page 603
Changing page margins on page 557
Changing the margins above/below tacets on page 594
Changing the page size and/or orientation on page 556
Changing the default staff/system spacing on page 559
Changing the vertical justification of staves/systems on page 560
Changing the horizontal justification of final systems on page 569
System fullness indicators on page 480
Frame fullness indicators on page 480

Changing the margins above/below flow headings

You can change the margins both above and below flow headings, which control the gap between the preceding flow and the flow heading, and the gap between the flow heading and the start of the next flow.

PREREQUISITE

Flow headings are shown in the layouts in which you want to change the margins above/below flow headings.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-L** to open **Layout Options**.
2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to change the margins above/below flow headings.

   By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar, clicking and dragging across multiple layouts, **Shift**-clicking adjacent layouts, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking individual layouts.
3. In the category list, click **Page Setup**.
4. In the **Flows** section, change the values for the following options, individually or together:
   - **Flow heading top margin**
   - **Flow heading bottom margin**
5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

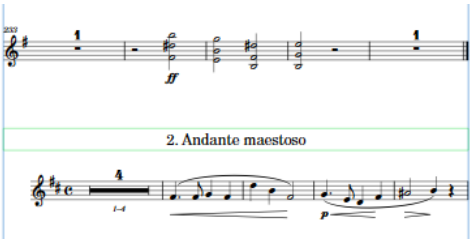
RESULT

The margins above/below flow headings in the selected layouts are changed.

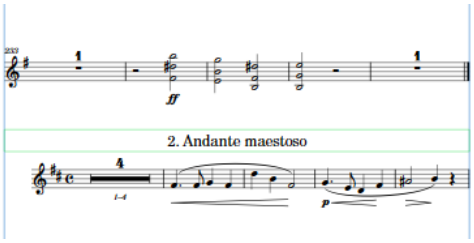
- **Flow heading top margin** sets the gap between the top of flow headings and the end of the preceding flow.
- **Flow heading bottom margin** sets the gap between the bottom of flow headings and the start of the next flow.

For example, when the bottom margin is set to **0**, the bottom of the lowest frame in the flow heading aligns with the top staff line of the first system in the flow below the flow heading.

EXAMPLE



Flow heading with default margins above/below



Flow heading with decreased margins above/below

RELATED LINKS

Flow headings on page 603
Per-layout vertical spacing options on page 577
Hiding/Showing used chord diagrams grids on page 809
Changing the margins above/below tacets on page 594

Changing the default music frame margins

You can change the default margins in all music frames in each layout independently. For example, you might want more padding at the top of music frames in part layouts containing lots of notes above the staff.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-L** to open **Layout Options**.
2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts whose music frame margins you want to change.

   By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar, clicking and dragging across multiple layouts, **Shift**-clicking adjacent layouts, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking individual layouts.
3. In the category list, click **Page Setup**.
4. In the **Music Frame Margins** section, change the values for the following options, individually or together:
   - **Top**
   - **Bottom**
5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

The margins within all music frames in the selected layouts are changed.

- **Top** sets the gap between the top edges of music frames and the top staff line of the highest staff in the frame.
- **Bottom** sets the gap between the bottom edges of music frames and the bottom staff line of the lowest staff in the frame.

For example, when the bottom music frame margin is set to **0**, the bottom staff line of the lowest staff in the frame aligns with the bottom edge of the music frame.

NOTE

Notes and notations above the highest staff and below the lowest staff extend into music frame margins.

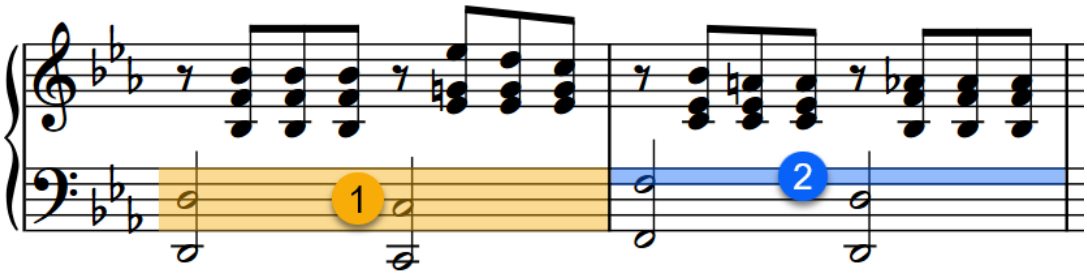
RELATED LINKS
Changing page margins on page 557
Changing the default staff/system spacing on page 559
Hiding/Showing used chord diagrams grids on page 809

Staff size

Staff size refers to the distance between the top and bottom lines of staves, and can be expressed as a point size or in another supported unit of measurement, such as millimeters. For individual staves, you can use a scale size of the default staff size in the layout. The most appropriate staff size depends on the intended purpose of the layout.

For example, full orchestral scores that are quite dense need a much smaller staff size than individual parts, which require large enough notes so that performers can read them easily. Staves can overlap and the music can become illegible if the staff size is too large in dense scores.

In Dorico Elements, you can set the staff size using the rastral size and the space size, depending on which measurement is more appropriate for the selected layouts.



1 Rastral size is the size of the full staff, measured from the bottom line to the top line.

2 Space size is the distance between two staff lines.

When changing the staff size of each layout in **Layout Options**, we recommend that you use one of the preset rastral sizes, as these are based on traditional and generally accepted staff sizes that are all widely used in music engraving.

NOTE

The size of staves can affect the size of system objects.

RELATED LINKS
System objects on page 1196
Changing your preferred unit of measurement on page 51
Changing the default staff size on page 559
Staff spacing on page 576

Changing the staff size from system/frame breaks

You can change the staff size of all staves from the rhythmic position of system/frame breaks onwards in layouts. For example, you can have smaller staves only on pages with more staves, and larger staves on other pages with fewer staves.

NOTE

If the size of system object font styles is set to **Staff-relative**, the staff size of the top staff in each instrument family group affects the size of system objects if they are shown above that bracketed group. Font styles that are set to **Absolute** are unaffected by staff size.

PREREQUISITE

- You have inserted system/frame breaks at the positions from which you want to change the staff size.
- Signposts are shown for system/frame breaks.
- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the system/frame break signposts from which you want to change the staff size.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Space size** in the **Format** group.
3. Change the value in the value field.

RESULT

The staff size of all staves in the layout is changed until the next change in staff size or the end of the flow, whichever comes first. Increasing **Space size** increases the staff size. Decreasing the value decreases the staff size.

By default, the next flow uses the default staff size in the layout.

RELATED LINKS

Changing the default staff size on page 559
Inserting system breaks on page 586
Inserting frame breaks on page 590
Hiding/Showing system break signposts on page 588
Hiding/Showing frame break signposts on page 592

Changing the size of staves for individual players

You can change the size of all staves belonging to individual players in each flow, independently of other players' staves and your layout settings. For example, piano accompaniment parts often include the solo line of the instrument the piano is accompanying on a smaller staff.

You can change the size of staves to a set scale size, expressed as a percentage of the normal staff size in the layout, or set a custom scale.

TIP

If you want to change the staff size to represent an alternative version of a passage, you can instead add an ossia staff, which you can show for specific regions.

PROCEDURE

1. Select an item on the staff whose size you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.

   NOTE

   You can only change the size of a single staff at a time.

2. Choose **Edit** > **Notations** > **Staff Size** > **[Staff size]**. You can also choose this option from the context menu.
3. Optional: If you chose **Custom Staff Size**, set the staff size in the **Custom Staff Size** dialog that opens.

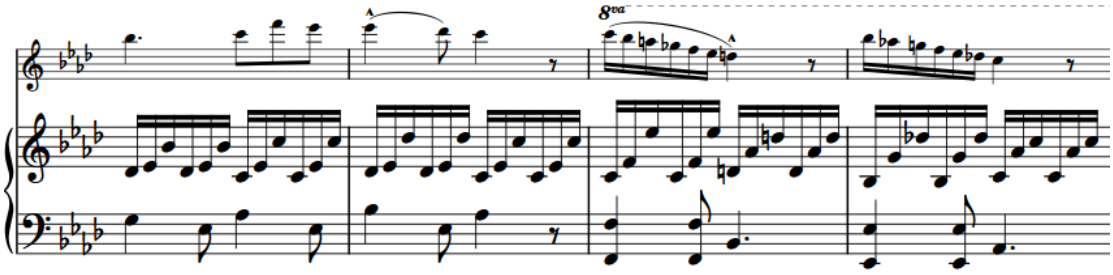
RESULT

The size of the selected staff is changed in the current flow. This also works in combination with the other ways of changing the staff size, such as changing the size of all staves in the layout or changing the size of staves from specific system/frame breaks.

NOTE

- Changing the size of individual staves affects all staves belonging to the same player and for the whole flow.
- If the size of system object font styles is set to **Staff-relative**, the staff size of the top staff in each instrument family group affects the size of system objects if they are shown above that bracketed group. Font styles that are set to **Absolute** are unaffected by staff size.

EXAMPLE



A piano part with smaller staff above

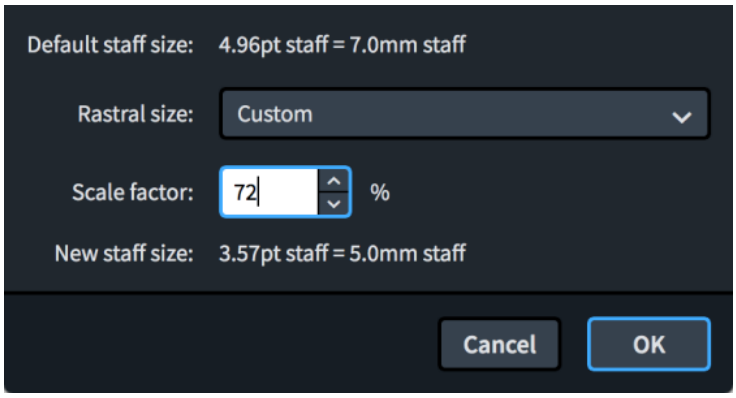
RELATED LINKS

Brackets and braces on page 776
System objects on page 1196

Custom Staff Size dialog

The **Custom Staff Size** dialog allows you to change the size of individual staves by a custom scale factor.

- You can open the **Custom Staff Size** dialog by selecting an item on a staff and choosing **Edit** > **Notations** > **Staff Size** > **Custom Staff Size**.



The **Custom Staff Size** dialog contains the following options:

Default staff size

Displays the default size of staves in the current layout. This size is set on the **Page Setup** page in **Layout Options**.

The default staff size is expressed as both a point size and in your preferred unit of measurement.

Rastral size

Allows you to select the rastral size on which you want to base your custom staff size.

Scale factor

Sets the custom staff size, expressed as a percentage of the selected rastral size.

New staff size

Displays the new custom staff size for the selected staff as a result of the changes you have made in the dialog.

The new staff size is expressed as both a point size and in your preferred unit of measurement.

Staff spacing

The vertical positioning of staves and systems within frames is known as staff spacing. Staff spacing calculations consider the height of staves and the necessary gaps between staves and systems.

- You can change the default vertical and staff spacing settings for each layout independently on the **Vertical Spacing** page in **Layout Options**.

The options available allow you to set your ideal spacing, which Dorico Elements then produces as closely as possible. We recommend familiarizing yourself with the available vertical spacing options.

RELATED LINKS
Layout Options dialog on page 677
Staff size on page 573
Staves on page 1192
Frame fullness indicators on page 480
Changing the default staff/system spacing on page 559
Changing the staff spacing in galley view on page 579
Changing the default staff size on page 559
Margins on page 570
Casting off on page 581

Frame breaks on page 589
Making selections into frames on page 591
Fixing the number of systems per frame on page 583
Note spacing on page 579

Per-layout vertical spacing options

Dorico Elements provides multiple options that you can use to control the default vertical spacing and justification of staves and systems in each layout.

- You can access per-layout vertical spacing options by opening the **Layout Options** dialog and clicking **Vertical Spacing** in the category list.

The **Vertical Spacing** page contains the following sections and options:

Ideal Gaps

Contains multiple scenarios that allow you to set the gap you want Dorico Elements to allow between staves and systems in the corresponding context, including the default scaling of these gaps in galley view, as Dorico Elements does not automatically avoid collisions between staves and items in galley view. The options are accompanied by diagrams to help you visualize the contexts to which each option applies.

We recommend setting the ideal gaps to the minimum value acceptable to you because Dorico Elements never reduces the gap between staves to less than your set values. Setting smaller values gives Dorico Elements greater flexibility when determining staff spacing, particularly in very full frames, such as reducing the space between staves with no dynamics to allow more space between staves with dynamics. Similarly, we recommend setting vertical spacing options after you have finished inputting notes and items, as this allows you to consider the entire project when setting these options.

Depending on the context, the options are affected by automatic vertical justification in different ways:

- **Staff to staff**, **Staff group to staff**, **Staff to staff group**, **Staff group to staff group**, **Inter-system gap**, and **Timecode staff to staff**

  These gaps do not apply in frames that are automatically justified.

- **Braced staff to braced staff** and **Ossia staff to staff**

  These gaps always apply, including in frames that are automatically justified, because braced and ossia staves are never justified. This includes extra staves.

NOTE

- Divisi staves are vertically justified when they use the **Staff to staff** gap. When they use the **Braced staff to braced staff** gap, the staves in each divisi section use only the gap set for braced staves and are not vertically justified.
- If the staves in a layout are very close together, just decreasing the staff size might be sufficient to produce good results.
- When calculating the number of systems that can fit in each frame in a layout, Dorico Elements considers the height of staves, the minimum gaps between staves, the maximum distances between very high/low notes and staves, and other items that require vertical space, such as pedal lines and tempo marks. However, this calculation happens before horizontal spacing is finalized, which can result in either more or fewer systems being allocated to frames than ideally fit. In such circumstances, you can use fixed casting off settings and system/frame breaks to change which systems appear in frames.

Minimum Gaps

Contains options for the minimum gaps you want Dorico Elements to allow for items in addition to the staff spacing gaps.

- **Automatically resolve collisions between adjacent staves and systems**: When activated, Dorico Elements automatically allows extra space between staves and systems to avoid collisions. When deactivated, Dorico Elements only uses your set gaps for vertical spacing, which produces evenly-spaced staves and systems but with the possibility of collisions between items.
- **Minimum inter-staff gap with content**: Allows you to set the extra space you want to allow between staves when items are present.
- **Minimum inter-system gap with content**: Allows you to set the extra space you want to allow between systems when items are present.

NOTE

Minimum gaps do not affect casting off. For example, increasing the **Minimum inter-system gap with content** value changes the space above/below systems on a page but does not push systems to later pages. Instead, you can change the ideal gaps.

Vertical Justification

Contains options that allow you to control the frame fullness thresholds above which you want staves and/or systems to justify vertically automatically.

- **Justify distance between staves and systems when frame is at least [n]% full**: When frames are filled above this threshold, the staves and systems they contain are all automatically vertically justified, meaning they are evenly distributed to fill the height of the frame. Frames filled below this threshold are not automatically justified, instead staves follow your ideal gap settings. This can leave gaps between the bottom staff/system and the bottom of the frame.
- **Justify distance only between systems when frame is at least [n]% full**: When frames are filled above this threshold, only the distance between systems in the frame is justified. Staves follow your per-layout ideal gap settings. This helps keep a clear distance between systems on very full pages.
- **Justify staves when frame with single system is above this threshold**: When activated, all the staves in a single system taller than the set threshold are vertically justified, which distributes them evenly to fill the height of the frame.

Staff Visibility

Contains options allowing you to control when and which empty staves are hidden in the layout.

- **Hide empty staves**: Allows you to control when empty staves are hidden. For example, it is a common practice to show all staves in the first system even if some are empty, but this is not always required.
- **Allow individual staves of multi-staff instruments to be hidden**: Allows you to control whether individual empty staves belonging to multi-staff instruments can be hidden independently or all multi-staff instrument staves must always be shown.
- **Players excluded from Hide Empty Staves**: Allows you to identify specific players whose staves you always want to show, even if their staff is empty on systems where you have hidden empty staves.

RELATED LINKS
Layout Options dialog on page 677
Changing the default staff/system spacing on page 559
Frame fullness indicators on page 480
Page formatting on page 555
Casting off on page 581
Margins on page 570
Staff size on page 573
Brackets and braces on page 776
Staves on page 1192
Ossia staves on page 1194
Tablature on page 1200
Hiding/Showing staves from system/frame breaks on page 562
Making selections into systems on page 587
Making selections into frames on page 591
Changing the vertical position of markers on page 1100
Changing the vertical position of timecodes on page 1104

Changing the staff spacing in galley view

You can change the vertical space between staves in galley view in each layout independently, expressed as a percentage of the set ideal gaps. Increasing the gaps between staves in layouts with very high/low notes can be useful because Dorico Elements does not perform automatic collision avoidance in galley view.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-L** to open **Layout Options**.
2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to change the staff spacing in galley view.

   By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar, clicking and dragging across multiple layouts, **Shift**-clicking adjacent layouts, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking individual layouts.
3. In the category list, click **Vertical Spacing**.
4. In the **Ideal Gaps** section, change the value for **In galley view, expand ideal staff gaps to**.
5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RELATED LINKS
Instrument filters on page 421
Switching to galley/page view on page 50
Switching between layouts on page 43

Note spacing

The positions of notes and rests relative to each other, and the automatic gaps between them, are known as note spacing.

- You can change the default note spacing values for each layout independently on the **Note Spacing** page in **Layout Options**.

The options available include changing the default space for quarter notes (crotchets) and the scale space for grace notes and cues. You can also change the minimum percentage value for how full final systems must be before they are justified.

RELATED LINKS
Layout Options dialog on page 677
Staff spacing on page 576
Changing the default staff size on page 559
Changing the horizontal justification of final systems on page 569

Changing the default note spacing

You can change the default note spacing in each layout independently. For example, you can have tighter note spacing in full score layouts compared to part layouts. The options available include changing the default space for quarter notes and the scale space for grace notes and cues.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-L** to open **Layout Options**.
2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to change note spacing.

   By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar, clicking and dragging across multiple layouts, **Shift**-clicking adjacent layouts, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking individual layouts.
3. In the category list, click **Note Spacing**.
4. Change the values of the options you want to change.
5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

The default note spacing is changed in the selected layouts.

RELATED LINKS
Changing the horizontal justification of final systems on page 569
Positions of lyrics on page 925
Casting off on page 581
Locking layouts on page 584

Per-layout note spacing options

Dorico Elements provides multiple options that you can use to control the default note spacing in each layout. You can also change how full the final system in flows must be before it is automatically justified.

- You can access per-layout note spacing options by opening the **Layout Options** dialog and clicking **Note Spacing** in the category list.

The **Note Spacing** page in **Layout Options** contains the following options:

Default space for crotchet/quarter note

Sets the default note spacing for quarter notes (crotchets). The spacing of other durations is scaled proportionally. Increasing the value increases note spacing,

decreasing the value decreases note spacing. This is reflected in the preview as you change the value.

Minimum space for short notes

Sets the minimum note spacing for notes with short durations. This can be independent of the default note spacing value.

Custom spacing ratio

Sets the spacing of notes in relation to other notes according to their rhythmic values. For example, setting **Custom spacing ratio** to **2** means half notes (minims) take up twice as much space as quarter notes, and eighth notes (quavers) take up half as much space as quarter notes.

Scale space for grace notes by

Sets the note spacing for grace notes as a percentage of the note spacing normally used for notes of their duration. The value cannot be greater than 100%. Increasing the value increases the note spacing for grace notes, decreasing the value decreases the note spacing for grace notes.

Scale space for cue notes by

Sets the note spacing for cues as a percentage of the note spacing normally used for notes of their duration. The value cannot be greater than 100%. Increasing the value increases the note spacing for cues, decreasing the value decreases the note spacing for cues.

Make space for lyrics

Controls whether or not lyrics are included in note spacing calculations. When deactivated, lyrics are excluded from note spacing calculations, producing a result where notes are spaced as if lyrics were not there.

We recommend using this option with caution and only if you intend to space lyrics manually, such as in tightly-spaced hymnals.

Only justify final system in flow when more than [n]% full

Allows you to change how full the final system in each flow must be before it is justified to the full width of the frame. By default, final systems that are 50% full or less are not justified.

Use optical spacing for beams between staves

When activated, stems in cross-staff beams are evenly spaced, which can mean the noteheads are unevenly spaced. When deactivated, noteheads in cross-staff beams are evenly spaced, which can mean stems appear unevenly spaced.

RELATED LINKS
Layout Options dialog on page 677
Changing to optical cross-staff beam spacing on page 766
Creating cross-staff beams/tremolos on page 764
Changing the paragraph style used for lyrics on page 934

Casting off

“Casting off” is the term used to encompass fixing the layout of pages of music, such as setting the number of systems per page.

When calculating how much music can fit in each system and on each page, Dorico Elements considers multiple aspects of the layout, including note spacing and vertical spacing settings. You can change these settings to change the default casting off in each layout.

In Dorico Elements, you can set fixed numbers of bars per system and systems per music frame throughout each layout independently.

You can control the casting off at a more granular level by moving bars to other systems, inserting system/frame breaks, making selections into systems/frames, and locking/resetting the casting off in the current layout.

RELATED LINKS
Per-layout note spacing options on page 580
Per-layout vertical spacing options on page 577
Moving bars to other systems on page 583
Locking layouts on page 584
Resetting casting off on page 585
Margins on page 570
System breaks on page 586
Frame breaks on page 589
Allowing/Disallowing breaks within bars on page 585
Splitting multi-bar rests on page 1154
Hiding/Showing blank staves after final flows on page 564

Fixing the number of bars per system

You can define a fixed number of bars you want included in each system in each layout independently; for example, if you want four bars per system in a lead sheet.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-L** to open **Layout Options**.
2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to fix the number of bars per system.

   By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar, clicking and dragging across multiple layouts, **Shift**-clicking adjacent layouts, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking individual layouts.
3. In the category list, click **Staves and Systems**.
4. In the **Casting Off** section, activate **Fixed number of bars per system**.
5. Change the value in the value field.
6. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

The number of bars automatically contained in each system in the selected layouts is changed. If any of the layouts contain two-bar or four-bar repeat regions, Dorico Elements automatically adjusts casting off to ensure phrases are not split across systems.

RELATED LINKS
Bar repeats on page 1120
Inserting system breaks on page 586
Inserting frame breaks on page 590
Changing the horizontal justification of final systems on page 569

Fixing the number of systems per frame

You can define a fixed number of systems you want included in each music frame in each layout independently. Because the default page templates have a single music frame per page, fixing the number of systems per frame usually fixes the number of systems per page.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-L** to open **Layout Options**.
2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to fix the number of systems per frame.

   By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar, clicking and dragging across multiple layouts, **Shift**-clicking adjacent layouts, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking individual layouts.
3. In the category list, click **Staves and Systems**.
4. In the **Casting Off** section, activate **Fixed number of systems per frame**.
5. Change the value in the value field.
6. Activate/Deactivate **Scale number of systems by frame height**.
7. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

The number of systems automatically contained in each music frame in the selected layouts is changed.

If you activated **Scale number of systems by frame height**, the number of systems contained in each frame is adjusted according to the size of the music frame. For example, pages with smaller frames, such as the first page, contain fewer systems than your casting off setting.

Moving bars to other systems

You can move bars to the next or previous system; for example, if you want specific bars to appear in the same system.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select an item in the bar you want to move to another system.

   For example, select an item in the earliest bar you want to move to the next system, or select an item in the last bar you want to move to the previous system.
2. Move bars to another system in one of the following ways:
   - To move all bars between the start of the current system and the selection to the previous system, press **,** or click **Move to Previous System** ↕ in the **Move Bars Between Systems** section of the Formatting panel.
   - To move all bars between the selection and the end of their current system to the next system, press **.** or click **Move to Next System** ↕ in the **Move Bars Between Systems** section of the Formatting panel.

RESULT

The selected bars are moved to the previous or next system. System breaks are inserted at the start and end of each new system.

NOTE

- System breaks inserted at the start of systems have **Wait for next system break** activated in the **Format** group of the Properties panel by default. Because this property tells Dorico Elements to include all music in the system until the next system break or the end of the flow, if you later delete subsequent system breaks, this can create very full, tightly spaced systems.
- You can change how many systems are locked as a consequence of moving bars to other systems in **Preferences** > **Note Input and Editing** > **Note Input** > **Breaks**.

RELATED LINKS
Making selections into frames on page 591
Making selections into systems on page 587
Properties panel on page 615
Preferences dialog on page 58

Locking layouts

You can lock the current casting off throughout individual layouts.

PREREQUISITE

The left zone is shown.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, open the layout whose casting off you want to lock.
2. In the Formatting panel, click **Lock Layout** in the **Lock Layout** section.

RESULT

System and frame breaks are inserted at the start of every system as required to lock the current casting off in the layout open in the music area.

NOTE

- The system and frame breaks have **Wait for next system break** and **Wait for next frame break** activated in the **Format** group of the Properties panel by default. Because this property tells Dorico Elements to include all music in the system until the next system break, frame break, or the end of the flow, if you later delete subsequent system or frame breaks, this can create very full, tightly spaced systems.
- You can assign a key command for **Lock Layout** on the **Key Commands** page in **Preferences**.

RELATED LINKS
Formatting panel on page 478
Hiding/Showing zones on page 44
Switching between layouts on page 43
System breaks on page 586
Frame breaks on page 589
Casting off on page 581
Properties panel on page 615
Key Commands page in the Preferences dialog on page 59

Resetting casting off

You can delete all system and frame breaks in individual layouts and return the layouts to their default casting off and spacing settings.

PREREQUISITE

The left zone is shown.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, open the layout whose casting off you want to reset.
2. In the Formatting panel, click **Reset Layout** in the **Lock Layout** section.

RESULT

All system and frame breaks in the layout open in the music area are deleted. The layout returns to following its default casting off and spacing settings.

NOTE

- The system and frame breaks have **Wait for next system break** and **Wait for next frame break** activated in the **Format** group of the Properties panel by default. Because this property tells Dorico Elements to include all music in the system until the next system break, frame break, or the end of the flow, if you later delete subsequent system or frame breaks, this can create very full, tightly spaced systems.
- You can assign a key command for **Reset Layout** on the **Key Commands** page in **Preferences**.

Allowing/Disallowing breaks within bars

You can choose whether or not to allow Dorico Elements to insert system/frame breaks within bars. For example, you might disallow breaks within bars when formatting lead sheets that only require breaks at barlines.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-,** to open **Preferences**.
2. In the category list, click **Note Input and Editing**.
3. In the **Note Input** section, activate/deactivate **Snap system and frame breaks to barlines when creating** in the **Breaks** subsection.
4. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

System/Frame breaks are allowed within bars when the option is activated, and disallowed when it is deactivated.

When breaks are disallowed within bars, inserted breaks snap to the barline before the earliest selected item. When making systems/frames from selections, the first break snaps to the barline before the earliest selected item while the second break snaps to the barline after the last selected item.

RELATED LINKS

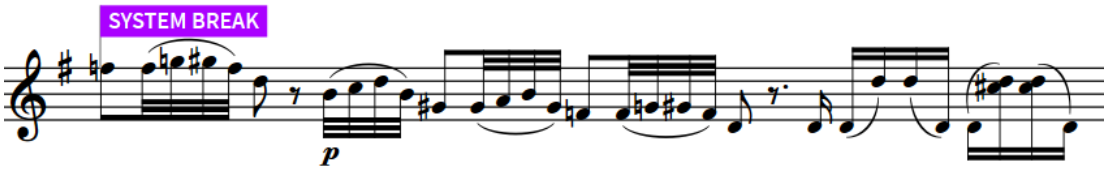
Preferences dialog on page 58
Frame breaks on page 589

Casting off on page 581

System breaks

System breaks occur when musical material reaches the right page margin and must continue on a new system, usually below the previous system on the same page or on a new page. Dorico Elements automatically arranges music across systems so that notes are correctly spaced and legible, but you can also control system breaks manually.

System breaks that you have inserted manually are indicated by signposts, which you can hide/show at any time. They are also layout-specific, meaning each layout can have system breaks at different rhythmic positions.



System break signpost, selected

NOTE

- By default, system/frame breaks snap to the barline before the earliest selected item. You can change whether breaks are allowed at rhythmic positions within bars.
- You can also control the content of systems by fixing the number of bars per system in each layout.

RELATED LINKS

Allowing/Disallowing breaks within bars on page 585
Frame breaks on page 589
Signposts on page 426
Hiding non-printing elements on page 416
Note spacing on page 579
System fullness indicators on page 480
Per-layout note spacing options on page 580
Staff spacing on page 576
Per-layout vertical spacing options on page 577
Splitting multi-bar rests on page 1154
Hiding/Showing staves from system/frame breaks on page 562
Hiding/Showing staff labels at system/frame breaks on page 1183
Changing the staff size from system/frame breaks on page 574
Locking layouts on page 584
Resetting casting off on page 585
Properties panel on page 615

Inserting system breaks

You can insert system breaks at any rhythmic position; for example, so that musical phrases fit in systems for readability.

PREREQUISITE

- You have allowed/disallowed breaks within bars.

- If you want to insert system breaks in the middle of multi-bar rests, you have either hidden multi-bar rests in the layout or split multi-bar rests at the required positions.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select a note or item at the rhythmic position you want to appear at the start of the next system.
2. Insert a system break in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Shift-S**.
   - In the Formatting panel, click **Create System Break** in the **Format Systems** section.
3. Choose **Edit** > **System Break**.

RESULT

A system break is inserted at the rhythmic position of the earliest selected item. If breaks are disallowed within bars, it snaps to the preceding barline. All notations after the system break are moved to the next system.

NOTE

If you insert a system break in the middle of a phrase in a two-bar or four-bar repeat region, Dorico Elements does not automatically move the system break to before/after the phrase, causing it to be split across the system break.

RELATED LINKS

Formatting panel on page 478
Allowing/Disallowing breaks within bars on page 585
Per-layout note spacing options on page 580
Per-layout vertical spacing options on page 577
Hiding/Showing multi-bar rests on page 1152
Splitting multi-bar rests on page 1154
Locking layouts on page 584

Making selections into systems

You can force all musical material between two selected rhythmic positions into a single system; for example, if you want specific bars to appear in the same system.

PREREQUISITE

- You have allowed/disallowed breaks within bars.
- The left zone is shown.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select an item at the rhythmic position that you want to be the start of the system.

   NOTE

   We recommend that you select noteheads or barlines. Selecting other items, such as slurs, can cause system breaks to be inserted earlier/later than you might have intended.

2. **Ctrl/Cmd**-click one of the following:

- A notehead that you want to be at the end of the system
- An item that you want to be at the start of the next system

3. In the **Format Systems** section of the Formatting panel, click **Make into System**.

RESULT

A fixed system is created by inserting system breaks at the start/end of your selection. The system contains all musical material between the two selected items.

If breaks are disallowed within bars, the first break snaps to the barline before the earliest selected item, while the second break snaps to the barline after the last selected item.

If breaks are allowed within bars, the content of the system depends on your selections.

- If you selected items, such as barlines or slurs, the start of your first selected item is positioned at the start of the system, and the end of your last selected item is positioned at the start of the next system.
- If you selected noteheads, the last selected notehead is also included in the system, rather than being positioned at the start of the next system.
- If you selected ties, all musical material between the first and last notes tie chains is included in the system, regardless of where in the tie chains you made selections.

NOTE

The system break inserted at the start of the selection has **Wait for next system break** activated in the **Format** group of the Properties panel by default. Because this property tells Dorico Elements to include all music in the system until the next system break or the end of the flow, if you later delete subsequent system breaks, this can create very full, tightly spaced systems.

Deactivating **Wait for next system break** allows Dorico Elements to cast off subsequent music as normal.

RELATED LINKS

Formatting panel on page 478
Hiding/Showing zones on page 44
Allowing/Disallowing breaks within bars on page 585
System fullness indicators on page 480
Locking layouts on page 584
Properties panel on page 615

Hiding/Showing system break signposts

You can hide/show system break signposts at any time.

PROCEDURE

- Choose **View** > **Signposts** > **System Breaks**.

RELATED LINKS

Signposts on page 426
System breaks on page 586
Hiding non-printing elements on page 416
Selecting/Deselecting notes and items individually on page 401

Deleting system breaks

You can delete system breaks after you have inserted them.

PREREQUISITE

System break signposts are shown.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the system break signposts of the system breaks you want to delete.
2. Press **Backspace or Delete**.

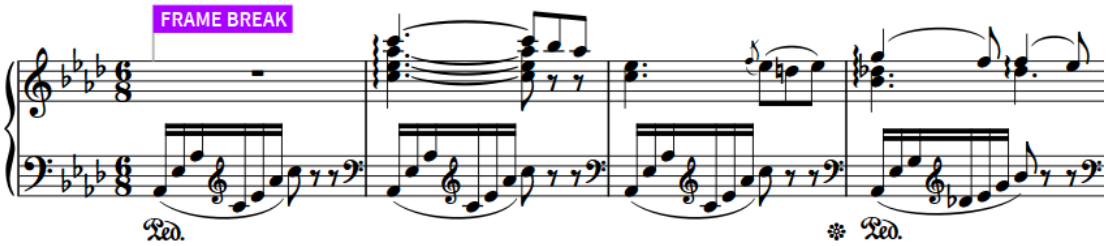
RELATED LINKS

Resetting casting off on page 585

Frame breaks

Frame breaks occur when musical material reaches the right page margin at the bottom of a frame and must continue on a new system in the next frame in the music frame chain, which is usually on the next page. Dorico Elements automatically arranges music in frames so that systems are correctly spaced and legible, but you can also control frame breaks manually; for example, to insert page turns at specific positions in part layouts.

Frame breaks that you have inserted manually are indicated by signposts, which you can hide/show at any time. They are also layout-specific, meaning each layout can have frame breaks at different rhythmic positions.



Frame break signpost, selected

NOTE

- By default, system/frame breaks snap to the barline before the earliest selected item. You can change whether breaks are allowed at rhythmic positions within bars.
- You can also control the content of music frames by fixing the number of systems per music frame in each layout.

RELATED LINKS

Allowing/Disallowing breaks within bars on page 585
Frames on page 605
Music frame chains on page 613
Signposts on page 426
Hiding non-printing elements on page 416
Note spacing on page 579
Per-layout note spacing options on page 580
Per-layout vertical spacing options on page 577
Frame fullness indicators on page 480

Hiding/Showing staves from system/frame breaks on page 562
Hiding/Showing staff labels at system/frame breaks on page 1183
Changing the staff size from system/frame breaks on page 574
Locking layouts on page 584
Resetting casting off on page 585
Properties panel on page 615

Inserting frame breaks

You can insert frame breaks at any rhythmic position; for example, to create page turns at appropriate places in the current layout.

PREREQUISITE

- You have allowed/disallowed breaks within bars.
- If you want to insert frame breaks in the middle of multi-bar rests, you have either hidden multi-bar rests in the layout or split multi-bar rests at the required positions.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select a note or item at the rhythmic position you want to appear at the start of the next frame.
2. Insert a frame break in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Shift-F**.
   - In the Formatting panel, click **Create Frame Break** in the **Format Music Frames** section.
3. Choose **Edit** > **Frame Break**.

RESULT

A frame break is inserted at the rhythmic position of the earliest selected item. If breaks are disallowed within bars, it snaps to the preceding barline. All notations after the frame break are moved to the next music frame.

NOTE

If you insert a frame break in the middle of a phrase in a two-bar or four-bar repeat region, Dorico Elements does not automatically move the frame break to before/after the phrase, causing it to be split across the frame break.

RELATED LINKS

Allowing/Disallowing breaks within bars on page 585
Per-layout note spacing options on page 580
Per-layout vertical spacing options on page 577
Hiding/Showing multi-bar rests on page 1152
Splitting multi-bar rests on page 1154
Locking layouts on page 584

Making selections into frames

You can force all musical material between two selected rhythmic positions into a single frame; for example, if you want specific bars to appear on the same page.

PREREQUISITE

- You have allowed/disallowed breaks within bars.
- The left zone is shown.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select an item at the rhythmic position that you want to be the start of the frame.

   NOTE

   We recommend that you select noteheads or barlines. Selecting other items, such as slurs, can cause frame breaks to be inserted earlier/later than you might have intended.

2. **Ctrl/Cmd**-click one of the following:
   - A notehead that you want to be at the end of the frame
   - An item that you want to be at the start of the next frame
3. In the **Format Music Frames** section of the Formatting panel, click **Make into Frame**.

RESULT

A fixed frame is created by inserting frame breaks at the start/end of your selection. The frame contains all musical material between the two selected items.

If breaks are disallowed within bars, the first break snaps to the barline before the earliest selected item, while the second break snaps to the barline after the last selected item.

If breaks are allowed within bars, the content of the frame depends on your selections.

- If you selected items, such as barlines or slurs, the beginning your first selected item is positioned at the start of the frame, and the end of your last selected item is positioned at the start of the next frame.
- If you selected noteheads, the last selected notehead is also included in the frame, rather than being positioned at the start of the next frame.
- If you selected ties, all musical material between the first and last notes tie chains is included in the frame, regardless of where in the tie chains you made selections.

NOTE

The frame break inserted at the start of the selection has **Wait for next frame break** activated in the **Format** group of the Properties panel by default. Because this property tells Dorico Elements to include all music in the frame until the next frame break, if you later delete subsequent frame breaks, this can create very full frames with tightly spaced, or overlapping, systems.

Deactivating **Wait for next frame break** allows Dorico Elements to cast off subsequent music as normal.

Hiding/Showing frame break signposts

You can hide/show frame break signposts at any time.

PROCEDURE

- Choose **View** > **Signposts** > **Frame Breaks**.

RELATED LINKS
Signposts on page 426
Frame breaks on page 589
Hiding non-printing elements on page 416
Selecting/Deselecting notes and items individually on page 401

Deleting frame breaks

You can delete frame breaks after you have inserted them.

PREREQUISITE

Frame break signposts are shown.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the frame break signposts of the frame breaks you want to delete.
2. Press **Backspace or Delete**.

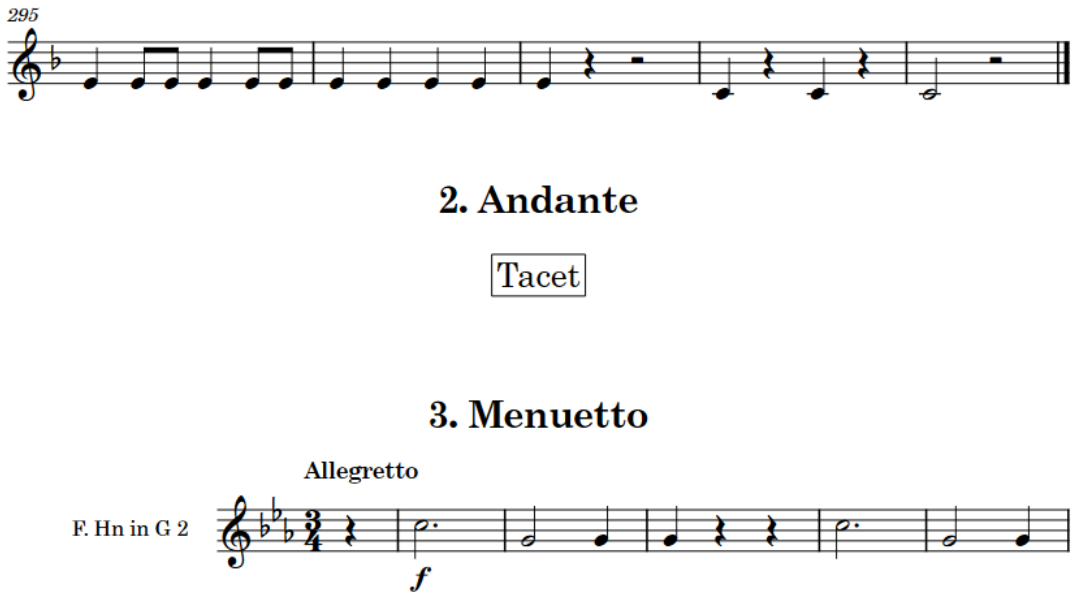
RELATED LINKS
Resetting casting off on page 585

Tacets

Tacet is the indication used to show that a player does not play anything in an entire flow, which might be a movement in a symphony or cue in a film score. In Dorico Elements, you can generate tacets automatically.

Dorico Elements shows tacets for flows in part layouts when the following conditions are met:

- You have removed the player from the flows in which they do not play.
- The flows are assigned to the part layout.
- The flows are assigned to the page template frame chain in the part layout.
- You have chosen to show tacets in the part layout.



An extract of a part layout where the player is tacet in the second flow

NOTE

We do not recommend that you use **Copy Staff Spacing** and **Lock Frame** on pages where tacets are the first or last system in frames. Because tacets do not contain any bars, Dorico Elements cannot insert system or frame breaks at the ends of tacets in order to lock the frame contents.

However, you can insert system and frame breaks at the start of tacets.

You can change the text shown in tacets and the margin above/below them in each layout independently.

RELATED LINKS
Assigning players to flows on page 164
Allowing/Disallowing multiple flows on the same page on page 565
Staff spacing on page 576
System breaks on page 586
Frame breaks on page 589
Flow headings on page 603

Hiding/Showing tacets

You can hide/show tacets in each layout independently; for example, if you want to show empty bars or multi-bar rests in some layouts to allow those players to add in notes on those staves later.

PREREQUISITE

- You have removed the player from the flows in which they do not play.
- The flows are assigned to the part layout.
- The flows are assigned to the page template frame chain in the part layout.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-L** to open **Layout Options**.

2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to hide/show tacets.

   By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar, clicking and dragging across multiple layouts, **Shift**-clicking adjacent layouts, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking individual layouts.

3. In the category list, click **Players**.
4. In the **Tacets** section, activate/deactivate **Show tacet for flows where no players are assigned**.
5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

Tacets are shown in the selected layouts when **Show tacet for flows where no players are assigned** is activated and the prerequisite criteria are also met.

When it is deactivated, any flows to which the player is not assigned do not appear in the layout. When the player is assigned to those flows, all bars in the flow are shown in the part, split into empty bars and multi-bar rests as appropriate for the flow.

RELATED LINKS

Multi-bar rests on page 1152
Assigning players to flows on page 164
Hiding/Showing multi-bar rests on page 1152

Editing tacet text

You can change the text shown in tacets in each layout independently.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-L** to open **Layout Options**.
2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts whose tacet text you want to edit.

   By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar, clicking and dragging across multiple layouts, **Shift**-clicking adjacent layouts, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking individual layouts.

3. In the category list, click **Players**.
4. In the **Tacets** section, enter the text you want in the **Tacet text** field.
5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

The text shown in all tacets in the selected layouts is changed.

Changing the margins above/below tacets

You can change the margins both above/below tacets in each layout independently; for example, if you want smaller gaps between flow headings and tacets in some layouts to facilitate page turns better.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-L** to open **Layout Options**.

2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to change the margins above/below tacets.

   By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar, clicking and dragging across multiple layouts, **Shift**-clicking adjacent layouts, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking individual layouts.

3. In the category list, click **Players**.
4. In the **Tacets** section, change the values for the following options, individually or together:
   - **Margin above tacet**
   - **Margin below tacet**
5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

Changing the value for **Margin above tacet** increases/decreases the minimum gap between tacets and whatever precedes them.

Changing the value for **Margin below tacet** increases/decreases the minimum gap between tacets and whatever follows them.

RELATED LINKS

Flow headings on page 603
Margins on page 570
Per-layout vertical spacing options on page 577

Condensing

Condensing is the process of showing the music for multiple players on fewer staves than normal, usually by allowing multiple instruments of the same type to share a staff, such as Flutes 1-2 or Horns 1-4.

In Dorico Elements, you cannot enable automatic condensing as it is only available in Dorico Pro. However, if you import or open a project that contains layouts with condensing enabled, those staves remain condensed.

NOTE

- You cannot select anything on condensed staves.
- Condensing is never enabled in galley view, so you can switch to galley view to see all staves separately. This does not disable condensing in the current layout.
- Having condensing enabled in any layout in a project can cause Dorico Elements to operate more slowly, due to the large number of calculations involved.

RELATED LINKS

Staff labels on condensed staves on page 1190
Switching to galley/page view on page 50
Divisi on page 1199

Part formatting propagation

The propagation of part formatting involves copying the layout options and system formatting that determine the layouts of pages in specific part layouts and applying them to other part layouts. This can save time when formatting similar parts.

System formatting includes the positions of system and frame breaks, but also note spacing changes that affect the horizontal space that notes require.

In Dorico Elements, you can copy layout options and system formatting both together and independently of each other from a selected source layout to other destination layouts. For example, for source layouts whose formatting relies primarily on their **Casting Off** settings in **Layout Options**, it is likely that copying only their layout options is sufficient to produce the required formatting in the destination layouts without adding system/frame breaks on every system.

You can also copy the layout-specific property settings from the layout currently open in the music area to all other layouts in which those items appear.

NOTE

- Part formatting propagation is only available for part layouts. You cannot propagate part formatting from/to full score or custom score layouts.
- We do not recommend using layouts with multiple music frame chains as either source or destination layouts as you can get unexpected results.

Copying part formatting to other layouts

You can copy all the formatting from one part layout to other part layouts; for example, to save time if multiple part layouts in your project require similar formatting. You can include layout options, such as page size and margins, and other page formatting, such as system and frame breaks.

NOTE

- Part formatting propagation is only available for part layouts. You cannot propagate part formatting from/to full score or custom score layouts.
- We do not recommend using layouts with multiple music frame chains as either source or destination layouts as you can get unexpected results.

PROCEDURE

1. In Setup mode, in the **Layouts** panel, select the part layout whose part formatting you want to copy.
2. In the action bar, click **Layout Settings** ··· and choose **Propagate Part Formatting** to open the **Propagate Part Formatting** dialog.

   TIP

   You can also right-click layouts and choose this option from the context menu.
3. In the **Copy formatting from** list, select the part layout whose part formatting you want to copy.

   By default, the layout whose card you used to open the dialog is selected.

4. In the **Propagate formatting to** list, select the part layouts to which you want to copy part formatting.

   You can use the selection options in the action bar, click and drag across multiple layouts, **Shift**-click adjacent layouts, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-click individual layouts.

5. Activate/Deactivate **Include layout options**.
6. Activate/Deactivate **Include system formatting**.
7. Click **OK** to copy part formatting to the selected layouts and close the dialog.

RESULT

Part formatting from the selected source layout is copied to the selected destination layouts.

- If you activated **Include layout options**, layout options are copied from the source layout to the destination layouts.
- If you activated **Include system formatting**, Dorico Elements copies the distribution of bars in systems, systems on pages, and note spacing changes from the source layout to the destination layouts.

TIP

If the formatting of the source layout relies primarily on its **Casting Off** settings in **Layout Options**, it is likely that only activating **Include layout options** is sufficient to produce very similar formatting in the destination layouts without adding system/frame breaks on every system.

Propagate Part Formatting dialog

The **Propagate Part Formatting** dialog allows you to copy the page formatting and layout options from a source layout to destination layouts.

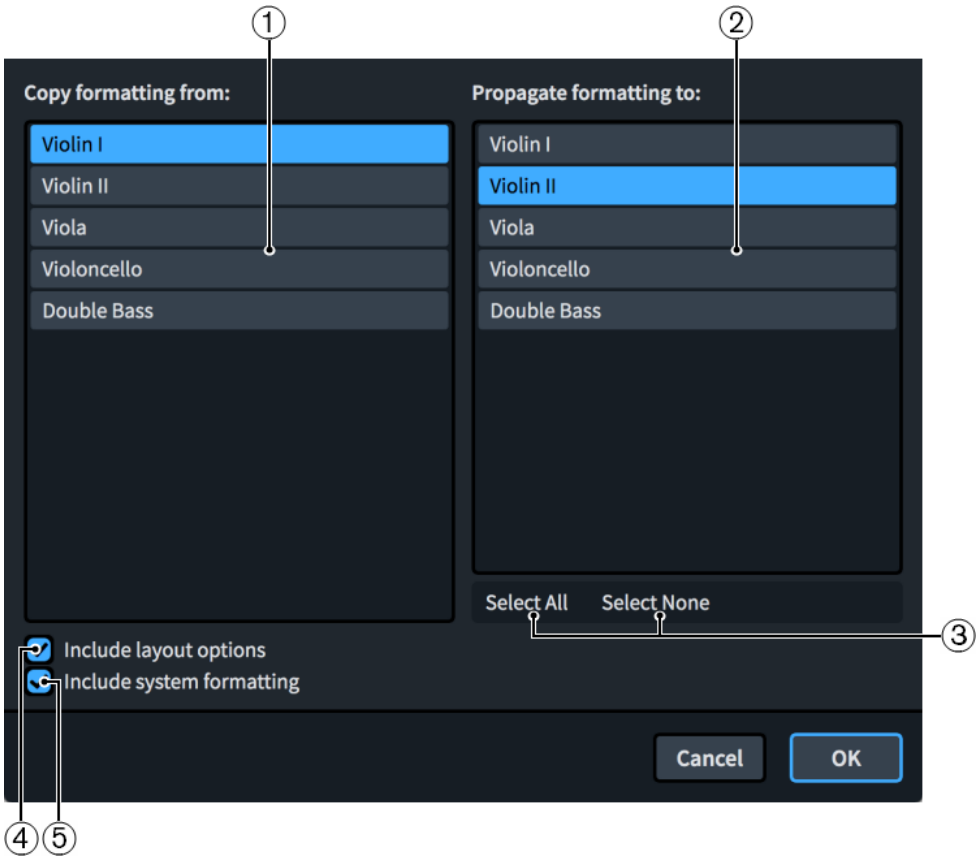
You can open the **Propagate Part Formatting** dialog in Setup mode in any of the following ways:

- In the **Layouts** panel, select a part layout, then click **Layout Settings** ··· in the action bar and choose **Propagate Part Formatting**. This automatically selects that layout as the source layout in the **Copy formatting from** list.

  TIP

  You can also right-click layouts and choose this option from the context menu.

- Choose **Setup** > **Propagate Part Formatting**.



The **Propagate Part Formatting** dialog contains the following sections and options:

1 **Copy formatting from list**

Contains a list of all the part layouts in the project. You can only select a single part layout as the source layout.

2 **Propagate formatting to list**

Contains a list of all the part layouts in the project. You can select multiple part layouts as destination layouts.

3 **Selection options**

Allow you to select/deselect all the part layouts in the **Propagate formatting to** list.

4 **Include layout options**

Allows you to copy layout options relating to part formatting from the source layout to the destination layouts. These options include page size, page margins, the default page template set, space size, vertical spacing, note spacing, casting off, multi-bar rest settings, and staff labels.

5 **Include system formatting**

Allows you to copy the distribution of bars in systems, systems on pages, and note spacing changes from the source layout to the destination layouts. Dorico Elements achieves this by copying system breaks, frame breaks, and note spacing changes, inputting additional system and frame breaks as required, and deleting any existing system breaks, frame breaks, and note spacing changes in the destination layouts.

RELATED LINKS

Layout Options dialog on page 677
Layouts panel (Setup mode) on page 114

Copying property settings to other layouts/frame chains

Local properties are layout- and frame chain-specific, meaning that by default, changing local properties for an item in one layout does not affect the same item in other layouts or other frame chains. You can copy the properties set on notes and items to all other layouts and frame chains in which they appear; for example, to show gradual dynamics with the same style in part layouts after changing their style in the full score layout.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the notes or items whose properties you want to copy to other layouts. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.

   NOTE

   Only the properties that are available in the current mode are copied.

2. Choose **Edit** > **Propagate Properties**.

RESULT

All properties set on the selected notes/items are copied to all layouts and frame chains in which those notes/items appear.

TIP

If you know in advance that you want your changes to affect all layouts and frame chains, you can change the property scope before changing property settings.

RELATED LINKS

Large selections on page 403
Local vs. global properties on page 616
Resetting the appearance of items on page 415
Resetting the position of items on page 415

Page templates

Page templates in Dorico Elements allow you to achieve consistent page formatting by applying the same arrangements of frames to multiple pages and in different layouts.

NOTE

You can set the page size, margins, page orientation, and staff size for each layout in **Layout Options**.

All pages in your scores and parts inherit their default formatting from page templates.

Dorico Elements provides different types of page templates so that there is appropriate page formatting for first pages independently of subsequent pages, as the first page typically includes additional information, such as the title, composer, and copyright. Dorico Elements uses tokens to display this additional information.

Page templates are contained in page template sets. By default, Dorico Elements provides separate page template sets for full score and part layouts. Page template sets are automatically applied to every layout that you create.

NOTE

- In Dorico Elements, you cannot edit page templates or create new ones; this is only available in Dorico Pro.
- Changing individual pages in layouts is considered a page template override in Dorico Elements. This includes, for example, editing the title or running header in Write mode. Pages with page template overrides are not automatically deleted, even if they are empty because the layout became shorter.

  If you want to change the information shown at the tops of pages, that is, the title and running header text that you cannot select, we recommend that you do so in the **Project Info** dialog to avoid page template overrides. The big title at the top of the first page is the project title. The running header on subsequent pages uses the flow title for the top flow on that page in scores, and the layout name in parts.

RELATED LINKS
Types of page templates on page 601
Removing page template overrides on page 602
Layout Options dialog on page 677
Flow headings on page 603
Project Info dialog on page 75
Tokens on page 607
Applying page template sets to layouts on page 558
Page formatting on page 555
Project templates on page 78

Page template sets

In Dorico Elements, page templates are provided as parts of page template sets. Page template sets group page templates and flow headings together, so there is suitable page formatting available for all possible situations in your project.

New projects contain the following page template sets by default:

- **Default Full Score**: Used for full score and custom score layouts by default.
- **Default Part**: Used for part layouts by default.

The default page template sets contain page templates for first (**First**) and subsequent (**Default**) pages.

Page template sets also contain flow headings that allow you to show flow titles above the start of each flow automatically, including when they start on the same page as a previous flow. The default page template sets each contain a single flow heading.

The default page template sets are applied automatically to the appropriate layouts in each new project. You can apply different page template sets to each layout independently.

NOTE

In Dorico Elements, you cannot edit page template sets or create new ones; this is only available in Dorico Pro.

RELATED LINKS
Flow headings on page 603
Applying page template sets to layouts on page 558

Types of page templates

Page template sets contain different types of page templates, which are used in different circumstances. For example, **First** page templates are usually used for the first page of music in a layout.

In Dorico Elements, there are the following types of page templates:

First

A page template that is usually used for the first page of music in a layout. It contains a single large music frame and multiple text frames to display information, such as the project title and composer.

First page template open in the page template editor

The **First** page template contains the following tokens in text frames:

1 **Layout name** (**Default Part** page template set only)

2 **Project title**

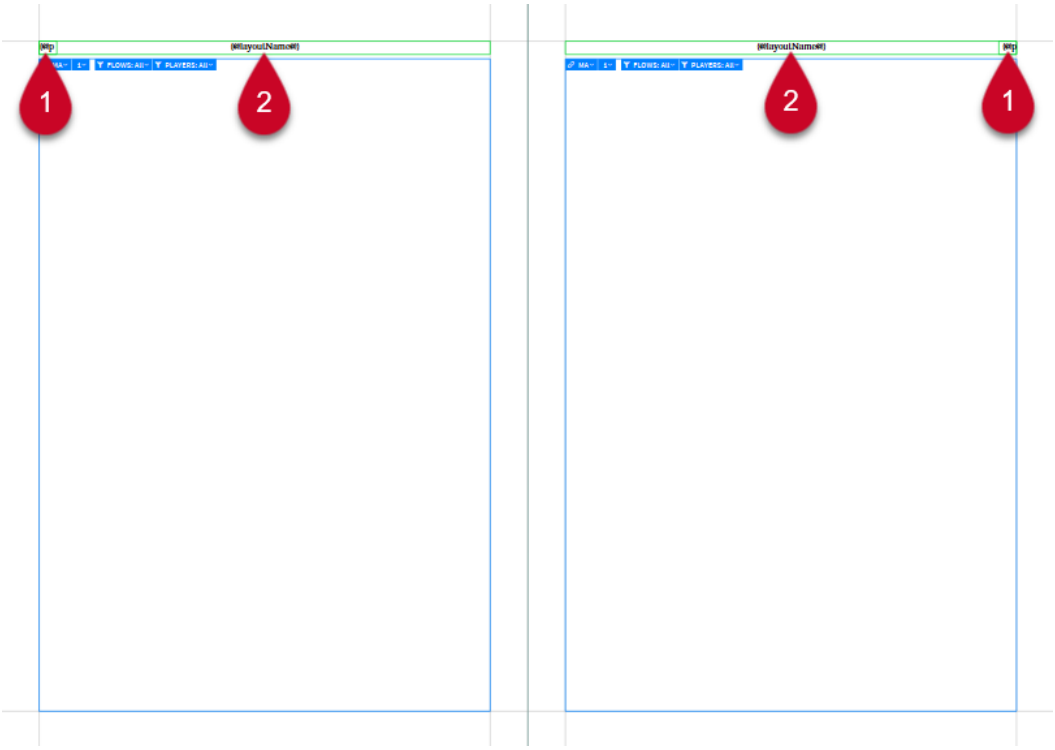
3 **Project lyricist**

4 **Project composer**

5 **Project copyright**

Default

A page template that is usually used for the second page of music onwards. It contains a single large music frame and text frames to show the running header and page number.



Default page template open in the page template editor

The **Default** page template contains the following tokens in text frames:

1 **Page number**

2 **Default Full Score** page template set: **Flow title** (optionally **Project title** for projects created from the Hub with **Project will use multiple flows** deactivated)

Default Part page template set: **Layout name**

RELATED LINKS
Project Info dialog on page 75
Tokens on page 607
Page template sets on page 600
Changing when the First page template is used on page 566
Changing flow titles on page 179
Flow headings on page 603
Hub on page 69

Removing page template overrides

You can remove overrides that you have made to individual pages and return them to following the page template format.

Page template overrides include editing the title or running header on individual pages, rather than by changing the contents of fields in the **Project Info** dialog.

Removing overrides from empty pages deletes them from the layout.

PREREQUISITE

The right zone is shown.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, open the layout whose page template overrides you want to remove.
2. Optional: If you want to remove overrides from individual pages, select items on those pages.
3. Remove page template overrides in one of the following ways:
   - To remove overrides from selected pages only, choose **Engrave** > **Remove Page Override(s)**.
   - To remove overrides from all pages, choose **Engrave** > **Remove All Page Overrides.**.

RESULT

Any overrides you made to the page template format are removed from either the selected pages only or from all pages in the layout currently open in the music area. Empty pages that are considered overrides are deleted.

If you removed overrides from selected pages only, any other pages with overrides in the layout are unaffected.

RELATED LINKS

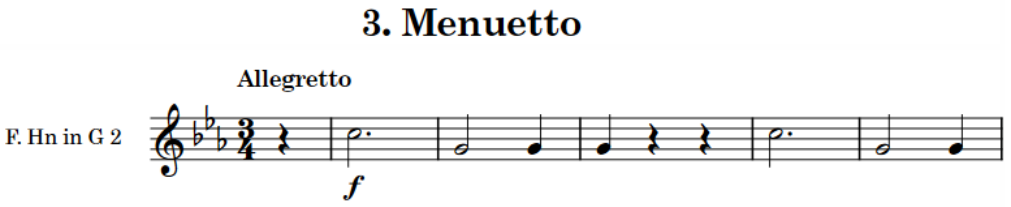
Hiding/Showing zones on page 44
Switching between layouts on page 43
Frames on page 605
Project Info dialog on page 75
Customizing flow headings on page 604

Flow headings

Flow headings allow you to show the titles of flows immediately above their first system automatically. They function like templates, in much the same way as page templates, allowing the same flow heading formatting to be applied to multiple flows in different layouts.

Flow headings exist as part of page template sets. By default, Dorico Elements provides one flow heading in each page template set, which contains tokens to display the flow number and flow title; in a new project, this appears as “1. Flow 1”. This is used automatically for all flow headings.

You can change the tokens included in flow headings; for example, if you want to remove flow numbers and only show flow titles.



A flow heading above the third flow in a part layout

Any changes you make in the **Edit Flow Heading** dialog are automatically reflected on the pages that use those flow headings. For example, if you delete a token, that token is removed from all flow headings in all layouts that use the same page template set, so long as the pages on which the flow headings appear do not have page template overrides.

Flow headings are automatically inserted inside music frames above the first system of the flow to which they apply, meaning they do not have a fixed vertical position on the page like other

frames and follow the music if it moves. They also occupy vertical space within music frames. You can change the margins for the space above and below flow headings.

NOTE

Changing individual flow headings in layouts is considered a page template override in Dorico Elements. This includes, for example, deleting a token from a flow heading on one page, rather than in the **Edit Flow Heading** dialog. Pages with page template overrides no longer get updated if you edit the flow heading and are not automatically deleted, even if they are empty because the layout became shorter.

Changing individual flow headings in layouts is considered a page template override in Dorico Elements. This includes, for example, deleting a token from a flow heading. Pages with page template overrides are not automatically deleted, even if they are empty because the layout became shorter.

RELATED LINKS

Tacets on page 592
Hiding/Showing flow headings on page 567
Changing the margins above/below flow headings on page 571
Hiding/Showing information in running headers above flow headings on page 568
Removing page template overrides on page 602
Margins on page 570
Frames on page 605
Tokens on page 607

Customizing flow headings

You can change the tokens included in flow headings; for example, if you want to remove flow numbers and only show flow titles. This affects all flow headings in all layouts that use the same page template set; for example, customizing the flow heading in a part layout updates flow headings in all other part layouts.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, open a layout that uses the page template set containing the flow heading you want to customize.
2. Choose **Engrave** > **Edit Flow Heading** to open the **Edit Flow Heading** dialog.
3. Change the tokens included in the flow heading.
4. Click **OK** to save your changes and close the dialog.

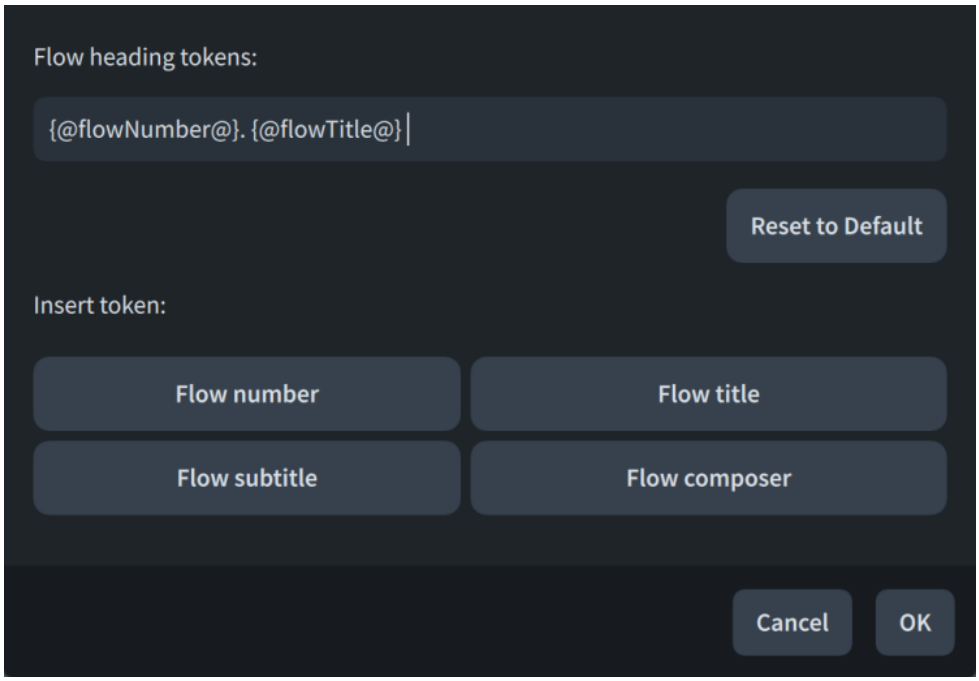
RELATED LINKS

Switching between layouts on page 43
Page template sets on page 600
Applying page template sets to layouts on page 558
Removing page template overrides on page 602
Project Info dialog on page 75
Tokens on page 607

Edit Flow Heading dialog

The **Edit Flow Heading** dialog allows you to change the tokens included in flow headings; for example, if you want to remove flow numbers and only show flow titles. This affects all flow headings in all layouts that use the same page template set.

- You can open the **Edit Flow Heading** dialog in Engrave mode by choosing **Engrave** > **Edit Flow Heading**.



The **Edit Flow Heading** dialog contains the following options:

Flow heading tokens

Displays the tokens included in the flow heading. You can enter text directly into this field, and click tokens to add them automatically.

Reset to Default

Resets the tokens in the flow heading.

Insert token

Allows you to add tokens to the flow heading.

RELATED LINKS
Engrave mode on page 477
Removing page template overrides on page 602
Project Info dialog on page 75
Tokens on page 607
Export File Names dialog on page 545

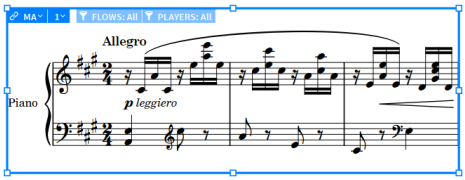
Frames

Dorico uses boxes called frames to position music, additional text, and graphics inside the margins of pages. In Dorico Elements, you cannot input or edit frames, but frames on page templates control the formatting of pages in your project.

In Dorico Elements, there are the following types of frames:

Music frames

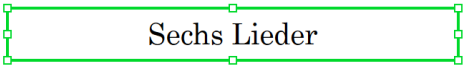
Music frames display the music of selected players and flows or blank staves.



A music frame displaying the start of a piano piece

Text frames

Text frames display text, which you can enter directly or by using tokens.



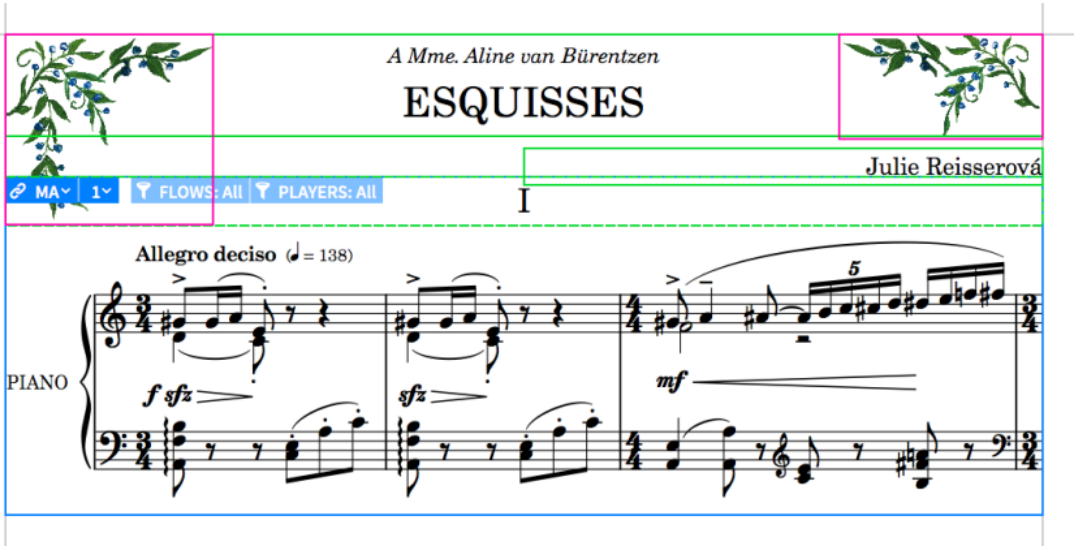
A text frame displaying a project title, "Sechs Lieder"

Graphics frames

Graphics frames display the images that you load into them, which can be in a variety of formats.

A graphics frame with image loaded

EXAMPLE



The first page of a piano piece. It contains a music frame, text frames for the title, dedication, and composer, a flow heading frame inside the top of the music frame, and graphics frames in the top corners.

RELATED LINKS

Project window in Engrave mode on page 477
Flows in Dorico on page 22
Layouts in Dorico on page 26
Frame breaks on page 589
Tokens on page 607
Page templates on page 599

Flow headings on page 603
Changing page margins on page 557

Tokens

Tokens are codes that you can use as substitutes for information stored in your project, such as titles, composers, and the time and date. This can reduce the risk of mistakes or outdated information appearing in your project. Tokens are also known as “wildcards” or “text codes”.

For example, if you use a token for the title of your project, you can change the project title in the **Project Info** dialog as often as you want, and the project title in every layout in your project is updated automatically.

Tokens can refer to information in the **Project Info** dialog, including for the whole project or each flow individually. Tokens can also refer to the current time and date or the time and date the project was last saved.

NOTE

- You can only use tokens in text frames. You cannot use tokens in text items. Full text frame functionality is only available in Dorico Pro, but we have included the available tokens for your reference.
- Flow tokens refer to the nearest flow below the top edge of their text frame and on the same page. When the top edge of a text frame containing a flow token is in line with or above the top staff line of the first staff in a system, it then refers to that flow.

  You can specify the flow number to which you want flow tokens to refer, such as **{@flow2title@}**. This always shows the specified flow, regardless of the token’s position.

  You can see the flow number of each flow in the **Flows** panel in Setup mode.
- You can access all the available tokens from the context menu when the cursor is inside a text frame. In the context menu, tokens are organized into submenus.

The following tokens are available in Dorico Elements:

General tokens

Description	Token
Project file name	**{@projectfilename@}**
Path to the project’s save location, including the project file name	**{@projectfilepath@}**

Player tokens

Description	Token
Player list	**{@playerlist@}**
Player names	**{@playernames@}**

Layout tokens

Description	Token
Layout name	**{@layoutname@}**
Layout number, as set in the **Layouts** panel in Setup mode	**{@layoutnumber@}**
Layout transposition	**{@layouttransposition@}**

NOTE

Uses your instrument language setting.

Staff label tokens

Music symbol	Token
Full staff labels of the players in the current layout	**{@staffLabelsFull@}**
Abbreviated staff labels of the players in the current layout	**{@staffLabelsShort@}**

NOTE

- You can use staff label tokens as an alternative way to name part layouts, instead of using the default **{@layoutName@}** token shown at the top left of the first page in part layouts.
- Staff label tokens might not exactly match the appearance of staff labels shown before initial barlines; however, staff label tokens respect your per-layout options for how transpositions appear in staff labels.

Music symbol tokens

Music symbol	Token
Flat accidental: ♭	**{@flat@}**
Sharp accidental: ♯	**{@sharp@}**
Natural accidental: ♮	**{@natural@}**
Treble clef (G clef)	**{@gClef@}**
Bass clef (F clef)	**{@fClef@}**
Alto clef (C clef)	**{@cClef@}**

Music symbol	Token
Fermata above	**{@U+E4C0@}**

TIP

- This list is not comprehensive, as you can enter the code point for any SMuFL symbol within a token. You can find the necessary code points in the SMuFL specification online.
- Music symbol tokens in text frames automatically use the **Music text** character style, which is set to Bravura Text by default.
- You can include music symbol tokens in fields in the **Project Info** dialog. For example, if you enter **Symphony in B{@flat@} major** into the **Title** field, the title displayed in text frames using the corresponding title token is Symphony in B♭ major.
- You can also enter music symbols in text items and text frames using the **Insert Music Text** dialog.

Project/Flow information tokens

Field in the Project Info dialog	Token for Project page	Token for Flow pages
Title	**{@projecttitle@}**	**{@flowtitle@}**
Subtitle	**{@projectsubtitle@}**	**{@flowsubtitle@}**
Dedication	**{@projectdedication@}**	**{@flowdedication@}**
Composer	**{@projectcomposer@}**	**{@flowcomposer@}**
Arranger	**{@projectarranger@}**	**{@flowarranger@}**
Lyricist	**{@projectlyricist@}**	**{@flowlyricist@}**
Artist	**{@projectartist@}**	**{@flowartist@}**
Copyist	**{@projectcopyist@}**	**{@flowcopyist@}**
Publisher	**{@projectpublisher@}**	**{@flowpublisher@}**
Editor	**{@projecteditor@}**	**{@floweditor@}**
Copyright	**{@projectcopyright@}**	**{@flowcopyright@}**
Work number	**{@projectworknumber@}**	**{@flowworknumber@}**
Composer dates	**{@projectcomposerdates@}**	**{@flowcomposerdates@}**
Composition year	**{@projectcompositionyear@}**	**{@flowcompositionyear@}**

Field in the Project Info dialog	Token for Project page	Token for Flow pages
Other information	**{@projectotherinfo@}**	**{@flowotherinfo@}**

Flow tokens

Per-flow token function	Token
Flow number of the current flow, according to its position in the project	**{@flownumber@}**
Flow number of the current flow, according to its position in the current layout	**{@flowInLayoutNumber@}**
Flow number of the current flow shown in lower case Roman numerals, such as iii or xvi	**{@flowNumberRomanLower@}**
Flow number of the current flow shown in upper case Roman numerals, such as III or XVI	**{@flowNumberRomanUpper@}**
Duration of the current flow in minutes and seconds, using smart quotes	**{@flowDuration@}**
Duration of the current flow in minutes and seconds, using straight quotes	**{@flowDurationStraightQuotes@}**
Duration of the current flow in minutes and seconds, using primes	**{@flowDurationPrimes@}**
Duration of the specified flow “n” in minutes and seconds, such as **{@flow3Duration@}**	**{@flownDuration@}**, **{@flownDurationStraightQuotes@}**, or **{@flownDurationPrimes@}**

Page number tokens

Page number token function	Token
Page number	**{@page@}**
Total number of pages in the layout	**{@pageCount@}**
Number of this page within the current flow, counting from 1 for the first page of the flow and including pages with no displayed page number	**{@flowPage@}**
Total number of pages in the current flow	**{@flowPageCount@}**

Page number token function	Token
The displayed page number on which the specified flow “n” begins, such as **{@flow3FirstPage@}**	**{@flownFirstPage@}**

NOTE

{@flowPage@} and **{@flowPageCount@}** tokens only consider the flow that is active at the beginning of the first system of the music frame closest to the top left corner of the page on which the tokens are used.

Time/Date tokens: project last saved

Time/Date description	Time/Date example	Token
Standard date and time string (locale dependent)	Sun Dec 31 11:10:12 2017	**{@projectdate@}**
Four-digit year	2017	**{@projectdateyear@}**
Two-digit year	17	**{@projectdateyearshort@}**
Full month name (locale dependent)	October	**{@projectdatemonth@}**
Short month name (locale dependent)	Oct	**{@projectdatemonthshort@}**
Month as a decimal number, range 1-12	10	**{@projectdatemonthnum@}**
Full weekday name (locale dependent)	Friday	**{@projectdateday@}**
Abbreviated weekday name (locale dependent)	Fri	**{@projectdatedayshort@}**
Day of month as decimal number, range 1-31	24	**{@projectdatedaynum@}**
ISO 8601 date	2017-12-31	**{@projectdateymd@}**
Month day, year	December 31, 2017	**{@projectdatemdy@}**
Day month year	31 December 2017	**{@projectdatedmy@}**
Time representation (locale dependent)	11:10:12	**{@projectdatetime@}**

Time/Date description	Time/Date example	Token
Hours:minutes, hour in 24-hour clock range	23:10	**{@projectdatetimeHHMM@}**
Hours:minutes:seconds, hour in 24-hour clock range	13:02:24	**{@projectdatetimeHHMMSS@}**
Hour in 24-hour clock range	23	**{@projectdatetimehour24@}**
Hour in 12-hour clock range	11	**{@projectdatetimehour12@}**
Minute as decimal number, range 00-59	10	**{@projectdatetimeminute@}**
Second as decimal number, range 00-59	44	**{@projectdatetimesecond@}**

Time/Date tokens: current time and date

Time/Date description	Time/Date example	Token
Standard date and time string (locale dependent)	Sun Dec 31 11:10:12 2017	**{@date@}**
Four-digit year	2017	**{@dateyear@}**
Two-digit year	17	**{@dateyearshort@}**
Full month name (locale dependent)	October	**{@datemonth@}**
Short month name (locale dependent)	Oct	**{@datemonthshort@}**
Month as a decimal number, range 1-12	10	**{@datemonthnum@}**
Full weekday name (locale dependent)	Friday	**{@dateday@}**
Abbreviated weekday name (locale dependent)	Fri	**{@datedayshort@}**
Day of month as decimal number, range 1-31	24	**{@datedaynum@}**
ISO 8601 date	2017-12-31	**{@dateymd@}**
Month day, year	December 31, 2017	**{@datemdy@}**

Time/Date description	Time/Date example	Token
Day month year	31 December 2017	**{@datedmy@}**
Time representation (locale dependent)	11:10:12	**{@datetime@}**
Hours:minutes, hour in 24-hour clock range	23:10	**{@datetimeHHMM@}**
Hours:minutes:seconds, hour in 24-hour clock range	13:02:24	**{@datetimeHHMMSS@}**
Hour in 24-hour clock range	23	**{@datetimehour24@}**
Hour in 12-hour clock range	11	**{@datetimehour12@}**
Minute as decimal number, range 00-59	10	**{@datetimeminute@}**
Second as decimal number, range 00-59	44	**{@datetimesecond@}**

RELATED LINKS
Project Info dialog on page 75
Player, layout, and instrument names on page 172
Flow names and flow titles on page 178
Insert Music Text dialog on page 373
Renumbering layouts on page 171
Reordering flows on page 164
Instrument transpositions in staff labels on page 1185
Changing the language for instrument names on page 57
Concert vs. transposed pitch on page 170
Editing layout transposition text on page 895

Music frame chains

A music frame chain is a collection of music frames that show the same selection of music in a set order, often in sequence. Music frame chains can include any number of frames, including only a single music frame.

The default page templates contain a single frame chain that is set to display all flows and all players in the layout. Therefore, Dorico Elements automatically creates enough pages and frames to display all flows in all the layouts that use those page templates.

NOTE

In Dorico Elements, you cannot create new frame chains or change the flows and players assigned to frame chains; this is only available in Dorico Pro.

RELATED LINKS
Page templates on page 599

Layouts in Dorico on page 26

Properties

Properties are settings that apply to individual notes and items and allow you to edit them, such as by changing their appearance or position. You can access properties in the Properties panel.

Properties can affect items only in the current layout and frame chain, known as “local properties”, or in all layouts and frame chains, known as “global properties”.

Many properties also have equivalent default settings available that control the appearance or position of all instances of the corresponding type of note or notation. You can access the available default settings in **Notation Options**.

RELATED LINKS
Notation Options dialog on page 679
Chord symbol appearance presets on page 783

Properties panel

The Properties panel in Write mode provides options that allow you to edit individual notes and notations, such as by changing their appearance or position. It is located in the lower zone at the bottom of the window in Write mode and Engrave mode.

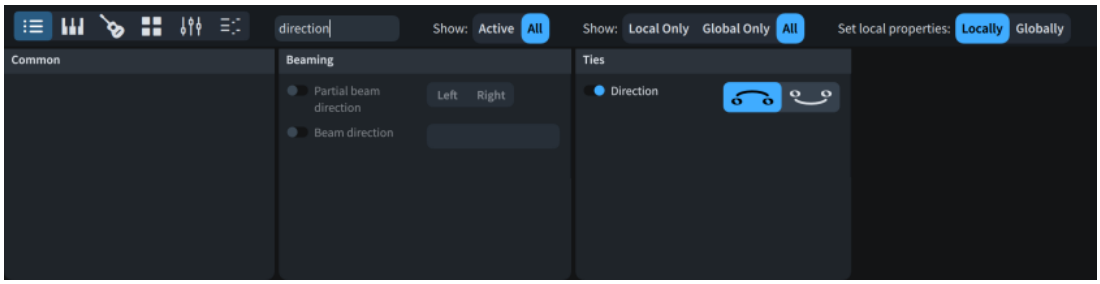
- You can show the Properties panel by showing the lower zone, then clicking **Properties** in the lower zone toolbar.

The Properties panel contains a group of properties for each notation item. When you select a note or item in the music area, the Properties panel displays the groups and options that you might require to edit the selected note or item. If there are more available groups than can fit in the panel simultaneously, you can scroll to the right/left along the displayed groups.

All the properties that are available in the Properties panel in Write mode are also available in Engrave mode, but additional properties in Engrave mode allow you to edit items in more detail.

NOTE

- If you select multiple different types of notation items, only the groups that they have in common are displayed. For example, if you select a slur, the **Common** and **Slurs** groups are displayed in the Properties panel. However, if you select a slur and a note, only the **Common** group is displayed.
- If the property scope is set to **Locally**, changing local properties only affects the current layout and frame chain. You can set the property scope to **Globally** if you want subsequent changes to local properties to affect all layouts and frame chains. You can also copy property changes to other layouts and frame chains later.
- In Write mode, you can only change the properties of complete notes and items. For example, you can only change the line style of whole pedal lines, even if they extend across multiple systems. In Engrave mode, you can change individual parts of notes and items separately; for example, the curvature direction of a single tie within a tie chain.
- You can activate properties by clicking their activation switch or property name.



Properties panel in Write mode, filtered by a search term

The Properties panel toolbar contains the following options:

Search

Allows you to filter properties according to your entry.

Show (active status)

Allows you to filter properties according to their activated status.

- **Active**: Shows only activated properties.
- **All**: Shows all properties.

Show (property scope)

Allows you to filter properties according to their property scope.

- **Local Only**: Shows only local properties.
- **Global Only**: Shows only global properties.
- **All**: Shows all properties.

Set local properties

Allows you to change the scope of subsequent local properties you change.

- **Locally**: Local properties only take effect locally.
- **Globally**: Local properties take effect globally.

RELATED LINKS
Project window in Write mode on page 186
Project window in Engrave mode on page 477
Hiding/Showing zones on page 44
Copying property settings to other layouts/frame chains on page 599
Changing your preferred unit of measurement on page 51
Moving items graphically on page 481
Selecting handles on items on page 483
Resetting the appearance of items on page 415
Resetting the position of items on page 415

Local vs. global properties

Properties can affect items either in the current layout and frame chain only or in all layouts and frame chains. This allows you to have the same items appear differently in different layouts, such as if you want to show gradual dynamics as hairpins in part layouts but as “cresc.” text in full score layouts.

Local properties

Local properties are layout- and frame chain-specific. By default, changing local properties for an item in one layout does not affect the same item in other layouts

or other frame chains. This is particularly useful for local properties that control the graphical position of items, as usually this needs to be different in the part layout compared to the full score.

You can force local properties to apply globally by changing the property scope in the Properties panel to **Globally** before changing their setting. Local properties that have been set globally appear with a bolder font in the Properties panel than local properties that have been set locally. You can also show only local properties in the Properties panel by using the property scope filter.

NOTE

Changing local properties with the property scope set to **Globally** overrides any local settings for those properties for the selected notes or items in other layouts.

Global properties

Global properties affect items in all layouts and frame chains, including new layouts you subsequently create. They appear with a bolder font in the Properties panel than local properties. You can also show only global properties in the Properties panel by using the property scope filter.

RELATED LINKS
Layouts on page 165
Music frame chains on page 613
Copying property settings to other layouts/frame chains on page 599

Changing the property scope

You can change the property scope of local properties; for example, if you want the subsequent properties you change to affect all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

PROCEDURE

- In the Properties panel, choose one of the following options for **Set local properties**:
  - **Locally**
  - **Globally**

RESULT

The property scope is changed. All subsequent local properties you change take effect only in the current layout and frame chain if you chose **Locally**, or in all layouts and frame chains if you chose **Globally**.

NOTE

- The property scope includes local properties that control the graphical position of items. Because it is common for items to require different graphical positions in different layouts, we recommend that you change the property scope to **Globally** only when required.
- This only applies to subsequent properties you change. If you want to change the property scope of existing properties, you can copy property settings to other layouts and frame chains.

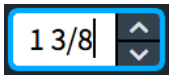
- You can change the default property scope for all future projects on the **Note Input and Editing** page in **Preferences**.

RELATED LINKS
Copying property settings to other layouts/frame chains on page 599
Preferences dialog on page 58

Changing values in numeric value fields

You can change the values in numeric value fields in multiple different ways, such as doubling or halving the existing values. In Dorico Elements, value fields are most commonly used in the Properties panel and in options dialogs.

Numeric value fields have up/down buttons. They are also known as “spin boxes”.



A numeric value field in the Properties panel

PREREQUISITE

For value fields that are only accessible when their corresponding property/option is activated, you have activated their property/option.

PROCEDURE

- Change the value in numeric value fields in any of the following ways:
  - Enter a number directly.
  - To increase/decrease the value by 1/8 space, click the up/down buttons.
  - To increase/decrease the value by 1/32 space, **Ctrl/Cmd**-**Shift**-click the up/down buttons.
  - To increase/decrease the value by 1/2 space, **Shift**-click the up/down buttons.
  - To increase/decrease the value by 1 space, **Ctrl/Cmd**-click the up/down buttons.
  - To increase the current value by a specific amount, enter **+=** followed by the amount into the spin box. For example, enter **+=2** to increase the current value by two.
  - To decrease the current value by a specific amount, enter **-=** followed by the amount into the spin box. For example, enter **-=3.5** to decrease the current value by three and a half.
  - To multiply the current value by a specific amount, enter ***** followed by the amount into the spin box. For example, enter ***3** to triple the current value.
  - To divide the current value by a specific amount, enter **/** followed by the amount into the spin box. For example, enter **/2** to halve the current value.

    NOTE

    You must replace the existing value with your calculation entry.

RELATED LINKS
Layout Options dialog on page 677
Changing your preferred unit of measurement on page 51

Key Editor

The Key Editor is a MIDI editor that comprises multiple components. It allows you to edit notes and other playback items, including note velocity, MIDI CC, and tempo. You can access the Key Editor in the Key Editor panel in the lower zone.

The Key Editor contains the following editors, which you can show in different combinations:

- Piano roll editor
- Percussion editor
- Playing Techniques editor
- Velocity editor
- Dynamics editor
- MIDI Pitch Bend editor
- MIDI CC editor
- Tempo editor

The Key Editor also provides different tools and controls, according to the requirements of each editor.

RELATED LINKS
Piano roll editor on page 630
Percussion editor on page 631
Playing Techniques editor on page 641
Velocity editor on page 642
Dynamics editor on page 645
MIDI Pitch Bend editor on page 650
MIDI CC editor on page 651
Tempo editor on page 656
Histogram tool on page 659

Key Editor panel

The Key Editor panel allows you to view and edit notes, either in a continuous piano roll for pitched instruments or in the percussion editor for unpitched instruments. It is located in the lower zone at the bottom of the window in Write mode and Play mode.

- You can show the Key Editor panel by showing the lower zone, then clicking **Key Editor** in the lower zone toolbar.

By default, the Key Editor displays the instrument on whose staff you have selected an item. However, you can also select the instruments you want to show in the Key Editor manually.

1 Key Editor panel toolbar

Contains tools that allow you to select and edit notes and items in the Key Editor.

2 Key Editor ruler

Displays bar numbers and shows beat divisions that match the current rhythmic grid resolution.

3 Playhead

Shows the current rhythmic position in playback.

4 Header

Displays the name of each editor and can contain further options, according to the editor.

5 Primary editor

Contains either the piano roll editor, percussion editor, or Tempo editor, depending on your most recent selection and whether the Key Editor is locked.

6 Playing Techniques editor

Displays where playing techniques are in use for the corresponding instrument or voice. Only available when a single instrument/voice is shown in the Key Editor.

7 Additional editors

You can add/close multiple additional editors below the piano roll/percussion editor, such as the Velocity and MIDI CC editors. You can save configurations of editors for use in other projects.

8 Add Editor

Allows you to add additional editors to the Key Editor.

9 Presets

Allows you to save, apply, and delete Key Editor configurations.

10 Zoom controls

Allow you to change the zoom manually, such as making notes wider and/or taller.

11 Scroll bars

Allow you to scroll vertically and horizontally in the Key Editor.

RELATED LINKS

Hiding/Showing zones on page 44
Track overview on page 486

Voices on page 1303
Rhythmic grid on page 204
Changing the Key Editor rhythmic grid resolution on page 626
Adding/Closing editors in the Key Editor on page 627
Showing instruments in the Key Editor on page 623
Key Editor configurations on page 664
Played vs. notated note durations on page 639
Histogram tool on page 659
Transform tool on page 663

Key Editor panel toolbar

The Key Editor panel toolbar contains tools that allow you to select and edit notes and items in the Key Editor. It is located at the top of the Key Editor panel in the lower zone.

Select

Allows you to select items in the Key Editor, such as notes in the piano roll editor or velocity bars in the Velocity editor, including by clicking and dragging marquee selections.

You can also select **Select** by pressing **Shift-Alt/Opt-1**.

Draw

Allows you to input notes in the piano roll and percussion editors. The end positions and minimum durations of notes follow the current Key Editor rhythmic grid resolution.

You can also select **Draw** by pressing **Shift-Alt/Opt-2**.

Drumstick

Allows you to set a different rhythmic duration for each unpitched percussion instrument independently, and input sequences of notes with the corresponding duration by clicking and dragging in the percussion editor.

Also allows you to delete notes by clicking them.

Only available in the percussion editor.

You can also select **Drumstick** by pressing **Shift-Alt/Opt-3** when the percussion editor is shown.

Line

Allows you to draw straight lines between two points. Not available in the piano roll editor or percussion editor.

Transform

Allows you to make Transform selections, and use Transform controls on the selected range. Only available in the Velocity and MIDI CC editors.

Sync Region

Copies data from the primary track to secondary tracks. Only available in the Dynamics and MIDI CC editors, and when multiple instruments are shown in the Key Editor.

Delete

Deletes the selected items.

You can also delete selected items by pressing **Backspace or Delete**.

Played Durations

Allows you to change when notes start/end in playback without affecting their notated durations. Displays the played durations of notes as a rectangle, above a thinner line that shows their notated duration.

Notated Durations

Allows you to change the rhythmic duration of notes, which affects the position and notation of those notes. Displays the full, notated durations of notes as rectangles.

Rhythmic Grid

Allows you to change the rhythmic grid resolution for the Key Editor. The Key Editor rhythmic grid resolution affects the minimum duration of the notes you input, the number of grid lines, and certain aspects of inputting and editing, such as the amount by which you can drag notes to the right/left. The button updates to show the current rhythmic grid resolution.

Playing Techniques

Hides/Shows the Playing Techniques editor.

Voice selector

Allows you to select the voice whose notes you want to appear highlighted in the piano roll and into which you want to input notes. Automatically updates according to your current selection.

When multiple instruments are shown in the Key Editor, only voices belonging to the primary instrument are available.

Resize Lower Zone

Allows you to change the height of the lower zone.

TIP

- You can right-click and hold in the Key Editor to access tools in the quick tool selector.

- You can also select tools by pressing **Shift-Alt/Opt-1** to **Shift-Alt/Opt-6**. The tool selected by each key command depends on the tools currently available in the Key Editor panel toolbar, counted from left to right.

RELATED LINKS
Notes in the Key Editor on page 630
Playing Techniques editor on page 641
Velocity editor on page 642
Dynamics editor on page 645
MIDI CC editor on page 651

Showing instruments in the Key Editor

You can show specific instruments in the Key Editor, change the primary instrument, and lock the Key Editor to keep those instruments in view. For example, if you want to draw MIDI points for all string instruments in your project simultaneously.

By default, the Key Editor is unlocked and follows the current selection in either the music area or track overview.

For example, if your most recent selection was a Flute note or the Flute track, that Flute is shown in the piano roll editor. If your most recent selection was a tempo mark or the Tempo track, the Tempo editor is shown in the Key Editor, provided you had not already added the Tempo editor manually.

PREREQUISITE

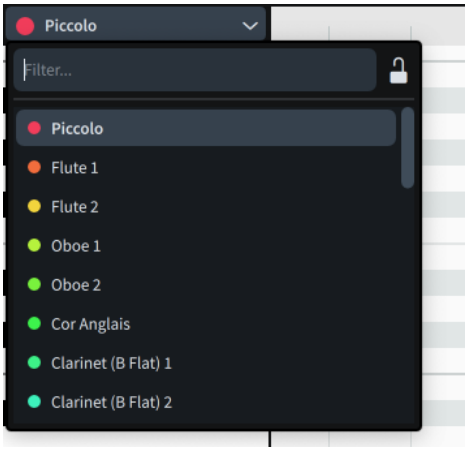
- The lower zone is shown.
- **Key Editor** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- Your most recently selected item belonged to an instrument, so that either the piano roll or percussion editor is shown in the Key Editor.

NOTE

You cannot add editors to the Key Editor when the Tempo editor is the primary editor.

PROCEDURE

1. In the piano roll/percussion editor header, click the instrument menu, then select the instrument you want to show as the primary instrument.



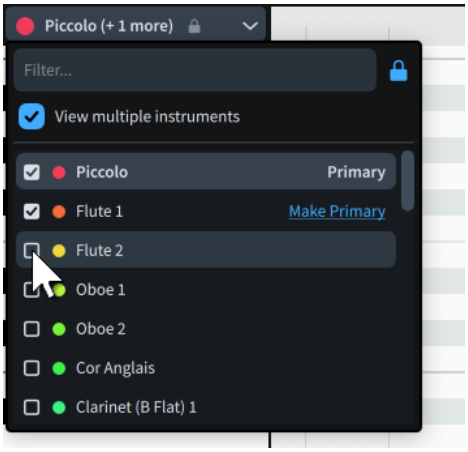
2. To lock the Key Editor and keep the selected instrument in view, click **Lock Key Editor**.

3. To show multiple instruments in the Key Editor simultaneously, activate **View multiple instruments**.

   NOTE

   You can only show multiple pitched instruments in the Key Editor. You cannot show multiple unpitched percussion instruments, or unpitched percussion instruments in addition to pitched instruments.

4. Activate each instrument you want to show in the Key Editor.



5. Optional: Click **Make Primary** beside the instrument you want to designate as the new primary instrument.

RESULT

The Key Editor shows the selected instruments. If you locked the Key Editor, including if you optionally selected multiple instruments, it no longer follows your most recent selection.

TIP

You can assign key commands for the following commands on the **Key Commands** page in **Preferences**:

- **Lock Key Editor to Selection** automatically shows in the Key Editor the instruments on whose staves you have selected notes/items in the music area, and locks the Key Editor to that selection.
- **Toggle Key Editor Locked View** locks/unlocks the Key Editor.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

- You can view, input, and edit notes, dynamic points, and MIDI points for all the instruments shown in the Key Editor.
- You can copy dynamic and MIDI points from the primary instrument to secondary instruments.

RELATED LINKS

Hiding/Showing zones on page 44
Adding/Closing editors in the Key Editor on page 627
Piano roll editor on page 630
Percussion editor on page 631
Dynamics editor on page 645
MIDI CC editor on page 651

MIDI Pitch Bend editor on page 650
Tempo editor on page 656
Track overview on page 486
Enabling independent voice playback on page 506
Copying dynamic points to other instruments on page 649
Copying MIDI points to other instruments on page 655

Changing the height of the Key Editor

You can change the height of the whole Key Editor and each editor within it. For example, you can make the piano roll editor taller when inputting notes, and make the Velocity editor taller when changing note velocity.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Key Editor** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

PROCEDURE

- Do one of the following:
  - To change the height of the whole Key Editor, click and drag **Resize Lower Zone** or the top edge of the lower zone upwards/downwards.
  - To change the height of individual editors, click and drag their splitters upwards/downwards. When the mouse pointer is in the correct position, it appears as a split arrow.

TIP

You can assign a key command for **Cycle Lower Zone Size** on the **Key Commands** page in **Preferences**, which makes the lower zone fill 25%, 50%, then 75% of the project window.

RELATED LINKS
Key Commands page in the Preferences dialog on page 59
Opening multiple project windows on page 49

Zooming in/out of the Key Editor

You can change the zoom level in the Key Editor; for example, you can zoom in vertically and horizontally to make notes appear taller and wider in the piano roll editor. This does not affect the height of the Key Editor.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Key Editor** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

PROCEDURE

1. Zoom in horizontally in any of the following ways:
   - Press **H**.
   - Click **Zoom In** at the bottom of the Key Editor.
   - Click in the Key Editor ruler and drag upwards.

- **Ctrl/Cmd**-scroll upwards in the Key Editor ruler.

2. Zoom out horizontally in any of the following ways:
   - Press **G**.
   - Click **Zoom Out** at the bottom of the Key Editor.
   - Click in the Key Editor ruler and drag downwards.
   - **Ctrl/Cmd**-scroll downwards in the Key Editor ruler.
3. Zoom in vertically in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-H**.
   - Click **Zoom In** on the right of the Key Editor.
   - **Ctrl/Cmd**-scroll upwards in the area to the left of the piano roll/percussion editor.
4. Zoom out vertically in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-G**.
   - Click **Zoom Out** on the right of the Key Editor.
   - **Ctrl/Cmd**-scroll downwards in the keyboard to the left of the piano roll.

RELATED LINKS
Key Editor panel on page 619
Zooming in/out of tracks on page 501
Hiding/Showing zones on page 44

Scrolling in the Key Editor

You can scroll in any direction in the Key Editor; for example, to view higher/lower notes in the piano roll editor, or MIDI points in later bars in the MIDI CC editor.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Key Editor** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

PROCEDURE

- In the Key Editor, scroll in any of the following ways:
  - Click and drag the sliders on the right and bottom edges of the Key Editor.
  - Swipe in any direction on a touchpad.
  - To scroll vertically when using a mouse wheel, scroll upwards/downwards.
  - To scroll horizontally when using a mouse wheel, **Shift**-scroll upwards/downwards.

Changing the Key Editor rhythmic grid resolution

You can change the rhythmic grid resolution used for the Key Editor, independently of the rhythmic grid used outside of the Key Editor. The Key Editor rhythmic grid resolution affects the minimum duration of the notes you input, the number of grid lines, and certain aspects of inputting and editing, such as the amount by which you can drag notes to the right/left.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.

- **Key Editor** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- If you want to use key commands, your most recent selection must have been in the Key Editor panel.

PROCEDURE

- Change the Key Editor rhythmic grid resolution in any of the following ways:
  - In the Key Editor panel toolbar, click **Rhythmic Grid** and choose the resolution you want.
  - To decrease the rhythmic grid resolution, press **Alt/Opt-]**.
  - To increase the rhythmic grid resolution, press **Alt/Opt-[**.

RELATED LINKS
Rhythmic grid on page 204
Notes in the Key Editor on page 630

Adding/Closing editors in the Key Editor

You can add/close all types of editors in the Key Editor, excluding the piano roll and percussion editors. You can also change the editor type shown in an existing editor.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Key Editor** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- Your most recently selected item belonged to an instrument, so that either the piano roll or percussion editor is shown in the Key Editor.

  NOTE

  You cannot add editors to the Key Editor when the Tempo editor is the primary editor.

PROCEDURE

- Change the editors shown in the Key Editor in one of the following ways:
  - To add a new editor, click **Add Editor** at the bottom left of the Key Editor.
  - To change the editor type shown in an existing editor, click the menu in its header and select an editor from the menu.
  - To close editors, click **Close Editor** in their headers.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

You can save Key Editor configurations for use in other projects.

Selecting items in the Key Editor

You can select notes and items, such as MIDI or dynamic points, in the Key Editor in the same ways.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Key Editor** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

- You have selected the instruments you want to show in the Key Editor.
- You have added the editors whose points you want to select.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the **Select** tool in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Shift-Alt/Opt-1**.
   - In the Key Editor panel toolbar, click **Select**.
   - In the Key Editor, right-click and hold to show the quick tool selector, move the mouse pointer to **Select**, then release the mouse.
2. Select notes or items in any of the following ways:
   - Click a single note or point.
   - **Ctrl/Cmd**-click or **Shift**-click multiple notes or points.
   - In one editor, click and drag across an area where you want to select everything.

     A blue rectangle indicates which notes or points will be selected when you release the mouse. We recommend that you click in one corner of the area you want to select and drag diagonally across to the other corner.

Copying and pasting points in the Key Editor

You can copy and paste points in the Key Editor, including to other editors and repeating them directly after themselves in the same editor. For example, if you want to copy a pattern of MIDI points between different MIDI controllers.

NOTE

These steps describe copying/pasting points within/between editors belonging to the same instrument. However, you can also copy/paste dynamic and MIDI points between instruments.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Key Editor** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- **Select** is selected in the Key Editor panel toolbar.
- You have selected the instruments you want to show in the Key Editor.
- You have added the editors whose points you want to copy/paste.

PROCEDURE

1. In one of the open editors, select the points you want to copy.
2. Copy the selected points in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Ctrl/Cmd-C**.
   - Choose **Edit** > **Copy**.
3. Move the playhead to the position to which you want to paste the selected points.
4. Select the header of the editor into which you want to paste the selected points.
5. Paste the selected points in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Ctrl/Cmd-V**.

- Choose **Edit** > **Paste**.

RESULT

The selected points are copied to the selected position and editor, without deleting them from their original positions. They apply to all instruments shown in the Key Editor.

NOTE

- All the points of gradual dynamics and combined/force dynamics input in Write mode are copied, even if you only selected a single point.
- You can also repeat points immediately after themselves by selecting them, then pressing **R**. In each repetition, the earliest selected point replaces the last selected point.
- You can also copy points by selecting them, then **Alt/Opt**-dragging them to the position where you want to paste them.

RELATED LINKS

Showing instruments in the Key Editor on page 623
Moving the playhead on page 502
Copying dynamic points to other instruments on page 649
Copying MIDI points to other instruments on page 655

Deleting points in the Key Editor

You can delete selected points from multiple editors simultaneously.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Key Editor** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- **Select** is selected in the Key Editor panel toolbar.
- You have selected the instruments you want to show in the Key Editor.
- You have added the editors whose points you want to delete.

PROCEDURE

1. In any of the open editors, select the points you want to delete.

   TIP

   You can select points in multiple editors simultaneously.

2. Delete the selected points in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Backspace or Delete**.
   - In the Key Editor panel toolbar, click **Delete**.

RESULT

The selected points are deleted.

Deleting dynamic points that overrode dynamics input in Write mode reverts those dynamics to their default points. Deleting the points of dynamics input in Write mode also deletes the corresponding dynamics.

Deleting tempo points also deletes their corresponding tempo marks or tempo mark signposts from layouts.

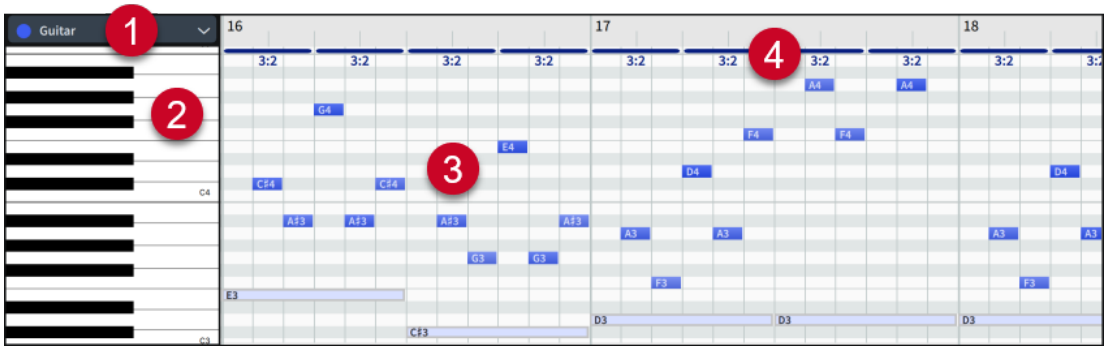
Notes in the Key Editor

In the Key Editor, notes appear as colored rectangles in either the piano roll editor for pitched instruments, or the percussion editor for unpitched percussion instruments and percussion kits.

Piano roll editor

The piano roll editor displays MIDI notes for pitched instruments in a continuous sequence. It is located in the Key Editor in the lower zone.

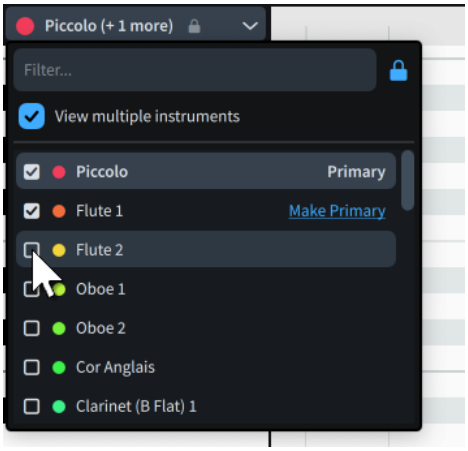
- You can show the piano roll editor by showing a pitched instrument in the Key Editor.



The piano roll editor comprises the following:

1 Instrument menu

Allows you to select the instruments you want to show in the piano roll editor, and to change the primary instrument when multiple instruments are shown.



2 Piano keyboard

Provides a reference for pitches.

3 Piano roll

Displays the notes belonging to the instruments shown in the Key Editor. The horizontal position of notes indicates their rhythm, and their width indicates their duration. The vertical position of notes indicates their pitch. When notes are sufficiently tall and wide, pitches are also displayed inside each note.

Instruments are automatically assigned a color according to their player order in the current layout, so that you can tell them apart more easily. This color is used consistently for the corresponding instrument, including in the Mixer and Key Editor.

When multiple instruments are shown, notes belonging to the primary instrument appear solid and bold in the piano roll editor, while notes belonging to secondary instruments appear with gray outlines and pastel colors.

4 **Tuplets**

Bars and ratios at the top of the piano roll editor indicate tuplets in the active voice.

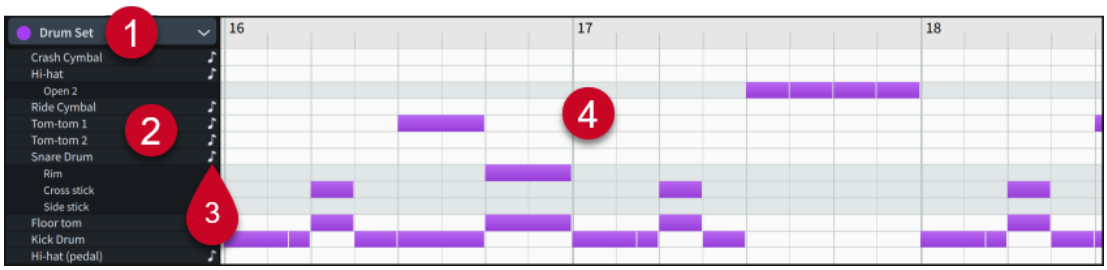
You can input and edit notes in the piano roll editor, including moving and transposing them. This also updates their notation in all applicable layouts.

RELATED LINKS
Played vs. notated note durations on page 639
Showing instruments in the Key Editor on page 623
Track overview on page 486
Mixer on page 667
Tuplets on page 1271
Voices on page 1303
Inputting notes into multiple voices on page 221
Changing the voice of existing notes on page 442

Percussion editor

The percussion editor displays MIDI notes for unpitched percussion instruments in a continuous sequence. It is located in the Key Editor in the lower zone.

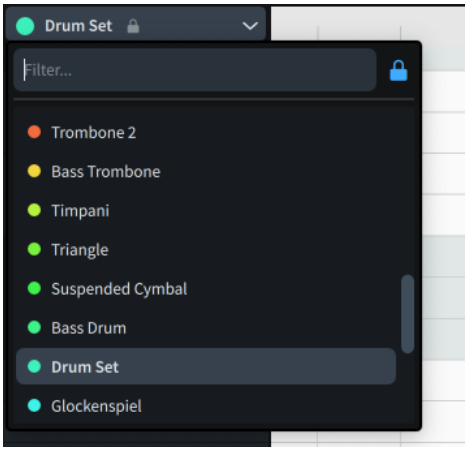
- You can show the percussion editor by showing an unpitched percussion instrument or percussion kit in the Key Editor.



The percussion editor comprises the following:

1 **Instrument menu**

Allows you to select the instrument you want to show in the percussion editor. You can only show one percussion kit or individual percussion instrument at a time.



2 **Percussion instrument names and playing techniques**

In the percussion editor, each unpitched percussion instrument has its own row, including when they are in a percussion kit. Alternative playing techniques are listed beneath the corresponding unpitched percussion instrument.

3 **Percussion Rhythmic Grid**

Allows you to set a different default note duration for each unpitched percussion instrument independently. Only available when the **Drumstick** tool is selected.

4 **Percussion editor**

Displays the notes belonging to the instruments shown in the Key Editor. The vertical position of notes indicates their instrument and playing technique, where applicable. The horizontal position of notes indicates their rhythm, and their width indicates their duration.

Instruments are automatically assigned a color according to their player order in the current layout, so that you can tell them apart more easily. This color is used consistently for the corresponding instrument, including in the Mixer and Key Editor. Percussion kits are assigned a single color for the whole kit.

RELATED LINKS

Percussion maps on page 700
Showing instruments in the Key Editor on page 623
Inputting notes using the Drumstick tool on page 633
Track overview on page 486
Playing techniques for unpitched percussion instruments on page 1282

Inputting notes in the Key Editor

You can input notes in the Key Editor, in either the piano roll editor for pitched instruments, or in the percussion editor for unpitched percussion instruments and percussion kits. Notes you input in the Key Editor also appear in all applicable layouts.

PREREQUISITE

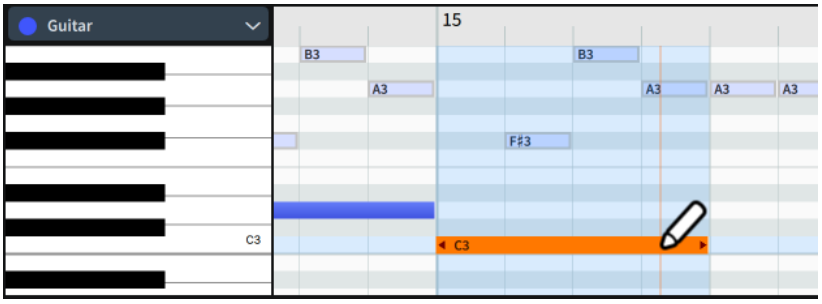
- The lower zone is shown.
- **Key Editor** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- You have selected the instruments you want to show in the Key Editor.
- If you want to input notes into a specific voice for an instrument, you have created that voice in Write mode and input at least one note into it.
- You have chosen the appropriate rhythmic grid resolution.

PROCEDURE

1. Optional: If you want to input notes into a specific voice, select it from the voice selector in the Key Editor panel toolbar.
2. Select the **Draw** tool in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Shift-Alt/Opt-2**.
   - In the Key Editor panel toolbar, click **Draw**.
   - In the Key Editor, right-click and hold to show the quick tool selector, move the mouse pointer to **Draw**, then release the mouse.
3. Click **Rhythmic Grid** and choose the default note duration you want.
4. Input notes in any of the following ways:

- To input single notes with the default note duration, click in the piano roll/percussion editor at each rhythmic position where you want to input a note.
- To input notes with any duration, click and drag horizontally in the piano roll/percussion editor at the required pitch position and for the required duration.

  As you drag, highlights help you to reference durations against the ruler, pitches against the piano keyboard in the piano roll editor, and notes against instruments/playing techniques in the percussion editor.



RESULT

For pitched instruments, notes are input at the pitches indicated by the piano keyboard on the left of the piano roll, and into the active voice indicated by the voice selector in the Key Editor panel toolbar.

For unpitched percussion instruments and kits, notes are input into the instrument in the corresponding row of the percussion editor.

When you click once, notes are input with the default note duration, set by the Key Editor rhythmic grid resolution. When you click and drag, their duration is determined by the width of your drag.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

You can change both the notated and played durations of notes.

RELATED LINKS

Hiding/Showing zones on page 44
Zooming in/out of the Key Editor on page 625
Changing the height of the Key Editor on page 625
Changing the Key Editor rhythmic grid resolution on page 626
Inputting notes into multiple voices on page 221
Changing the voice of existing notes on page 442
Enabling independent voice playback on page 506
Played vs. notated note durations on page 639

Inputting notes using the Drumstick tool

The **Drumstick** tool allows you to input notes with a different rhythmic duration for each unpitched percussion instrument independently.

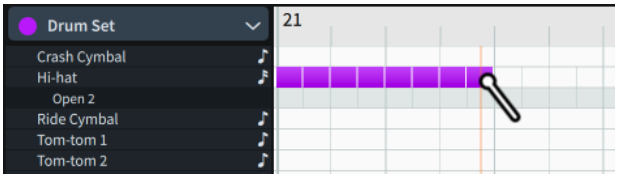
PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Key Editor** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- You have selected the unpitched percussion instrument or percussion kit you want to show in the Key Editor.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the **Drumstick** tool in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Shift-Alt/Opt-3**.
   - In the Key Editor panel toolbar, click **Drumstick**.
   - In the Key Editor, right-click and hold to show the quick tool selector, move the mouse pointer to **Drumstick**, then release the mouse.
2. In the percussion editor header, click **Percussion Rhythmic Grid** for each instrument and choose its required note duration.

   For example, you might set quarter notes for the kick drum, and eighth notes for the hi-hat.
3. Input notes in any of the following ways:
   - To input single notes, click in the percussion editor at each rhythmic position where you want to input a note.
   - To input multiple notes, click and drag horizontally in the percussion editor.



RESULT

Notes are input with the note duration set for the corresponding instrument, either a single note per click, or to fill the region in which you clicked and dragged.

TIP

When **Drumstick** is selected, you can also delete notes by clicking them.

Moving notes in the Key Editor

You can move notes rhythmically in the Key Editor. This also affects how the selected notes are notated in all applicable layouts.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Key Editor** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- You have selected the instruments you want to show in the Key Editor.
- You have chosen the appropriate rhythmic grid resolution.

PROCEDURE

1. In the Key Editor panel toolbar, click **Notated Durations** to show notated note durations.
2. In the piano roll/percussion editor, select the notes you want to move rhythmically.
3. Move the selected notes in any of the following ways:
   - To move them to the right, press **Alt/Opt-Right Arrow**.
   - To move them to the left, press **Alt/Opt-Left Arrow**.
   - Click and drag them to the right/left.

TIP

As you drag, highlights help you to reference durations against the ruler, pitches against the piano keyboard in the piano roll editor, and notes against instruments/playing techniques in the percussion editor.

RESULT

The selected notes are moved to new rhythmic positions. If you selected multiple notes, they are moved together as a block.

Key commands move notes according to the current rhythmic grid resolution. Clicking and dragging moves notes according to the current Key Editor rhythmic grid resolution.

RELATED LINKS

Hiding/Showing zones on page 44
Rhythmic grid on page 204
Changing the Key Editor rhythmic grid resolution on page 626
Moving percussion notes between instruments/playing techniques on page 637

Lengthening/Shortening notes in the Key Editor

You can change the notated duration of notes in the Key Editor. This also affects how the selected notes are notated in all applicable layouts.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Key Editor** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- You have selected the instruments you want to show in the Key Editor.
- You have chosen the appropriate rhythmic grid resolution.

PROCEDURE

1. In the Key Editor panel toolbar, click **Notated Durations** to show notated note durations.
2. In the piano roll/percussion editor, select the notes you want to lengthen/shorten.
3. Lengthen/Shorten the selected notes in any of the following ways:
   - To lengthen notes by the current rhythmic grid resolution, press **Shift-Alt/Opt-Right Arrow**.
   - To shorten notes by the current rhythmic grid resolution, press **Shift-Alt/Opt-Left Arrow**.
   - To double the length of notes, press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-Alt/Opt-Right Arrow**.
   - To halve the length of notes, press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-Alt/Opt-Left Arrow**.
   - Click and drag the right end of one of the selected notes to the length you want.

     TIP

     As you drag, highlights help you to reference durations against the ruler, pitches against the piano keyboard in the piano roll editor, and notes against instruments/playing techniques in the percussion editor.

RESULT

The selected notes are lengthened/shortened.

Key commands lengthen/shorten notes according to the current rhythmic grid resolution. Clicking and dragging lengthens/shortens notes according to the current Key Editor rhythmic grid resolution.

RELATED LINKS

Selecting items in the Key Editor on page 627
Note durations on page 247
Played vs. notated note durations on page 639
Rhythmic grid on page 204
Changing the Key Editor rhythmic grid resolution on page 626
Enabling independent voice playback on page 506

Transposing notes in the piano roll editor

You can transpose notes in the piano roll editor by moving them vertically to other pitch positions. This also affects how the selected notes are notated in all applicable layouts.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Key Editor** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- You have selected the instruments you want to show in the Key Editor.

PROCEDURE

1. In the piano roll editor, select the notes you want to transpose.
2. Transpose the notes in any of the following ways:
   - To move notes up one staff position, such as from C to D, press **Alt/Opt-Up Arrow**.
   - To move notes down one staff position, such as from D to C, press **Alt/Opt-Down Arrow**.
   - To transpose notes up a single octave division, such as a half-step (semitone) in 12-EDO or a quarter tone in 24-EDO, press **Shift-Alt/Opt-Up Arrow**.
   - To transpose notes down a single octave division, such as a half-step (semitone) in 12-EDO or a quarter tone in 24-EDO, press **Shift-Alt/Opt-Down Arrow**.
   - To transpose notes up an octave, press **Ctrl/Cmd-Alt/Opt-Up Arrow**.
   - To transpose notes down an octave, press **Ctrl/Cmd-Alt/Opt-Down Arrow**.
   - Click and drag them upwards/downwards.

     TIP

     As you drag, highlights help you to reference durations against the ruler, and pitches against the piano keyboard.

RESULT

The selected notes are transposed according to their new pitch positions in the piano roll editor.

RELATED LINKS

Hiding/Showing zones on page 44
Equal Division of the Octave (EDO) on page 918

Transposing tools on page 444

Moving percussion notes between instruments/playing techniques

You can move notes to other instruments and playing techniques in the percussion editor; for example, if you want hi-hat notes to be played on a cymbal instead. This also affects how the selected notes are notated in all applicable layouts.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Key Editor** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- You have selected the unpitched percussion instrument or percussion kit you want to show in the Key Editor.

PROCEDURE

1. In the percussion editor, select the notes you want to move to other instruments/playing techniques.
2. Move the notes in any of the following ways:
   - To move notes to the instrument above, press **Alt/Opt-Up Arrow**.
   - To move notes to the instrument below, press **Alt/Opt-Down Arrow**.
   - To cycle notes upwards through the playing techniques of their current instrument, press **Shift-Alt/Opt-Up Arrow**.
   - To cycle notes downwards through the playing techniques of their current instrument, press **Shift-Alt/Opt-Down Arrow**.
   - Click and drag them upwards/downwards.

     TIP

     As you drag, highlights help you to reference durations against the ruler, and notes against instruments/playing techniques.

RESULT

The selected notes are moved to the instrument/playing technique in the corresponding row in the percussion editor.

RELATED LINKS

Percussion editor on page 631
Playing techniques for unpitched percussion instruments on page 1282

Copying and pasting notes in the Key Editor

You can copy and paste notes in the piano roll and percussion editors, including to other pitched instruments and voices, and repeating them directly after themselves.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Key Editor** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- **Select** is selected in the Key Editor panel toolbar.
- You have selected the instruments you want to show in the Key Editor.

PROCEDURE

1. In the piano roll/percussion editor, select the notes you want to copy.
2. Copy the selected notes in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Ctrl/Cmd-C**.
   - Choose **Edit** > **Copy**.
3. Move the playhead to the position to which you want to paste the selected notes.
4. Optional: If you want to paste notes to another instrument, make that instrument the primary instrument.
5. Optional: If you want to paste notes into another voice, select that voice from the voice selector in the Key Editor toolbar.
6. Paste the selected notes in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Ctrl/Cmd-V**.
   - Choose **Edit** > **Paste**.

RESULT

The selected notes are copied to the selected position, instrument, and voice, without deleting them from their original positions. By default, any MIDI CC points in the copied range are also pasted.

TIP

- You can also repeat notes immediately after themselves by selecting them, then pressing **R**.
- You can also copy notes by selecting them, then **Alt/Opt**-dragging them to the position where you want to paste them.

RELATED LINKS

Moving the playhead on page 502
Disabling automatic copying of MIDI data when pasting on page 436
Copying dynamic points to other instruments on page 649
Copying MIDI points to other instruments on page 655
Copying and pasting notes/items on page 433

Deleting notes in the Key Editor

You can delete notes in the Key Editor. This also removes notes from all applicable layouts.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Key Editor** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- You have selected the instruments you want to show in the Key Editor.

PROCEDURE

1. Optional: If **Select** is selected in the Key Editor panel toolbar, select the notes you want to delete in the piano roll/percussion editor.
2. Delete notes in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Backspace or Delete**.
   - In the Key Editor panel toolbar, click **Delete**.

- In the Key Editor panel toolbar, click **Drumstick**, then click each note you want to delete in the percussion editor.

Played vs. notated note durations

In the Key Editor, you can show notes with their played duration or notated duration.

Played duration

When **Played Durations** is selected in the Key Editor panel toolbar, notes in the piano roll/percussion editor are each shown with two components:

- A filled, light-colored rectangle showing the played duration of the note.
- A thin, darker rod showing the notated duration of the note.

This allows you to change the played, sounding duration of notes. For example, notes with staccato articulations are played for less time than their notated duration, whereas notes under slurs are played for longer than their notated duration.

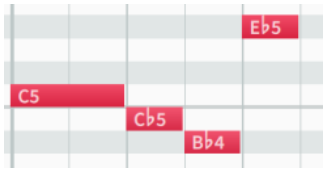
Notated duration

When **Notated Durations** is selected in the Key Editor panel toolbar, notes in the piano roll/percussion editor appear as single rectangles whose width corresponds to the notated duration of the note. This allows you to change the duration of notes.

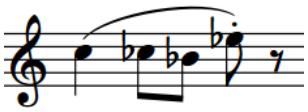
EXAMPLE

The following examples all contain the same musical phrase, shown in different ways.

Played duration



Notated duration



Score

RELATED LINKS

Key Editor panel toolbar on page 621
Slurs in playback on page 1178
Articulations in playback on page 728
Changing the duration of notes on page 248
Lengthening/Shortening notes in the Key Editor on page 635

Changing the played duration of notes

You can change the played duration of notes individually, both at the start and end of notes. For example, you can make notes sound for longer, or start sounding later.

PREREQUISITE

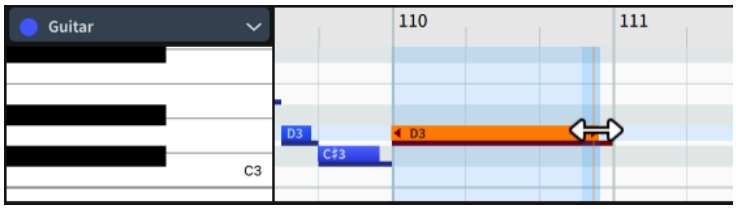
- The lower zone is shown.
- **Key Editor** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

- You have selected the instruments you want to show in the Key Editor.

PROCEDURE

1. In the Key Editor panel toolbar, click **Played Durations** to show played note durations.
2. In the piano roll/percussion editor, select the notes whose played duration you want to change.
3. Click and drag the start or end of one of the notes to the right/left.

   When the mouse pointer is in the correct position, it appears as a split arrow.



RESULT

The played duration of the selected notes is changed.

TIP

You can assign key commands for increasing/decreasing playback start/end offsets in **Preferences** > **Key Commands** > **Note Editing**. You can use these commands when **Played Durations** is selected in the Key Editor panel toolbar.

RELATED LINKS

Selecting items in the Key Editor on page 627
Key Commands page in the Preferences dialog on page 59

Resetting playback overrides

You can remove all changes made to how individual notes play back; for example, if you previously changed the played duration of notes and want to revert them to their default start position, length, and velocity.

Removing playback overrides also removes any offsets to the start and end position of notes imported from MIDI files with preserved note positions.

NOTE

Any note velocities that are set on notes are reflected in playback, including from imported MIDI files or MIDI recording. If you want dynamics you input in Write mode to be reflected in playback instead, you must remove playback overrides.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the notes whose playback overrides you want to reset.

   You can do this in the music area, piano roll editor, percussion editor, or Velocity editor.
2. Choose **Play** > **Reset Playback Overrides**.

RESULT

All playback overrides are removed from the selected notes.

RELATED LINKS
Large selections on page 403
Selecting/Deselecting notes and items individually on page 401
Music area on page 35
Piano roll editor on page 630
Percussion editor on page 631
Resetting note velocity on page 644
MIDI recording on page 252
Importing MIDI on page 85
Opening projects/files on page 72

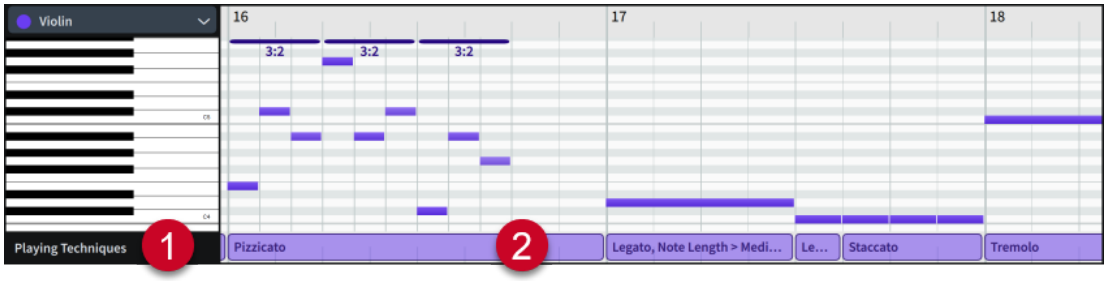
Playing Techniques editor

The Playing Techniques editor displays where playing techniques are in use for the corresponding instrument or voice; for example, as a result of inputting playing techniques, slurs, or articulations. It is located in the Key Editor in the lower zone.

- You can hide/show the Playing Techniques editor by clicking **Playing Techniques** in the Key Editor panel toolbar.

  NOTE

  You can only show the Playing Techniques editor when a single instrument/voice is shown in the Key Editor.



The Playing Techniques editor comprises the following:

1 **Editor header**

Displays the name of the editor.

2 **Playing technique regions**

Display the playing technique and note length condition that apply to notes in the region. You can hover your mouse pointer over playing technique regions to see the following related information:

- Any playback techniques, switches, and other effects in place, such as adjustments for articulations
- Expression map used for the region
- Channel in the VST or MIDI instrument used for the region
- VST or MIDI instrument used for the region

NOTE

You cannot change playing techniques in the Playing Techniques editor. You can only change them in Write mode.

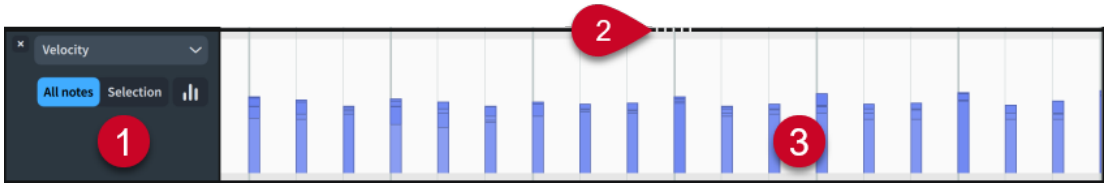
RELATED LINKS
Hiding/Showing zones on page 44
Playing techniques on page 1062
Input methods for playing techniques, pedal lines, string indicators, and harp pedal diagrams on page 351
Playback techniques on page 706
Expression maps on page 682
Showing instruments in the Key Editor on page 623
Moving percussion notes between instruments/playing techniques on page 637
Enabling independent voice playback on page 506

Velocity editor

The velocity editor allows you to view and edit the velocity of notes belonging to the instruments/voices shown in the Key Editor. It is located in the Key Editor in the lower zone.

- You can show the Velocity editor by adding an editor to the Key Editor, then selecting **Velocity** from the editor menu.

Velocity is often used to control the dynamics of non-sustaining instruments.



The Velocity editor comprises the following:

1 Editor header

Contains the following options:

- **Editor menu**: Allows you to change the MIDI controller or editor type shown in the editor. MIDI controllers into which you have already input points appear in the first menu level.
- **Velocity edit scope**: Allows you to change the scope of changes you make to velocity values. Only available when **Draw**, **Line**, or **Transform** is selected in the Key Editor panel toolbar.
  - **All notes**: Allows you to edit the velocity of all notes shown in the Velocity editor.
  - **Selection**: Allows you to edit the velocity of selected notes only.
- **Histogram**: Shows the Histogram tool in the editor.

2 Splitter

Allows you to change the height of the editor by clicking and dragging. If multiple editors are open, this affects the height of the editors either side of the splitter.

3 Velocity bars

Velocities appear as vertical bars in the Velocity editor. Every note has its own velocity bar and a velocity value. When multiple notes exist at the same rhythmic position, such as in chords, the velocities for all notes appear stacked on top of each other, ordered by their value.

Velocity bars with higher values appear with bolder colors.

You can select velocity bars directly in the Velocity editor or by selecting their corresponding notes, in either the piano roll editor, percussion editor, or music area.

TIP

- Clicking and dragging velocity bars causes a read-out to appear temporarily, showing their value.
- You can use the Histogram and Transform tools to change velocity values.

RELATED LINKS
Key Editor panel on page 619
Key Editor panel toolbar on page 621
Histogram tool on page 659
Transform tool on page 663
Hiding/Showing zones on page 44
Adding/Closing editors in the Key Editor on page 627
Showing instruments in the Key Editor on page 623
Inputting notes on page 211
Inputting notes into multiple voices on page 221
Inputting notes in the Key Editor on page 632
Voices on page 1303

Changing the velocity of notes

You can change the velocity of notes individually, including for a single note in a chord, or to create a consistent increase/decrease in velocity across a range of notes.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Key Editor** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- You have selected the instruments you want to show in the Key Editor.
- You have added the Velocity editor to the Key Editor.

PROCEDURE

1. Select one of the following tools, depending on how you want to change velocities:
   - To change the velocity of selected notes, select **Select** by pressing **Shift-Alt/Opt-1** or clicking **Select** in the Key Editor panel toolbar.
   - To change the velocity using free shapes, select **Draw** by pressing **Shift-Alt/Opt-2** or clicking **Draw** in the Key Editor panel toolbar.
   - To change the velocity using consistent slopes, select **Line** by clicking **Line** in the Key Editor panel toolbar.
2. Optional: If you selected **Select**, select the notes whose velocity you want to change, such as individual notes in chords. This also selects their velocity bars.
3. Optional: If you selected either the **Draw** tool or **Line** tool, choose one of the following velocity edit scopes in the Velocity editor header:
   - **All notes**
   - **Selection**
4. In the Velocity editor, change the velocity in one of the following ways:
   - If you selected **Select**, click and drag the top of one of the selected velocity bars upwards/downwards.

- If you selected **Draw**, click and draw any shape across the required range.
- If you selected **Line**, click and drag a line across the required range.

RESULT

The velocity of the affected notes is changed. If you selected the **Selection** velocity edit scope, this only applies to selected velocity bars.

TIP

You can also use the Transform and Histogram tools to change velocities on a large scale in different ways.

Resetting note velocity

You can remove changes you have made to the velocity of notes and reset them to their default velocity. You can do this for all notes belonging to an instrument, all notes in a specific voice, or only selected notes.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Key Editor** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- You have selected the instruments you want to show in the Key Editor.
- You have added the Velocity editor to the Key Editor.

PROCEDURE

1. In the Velocity editor header, activate **Histogram** to show the Histogram tool.
2. At the top of the Histogram tool, choose one of the following filters:
   - **All notes**
   - **Voice**
   - **Selection**
3. Click **Reset**.

RESULT

Any changes you have made to the velocity of notes in the selected filter are reset.

NOTE

This also resets the played duration of the selected notes.

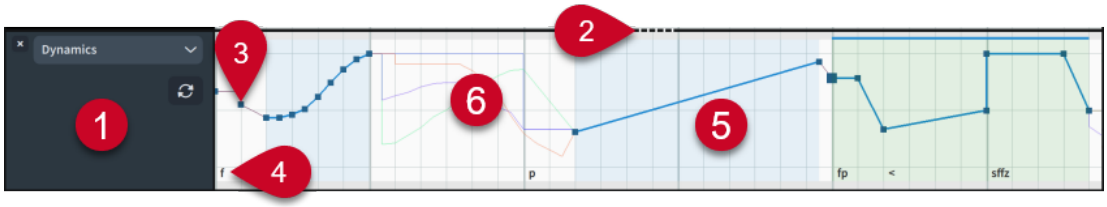
RELATED LINKS

Histogram tool on page 659
Selecting items in the Key Editor on page 627
Resetting playback overrides on page 640

Dynamics editor

The Dynamics editor allows you to view, input, and edit dynamics for the instruments/voices shown in the Key Editor. It is located in the Key Editor in the lower zone.

- You can show the Dynamics editor by adding an editor to the Key Editor, then selecting **Dynamics** from the editor menu.



The Dynamics editor comprises the following:

1 Editor header

Contains the following options:

- **Editor menu**: Allows you to change the MIDI controller or editor type shown in the editor. MIDI controllers into which you have already input points appear in the first menu level.
- **Sync** : Copies all points in the editor from the primary instrument to secondary instruments. Only available when multiple instruments are shown in the Key Editor.

2 Splitter

Allows you to change the height of the editor by clicking and dragging. If multiple editors are open, this affects the height of the editors either side of the splitter.

3 Dynamic point

An immediate change in dynamic, input either in Write mode or using the **Draw** tool in the Dynamics editor. Immediate dynamic points are constant by default.

The maximum range of dynamic levels is from 8 to -8, loudest to quietest.

- Dynamic level 3 is equivalent to the dynamic ***fff***.
- Dynamic level 0 is equivalent to the dynamic ***mf***.
- Dynamic level -3 is equivalent to the dynamic ***ppp***.

NOTE

- Clicking and dragging dynamic points causes a read-out to appear temporarily, showing their dynamic level.
- Only points that are identical for all instruments shown in the Key Editor are editable.

4 Dynamic text

Shows the dynamic level or crescendo/diminuendo symbol of dynamics input in Write mode; that is, dynamic points that correspond to notation items.

5 Dynamic region

Blue highlighted regions contain multiple points, input by clicking and dragging in a single motion in the Dynamics editor with either the **Draw** tool or **Line** tool. By default, dynamic points in regions input in the Dynamics editor are linear.

Green highlighted regions represent gradual dynamics and combined/force dynamics, such as ***fp*** and ***sffz***, input in Write mode.

Thin blue bars at the top of the Editor represent dynamic groups.

NOTE

- Only points that are identical for all instruments shown in the Key Editor are editable.
- Dynamic regions that you input in the Dynamics editor override default playback adjustments for dynamics, such as humanization and increased dynamics for notes with accents. However, the dynamic curve setting still applies to dynamic regions.
- Default playback adjustments for dynamics, such as humanization and increased dynamics for notes with accents, still apply to notes within gradual dynamics that you input in Write mode.
- Start and end points for *messa di voce* regions are linked and always have the same value.
- Because the points of combined/force dynamics correspond to parameters of their envelopes, they function differently than other dynamic points. Combined dynamics have three points, while force dynamics have four points.

  For example, if you change the value of the second point of a force dynamic, the third point also moves because it controls the duration of the second point; they always have the same value. Similarly, you cannot move combined/force dynamic points outside their regions.

6 Dynamic value line

When multiple instruments are shown in the Key Editor, a value line is shown for each instrument, using its color.

RELATED LINKS
Key Editor panel on page 619
Hiding/Showing zones on page 44
Adding/Closing editors in the Key Editor on page 627
Showing instruments in the Key Editor on page 623
Dynamics on page 828
Groups of dynamics on page 853
Input methods for dynamics on page 296
Changing dynamic levels on page 835
Rhythmic grid on page 204

Inputting dynamic points

You can input single dynamic points and dynamic regions in the Dynamics editor. Dynamic points that you input in the Dynamics editor do not appear in layouts.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Key Editor** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- You have selected the instruments you want to show in the Key Editor.
- You have added the Dynamics editor to the Key Editor.

PROCEDURE

1. Select one of the following tools, depending on the type of dynamic points you want to input:
   - To input single dynamic points, or dynamic regions containing multiple dynamic points at regular intervals, select **Draw** by pressing **Shift-Alt/Opt-2** or clicking **Draw** in the Key Editor panel toolbar.

- To input smooth dynamic regions, select **Line** by clicking **Line** in the Key Editor panel toolbar.

2. Input dynamic points in one of the following ways:
   - To input single dynamic points, click in the Dynamics editor at each position where you want a dynamic point.
   - To input a dynamic region containing multiple dynamic points at regular intervals, click and drag in a single motion in the Dynamics editor.
   - To input smooth dynamic regions, click and drag in the Dynamics editor from where you want the region to start to where you want it to end.

RESULT

Dynamic points are input for all instruments shown in the Key Editor.

- If you used the **Draw** tool, separate dynamic points are input at each position you clicked.
- If you clicked and dragged in a single motion using the **Draw** tool, dynamic points are input at 32nd note intervals in a dynamic region.
- If you used the **Line** tool, two dynamic points are input in a dynamic region, one at each end of the dragged range.

By default, dynamic points input using the **Draw** tool are constant, while dynamic points in dynamic regions are linear.

Dynamic regions appear with highlighted regions in the Dynamics editor.

Dynamic points input in the Dynamics editor affect playback, but are not shown in layouts.

NOTE

- Inputting dynamic points/events at the positions of dynamics input in Write mode overrides default playback adjustments for those dynamics. Single dynamic points only override the dynamic level. Dynamic regions also override, for example, humanization and increased dynamics for notes with accents. However, the dynamic curve setting still applies to dynamic regions.
- For sound libraries that use MIDI CC 1 to control dynamics, the MIDI CC editor for CC 1 displays values from the dynamics you input, including dynamic points, combined with humanization.

Moving dynamic points

You can move individual dynamic points, including moving them upwards and downwards to change their dynamic level. For example, if you want individual dynamics to take effect slightly earlier, or to adjust the volume of specific existing dynamics.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Key Editor** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- **Select** is selected in the Key Editor panel toolbar.
- You have selected the instruments you want to show in the Key Editor.
- You have added the Dynamics editor to the Key Editor.

PROCEDURE

1. In the Dynamics editor, select the dynamic points you want to move.

TIP

To move dynamics input in Write mode rhythmically, you can select only their start point, including for gradual dynamics and combined/force dynamics that have multiple points.

2. Move the selected dynamic points in any of the following ways:
   - Click and drag them in any direction.

     NOTE

     You can only move dynamics input in Write mode either horizontally or vertically at a time.

   - To move dynamic points to the right/left only, hold **Shift** while dragging them to the right/left.
   - To move dynamic points upwards/downwards only, hold **Shift** while dragging them upwards/downwards.
   - To move a single dynamic input in Write mode to the next notehead on the staff, press **Alt/Opt-Right Arrow**.
   - To move a single dynamic input in Write mode to the previous notehead on the staff, press **Alt/Opt-Left Arrow**.
   - To move dynamic points to the right according to the current rhythmic grid resolution, press **Ctrl/Cmd-Alt/Opt-Right Arrow**.
   - To move dynamic points to the left according to the current rhythmic grid resolution, press **Ctrl/Cmd-Alt/Opt-Left Arrow**.

     NOTE

     When multiple dynamics are selected, you can only move them according to the current rhythmic grid resolution.

RESULT

The selected dynamic points are moved to new positions. Moving them to the right/left affects their rhythmic positions. Moving them upwards/downwards affects their dynamic level.

Moving the end points of gradual dynamics to the right/left lengthens/shortens the corresponding gradual dynamics rhythmically. Their notated length is automatically updated in all applicable layouts.

NOTE

- Moving dynamic points for linked dynamics affects all linked dynamics.
- You cannot drag dynamics input in Write mode beyond other existing dynamic points during the same move. Releasing the mouse causes the moved dynamic points to change the value of the existing dynamic point.

RELATED LINKS

Linked dynamics on page 855
Gradual dynamics on page 842
Changing dynamic levels on page 835
Lengthening/Shortening items on page 410

Copying dynamic points to other instruments

When multiple instruments are shown in the Key Editor, you can copy dynamic points from the primary instrument to secondary instruments. You can copy only individual points and regions, or all points belonging to the primary instrument in the selected flow.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Key Editor** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- You have added the Dynamics editor to the Key Editor.
- Multiple instruments are shown in the Key Editor.

PROCEDURE

1. Optional: If you want to sync individual dynamic points or regions only, click **Sync Region** in the Key Editor panel toolbar to select **Sync Region**.
2. In the Dynamics editor, do one of the following:
   - To copy individual dynamic points or regions, click each dynamic point and region, or click and drag across multiple dynamic points and regions.
   - To copy all dynamic points in the current flow, click **Sync** in the editor header.

RESULT

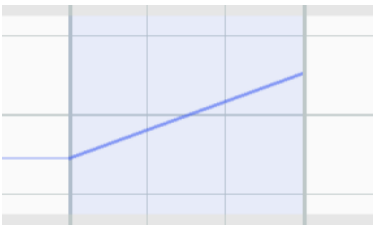
The corresponding dynamic points are copied from the primary instrument to secondary instruments, and become editable for all instruments shown in the Key Editor.

Existing dynamic points in the affected regions belonging to secondary instruments are overwritten.

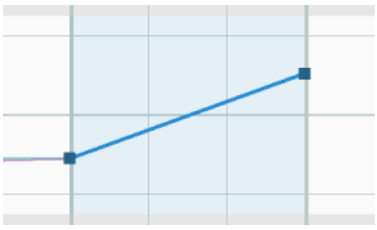
TIP

When multiple instruments are shown in the Key Editor, you can input dynamic points for all instruments directly.

EXAMPLE



Dynamic region in primary instrument only



Dynamic region copied to secondary instruments

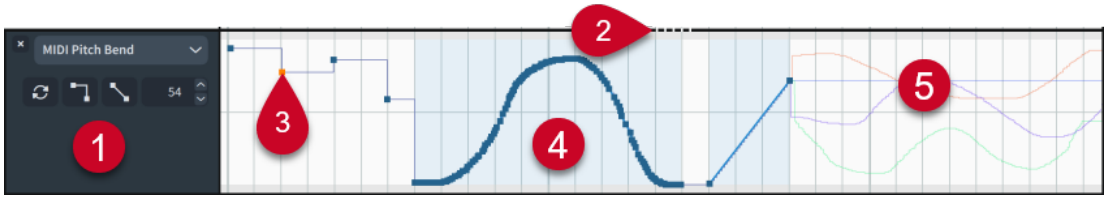
RELATED LINKS

Adding/Closing editors in the Key Editor on page 627
Showing instruments in the Key Editor on page 623
Selecting items in the Key Editor on page 627
Switching between flows in the track overview on page 487
Copying and pasting points in the Key Editor on page 628

MIDI Pitch Bend editor

The MIDI Pitch Bend editor allows you to view, input, and edit MIDI pitch bend controller data for the instruments shown in the Key Editor. It is located in the Key Editor in the lower zone.

- You can show the MIDI Pitch Bend editor by adding an editor to the Key Editor, then selecting **MIDI Pitch Bend** from the editor menu.



The MIDI Pitch Bend editor comprises the following:

1 Editor header

Contains the following options:

- **Editor menu**: Allows you to change the MIDI controller or editor type shown in the editor. MIDI controllers into which you have already input points appear in the first menu level.
- **Sync** : Copies all points in the editor from the primary instrument to secondary instruments. Only available when multiple instruments are shown in the Key Editor.
- **Convert to Constant Point** : Makes the selected points constant. Only applies to points in regions.
- **Convert to Linear Point** : Makes the selected points linear. Only applies to points in regions.
- **Value field**: Displays the value of the earliest selected MIDI point. You can change this value in the value field, or click and drag the point upwards/downwards in the editor. The available range for MIDI pitch bend is -100% to +100%.

2 Splitter

Allows you to change the height of the editor by clicking and dragging. If multiple editors are open, this affects the height of the editors either side of the splitter.

3 MIDI point

A single change to the MIDI pitch, input using the **Draw** tool. Individual MIDI points are constant by default. Only points that are identical for all instruments shown in the Key Editor are editable.

4 MIDI region

A highlighted region that contains multiple points, input by clicking and dragging in a single motion with either the **Draw** tool or **Line** tool.

By default, MIDI points in regions are linear, and the last point is constant. Only points that are identical for all instruments shown in the Key Editor are editable.

5 MIDI value line

When multiple instruments are shown in the Key Editor, a value line is shown for each instrument, using its color.

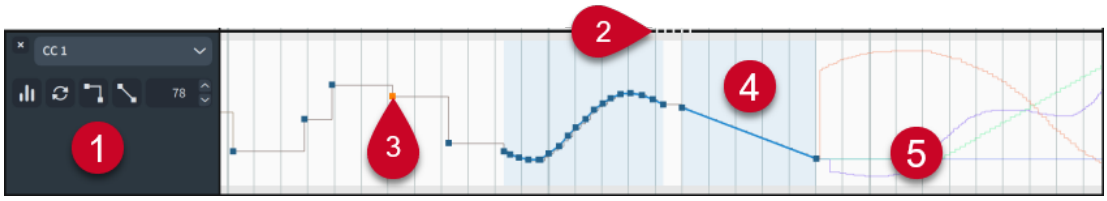
MIDI CC editor

The MIDI CC editor allows you to view, input, and edit data in any MIDI controller for the instruments shown in the Key Editor. It is located in the Key Editor in the lower zone.

- You can show the MIDI CC editor by adding an editor to the Key Editor, then selecting a MIDI controller from the editor menu.

TIP

- You can add multiple MIDI CC editors to the Key Editor simultaneously; for example, to copy MIDI points between two MIDI controllers.
- Dorico Elements displays generated values as non-editable value lines. For sound libraries that use MIDI CC 1 to control dynamics, the MIDI CC editor for CC 1 displays values from the dynamics you input, including dynamic points, combined with humanization.



The MIDI CC editor comprises the following:

1 Editor header

Contains the following options:

- **Editor menu**: Allows you to change the MIDI controller or editor type shown in the editor. MIDI controllers into which you have already input points appear in the first menu level.
- **Histogram** : Shows the Histogram tool in the editor.
- **Sync** : Copies all points in the editor from the primary instrument to secondary instruments. Only available when multiple instruments are shown in the Key Editor.
- **Convert to Constant Point** : Makes the selected points constant. Only applies to points in regions.
- **Convert to Linear Point** : Makes the selected points linear. Only applies to points in regions.
- **Value field**: Displays the value of the earliest selected MIDI point. You can change this value in the value field, or click and drag the point upwards/downwards in the editor. The available range for MIDI CC is 0 to 127.

2 Splitter

Allows you to change the height of the editor by clicking and dragging. If multiple editors are open, this affects the height of the editors either side of the splitter.

3 MIDI point

A single change to the MIDI value, input using the **Draw** tool. Individual MIDI points are constant by default. Only points that are identical for all instruments shown in the Key Editor are editable.

4 MIDI region

A highlighted region that contains multiple points, input by clicking and dragging in a single motion with either the **Draw** tool or **Line** tool.

By default, MIDI points in regions are linear, and the last point is constant. Only points that are identical for all instruments shown in the Key Editor are editable.

5 **MIDI value line**

When multiple instruments are shown in the Key Editor, a value line is shown for each instrument, using its color.

TIP

- Clicking and dragging MIDI points causes a read-out to appear temporarily, showing their value.
- You can use the Histogram and Transform tools to change MIDI CC values.
- MIDI CC data is included when exporting MIDI files.

RELATED LINKS
Key Editor panel on page 619
Histogram tool on page 659
Transform tool on page 663
Adding/Closing editors in the Key Editor on page 627
Showing instruments in the Key Editor on page 623
MIDI Pitch Bend editor on page 650
Copying and pasting points in the Key Editor on page 628
Exporting MIDI on page 95
Dynamics on page 828
Dynamics editor on page 645
Pedal lines in playback on page 1061
Dynamics in playback on page 857

Inputting MIDI points

You can input MIDI CC points into any MIDI controller, including pitch bend, in the MIDI CC and MIDI Pitch Bend editors.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Key Editor** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- You have selected the instruments you want to show in the Key Editor.
- You have added at least one MIDI CC or MIDI Pitch Bend editor to the Key Editor.

PROCEDURE

1. Select one of the following tools, depending on the MIDI points you want to input:
   - To input single MIDI points, or MIDI regions containing multiple points at regular intervals, select **Draw** by pressing **Shift-Alt/Opt-2** or clicking **Draw** in the Key Editor panel toolbar.
   - To input smooth MIDI regions, select **Line** by clicking **Line** in the Key Editor panel toolbar.
2. Input MIDI points in one of the following ways:
   - To input single MIDI points, click in the MIDI CC or MIDI Pitch Bend editor at each position where you want a MIDI point.

- To input a MIDI region containing multiple MIDI points at regular intervals, click and drag in a single motion in the MIDI CC or MIDI Pitch Bend editor.
- To input smooth MIDI regions, click and drag in the MIDI CC or MIDI Pitch Bend editor from where you want the region to start to where you want it to end.

TIP

The horizontal line in the middle of the MIDI Pitch Bend editor represents the unmodified pitch.

RESULT

MIDI points are input for all instruments shown in the Key Editor.

- If you used the **Draw** tool, separate MIDI points are input at each position you clicked.
- If you clicked and dragged in a single motion using the **Draw** tool, MIDI points are input at small intervals in a MIDI region.
- If you used the **Line** tool, two MIDI points are input in a MIDI region, one at each end of the dragged range.

By default, single MIDI points are constant, MIDI points in regions are linear, and the last MIDI point in regions is constant.

MIDI regions appear highlighted with colored backgrounds in the MIDI CC and MIDI Pitch Bend editors.

Making MIDI points constant/linear

You can make selected MIDI points in regions constant or linear after they have been input; for example, if you want some points in a region to be constant.

By default, MIDI points are constant when you input them separately, and linear when you click and drag them as a region. The last MIDI point in a region is constant.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Key Editor** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- **Select** is selected in the Key Editor panel toolbar.
- You have selected the instruments you want to show in the Key Editor.
- You have added at least one MIDI CC or MIDI Pitch Bend editor to the Key Editor.

PROCEDURE

1. In the MIDI CC or Pitch Bend editor, select the MIDI points in regions you want to make constant/linear.

   NOTE

   You can only make MIDI points in regions constant/linear.

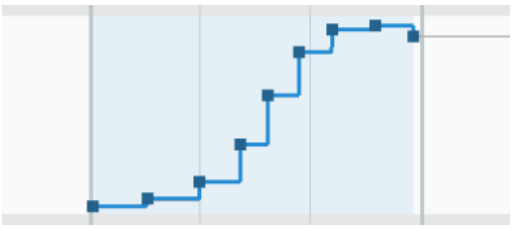
2. Do one of the following:
   - To make the selected points constant, click **Convert to Constant Point** in the editor header.
   - To make the selected points linear, click **Convert to Linear Point** in the editor header.

RESULT

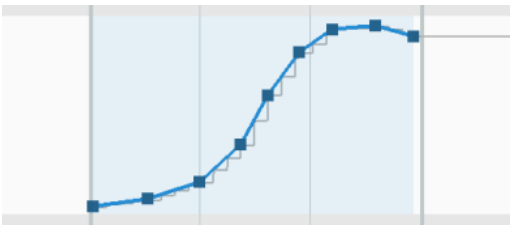
The selected MIDI points become constant or linear.

Value lines always appear horizontal after constant points. Value lines appear angled after linear points if the next point has a different value, indicating a smooth transition between the points.

EXAMPLE



Constant points in the MIDI CC editor



Linear points in the MIDI CC editor

Moving MIDI points

You can move individual MIDI points in the MIDI CC and MIDI Pitch Bend editors, including moving them upwards and downwards to change their values.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Key Editor** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- **Select** is selected in the Key Editor panel toolbar.
- You have selected the instruments you want to show in the Key Editor.
- You have added at least one MIDI CC or MIDI Pitch Bend editor to the Key Editor.

PROCEDURE

1. In the MIDI CC or Pitch Bend editor, select the MIDI points you want to move.

   NOTE

   You can only move MIDI points in a single editor at a time.

2. Move the selected MIDI points in any of the following ways:
   - Click and drag them in any direction.
   - To move them upwards/downwards only, hold **Shift** while dragging them upwards/downwards.
   - To move them to the right/left only, hold **Shift** while dragging them to the right/left.

     TIP

     You can also move MIDI points according to the current rhythmic grid resolution, as indicated in the status bar, by pressing **Alt/Opt-Right Arrow** / **Alt/Opt-Left Arrow**.

Copying MIDI points to other instruments

When multiple instruments are shown in the Key Editor, you can copy MIDI points from the primary instrument to secondary instruments. You can copy only individual points and regions, or all points belonging to the primary instrument in the selected flow.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Key Editor** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- You have added at least one MIDI CC or MIDI Pitch Bend editor to the Key Editor.
- Multiple instruments are shown in the Key Editor.

PROCEDURE

1. Optional: If you want to sync individual MIDI points or regions only, click **Sync Region** in the Key Editor panel toolbar to select **Sync Region**.
2. In the MIDI CC or MIDI Pitch Bend editor, do one of the following:
   - To copy individual MIDI points or regions, click each MIDI point and region, or click and drag across multiple MIDI points and regions.
   - To copy all MIDI points in the current flow, click **Sync** in the editor header.

RESULT

The corresponding MIDI points are copied from the primary instrument to secondary instruments, and become editable for all instruments shown in the Key Editor.

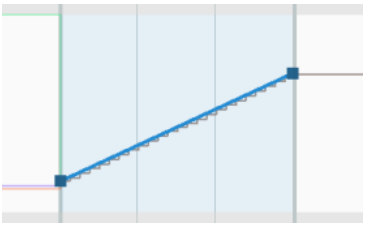
Existing MIDI points in the affected regions belonging to secondary instruments are overwritten.

TIP

When multiple instruments are shown in the Key Editor, you can input MIDI points for all instruments directly.

EXAMPLE

MIDI region in primary instrument only



MIDI region copied to secondary instruments

RELATED LINKS

Adding/Closing editors in the Key Editor on page 627
Showing instruments in the Key Editor on page 623
Selecting items in the Key Editor on page 627
Copying and pasting points in the Key Editor on page 628

Tempo editor

The Tempo editor allows you to view, input, and edit tempo changes. It is located in the Key Editor in the lower zone.

You can show the Tempo editor in any of the following ways:

- Add an editor to the Key Editor, then select **Tempo** from the editor menu.
- When the Key Editor is unlocked, select either a tempo mark or the Tempo track in Play mode.

  NOTE

  This shows the Tempo editor as the primary editor. To return to showing the piano roll/percussion editor and/or other editors in the Key Editor, you must select a note/item belonging to an instrument in the music area.

The Tempo editor comprises the following:

1 Editor header

Contains the following options:

- **Editor menu**: Allows you to change the MIDI controller or editor type shown in the editor. MIDI controllers into which you have already input points appear in the first menu level.
- **Range max. value field**: Allows you to set the maximum metronome mark value in the editor.
- **Tempo value field**: Displays the metronome mark value of the earliest selected tempo point, without decimal places. You can change this value in the value field, or click and drag the point upwards/downwards in the editor.

2 Splitter

Allows you to change the height of the editor by clicking and dragging. If multiple editors are open, this affects the height of the editors either side of the splitter.

3 Tempo point

An immediate change in tempo, input either in Write mode or using the **Draw** tool in the Tempo editor. Absolute tempo changes comprise a single constant point.

TIP

Clicking and dragging in the Tempo editor causes a read-out to appear temporarily, showing the metronome mark value of the mouse pointer position.

4 Tempo mark text

Shows the text of tempo marks input in Write mode; that is, tempo points that correspond to notation items.

5 Tempo region

A highlighted region with a linear point at the start and a constant point at the end, input by clicking and dragging in a single motion in the Tempo editor with the **Line** tool.

Tempo regions can also represent gradual tempo changes input in Write mode, such as *rallentando*.

Tempo points input in the Tempo editor appear as signposts in the music. Signposts are not printed by default, so if you want tempo points to appear in layouts as tempo marks, we recommend that you show them.

All tempo points input in the Tempo editor are included when exporting MIDI files.

RELATED LINKS
Key Editor panel on page 619
Tempo track on page 496
Adding/Closing editors in the Key Editor on page 627
Showing instruments in the Key Editor on page 623
Tempo marks on page 1204
Input methods for tempo marks on page 280

Inputting tempo changes in the Tempo editor

You can input single tempo changes and tempo regions in the Tempo editor. Tempo changes input in the Tempo editor do not appear in layouts, but instead are shown as signposts.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Key Editor** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- You have added the Tempo editor to the Key Editor.

PROCEDURE

1. Select one of the following tools, depending on the type of tempo change you want to input:
   - To input single absolute tempo changes, or multiple absolute tempo changes at regular intervals, select **Draw** by pressing **Shift-Alt/Opt-2** or clicking **Draw** in the Key Editor panel toolbar.
   - To input tempo regions, select **Line** by clicking **Line** in the Key Editor panel toolbar.
2. Input tempo changes in one of the following ways:
   - To input single absolute tempo changes, click in the Tempo editor at each position where you want a tempo change.
   - To input multiple absolute tempo changes at regular intervals, click and drag in the Tempo editor.
   - To input tempo regions, click and drag in the Tempo editor from where you want the region to start, to where you want it to end.

   TIP

   Clicking and dragging in the Tempo editor causes a read-out to appear temporarily, showing the metronome mark value of the mouse pointer position.

RESULT

- If you used the **Draw** tool and clicked multiple times, separate tempo changes are input at each position you clicked.

- If you clicked and dragged in a single motion using the **Draw** tool, tempo changes are input at 32nd note intervals.
- If you used the **Line** tool, two tempo changes are input in a tempo region, one at each end of the dragged range.

This affects the speed of playback, but the tempo changes are not shown in layouts. Instead, they appear as signposts.

Tempo changes input in the Tempo editor are included when exporting MIDI files.

RELATED LINKS
Key Editor panel toolbar on page 621
Signposts on page 426
Hiding/Showing tempo marks on page 1211

Moving tempo changes in the Tempo editor

You can move tempo changes to new rhythmic positions in the Tempo editor. This affects their rhythmic position in all applicable layouts.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Key Editor** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- **Select** is selected in the Key Editor panel toolbar.
- You have added the Tempo editor to the Key Editor.

PROCEDURE

1. In the Tempo editor, select the tempo changes you want to move.
2. To move the selected tempo changes without changing their metronome mark value, hold **Shift** while dragging them to the right/left.

   NOTE

   You cannot drag tempo regions and single tempo changes input in Write mode beyond other existing tempo changes during the same move. Releasing the mouse causes the moved tempo change to change the value of the existing tempo change.

RESULT

The selected tempo changes are moved rhythmically. When you move multiple selected absolute tempo changes, they maintain their positions relative to each other. This also affects their rhythmic positions in any layouts in which they appear.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

You can also move tempo changes vertically, which changes their metronome mark value.

Changing the tempo in the Tempo editor

You can change the metronome mark value of individual tempo changes in the Tempo editor, expressed in beats per minute.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.

- **Key Editor** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- **Select** is selected in the Key Editor panel toolbar.
- You have added the Tempo editor to the Key Editor.

PROCEDURE

1. In the Tempo editor, select the tempo changes whose metronome mark values you want to change.
2. To change the metronome mark values of the selected tempo changes without moving them rhythmically, hold **Shift** while dragging them upwards/downwards.

   Clicking and dragging in the Tempo editor causes a read-out to appear temporarily, showing the metronome mark value of the mouse pointer position.

RESULT

The metronome mark values of the selected tempo changes are changed proportionally. This affects the speed of playback, and the displayed metronome mark of any tempo changes also shown in layouts.

TIP

You can also change the metronome mark value of selected tempo changes using the **Tempo** value field in the Tempo editor header.

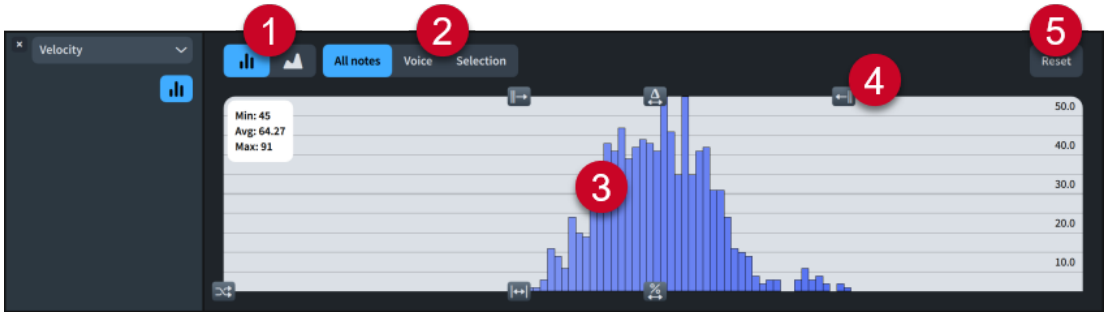
RELATED LINKS

Selecting items in the Key Editor on page 627

Histogram tool

The Histogram tool displays velocity and MIDI CC values as a chart, with values grouped according to their frequency distribution. It allows you to change values on a large scale, including across entire tracks; for example, increasing all velocity values proportionally.

- You can show the Histogram tool in the Velocity and MIDI CC editors by clicking **Histogram** in the corresponding editor header.



1 Chart shape

Allows you to change the shape of the Histogram chart.

- **Bars**: Values are displayed as bars.
- **Area**: Values are displayed as an area.

2 Histogram filter

Allows you to filter the values shown in the Histogram tool.

- **All/All notes**: Shows all values for all instruments currently shown in the Key Editor.
- **Voice**: Shows only notes in the selected voice. Only available in the Velocity editor.
- **Selection**: Shows only values for selected items.

3 **Histogram chart**

Shows values according to the selected filter. The X axis represents numerical values, while the Y axis represents the frequency distribution of the corresponding values.

4 **Histogram controls**

Allow you to change the values currently in view.

5 **Reset**

Resets all values currently in view.

TIP

If you want to change values on a smaller scale, you can use the Transform tool.

RELATED LINKS
Key Editor panel on page 619
Hiding/Showing zones on page 44
Adding/Closing editors in the Key Editor on page 627
Showing instruments in the Key Editor on page 623
Changing the velocity of notes on page 643
Voices on page 1303
Inputting notes into multiple voices on page 221
Changing the voice of existing notes on page 442
Transform tool on page 663
Velocity editor on page 642
MIDI CC editor on page 651

Histogram controls

Histogram controls allow you to change velocity and MIDI CC values on a large scale, in different ways.

- You can access Histogram controls when the Histogram tool is shown in the Key Editor.

Delta

Represents the center point of values. Allows you to move all displayed values to the right/left. This maintains explicit gaps between values.

Scale

Proportionally scales values. This maintains proportional relationships between values; that is, gaps between values widen when you scale multiply to the right, and narrow when you scale multiply to the left.

Spread

Spreads out values to both the right and left of the center point.

Lower Limit

Represents the lowest value. Allows you to raise low values.

Upper Limit

Represents the highest value. Allows you to lower high values.

Randomize

Allows you to randomize values by clicking on the button and dragging upwards/downwards. The higher your mouse pointer, the wider and more extreme the randomization. Randomization uses standard distribution on an approximate bell-shape.

Changing values using the Histogram tool

You can use the Histogram tool to change velocity and MIDI CC values on a large scale, including across entire tracks; for example, increasing all velocity values proportionally.

TIP

If you want to change values on a smaller scale, you can use the Transform tool.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Key Editor** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- You have selected the instruments you want to show in the Key Editor.
- You have added at least one Velocity or MIDI CC editor to the Key Editor.

PROCEDURE

1. In the header of each editor in which you want to use the Histogram tool, activate **Histogram** to show the Histogram tool.
2. Optional: Choose the appropriate Histogram tool filter for each editor.
3. Use the available Histogram controls as required.

   For example, you can click and drag **Scale** to the right to increase the values currently in view proportionally.

Changing the Histogram tool filter

You can change the values shown in, and therefore affected by, the Histogram tool using the available filters. For example, if you only want the Histogram tool to affect values you have already selected.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Key Editor** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

- You have added at least one Velocity or MIDI CC editor to the Key Editor.

PROCEDURE

1. In the header of each editor in which you want to use the Histogram tool, activate **Histogram** to show the Histogram tool.
2. At the top of each Histogram tool, choose one of the following filters:
   - **All** (MIDI CC editor) or **All notes** (Velocity editor)
   - **Voice** (Velocity editor only)
   - **Selection**

Changing the Histogram chart shape

You can switch between showing values in the Histogram tool as bars or as an area.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Key Editor** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- You have selected the instruments you want to show in the Key Editor.
- You have added at least one Velocity or MIDI CC editor to the Key Editor.

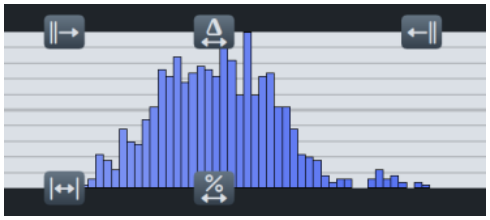
PROCEDURE

1. In the header of each editor in which you want to use the Histogram tool, activate **Histogram** to show the Histogram tool.
2. At the top of each Histogram tool, choose one of the following chart shapes:
   - **Bars**
   - **Area**

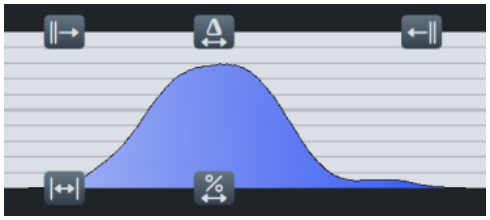
RESULT

The shape of the Histogram chart in each editor is changed.

EXAMPLE



Bars



Area

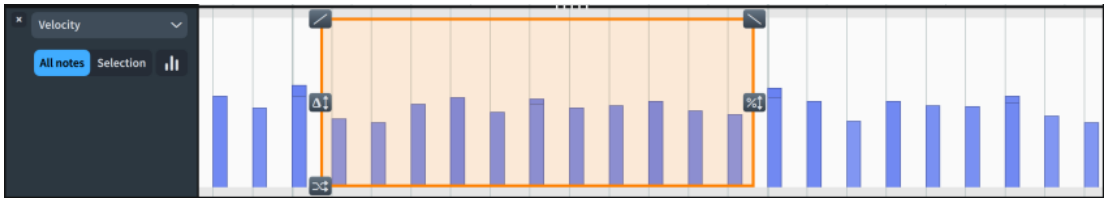
RELATED LINKS

Hiding/Showing zones on page 44
Adding/Closing editors in the Key Editor on page 627
Showing instruments in the Key Editor on page 623

Transform tool

The Transform tool allows you to change consecutive velocity and MIDI CC values within a selected range in a variety of ways. For example, you can increase all velocity values proportionally, but only in two specific bars.

- You can use the Transform tool in the Velocity and MIDI CC editors by clicking **Transform** in the Key Editor panel toolbar, then clicking and dragging in one of those editors to make a Transform selection.



Transform selection in the Velocity editor

TIP

If you want to change values on a larger scale, you can use the Histogram tool.

RELATED LINKS
Key Editor panel on page 619
Key Editor panel toolbar on page 621
Histogram tool on page 659
Velocity editor on page 642
MIDI CC editor on page 651

Transform controls

Transform controls allow you to change consecutive velocity and MIDI CC values within a Transform selection in different ways.

- You can access Transform controls when you have made a Transform selection in the Key Editor.

Tilt Left

Allows you to lower values according to an angled line by clicking on the button and dragging downwards. This lowers values on the left more than on the right.

Tilt Right

Allows you to lower values according to an angled line by clicking on the button and dragging downwards. This lowers values on the right more than on the left.

Delta

Represents the center point of values. Allows you to move all displayed values to upwards/downwards. This maintains explicit value gaps between bars.

Scale

Proportionally moves values upwards/downwards. This maintains proportional relationships between bars; that is, gaps between bars widen when you scale multiply upwards and narrow when you scale multiply downwards.

Randomize

Allows you to randomize values by clicking on the button and dragging upwards. The higher your mouse pointer, the wider and more extreme the randomization. Randomization uses standard distribution on an approximate bell-shape.

RELATED LINKS
Histogram controls on page 660
Changing the velocity of notes on page 643

Changing values using the Transform tool

You can make Transform selections around consecutive velocity and MIDI CC values, then use Transform controls to change the selected values in a variety of ways; for example, increasing all values proportionally.

TIP

If you want to change values on a larger scale, you can use the Histogram tool.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Key Editor** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- You have selected the instruments you want to show in the Key Editor.
- You have added at least one Velocity or MIDI CC editor to the Key Editor.

PROCEDURE

1. In the Key Editor panel toolbar, click **Transform** to select the Transform tool.
2. In the editor in which you want to change values, click and drag across the required range.
3. Use the available Transform controls as required.
   For example, you can click and drag **Scale** upwards to increase values proportionally.

RELATED LINKS
Hiding/Showing zones on page 44
Key Editor panel toolbar on page 621
Adding/Closing editors in the Key Editor on page 627
Showing instruments in the Key Editor on page 623

Key Editor configurations

Key Editor configurations allow you to open specific combinations of editors simultaneously. This can be much quicker than adding/closing the required editors manually.

For example, if you regularly switch between showing the Velocity and Dynamics editors, and several MIDI CC editors, you can save Key Editor configurations for these combinations, then apply each configuration as required.

Saving Key Editor configurations

You can save configurations of editors in the Key Editor; for example, if you regularly use the Velocity and Dynamics editors together. You can access Key Editor configurations in all projects on your computer.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Key Editor** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- You have added the editors you want to save in your Key Editor configuration.

PROCEDURE

1. Save the editors currently open in the Key Editor as a Key Editor configuration in one of the following ways:
   - To save a new Key Editor configuration, click **Presets** at the bottom left of the Key Editor, then choose **Save Configuration**.
   - To replace an existing Key Editor configuration, click **Presets** at the bottom left of the Key Editor, choose **Replace Configuration**, then select the configuration you want to replace.
2. If you saved a new Key Editor configuration, enter a name for the configuration in the **Configuration Name** dialog that opens.
3. Click **OK** to save your changes and close the dialog.

RELATED LINKS
Hiding/Showing zones on page 44
Adding/Closing editors in the Key Editor on page 627

Applying Key Editor configurations

You can apply Key Editor configurations to projects, which adds the editors saved in that configuration to the Key Editor and replaces any editors that were already open.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Key Editor** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- You have saved at least one Key Editor configuration on your computer.

PROCEDURE

1. At the bottom left of the Key Editor, click **Presets**.
2. Select the configuration you want to apply.

Deleting Key Editor configurations

You can delete Key Editor configurations; for example, if you no longer require a specific configuration after finishing a project.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.

- **Key Editor** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

PROCEDURE

1. At the bottom left of the Key Editor, click **Presets** .
2. Choose **Delete Configuration**.
3. Select the configuration you want to delete.

Mixer

The Mixer allows you to control the volume, panning, and sounds of channels in playback.

You can access the Mixer in the following places:

- In the Mixer panel in the lower zone
- In the **Mixer** window

RELATED LINKS
Mixer window on page 668
Mixer channels on page 669
Zones and panels on page 38

Mixer panel

The Mixer panel allows you to control the volume and panning of channels in playback. It is located in the lower zone at the bottom of the window in Write, Engrave, and Play modes.

When additional channels are available beyond those currently in view, channels at the right/left edges of the Mixer appear faded.

- You can show the Mixer panel by showing the lower zone, then clicking **Mixer** in the lower zone toolbar.

The Mixer panel toolbar contains the following options:

Channel type buttons

Allow you to hide/show channels according to their type, and in any combination.

Deactivate all

Allows you to deactivate all mute and solo states by clicking the corresponding button. Indicates whether any channels have an active mute or solo state.

Resize Lower Zone

Allows you to change the height of the lower zone.

RELATED LINKS
Mixer channels on page 669
Zones and panels on page 38
Hiding/Showing zones on page 44

Mixer window

The Mixer allows you to control the volume, panning, and sounds of channels in playback. It provides access to channel strips, which are not available in the Mixer panel.

You can hide/show the **Mixer** window in any of the following ways:

- Press **F3**.
- In the toolbar, click **Show Mixer**.

The **Mixer** window comprises the following:

1 Channel type buttons

Allow you to hide/show channels according to their type, and in any combination.

2 Deactivate all

Allows you to deactivate all mute m and solo s states by clicking the corresponding button. Indicates whether any channels have an active mute or solo state.

3 Channel strips

Allow you to change the sound of the channel; for example, by loading inserts or changing its equalization.

4 Channels

Allow you to change the volume and pan position of the corresponding track or aspect of playback. There are audio and MIDI channels for each instrument/voice track, and additional channels, such as for the click and master output.

TIP

- In order to control the volume levels in your project, we recommend that you first input dynamics and adjust the dynamic curve to suit your project before using the track faders.
- When additional channels are available beyond those currently in view, channels at the right/left edges of the Mixer appear faded.

Any changes you make in the **Mixer** window are automatically saved and applied to the project.

RELATED LINKS
Toolbar on page 31
Mixer channel strips on page 671

Muting/Soloing tracks on page 507
Changing the volume of channels on page 673

Hiding/Showing the Mixer window

You can hide and show the **Mixer** window at any time; for example, if you do not want it in view when working on the music in the music area.

PROCEDURE

- Hide/Show the **Mixer** window in any of the following ways:
  - Press **F3**.
  - In the toolbar, click **Show Mixer** .
  - Choose **Window** > **Mixer**.

Mixer channels

Mixer channels allow the source connected to them, such as instrument tracks, to produce sound. You can access all channels in the Mixer panel and **Mixer** window, and individual channels in the Track Inspector for the corresponding track.

Each channel in the Mixer panel provides the following controls and displays:

1 **Pan control**

Allows you to position the sound/MIDI output of the channel on the stereo spectrum for stereo playback.

2 **Fader value**

Displays the current volume as a value, corresponding to the position of the fader.

- Audio channels use dB.
- MIDI channels use MIDI volume, from 0 to 127.

3 **Fader**

Allows you to control the volume level of the channel.

4 **Channel meter**

Indicates the output volume of the channel in real time.

5 **Mute**

Allows you to mute the channel. Indicates whether the channel has an active mute state.

6 **Solo**

Allows you to solo the channel. Indicates whether the channel has an active solo state.

7 **Channel name**

Displays the name of the channel.

Instrument channels display the full instrument name set for that instrument in the **Edit Instrument Names** dialog and its instrument number, if applicable.

RELATED LINKS
Track Inspector on page 488
Edit Instrument Names dialog on page 176
Instrument numbering on page 129

Types of Mixer channels

There are different types of channels available in the Mixer. The channel type can affect the controls available for the corresponding channel.

Instruments

There is a channel for each instrument/voice track in your project. When instrument channels are shown, all applicable channels are included, even if they are spread across multiple plug-in instances.

There is an additional instrument channel named “DoricoBeep”, which allows you to control the volume of the metronome click.

MIDI

Every VST instrument in your project has its own MIDI channel in addition to its VST channel. These MIDI channels allow you to change the MIDI volume and MIDI pan of each instrument.

Video

Allows you to control the volume of video audio.

FX

Allows you to control the volume of send effects, such as reverb. By default, this channel has REVerence loaded automatically.

TIP

For more information about REVerence, see the separate document **Plug-in Reference**.

Output

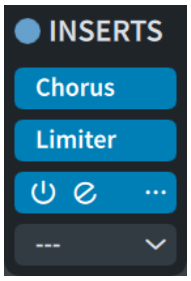
Allows you to control the master output volume. The **Output** channel is always shown.

Mixer channel strips

Each channel in the Mixer has its own channel strip, which contains the channel controls. Channel strips are located at the top of the **Mixer** window.

Each channel strip contains the following types of controls:

Inserts



Each channel has four slots into which you can load an insert. You can select inserts from the menu.

The header allows you to expand/collapse the section for all channels.

The indicator can have one of the following states:

- **Disabled** : No inserts are loaded into the channel.
- **Enabled** : At least one insert is loaded into the channel, and inserts are enabled.
- **Bypassed** : At least one insert is loaded into the channel, and all inserts are bypassed.

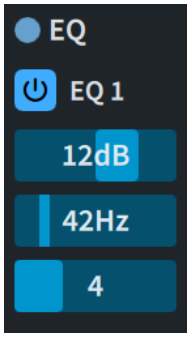
The following controls are available for slots with loaded inserts:

- **Enable Insert** : Enables/Bypasses the insert slot.
- **Edit Insert** : Opens the plug-in window for the loaded plug-in, which allows you to edit its settings.
- **Insert menu** : Opens the plug-in menu, which allows you to select a different plug-in to load into the insert slot.

TIP

- For more information about the plug-ins included with Dorico Elements, see the separate document **Plug-in Reference**.
- You can access inserts for individual channels in the Track Inspector for the corresponding track.

EQ



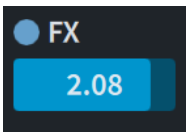
Each channel has four bands for default EQ.

The indicator allows you to enable and disable the section. The header allows you to expand/collapse the section for all channels.

The following controls are available for each EQ band:

- **Enable EQ** : Enables/Bypasses the corresponding band.
- **Gain**: Sets the amount of attenuation/boost for the corresponding band in dB.
- **Frequency**: Sets the frequency of the corresponding band in Hz.
- **Q**: Controls the width of the band; that is, how many frequencies above/below it also affects, and by how much.

FX



Each channel has a single FX slot. By default, it sends to the FX channel, which has reverb loaded on it.

The indicator allows you to enable and disable the section. The header allows you to expand/collapse the section for all channels.

RELATED LINKS
Loading inserts into channels on page 675
Track Inspector on page 488

Hiding/Showing channels

You can hide/show channels in the Mixer according to their type; for example, you can hide MIDI channels while working on instrument channels.

PREREQUISITE

The Mixer is shown, either in the lower zone or in the **Mixer** window.

PROCEDURE

- At the top of the Mixer, activate/deactivate each channel type.

RESULT

Channels are shown in the Mixer when their type button is activated, and hidden when it is deactivated.

Scrolling through channels

When many channels are shown in the Mixer, you can scroll through them in order to view channels that do not fit in the view.

PREREQUISITE

The Mixer is shown, either in the lower zone or in the **Mixer** window.

PROCEDURE

- In the Mixer, scroll through channels in any of the following ways:

- Scroll upwards/downwards on a mouse wheel, or swipe upwards/downwards on a touchpad.
- Click and drag, anywhere outside of channel faders, to the right/left.

Changing the height of channels

You can change the vertical space occupied by channels and channel strips in the **Mixer** window; for example, to make channel strips taller when loading inserts or changing EQ settings.

PREREQUISITE

The **Mixer** window is shown.

PROCEDURE

- In the Mixer, on the line between channel strips and channels, click and drag upwards/downwards.

  When the mouse pointer is in the correct position, it appears as a split arrow.

Changing the volume of channels

You can change and reset the volume of individual channels in the Mixer; for example, to balance instruments in an orchestral project.

PREREQUISITE

The Mixer is shown, either in the lower zone or in the **Mixer** window.

PROCEDURE

- In the Mixer, change the volume of channels in any of the following ways:
  - To increase their volume, drag their faders upwards.
  - To decrease their volume, drag their faders downwards.
  - To reset their volume to the default value, **Ctrl/Cmd**-click or double-click their fader values.

RESULT

The volume of the corresponding channels is changed.

TIP

You can change the default output level for all future projects on the **Play** page in **Preferences**. By default, this is set to **-6** dB to avoid clipping in projects with large ensembles.

RELATED LINKS

Mixer panel on page 667
Mixer window on page 668
Preferences dialog on page 58

Panning channels

You can change the pan position of individual channels on the stereo spectrum; for example, if you want the pan positions of instruments in an orchestral project to match their positions on a real-life stage.

PREREQUISITE

The Mixer is shown, either in the lower zone or in the **Mixer** window.

PROCEDURE

- In the Mixer, click at the required position in the pan control at the top of each channel.

  You can also click and drag to the right/left in the pan control.

Loading inserts into channels

You can load up to four inserts into each channel, excluding MIDI channels. For example, you can load specific EQ plug-ins instead of using the default EQ channel strips, and apply amp modeling plug-ins to clean guitar channels.

TIP

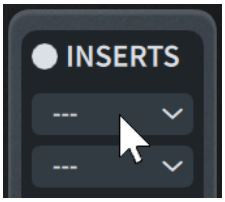
For more information about the plug-ins included with Dorico Elements, see the separate document **Plug-in Reference**.

PREREQUISITE

The **Mixer** window is shown.

PROCEDURE

1. In the Mixer, click **Inserts** in any channel strip to expand all inserts sections.
2. Click an insert slot and select the plug-in you want to load from the menu.



3. Optional: If you want to edit settings for the new plug-in, click **Edit Insert** to open its plug-in window.
4. Optional: If you loaded EQ plug-ins, deactivate the EQ channel strip in the corresponding channels.

RELATED LINKS

Mixer window on page 668
Mixer channel strips on page 671
Changing the sound used for the click on page 496

Enabling/Bypassing inserts

You can enable/bypass individual inserts without affecting their settings; for example, if you want to compare how a channel sounds with and without a specific insert.

PREREQUISITE

The **Mixer** window is shown.

PROCEDURE

1. In the Mixer, click **Inserts** in any channel strip to expand all inserts sections.
2. In each insert slot you want to enable/bypass, do one of the following:
   - To enable/bypass individual inserts, click **Enable Insert** in the corresponding slots.
   - To enable/bypass all inserts for channels, click the **Inserts** indicator in the corresponding channel strips.

RESULT

The corresponding inserts are enabled/bypassed.

- Enabled inserts appear blue.
- Bypassed inserts appear yellow.

Removing inserts

You can remove individual inserts you have loaded into channels.

PREREQUISITE

The **Mixer** window is shown.

PROCEDURE

1. In the Mixer, click **Inserts** in any channel strip to expand all inserts sections.
2. In the slot whose insert you want to remove, click the insert menu ··· and select **---** from the menu.

Changing the reverb plug-in

You can change the plug-in used for reverb on the FX channel; for example, if you want to use a specific reverb sound. By default, the reverb plug-in REVerence is loaded into the FX channel.

TIP

For more information about the plug-ins included with Dorico Elements, see the separate document **Plug-in Reference**.

PREREQUISITE

- The **Mixer** window is shown.
- The FX channel is shown.

PROCEDURE

1. In the Mixer, click **Inserts** in any channel strip to expand all inserts sections.
2. In the FX channel strip, click the insert menu ··· in the REVerence insert slot, and select the reverb plug-in you want to use from the menu.
3. Optional: If you want to edit settings for the new plug-in, click **Edit Insert** to open its plug-in window.

RELATED LINKS

Mixer window on page 668
Mixer channel strips on page 671
Hiding/Showing channels on page 672

Library

In Dorico Elements, the library is the total compilation of visual items and options that are available in all projects on your computer. It combines factory default settings, custom items/options you have saved as default, and items/options only available in the current project.

Layout Options dialog

The **Layout Options** dialog allows you to change various aspects of each layout independently. For example, you can change the physical properties of the layout, such as page size, staff size, or margins, and how the music appears and is laid out, such as note spacing or staff labels.

Options in **Layout Options** affect only the selected layouts but apply to all flows in those layouts.

You can open **Layout Options** in any of the following ways:

- Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-L**.
- Choose **Library** > **Layout Options**.
- In Setup mode, click **Layout Options** in the **Layouts** panel.

The **Layout Options** dialog contains the following:

1 **Search categories field**

Allows you to filter categories and section titles according to your entry.

TIP

You can set the focus to the **Search categories** field by pressing **Ctrl/Cmd-L**. You can set the focus away by pressing **Tab**.

2 **Category list**

Contains the categories of options that you can view and change in the dialog. When you click a category in this list, any applicable section titles appear below the category in the list and its options appear as a page in the main body of the dialog.

3 **Section titles**

Shows the titles of any sections on the selected category's page. You can click these section titles to navigate directly to that section of the page.

4 **Section**

Pages are divided into sections, which can contain multiple options. Sections that contain many options are divided into subsections. For options that have multiple possible settings, the active setting is highlighted.

5 **Search pages bar**

Allows you to search section titles and options on the currently selected page according to your entry and navigate through matches. The number of matches is displayed in the bar. Matches appear highlighted on the page, and the current option appears with a brighter highlight.

You can show the **Search pages** bar by pressing **Ctrl/Cmd-F**.

The bar contains the following options:

- **Search pages field**: Allows you to enter the term you want to search for. You can set the focus to the **Search pages** field by pressing **Ctrl/Cmd-F**.
- **Previous match**: Allows you to navigate to the previous match on the page. You can also navigate to the previous match by pressing **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-G**.
- **Next match**: Allows you to navigate to the next match on the page. You can also navigate to the next match by pressing **Ctrl/Cmd-G**.
- **Close**: Closes the bar and removes all match highlights. You can also close the bar by pressing **Esc**.

6 **Layouts list**

Contains all the layouts in your project. By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select multiple layouts in any of the following ways:

- Click one of the selection options in the action bar.
- **Ctrl/Cmd**-click to select multiple layouts.
- **Shift**-click to select multiple adjacent layouts.
- Click and drag across multiple layouts.

7 **Action bar**

Contains selection options that allow you to select layouts in the **Layouts** list according to their type.

- **Select All**: Selects all layouts, regardless of their type.
- **Select All Full Score Layouts**: Selects all full score layouts only.
- **Select All Part Layouts**: Selects all part layouts only.
- **Select All Custom Score Layouts**: Selects all custom score layouts only.

8 **Save as Default**

Saves all options currently set and applied in the dialog as the default for the selected layout type in new projects. For example, you can save new default settings for part layouts without affecting the default settings for full score layouts. Only available when a single layout is selected.

9 **Reset to Saved Defaults**

Resets all the options in the dialog for the selected layouts back to your saved defaults, according to their layout type.

10 **Reset to Factory**

Resets all the options in the dialog for the selected layouts back to the default factory settings, according to their layout type. This only affects the current project and does not delete your saved defaults, meaning future projects still start with your saved defaults.

11 **Remove Saved Defaults**

Deletes your previous saved defaults for the selected layout type without resetting the options in the current project. After removing your saved defaults, all layouts of the selected type in future projects start with the default factory settings.

RELATED LINKS
Layouts on page 165
Staves on page 1192
Page formatting on page 555
Condensing on page 595
Changing your preferred unit of measurement on page 51
Changing values in numeric value fields on page 618

Notation Options dialog

The **Notation Options** dialog allows you to change how music is notated by default in each flow independently. For example, there are options for beam, note, and rest grouping, voices, accidentals, and barlines.

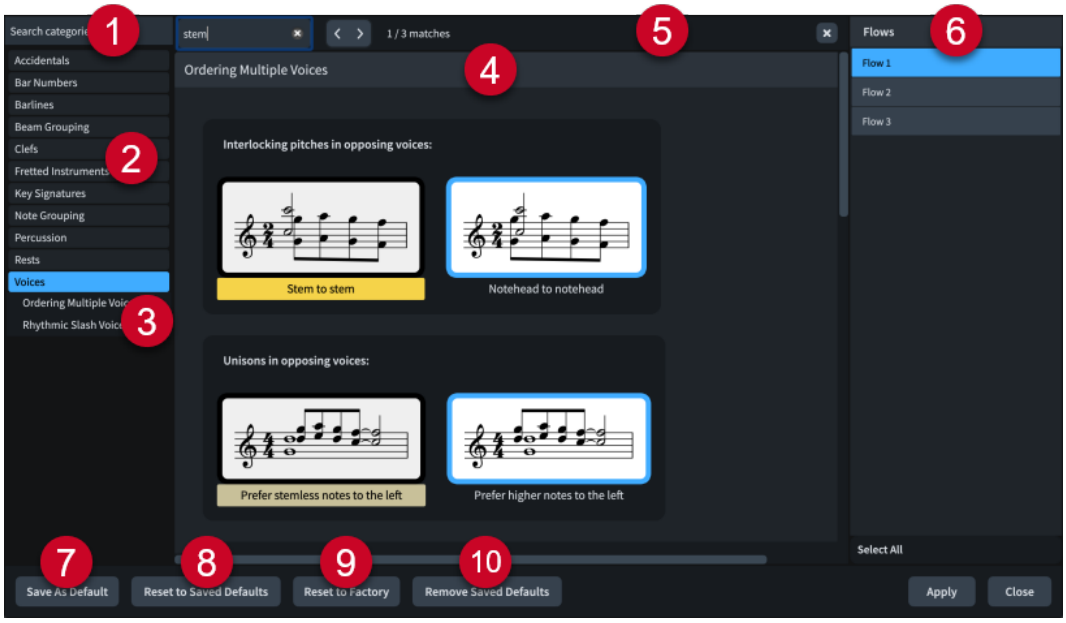
Options in **Notation Options** affect only the selected flows but apply to all layouts in which those flows appear.

TIP

If you want to change notes and notations individually, you can use properties in the Properties panel.

You can open **Notation Options** in any of the following ways:

- Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-N**.
- Choose **Library** > **Notation Options**.
- In Setup mode, click **Notation Options** in the **Flows** panel.



The **Notation Options** dialog contains the following:

1 **Search categories field**

Allows you to filter categories and section titles according to your entry.

TIP

You can set the focus to the **Search categories** field by pressing **Ctrl/Cmd-L**. You can set the focus away by pressing **Tab**.

2 **Category list**

Contains the categories of options that you can view and change in the dialog. When you click a category in this list, any applicable section titles appear below the category in the list and its options appear as a page in the main body of the dialog.

3 **Section titles**

Shows the titles of any sections on the selected category's page. You can click these section titles to navigate directly to that section of the page.

4 **Section**

Pages are divided into sections, which can contain multiple options. Sections that contain many options are divided into subsections. For options that have multiple possible settings, the active setting is highlighted.

5 **Search pages bar**

Allows you to search section titles and options on the currently selected page according to your entry and navigate through matches. The number of matches is displayed in the bar. Matches appear highlighted on the page, and the current option appears with a brighter highlight.

You can show the **Search pages** bar by pressing **Ctrl/Cmd-F**.

The bar contains the following options:

- **Search pages field**: Allows you to enter the term you want to search for. You can set the focus to the **Search pages** field by pressing **Ctrl/Cmd-F**.
- **Previous match**: Allows you to navigate to the previous match on the page. You can also navigate to the previous match by pressing **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-G**.

- **Next match**: Allows you to navigate to the next match on the page. You can also navigate to the next match by pressing **Ctrl/Cmd-G**.
- **Close**: Closes the bar and removes all match highlights. You can also close the bar by pressing **Esc**.

6 **Flows list**

Contains all the flows in your project. By default, the flow in which you have selected an item in the music area or that is selected in the **Flows** panel in Setup mode is selected when you open the dialog. You can select multiple flows in any of the following ways:

- Click **Select All** in the action bar to select all flows in the project.
- **Ctrl/Cmd**-click to select multiple flows.
- **Shift**-click to select multiple adjacent flows.
- Click and drag across multiple flows.

7 **Save as Default**

Saves all options currently set and applied in the dialog as the default for new projects. Only available when a single flow is selected.

8 **Reset to Saved Defaults**

Resets all the options in the dialog for the selected flows back to your saved defaults.

9 **Reset to Factory**

Resets all the options in the dialog for the selected flows back to the default factory settings. This only affects the current project and does not delete your saved defaults, meaning future projects still start with your saved defaults.

10 **Remove Saved Defaults**

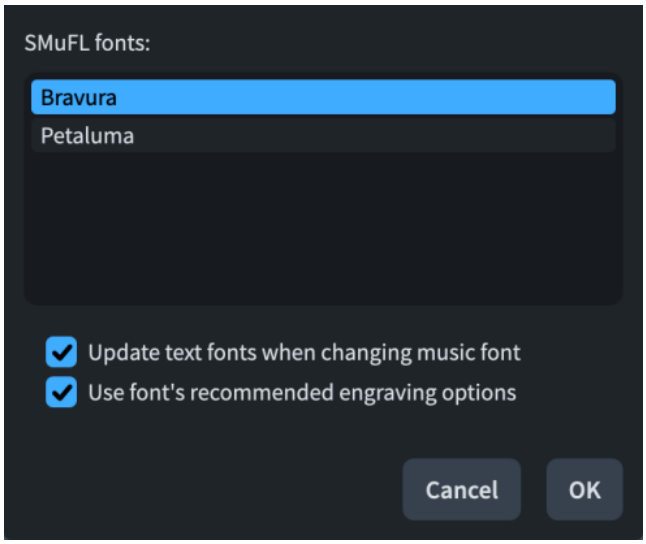
Deletes your previous saved defaults without resetting the options in the current project. After removing your saved defaults, all future projects start with the default factory settings.

RELATED LINKS
Flows on page 162
Changing your preferred unit of measurement on page 51
Changing values in numeric value fields on page 618

Music Fonts dialog

The **Music Fonts** dialog allows you to change the font used for notations and glyphs project-wide. Any font you use for notations and glyphs must be SMuFL-compliant.

- You can open the **Music Fonts** dialog by choosing **Library** > **Music Fonts**.



The **Music Fonts** dialog contains all available SMuFL fonts you have installed on your computer that have the appropriate metadata for Dorico Elements to recognize them. By default, Dorico Elements comes with the following SMuFL-compliant fonts:

- **Bravura**: The default music font, inspired by traditional classical music engraving.
- **Petaluma**: Handwritten music font style, similar to the traditional style used for jazz music.

Changing the music font used in the **Music Fonts** dialog changes the fonts used for notations, glyphs, and other items that are not text, such as clefs, dynamics, and bold tuplet numbers/ratios.

The **Music Fonts** dialog also contains the following options:

Update text fonts when changing music fonts

Allows you to include/exclude text fonts when changing the music font. For example, deactivating this option allows you to change the appearance of notes and notations without affecting the appearance of flow titles and staff labels.

- For the Bravura music font, the equivalent text font is Academico.
- For the Petaluma music font, the equivalent text font is Petaluma Script.

Use font's recommended engraving options

Allows you to import the default settings that come with the font.

NOTE

Certain items that are marked as optional in SMuFL fonts, such as clef changes and non-bold tuplet numbers/ratios, are not affected when you change the music font.

Expression maps

Expression maps tell Dorico Elements how to use appropriately the patches and sounds in the VST instruments that you have loaded into your project.

Expressing a range of dynamics on instruments means changing the volume and attack of notes. Because the strength of attack changes the character of the start of sounds as well as their volume, loud sounds often require stronger attacks and quiet sounds often require softer attacks.

Different patches and instruments have different approaches to changing dynamics and volume in playback. For example, some patches only change the velocity whereas others use a controller in combination with changing the velocity.

Dorico Elements also uses expression maps to specify the playback techniques that are supported by each patch in your project. For example, string instruments such as the violin have different techniques, because they can play *arco*, *pizzicato*, and *col legno*, and their bow position can be anywhere between *sul ponticello* and *sul tasto*.

In addition to the HALion Symphonic Orchestra expression maps, there are the following expression maps in Dorico Elements:

- **CC11 Dynamics**: Uses MIDI controller 11 to play dynamics.

  NOTE

  This only applies to instruments that can change their dynamic while notes are sounding, such as violin or flute.

- **Default**: Uses note velocity to control dynamic volume.
- **Modulation Wheel Dynamics**: Uses a modulation wheel to control dynamic volume.
- **Transpose down 1 octave**: Used by some instrument patches that sound an octave higher than written so that they can be played without needing a full range keyboard.
- **Transpose up 1 octave**: Allows the bottom octave of keyboards to be used for key switches instead of notes, but is also used by some bass instrument patches that sound an octave lower than written so that they can be played without needing a full range keyboard.

You can edit, create, and import/export expression maps in the **Expression Maps** dialog. Expression maps are saved as `.doricolib` files.

NOTE

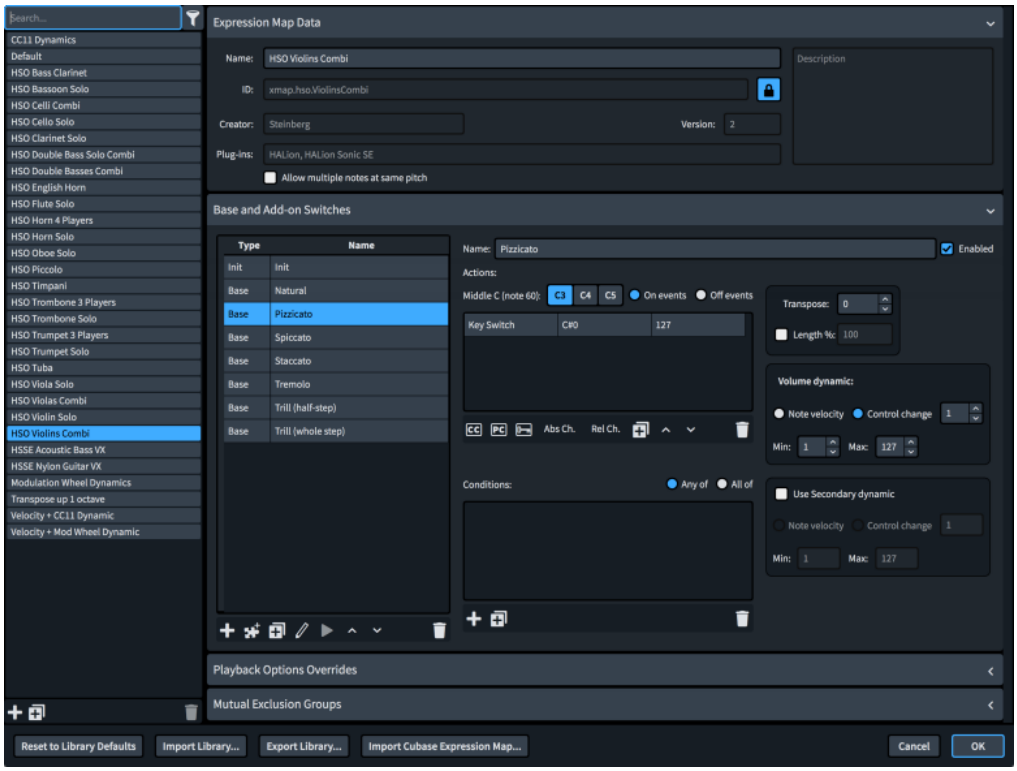
Although Dorico Elements approaches expression maps in a different way to Cubase, Dorico Elements correctly imports many switches from expression maps you import from Cubase, such as *pizzicato*, harmonics, and flutter tongue.

RELATED LINKS
Percussion maps on page 700
Types of actions on page 695
Creating new expression maps on page 696

Expression Maps dialog

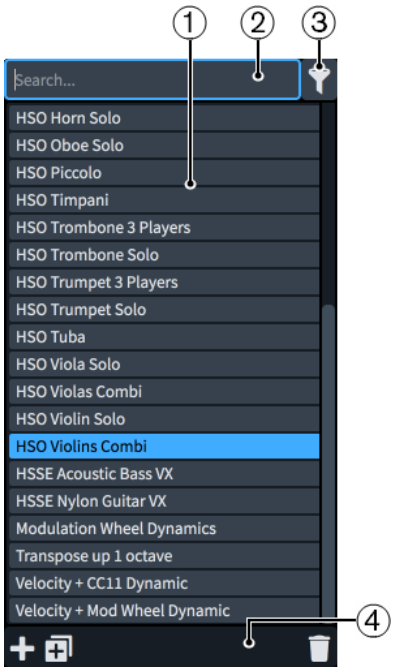
The **Expression Maps** dialog allows you to create new expression maps, edit existing expression maps, and import/export expression maps. You can also import expression maps made in Cubase.

- You can open the **Expression Maps** dialog by choosing **Library** > **Expression Maps**.



The **Expression Maps** dialog contains the following sections and options:

Expression maps list



1 **Expression maps list**: Contains the expression maps currently available in your project.

2 **Search field**: Allows you to filter expression maps according to your entry.

3 **Show only expression maps used in this project**: Allows you to filter the expression maps list so it only includes expression maps used in the current project.

4 **Expression maps list action bar**: Contains the following options:

- **Add Expression Map** : Adds a new expression map that contains no existing settings.
- **Duplicate Expression Map** : Creates a copy of an existing expression map that you can edit separately from the original.
- **Delete Expression Map** : Deletes the selected expression maps.

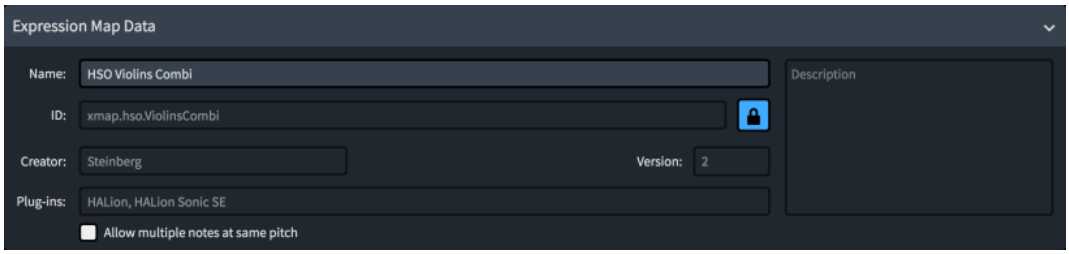
  NOTE

  You can only delete custom expression maps. You cannot delete any default expression maps.

Expression Map Data

This section allows you to specify identifying information for the selected expression map.

You can hide/show the **Expression Map Data** section by clicking the section header.



The **Expression Map Data** section contains the following options:

Name

Allows you to set the name of the expression map that appears in the program; for example, in the **Endpoint Setup** dialog.

ID

Allows you to set the unique ID of the expression map. You can enter any content in the ID field.

It can be useful to include the instrument and sound library for which you created the map, as well as your name; for example, **xmap.user.paulsmith.hso.violinpizz**.

Creator

Allows you to name the creator if you are sharing your expression map with other users.

Version

Allows you to indicate the expression map version, so you can identify the most recent one.

Plug-ins

Allows you to list the names of plug-ins to which the expression map applies, with each name separated by a comma. You can leave this field blank.

Allow multiple notes at same pitch

Allows you to set whether or not the plug-in can treat identical pitches in multiple voices belonging to the same instrument as multiple separate notes when independent voice playback is disabled.

Description

Allows you to add any other information about the expression map.

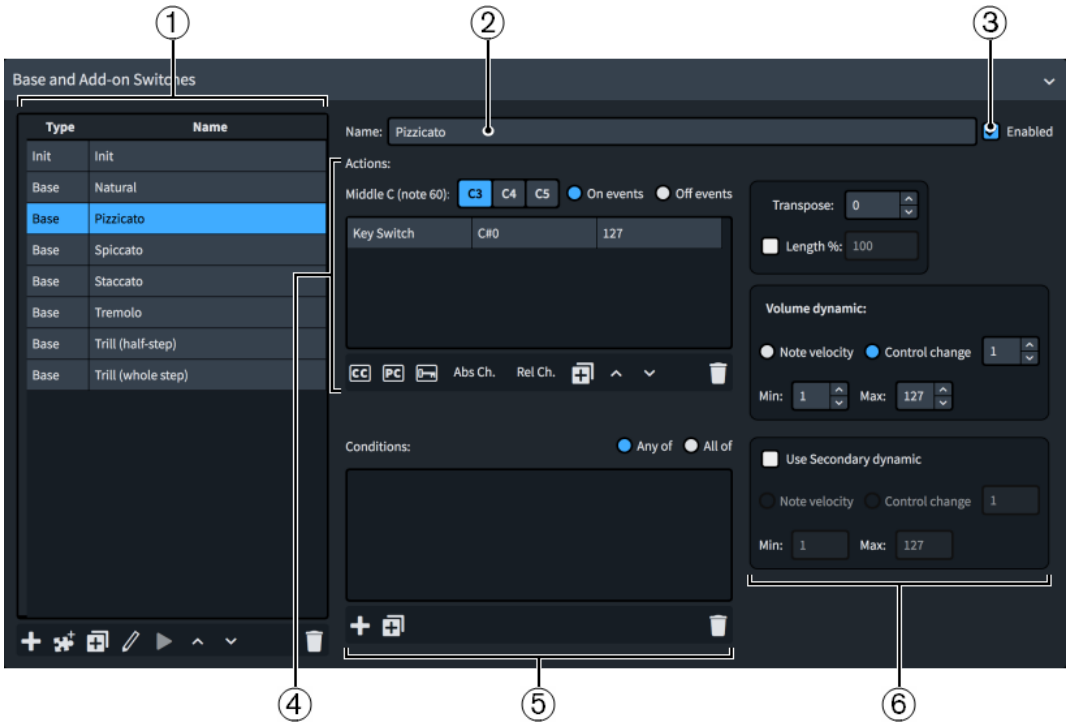
NOTE

All fields in the **Expression Map Data** section are locked by the **Lock Info** button. You must click this button to unlock **Lock Info** in order to change the information in the fields.

Base and Add-on Switches

This section allows you to view, edit, and control the switches for playback techniques in the selected expression map.

You can hide/show the **Base and Add-on Switches** section by clicking the section header.



The **Base and Add-on Switches** section contains the following:

1 **Switches table**: Contains the switches in the currently selected expression map. Allows you to add new switches and edit existing ones.

2 **Name**: Allows you to change the name that appears for the currently selected switch in the Switches table; for example, so it appears the same as in your sound library.

TIP

You can still see which playback techniques are triggered by switches with custom names by hovering the mouse pointer over the corresponding row in the Switches table.

3 **Enabled**: Allows you to enable/disable the currently selected switch without removing it from the expression map.

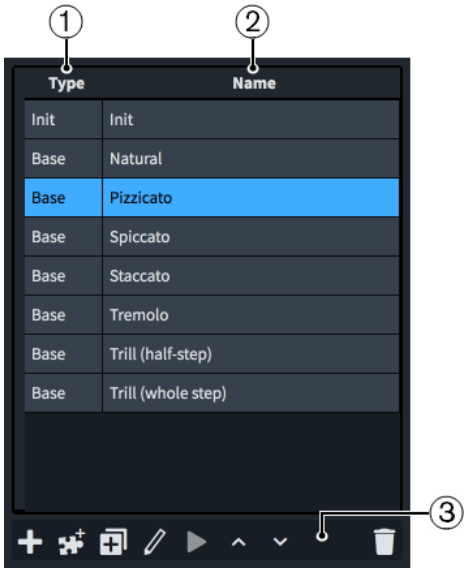
4 **Actions**: Contains any actions required to produce the selected playback technique. Allows you to add new actions and edit existing ones.

5 **Conditions**: Contains any conditions that determine the circumstances in which the currently selected switch is used. Allows you to add new conditions and edit existing ones. Only available for **Base** switches.

6 **Technique controls**: Contains controls that affect the switch currently selected in the Switches table. Only available for **Base** switches.

Switches table

Contains the switches in the currently selected expression map.



The Switches table comprises the following:

1 **Type column**: Displays the switch type. Switches can be any of the following types:

- **Base**
- **Add-on**
- **Init**

2 **Name column**: Displays the name of the switch. By default, this is the same as the playback technique or playback technique combination it triggers.

In simple cases, each switch triggers an individual playback technique, such as **Staccato** or **Accent**. However, some plug-ins have separate samples for different combinations of playback techniques. For example, **Staccato + Accent** might require a separate set of key switches to **Staccato** and **Accent** individually.

3 **Switches table action bar**: Contains the following options:

- **Add Base Switch** : Allows you to add a new base switch to the expression map by selecting the playback techniques you want the switch to trigger in the **Playback Technique Combinations** dialog that opens.
- **Add Technique Add-on Switch** : Allows you to add a new add-on switch to the expression map by selecting the playback techniques you want the switch to trigger in the **Playback Technique Combinations** dialog that opens.
- **Duplicate Technique** : Creates a copy of an existing switch that you can edit separately from the original.
- **Edit Technique** : Opens the **Playback Technique Combinations** dialog, which allows you to edit the combination of playback techniques triggered by the selected switch.

  You can also edit the playback techniques of existing switches by double-clicking them in the Switches table.
- **Audition** : Plays two notes using the currently selected switch and any corresponding actions to demonstrate their effect on playback. Only available for expression maps used in the project.

- **Transpose Up 1 Octave** : Raises the octave of all key switch actions for the selected switch.
- **Transpose Down 1 Octave** : Lowers the octave of all key switch actions for the selected switch.
- **Delete Technique** : Deletes the selected switch.

Selecting a switch in the Switches table allows you to edit its controls and actions. Different options are available in the **Base and Add-on Switches** section depending on the switch type.

NOTE

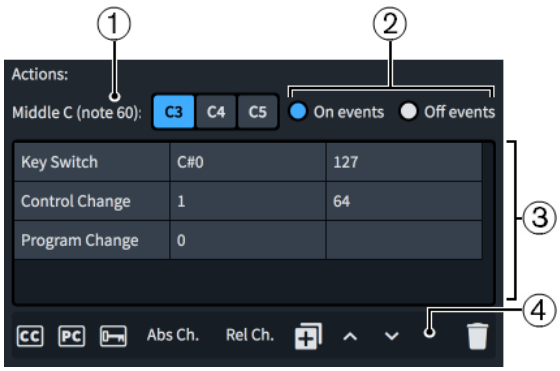
- Most instruments have a “natural” playback technique, which is the most common way of playing the instrument. Dorico Elements requires every instrument to have a defined natural playback technique.
- You can only select one switch at a time in the Switches table.

Actions

Displays in a table any actions required to produce the selected playback technique. Allows you to determine how the switch that triggers each playback technique is controlled, either by adding new actions or editing existing ones.

NOTE

Depending on your plug-in, multiple types of actions can be required for each switch.



The **Actions** subsection comprises the following:

1 **Middle C (note 60)**: Allows you to choose the pitch for middle C, as there are different conventions for this. We recommend that you consult the documentation for your sound libraries to check whether each one considers middle C to be C3, C4, or C5, and change this setting accordingly.

2 **On events**/**Off events**: Allows you to specify whether actions affect the start or end of notes. For example, you might want an event that resets the playback technique back to normal to apply only to the end of notes.

On events affects the start of notes. **Off events** affects the end of notes.

3 **Actions table**: Contains the following columns:

- First column: Displays the action type. Actions can be a control change, program change, or key switch.
- Second column: Controls the first parameter of the MIDI event. For key switches, this indicates the pitch. For control changes, this indicates the control change number. For program changes, this indicates the program number.

- Third column: Controls the second parameter of the MIDI event. For key switches, this indicates the velocity. For control changes, this indicates the amount of control change within the range 0 to 127. Program changes do not have a second parameter.

NOTE

- You can change the values of cells in the **Actions** table by double-clicking them, or selecting them and pressing **Return**.
- You can only select one action at a time in the **Actions** table.

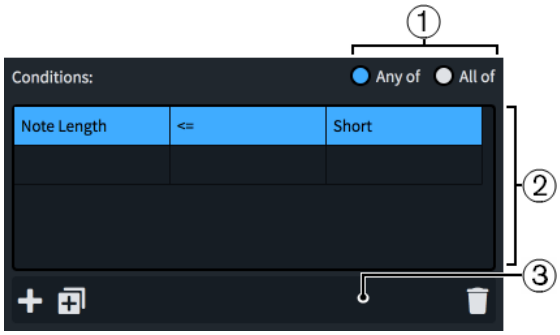
4 **Actions table action bar**: Contains the following options:

- **Add Control Change Action**: Adds a control change action with default settings.
- **Add Program Change Action**: Adds a program change action with default settings.
- **Add Key Switch Note Action**: Adds a key switch action with default settings.
- **Add Absolute Channel Change Action**: Adds an absolute channel change action with default settings.
- **Add Relative Channel Change Action**: Adds a relative channel change action with default settings.
- **Duplicate Action**: Creates a copy of an existing action that you can edit separately from the original.
- **Move Action Up**: Moves the selected action up the table, which changes its order in the message sequence.
- **Move Action Down**: Moves the selected action down the table, which changes its order in the message sequence.
- **Delete Action**: Deletes the selected action.

Conditions

Displays in a table any conditions that determine the circumstances in which the base switch currently selected in the Switches table is used. Allows you to add new conditions and edit existing ones. Only available for **Base** switches.

For example, you can set conditions instructing the expression map to use a different legato sound with a quicker attack for short notes than for longer notes automatically.



The **Conditions** subsection comprises the following:

1 **Any of/All of**: Allows you to set whether the switch is used when one or more conditions are met or only when all conditions are met.

2 **Conditions table**: Contains the following columns:

- First column: Displays the condition type.

- Second column: Controls how the condition type in the first column relates to the note length set in the third column using operators. The following operators are available:
  - **==**: Equal to
  - **!=**: Not equal to
  - **<**: Less than
  - **<=**: Less than or equal to
  - **>**: More than
  - **>=**: More than or equal to
- Third column: Controls the note length used by the condition. The following note length values are available:
  - **Very short**: A dotted 16th note at 120 bpm, or 0.1875 seconds
  - **Short**: A dotted eighth note at 120 bpm, or 0.375 seconds
  - **Medium**: A dotted quarter note at 120 bpm, or 0.75 seconds
  - **Long**: A dotted half note at 120 bpm, or 1.5 seconds
  - **Very long**: Any longer duration

NOTE

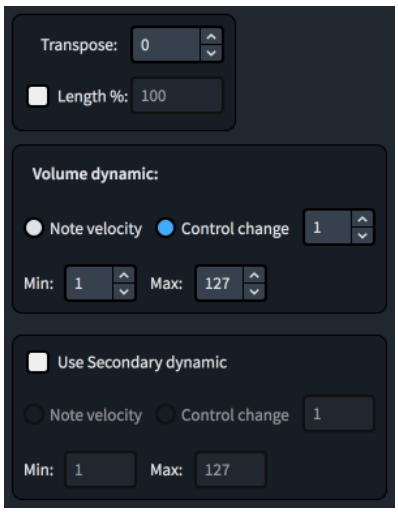
- You can change the values of cells in the **Conditions** table by double-clicking them, or selecting them and pressing **Return**.
- You can only select one condition at a time in the **Conditions** table.

3 **Conditions action bar**: Contains the following options:

- **Add Technique**: Adds a new technique condition with default settings.
- **Duplicate Technique**: Creates a copy of an existing technique condition that you can edit separately from the original.
- **Delete Technique**: Deletes the selected technique condition.

Technique controls

Contains controls that affect the base switch currently selected in the Switches table. Only available for **Base** switches.



The following technique controls are available:

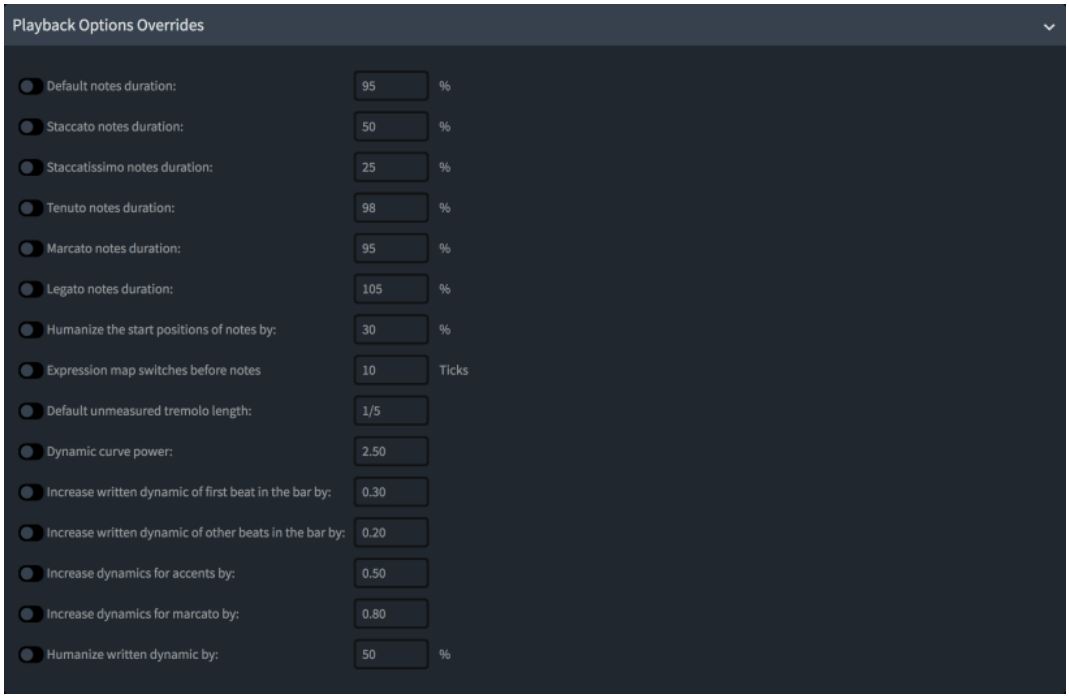
- **Transpose**: Allows you to set the MIDI transposition in half-steps (semitones).
- **Length %**: Allows you to modify played note durations, which overrides the default value; for example, if you want the selected switch to produce short gaps between notes.
  - For notes a quarter note or shorter in duration, the value applies to the entire note.
  - For notes longer than a quarter note, the value only applies to the last quarter note of their overall duration.
- **Volume dynamic**: Allows you to choose whether the volume dynamic for the selected switch is controlled by its **Note velocity** or a **Control change**.

  NOTE

  If you choose **Control change**, you must specify the controller by number. You can consult the documentation for the VST instrument and/or MIDI controller you are using to find the appropriate controller number.

- **Volume dynamic Min**/**Max**: Allow you to set the minimum and maximum range for dynamics using either note velocity or MIDI CC, depending on the sound library.
- **Use Secondary dynamic**: Allows you to define an additional volume control for sound libraries that use both note velocity and control changes for volume dynamic.
- **Secondary dynamic Min**/**Max**: Allow you to set the minimum and maximum range for dynamics using either note velocity or MIDI CC, depending on the sound library.

Playback Options Overrides



Allows you to override specific playback options for the selected expression map only. Activating a playback option overrides it. The available playback options include the default duration of notes with different articulations, unmeasured tremolo notes, and the effect that beat position and articulations have on dynamics.

You can hide/show the **Playback Options Overrides** section by clicking the section header.

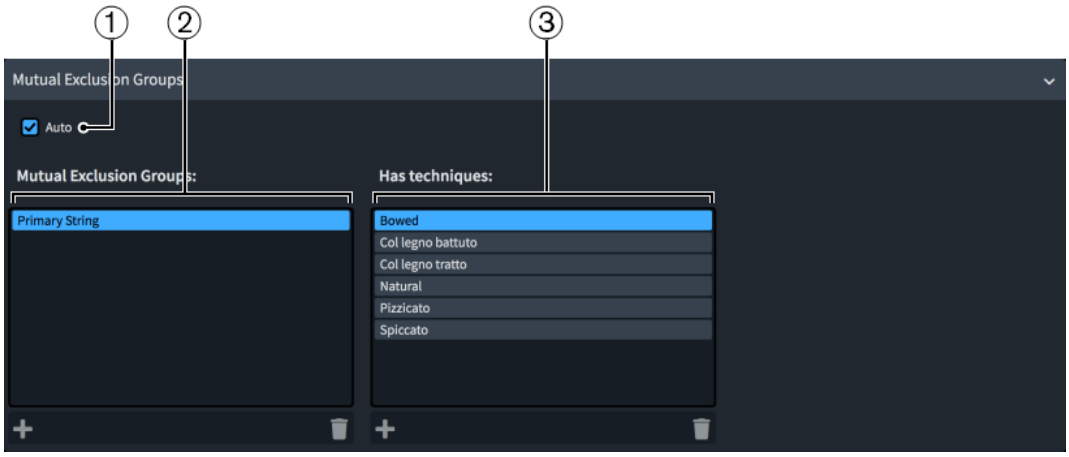
Mutual Exclusion Groups

Allows you to define playback techniques that are mutually exclusive; that is, cannot be in use concurrently. For example, players cannot play vibrato and non-vibrato at the same time. Putting playback techniques into the same exclusion group means only one can be used at a time.

You can allow Dorico Elements to define mutual exclusion groups automatically or define them yourself manually.

Mutual exclusion groups apply only to the selected expression map. This allows you to set different mutual exclusion groups in each expression map; for example, if one of your sound libraries supports a particular playback technique combination for an instrument but another sound library does not.

You can hide/show the **Mutual Exclusion Groups** section by clicking the section header.



The **Mutual Exclusion Groups** section contains the following options and columns:

1 **Auto**: Allows Dorico Elements to define mutual exclusion groups automatically.

NOTE

Activating **Auto** permanently deletes any manual exclusion groups you have created.

2 **Mutual Exclusion Groups** column: Allows you to add and delete mutual exclusion groups manually. The action bar at the bottom of the column contains the following options:

- **Add** : Opens a dialog that allows you to create a new mutual exclusion group and enter a name for it.
- **Delete** : Deletes the selected mutual exclusion group.

NOTE

You can only select one mutual exclusion group at a time.

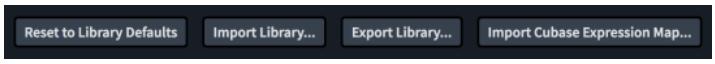
3 **Has techniques** column: Allows you to change the playback techniques included in the selected mutual exclusion group. The action bar at the bottom of the column contains the following options:

- **Add** : Opens the **Playback Technique Combinations** dialog that allows you to select playback techniques to add to the selected mutual exclusion group.
- **Delete** : Deletes the selected playback technique from the mutual exclusion group.

NOTE

You can only select one playback technique at a time.

Expression map/Library management options



At the bottom of the **Expression Maps** dialog, there are the following expression map and library management options:

Reset to Library Defaults

Allows you to revert any changes you have made to the expression maps from the Default Library.

Import Library

Opens the File Explorer/macOS Finder, where you can select the `.doricolib` files that you want to import as expression maps.

You can also import Dorico and Cubase expression maps by dragging and dropping them into the **Expression Maps** dialog.

Export Library

Opens the File Explorer/macOS Finder, where you can select the location to which you want to export the currently selected expression maps as a `.doricolib` file. You can then import the `.doricolib` file into other projects and share it with other users.

Import Cubase Expression Map

Opens the File Explorer/macOS Finder, where you can select the Cubase `.expressionmap` files you want to import as expression maps.

NOTE

Cubase expression maps that you have imported often require some editing to function correctly in Dorico Elements. However, switch data is preserved.

RELATED LINKS
Types of switches on page 695
Types of actions on page 695
Playback techniques on page 706
Endpoint Setup dialog on page 526
Edit Playback Techniques dialog on page 707
Enabling independent voice playback on page 506
Creating new expression maps on page 696
Adding/Editing switches in expression maps on page 697
Adding/Editing mutual exclusion groups in expression maps on page 699

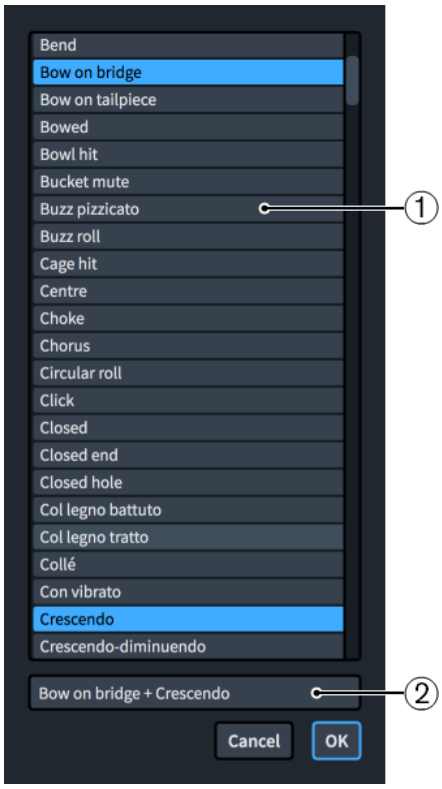
Playback Technique Combinations dialog

The **Playback Technique Combinations** dialog allows you to create combinations of playback techniques that you want to apply simultaneously. Playback techniques are used by expression maps to assign the correct sounds to the required playing techniques in the music.

You can open the **Playback Technique Combinations** dialog in the following ways:

- In the **Expression Maps** dialog, click **Add Technique** in the Switches table action bar.

- In the **Expression Maps** dialog, select an existing playback technique in the Switches table and click **Edit Technique** in the **Techniques** action bar. You can also double-click the playback technique.



1 Techniques list

Allows you to select playback techniques to include in a new switch or to change the playback techniques in an existing switch.

You can select multiple playback techniques to combine by **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking each playback technique.

2 Name

Displays the name of the selected playback technique. If you select multiple playback techniques, each name is automatically separated by a + symbol.

NOTE

You cannot rename playback techniques or playback technique combinations in the **Playback Technique Combinations** dialog. You can rename the switches that include them in the **Base and Add-on Switches** section of the **Expression Maps** dialog. You can rename individual playback techniques in the **Edit Playback Techniques** dialog.

RELATED LINKS

Expression Maps dialog on page 683
Edit Playback Techniques dialog on page 707
Adding/Editing switches in expression maps on page 697

Types of switches

Switches are used in expression maps to trigger the required playback technique or combination of playback techniques. Dorico Elements supports multiple types of switches.

Base

A fundamental change to the playing technique or articulation, such as changing from *arco* to *pizzicato* or unmuted to muted. Base switches are mutually exclusive, meaning a new base switch replaces the previous one.

Add-on

A switch that applies in addition to the existing base switch. For example, some sound libraries allow you to use the same legato switch in addition to different base switches. Add-on switches do not remove or change base switches. Add-on switches can only trigger simple key switch notes and controller values.

Init

A switch that sends instructions when playback starts, such as ensuring a MIDI controller always starts at a set value. By default, every expression map contains an empty init switch. Init switches can only trigger simple key switch notes and controller values.

RELATED LINKS
Expression Maps dialog on page 683
Adding/Editing switches in expression maps on page 697
Adding/Editing mutual exclusion groups in expression maps on page 699

Types of actions

Actions are used in expression maps to determine how individual switches are controlled in order to trigger the required playback technique or combination of playback techniques. Dorico Elements supports multiple types of actions, as different sound libraries require different actions.

Control change actions

Control change actions use MIDI CC events to modulate sounds. They are particularly useful when using sound libraries whose sounds can be manipulated incrementally, such as increasing/decreasing the string vibrato intensity.

Program change actions

Program change actions use MIDI PC events to switch to different sounds. They are particularly useful when using sound libraries, such as General MIDI, that use separate programs for each playback technique or combinations of instrument sounds and effects presets.

Key switch actions

Key switch actions use MIDI note events to switch to different sounds. They are particularly useful when recording MIDI live, as you can press the specified notes on a MIDI keyboard to trigger key switch actions while simultaneously playing the notes you want to record. Usually, key switch actions are mapped to notes in the lowest octave of the MIDI keyboard as they are rarely used for note input.

Key switch actions are also known as “note events”.

Absolute channel change actions

Absolute channel change actions switch to a specific, explicitly numbered channel. They are particularly useful for sound libraries that have separate plug-in instances for each individual instrument. For example, you might use an absolute channel change

action to switch from “natural” on channel **1** to “pizzicato” on channel **2** in your viola section plug-in instance.

Relative channel change actions

Relative channel change actions switch to a channel numbered relative to the starting channel. They are particularly useful for sound libraries that have multiple instruments with separate playback technique channels in the same plug-in instance, as they can switch between playback techniques according to their relative channel number rather than an absolute number. For example, if you have four trumpet instruments loaded in the same plug-in instance, each with three channels for different playback techniques, and want to use the same switches for all four trumpets, you might use a relative channel change action to switch from the “natural” original channel to “muted” on the **+1** relative channel.

Relative channel numbers relate to the original channel number of the endpoint for the corresponding instrument. A **0** relative channel change switches back to the original channel.

TIP

You can add actions to individual switches in the **Expression Maps** dialog.

Creating new expression maps

You can create new expression maps from scratch, and you can duplicate existing expression maps and edit the settings; for example, when using third-party sound libraries or MIDI devices that do not provide expression maps.

PROCEDURE

1. Choose **Library** > **Expression Maps** to open the **Expression Maps** dialog.
2. Create a new expression map in one of the following ways:
   - To create an empty expression map, click **Add Expression Map** in the expression maps list action bar.
   - To create a copy of an existing expression map, select it in the expression maps list and click **Duplicate Expression Map** in the action bar.
3. In the **Expression Map Data** section, click **Lock Info** to unlock the fields.
4. In the **Expression Map Data** section, enter information for your expression map in the relevant fields.
5. Activate/Deactivate **Allow multiple notes at same pitch**.
6. Optional: In the **Base and Add-on Switches** section, add any new switches you require to trigger playback techniques or combinations of playback techniques.
7. In the Switches table, select a switch whose actions, conditions, and/or controls you want to edit.
8. Change any settings for the selected switch as required.

   For example, you can add actions for all switch types or, for base switches only, choose whether the volume of a selected base switch is controlled by its **Note velocity** or a **Control change**.
9. Optional: Repeat steps 7 and 8 for all switches whose settings you want to change.
10. In the **Playback Options Overrides** section, activate each playback option you want to override for the expression map and change their values.

11. In the **Mutual Exclusion Groups** section, activate/deactivate **Auto**.
12. Optional: If you deactivated **Auto**, add or edit mutual exclusion groups manually.
13. Click **OK** to save your changes and close the dialog.

RELATED LINKS
Expression Maps dialog on page 683
Endpoint Setup dialog on page 526
Playback Technique Combinations dialog on page 693
Adding/Editing mutual exclusion groups in expression maps on page 699

Adding/Editing switches in expression maps

You can create new and edit existing switches that trigger playback techniques or combinations of playback techniques in individual expression maps; for example, to add an add-on switch to an existing base switch, or to create a new base switch with note length conditions.

Playback technique combinations are useful for expression maps that require different sets of key switches for **Staccato + Accent** compared to **Staccato** and **Accent** individually, for example.

PROCEDURE

1. Choose **Library** > **Expression Maps** to open the **Expression Maps** dialog.
2. In the expression maps list, select the expression map to which you want to add switches or whose existing switches you want to edit.
3. Optional: In the Switches table in the **Base and Add-on Switches** section, add a new switch to trigger a playback technique or playback technique combination or edit an existing one in one of the following ways:
   - To add a new base switch, click **Add Base Switch**.
   - To add a new add-on switch, click **Add Technique Add-on Switch**.
   - To create a copy of an existing switch, select it and click **Duplicate Technique**.
   - To change the playing techniques triggered by an existing switch, select it and click **Edit Technique**.
4. Optional: If you added a new base/add-on switch or edited an existing switch, select the playback techniques you want the switch to trigger in the **Playback Technique Combinations** dialog.

   TIP

   You can select a single playback technique or combine multiple playback techniques. To select multiple playback techniques, **Ctrl/Cmd**-click each playback technique.
5. Optional: Click **OK** to add the selected playback techniques and close the **Playback Technique Combinations** dialog.
6. In the Switches table, select the switch whose actions, conditions, and/or controls you want to edit.
7. In the **Actions** subsection, choose the event type from one of the following options:
   - **On events**
   - **Off events**
8. In the **Actions** table, add an action of the selected event type for the currently selected switch in one of the following ways:

- Click **Add Control Change Action**.
- Click **Add Program Change Action**.
- Click **Add Key Switch Note Action**.
- Click **Add Absolute Channel Change Action**.
- Click **Add Relative Channel Change Action**.
- Select an existing action and click **Duplicate Action**.

9. Double-click each cell whose value you want to change and change the value.
10. Choose one of the following pitches for **Middle C (note 60)**:
    - **C3**
    - **C4**
    - **C5**

    NOTE

    Steps 11 to 15 only apply to base switches. For init and add-on switches, you can skip to step 16.

11. Optional: Repeat steps 6 to 10 for each action you require for the currently selected switch.
12. In the **Conditions** table, add a condition for the currently selected base switch in one of the following ways:
    - To create a new condition, click **Add Technique** in the action bar.
    - To create a copy of an existing condition, select it and click **Duplicate Technique** in the action bar.
13. Double-click each cell whose value you want to change and select the required option from the menu.
14. Optional: Repeat steps 12 and 13 for each condition you want to add to the selected base switch.
15. Choose one of the following condition options:
    - To use the switch when at least one condition is met, choose **Any of**.
    - To use the switch when all conditions are met, choose **All of**.
16. Change any of the other settings in the **Base and Add-on Switches** section as required.

    For example, choose whether the volume of the selected base switch is controlled by its **Note velocity** or a **Control change**.
17. Click **OK** to save your changes and close the **Expression Maps** dialog.

RELATED LINKS
Playback techniques on page 706
Expression Maps dialog on page 683
Playback Technique Combinations dialog on page 693

Adding/Editing mutual exclusion groups in expression maps

By default, Dorico Elements automatically defines mutual exclusion groups. You can create new and edit existing mutual exclusion groups in individual expression maps manually.

PROCEDURE

1. Choose **Library** > **Expression Maps** to open the **Expression Maps** dialog.
2. In the expression maps list, select the expression map to which you want to add mutual exclusion groups or whose existing mutual exclusion groups you want to edit.
3. Optional: If **Auto** is activated in the **Mutual Exclusion Groups** section, deactivate **Auto**.
4. Optional: If you want to add a new mutual exclusion group, click **Add** in the **Mutual Exclusion Groups** column action bar.
5. Enter a name for the new mutual exclusion group in the dialog that opens.
6. Click **OK** to add the group and close the dialog.
7. In the **Mutual Exclusion Groups** column, select the mutual exclusion groups whose playback techniques you want to change.
8. Change the playback techniques in the selected mutual exclusion group in any of the following ways:
   - To add new playback techniques to the mutual exclusion group, click **Add** in the **Has techniques** column action bar to open the **Playback Technique Combinations** dialog, select the playback techniques you want to add, then click **OK**.
   - To remove playback techniques from the mutual exclusion group, select them in the **Has techniques** column, and click **Delete** in the action bar.
9. Click **OK** to save your changes and close the **Expression Maps** dialog.

Importing expression maps

You can import expression maps into projects, including `.expressionmap` files exported from Cubase. Expression maps exported from Dorico are saved as `.doricolib` files.

PROCEDURE

1. Choose **Library** > **Expression Maps** to open the **Expression Maps** dialog.
2. Click **Import Library** to open the File Explorer/macOS Finder.
3. Locate and select the expression map file you want to import.
4. Click **Open**.

RESULT

The selected expression map is imported into your project. It appears in the expression maps list.

NOTE

- You can also import Dorico and Cubase expression maps by dragging and dropping them into the **Expression Maps** dialog.
- Although Dorico Elements approaches expression maps in a different way to Cubase, Dorico Elements correctly imports many switches from expression maps you import from Cubase, such as *pizzicato*, harmonics, and flutter tongue.

Exporting expression maps

You can export expression maps for use in other projects. Expression maps are saved as `.doricolib` files.

PROCEDURE

1. Choose **Library** > **Expression Maps** to open the **Expression Maps** dialog.
2. In the expression maps list, select the expression maps you want to export.
3. Click **Export Library** to open the File Explorer/macOS Finder.
4. In the File Explorer/macOS Finder, specify a name and location for the library file.
5. Click **Save**.

RESULT

The selected expression maps are exported as a `.doricolib` file and saved in the selected location.

Percussion maps

Unpitched percussion instruments are played back using patches that map unpitched sounds onto different MIDI notes. The pitches required to produce different unpitched sounds vary by device, sound library, manufacturer, and so on, and have no connection to the position of percussion instruments on five-line staves.

The following list contains some examples of unpitched percussion instruments from the General MIDI percussion map.

- Bass drum: C2 (MIDI note 36, two octaves below middle C)
- Kick drum: D2 (MIDI note 38)
- Closed hi-hat: F♯2 (MIDI note 42)
- Cowbell: G♯3 (MIDI note 56)
- Open triangle: A5 (MIDI note 81)

Dorico Elements uses percussion maps to connect the written representation of notes and playing techniques for percussion instruments to the samples required to play those sounds back.

NOTE

A percussion map describes which unpitched percussion instruments and their playback techniques are present in a particular patch, and how to play them back. For example, it describes which MIDI note to play, and if another MIDI note is needed as a key switch to trigger particular playing techniques.

A set of percussion maps for the unpitched percussion patches that are part of theHALion Symphonic Orchestra and HALion Sonic SE factory libraries is provided with Dorico Elements. They are automatically chosen when you add percussion instruments to your project.

You can define custom percussion maps for third-party sound libraries or MIDI devices in the **Percussion Maps** dialog, in order to obtain correct playback.

RELATED LINKS

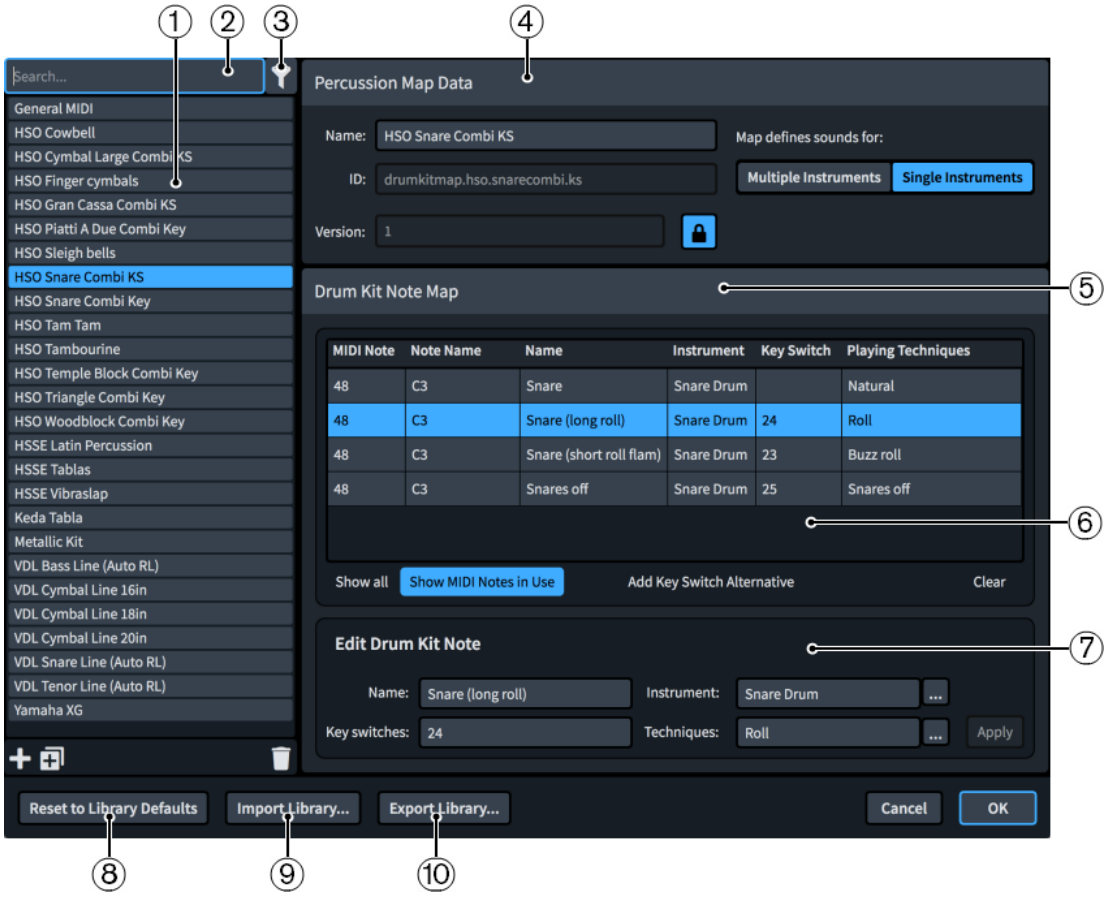
Unpitched percussion on page 1282

Universal Indian Drum Notation on page 1301
Importing percussion maps on page 705
Exporting percussion maps on page 705

Percussion Maps dialog

In the **Percussion Maps** dialog, you can define custom percussion maps for third-party sound libraries or MIDI devices in order to obtain correct playback.

- You can open the **Percussion Maps** dialog by choosing **Library** > **Percussion Maps**.



The **Percussion Maps** dialog is divided into the following sections:

1 Percussion maps list

Contains the percussion maps currently available in your project.

You can add and delete percussion maps using the following buttons in the action bar at the bottom of the percussion maps list:

- **Add Percussion Map**: Adds a new percussion map that contains no existing settings.
- **Duplicate Percussion Map**: Creates a copy of an existing percussion map that you can edit separately from the original.
- **Delete Percussion Map**: Deletes the selected percussion maps.

NOTE

You can only delete custom percussion maps. You cannot delete any default percussion maps.

2 **Search field**

Allows you to filter percussion maps according to your entry.

3 **Show only percussion maps used in this project**

Allows you to filter the percussion maps list so it only includes percussion maps used in the current project.

4 **Percussion Map Data section**

Allows you to specify the following identifying information for the selected percussion map:

- **Name**: Allows you to specify the displayed name for the percussion map that appears in the **Endpoint Setup** dialog.
- **ID**: Allows you to set the unique ID of the percussion map. You can enter any content in the ID field.

  It can be useful to include the instrument and sound library for which you created the map, as well as your name; for example, **xmap.user.paulsmith.hso.cowbell**.
- **Version**: Allows you to indicate the percussion map version so you can identify the most recent one.
- **Map defines sounds for**: Allows you to choose one of the following options, as appropriate for the current percussion map:
  - **Multiple Instruments**: Choose this if the patch for which you are creating a map contains many different percussion instruments, such as the General MIDI drum map.
  - **Single Instruments**: Choose this if the patch for which you are creating a map contains only a single percussion instrument, perhaps with multiple playback techniques for that instrument. For example, a snare drumline patch in Virtual Drumline or another specialist sound library.

    This can also be useful when your VST instrument has several patches that have the same playback technique mappings. For example, there are both large and small cymbal patches in HALion Symphonic Orchestra which provide natural strike and roll sounds. Creating a single individual instrument percussion map allows you to use the same mapping for these sounds for multiple patches.

NOTE

- **ID** and **Version** are locked by the **Lock Info** button. You must click this button in order to change the information in the fields.
- The **Endpoint Setup** dialog is where you set which percussion map Dorico Elements uses for each channel on your VST instrument or MIDI output device.

5 **Drum Kit Note Map section**

Contains subsections that allow you to view, edit, and control the drum kit notes in the selected percussion map.

6 **Drum Kit Note Map table**

By default, the table shows the drum kit notes in use by the selected percussion map in numerical order. The table also contains the following columns, which display the corresponding available data about the selected drum kit note:

- **MIDI Note**: Shows the MIDI note number, such as “48”.
- **Note Name**: Shows the pitch and octave of the note, such as “C3”.
- **Name**: Shows the name of the technique, such as Snare “(long roll)”.
- **Instrument**: Shows the unpitched percussion instrument, such as “Snare Drum”.

- **Key Switch**: Shows the number of the key switch that triggers the note, such as “24”.
- **Playback Techniques**: Shows the playback techniques triggered by the note, such as “Roll”.

At the bottom of the table, there are the following options:

- **Show all**: Shows all MIDI notes from 0 to 127.
- **Show MIDI Notes in Use**: Only shows the MIDI notes in use by the selected percussion map.
- **Add Key Switch Alternative**: Duplicates the selected drum kit note.
- **Clear**: Deletes the selected drum kit note.

You can change the data for the currently selected drum kit note in the **Edit Drum Kit Note** subsection.

7 Edit Drum Kit Note subsection

Allows you to specify data in the following fields for the drum kit note currently selected in the **Drum Kit Note Map** table:

- **Name**: The displayed name for the specific combination of instrument and playback technique. You may choose to input the name used in the manufacturer’s documentation for your VST instrument or MIDI output device.
- **Instrument**: Allows you to select an instrument for the drum kit note selected in the **Drum Kit Note Map** section from a list of all the unpitched percussion instruments you can create in Dorico Elements.
- **Key switches**: Allows you to specify the MIDI note number of the key you want to use as a key switch if this sound requires another MIDI note to be played to trigger this specific combination of instrument and playback techniques.

  NOTE

  Key switches are not compulsory.

- **Techniques**: Allows you to select playback techniques to apply to the instrument selected in the **Instrument** field from a list of the available playback techniques.

8 Reset to Library Defaults

Allows you to revert any changes you have made to the percussion maps from the Default Library.

9 Import Library

Opens the File Explorer/macOS Finder, where you can select the `.doricolib` files that you want to import as percussion maps.

10 Export Library

Opens the File Explorer/macOS Finder, where you can select the location to which you want to export the currently selected percussion maps as a `.doricolib` file. You can then import the `.doricolib` file into other projects and share it with other users.

Creating new percussion maps

You can create new percussion maps from scratch and you can duplicate existing percussion maps and edit the settings; for example, to obtain correct playback when using third-party sound libraries or MIDI devices.

PROCEDURE

1. Choose **Library** > **Percussion Maps** to open the **Percussion Maps** dialog.

2. Create a new percussion map in any of the following ways:
   - To create an empty percussion map, click **Add Percussion Map** in the action bar.
   - To create a copy of an existing percussion map, select it in the percussion maps list and click **Duplicate Percussion Map** in the action bar.
3. In the **Percussion Map Data** section, click **Lock Info** to unlock the fields.
4. Enter the display name you want for the percussion map in the **Name** field.

   This name appears in the **Endpoint Setup** dialog.
5. Enter any unique identification name in the **ID** field.

   It can be useful to include the instrument and sound library for which you created the map, as well as your name, in the identification name for percussion maps; for example, **xmap.user.paulsmith.hso.cowbell**.
6. Choose one of the following options for **Map defines sounds for**, as appropriate for the current percussion map:
   - **Multiple Instruments**
   - **Single Instruments**
7. In the **Drum Kit Note Map** section, click **Show all** to show unmapped notes.
8. Select the row corresponding to the MIDI note for which you want to create a new mapping.
9. In the **Edit Drum Kit Note** subsection, click ... beside the **Instrument** field to open a dialog containing a list of percussion instruments.
10. Select the instrument that corresponds to the sound produced by the selected MIDI note.
11. Click **OK**.
12. In the **Edit Drum Kit Note** subsection, click ... beside the **Techniques** field to open the **Playback Technique Combinations** dialog.
13. Select the appropriate playback techniques for the sound produced by the selected MIDI note.

    For example, **Ctrl/Cmd**-click **Buzz roll** and **Rim**.
14. Click **OK**.
15. In the **Edit Drum Kit Note** subsection, enter the display name you want for this combination of instrument and playing technique in the **Name** field.
16. Optional: If the key switch for this sound requires a MIDI note number, specify it in the **Key switches** field.
17. Click **Apply**.
18. Optional: Repeat these steps for each MIDI note until you have created all the required mappings for your project.
19. Click **OK** to save your changes and close the dialog.

RESULT

The new percussion map is created.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

- You must assign percussion maps to the same endpoints as the VST instruments or MIDI devices that provide the corresponding patches.
- You can export the percussion map if you want to use it in other projects.

RELATED LINKS
Percussion maps on page 700
Assigning expression/percussion maps to endpoints on page 531
Endpoint Setup dialog on page 526

Importing percussion maps

You can import percussion maps into projects. Percussion maps are saved as `.doricolib` files.

PROCEDURE

1. Choose **Library** > **Percussion Maps** to open the **Percussion Maps** dialog.
2. Click **Import Library** to open the File Explorer/macOS Finder.
3. Locate and select the percussion map file you want to import.
4. Click **Open**.

RESULT

The selected percussion map is imported into your project. It appears in the percussion maps list.

Exporting percussion maps

You can export percussion maps so you can use them in other projects. Percussion maps are saved as `.doricolib` files.

PROCEDURE

1. Choose **Library** > **Percussion Maps** to open the **Percussion Maps** dialog.
2. In the percussion maps list, select the percussion maps you want to export.
3. Click **Export Library** to open the File Explorer/macOS Finder.
4. In the File Explorer/macOS Finder, specify a name and location for the library file.
5. Click **Save**.

RESULT

The selected percussion maps are exported as a `.doricolib` file and saved in the selected location.

Defining how combinations of articulations and single-note tremolos sound in playback

You can define specific playback behaviors for particular combinations of articulations and single-note tremolos in playing technique-specific noteheads for unpitched percussion instruments.

PROCEDURE

1. In Setup mode, open the **Percussion Instrument Playing Techniques** dialog in any of the following ways:
   - For an individual percussion instrument: In the **Players** panel, click the instrument menu ··· in the instrument label, and choose **Edit Percussion Playing Techniques** from the menu.

- For percussion instruments that are part of percussion kits: In the **Players** panel, click the instrument menu in the kit instrument label and choose **Edit Percussion Kit** to open the **Edit Percussion Kit** dialog. In the main editing area, select the instrument whose playing techniques you want to edit, then click **Edit Percussion Playing Techniques**.

2. In the list at the top of the dialog, select the playing technique-specific notehead whose playback behaviors you want to define.
3. Click **Add Technique** in the action bar at the bottom left of the dialog.
4. Click **Choose Playing Techniques** beside the **Playback playing technique** field to open the **Playback Technique Combinations** dialog.
5. Select the playback techniques you want.

   TIP

   You can select a single playback technique or combine multiple playback techniques. To select multiple playback techniques, **Ctrl/Cmd**-click each playback technique.

6. Click **OK** to add the selected playback techniques and close the **Playback Technique Combinations** dialog.
7. Choose one of the following options:
   - **Replace**: Allows you to use this playing technique instead of the default playing technique defined for this combination of notehead and staff position.
   - **Add**: Allows you to add this playing technique on top of the default playing technique defined for this combination of notehead and staff position.
8. Choose any articulations and the tremolo stroke that you want from the available options.
9. Click **OK** to save your changes and close the dialog.

RESULT

The behavior of the selected playing technique in playback is changed.

RELATED LINKS

Percussion Instrument Playing Techniques dialog on page 1283
Creating new playing technique-specific noteheads on page 1287
Playback Technique Combinations dialog on page 693

Playback techniques

Playback techniques link together the notations you input into your music and techniques/articulations in sound libraries in order to produce the correct sounds in playback. They are used by expression and percussion maps to trigger the appropriate commands, such as key switches or control changes.

When you input notations, such as playing techniques, tremolos, jazz articulations, or articulations, the corresponding expression maps look for the appropriate playback techniques. For example, inputting *pizz.* playing techniques causes expression maps to use the **Pizzicato** playback technique to switch to the *pizzicato* sound for playback. If the expression map cannot locate the sound, the playback technique applied either remains the same as the previous playback technique or reverts to the natural playback technique.

Custom playing techniques that use playback techniques which do not already exist in expression maps do not play back automatically. In order for them to play back appropriately,

you must add them to the expression maps for each instrument for which you want to use them. You must also assign an action for each custom playing technique that determines how the switch that triggers the technique is controlled.

You can map playback techniques as required for different sound libraries in the **Expression Maps** dialog, including creating new combinations of existing playback techniques, such as **Legato** and **Tremolo**, which allows them to be used simultaneously.

You can see which playback techniques are in use at any particular rhythmic position in the Playing Techniques editor for the corresponding instrument/voice.

TIP

- If you have input a playing technique but cannot hear a change in the sound, you might be using a combination of playback techniques that the expression map does not expect. For example, if you input a new playing technique without cancelling an existing playing technique, the expression map cannot process the two corresponding playback techniques together if the expression map does not have an entry for those two techniques combined.

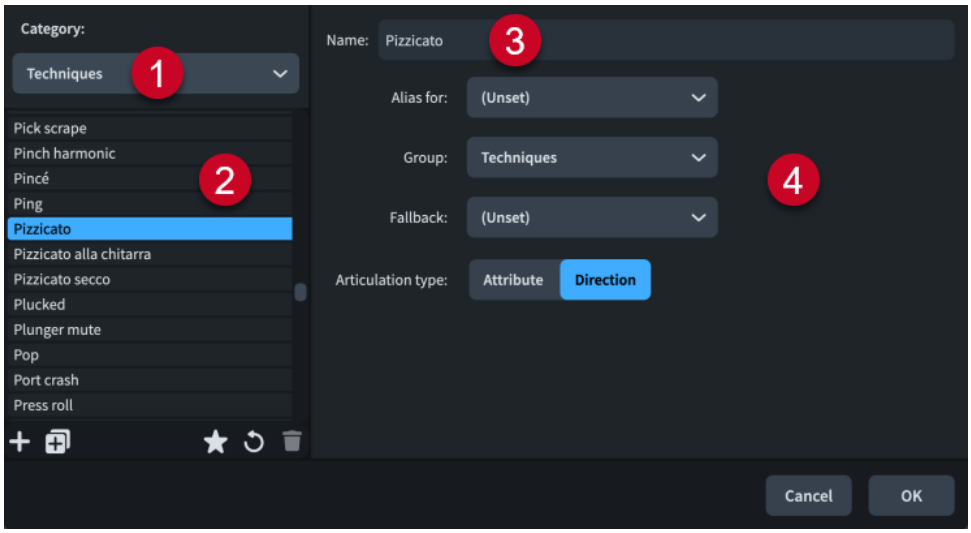
  To avoid playback technique clashes, you can add playback techniques that cannot be in use concurrently to the same mutual exclusion group in the corresponding expression maps. Alternatively, you can create a combination of those playback techniques in order to use them simultaneously.
- You can enable independent voice playback for individual instruments to hear different playing techniques, tremolos, jazz articulations, or articulations in different voices simultaneously.

RELATED LINKS
Expression maps on page 682
Expression Maps dialog on page 683
Playback Technique Combinations dialog on page 693
Enabling independent voice playback on page 506
Creating new expression maps on page 696
Adding/Editing mutual exclusion groups in expression maps on page 699
Playing Techniques editor on page 641
Playing techniques on page 1062
Tremolos on page 1264
Jazz articulations on page 1028
Articulations on page 723

Edit Playback Techniques dialog

The **Edit Playback Techniques** dialog allows you to define new playback techniques and edit existing ones. Playback techniques are used by expression maps to assign the correct sounds to the required notations in the music, such as playing techniques, tremolos, jazz articulations, and articulations.

- You can open the **Edit Playback Techniques** dialog by choosing **Library** > **Playback Techniques**.



The **Edit Playback Techniques** dialog contains the following sections and options:

1 **Category menu**

Allows you to filter the list of playback techniques by selecting a category from the menu, such as **Techniques** or **Dynamics**.

2 **Playback techniques list**

Contains all the playback techniques in the project within the currently selected category.

The action bar at the bottom of the list contains the following options:

- **New** : Adds a new blank playback technique.
- **New from Selection** : Creates a copy of an existing playback technique that you can edit separately from the original.
- **Save as Default** : Saves the selected playback technique to your user library, allowing you to use it in multiple projects. Appears as for playback techniques saved as default.
- **Revert to Factory** : Removes all your changes to the selected playback technique, returning it to its saved settings.
- **Delete** : Deletes the selected playback technique.

NOTE

You cannot delete predefined playing techniques or any playing technique that is currently used in your project.

3 **Name**

Allows you to edit or enter the name of the playback technique. This is the name shown in lists in the **Edit Playing Techniques**, **Expression Maps**, **Playback Technique Combinations**, and **Percussion Maps** dialogs.

4 **Playback options**

- **Alias for**: Allows you to select another playback technique whose sound mapping you want to apply to the selected playback technique as well.
- **Group**: Sets the group in which this playback technique appears.
- **Fallback**: Allows you to specify another playback technique that can be used if the present one is not available.
- **Articulation type**: Sets the duration over which the playback technique takes effect. **Attribute** applies only to the note at the rhythmic position where the playing technique

is found, such as a staccato articulation, while **Direction** applies to all following notes until it is replaced by another playing technique, such as *pizzicato*.

RELATED LINKS

Expression Maps dialog on page 683
Playback Technique Combinations dialog on page 693
Adding/Editing mutual exclusion groups in expression maps on page 699

Notation reference

Introduction

This notation reference contains information about the accepted conventions for presenting different notations and how to change their appearance and placement in Dorico Elements, both for individual items and by changing default settings.

It also contains instructions for inputting more complex notations, such as cross-staff glissando lines, which are described in the corresponding chapter.

Tasks in the notation reference outline the default per-layout changes you can make in **Layout Options**, such as changing the frequency of bar numbers, and the individual changes you can make to items, which often involve using properties in the Properties panel.

More detailed default options, such as how notes should be beamed in different meters or spacing gaps between different items, are available in Dorico Pro.

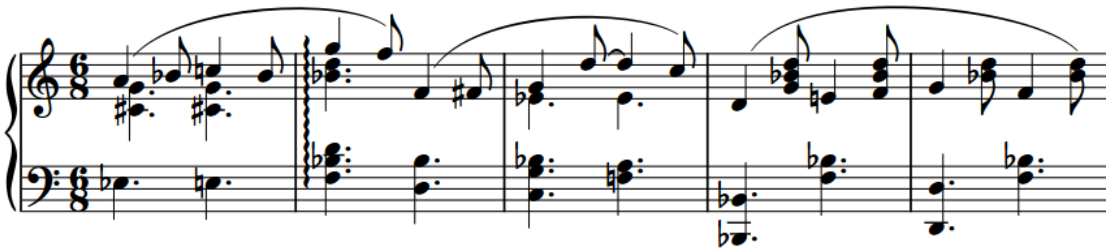
You can find basic input methods for notations in the Write mode chapter.

RELATED LINKS
Write mode on page 186
Layout Options dialog on page 677
Properties panel on page 615
Notations input on page 259

Accidentals

Accidentals are shown beside notes to indicate their pitch, both when notated on a staff and written out in text. In music based in Western tonality, they usually show that the pitch of a note has been altered so that it does not conform to the prevailing key signature.

In Dorico Elements, each note has its own fixed pitch that is independent of the prevailing key signature, and accidentals are automatically hidden and shown as appropriate. For example, if you input F♮s and then add a D major key signature before them, they do not turn into F♯s; they remain F♮s and show natural accidentals. However, if you input the D major key signature first, any Fs you then input without stating an accidental are input as F♯s.



There are different conventions for accidental duration rules, such as not repeating the same accidental on subsequent notes of the same pitch in the same bar. In music that has no key signatures, some or all notes might require accidentals, depending on the notation convention in use.

You can use accidental duration rules to determine when accidentals are shown.

RELATED LINKS
Accidental duration rules on page 719
Inputting notes on page 211
Inputting accidentals on page 233

Deleting accidentals

You can delete accidentals according to their type, and you can delete all accidentals from a selection of notes with different accidentals at the same time. This changes the pitch of the selected notes.

NOTE

These steps do not apply to cautionary accidentals, such as those shown on natural notes that follow the same notes with an accidental but in a different octave. In Dorico Elements, you can only hide, show, or parenthesize cautionary accidentals individually.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the notes whose accidentals you want to delete.
2. Delete accidentals in any of the following ways:
   - To delete naturals, press **0**.
   - To delete flats, press **-**.

- To delete sharps, press **=**.
- In the Notes panel, click the accidentals you want to delete.

RESULT

The corresponding accidentals are deleted from the selected notes. This changes their pitch. For example, deleting the sharp from a G♯ turns it into G♮.

NOTE

- Deleting accidentals causes accidentals to appear on any subsequent notes of the same pitch in the same bar. When you select single notes or multiple notes in the same voice at the same rhythmic position, their pitches are shown in the status bar and as depressed keys in the Keyboard panel.
- To delete accidentals from a selection of notes with different accidentals, we recommend that you revert them all to natural by pressing **0** or clicking **Natural** in the Notes panel. This is because re-inputting an accidental over a selection of notes with different accidentals adds that accidental to every note in the selection. For example, two G♯s followed by two G♭s become four G♯s if you re-input a sharp. If you click **Sharp** or press **=** twice, all accidentals are deleted.

RELATED LINKS

Inputting accidentals on page 233
Changing the pitch of individual notes on page 444
Notes panel on page 191
Status bar on page 39
Keyboard panel on page 197

Hiding/Showing or parenthesizing accidentals

You can hide/show individual accidentals, or show them in round or square brackets, including cautionary accidentals shown by default. For example, you can show cautionary accidentals on subsequent notes in tie chains that cross system/frame breaks by showing accidentals in round brackets. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the notes whose accidentals you want to hide/show or parenthesize. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.

   NOTE

   You can only select individual noteheads within tie chains in Engrave mode.

2. In the Properties panel, activate **Accidental** in the **Notes and Rests** group.
3. Select one of the following options from the menu:
   - **Hide**

- **Show**
- **Round brackets**
- **Square brackets**

RESULT

Accidentals on the selected notes are shown, hidden, or shown in round or square brackets. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

NOTE

- Hiding accidentals does not affect the pitch of notes in playback.
- If you are hiding/showing many accidentals, we recommend that you consider changing the accidental duration rule.
- You can assign key commands for different accidental hiding, showing, and parenthesizing commands on the **Key Commands** page in **Preferences**.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

You can also hide/show or parenthesize accidentals on artificial harmonics shown using diamond noteheads, independently of the normal noteheads that indicate the stopped pitch.

RELATED LINKS

Properties panel on page 615
Hiding/Showing zones on page 44
Accidental duration rules on page 719
Hiding/Showing or parenthesizing cautionary accidentals on page 720
Hiding/Showing or parenthesizing harmonic accidentals on page 971
Preferences dialog on page 58
Ties on page 1232
Changing the property scope on page 617
Copying property settings to other layouts/frame chains on page 599

Changing the size of accidentals

You can change the size of accidentals individually without changing the size of the noteheads to which they apply; for example, to show editorial accidentals at a smaller size than normal accidentals. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the accidentals whose size you want to change.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Accidental scale** in the **Notes and Rests** group.
3. Change the value in the value field.
4. Press **Return**.

RESULT

The scale size of the selected accidentals is changed. For example, changing the value to 50 scales the selected accidentals to half their normal size. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

Stacking of accidentals

If multiple accidentals are required for a chord in a single voice, or for notes in multiple voices at the same rhythmic position, they are stacked to the left of the chord in columns.

For chords with multiple accidentals, accidentals are generally stacked as follows:

1. The highest accidental is inserted in the first column immediately to the left of the notes.
2. The lowest accidental is added to the same column, provided that it does not collide with the first accidental.
3. The remaining highest and lowest accidentals are alternated in successive columns located further left from the chord.

In Dorico Elements, additional rules help to produce a stack of accidentals that uses as few columns as possible. The following list contains some of the rules that are applied:

- Columns closer to the notes contain more accidentals than columns further from the notes.
- Accidentals on notes that are an octave apart are stacked in the same column. This also applies to accidentals that are a sixth or more apart, depending on the combination of accidentals.
- Accidentals in the same column never collide. The minimum interval between accidentals that is required to prevent collisions depends on the types of accidentals.
- Accidentals that are a second apart are arranged in adjacent columns, with the higher accidental in the right-hand column.

These rules minimize the amount of extra space that is required between successive notes or chords and ensure that accidentals appear as close as possible to the noteheads to which they apply. At the same time, they produce a contour that resembles a C-curve on the left-hand side of the chord.

Accidental stacking rules for dense chords

Dorico Elements uses special stacking calculations in dense chords with multiple accidentals to ensure legibility. Chords are considered dense when they have six or more accidentals within the span of an octave.

For dense chords, accidentals are stacked as follows:

1. The highest accidental is inserted in the first column to the left of the notes.
2. The next accidental on a note that is located at least a seventh below the highest note is stacked into the same column. This continues with the remaining notes until no more accidentals fit into the first column.
3. Steps 1 and 2 are repeated for the following columns until all accidentals are stacked.
4. The columns are grouped, interspersed, and re-stacked. This results in a stack with alternating accidentals, reminiscent of the way accidentals are arranged in a key signature.

By default for dense chords, Dorico Elements uses a lattice arrangement of accidentals, rather than the usual zig-zag arrangement. In very dense chords, the lattice arrangement can be wider and require more columns.

RELATED LINKS
Changing the column of accidentals on page 716
Moving accidentals graphically on page 717

Kerning of accidental columns

Dorico Elements applies kerning to accidental columns to ensure that the columns to the left of a chord occupy as little horizontal space as possible.

In typography, kerning adjusts the space between individual characters to increase legibility. In Dorico Elements, as well as in music engraving in general, kerning allows accidentals to interlock.

EXAMPLE

If a low note is followed by a high note with an accidental, the accidental can be tucked above the low note to prevent the note spacing from being distorted.

Similarly, in the case of multiple columns of accidentals on a chord, the overall width of the stack of accidentals is reduced if, for example, a flat in the second column is kerned underneath a sharp in the first column belonging to a note a third higher. This also reduces the need to distort note spacing to accommodate accidentals.

Changing the column of accidentals

You can change the column of individual accidentals; for example, so they appear closer to the stem than other accidentals in the chord. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the notes or accidentals whose accidental column you want to change.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Accidental column** in the **Notes and Rests** group.
3. Change the value in the value field.

RESULT

The column of the selected accidentals is changed. Accidentals with lower **Accidental column** values are placed closer to noteheads, while accidentals with higher values are placed further from noteheads. If necessary, Dorico Elements automatically changes the column of other accidentals at the same rhythmic position.

If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

RELATED LINKS
Properties panel on page 615
Hiding/Showing zones on page 44
Stacking of accidentals on page 715
Tucking index properties on page 825
Changing the property scope on page 617

Copying property settings to other layouts/frame chains on page 599

Moving accidentals graphically

You can move individual accidentals graphically to the right or left; for example, to reduce the horizontal spacing required for accidentals in a single dense chord. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

NOTE

You cannot move accidentals rhythmically. If you want to change the notes to which accidentals apply, you must delete them from their original notes and input new accidentals on the new notes or change the pitch of existing notes.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the accidentals you want to move. You can also select their noteheads.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Accidental X offset** in the **Notes and Rests** group.
3. Move the accidentals in one of the following ways:
   - To move them to the right, increase the value in the value field.
   - To move them to the left, decrease the value in the value field.

RESULT

The selected accidentals are moved graphically. If necessary, Dorico Elements automatically increases note spacing to accommodate the accidentals and avoid collisions.

If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

RELATED LINKS

Inputting accidentals on page 233
Changing the pitch of individual notes on page 444

Altered unisons

Altered unisons occur when two or more notes of the same name in the same octave have different accidentals in the same chord, such as D♯ and D♭.

In Dorico Elements, this is notated with a split stem by default. Split stems show the main body of a chord with a stem branch coming off the main stem that connects noteheads in altered unisons to the chord. This allows all notes to appear with their corresponding accidental directly beside them. A split stem is also known as a “cherry stalk” or a “tree”.

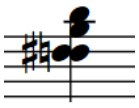
You can show individual altered unisons with a single stem, meaning noteheads appear directly beside each other, and the two accidentals are shown beside each other to the left of the chord.

You can also change the default appearance of all altered unisons in each flow independently on the **Accidentals** page in **Notation Options**.

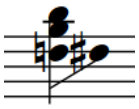
NOTE

If a chord contains notes a second interval apart and one of those notes has an altered unison, it is always shown with a split stem, regardless of your setting. This is to ensure clarity in clusters.

EXAMPLE



A single stem altered unison



A split stem altered unison

RELATED LINKS
Inputting chords on page 240
Notation Options dialog on page 679

Changing how altered unisons appear

You can change how individual altered unisons appear, including within chords containing other altered unisons, and independently of your per-flow settings. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the altered unison notes whose appearance you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Split stem** in the **Notes and Rests** group.
3. Activate/Deactivate the corresponding checkbox.

RESULT

The selected altered unison notes are shown with split stems when the checkbox is activated, and with single stems when the checkbox is deactivated. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

TIP

- **Split stem** applies to individual notes. You can have altered unisons appear differently within the same chord by setting their properties independently.
- You can change the default appearance of all altered unisons in each flow independently in **Notation Options** > **Accidentals** > **Altered Unisons**.

RELATED LINKS
Properties panel on page 615
Changing the property scope on page 617
Copying property settings to other layouts/frame chains on page 599
Notation Options dialog on page 679

Microtonal accidentals

Microtonal accidentals indicate pitches beyond the standard accepted chromatic scale in Western tonality, such as a quarter sharp or quarter flat. Microtonal accidentals are only shown in Dorico Elements if you open a project that already contains them. They are available for input only where the corresponding key signature and tonality system apply.

Accidental duration rules

Accidental duration rules determine how long accidentals apply, such as within a bar, at a different octave, or just for a single note. Dorico Elements allows you to use different accidental duration rules.

- You can find the available accidental duration rules on the **Accidentals** page in **Notation Options**.

Common practice

In common practice, an accidental affects all notes of the same pitch in the same octave within the same bar, unless it is cancelled by another accidental. If it is not cancelled, it is automatically cancelled in the following bar.

It is customary to show cautionary accidentals on subsequent notes in certain circumstances. For example, in the key of G major, an F♯ in a bar following an F♮ shows a cautionary sharp sign, even though the sharp is included in the key signature. Cautionary accidentals are also known as “courtesy accidentals”.

When using the common practice accidental duration rule, you can choose to hide, show, or parenthesize cautionary accidentals in different circumstances.

In Dorico Elements, common practice is the default accidental duration rule.

Second Viennese School

The Second Viennese School accidental duration rule states that each accidental only applies to a single note. All notes show an accidental regardless of key signature, including naturals.

This accidental duration rule was used by Schoenberg and other composers of the Second Viennese School.

You can customize the options within the Second Viennese School accidental duration rule when changing the accidental duration rule, including choosing whether immediate repetitions of the same note within the same bar require a restatement of the accidental.

Modernist

The Modernist accidental duration rule states that only notes that have been altered from the key signature show accidentals. Naturals are not shown. However, accidentals that are shown only apply to the notes on which they are written, as with the Second Viennese School.

Charles Ives and Robert Crumb used this variation.

You can customize the options within the Modernist accidental duration rule when changing the accidental duration rule, including choosing whether or not the same accidental on the same pitch is restated later in the bar if the subsequent pitches occur immediately and if subsequent pitches occur after other, different notes. Similarly, there are options for accidentals on notes in different octaves in the same bar and following bar. There is also an option controlling the restatement of accidentals within beam groups.

RELATED LINKS
Notation Options dialog on page 679

Changing the accidental duration rule

You can change the accidental duration rule in each flow independently; for example, if the Modernist accidental duration rule is appropriate for certain flows in your project but common practice is appropriate for others. In Dorico Elements, common practice is the default accidental duration rule.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-N** to open **Notation Options**.
2. In the **Flows** list, select the flows in which you want to change the accidental duration rule.

   By default, only the current flow is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other flows by clicking **Select All** in the action bar, clicking and dragging across multiple flows, **Shift**-clicking adjacent flows, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking individual flows.
3. In the category list, click **Accidentals**.
4. In the **Basic** section, choose one of the following options for **Accidental duration rule**:
   - **Common Practice**
   - **Second Viennese School**
   - **Modernist**
5. Optional: Customize the options for your chosen accidental duration rule.

   TIP

   Options in the **Basic** section can apply to all accidental duration rules.
6. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

Hiding/Showing or parenthesizing cautionary accidentals

You can hide/show cautionary accidentals, or show them in parentheses, in different circumstances by default in flows that use the common practice accidental duration rule.

PREREQUISITE

The flows in which you want to hide, show, or parenthesize cautionary accidentals use the common practice accidental duration rule.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-N** to open **Notation Options**.

2. In the **Flows** list, select the flows in which you want to hide, show, or parenthesize cautionary accidentals.

   By default, only the current flow is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other flows by clicking **Select All** in the action bar, clicking and dragging across multiple flows, **Shift**-clicking adjacent flows, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking individual flows.

3. In the category list, click **Accidentals**.
4. In the **Cautionary accidentals** section, change each option as required.
5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

Cautionary accidentals are hidden, shown, or parenthesized in the corresponding circumstances in the selected flows.

TIP

For flows using the Modernist accidental duration rule, options for cautionary accidentals are available in the **Modernist Options** section of the **Accidentals** page.

Changing the cancellation of double accidentals

You can change the convention of double accidental cancellation in each flow independently; for example, if some flows in your project require archaic cancellation. You can do this in combination with any accidental duration rule.

By default, Dorico Elements uses modern cancellation.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-N** to open **Notation Options**.
2. In the **Flows** list, select the flows in which you want to change the double accidental cancellation convention.

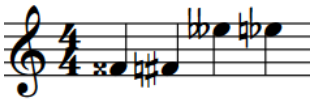
   By default, only the current flow is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other flows by clicking **Select All** in the action bar, clicking and dragging across multiple flows, **Shift**-clicking adjacent flows, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking individual flows.

3. In the category list, click **Accidentals**.
4. In the **Basic** section, choose one of the following options for **Single accidentals cancelling double accidentals**:
   - To show naturals immediately before single accidentals that come after double accidentals, choose **Use archaic cancellation**.
   - To replace double accidentals with single accidentals without showing naturals, choose **Use modern cancellation**.
5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

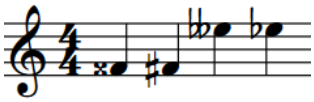
RESULT

The double accidental cancellation convention is changed in the selected flows.

EXAMPLE



Archaic cancellation

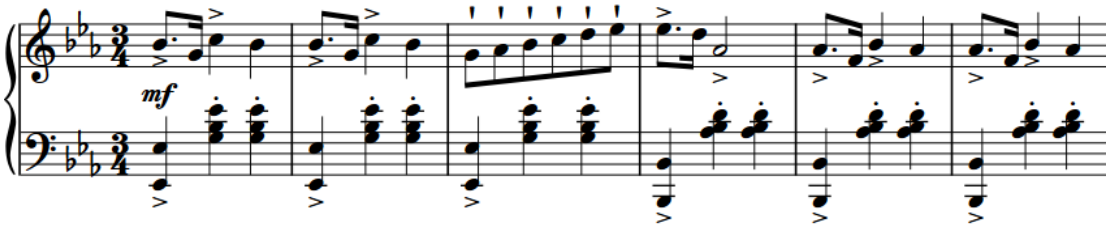


Modern cancellation

Articulations

Articulations are markings that are drawn above or below notes and chords. Articulations tell a performer how to attack a note or how long to play a note relative to its notated duration.

In Dorico Elements, articulations are defined as something that alters the way a note is played, in a way that is consistent across all instruments. Because instructions like bowing directions, harmonics, or tonguing apply to different instrument groups, in Dorico Elements such directions are defined as playing techniques.



A musical phrase with accent, staccato, and staccatissimo articulations

Articulations are categorized into the following types:

Articulations of force

Indicate a stronger attack at the start of notes, and include articulations such as accent and marcato. Marcato is also sometimes known as a "strong accent". Dorico Elements shows these articulations at the start of a note or tie chain by default.

Articulations of duration

Indicate a shorter duration than notated, and include articulations such as staccatissimo, staccato, tenuto, and staccato-tenuto. Staccato-tenuto is also sometimes known as a "louré". If a note includes ties, Dorico Elements shows articulations of duration above the last note in the chain by default.

Articulations of stress

Indicate notes that should be emphasized or not emphasized where that contradicts the prevailing meter, using stressed and unstressed marks. Dorico Elements shows these articulations at the start of a note or tie chain by default.

Dorico Elements positions articulations automatically on the notehead or stem side of notes and chords, according to the musical context. A note or chord can display one of each type of articulation.

RELATED LINKS

Inputting articulations on page 259
Articulations in playback on page 728
Positions of articulations on page 724
Changing the positions of articulations on tie chains on page 726
Playback techniques on page 706

Copying and pasting articulations

You can copy an existing phrase and paste only its slurs, articulations, and jazz articulations to another phrase, without affecting the pitches of notes.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, make a selection containing the slurs, articulations, and jazz articulations you want to copy.
2. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-C** to copy the selected phrase.
3. Select the first note to which you want to paste articulations.
4. Choose **Edit** > **Paste Special** > **Paste Articulations**. You can also choose this option from the context menu.

RESULT

Slurs, articulations, and jazz articulations included in the selection are pasted to notes from the selected note onwards.

RELATED LINKS

Large selections on page 403
Copying and pasting notes/items on page 433
Repitching notes without changing their rhythm on page 448
Arranging tools on page 431

Deleting articulations

Individual articulation markings cannot be selected and deleted separately from their notehead in Write mode, so articulations must be deleted by selecting the note or notes to which they are attached, and deselecting the articulation.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the notes whose articulations you want to delete.
2. Deselect the articulations in any of the following ways:
   - Press the key commands of the articulations you want to delete.
   - In the Notes panel, click the articulations you want to delete.

RELATED LINKS

Notes panel on page 191
Hiding/Showing zones on page 44
Key commands for articulations on page 260

Positions of articulations

There are established conventions for the position and placement of articulations relative to notes, the staff, and staff lines, which ensure articulations are always clearly visible. For

the smallest articulations, such as staccato marks, correct placement relative to staff lines in particular is vital.

Placement of articulations

Articulations are placed on the notehead side by default, with the following exceptions:

- In single-voice contexts, marcato is always placed above the staff, regardless of the stem direction of the note or chord on which it is used. In multiple-voice contexts, marcato can also be placed below the staff.
- If multiple voices are active, articulations are placed at the end of the stem side of a note or chord. This clarifies which articulations belong to the up-stemmed notes and which to the down-stemmed notes.
- If a note is placed on the middle staff line or on the space immediately on either side, articulations that are less than a space in height are centered in the next unoccupied space. This normally only applies to staccato and tenuto. If a note in the middle of the staff has a staccato-tenuto articulation, the component parts of the articulation are split up and placed in separate spaces.
- If an articulation cannot fit within a staff space, or if the note is placed high or low on the staff, the articulation is placed outside the staff.
- If a note or chord is tied and the tie is placed above or below the notehead, articulations that are placed on the notehead side of a note or chord are offset by an additional 1/4 space in order to avoid the end of the tie.

Articulations on the notehead side are always centered horizontally on the notehead. This also applies to articulations on the stem side, except if the only articulation is a staccato or staccatissimo. In this case, the articulation is centered on the stem.

Articulations in tie chains

By default, articulations of force and stress are shown on the first note/chord in tie chains, while articulations of duration are shown on the last note/chord.

You can change where in tie chains articulations appear individually.

RELATED LINKS
Moving items graphically on page 481
Changing the placement of articulations relative to notes on page 727
Changing the placement of articulations relative to slurs on page 727

Order of articulations

If there are multiple articulations on the same notes, their vertical position and proximity to noteheads/stems depends on their type.

Articulations are positioned in the following order:

1. Articulations of duration are positioned closest to notehead/stems.
2. Articulations of force are positioned outside articulations of duration.
3. Articulations of stress are positioned furthest from noteheads/stems.

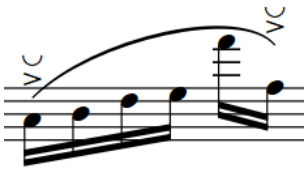
Order of articulations in relation to slurs

Articulations of duration are positioned as follows:

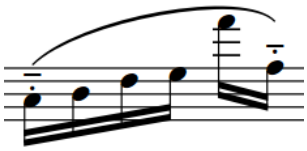
- Inside slurs that start/end on a note or chord with an articulation.
- Inside the curvature of a slur.
- Inside tuplet brackets.

Articulations of force are positioned as follows:

- Outside slurs that start/end on a note or chord with an articulation, except if they can be positioned within the staff.
- Inside the curvature of a slur if they fit between the slur and the note or stem, to which they belong, without colliding.
- Outside tuplet brackets.



Force and stress articulations outside the ends of the slur



Duration articulations inside the ends of the slur

Changing the positions of articulations on tie chains

You can change where in tie chains articulations appear individually. By default, articulations of force and stress are shown on the first note/chord in tie chains, while articulations of duration are shown on the last note/chord.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the tied notes/chords whose articulation position you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the **Articulations** group of the Properties panel, activate **Pos. in tie chain** under the corresponding heading for the articulation whose position you want to change.

   For example, activate **Pos. in tie chain** under the **Articulations of force** heading to change the position of accents.
3. Choose one of the following options:
   - **First note**
   - **Last note**

RESULT

The position of articulations in the selected tie chains is changed.

RELATED LINKS

Hiding/Showing zones on page 44
Properties panel on page 615

Changing the placement of articulations relative to notes

You can change whether individual articulations are placed on the notehead side or stem side of notes. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the notes/chords whose articulation placement you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the **Articulations** group of the Properties panel, activate **Placement** under the corresponding heading for the articulations whose placement you want to change.

   For example, activate **Placement** under the **Articulations of force** heading to change the placement of accents.
3. Select one of the following options from the menu:
   - **Notehead side**
   - **Stem side**

RESULT

The articulation is placed on the selected side of the notes or chords. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain. If this creates a collision with other markings, such as playing techniques, Dorico Elements automatically makes adjustments to make sure all markings are clear and legible.

Changing the placement of articulations relative to slurs

You can change whether individual articulations of duration are placed inside or outside slur endpoints. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

NOTE

These steps only apply to articulations of duration. They do not apply to articulations of force or stress.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the notes/chords whose articulation placement you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Inside slur endpoint** in the **Articulations** group.

3. Activate/Deactivate the corresponding checkbox.

RESULT

Articulations of duration are placed inside slur endpoints when the checkbox is activated, and outside slur endpoints when the checkbox is deactivated. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

RELATED LINKS

Slur endpoints relative to articulations on page 1158
Hiding/Showing zones on page 44
Properties panel on page 615
Changing the property scope on page 617
Copying property settings to other layouts/frame chains on page 599

Articulations in playback

Articulations affect how notes sound in playback. Depending on whether your sound library has specific samples for different articulations, Dorico Elements changes playback in different ways to reflect articulations.

- If your sound library includes samples for articulations, Dorico Elements loads the required samples using playback techniques. Additionally, Dorico Elements makes notes with staccatos sound shorter and notes with accents sound louder.
- If your sound library does not include samples for articulations, Dorico Elements adjusts notes according to the articulation without loading different samples. For example, making notes with staccatos sound shorter and notes with accents sound louder.

Because articulations apply to whole notes, samples are triggered at the start of notes, including tie chains.

TIP

You can enable independent voice playback for individual instruments to hear different sounds in different voices simultaneously; for example, if you have slurs in one voice and staccatos in another voice.

RELATED LINKS

Playback techniques on page 706
Enabling independent voice playback on page 506

Bars

Bars indicate a usually regular pattern of beats, determined by the prevailing time signature. Bars are separated from adjacent bars by vertical barlines, and each bar has a unique bar number.

Dorico Elements automatically numbers bars and shows barlines between bars as required for the prevailing time signature.

RELATED LINKS
Barlines on page 734
Bar numbers on page 742
Note and rest grouping on page 774
Time signatures on page 1249
Pick-up bars on page 1253
Input methods for bars, beats, and barlines on page 287
Input methods for time signatures and pick-up bars on page 270

Bar length

Bars usually last the same duration and start and end at the same positions for all players. However, some music involves bars of different lengths coinciding, and there are situations where some players may have no bars indicated at all.

You can change the duration of a bar by changing its time signature or, in music in open meter, by inputting barlines where required. You can hide time signatures you do not want to show in the music; for example, if you are writing music with an irregular meter and you require barlines only to group material together, but not to imply any sense of meter.

RELATED LINKS
Hiding/Showing time signatures on page 1261

Deleting bars/beats

You can delete whole bars and specific beats of music from your project completely by using the bars and barlines popover.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select one of the following:
   - The first bar you want to delete, or the first note or rest in that bar.
   - An item at the rhythmic position from which you want to delete beats.
2. Open the bars and barlines popover in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Shift-B**.
   - In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers**, then **Bars and Barlines**.
3. Enter **–** (minus), followed by the number of bars or beats you want to delete into the popover.

For example, enter **–6** to delete six bars, meaning the bar you selected and the subsequent five bars, or **-2q** to delete two quarter note beats, starting from the selected rhythmic position.

4. Press **Return** to close the popover.

RESULT

The number of bars or beats specified is deleted. Just as when Insert mode is activated, music to the right of the selection moves up to fill in the gap.

NOTE

- Any signposts in the selection are also deleted.
- Deleting some, but not all, beats from bars according to the prevailing time signature deletes the contents of those beats only. If you want to shorten a bar's duration, such as at the end of flows that start with a pick-up bar, you must instead either input a time signature with the required number of beats then hide the time signature, or input a barline and delete any excess bars if necessary. You can also use the **Global Adjustment of Current Bar** Insert mode scope and delete notes/rests.

RELATED LINKS

Bars and barlines popover on page 288
Pick-up bars on page 1253
Deleting notes/items on page 431
Deleting rests on page 1149
Insert mode on page 427
Signposts on page 426
Input methods for bars, beats, and barlines on page 287
Input methods for time signatures and pick-up bars on page 270

Deleting bars/beats with the system track

You can delete whole bars and selected beats from your project completely using the system track.

PREREQUISITE

The system track is shown.

PROCEDURE

1. In the system track in Write mode, select the region that you want to delete.
2. Click **Delete** in the system track. It can also appear above the system track if your selection is narrow.

Delete button in the system track

The system track changes color when you hover over the **Delete** button.

RESULT

The selected region is deleted. Just as when Insert mode is activated, music to the right of the selection moves up to fill in the gap.

NOTE

- Any signposts in the selection are also deleted.
- Deleting some, but not all, beats from bars according to the prevailing time signature deletes the contents of those beats only. If you want to shorten a bar's duration, such as at the end of flows that start with a pick-up bar, you must instead either input a time signature with the required number of beats then hide the time signature, or input a barline and delete any excess bars if necessary. You can also use the **Global Adjustment of Current Bar** Insert mode scope and delete notes/rests.

RELATED LINKS
System track on page 404
Insert mode on page 427
Signposts on page 426

Deleting empty bars/beats at the end of flows

You can trim flows by deleting any empty bars or beats left at the end.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select an item in the flow you want to trim.
2. Open the bars and barlines popover in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Shift-B**.
   - In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers**, then **Bars and Barlines**.
3. Enter **trim** into the popover.
4. Press **Return** to close the popover.

RESULT
Empty bars/beats at the end of the selected flow are deleted.

TIP

You can also trim flows by choosing **Write** > **Trim Flow**.

RELATED LINKS
Bars and barlines popover on page 288
Splitting flows on page 470
Input methods for bars, beats, and barlines on page 287
Deleting rests on page 1149

Deleting the contents of bars

You can delete just the contents of bars without deleting barlines or the bars themselves.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the bars whose contents you want to delete.

   TIP

   Notes, rests, and other objects are highlighted orange when selected.

2. Press **Backspace or Delete**.

RELATED LINKS
Large selections on page 403
Filters on page 407
Insert mode on page 427

Splits in bars

You can split bars rhythmically by changing the number of beats in each bar. You can split bars visually across system or frame breaks, which might be required in music with an irregular meter or in passages of polymeter.

Splitting bars by inputting new time signatures

You can split bars into two or more bars by changing the time signature at any rhythmic position. New time signatures apply until the next existing time signature or the end of the flow, whichever comes first.

NOTE

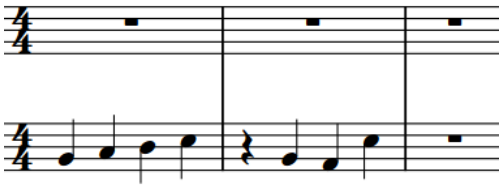
If you change the time signature in the middle of an existing bar, we recommend inputting another time signature at the start of the preceding bar reflecting its new rhythmic duration to avoid confusion.

Splitting bars by inputting new barlines

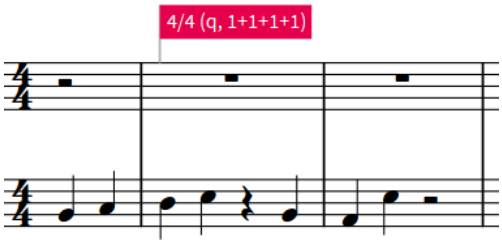
You can also split bars by inputting new barlines that are not normal (single) barlines anywhere within a bar without affecting the time signature. However, inputting a normal (single) barline anywhere within an existing bar resets the prevailing time signature from that point onwards.

For example, selecting the third quarter note (crotchet) in a 4/4 bar and inserting a new barline causes a new 4/4 bar to start from the added barline. This leaves the equivalent of a 2/4 bar without a time signature to the left of the barline, but the bars to the right of the added barline are in 4/4 and continue to be in 4/4 until the next time signature or the end of the flow, whichever comes first.

Signposts are shown at the position of each barline that you add manually within bars.



Two 4/4 bars with quarter notes



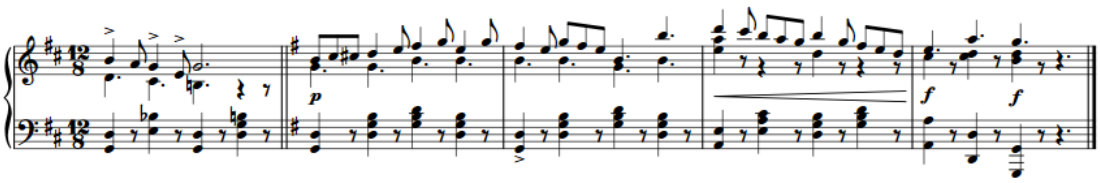
Adding a normal barline halfway through the first 4/4 bar restarts the time signature from that point.

RELATED LINKS
Input methods for bars, beats, and barlines on page 287
Input methods for time signatures and pick-up bars on page 270

Inserting system breaks on page 586
Inserting frame breaks on page 590
Inputting notes in Insert mode on page 226
Insert mode on page 427

Barlines

Barlines are vertical lines that cross staves in order to show how music is divided into bars, according to the time signature. The most commonly used barline is the single barline between adjacent bars, but there are different types, such as double or repeat barlines.



The final system in a piece in 12/8 containing a key change with double barline, three normal barlines, and a final barline at the end

Dorico Elements automatically shows barlines as required for the prevailing time signature. For example, Dorico Elements automatically shows dashed barlines between the different meters in aggregate time signatures. If you change the time signature, Dorico Elements moves the barlines as required so that subsequent music is barred correctly.

By default, Dorico Elements uses single barlines in flows and final barlines at the end of flows. You can change the default barline used in and at the end of each flow independently.

Barlines automatically extend across staff groups that are joined by a bracket or brace.

RELATED LINKS
Types of barlines on page 735
Input methods for bars, beats, and barlines on page 287
Barlines across staff groups on page 739
Changing the default barline type in flows on page 736
Changing the default barline at the end of flows on page 737
Repeats in playback on page 509
Repeat counts on page 1118
Bars on page 729
Bar numbers on page 742
Time signatures on page 1249
Types of time signatures on page 1250
Input methods for time signatures and pick-up bars on page 270
Note and rest grouping on page 774
Deleting notes/items on page 431

Per-flow notation options for barlines

You can find options for the per-flow the appearance of barlines on the **Barlines** page in **Notation Options**.

For example, you can change the type of barline used in and shown at the end of each flow by default, whether single barlines between staves only appear between staves or extend across staves, and whether barlines join all staves at the end of each system and at the end of the final system in a flow.

Musical examples demonstrate how each option affects the appearance of your music.

RELATED LINKS
Notation Options dialog on page 679

Types of barlines

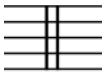
There are multiple types of barlines in Dorico Elements, which can all be input, moved, and deleted in the same ways.

Normal (Single)

A standard single barline that spans the entire height of the staff. For single-line staves, the barline extends one space above and below the staff line by default.

Double

A double barline consists of two lines, both the width of a single barline, positioned half a space apart by default. It is often used to denote significant changes in the music, or to mark the placement of rehearsal marks, key signature changes, and tempo changes.



Final

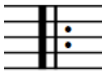
A final barline consists of two lines: one of normal width, the other thick. It marks where the music ends.

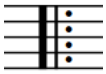
Start repeat

A start repeat line consists of a thick barline, followed by a normal barline, followed by one of the following arrangements of dots:

- Two dots, one each in the middle two spaces of a five-line staff
- Four dots, one each in all four spaces of a five-line staff

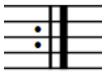
It shows the start of a repeated section. It is used alongside end repeat lines, which show the end of a repeated section.

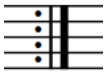




End repeat

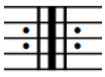
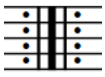
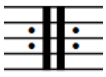
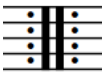
An end repeat line is the mirror of a start repeat line, so it consists of either two or four dots, followed by a normal barline, followed by a thick barline. It shows the end of a repeated section. It is used alongside start repeat lines, which show the start of a repeated section.





End/Start repeat

This line combines the start repeat and end repeat barlines, with either two single barlines with a single shared thick barline in the middle, or two thick barlines and no single barlines. On either side, there are either two or four repeat dots. It is used when a repeated section is immediately followed by another, separate repeated section.

RELATED LINKS
Input methods for bars, beats, and barlines on page 287
Repeats in playback on page 509
Repeat counts on page 1118
Barlines across staff groups on page 739

Changing the default barline type in flows

By default, Dorico Elements uses single barlines to separate bars in flows. You can change which type of barline automatically separates bars in each flow independently. For example, short or tick barlines are frequently used for most barlines in chant notation.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-N** to open **Notation Options**.
2. In the **Flows** list, select the flows whose default barline type you want to change.

   By default, only the current flow is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other flows by clicking **Select All** in the action bar, clicking and dragging across multiple flows, **Shift**-clicking adjacent flows, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking individual flows.
3. In the category list, click **Barlines**.
4. Choose one of the following options for **Default barline type**:
   - **Normal**
   - **Double**
   - **Dashed**
   - **Final**
   - **Tick (Top)**
   - **Tick (Bottom)**
   - **Short (Center)**
   - **Short (Top)**
   - **Thick**
   - **Start Repeat**
   - **End Repeat**
   - **End and Start Repeat**
5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

The default barline type in the selected flows is changed. This does not override any explicit barlines you have input, such as repeat barlines in repeat endings, or the final barlines in the selected flows.

RELATED LINKS

Types of barlines on page 735
Repeat endings on page 1107
Input methods for bars, beats, and barlines on page 287

Changing the default barline at the end of flows

By default, Dorico Elements uses final barlines at the end of flows. You can choose which type of barline is placed automatically at the end of each flow independently; for example, you might show double barlines at the end of flows to indicate there should be no gap before the following flow.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-N** to open **Notation Options**.
2. In the **Flows** list, select the flows whose default end barline you want to change.

   By default, only the current flow is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other flows by clicking **Select All** in the action bar, clicking and dragging across multiple flows, **Shift**-clicking adjacent flows, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking individual flows.
3. In the category list, click **Barlines**.
4. Choose one of the following options for **Automatic barline at end of flow**:
   - **Final barline**
   - **Double barline**
   - **Normal barline**
   - **Dashed barline**
   - **Thick barline**
   - **No barline**
5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

The default final barline at the end of the selected flows is changed.

NOTE

You can override individual final barlines by inputting a barline of a different type, but you cannot delete individual final barlines.

Changing the barline shown before repeat barlines

You can change the barline shown at the end of individual systems that are followed by start repeat barlines at the beginning of the next system. For example, if you want to show normal barlines at the end of some systems following by start repeat barlines but double barlines at the end of others.

These steps can also apply to barlines shown before key signature changes that coincide with start repeat barlines.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the barlines at the end of systems followed by start repeat barlines whose barline type you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Barline at end of system** in the **Time Signatures** group.
3. Select one of the following options from the menu:
   - **Normal**
   - **Double**
   - **Final**
   - **Dashed**
   - **Tick (top)**
   - **Short (center)**
   - **Thick**
   - **Triple**
   - **Short (top)**
   - **Tick (bottom)**
   - **None**

RESULT

The barline type shown at the selected barlines is changed.

RELATED LINKS

Hiding/Showing zones on page 44
Properties panel on page 615
Casting off on page 581
System breaks on page 586

Hiding/Showing systemic barlines on single-staff systems

By default, systemic barlines are shown at the start of systems containing two or more staves and hidden on single-staff systems. You can hide/show systemic barlines on single-staff systems on the first system and after the first system in each flow independently.

Showing systemic barlines on single-staff systems is a convention used in hand-copied lead sheets, usually in combination with hiding clefs and key signatures from the second system onwards.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-N** to open **Notation Options**.
2. In the **Flows** list, select the flows in which you want to hide/show systemic barlines after the first system.

   By default, only the current flow is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other flows by clicking **Select All** in the action bar, clicking and dragging across multiple flows, **Shift**-clicking adjacent flows, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking individual flows.

3. In the category list, click **Barlines**.
4. In the **Systemic Barline** subsection, choose one of the following options for **Barline at start of first system**:
   - **Show for one or more staves**
   - **Show for two or more staves**
5. Choose one of the following options for **Barline at start of systems following first system**:
   - **Show for one or more staves**
   - **Show for two or more staves**
6. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

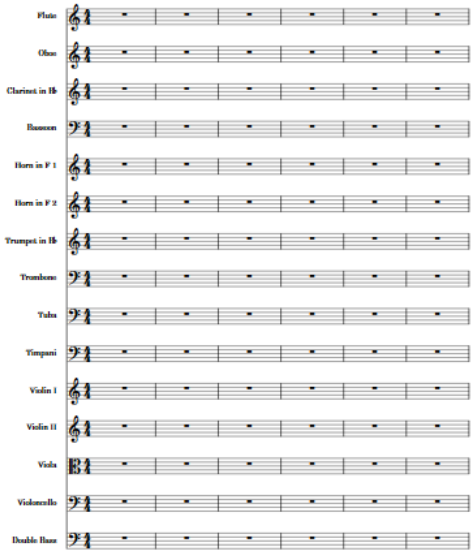
RELATED LINKS
Hiding/Showing used chord diagrams grids on page 809
Hiding/Showing clefs at the start of systems on page 818
Hiding/Showing key signatures at the start of systems on page 914

Barlines across staff groups

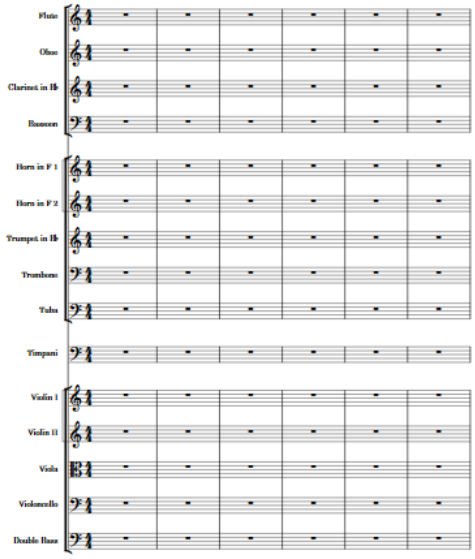
In order to make it easier to find a particular instrument within a score, barlines can extend across instrumental and staff groups.

Barlines across default staff groups

When a barline only appears on individual staves, it is much harder to locate individual lines at a glance. However, when barlines continue across instrumental groups in the score, instrument families are shown as blocks, which makes finding an instrument much easier.



Barlines on individual staves



Barlines across instrumental groups

By default, barlines automatically extend across staff groups that are joined by a bracket or brace, except for vocal staves, across which barlines never automatically extend. Which staves are included in a bracket depends on the instrumentation and context, but usually staves for instruments from the same family, such as woodwind or strings, are bracketed together.

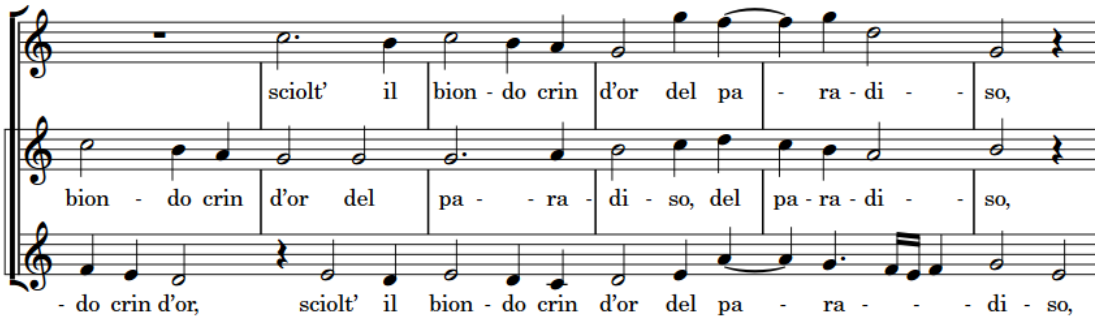
Dorico Elements automatically brackets staves according to the ensemble type set for each layout.

Barlines across grand staff instruments

Dorico Elements automatically joins barlines across grand staff instrument staves as they are braced. Because staves cannot be bracketed and braced simultaneously, grand staff instruments are excluded from brackets and therefore are not joined with barlines to any other staves.

Barline joins between staves

You can change whether single barlines only appear between staves or extend across the staves as well in each flow independently on the **Barlines** page in **Notation Options**. Barline joins only between staves are known as “Mensurstriche”. They are commonly used when typesetting early music to aid readability for modern performers while minimizing the visual impact on the originally unmetered notation.



Barlines drawn between staves

Custom barline groups

You can create custom barline joins and bracket groups by manually arranging your players into groups. Player groups are bracketed together according to the ensemble type set for each layout.

RELATED LINKS
Brackets according to ensemble type on page 778
Showing barlines across all staves at time signature changes on page 741
Designating players as soloists on page 124
Adding player groups on page 159
Adding players to groups on page 159
Deleting player groups on page 161
Player group labels on page 1188
Notation Options dialog on page 679

Changing the default barline joins

You can change whether barline joins automatically extend across staff groups that are joined by a bracket or brace, or break between each instrument, in each layout independently.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-L** to open **Layout Options**.
2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to change the default barline joins.

By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar, clicking and dragging across multiple layouts, **Shift**-clicking adjacent layouts, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking individual layouts.

3. In the category list, click **Brackets and Braces**.
4. In the **Bracketing** section, choose one of the following options for **Barline joins**:
   - **Follow primary brackets**
   - **Separate at each instrument**
5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RELATED LINKS
Brackets and braces on page 776
Brackets according to ensemble type on page 778

Showing barlines across all staves at time signature changes

You can join all staves with a barline at time signature changes in individual layouts, regardless of your bracketing style.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the time signature changes where you want to join all staves with a barline. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Barline joins all staves** in the **Time Signatures** group.

RESULT

All staves in the layout currently open in the music area are joined by a barline at the selected time signature changes.

RELATED LINKS
Hiding/Showing zones on page 44
Properties panel on page 615

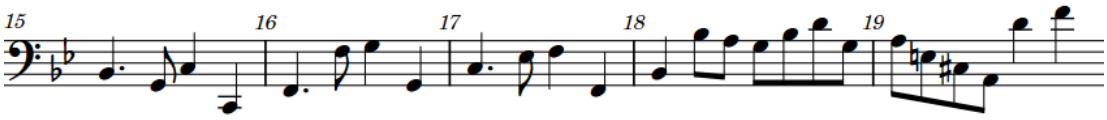
Bar numbers

Bar numbers provide crucial reference points in music and make the chronological sequence of music clear. By providing a unique number for each bar, they enable accurate references to specific parts of pieces and allow players to co-ordinate themselves easily in rehearsals and concerts.

In Dorico Elements, bar numbers appear automatically, following the most common practice of showing a bar number at the start of each system in all layouts by default. You can hide and show bar numbers in each layout independently, including showing them at a specified regular interval or in every bar, which is frequently used in film music scores.

TIP

The majority of options relating to bar numbers are on the **Bar Numbers** page in **Layout Options**. This is because it is very common to display bar numbers differently in different layouts, such as in every bar in full score layouts but only at the start of each system in part layouts.



Bar numbers shown every bar in a part layout

RELATED LINKS
Positions of bar numbers on page 746
Bar number changes on page 749
Layout Options dialog on page 677
Bars on page 729
Pick-up bars on page 1253
Barlines on page 734
Track overview on page 486

Hiding/Showing bar numbers

You can hide/show bar numbers in each layout independently, including showing them at different frequencies. For example, you can show bar numbers every bar in full score layouts but only at the start of each system in part layouts.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-L** to open **Layout Options**.
2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to hide/show bar numbers.

   By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar, clicking and dragging across multiple layouts, **Shift**-clicking adjacent layouts, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking individual layouts.
3. In the category list, click **Bar Numbers**.

4. In the **Frequency** subsection, choose one of the following options for **Show bar numbers**:
   - **Every system**
   - **Every n bars**
   - **Every bar**
   - **None**
5. Optional: If you chose **Every n bars**, set a custom frequency for bar numbers by changing the value for **Interval**.
6. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

Bar numbers are hidden in the selected layouts when you choose **None**, and shown at the corresponding frequency when you choose any other option.

Changing the **Interval** value changes how frequently bar numbers are shown. For example, setting an interval value of **10** means that bar numbers are shown every tenth bar.

TIP

You can also hide individual bar numbers in layouts where bar numbers are shown by selecting them and activating **Hide bar number** in the **Time Signatures** group of the Properties panel.

RELATED LINKS

Changing the distance between bar numbers and the staff/other objects on page 747
Changing the system-relative placement of bar numbers on page 748
Hiding/Showing bar number ranges on multi-bar rests on page 744
Showing bar numbers above specific staves on page 746
Hiding/Showing guide bar numbers on page 745
Positions of bar numbers on page 746
Numbered bar regions on page 1127

Hiding/Showing bar number enclosures

You can optionally show bar numbers in either a rectangular or circular enclosure in each layout independently; for example, if you want bar numbers to appear with rectangle enclosures in the full score layout, so the conductor can easily see them, but with no enclosures in part layouts, where pages tend to be less busy.

Bar numbers in enclosures automatically erase their backgrounds.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-L** to open **Layout Options**.
2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to change the bar number enclosure type.

   By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar, clicking and dragging across multiple layouts, **Shift**-clicking adjacent layouts, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking individual layouts.
3. In the category list, click **Bar Numbers**.
4. In the **Appearance** subsection, choose one of the following options for **Enclosure type**:

- **None**
- **Rectangle**
- **Circle**

5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

The enclosure type of all bar numbers in the selected layouts is changed.

EXAMPLE

Bar number with no enclosure

Bar number with a rectangle enclosure

Bar number with a circle enclosure

RELATED LINKS

Layout Options dialog on page 677

Hiding/Showing bar number ranges on multi-bar rests

You can hide/show bar number ranges on multi-bar rests; for example, so it is clear in part layouts which bars the player does not play. Multi-bar rests can include bar repeat regions, if you have chosen to consolidate bar repeat regions as well as empty bars into multi-bar rests.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-L** to open **Layout Options**.
2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to hide/show bar number ranges on multi-bar rests.

   By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar, clicking and dragging across multiple layouts, **Shift**-clicking adjacent layouts, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking individual layouts.
3. In the category list, click **Bar Numbers**.
4. In the **Showing and Hiding** subsection, activate/deactivate **Show ranges of bar numbers under multi-bar rests and consolidated bar repeats**.
5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

Bar number ranges are shown beneath multi-bar rests and consolidated bar repeats in the selected layouts when the option is activated, and hidden when it is deactivated.

RELATED LINKS

Hiding/Showing bar numbers on page 742
Hiding/Showing multi-bar rests on page 1152
Numbered bar regions on page 1127

Hiding/Showing guide bar numbers

You can hide/show guide bar numbers on every bar and above every system in page view and galley view independently; for example, to make it easier to check the bar number in scores with many staves. Guide bar numbers are not printed.

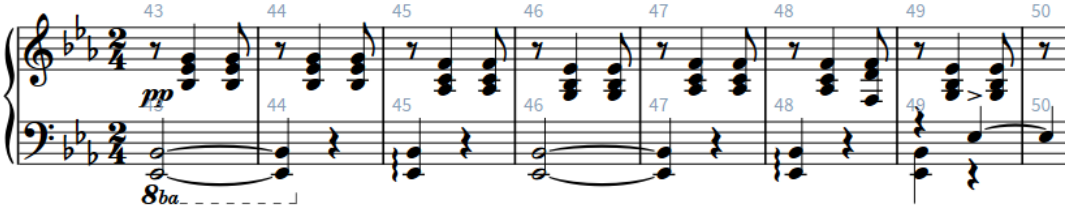
PROCEDURE

- Hide/Show guide bar numbers in any of the following ways:
  - To hide/show guide bar numbers in page view, choose **View** > **Bar Numbers** > **Page View**.
  - To hide/show guide bar numbers in galley view, choose **View** > **Bar Numbers** > **Galley View**.

RESULT

Guide bar numbers are hidden/shown for every bar and above every staff in the corresponding view type.

EXAMPLE



Guide bar numbers shown in page view

RELATED LINKS

Switching to galley/page view on page 50

Changing the bar number paragraph style used in layouts

You can choose which paragraph style is used for bar numbers in each layout independently. By default, full score layouts and part layouts use different paragraph styles for bar numbers.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-L** to open **Layout Options**.
2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to change the paragraph style used for bar numbers.

   By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar, clicking and dragging across multiple layouts, **Shift**-clicking adjacent layouts, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking individual layouts.
3. In the category list, click **Bar Numbers**.
4. In the **Appearance** subsection, select a paragraph style from the **Paragraph style** menu.
5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

The selected paragraph style is used for all bar numbers in the selected layouts.

Positions of bar numbers

Bar numbers are typically shown at the start of each system, above the staff, and aligned with the initial barline.

You can change the default positions and frequency of bar numbers in each layout independently on the **Bar Numbers** page in **Layout Options**, and you can move individual bar numbers in Engrave mode. For example, you might want to show bar numbers every bar in full score layouts but only at the start of each system in part layouts.

Changing the horizontal position of bar numbers

You can change the horizontal position of bar numbers in each layout independently. For example, you can have bar numbers centered in the middle of bars in full score layouts but centered on barlines in part layouts.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-L** to open **Layout Options**.
2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to change the horizontal position of bar numbers.

   By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar, clicking and dragging across multiple layouts, **Shift**-clicking adjacent layouts, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking individual layouts.
3. In the category list, click **Bar Numbers**.
4. In the **Horizontal Position** subsection, choose one of the following options for **Horizontal position**:
   - To show bar numbers above barlines, at the top left of the bar, choose **Centered on barline**.
   - To show bar numbers above the staff, in the middle of the bar, choose **Centered on bar**.
5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

The horizontal position of bar numbers is changed in the selected layouts.

RELATED LINKS

Showing bar numbers above specific staves on page 746
Moving items graphically on page 481

Showing bar numbers above specific staves

You can change the staves above which bar numbers appear, which allows you to show bar numbers at multiple vertical positions in each system. For example, in large orchestral scores, you might show bar numbers both at the top of the system and above the string section.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-L** to open **Layout Options**.
2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to change the vertical positions of bar numbers.

By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar, clicking and dragging across multiple layouts, **Shift**-clicking adjacent layouts, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking individual layouts.

3. In the category list, click **Bar Numbers**.
4. In the **Placement** subsection, activate the checkbox for each player in the **Show above specific players** list above whose top staff you want to show bar numbers.
5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

The vertical positions of bar numbers are changed in the selected layouts. For players holding multiple instruments, bar numbers appear above their top instrument staff.

NOTE

You can change the distances between bar numbers and the staff/other objects and your vertical spacing settings for the gaps between staves in order to accommodate bar numbers shown between staves.

RELATED LINKS

Changing the default staff/system spacing on page 559
Per-layout vertical spacing options on page 577
Moving instruments on page 137

Changing the distance between bar numbers and the staff/other objects

You can change the minimum distance between bar numbers and the staff, and set a separate value for the distance between bar numbers and other objects, in each layout independently. For example, you can position bar numbers further from the staff/other objects in full score layouts than in part layouts.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-L** to open **Layout Options**.
2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to change the minimum distance of bar numbers from the staff.

   By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar, clicking and dragging across multiple layouts, **Shift**-clicking adjacent layouts, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking individual layouts.
3. In the category list, click **Bar Numbers**.
4. Optional: In the **Placement** subsection, change the value for **Minimum distance from staff**.
5. Optional: In the **Placement** subsection, change the value for **Minimum distance from other objects**.
6. Activate/Deactivate **Align bar numbers across width of system**.
7. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

Increasing the values positions bar numbers further away from the staff and/or other objects, either above or below the staff depending on your setting for **Placement relative to staff**. Decreasing the values positions bar numbers closer to the staff and/or other objects.

When **Align bar numbers across width of system** is activated, bar numbers automatically vertically align within systems, with their position determined by the bar number furthest from the staff.

NOTE

- These options affect the minimum distance between bar numbers and the staff and other objects, so bar numbers might be positioned further away than this to avoid collisions.
- If you want bar numbers within systems to appear closer to the staff than bar numbers at the start of systems, such as in part layouts with treble clefs, we recommend deactivating **Align bar numbers across width of system**.

RELATED LINKS

Hiding/Showing bar numbers on page 742

Changing the system-relative placement of bar numbers

You can show bar numbers either above or below each system in each layout independently. For example, bar numbers can appear below the system in full score layouts but above the system in individual part layouts.

NOTE

This does not affect the placement of bar numbers shown above specific staves.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-L** to open **Layout Options**.
2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to change the bar number placement.

   By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar, clicking and dragging across multiple layouts, **Shift**-clicking adjacent layouts, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking individual layouts.
3. In the category list, click **Bar Numbers**.
4. In the **Placement** subsection, choose one of the following options for **Placement relative to system**:
   - **Show above top staff of system**
   - **Show below bottom staff of system**
5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

The placement of bar numbers relative to the system is changed in the selected layouts.

Hiding bar numbers at time signatures shown at system object positions

You can choose to hide bar numbers at the same rhythmic position as time signatures shown at system object positions, as the resulting collision can be difficult to resolve in a visually clear way when bar numbers are centered on barlines.

PROCEDURE

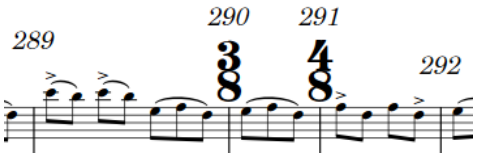
1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-L** to open **Layout Options**.
2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to hide bar numbers at time signatures shown at system object positions.

   By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar, clicking and dragging across multiple layouts, **Shift**-clicking adjacent layouts, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking individual layouts.
3. In the category list, click **Bar Numbers**.
4. In the **Showing and Hiding** subsection, activate/deactivate **Show bar numbers at time signatures at system object positions**.
5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

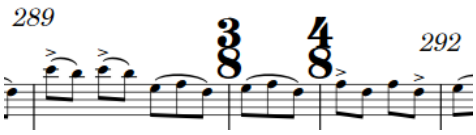
RESULT

Bar numbers are shown at time signatures shown at system object positions when the option is activated, and hidden when it is deactivated.

EXAMPLE



Bar numbers shown at time signatures at system object positions



Bar numbers hidden at time signatures at system object positions

RELATED LINKS

Time signatures on page 1249
Large time signatures on page 1254

Bar number changes

Bar numbers follow a continuous sequence, with each bar having a unique bar number that continues from the previous bar number. However, you can make manual changes to the bar number sequence, including changing to a subordinate sequence.

In Dorico Elements, you can make the following types of changes to bar number sequences using the **Insert Bar Number Change** dialog:

Primary

Adds a change to the main bar number sequence, which the bars in your project follow in a continuous sequence in each flow separately by default.

Subordinate

Adds a secondary bar number sequence that uses letters rather than numbers to indicate the sequence. This can be useful in situations where a new version of a piece has been created with more bars inserted, but the original bar numbers are required.

Don't Include

Excludes the selected bar from the current bar number sequence. If bar numbers are shown every bar, no bar number is shown in bars in which you have chosen **Don't Include**.

Continue Primary

Returns the bar number sequence to the **Primary** sequence without counting intervening bars; for example, after a section of bars following the **Subordinate** bar number sequence.

RELATED LINKS

Subordinate bar numbers on page 751

Adding bar number changes

You can manually add bar number changes to bar number sequences; for example, if you want bar numbers in the second flow in your project to appear to continue the sequence from the first flow, rather than start again from bar one.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode or Engrave mode, select one of the following:
   - An item in the bar from the beginning of which you want to change the bar number sequence.
   - An existing bar number or barline from which you want to change the bar number sequence.
2. Choose **Edit** > **Notations** > **Bar Numbers** > **Add Bar Number Change** to open the **Insert Bar Number Change** dialog. You can also choose this option from the context menu.
3. Choose one of the following options for **Type**:
   - **Primary**
   - **Subordinate**
   - **Don't Include**
   - **Continue Primary**
4. Optional: If you chose **Primary** or **Subordinate**, change the bar number where you want the bar number sequence change to start by changing the value in the corresponding value field.
5. Click **OK** to save your changes and close the dialog.

RESULT

The bar number sequence changes, starting from the beginning of the bar in which you selected an item, or from the position of a selected bar number or barline.

This affects the corresponding bar number sequence from the changed bar number until the next bar number change, or until the end of the flow.

Deleting bar number changes

You can delete any bar number changes you have added.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the bar number changes you want to delete.
2. Press **Backspace or Delete**.

RESULT

The bar number changes are deleted. Subsequent bars follow the previous bar number sequence until the next bar number change, or until the end of the flow.

Subordinate bar numbers

Subordinate bar numbers are useful for numbering repeat endings, and for situations when the music is being altered, but the original bar numbers cannot be changed.

For example, you can use subordinate bar numbers to show where music has been added if a previous, shorter version has already been rehearsed. In this situation, players have likely started to associate certain parts of the piece with particular bar numbers, so if four bars need to be added after bar **10**, they would be numbered **10a** to **10d**. The bar number of the following bar then continues from **11** exactly as it did before the new bars were added.

They might also be useful if you want different bar numbers for a repeat ending.

Subordinate bar numbers are shown with lowercase letters.

You can show both primary bar numbers and subordinate letters or only subordinate alphabetical letters in subordinate bar number sequences.

Lowercase subordinate bar number

Adding subordinate bar numbers

You can create a subordinate bar number sequence that is independent of your primary bar number sequence. This can be useful if you want to insert new bars without changing the bar numbers of existing subsequent bars.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode or Engrave mode, select one of the following:
   - An item in the bar from the beginning of which you want subordinate bar numbers to start.
   - An existing bar number or barline from which you want subordinate bar numbers to start.
2. Choose **Edit** > **Notations** > **Bar Numbers** > **Add Bar Number Change** to open the **Insert Bar Number Change** dialog. You can also choose this option from the context menu.
3. Choose **Subordinate** for **Type** to activate the **Subordinate** value field.

4. Optional: If you want to change the primary bar number that accompanies subordinate bar numbers, activate **Primary** and change the value in the value field.

   For example, if you want the bar number sequence **6, 7a, 7b** rather than **6, 7, 7a**.

5. Change the first letter in the subordinate bar number sequence by changing the value in the **Subordinate** value field.

   The corresponding alphabetical letter is shown to the right of the value field. For example, entering **1** into the value field is shown as **a**, **2** appears as **b**, and so on.

6. Activate/Deactivate **Hide primary bar numbers**.

7. Click **OK** to save your changes and close the dialog.

RESULT

The subordinate bar number sequence starts from the bar in which you selected an item, or from the position of a selected bar number or barline.

- If you activated **Primary** and changed the value, the primary bar number shown alongside subordinate bar numbers is changed.
- If you deactivated **Hide primary bar numbers**, bar numbers in the subordinate sequence show both a number and an alphabetical letter. If you activated **Hide primary bar numbers**, they appear only with alphabetical letters.

For example, if you start a subordinate bar number sequence from what was originally bar 5 without changing the **Primary** value, the sequence starts from 4a and continues until the next specified bar number change, or until the end of the flow.

Returning to the primary bar number sequence

You can specify the point where you want to return to the primary bar number sequence after a section of subordinate bar numbers.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode or Engrave mode, select one of the following:
   - An item in the bar from the beginning of which you want to return to the primary bar number sequence.
   - An existing bar number or barline from which you want to return to the primary bar number sequence.
2. Choose **Edit** > **Notations** > **Bar Numbers** > **Add Bar Number Change** to open the **Insert Bar Number Change** dialog. You can also choose this option from the context menu.
3. Choose **Continue Primary** for **Type**.

   Text indicating the new bar number appears below the value fields for **Primary** and **Subordinate**. For example, **Primary sequence will continue from bar 5**.
4. Click **OK** to save your changes and close the dialog.

RESULT

The primary bar number sequence resumes from the bar in which you selected an item, or from the position of a selected bar number or barline.

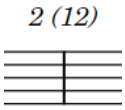
TIP

You do not have to add subordinate bar number changes in chronological order. You can enter a return to the primary bar number sequence first, before adding the subordinate bar number sequence.

Bar numbers and repeats

By default in Dorico Elements, repeats are not included in the bar number count. For example, if the first ending ends in bar 10, the second ending starts in bar 11, even though the first section is repeated and therefore more than ten bars have been played.

Including repeats in the bar number count, so that bar numbers reflect the total number of bars played rather than the number of bars written on the page, can make music with multiple playthroughs clearer, as you can refer to a specific bar number for each playthrough instead of, for example, “bar eight the third time round”.



Bar number for subsequent repeat shown in parentheses beside the initial bar number

In Dorico Elements, you cannot automatically include repeats in the bar number count. However, you can add bar number changes manually if you want bar numbers to reflect the total number of bars played.

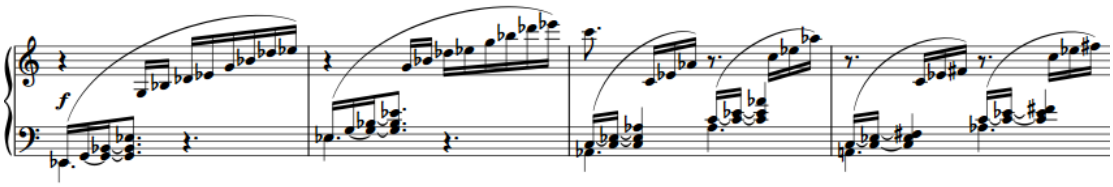
RELATED LINKS
Adding bar number changes on page 750

Beaming

A beam is a line that connects notes with tails to show rhythmic grouping, which varies according to the metrical structure of the prevailing time signature.

This way of grouping notes helps performers calculate quickly exactly how to play their given rhythm and helps them follow both their part and, if applicable, the conductor.

If appropriate for the current meter and position in the bar, beams are automatically formed in Dorico Elements when you input two or more adjacent notes or chords that are an eighth note (quaver) or shorter in duration.



Multiple beam groups in a 6/8 time signature

Dorico Elements has sophisticated underlying rules for producing beam groupings that follow the accepted conventions of music theory, including crossing the half-bar in time signatures like 4/4, beaming all eighth notes together in 3/4, beam groups that include tuplets, and many other situations.

You can control how notes are beamed in multiple ways in Dorico Elements.

- You can set beam grouping defaults in each flow in your project independently on the **Beam Grouping** page in **Notation Options**.
- You can set beam groups by controlling subdivisions of time signatures.
- You can beam notes together and split beams manually.

RELATED LINKS
Inputting notes on page 211
Secondary beams on page 768
Tuplets within beams on page 771
Rests within beams on page 771

Per-flow notation options for beam grouping

You can find options to control the default beam grouping rules in each flow independently on the **Beam Grouping** page in **Notation Options**.

The available options include beams crossing the half-bar in time signatures like 4/4, beaming all eighth notes together in 3/4, how to handle secondary beam groups, stemlets, and beams over rests.

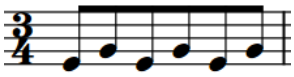
Musical examples demonstrate how each option affects the appearance of your music.

RELATED LINKS
Notation Options dialog on page 679
Beam slants on page 760

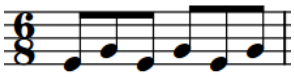
Beam grouping according to meters

According to accepted conventions, notes are beamed differently in different time signatures to make the meter clear and easily readable. In Dorico Elements, default beam groupings are determined by time signatures.

Dorico Elements has default beaming settings for common time signatures, based on general conventions and your chosen settings. For example, although the time signatures of 3/4 and 6/8 contain the same number of beats, they imply different meters and so are beamed differently. In 3/4, phrases of eighth notes are beamed together within each bar and phrases of other durations are beamed in quarter notes (crotchets) by default, but in 6/8, phrases are beamed in dotted quarter notes.

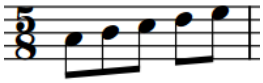


Default eighth note beam grouping in 3/4

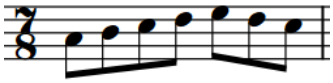


Default eighth note beam grouping in 6/8

Dorico Elements groups and beams notes in irregular time signatures, such as 5/8 or 7/8, according to the most common practices for those time signatures.



Default beam grouping in 5/8



Default beam grouping in 7/8

For situations where you want to control the beat grouping in more detail, you can input a custom time signature with an explicit rhythmic subdivision. Dorico Elements then automatically beams phrases according to this subdivision. For example, entering **[7]/8** into the time signatures popover means all seven eighth notes (quavers) are beamed together, whereas entering **[2+2+3]/8** subdivides the seven eighth notes into two, then two, then three.

NOTE

The duration of beam groups in Dorico Elements depends on the beat grouping in the prevailing time signature and your per-flow beam grouping settings in **Notation Options**.

RELATED LINKS
Note and rest grouping on page 774
Creating custom beat groupings for meters on page 774
Inputting time signatures with the popover on page 274

Beaming notes together manually

You can beam notes in the same voice together manually, including notes across barlines as well as system/frame breaks. For example, if you want to beam a phrase differently to how it is usually beamed in the prevailing time signature.

Beams by default stay within bars and systems, so to have beams cross barlines, system breaks, and frame breaks, you must force the phrase to beam together.

TIP

- If you want a single beam to span multiple staves, you can create cross-staff beams.
- Inputting time signatures with custom beat groupings is often the quickest and most consistent way to control beam grouping.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the notes you want to beam together. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. Choose **Edit** > **Notations** > **Beaming** > **Beam Together**. You can also choose this option from the context menu.

RESULT

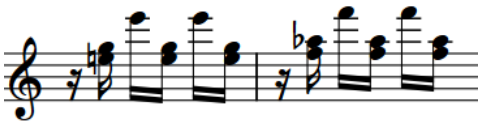
Selected notes in the same voice are beamed together, even if they cross barlines or system/frame breaks.

If there are notes either side of the new beam group that were previously beamed to part or all of your selection, they either beam together as separate beams, or appear unbeamed. This depends on how many notes are left either side in the bar, and on the beam grouping settings for the flow.

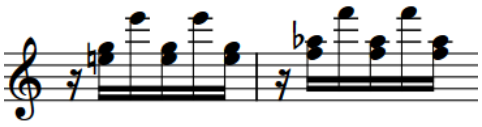
NOTE

- Even if part of the beamed group previously had a centered beam, the new beam is not centered.
- You can assign a key command for **Beam Together** on the **Key Commands** page in **Preferences**.

EXAMPLE



Phrase with default beaming



Notes in each bar beamed together

RELATED LINKS

Allowing/Disallowing tuplets to span barlines on page 1274
Changing the voice of existing notes on page 442
Centered beams on page 762
Creating cross-staff beams/tremolos on page 764
Beam grouping according to meters on page 755
Creating custom beat groupings for meters on page 774
Key Commands page in the Preferences dialog on page 59

Unbeaming notes

You can separate all notes in a beamed group so that each note shows its own tail; for example, if you are engraving vocal music that requires syllabic beaming.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the notes you want to make unbeamed. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. Choose **Edit** > **Notations** > **Beaming** > **Make Unbeamed**. You can also choose this option from the context menu.

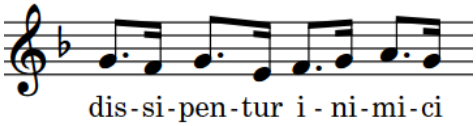
RESULT

The selected notes are unbeamed and show their own tails.

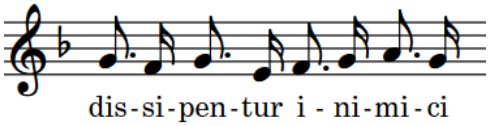
TIP

You can assign a key command for **Make Unbeamed** on the **Key Commands** page in **Preferences**.

EXAMPLE



Phrase with default beaming



All notes unbeamed

Splitting beam groups

You can split beams into two beam groups at specific rhythmic positions. You can also split secondary beams within beamed groups.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the noteheads to the right of where you want to split beams. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. Split the beam or secondary beam in one of the following ways:
   - Choose **Edit** > **Notations** > **Beaming** > **Split Beam**.
   - Choose **Edit** > **Notations** > **Beaming** > **Split Secondary Beam**.

   TIP

   You can also choose these options from the context menu.

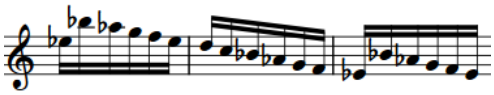
RESULT

Beams/Secondary beams are split to the left of each selected note, but the notes either side of the split remain grouped if there are at least two beamed notes on each side that can be in a beam group.

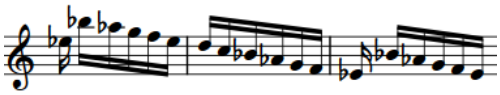
TIP

- To unbeam the entire selection and give all notes in the group individual tails, you can make all notes unbeamed.
- You can change how beams and secondary beams are split by default in each flow independently on the **Beam Grouping** page in **Notation Options**
- You can assign key commands for **Split Beam** and **Split Secondary Beam** on the **Key Commands** page in **Preferences**.

EXAMPLE



Phrase with default beaming



Two beams split at the second 16th note

RELATED LINKS
Per-flow notation options for beam grouping on page 754
Beam grouping according to meters on page 755
Key Commands page in the Preferences dialog on page 59

Resetting beam grouping

You can remove all changes made to the beam grouping of notes and chords. This can also be useful if, for example, MusicXML files you have imported have incorrect beaming.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the notes/chords whose beaming you want to reset. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. Choose **Edit** > **Notations** > **Beaming** > **Reset Beaming**. You can also choose this option from the context menu.

RESULT

Beam grouping is reset to your default settings in **Notation Options** for the current flow and time signature.

Changing the thickness of beams

You can change the thickness of individual beams, which can be useful in certain engraving situations. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select all the noteheads in the beams whose thickness you want to change.

   NOTE

   For the best results, we recommend selecting all notes in each beam.

2. In the Properties panel, activate **Thickness** in the **Beaming** group.
3. Change the value in the value field.

RESULT

The thickness of all beam lines in the selected beams is changed. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

RELATED LINKS

Hiding/Showing zones on page 44
Changing the property scope on page 617
Copying property settings to other layouts/frame chains on page 599
Beam slants on page 760
Changing the gaps between beam lines on page 770

Beam placement relative to the staff

The default staff-relative placement of beams is determined by the staff positions of the notes within the beamed group and their resulting stem directions.

This means that the note furthest from the middle line of the staff determines the placement of the beam, although there are exceptions to this rule and other considerations that can influence the staff-relative placement of beams.

Changing the staff-relative placement of beams involves changing the direction of the stems in the beam. Therefore, Dorico Elements categorizes changing the staff-relative placement of beams as a stem change.

Changing the staff-relative placement of beams

You can change the side of the staff on which beams appear by forcing the stem direction to change. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select at least one note in each of the beamed phrases whose staff-relative placement you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. Force the stem direction of notes in the selected beams in any of the following ways:
   - Choose **Edit** > **Notations** > **Stem** > **Force Stem Up**.
   - Choose **Edit** > **Notations** > **Stem** > **Force Stem Down**.

TIP

- You can also choose these options from the context menu.
- You can also change the staff-relative placement of selected beams by pressing **F**.

RESULT

The beam appears on the side of the staff that corresponds to its forced stem direction. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

RELATED LINKS

Changing the property scope on page 617
Copying property settings to other layouts/frame chains on page 599

Removing beam placement changes

You can undo changes to the staff-relative placement of beams in order to remove the stem direction change. This reverts selected beams to their default placement.

PROCEDURE

1. Select at least one note in each of the beamed phrases whose staff-relative placement change you want to remove. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. Choose **Edit** > **Notations** > **Stem** > **Remove Forced Stem**. You can also choose this option from the context menu.

RESULT

The selected beams revert to their default staff-relative placement.

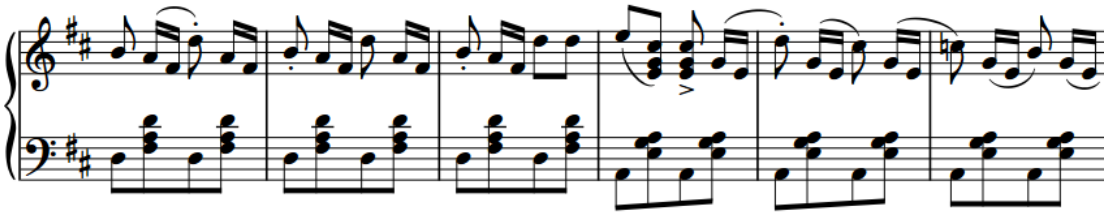
Beam slants

The slant of a beam controls how steeply the beam deviates from horizontal, according to the pitches of the notes within the beamed group.

- When the last note of the phrase is higher than the first, the beam slants upwards.
- When the last note of the phrase is lower than the first, the beam slants downwards.
- If the group makes a concave shape, where inner notes are closer to the beam than the outer ones at either end of the beam, then the beaming is horizontal by default.

  Beams are also horizontal if all the pitches are the same, or for certain patterns of repeated pitches.

When a beam is drawn inside the staff, each end of the beam, meaning the end of the stem of the note at either end of the beam, must be snapped to a staff line position. A beam line may sit on a staff line, be centered on a staff line, or hang from a staff line. Ted Ross describes these three positions as “sit”, “straddle”, and “hang” respectively in “Teach Yourself the Art and Practice of Music Engraving”.



A phrase containing multiple different beam slants and directions

The amount by which a beam slants is typically determined by the interval between the first and last note in the beamed group, provided the pattern of notes in the beam does not dictate a horizontal beam instead. Smaller intervals require a shallower slant and larger intervals require a steeper one.

However, the desired amount of slant is not the only factor that must be considered. The innermost beam line should not come too close to the innermost notehead, and the beam itself, if possible, should be positioned relative to the staff lines such that it does not form a wedge. A wedge is a tiny triangle formed by the horizontal staff line, the vertical stem, and the angled line of the slanted beam, which can be visually confusing.

Determination of the amount of slant for a beam is therefore a balancing act that must weigh up several factors: the desired amount of slant, valid snapping positions for each end of the beam, ensuring a minimum distance between the note closest to the beam and the innermost beam line, and avoiding wedges where possible.

In Dorico Elements, you can change the beam slants of individual beams.

RELATED LINKS
Rests within beams on page 771

Changing beam slants

You can change the slants, or angles, of individual beams. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the square handles on the beam corners of the beams whose slants you want to change.
2. Move the handles in any of the following ways:
    - To move beam handles upwards/downwards a standard amount, press **Alt/Opt** plus the corresponding arrow key. For example, press **Alt/Opt-Up Arrow** to move them upwards by 1/4 space per press.
    - To move beam handles a large amount, press **Ctrl/Cmd** plus the standard key command; for example, **Ctrl/Cmd-Alt/Opt-Up Arrow**. This moves beam handles by 1 space per press.

- To move beam handles a moderate amount, press **Shift** plus the standard key command; for example, **Shift-Alt/Opt-Up Arrow**. This moves beam handles by 1/2 space per press.
- To move beam handles a small amount, press **Ctrl/Cmd**-**Shift** plus the standard key command; for example, **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-Alt/Opt-Up Arrow**. This moves beam handles by 1/32 space per press.
- Click and drag them upwards/downwards.

3. Optional: Repeat steps 1 and 2 to move the other end of the selected beams.

RESULT

The slants of the selected beams are changed. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

TIP

You can also use **Beam direction** in the **Beaming** group of the Properties panel to change the slant of beams. The property is available when you select noteheads within the beam group, and its options all ensure that beam ends are positioned correctly relative to staff lines.

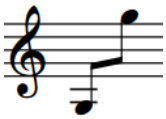
RELATED LINKS

Changing the property scope on page 617
Copying property settings to other layouts/frame chains on page 599

Centered beams

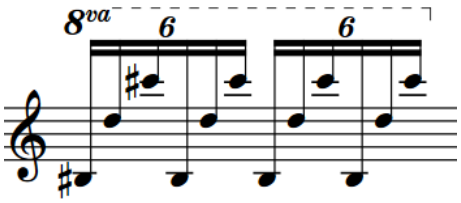
Centered beams are beams that are vertically positioned between notes within the same beamed group, with stems for notes above the beam pointing downwards and stems for notes below the beam pointing upwards.

Centered beams are also known as “kneed” or “elbowed” beams due to their often angular shape.

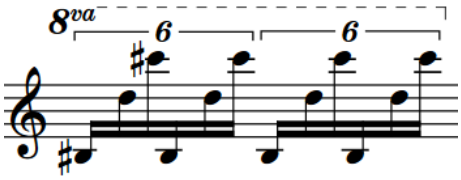


When a beamed phrase spans a large pitch range, normal beams are often positioned very close to some notes in the phrase but very far from other notes in the phrase, making some stems very long. Having a centered beam in a phrase that spans a large pitch range can reduce the maximum distance between noteheads and the beam, but can also place the beam within the staff, which can obscure staff lines.

By default, Dorico Elements allows beams that include notes on both sides of the middle staff line to appear centered. You can also create custom centered beams for beams that include notes only on one side of the middle staff line.



A phrase with high and low notes with default beaming



The same phrase with high and low notes, but with a centered beam

TIP

To center beams between the staves of grand staff instruments, you can create cross-staff beams.

RELATED LINKS

Changing the staff-relative placement of beams on page 759
Creating cross-staff beams/tremolos on page 764

Creating centered beams

You can center beams between the notes in the beamed group. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

NOTE

As this action requires changing the direction of some stems in order to appear correctly, it is located in the **Stem** submenu rather than the **Beaming** submenu.

PREREQUISITE

You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select at least one note in each of the beams you want to center. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. Create a centered beam in one of the following ways:
   - If the selected beams include notes on both sides of the middle staff line, choose **Edit** > **Notations** > **Stem** > **Force Centered Beam**.
   - If the selected beams include notes only on one side of the middle staff line, choose **Edit** > **Notations** > **Stem** > **Custom Centered Beam** to open the **Custom Centered Beam** dialog.

   TIP

   You can also choose these options from the context menu.
3. Optional: If you created a custom centered beam, change the stem direction of each note in the selected beams as required in the **Custom Centered Beam** dialog, then click **OK**.

RESULT

Beams are centered between the notes in the selected beam groups. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

If you select notes in multiple beams, each beam is centered separately. If you want to create a single centered beam, you can beam the notes in those beam groups together. You can do this both before and after centering the beams.

NOTE

- Dorico Elements automatically angles the beam based on the shape of the phrase, but you can change the angles or slants of beams manually.
- You can assign a key command for **Force Centered Beam** on the **Key Commands** page in **Preferences**.

RELATED LINKS
Beaming notes together manually on page 755
Changing beam slants on page 761
Removing stem direction changes on page 965

Removing centered beams

You can remove centered beams and revert beams to their default placements either above or below the phrase.

PROCEDURE

1. Select at least one note in each centered beam that you want to revert to the default placement. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. Choose **Edit** > **Notations** > **Stem** > **Remove Centered Beam**. You can also choose this option from the context menu.

RESULT

The centered beams are removed.

TIP

You can assign a key command for **Remove Centered Beam** on the **Key Commands** page in **Preferences**.

Creating cross-staff beams/tremolos

Cross-staff beams and cross-staff tremolos work in a similar way to normal beams and tremolos, but allow a phrase that covers a wide pitch range to be shown on multiple staves. You can create cross-staff beams/tremolos by inputting all notes in the phrase on one staff and crossing some notes to appear on another staff.

PREREQUISITE

You have input a phrase on one staff.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the notes you want to cross to another staff. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.

   NOTE

   You can only cross notes to other staves held by the same player.

2. Cross the notes to other staves in any of the following ways:
   - To cross notes to the staff above, press **N**.
   - To cross notes to the staff below, press **M**.
   - Choose **Edit** > **Notations** > **Cross Staff** > **Cross to Staff Above**.
   - Choose **Edit** > **Notations** > **Cross Staff** > **Cross to Staff Below**.

   TIP

   You can also choose these options from the context menu.

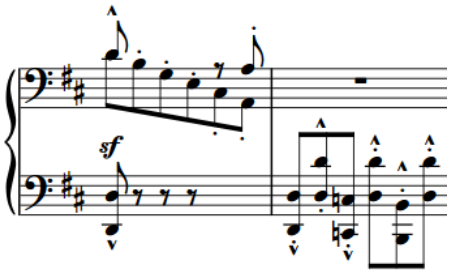
RESULT

The selected notes are shown on a different staff, with a cross-staff beam shown if the notes are part of a beam group. This does not change the staff to which the notes belong.

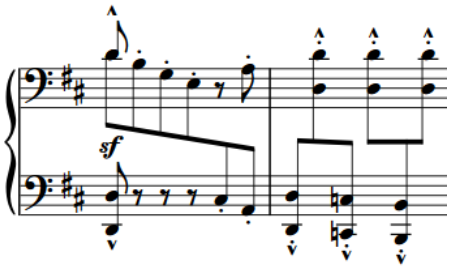
NOTE

- When crossing notes to a staff that already contains notes, the stem direction of the existing notes on the staff can change. This is due to how multiple voices at the same rhythmic position are handled. Therefore, you may have to change the stem direction of notes manually.
- If you want notes to belong to a different staff, you can move them to another staff.

EXAMPLE



Notes shown on their original staves



Cross-staff beams created by crossing some notes to the other staff

RELATED LINKS

Resetting notes crossed to other staves on page 768
Moving notes/items to other staves on page 440
Moving notes/items rhythmically on page 437
Notes crossed to staves with existing notes in other voices on page 1309
Note positions in multiple-voice contexts on page 1306
Inputting notes on page 211
Stem direction on page 961
Hiding/Showing voice colors on page 1304
Tremolos on page 1264

Changing to optical cross-staff beam spacing

You can make the stems in cross-staff beams, rather than the noteheads, evenly spaced in each layout independently. This can make it easier to perceive the evenness of rhythmic spacing in cross-staff beams than when noteheads are evenly spaced.

PROCEDURE

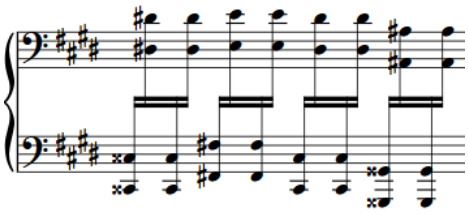
1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-L** to open **Layout Options**.
2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts that you want to change to optical cross-staff beam spacing.

   By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar, clicking and dragging across multiple layouts, **Shift**-clicking adjacent layouts, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking individual layouts.
3. In the category list, click **Note Spacing**.
4. Activate **Use optical spacing for beams between staves**.
5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

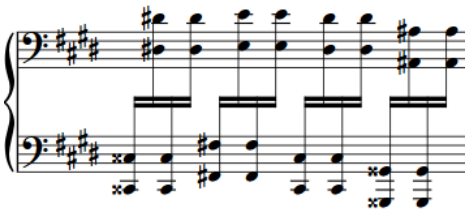
RESULT

Optical cross-staff beam spacing is enabled in the selected layouts.

EXAMPLE



Default spacing: The distance between noteheads is even.



Optical spacing for cross-staff beaming: The distance between stems is even.

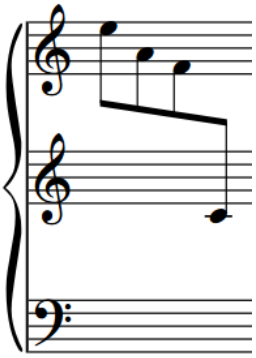
RELATED LINKS

Note spacing on page 579

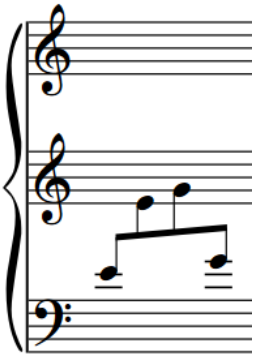
Cross-staff beam placement in multiple staves

When instruments have three or more staves, cross-staff beams can be placed in multiple ways. For example, the beam can be placed between the top and the middle staves, and also between the middle and bottom staves.

If a beam only crosses two staves, the cross-staff beam goes between those two staves.

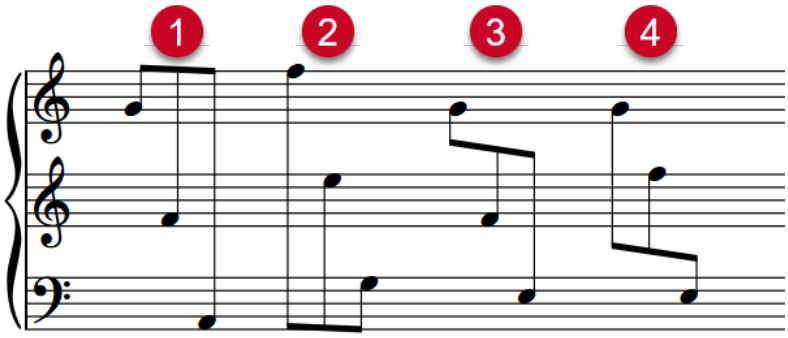


A cross-staff beam across the upper two staves on an instrument with three staves



A cross-staff beam across the lower two staves on an instrument with three staves

If a beam group contains notes on all three staves, the placement of the beam depends on the stem directions of the notes in each staff.



1 If all notes in the beam group are stem-up, the beam is placed above the top staff.

2 If all notes in the beam group are stem-down, the beam is placed below the bottom staff.

3 If notes are stem-down on the top staff and stem-up on the bottom two staves, the beam is placed between the top and middle staves.

4 If notes are stem-down on the top two staves and stem-up on the bottom staff, the beam is placed between the bottom and middle staves.

NOTE

If you have not specified stem directions, Dorico Elements might place the beam above/below the staff into which the notes were originally input, even if the stem directions mean it should be placed between other staves.

If you want the beam to be placed between specific staves, you can change the stem directions of notes in the beam group.

RELATED LINKS

Changing the stem direction of notes on page 963

Resetting notes crossed to other staves

You can reset notes that have been crossed to other staves so that they appear on their default staff. We recommend resetting cross-staff notes before copying and pasting them to other staves to avoid unexpected beaming.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the cross-staff notes you want to reset. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. Choose **Edit** > **Notations** > **Cross Staff** > **Reset to Original Staff**. You can also choose this option from the context menu.

RESULT

The selected cross-staff notes are reset and appear on their default staff.

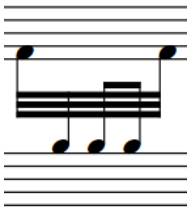
TIP

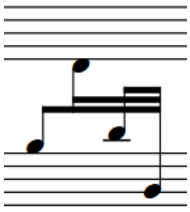
You can assign a key command for this option on the **Key Commands** page in **Preferences**.

Beam corners

Beam corners can occur when a change of stem direction within a beam is combined with a break in the secondary beam group. This can be at the end of a subdivision or at a change in rhythmic speed.

Beam corners do not follow accepted rules regarding the order and rhythmic meaning of secondary beams, and can be confusing for the reader.





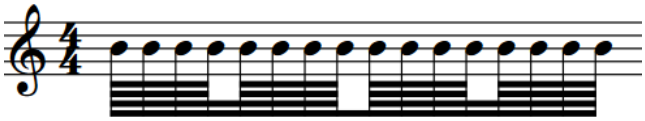
Dorico Elements avoids beam corners by analyzing the pitches and stems within a phrase, and implementing stem directions that avoid a beam corner.

Secondary beams

Secondary beams are the lines that are added between the primary beam and the notehead as the rhythmic division gets smaller.

The primary beam is the outermost beam line that joins all of the notes in the beamed group. Depending on the durations of the notes in the beamed group, the primary beam may in fact be two or more lines; that is, for notes of a 16th or shorter in duration.

Secondary beams are additional beam lines that join only some of the notes in the group, creating subdivisions of the beam in order to make the metrical groupings of the beam clearer.



A phrase of 64th notes, with secondary beams subdivided to show 16th and eighth note groups

You can set per-flow options for splitting secondary beams and their appearance on the **Beam Grouping** page in **Notation Options**.

RELATED LINKS
Rests within beams on page 771
Notation Options dialog on page 679
Changing the gaps between beam lines on page 770

Changing the direction of partial beams

Dorico Elements automatically inputs a partial beam if one is required. You can change on which side of stems individual partial beams appear.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

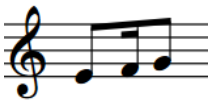
PROCEDURE

1. Select the notes whose partial beam direction you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Partial beam direction** in the **Beaming** group.
3. Choose one of the following options:
   - **Left**
   - **Right**

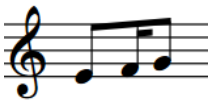
RESULT

The partial beam appears on the corresponding side of the stem.

EXAMPLE



Partial beam direction **Left**



Partial beam direction **Right**

Changing the number of beam lines in secondary beams

You can change the number of beam lines shown in secondary beams individually, independently of your default setting for the current flow.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.

- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the notes to the right of where you want to change the number of secondary beaming lines. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. Optional: If any of the notes you selected do not immediately follow existing splits in the secondary beam, split the secondary beams in any of the following ways:
   - In the Properties panel, activate **Split secondary beam** in the **Beaming** group.

     NOTE

     The **Beaming** group is only shown in the Properties panel if your selection only contains notes.

   - Choose **Edit** > **Notations** > **Beaming** > **Split Secondary Beam**. You can also choose this option from the context menu.
3. In the Properties panel, select the note value that corresponds to the number of beam lines you want shown from the **Split secondary beam** menu.

RESULT

The number of beam lines shown immediately to the left of each selected note is changed.

NOTE

- Deactivating the property returns the selected notes to showing their default number of beam lines.
- The number of beam lines shown at a split in the secondary beam cannot be the same or greater than the number of beam lines in the secondary beam. For example, if you split a secondary beam containing 64th notes, the maximum number of beam lines shown at the split in that beam is three, the equivalent of 32nd notes.
- You can change the default number of secondary beam lines shown in each flow independently on the **Beam Grouping** page in **Notation Options**.

RELATED LINKS

Notation Options dialog on page 679
Resetting beam grouping on page 758

Changing the gaps between beam lines

You can change the gaps that separate beam lines in individual beams, which can be useful in certain engraving situations. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select all the noteheads in the beams whose beam line gaps you want to change.

NOTE

For the best results, we recommend selecting all notes in each beam.

2. In the Properties panel, activate **Separation** in the **Beaming** group.
3. Change the value in the value field.

RESULT

The gaps that separate beam lines in the selected beams are changed. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

RELATED LINKS

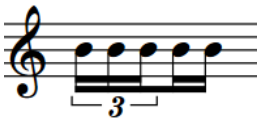
Hiding/Showing zones on page 44
Changing the property scope on page 617
Copying property settings to other layouts/frame chains on page 599
Changing the thickness of beams on page 758
Beam slants on page 760

Tuplets within beams

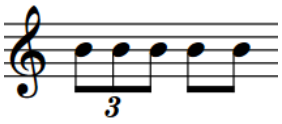
Tuplets that contain notes that produce beams, such as eighth notes, are beamed together. However, special beam grouping rules apply to tuplets within beams that also contain non-tuplet notes.

The default setting for a tuplet in a beamed group with secondary beams is to split the secondary beam and to show the tuplet with a bracket. The primary beam is not split. If necessary, you can hide/show tuplet brackets individually.

The default setting for a tuplet in a beamed group with only a primary beam is to separate the tuplet entirely. However, you can change this setting on the **Beam Grouping** page in **Notation Options**.



16th note triplet beamed together with non-tuplet 16th notes



Eighth note (quaver) triplet beamed separately from non-tuplet eighth notes

RELATED LINKS

Tuplets on page 1271
Tuplet brackets on page 1276
Tuplet numbers/ratios on page 1279

Rests within beams

There are different conventions for how beams interact with rests, including whether beams should extend over rests or split at rests.

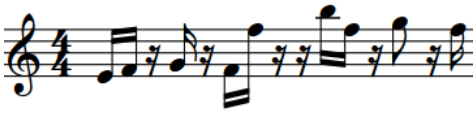
You can change how primary and secondary beams interact with rests in each flow independently on the **Beam Grouping** page in **Notation Options**.

RELATED LINKS
Note and rest grouping on page 774
Beam slants on page 760
Notation Options dialog on page 679
Changing the direction of partial beams on page 769

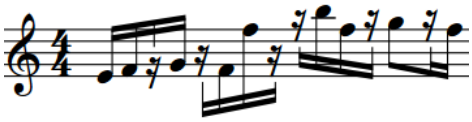
Stemlets

Stemlets are short stems that extend from beams to rests within beam groups. They can help make music easier to read, as they help to maintain a regular pattern of stems within beams.

In the examples, beaming all notes and rests together to show the boundaries of quarter note (crotchet) beats makes the syncopation of the notes easier to read. The stemlets on the rests help make clear where within the quarter note beats each note occurs.



A syncopated phrase without stemlets



The same phrase with stemlets

In Dorico Elements, you cannot add stemlets or change where they are shown. However, stemlets are shown if you import or open a project that contains them.

Fanned beams

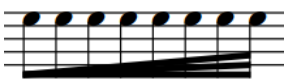
Fanned beams show either an *accelerando* or *rallentando* by having multiple beam lines either converging on, or diverging from, a single beam line at the other end. Fanned beams are also known as “feathered beams”.

A single fanned beam can have multiple changes of direction within it.

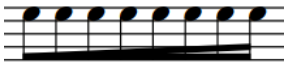
The grouping can use either two or three beams, with three beams indicating a greater change of speed than two beams. The slowest part of the phrase is where the beams converge, and the fastest is where the beams are the most spread out.

In Dorico Elements, you cannot create fanned beams or change their direction. However, fanned beams are shown if you import or open a project that contains them.

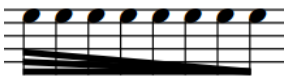
EXAMPLE



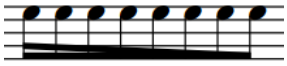
Fanned beam accelerando with three lines



Fanned beam accelerando with two lines



Fanned beam rallentando with three lines

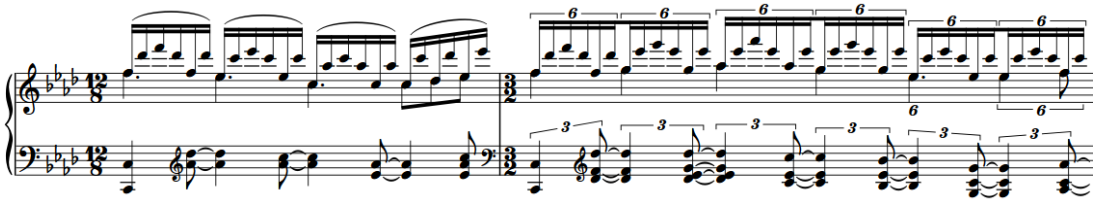


Fanned beam rallentando with two lines

Note and rest grouping

There are generally accepted conventions for how notes and rests of different durations are notated and grouped in different contexts and meters. In Dorico Elements, notes are automatically notated to fit within bars and are grouped according to your per-flow settings.

Depending on the prevailing time signature, there can be many different ways to beam notes together. For example, you might want to beam all notes in the bar together in time signatures that cannot be divided in half and are often not divided at all, such as 3/4.



A passage containing different meters. Notes are grouped and beamed differently in the different meters, and notes that cross beats and barlines are automatically shown as tied notes.

Tied notes are affected by your note and rest grouping settings, as there are different conventions for how notes within tie chains should be divided to indicate significant beat boundaries within bars, and in which contexts they can cross beat boundaries.

Similar options apply to dotted notes, which are often notated as a single dotted note if they start at the beginning of bars, but as a tie chain that shows significant beat boundaries in the bar if they start part-way through bars.

TIP

- You can change the default note grouping and beam grouping settings for each flow independently on the **Note Grouping** and **Beam Grouping** pages in **Notation Options**.

  Musical examples demonstrate how each option affects the appearance of your music.
- You can also specify custom beat groupings within individual time signatures.

RELATED LINKS

Beaming on page 754
Beam grouping according to meters on page 755
Note grouping in slash regions on page 1133
Notation Options dialog on page 679
Forcing the duration of notes/rests on page 250
Types of time signatures on page 1250
Numbered bar regions on page 1127
Allowing/Disallowing noteheads in opposing voices to overlap on page 1305

Creating custom beat groupings for meters

If your music requires a different beat grouping for a particular meter than the default setting for that time signature, you can specify your preferred beat grouping within the time signature.

You can choose whether or not the time signature shows this custom beat grouping. You can also input time signatures only on single staves.

NOTE

The duration of beam groups in Dorico Elements depends on the beat grouping in the prevailing time signature and your per-flow beam grouping settings in **Notation Options**. For example, entering **[1+1+1+1]/4** into the time signatures popover inputs a time signature with four quarter note (crotchet) groups. Because this creates a time signature with a half-bar, beam grouping options for time signatures with a half-bar apply.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:
   - Start note input.
   - Select an item at the rhythmic position where you want to input a time signature with custom beat grouping. If you want to input a time signature with custom beat grouping on a single staff, select an item that belongs to that staff only.
2. Optional: If you want to input a time signature with custom beat grouping onto multiple specific staves at once, extend the caret to those staves.
3. Optional: If you want Dorico Elements to add beats at the end of the region affected by the new time signature if required, activate Insert mode in any of the following ways:
   - Press **I**.
   - In the Notes toolbox, click **Insert**.
4. Open the time signatures popover in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Shift-M**.
   - In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers**, then **Time Signatures (Meter)**.
5. Enter the division you want in square brackets into the popover.

   For example, to divide a 7/8 time signature into 2+3+2, enter **[2+3+2]/8** into the popover. To divide a 5/4 time signature into 2+3 rather than 3+2, enter **[2+3]/4** into the popover.
6. Input the time signature and close the popover in one of the following ways:
   - To input a time signature on all staves, press **Return**.
   - To input a time signature only on the selected staff or staves across which the caret extends, press **Alt/Opt-Return**.

RESULT

The time signature specified is input and beam and beat grouping in subsequent bars follows the division you specified.

TIP

You can change the appearance of numerators in individual time signatures so that they show a single number or beat groups.

RELATED LINKS

Time signatures popover on page 271
Time signature styles on page 1256

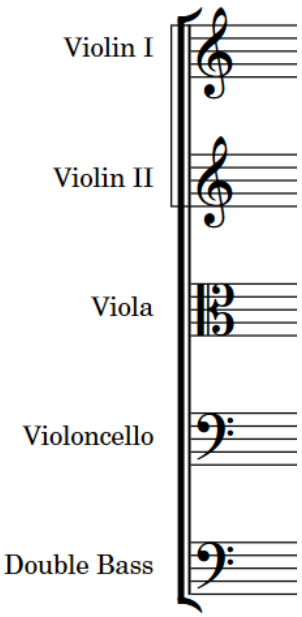
Brackets and braces

Brackets and braces are thick straight and curved lines in the left-hand margin that show instrument groupings.

Brackets

A bracket is a thick black line, the width of a beam, that groups staves together, most commonly according to instrument family. It often has winged ends that point inwards towards the score.

It is always positioned directly to the left of a systemic barline. If secondary brackets are used in addition to a bracket, they are positioned further away from the start of the system to allow space for the bracket.



An example of a bracket, connecting instruments in the string family. A sub-bracket connects the two violin lines.

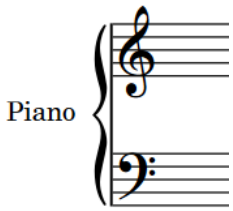
By default in Dorico Elements, barlines join the same staves that are joined by brackets and braces, meaning that bracketed groups of staves and braced pairs of staves appear with barlines extending across the group.

Braces

A brace is a wavy or curly line that joins multiple staves belonging to the same instrument, usually a grand staff instrument such as the piano or harp. If necessary, a brace can extend to three or more staves, although two is most common.

The brace is also sometimes used instead of a sub-bracket to show groupings of identical instruments within a family whose staves are joined by a bracket.

It is positioned outside the systemic barline, and if used in place of a sub-bracket, outside of the bracket as well.



A brace connecting two piano staves

NOTE

- Staves cannot be bracketed and braced simultaneously. Therefore, braced staves are excluded from bracketed groups. They also cannot show sub-brackets or sub-sub-brackets.
- System objects are only shown above instrument families that are bracketed or braced together.
- Blank staves can only show brackets/braces when they are shown after final flows. You cannot show brackets/braces on blank staves in music frames.

RELATED LINKS
Barlines across staff groups on page 739
Player groups on page 158
Adding player groups on page 159
Brackets according to ensemble type on page 778
Changing the default barline joins on page 740
System objects on page 1196
Staff labels on page 1180
Player group labels on page 1188

Changing bracket grouping according to ensemble type

You can change which staves are included in brackets by changing the ensemble type for each layout independently; for example, if a part layout containing all percussion players requires different bracketing than used for percussion staves in the full score layout.

The default setting is **Orchestral**. We recommend that you change this setting for projects containing small ensembles.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-L** to open **Layout Options**.
2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to change the ensemble type for bracket grouping.

   By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar, clicking and dragging across multiple layouts, **Shift**-clicking adjacent layouts, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking individual layouts.
3. In the category list, click **Brackets and Braces**.
4. Choose one of the following options for **Ensemble type**:
   - **No brackets**
   - **Orchestral**
   - **Small ensemble**

- **Wind band**
- **Big band**
- **British brass band**

5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

The default bracket grouping is changed in the selected layouts.

TIP

- There are further options for bracketing on the **Brackets and Braces** page, such as hiding/showing brackets when there is only a single instrument in the bracket group and hiding/showing braces when only a single staff is shown.
- Player groups and soloists also influence which staves are bracketed together.
- You can also input custom bracket/brace grouping for specific staves, independently of the bracket grouping setting in the layout. However, you cannot change brackets/braces on blank staves.

RELATED LINKS

Barlines across staff groups on page 739
Hiding/Showing blank staves after final flows on page 564
Player groups on page 158
Designating players as soloists on page 124
Staff labels on page 1180
Player group labels on page 1188

Brackets according to ensemble type

In Dorico Elements, default staff grouping is determined by the ensemble type chosen for each layout. This affects which staves are bracketed together and joined by barlines.

The following ensemble types are available on the **Brackets and Braces** page in **Layout Options**:

No brackets

All staves appear separately, with no brackets. Grand staff instruments are still shown with braces.

This is the default setting for full score layouts in projects started from **Solo** and small **Jazz** project templates.

Orchestral

Staves are bracketed according to their instrument family. For example, adjacent string instruments are bracketed together separately from adjacent woodwind instruments. However, vocal staves are not joined by barlines.

This is the default setting for all layouts in new projects and projects started from **Orchestral**, **Choral and Vocal**, and **Concert band** project templates, and for custom score and part layouts in projects started from all other project templates.

Small ensemble

All staves in the project are bracketed together, regardless of their instrument family, excluding braced staves.

This is the default setting for full score layouts in projects started from **Chamber** and **Pit band** project templates.

Wind band

Staves are bracketed according to their instrument type. For example, Flute 1 and Flute 2 are bracketed together, but separately from the other woodwind instruments.

Big band

Staves are bracketed according to their instrument family, except for brass instruments, which are all bracketed according to their instrument type.

Rhythm section instruments are bracketed together.

Percussion and timpani are bracketed together.

British brass band

Brass instruments are bracketed according to their instrument type, except for horns and trumpets, which are bracketed together.

Any other instruments in the score are bracketed according to their instrument family.

Percussion and timpani are bracketed separately.

This is the default setting for full score layouts in projects started from the **Big band** project template.

NOTE

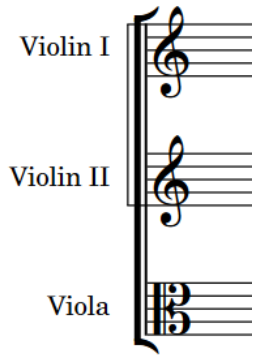
- Staves cannot be bracketed and braced simultaneously. Therefore, braced staves, such as the piano and other grand staff instruments, are excluded from brackets. They also split brackets if they are placed within a bracketed group.
- By default, there must be at least two adjacent instruments to show a bracket. You can choose to show brackets on single instruments in each layout independently on the **Brackets and Braces** page in **Layout Options**.
- Player groups and soloists also influence which staves are bracketed together.
- Vocal staves are never joined by barlines, even when bracketed together.
- System objects are only shown above instrument families that are bracketed or braced together.

RELATED LINKS
Layout Options dialog on page 677
Project templates on page 78
System objects on page 1196

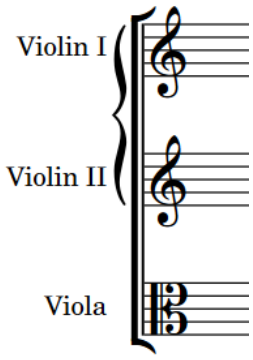
Secondary brackets

Secondary brackets are a second level of staff grouping. They are positioned to the left of brackets and allow you to mark groups of staves within a bracketed group. In Dorico Elements, secondary brackets can appear as a brace or as a sub-bracket.

By default, secondary brackets appear as sub-brackets: thin lines with square corners that extend beyond the bracket. You can change the appearance of secondary brackets and hide/show them for adjacent identical instruments in bracketed groups in each layout independently.



Secondary bracket as a sub-bracket



Secondary bracket as a brace

NOTE

You cannot show sub-sub-brackets in addition to braces, you can only show sub-sub-brackets in addition to sub-brackets.

Hiding/Showing secondary brackets

You can hide/show secondary brackets for adjacent identical instruments in bracketed groups in each layout independently. You can also choose only to show secondary brackets when sub-bracketed groups contain at least two staves.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-L** to open **Layout Options**.
2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to hide/show secondary brackets.

   By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar, clicking and dragging across multiple layouts, **Shift**-clicking adjacent layouts, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking individual layouts.
3. In the category list, click **Brackets and Braces**.
4. Choose one of the following options for **Instruments of the same kind within a bracketed group**:
   - **Use secondary brackets**
   - **No secondary brackets**
5. Choose one of the following options for **When only one staff of sub-bracketed group is shown**:
   - **Draw sub-bracket**
   - **Do not draw sub-bracket**
6. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

Secondary brackets are shown in the selected layouts when you choose **Use secondary brackets**, and hidden when you choose **No secondary brackets**.

If you chose **Use secondary brackets** and **Do not draw sub-bracket**, secondary brackets are only shown when sub-bracketed groups contain at least two staves.

Showing secondary brackets as sub-brackets/braces

Secondary brackets extend beyond brackets, allowing you to mark groups of staves within a bracketed group. You can show secondary brackets as either braces positioned outside the bracket or as sub-brackets in each layout independently.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-L** to open **Layout Options**.
2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to change the appearance of secondary brackets.

   By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar, clicking and dragging across multiple layouts, **Shift**-clicking adjacent layouts, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking individual layouts.
3. In the category list, click **Brackets and Braces**.
4. Choose one of the following options for **Secondary bracket appearance**:
   - **Brace**
   - **Sub-bracket**
5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

The appearance of all secondary brackets in the selected layouts is changed.

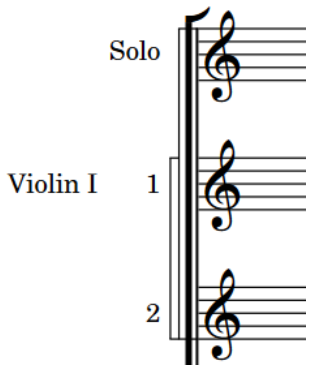
NOTE

Because you cannot show sub-sub-brackets in addition to braces, sub-sub-brackets are not shown in layouts where sub-brackets appear as braces.

Sub-sub-brackets

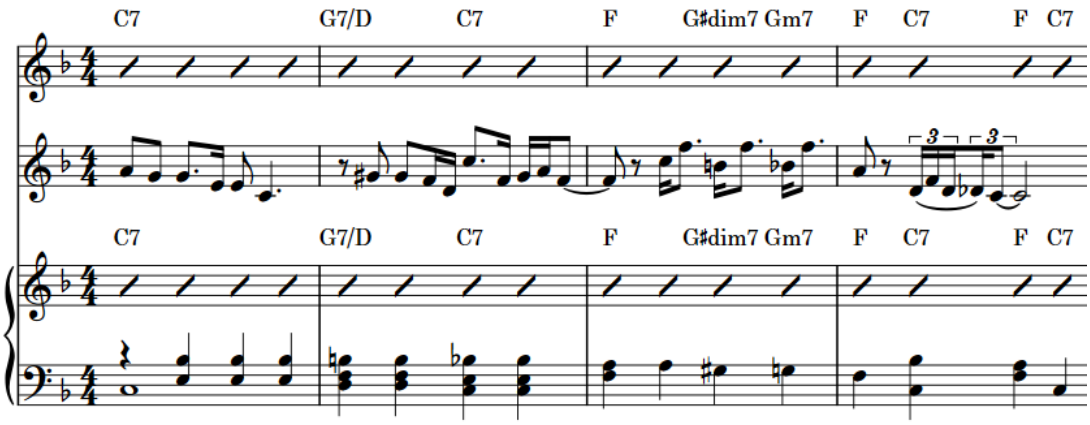
Sub-sub-brackets are a tertiary level of staff grouping with the same design as sub-brackets. They are positioned outside of both brackets and sub-brackets, allowing you to mark groups of staves within bracketed and sub-bracketed groups. Sub-sub-brackets can only appear as brackets in Dorico Elements.

Sub-sub-brackets cannot extend beyond their sub-bracket and cannot be shown on staves with a brace as either the primary or secondary group.



Chord symbols

Chord symbols describe the vertical harmony of the music at a specific moment. They are frequently used in jazz and pop music, where players often improvise around chord progressions.



Chord symbols shown above slashes on the Clarinet and Piano staves to help the players improvise around the notated Cornet melody.

You can input chord symbols using the chord symbols popover and you can automatically generate chord symbols based on existing music.

In Dorico Elements, chord symbols exist globally at the corresponding rhythmic positions by default. This means that you only have to input chord symbols once, but they can appear above multiple or no staves as required. However, in some circumstances it is necessary to show different chord symbols for different players at the same rhythmic position. In such cases, you can input local chord symbols.

Dorico Elements automatically shows the appropriate chord symbols for transposing instruments in transposing layouts, including for fretted instruments whose transposition you have changed to reflect a capo. You can also define capos for chord symbols and show only main chord symbols, only capo chord symbols, or both.

You can hide/show chord symbols project-wide above specific instrument staves, including if multiple instruments belong to the same player, and in different layouts. You can also show chord symbols only within chord symbol/slash regions and hide/show individual chord symbols.

If you have input chord symbols but no players in the current layout are set to show them, they are indicated by signposts.

Depending on the style of music, there are different conventions regarding how to present chord names.

Dorico Elements provides a comprehensive set of chord symbol appearance presets that you can choose from.

RELATED LINKS

Inputting chord symbols on page 303
Chord symbol appearance presets on page 783
Hiding/Showing chord symbols on page 789

Chord diagrams on page 805
Capos on page 142
Capo vs. main chords on page 142
Hiding/Showing signposts on page 427
Chords track on page 498
Enabling chord symbol playback on page 499

Chord components

Chord symbols consist of a root and a quality, with intervals, alterations, and an altered bass note included if required.

Root

The root note of the chord, expressed either as a note name or as a specific degree of a scale.

Quality

Defines the type of chord, such as major, minor, diminished, augmented, half-diminished, or with added note, such as six or nine.

Interval

Chord symbols can include one or more added intervals, such as a major seventh or ninth. Intervals in chord symbols are also known as “extensions”.

Alterations

Define notes in chords that are different to what is normally expected of that chord. For example, a sharpened fifth, flattened ninth, suspensions, or omissions.

Altered bass note

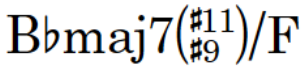
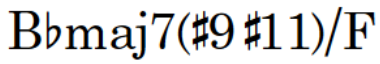
A chord symbol has an altered bass note if the lowest pitch of a chord is not its root note, such as Cm7♭5/E♭.

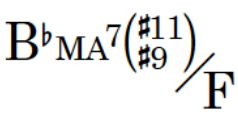
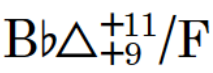
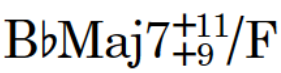
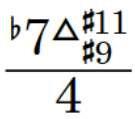
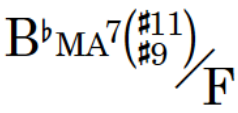
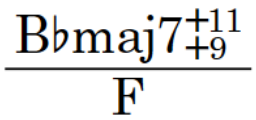
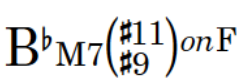
Chord symbol appearance presets

There are many conventions for the appearance of chord symbols, so Dorico Elements provides a choice of preset conventions that you can use and edit.

For example, you can edit default preset chord symbols, you can edit individual chord symbols without changing the default appearance for that chord symbol, and you can edit individual components within chord symbols.

- You can access chord symbol presets in the **Chord Symbols Options** dialog by choosing **Library** > **Chord Symbols**.

Chord symbol preset example	Chord symbol preset name
	Default
	Boston

Chord symbol preset example	Chord symbol preset name
	Brandt-Roemer
	Indiana
	New York
	Nashville
	Jazz Standards
	Ross
	Japanese

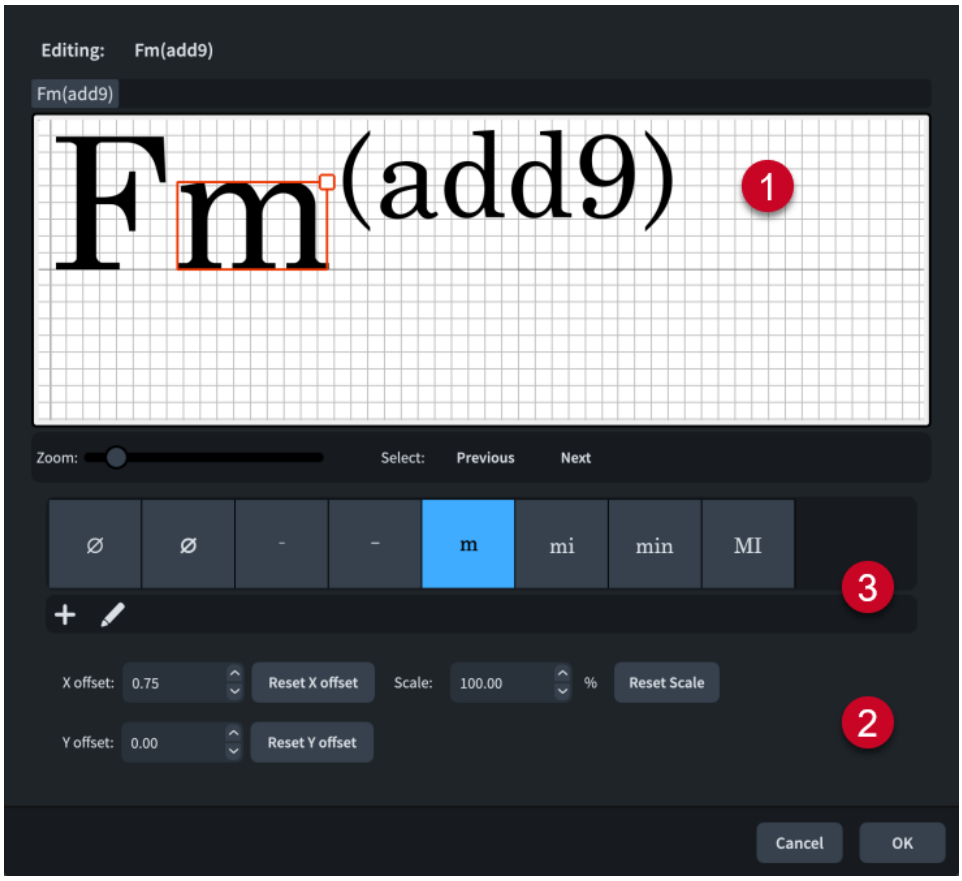
These presets use specific combinations of the options in the **Chord Symbols Options** dialog. You can also adjust these options individually to suit your requirements.

- **Default** uses a set of symbols intended to be as unambiguous as possible. For example, **Default** avoids the use of symbols for major seventh, augmented, diminished, and half-diminished. This is the default preset for new projects.
- **Custom** is automatically selected when you change any of the preset options.

Edit Chord Symbol Appearance dialog

The **Edit Chord Symbol Appearance** dialog allows you to edit the appearance and arrangement of single chord symbol instances, without changing the project default appearance of that chord symbol. For example, if you want the first Gmaj7 chord symbol to appear differently than all subsequent Gmaj7 chord symbols.

- You can open the **Edit Chord Symbol Appearance** dialog in Engrave mode by selecting the chord symbol you want to customize and pressing **Return**, or double-clicking a chord symbol.



The **Edit Chord Symbol Appearance** dialog contains the following sections:

1 **Editor**

Allows you to arrange and edit the components that make up the chord symbol.

As well as using the controls at the bottom of the dialog, you can move individual components in any of the following ways after selecting them in the editor:

- Press the standard key commands for moving items. For example, press **Alt/Opt-Right Arrow** to move components to the right, or press **Ctrl/Cmd-Alt/Opt-Right Arrow** to move components to the right by larger increments.
- Click and drag each component.

NOTE

You cannot move the first component in chord symbols.

In addition to using **Scale**, you can also change the size of components by clicking and dragging the square handle in the top right corner after selecting a component in the editor.

2 **Controls**

Allow you to move individual components and change their size. You can also reset their position and size.

- **X offset** moves components horizontally. Increasing the value moves components to the right, decreasing the value moves components to the left.
- **Y offset** moves components vertically. Increasing the value moves components upwards, decreasing the value moves components downwards.

- **Scale** changes the size of components. Increasing the value increases the size of components proportionally, decreasing the value decreases the size of components proportionally.
- **Reset X offset** resets the horizontal position of the selected component.
- **Reset Y offset** resets the vertical position of the selected component.
- **Reset Scale** resets the size of the selected component.

3 Components list

You can create new components and edit existing components by clicking the respective button in the action bar.

- **Add Component**
- **Edit Component**

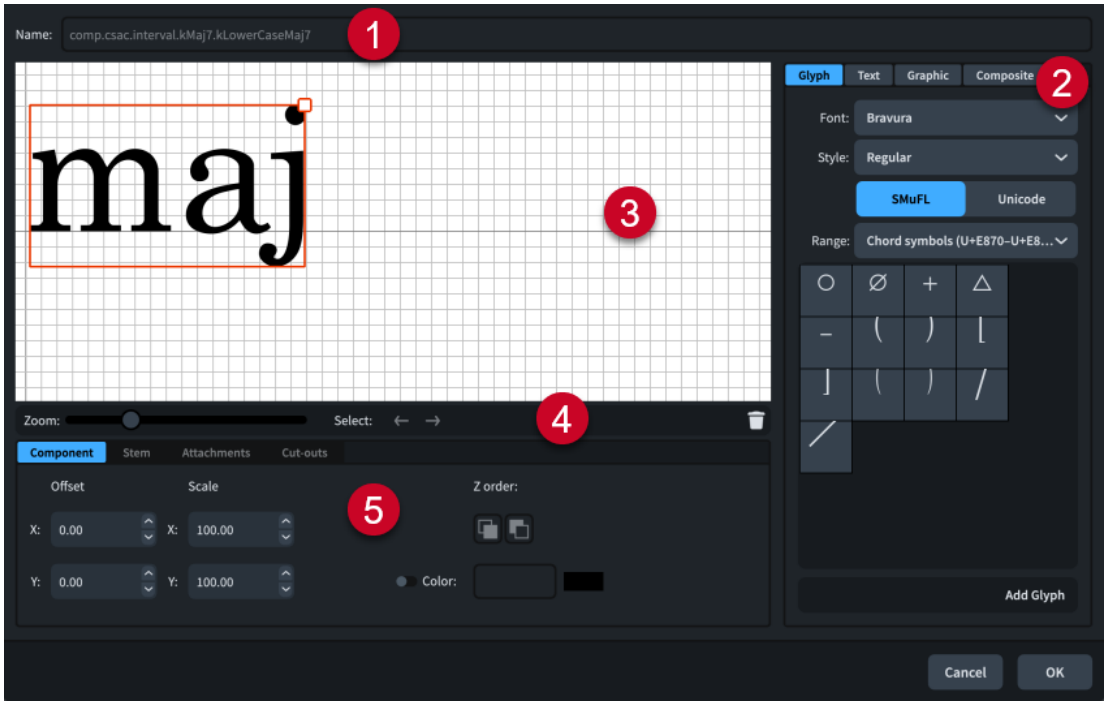
Clicking either button opens the **Edit Chord Symbol Component** dialog, in which you can create new components and edit existing components. Editing components from inside the **Edit Chord Symbol Appearance** dialog only affects the selected chord symbol.

RELATED LINKS
Chord symbol appearance presets on page 783
Moving items graphically on page 481

Edit Chord Symbol Component dialog

The **Edit Chord Symbol Component** dialog allows you to create custom chord symbol components and edit existing components for single instances of chord symbols.

- You can open the **Edit Chord Symbol Component** dialog from inside the **Edit Chord Symbol Appearance** dialog by selecting the component you want to duplicate in the components list, and clicking **Add Component** in the components list action bar.



The **Edit Chord Symbol Component** dialog contains the following sections:

1 Name

Contains an automatically generated name for the chord symbol component. You cannot change this name.

2 **Component selector**

Allows you to choose components to add to your chord symbol component. You can add different types of components by clicking the respective tab titles.

- **Glyph**, for example, ♭ or ♯. You can use different styles of glyphs by selecting different fonts and font styles/weights from the menus. You can search using **SMuFL** or **Unicode** ranges. Click **Add Glyph** to add the selected glyph to the chord symbol component.

  NOTE

  A full list of the different ranges of glyphs is available on the SMuFL website.

- **Text**, including numbers and other text. You can use numbers and text from the available **Preset text** list or select any font available from the menu and enter your preferred text into the text box at the bottom. Click **Add Text** to add the selected or input text to the chord symbol component.
- **Graphic**: Allows you to load a new graphics file or select an existing graphic from the **Select existing** list in SVG, PNG, or JPG format. You can see a preview of the graphic in the **Preview** box. Click **Add Graphic** to add the selected graphic to the chord symbol component.
- **Composite**: Allows you to select a composite from the list. Click **Add Composite** to add the selected composite to the chord symbol component.

3 **Editor**

Allows you to arrange and edit the components that make up your chord symbol component. You can arrange and edit components using the controls at the bottom of the dialog.

4 **Editor action bar**

Contains selection and view options for the editor.

- **Zoom**: Allows you to change the zoom level in the editor.
- **Select**: Allows you to select the next/previous component.
- **Delete** : Deletes the selected component.

5 **Controls**

Contains controls that allow you to edit individual components. Controls are divided into tabs according to the aspect of the selected component they affect. For chord symbols, the **Component** and **Attachments** tabs are available.

The **Component** tab contains the following options:

- **Offset**: Controls the position of the selected component. **X** moves it horizontally, **Y** moves it vertically.
- **Scale**: Controls the size of the selected component. For graphics, **X** controls its width, **Y** controls its height.

  NOTE

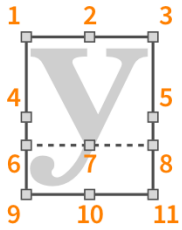
  Although some components scale their height and width independently, others retain their aspect ratio, meaning only one value affects their overall size.

- **Z order**: Allows you to **Bring Forward** or **Send Backward** the selected component in relation to other components when they overlap.
- **Color**: Allows you to change the color of the selected component.

The **Attachments** tab is only available if the chord symbol component comprises at least two separate components. It contains the following options:

- **Attachment from**: Sets the attachment point on the component to the left of the selected component to which the selected component attaches. We recommend that you select a right edge attachment point for **Attachment from**.
- **Attachment to**: Sets the attachment point on the selected component which attaches to the component to its left. We recommend that you select a left edge attachment point for **Attachment to**.

There are eight attachment points for glyphs and graphics, and eleven for text, due to the extra space required for letters that extend below the baseline. The example diagram helps you visualize how these points relate to components.



The attachment points have the following names in the **Edit Chord Symbol Component** dialog:

1 **Top Left**

2 **Top Center**

3 **Top Right**

4 **Middle Left**

5 **Middle Right**

6 **Baseline Left** (text only)

7 **Baseline Center** (text only)

8 **Baseline Right** (text only)

9 **Bottom Left**

10 **Bottom Center**

11 **Bottom Right**

RELATED LINKS
Chord symbol appearance presets on page 783
Edit Chord Symbol Appearance dialog on page 784

Positions of chord symbols

In layouts where chord symbols are shown, they are positioned either above all instrument staves set to show chord symbols or only above the top staff in each system.

By default, chord symbols are left-aligned with noteheads.

Alignment of chord symbols across the system

Chord symbols are aligned at the same vertical position across the width of the system by default. You can disable the automatic alignment of chord symbols within systems in the **Position** section of the **Chord Symbols Options** dialog.

RELATED LINKS
Hiding/Showing capo chord symbols on page 147
Moving notes/items rhythmically on page 437
Moving items graphically on page 481
Chord symbol regions on page 793

Hiding/Showing chord symbols

You can hide/show chord symbols above particular staves or only within chord symbol/slash regions project-wide on a per-player basis. By default, chord symbols appear above rhythm section instrument staves, such as keyboards, guitars, and bass guitars.

Any player on whose staff you input chord symbols is automatically set to show chord symbols for all instruments and in the current layout type.

PROCEDURE

1. In Setup mode, select a player in the **Players** panel for whom you want to hide/show chord symbols.
2. In the action bar, click **Player Settings** ··· and choose one of the following options:
   - To show chord symbols above all instrument staves held by the player, choose **Chord Symbols** > **Show for All Instruments**.
   - To show chord symbols only above rhythm section instrument staves held by the player, choose **Chord Symbols** > **Show for Rhythm Section Instruments**.
   - To show chord symbols only in chord symbol/slash regions on instrument staves held by the player, choose **Chord Symbols** > **Show in Chord Symbol and Slash Regions**.
   - To hide chord symbols above all instrument staves held by the player, choose **Chord Symbols** > **Hide for All Instruments**.

RESULT

Chord symbols are hidden/shown above the corresponding instrument staves held by the selected player, depending on the layouts in which chord symbols are shown for that player in your project.

TIP

- You can also right-click players and choose these options from the context menu.
- You can choose to show chord symbols only once at the top of each system in each layout independently.
- You can also hide/show individual chord symbols in layouts where chord symbols are shown by selecting them and activating **Hidden** in the **Chord Symbols** group of the Properties panel. Signposts are shown at the position of each hidden chord symbol. However, signposts are not printed by default.

  You can assign a key command for **Hide/Show Item** on the **Key Commands** page in **Preferences**, which applies to chord symbols, playing techniques, figured bass, text items, and time signatures.

RELATED LINKS
Players panel on page 107
Layouts on page 165
Inputting chord symbols on page 303

Chord symbol regions on page 793
Inputting chord symbol regions on page 311
Inputting slash regions on page 398
Signposts on page 426
Hiding/Showing chord diagrams on page 806
Showing only chord symbols or chord diagrams on page 808
Showing chord symbols above one/multiple staves on page 790
Changing the staff-relative placement of chord symbols on page 792
Capo vs. main chords on page 142
Hiding/Showing capo chord symbols on page 147
Key Commands page in the Preferences dialog on page 59
Layout Options dialog on page 677
Chord symbol appearance presets on page 783

Hiding/Showing chord symbols in layouts

You can hide/show chord symbols in different types of layouts. By default, chord symbols appear in all applicable layouts for rhythm section instruments.

NOTE

If chord symbols are hidden for all instruments in the current layout, signposts are shown above the top staff.

PROCEDURE

1. In Setup mode, select a player in the **Players** panel.
2. In the action bar, click **Player Settings** ··· and choose one of the following options:
   - To show chord symbols for the selected player in all layouts, choose **Chord Symbols** > **Show in Full Score and Parts**.
   - To show chord symbols for the selected player only in full score/custom score layouts and not in part layouts, choose **Chord Symbols** > **Show in Full Score Only**.
   - To show chord symbols for the selected player only in part layouts and not in full score/custom score layouts, choose **Chord Symbols** > **Show in Parts Only**

   TIP

   You can also right-click players and choose these options from the context menu.

Showing chord symbols above one/multiple staves

You can choose to show chord symbols above all instrument staves set to show chord symbols or only above the top staff in each system in each layout independently.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-L** to open **Layout Options**.
2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to change the vertical position of chord symbols.

   By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar, clicking

and dragging across multiple layouts, **Shift**-clicking adjacent layouts, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking individual layouts.

3. In the category list, click **Chord Symbols and Diagrams**.
4. In the **Chord Symbols** section, choose one of the following options for **Show chord symbols**:
   - **Above specific players' staves**
   - **Above top staff of system**
5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

The vertical position of chord symbols is changed in the selected layouts.

RELATED LINKS

Inputting chord symbols on page 303
Showing only chord symbols or chord diagrams on page 808
Capo vs. main chords on page 142
Hiding/Showing capo chord symbols on page 147

Changing the alignment of chord symbols relative to notes

You can change the horizontal alignment of individual chord symbols relative to notes, independently of your project-wide setting. For example, you might center-align wide chord symbols to avoid collisions with barlines. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the chord symbols whose alignment you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Alignment** in the **Chord Symbols** group.
3. Select one of the following alignment options from the menu:
   - **Left**
   - **Center**
   - **Right**

RESULT

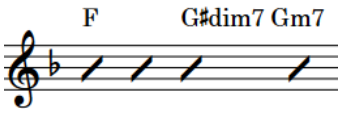
The alignment of the selected chord symbols is changed. Note spacing is automatically adjusted to avoid collisions with adjacent chord symbols.

If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

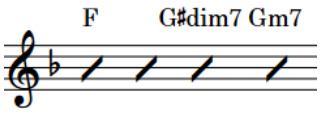
TIP

You can change the default horizontal alignment of all chord symbols project-wide in the **Position** section of the **Chord Symbols Options** dialog.

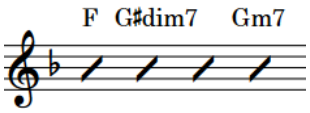
EXAMPLE



Left-aligned G#dim7 chord symbol on beat 3



Center-aligned G#dim7 chord symbol on beat 3



Right-aligned G#dim7 chord symbol on beat 3

Changing the staff-relative placement of chord symbols

You can show individual chord symbols either above or below the staff. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the chord symbols whose staff-relative placement you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Placement** in the **Chord Symbols** group.
3. Choose one of the following options:
   - **Above**
   - **Below**

RESULT

The staff-relative placement of the selected chord symbols is changed. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

TIP

- You can choose to show chord symbols between the staves of grand staff instruments in each layout independently in **Layout Options** > **Chord Symbols and Diagrams** > **Chord Symbols**.
- You can change the default placement of all chord symbols project-wide in the **Position** section of the **Chord Symbols Options** dialog.

RELATED LINKS

Chord symbol appearance presets on page 783
Layout Options dialog on page 677
Erasing the background of chord symbols on page 798
Changing the property scope on page 617

Copying property settings to other layouts/frame chains on page 599

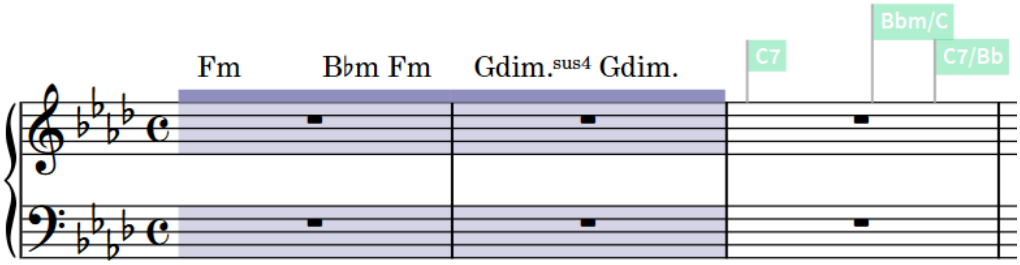
Chord symbol regions

Chord symbol regions specify passages where you want to show chord symbols. They are particularly useful for players and layouts that do not need chord symbols for most of the project but have improvisation sections that require chord symbols to be shown.

Chord symbol regions allow you to show chord symbols only where players require them, instead of showing chord symbols throughout the project and manually hiding the ones you do not want to show.

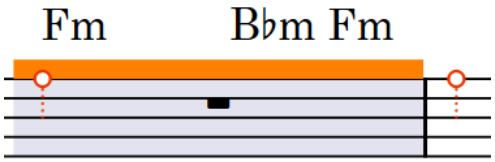
When you input chord symbol regions in Dorico Elements, the corresponding players are automatically set to show chord symbols in chord symbol/slash regions. This is because it is common to use both slashes and chord symbols to aid players in improvisation sections. Any chord symbols outside chord symbol/slash regions are automatically hidden and are indicated by signposts.

By default, chord symbol regions are highlighted with a solid colored line above the top staff line and a colored background. As you zoom out, the colored backgrounds become more opaque, which is especially useful when viewing full score layouts in galley view. These highlights are considered annotations, are not printed by default, and you can hide/show them.



Chord symbol region followed by chord symbol signposts after the end of the chord symbol region

In Write mode, each region has a handle at the start and end, which you can use to move and lengthen/shorten regions.



Handles on a selected chord symbol region

RELATED LINKS
Inputting chord symbol regions on page 311
Slash regions on page 1132
Hiding/Showing chord symbols on page 789
Hiding/Showing signposts on page 427
Annotations on page 554

Hiding/Showing chord symbol region highlights

You can hide/show colored highlights for chord symbol regions at any time; for example, if you want to show the highlights when inputting music but hide them when engraving.

PROCEDURE

- Choose **View** > **Highlight Chord Symbol Regions**.

Transposing chord symbols

You can transpose chord symbols after you have input them, independently of any notes.

TIP

- Dorico Elements automatically shows the appropriate chord symbols for transposing instruments in transposing layouts.
- If you want to transpose chord symbols to reflect a capo, you can instead show capo chord symbols.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the chord symbols you want to transpose.
2. Choose **Write** > **Transpose** to open the **Transpose** dialog.
3. Adjust the parameters required for your transposition, such as interval and quality.

   TIP

   - We recommend using the **Calculate interval** section to determine your required settings; for example, if you want to transpose from G♭ major to G major.
   - Different intervals have different possible qualities. For example, you can specify a major third but not a major octave. Therefore, if you want to set your transposition parameters manually, we recommend selecting the interval before the quality.
4. Click **OK** to save your changes and close the dialog.

RESULT

The selected chord symbols are transposed.

RELATED LINKS

Transpose dialog on page 446
Concert vs. transposed pitch on page 170
Making layouts transposing/concert pitch on page 169
Capos on page 142

Respelling chord symbols

You can change the enharmonic spelling of chord symbols for transposing instruments; for example, to choose a simpler enharmonic equivalent spelling. This changes the enharmonic

spelling of chord symbols in all transposing layouts and for all instruments with the same transposition.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, open a layout with the transposition for which you want to respell chord symbols.

   For example, to respell a chord symbol for all instruments in B♭, open the part layout for an instrument in B♭.

2. Select the chord symbol you want to respell.
3. Press **Return** to open the chord symbols popover for the selected chord symbol.

   The existing entry for the chord symbol is shown inside the popover.

4. Change the root name of the chord, but leave other details as they were, such as quality, interval, or alterations.

   For example, change just the root of D♭maj13 from **Db** to **C#**.

5. Press **Return** to close the popover.

RESULT

The spelling of the chord symbol is changed in transposing layouts for all instruments with the same transposition. For example, changing the spelling of a chord symbol for a Clarinet in B♭ also changes the spelling of that chord symbol in the part layout for a Trumpet in B♭.

RELATED LINKS

Chord symbols popover on page 305
Respelling notes on page 449
Fretted instrument tuning on page 138
Defining capos for chord symbols/diagrams on page 147
Hiding/Showing capo chord symbols on page 147

Showing chord symbols as modes

You can show individual chord symbols as their modal equivalent if one exists for that chord symbol.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the chord symbols you want to show as a mode. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Show as mode** in the **Chord Symbols** group.
3. Select the mode you want from the menu.

RESULT

The selected chord symbols are respelled according to the selected mode. This does not affect the notes included in the chord symbols.

Resetting the enharmonic spelling of chord symbols

You can remove enharmonic spelling overrides for chord symbols you have respelled and return them to their default spelling. You can remove overrides for instruments with a single transposition only, such as instruments in B♭, or for all instrument transpositions.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the chord symbol whose spelling you want to reset.
   - If you want to reset the enharmonic spelling of the chord symbol for a single instrument transposition only, select the chord symbol on a staff belonging to an instrument with that transposition. For example, select it on the staff of any instrument in B♭ to reset the chord symbol for all instruments in B♭.
   - If you want to reset the enharmonic spelling of the chord symbol for all instrument transpositions, select the chord symbol on any staff that belongs to a transposing instrument.
2. Press **Return** to open the chord symbols popover for the selected chord symbol.

   The existing entry for the chord symbol is shown inside the popover.
3. Reset the enharmonic spelling of the chord symbol in any of the following ways:
   - To reset the enharmonic spelling of the chord symbol for instruments only with the selected transposition, enter **Alt/Opt-S** into the chord symbols popover.
   - To reset the enharmonic spelling of the chord symbol for all instrument transpositions, enter **Shift-Alt/Opt-S** into the popover.
4. Press **Return** to close the popover.

RESULT

The enharmonic spelling of the selected chord symbol in transposing layouts is reset, either just for instruments with the specified transposition or for all transposing instruments.

Hiding/Showing the root and quality of chord symbols

You can hide the root and quality of chord symbols if they follow another chord symbol with the same root and quality, but have a different altered bass note.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the chord symbols whose root and quality you want to hide. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Hide root and quality** in the **Chord Symbols** group.
3. Activate/Deactivate the corresponding checkbox.

RESULT

The root and quality of the selected chord symbols are hidden when the checkbox is activated, and shown when the checkbox is deactivated.

When the property is deactivated, chord symbols follow your project-wide setting.

TIP

You can choose to show the root and quality of chord symbols always, even if successive chord symbols have the same root and quality, in the **Altered Bass Notes** section of the **Chord Symbols Options** dialog.

RELATED LINKS

Chord symbol appearance presets on page 783
Edit Chord Symbol Appearance dialog on page 784
Hiding/Showing zones on page 44
Properties panel on page 615

Changing the arrangement of compound chord symbols

You can change the arrangement of individual polychord and altered bass note chord symbols, independently of your project-wide settings. For example, if you want to show some polychord chord symbols stacked vertically but others in a horizontal row. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the compound chord symbols whose arrangement you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Compound chord arrangement** in the **Chord Symbols** group.
3. Select one of the following options from the menu:
   - **Diagonal arrangement**
   - **Stacked arrangement**
   - **Linear arrangement**

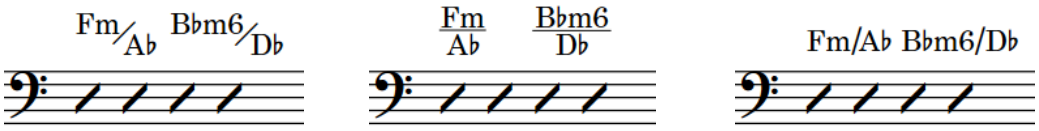
RESULT

The arrangement of the selected compound chord symbols is changed. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

TIP

You can change the default arrangement of all polychord and altered bass note chord symbols project-wide and independently of each other in the **Chord Symbols Options** dialog.

EXAMPLE



Diagonal arrangement **Stacked arrangement** **Linear arrangement**

RELATED LINKS

Chord components on page 783
Chord symbol appearance presets on page 783
Edit Chord Symbol Appearance dialog on page 784
Inputting chord symbols on page 303
Changing the property scope on page 617
Copying property settings to other layouts/frame chains on page 599

Erasing the background of chord symbols

You can erase the background of individual chord symbols; for example, to ensure chord symbols remain legible when crossing barlines. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

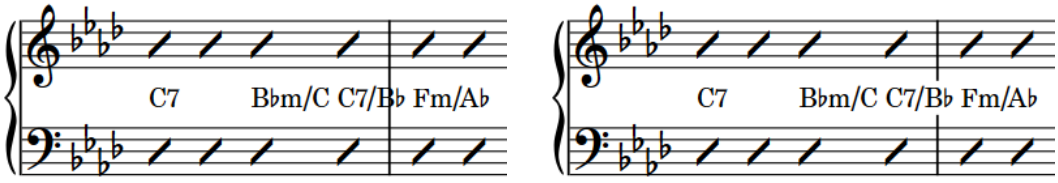
1. In Engrave mode, select the chord symbols whose backgrounds you want to erase.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Erase background** in the **Chord Symbols** group.

RESULT

The backgrounds of the selected chord symbols are erased. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

Deactivating **Erase background** returns the selected chord symbols to the default non-erased background.

EXAMPLE



Chord symbol with non-erased background Chord symbol with erased background

RELATED LINKS
Changing the alignment of chord symbols relative to notes on page 791
Changing the staff-relative placement of chord symbols on page 792

Changing the erasure padding of chord symbols

You can change the erasure padding of individual chord symbols, including changing the padding between chord symbols and each edge of their erased areas independently. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the chord symbols whose erasure padding you want to change.
2. In the Properties panel, activate the **Erasure padding** properties, individually or together, in the **Chord Symbols** group.
   - **L** changes the padding between chord symbols and their left edge.
   - **R** changes the padding between chord symbols and their right edge.
   - **T** changes the padding between chord symbols and their top edge.
   - **B** changes the padding between chord symbols and their bottom edge.
3. Change the values in the value fields.

RESULT

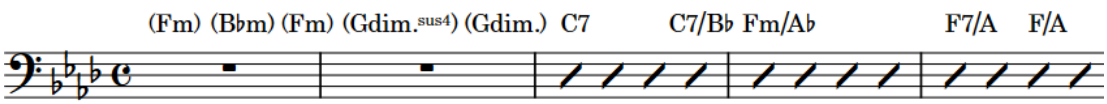
Increasing the values increases the padding, decreasing the values decreases the padding. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

TIP

You can change the default erasure padding of all chord symbols project-wide in the **Design** section of the **Chord Symbols Options** dialog. However, this does not allow you to change the padding of each edge independently.

Parenthesized chord symbols

Parentheses around chord symbols are often used to indicate an alternative set of chord changes or that chords are optional. In Dorico Elements, you can show parentheses around any chord symbol that uses appearance presets.



A phrase containing parenthesized chord symbols

You can add chord symbol parentheses both when inputting chord symbols and by parenthesizing existing chord symbols.

By default, parenthesized chord symbols show parentheses on both sides. You can show only a single left or right parenthesis on individual parenthesized chord symbols.

NOTE

- You cannot show parentheses on custom chord symbols; that is, chord symbols whose appearance you have overridden.
- You can change the default appearance of chord symbol parentheses project-wide, including suppressing parentheses around alterations inside parenthesized chord symbols in different circumstances, in the **Parentheses** section of the **Chord Symbols Options** dialog.

RELATED LINKS
Chord symbol appearance presets on page 783
Inputting chord symbols on page 303
Bracketed noteheads on page 953
Showing single brackets on figured bass on page 861

Parenthesizing chord symbols

You can show individual chord symbols in parentheses; for example, to indicate optional chords. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

NOTE

You cannot show parentheses on custom chord symbols; that is, chord symbols whose appearance you have overridden.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

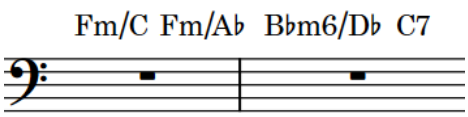
1. Select the chord symbols you want to parenthesize. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Parenthesized** in the **Chord Symbols** group.

RESULT

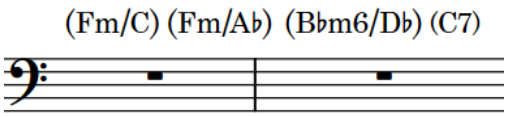
Parentheses are shown around each selected chord symbol. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

Deactivating **Parenthesized** removes parentheses from the selected chord symbols.

EXAMPLE



Chord symbols without parentheses



Chord symbols with parentheses

Showing single parentheses on chord symbols

You can show only a single left or right parenthesis on individual parenthesized chord symbols; for example, to indicate that all chord symbols between two parenthesized chord symbols are optional. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

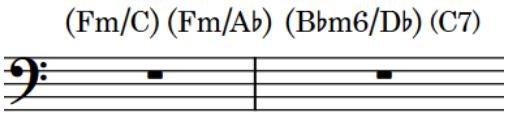
PROCEDURE

1. Select the parenthesized chord symbols on which you want to show a single parenthesis. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Parenthesis to show** in the **Chord Symbols** group.
3. Choose one of the following options:
   - **Start**
   - **End**

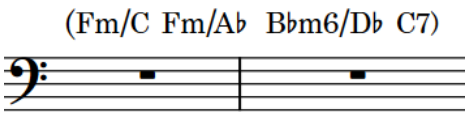
RESULT

Parentheses are hidden on the corresponding side of the selected chord symbols, leaving a single parenthesis on the other side. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

EXAMPLE



Parentheses around all chord symbols



Parentheses at the start of the first chord and end of the last chord

RELATED LINKS

Showing brackets around one/all noteheads in tie chains on page 956
Large selections on page 403
Properties panel on page 615
Changing the property scope on page 617
Copying property settings to other layouts/frame chains on page 599

Changing the style of chord symbol parentheses

You can change the parenthesis style for individual chord symbols. For example, you might show stacked chord symbols with slender/tall parentheses due to their height.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

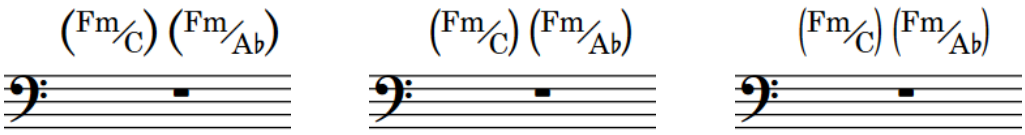
PROCEDURE

1. Select the parenthesized chord symbols whose parenthesis style you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Parenthesis style** in the **Chord Symbols** group.
3. Select one of the following options from the menu:
   - **Thick**
   - **Slender**
   - **Slender/tall**

RESULT

The parenthesis style of the selected parenthesized chord symbols is changed.

EXAMPLE



Thick **Slender** **Slender/tall**

Changing the size of chord symbol parentheses

You can change the size of chord symbol parentheses without changing the size of the chord symbols to which they apply; for example, to ensure that parentheses appear the same size on adjacent chord symbols with different heights. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the parenthesized chord symbols whose parenthesis size you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Parenthesis scale %** in the **Chord Symbols** group.
3. Change the value in the value field.

   The scale size is expressed as a percentage of the parenthesis glyph rather than the chord symbol, allowing you to create a consistent parenthesis size regardless of the chord symbol height.

RESULT

The size of parentheses around the selected chord symbols is changed.

TIP

You can change the default height of all chord symbol parentheses project-wide in the **Parentheses** section of the **Chord Symbols Options** dialog.

RELATED LINKS
Chord symbol appearance presets on page 783
Large selections on page 403

Moving chord symbol parentheses graphically

You can move individual chord symbol parentheses graphically to the right or left. For example, to increase the space between particular chord symbols and their parentheses. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the parenthesized chord symbols whose parentheses you want to move.
2. In the Properties panel, activate the following properties, individually or together, in the **Chord Symbols** group:
   - **Open parenthesis offset**
   - **Closed parenthesis offset**
3. Move the corresponding parentheses in one of the following ways:
   - To move them to the right, increase the value in the value field.
   - To move them to the left, decrease the value in the value field.

RESULT

The corresponding parentheses for the selected parenthesized chord symbols are moved graphically. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

TIP

You can change the default gap between all chord symbols and parentheses project-wide in the **Parentheses** section of the **Chord Symbols Options** dialog.

Chord symbols imported from MusicXML

Chord symbols are imported from MusicXML files. However, chords that specify Neapolitan, Italian, French, German, Pedal, Tristan, and Other values for the kind of element are ignored

during import, as there is no information to specify what notes these chord symbols are meant to describe.

RELATED LINKS
Generating chord symbols from notes on page 311

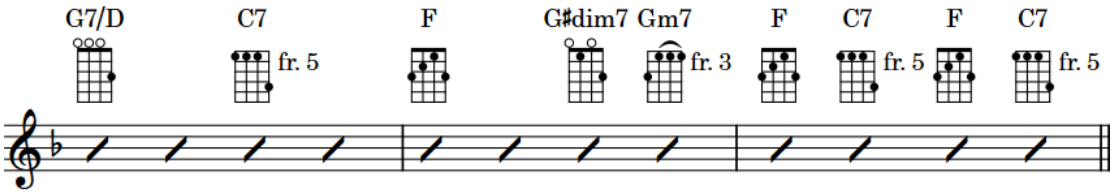
Chord diagrams

Chord diagrams represent the pattern of strings and frets on fretted instruments and use dots to indicate the stopped finger positions required to produce the corresponding chord. This demonstrates the specific shape of chords in a compact way and is useful if a particular voicing is required.

In Dorico Elements, chord diagrams are part of chord symbols, meaning you can show them below chord symbols wherever they are shown. For players set to show chord diagrams, you can show only the chord symbol or chord diagram for individual chord symbols.

You can show chord diagram shapes for any fretted instrument, including different tunings and string arrangements, such as guitar DADGAD tuning. This can be different to the instrument above which they appear; for example, if you want to show chord diagram shapes for standard guitar tuning above the bass staff.

You can also show chord diagrams for all chord symbols used in a flow in a grid at the start of the flow, as is common in lead sheets for pop and rock music. You can show used chord diagrams grids independently of showing them alongside chord symbols in the music.



A sequence of chord symbols with chord diagrams for banjo

The positions of stopped frets relative to each other are known as “shapes” in Dorico Elements. Any playable shape can be re-used for other chords whose pitches match the shape, including any new chord diagram shapes you have created. This includes shapes being available for other instruments, other tunings, and other positions along the fretboard, so long as any open strings included in the shape can be played with a barré at other fret positions.

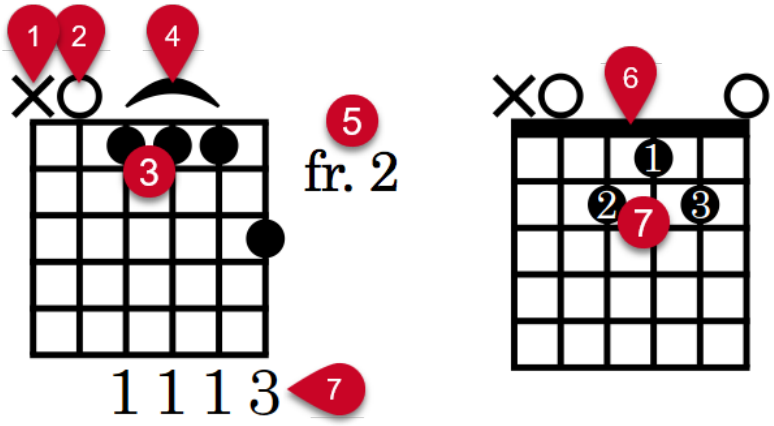
A single chord can appear with different chord diagram shapes for different instruments and tunings, as their open string pitches and the number of strings they have varies.

RELATED LINKS

Chord symbols on page 782
Hiding/Showing chord diagrams on page 806
Showing only chord symbols or chord diagrams on page 808
Hiding/Showing used chord diagrams grids on page 809
Hiding/Showing fingerings in chord diagrams on page 810
Changing the chord diagram shape on page 812
Creating new chord diagram shapes on page 813
Capos on page 142

Chord diagram components

Chord diagrams use a combination of symbols, dots, and lines to convey the information about strings, fret positions, and finger positions that performers require to play the corresponding chord.



1 **Omitted string**

Indicates a string that must not sound.

2 **Open string**

Indicates a string that must sound but must be left open; that is, not stopped.

3 **Dots**

Indicate the fret positions where strings should be stopped, usually with left-hand fingers.

4 **Barré**

Indicates that multiple strings must be stopped with the same finger, usually pressed flat against the fretboard.

5 **Starting fret number**

Indicates the number of the highest fret in the chord diagram when this is not the first fret.

6 **Nut**

Represents the top of the fretboard, or “nut”, and appears in chord diagrams whose highest fret is the first fret.

7 **Fingerings**

Indicate the finger used to stop the string. Fingerings can be positioned inside dots or at the ends of strings.

Hiding/Showing chord diagrams

You can hide/show chord diagrams for any type of fretted instrument alongside all chord symbols on a per-player basis. You can also change the fretted instrument or tuning for which chord diagrams are shown.

NOTE

You cannot show chord diagrams when chord symbols are hidden entirely. However, you can show only the chord symbol or chord diagram for individual chord symbols.

PREREQUISITE

- You have input the chord symbols for which you want to show chord diagrams.
- Chord symbols are shown above the staves where you want to show chord diagrams.
- If you want to show chord diagrams using a custom fretted instrument tuning, you have imported the tuning or changed the tuning of a fretted instrument in the project accordingly.

PROCEDURE

1. In Setup mode, in the **Players** panel, select a player for whom you want to hide/show chord diagrams.
2. In the action bar, click **Player Settings** ··· and choose one of the following options:
   - To show chord diagrams, choose **Chord Diagrams** > **[Fretted instrument and tuning]**. For example, to show chord diagrams for a guitar in DADGAD tuning, choose **Chord Diagrams** > **DADGAD guitar tuning**.
   - To hide chord diagrams, choose **Chord Diagrams** > **No Chord Diagrams**.

RESULT

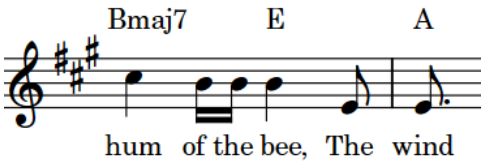
Chord diagrams are shown alongside all chord symbols for the selected player, as appropriate for the selected fretted instrument and tuning. Dorico Elements shows the simplest shape available for each chord; that is, shapes with the most open strings, easy barré positions, or finger positions closest to the nut.

If no chord diagram is available for a chord symbol, an empty chord diagram is shown.

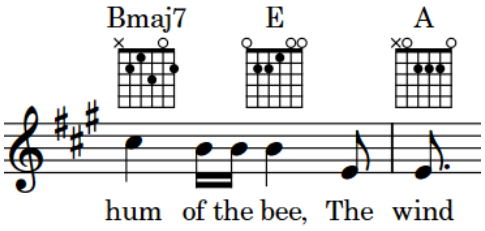
TIP

- You can also hide/show chord diagrams by right-clicking players and choosing these options from the context menu.
- You can edit empty chord diagrams to save a new chord diagram shape.

EXAMPLE



Chord symbols shown but chord diagrams hidden



Chord diagrams shown (standard guitar tuning)

RELATED LINKS

Players panel on page 107
Inputting chord symbols on page 303
Hiding/Showing chord symbols on page 789
Fretted instrument tuning on page 138

Showing only chord symbols or chord diagrams

You can show only the chord symbol or chord diagram for individual chord symbols on staves set to show chord diagrams. For example, if you want to show both the symbol and diagram for the first time each chord appears but only show chord symbols for subsequent instances. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- You have shown chord diagrams for the players on whose staves you want to show only chord symbols or chord diagrams.
- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

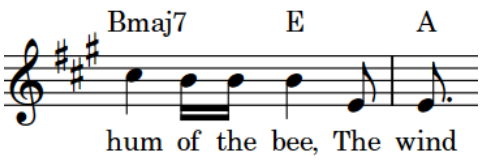
1. Select the chord symbols whose shown symbols/diagrams you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Show only** in the **Chord Symbols** group.
3. Choose one of the following options:
   - **Chord Symbol**
   - **Chord Diagram**

RESULT

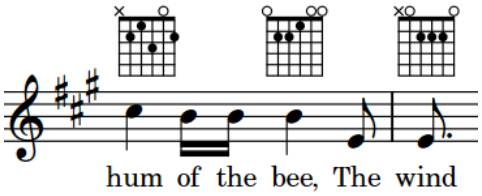
The selected chord symbols show only symbols or diagrams. In systems containing both chord symbols and chord diagrams, chord symbols are aligned further from the staff than chord diagrams.

If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

EXAMPLE



Chord symbols shown



Chord diagrams shown (standard guitar tuning)

RELATED LINKS

Changing the property scope on page 617
Copying property settings to other layouts/frame chains on page 599

Hiding/Showing used chord diagrams grids

You can hide/show grids that contain all chord diagrams used in each flow in each layout independently. By default, used chord diagrams grids display standard guitar tuning chord diagrams but you can change this to show chord diagrams for any fretted instrument or tuning.

Used chord diagrams grids are commonly used in lead sheets for pop and rock music. They are typically shown instead of chord diagrams alongside chord symbols in the music to save vertical space and so they can appear at a larger scale size, making the details of each chord diagram easier to read.

PREREQUISITE

- If you want to show chord diagrams using a custom fretted instrument tuning, you have imported the tuning or changed the tuning of a fretted instrument in the project accordingly.
- We recommend that you have input chord symbols and changed the shape of any chord symbols you want to appear with a specific voicing.

  NOTE

  It is customary not to show chord diagrams alongside chord symbols when showing a used chord diagrams grid, and you cannot change the chord diagram shape when chord diagrams are hidden.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-L** to open **Layout Options**.
2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to hide/show used chord diagrams grids at the start of flows.

   By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar, clicking and dragging across multiple layouts, **Shift**-clicking adjacent layouts, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking individual layouts.
3. In the category list, click **Chord Symbols and Diagrams**.
4. In the **Chord Diagrams** section, activate/deactivate **Show chord diagrams used at start of flow**.
5. Optional: Change the settings for used chord diagrams grids as required.

   For example, you can change the fretted instrument tuning for chord diagrams in the grid, their scale size, and the distance between chord diagrams and/or rows of chord diagrams.
6. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

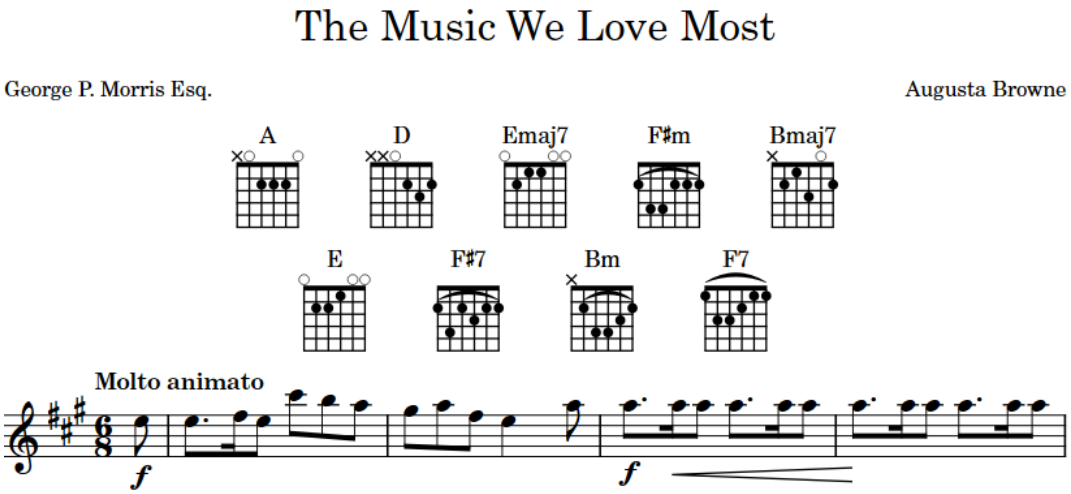
Chord diagrams for all chord symbols used in the flow are shown in a grid above the start of each flow in the selected layouts, and are positioned according to the settings for the selected layouts. If flow headings are shown, the used chord diagrams grid appears below them. The order of chord diagrams in the grid is determined by the order in which they first appear in the flow. Each different voicing appears as a separate chord diagram but each voicing appears only once in the grid.

If you input more chord symbols or change the voicing of existing chord diagrams, the used chord diagrams grids update automatically to include them.

NOTE

- Even if no chord symbols exist in a flow, vertical space for the used chord diagrams grid is added at the start of the flow.
- You cannot select or edit individual chord diagrams in used chord diagrams grids.

EXAMPLE



Used chord diagrams grid at the start of a flow

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

You can change the margins of pages, music frames, and/or flow headings if required to accommodate used chord diagrams grids.

RELATED LINKS

Capos on page 142
Defining capos for used chord diagrams grids on page 149
Hiding/Showing systemic barlines on single-staff systems on page 738
Margins on page 570

Hiding/Showing fingerings in chord diagrams

You can hide/show fingerings in chord diagrams shown alongside chord symbols and in used chord diagrams grids independently of each other and in each layout independently. You can choose whether fingerings appear inside dots or at the ends of strings.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-L** to open **Layout Options**.
2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to hide/show fingerings in chord diagrams.

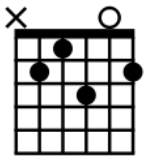
   By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar, clicking and dragging across multiple layouts, **Shift**-clicking adjacent layouts, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking individual layouts.
3. In the category list, click **Chord Symbols and Diagrams**.

4. In the **Chord Diagrams** section, activate/deactivate the following options, individually or together:
   - To hide/show fingerings in chord diagrams shown alongside chord symbols, activate/deactivate **Show fingerings in chord diagrams**.
   - To hide/show fingerings in used chord diagrams grids, activate/deactivate **Show fingerings in chord diagrams at start of flow**.
5. Choose one of the following options for **Fingerings position**:
   - **Inside dot**
   - **At end of string**
6. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

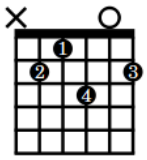
RESULT

Fingerings are shown in the corresponding position in chord diagrams in the selected layouts when the options are activated, and hidden when they are deactivated. This also affects whether fingerings appear in the **Edit Chord Diagram** dialog.

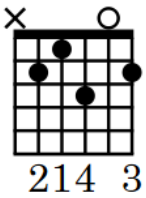
EXAMPLE



Fingerings hidden



Fingerings shown inside dots



Fingerings shown at the ends of strings

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

You can change the fingerings shown in chord diagrams when editing their shape.

RELATED LINKS

Creating new chord diagram shapes on page 813
Edit Chord Diagram dialog on page 814
Fingering on page 871
Hiding/Showing fingering on page 878

Resetting chord diagram fingerings

You can reset changes you have made to fingerings in individual chord diagrams without resetting other changes to the shape.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the chord diagrams whose fingerings you want to reset. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. Choose **Edit** > **Notations** > **Chord Symbols and Diagrams** > **Reset Chord Diagram Finger Numbering**. You can also choose this option from the context menu.

Changing the chord diagram shape

You can change the chord diagram shape shown at individual rhythmic positions; for example, if you require a shape with a different voicing. Many chords have multiple playable shapes.

You can also apply your changes to all other instances of the same chord for instruments with compatible tunings.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the chord diagram whose shape you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.

   NOTE

   You can only change the shape of a single chord diagram at a time.

2. Change the shape in any of the following ways:
   - To cycle through all the available shapes for the selected chord, press **Alt/Opt-Q**.
   - To open the **Choose Chord Diagram** dialog and see all the available shapes for the selected chord at once, press **Shift-Alt/Opt-Q**.
3. Optional: In the **Choose Chord Diagram** dialog, select the shape you want to use.

   TIP

   If the shape you require is not available, you can click **Edit**, which allows you to create a new shape.

4. Click **OK** to save your changes and close the dialog.
5. Optional: To apply the new shape to other instances of the same chord for instruments with compatible tunings, choose **Edit** > **Notations** > **Chord Symbols and Diagrams** > **Copy Shape to Matching Chord Symbols**. You can also choose this option from the context menu.

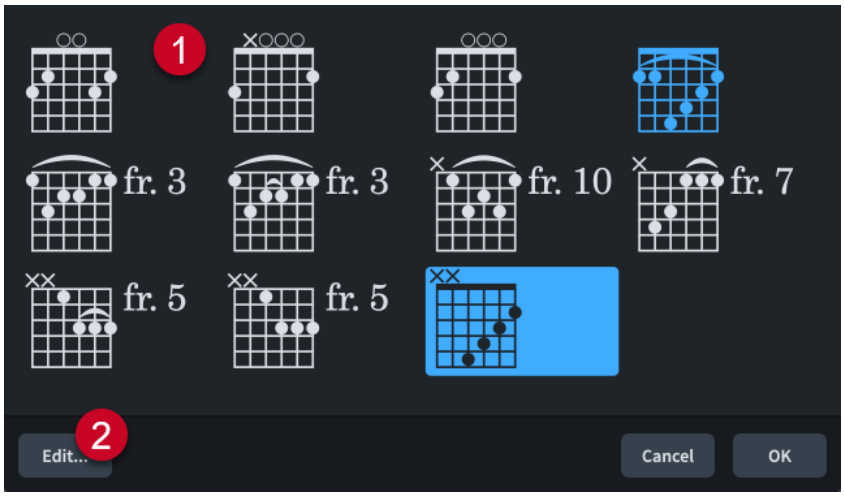
RESULT

The shape shown for the selected chord diagram is changed. This also updates all other chord diagrams using the same fretted instrument tuning at the same rhythmic position.

Choose Chord Diagram dialog

The **Choose Chord Diagram** dialog allows you to view all available chord diagram shapes for the selected chord and select the one you want to use.

- You can open the **Choose Chord Diagram** dialog in Write mode by selecting a chord diagram and pressing **Shift-Alt/Opt-Q**.



The **Choose Chord Diagram** dialog comprises the following:

1 **Available chord diagrams**

Displays all the valid chord diagram shapes for the selected chord and allows you to select a different shape to show at the selected rhythmic position. Shapes you have created yourself appear in a different color.

2 **Edit**

Opens the **Edit Chord Diagram** dialog, which allows you to edit the shape of chord diagrams, including changing the number of frets shown, stopped fret positions, and the starting fret number.

Creating new chord diagram shapes

You can create new chord diagram shapes by editing an existing one; for example, if you want an alternative voicing for a chord or to show a barré. Your changes to existing chord diagram shapes are saved as a new shape, they do not overwrite the existing one.

NOTE

In Dorico Elements, you cannot start new chord diagram shapes from scratch.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the chord diagram whose shape you want to edit.
2. Press **Shift-Alt/Opt-Q** to open the **Choose Chord Diagram** dialog.
3. Click **Edit** to open the **Edit Chord Diagram** dialog.
4. Edit the shape and settings of the chord diagram as required.

   For example, you can change open strings to omitted strings, change the stopped fret position on strings to change the corresponding string pitch, or change the fingering of individual stopped fret positions.
5. Optional: If you want the shape to be available for chords with different start fret positions, activate **Chord may be moved along the neck**.
6. Click **Save**, then **Close**.

RESULT

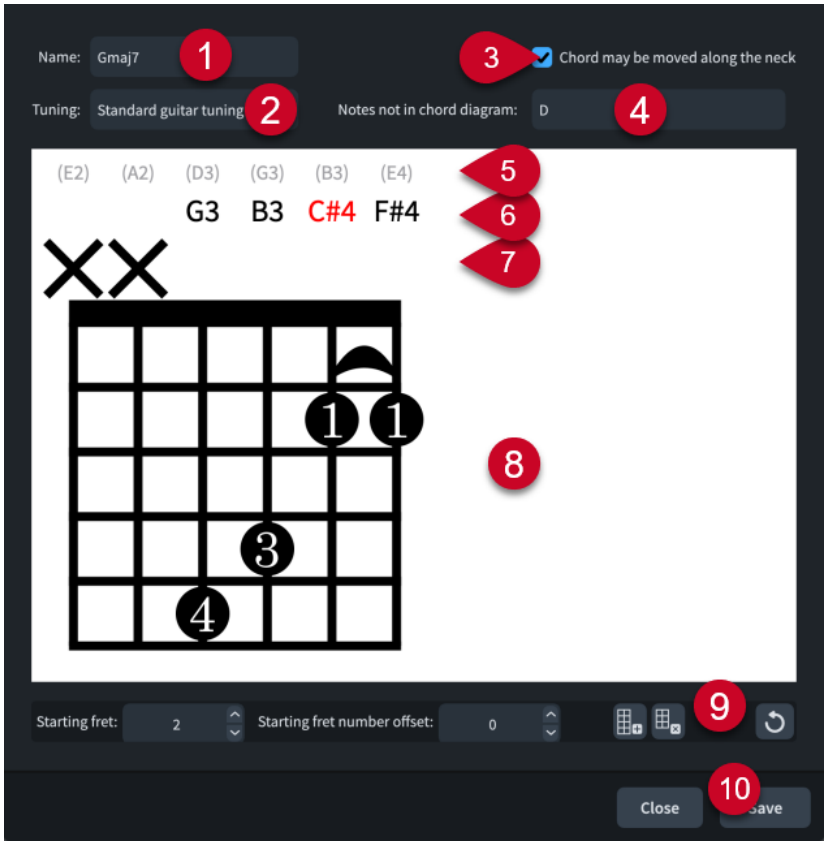
The new shape is saved and is used for the selected chord diagram. The new shape also becomes available for any other chord for which it is valid.

Edit Chord Diagram dialog

The **Edit Chord Diagram** dialog allows you to edit the shape of individual chord diagrams, including changing the number of frets shown, stopped fret positions, and the starting fret number.

You can open the **Edit Chord Diagram** dialog in any of the following ways:

- In Write mode by opening the **Choose Chord Diagram** dialog, selecting the chord diagram whose shape you want to edit, and clicking **Edit**.
- In Engrave mode by double-clicking a chord diagram, or selecting it and pressing **Return**.



The **Edit Chord Diagram** dialog contains the following options and sections:

1 Name

Displays the name of the chord whose chord diagram you are editing in the dialog. You cannot change this name.

2 Tuning

Displays the fretted instrument and tuning for the current chord diagram.

3 Chord may be moved along the neck

Allows you to specify whether or not the shape of the chord diagram can be reused at other fret positions; for example, by playing open strings with a barré at higher fret positions.

4 Notes not in chord diagram

Displays any pitches that are part of the chord but not currently included in the chord diagram.

5 **Open string pitch**

Displays the open pitch of the corresponding string for reference.

6 **Current string pitch**

Displays the current pitch of the corresponding string if it is open or stopped. If the pitch of a string is not part of the chord, the string pitch appears red.

7 **String status**

Displays the current usage status of the corresponding string and allows you to switch the status of individual strings between open and omitted by clicking in this row.

- **O**: Open string
- **X**: Omitted string
- **No symbol**: Stopped string

8 **Chord diagram shape editor**

Displays the current arrangement of stopped frets using dots and allows you to change the chord diagram shape. You can move stopped frets by clicking at the required positions. Each string can only have a single stopped fret position.

If two or more strings are stopped at the same fret, you can hide/show a barré by clicking any of the dots at that fret position.

You can change fingerings by double-clicking them and entering a new number, including **0** to show no fingering or **T** for thumb fingerings on the lowest string.

9 **Action bar**

Contains options that allow you to edit and change the number of frets.

- **Starting fret**: Changes the fret number of the highest fret in the chord diagram.
- **Starting fret number offset**: Changes the offset of the starting fret number. For example, if you want the starting fret label to appear beside the second fret down the chord diagram in order to include a barré.
- **Add fret** : Adds a fret to the bottom of the chord diagram.
- **Remove fret** : Removes a fret from the bottom of the chord diagram.
- **Reset Chord Diagram** : Removes your changes to the chord diagram and resets it to its default shape.

10 **Save**

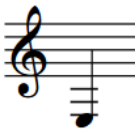
Saves the chord diagram shape and updates the selected chord diagram in the music area. The shape also becomes available as an alternative shape for other compatible chords.

Clefs

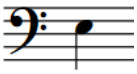
Clefs are the symbol at the start of every system that give the notes on the staff context; that is, the clef tells you which note of the scale applies to each line or space of the staff. To minimize the number of ledger lines required for notes, different clefs are typically used according to the register of instruments.

The common clefs are:

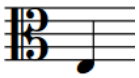
- Treble clef, or G clef, whose spiral shape centers around G, normally the G above middle C.
- The bass clef, or F clef, in which two dots are shown either side of the line corresponding to F, normally the F below middle C.
- The C clef, in which the center of the bracket to the right of the clef's thick vertical line is positioned on the line that corresponds to C, normally middle C. When positioned on the middle line of the staff, the C clef is known as the alto clef. When positioned on the second staff line from the top, the C clef is known as the tenor clef.



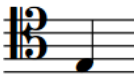
The E below middle C shown in a treble clef



The E below middle C shown in a bass clef



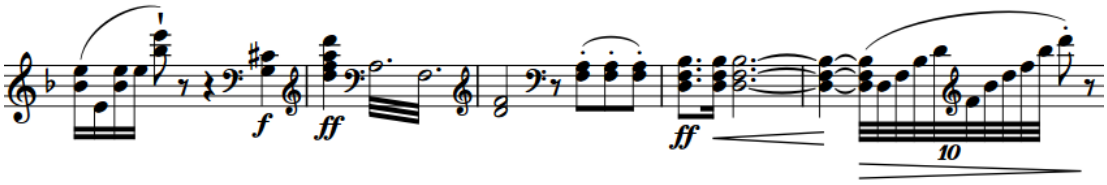
The E below middle C shown in a C (alto) clef



The E below middle C shown in a C (tenor) clef

In Dorico Elements, notes are automatically positioned on staves according to the prevailing clef.

Initial clefs at the start of flows and systems appear full size, while mid-system clef changes are automatically scaled down.



Many instruments in Dorico Elements have different types that show alternative clefs by default. You can select the appropriate instrument type from the instrument picker when adding or changing instruments.

NOTE

- You can only select clefs that you have input. You cannot select initial clefs at the start of flows or clefs shown automatically at the start of each system.
- If you do not want to show any clef in any layout, you must input an invisible clef. You can also hide/show clefs according to the layout transposition and at the start of single-staff systems.
- If clef changes occur at the start of a new system or page, a cautionary clef is shown at the end of the previous system. In Dorico Elements, the clefs shown at the end of one system and at the start of the next system are the same item, not separate items. You cannot hide cautionary clefs.

RELATED LINKS
Input methods for clefs and octave lines on page 314
Clefs with octave indicators on page 820
Instrument picker on page 109
Hiding/Showing clefs according to layout transpositions on page 817
Hiding/Showing clefs at the start of systems on page 818
Cautionary key signatures on page 915
Cautionary time signatures on page 1252

Showing clefs after grace notes

According to convention, clefs are positioned before grace notes so this is the default in Dorico Elements. However, in some circumstances you might want to position clefs between grace notes and normal notes.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the clefs you want to show after grace notes. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. Choose **Edit** > **Notations** > **Clef** > **After Grace Notes**. You can also choose this option from the context menu.

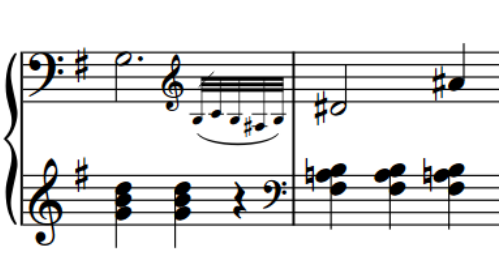
RESULT

The selected clefs are positioned between normal notes and grace notes.

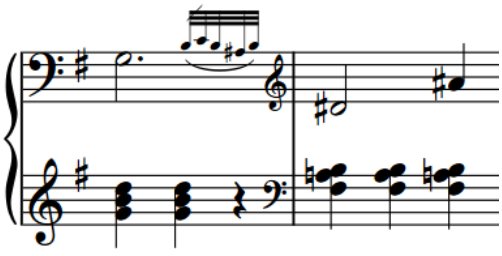
NOTE

You can reset the position of clefs relative to grace notes by selecting the clefs whose position you want to reset and choosing **Edit** > **Notations** > **Clef** > **Reset Clef Position**. You can also choose this option from the context menu.

EXAMPLE



Treble clef before grace notes



Treble clef after grace notes to align with bass clef

Hiding/Showing clefs according to layout transpositions

You can show individual clefs only in layouts that are either concert or transposed pitch. For example, due to their transpositions, some instruments require clef changes in concert pitch

scores to avoid excess ledger lines, but do not require those clef changes in their transposed pitch parts.

By default, all clefs appear in all layouts.

TIP

Many instruments in Dorico Elements show different clefs in full score/custom score and part layouts by default. You can select the appropriate instrument type from the instrument picker when adding or changing instruments.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the clefs or signposts of clefs you want to hide/show according to the layout transposition. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Show for transposition** in the **Clefs** group.
3. Choose one of the following options:
   - **Concert Pitch**
   - **Transposing Pitch**

RESULT

The selected clefs only appear in layouts with the corresponding transposition. In layouts where clefs are hidden, they are indicated by signposts.

Hidden clefs have no effect on note and staff spacing.

RELATED LINKS

Concert vs. transposed pitch on page 170
Making layouts transposing/concert pitch on page 169
Signposts on page 426
Input methods for clefs and octave lines on page 314
Instrument picker on page 109

Hiding/Showing clefs at the start of systems

By default, clefs are shown at the start of all systems. You can hide/show clefs at the start of single-staff systems from the second system onwards in each flow independently.

Hiding clefs on single-staff systems after the first system is a convention used in hand-copied lead sheets, usually in combination with hiding key signatures and showing systemic barlines.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-N** to open **Notation Options**.
2. In the **Flows** list, select the flows in which you want to hide/show clefs after the first system.

   By default, only the current flow is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other flows by clicking **Select All** in the action bar, clicking and dragging across multiple flows, **Shift**-clicking adjacent flows, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking individual flows.
3. In the category list, click **Clefs**.

4. Choose one of the following options for **Clefs at start of systems following first system**:
   - **Show clefs**
   - **Hide clefs**
5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

Clefs are hidden or shown at the start of single-staff systems from the second system onwards in the selected flows.

NOTE

Clefs are always shown at the start of systems that contain more than one staff.

RELATED LINKS

Hiding/Showing systemic barlines on single-staff systems on page 738
Hiding/Showing key signatures at the start of systems on page 914

Changing the octave of clefs

You can change the octave shift of individual clefs. For example, to accommodate different horn and bass clarinet transposition conventions. You can change the octaves of clefs in concert pitch and transposed pitch layouts independently.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- You have opened a layout with the required transposition in the music area. For example, if you want to change the octave of clefs in concert pitch, you have opened a concert pitch layout.
- If you want to change the octave of initial clefs, you have input clefs at the start of each flow.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the clefs whose octave you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Octave shift** in the **Clefs** group.
3. Change the value in the value field.

RESULT

The octave of the selected clefs is changed in all layouts with the same transposition. For example, **1** shifts clefs up one octave, and **-1** shifts clefs down one octave.

The pitches of notes on the staves of the selected clefs are adjusted automatically. For example, if you shift a clef up one octave, notes after the clef appear an octave lower than they do without the octave shift.

TIP

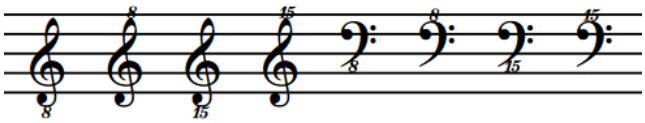
You can specify octave shifts when inputting clefs using the clefs and octave lines popover.

RELATED LINKS
Clefs and octave lines popover on page 314
Concert vs. transposed pitch on page 170
Respecting/Ignoring clef octave indicators on page 820

Clefs with octave indicators

Clefs with octave indicators indicate that notes are played in a different register to the one notated. An octave indicator above the clef indicates that notes are played higher than notated, while an octave indicator below the clef indicates that notes are played lower than notated.

Of these clefs, only the treble clef 8 below is still commonly used for tenor vocal parts.



Traditionally, clef octave indicators were used as a reminder of transposing instruments; however, in more recent music, some composers use clef octave indicators as an alternative to octave lines for extended passages. Therefore, Dorico Elements ignores clef octave indicators by default. However, transposing instruments are always transposed correctly automatically. For example, notes belonging to piccolo instruments are automatically notated an octave lower than their pitch in playback, regardless of whether they have a clef with an octave indicator. You can change whether Dorico Elements respects or ignores clef octave indicators in each flow independently.

RELATED LINKS
Transposing instruments on page 133
Concert vs. transposed pitch on page 170
Octave lines on page 822
Respecting/Ignoring clef octave indicators on page 820
Changing the octave of clefs on page 819
Input methods for clefs and octave lines on page 314

Respecting/Ignoring clef octave indicators

Traditionally, clef octave indicators were used as a reminder of transposing instruments; however, in more recent music, some composers use clef octave indicators as an alternative to octave lines for extended passages. You can change whether Dorico Elements respects or ignores clef octave indicators in each flow independently.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-N** to open **Notation Options**.
2. In the **Flows** list, select the flows in which you want to respect/ignore clef octave indicators.

   By default, only the current flow is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other flows by clicking **Select All** in the action bar, clicking and dragging across multiple flows, **Shift**-clicking adjacent flows, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking individual flows.
3. In the category list, click **Clefs**.
4. Choose one of the following options for **Clefs with octave indicators**:
   - **Ignore octave indicator**
   - **Respect octave indicator**

5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

The handling of clefs with octave indicators is changed in the selected flows. When clef octave indicators are respected, the pitches of notes on staves with clefs with octave indicators are adjusted automatically. For example, notes with treble G clefs, octave above, appear an octave lower than they do when clef octave indicators are ignored.

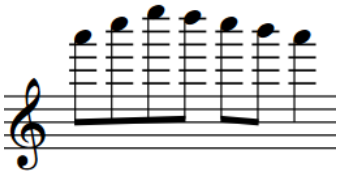
RELATED LINKS

Transposing instruments on page 133
Changing the octave of clefs on page 819
Hiding/Showing clefs according to layout transpositions on page 817

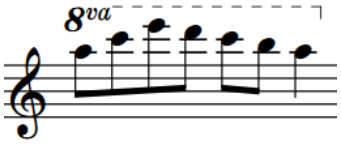
Octave lines

Octave lines indicate where notes are played higher/lower than they appear in the score or part. They are dashed or dotted horizontal lines with an italic numeral at the start. The numeral indicates the number of pitches by which the phrase is changed, such as 8 for one octave and 15 for two octaves.

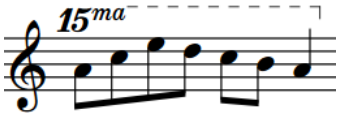
Octave lines that indicate notes are played higher than notated are placed above the staff, while octave lines that indicate notes are played lower than notated are placed below the staff.



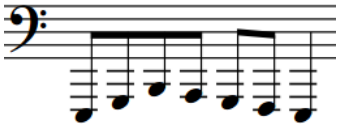
A treble clef phrase notated at pitch



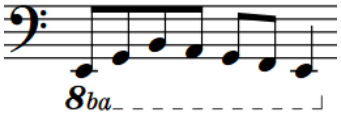
The treble clef phrase with an octave above line



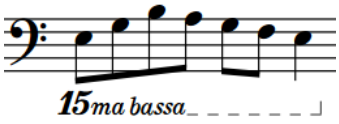
The treble clef phrase with a two octaves above line



A bass clef phrase notated at pitch



The bass clef phrase with an octave below line



The bass clef phrase with a two octaves below line

In Dorico Elements, pitches are adjusted automatically when an octave line is present. You do not have to change the register of the notes within octave lines.

Octave lines should be horizontal, meaning they can take up significant vertical space, as octave lines are usually placed outside all other notations. However, they can be placed within slurs and tuplet brackets if the slur or tuplet bracket is longer than the octave line.

Octave lines can continue across system and page breaks. It is customary to show the numeral again at the start of each system as a reminder. Cautionary octave line numerals are usually parenthesized and the suffix is optional.

RELATED LINKS

Input methods for clefs and octave lines on page 314
Clefs with octave indicators on page 820
Lines on page 1075

Positions of octave lines

By default, octave lines that indicate notes are played higher than written are placed above the staff, while octave lines that indicate notes are played lower than written are placed below the staff.

You can move octave lines to new rhythmic positions in Write mode. They are automatically positioned to avoid collisions.

You can move octave lines graphically in Engrave mode, but this does not change the rhythmic positions to which they apply.

RELATED LINKS
Input methods for clefs and octave lines on page 314
Moving notes/items rhythmically on page 437
Moving items graphically on page 481
Tucking index properties on page 825

Changing the alignment of octave line numerals relative to notes

You can change whether the left edge, center, or right edge of individual octave line numerals is aligned with the first note to which each octave line applies. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the octave lines whose numeral alignment relative to notes you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **L alignment** in the **Octave Lines** group.
3. Select one of the following options from the menu:
   - **Left**
   - **Center**
   - **Right**

RESULT

The alignment of the numerals of the selected octave lines is changed. For example, if you select **Right**, the right edge of the selected octave line numerals is aligned with the first noteheads to which the octave lines apply. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

RELATED LINKS
Changing the property scope on page 617
Copying property settings to other layouts/frame chains on page 599

Changing the position of octave line numerals relative to accidentals

You can change whether the numerals at the start of individual octave lines are positioned on noteheads or accidentals. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the octave lines whose numeral alignment relative to accidentals you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **L position** in the **Octave Lines** group.
3. Choose one of the following options:
   - **Notehead**
   - **Accidental**

RESULT

The alignment of the numerals of the selected octave lines is changed. For example, if you choose **Accidental**, the octave line numerals are aligned with the accidental on the first noteheads to which the octave lines apply. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

Octave lines in Engrave mode

In Engrave mode, each octave line has three square handles. You can use these handles to move the start/end of octave lines graphically, and to lengthen/shorten octave line hooks.

An octave line in Engrave mode

- The start handle moves the start of octave lines graphically. You can move this handle to the right/left. When using the keyboard, you can also move this handle upwards/downwards to move the whole octave line.
- The top end handle moves the end of octave lines graphically. You can move this handle to the right/left.
- The bottom end handle changes the length of the hook. You can move this handle upwards/downwards.

If octave lines cross system and frame breaks, you can move the line segments on each side of the break independently.

RELATED LINKS

Moving items graphically on page 481
Lengthening/Shortening items on page 410

Tucking index properties

The tucking index of notations determines their position relative to other notations in the vertical stacking order when multiple notations exist at the same rhythmic positions.

In most published music, the order in which items appear relative to each other is consistent. Dorico Elements uses established conventions to determine the position and placement of notations automatically. For example, where slurs and tuplet brackets exist at the same positions, Dorico Elements calculates their placement based on their relative lengths. If the slur is longer than the tuplet bracket, the slur is placed outside the tuplet bracket; if the tuplet bracket is longer than the slur, the slur is placed inside the tuplet bracket.

However, rules for the order and placement of articulations, slurs, tuplets, and octave lines frequently vary, based on their lengths and musical context. Therefore, you can override the automatic order and manually change the order in which they appear in specific contexts.

To allow you this flexibility, slurs, octave lines, and tuplets all have **Tucking index** properties in their respective Properties panel groups.

NOTE

- Articulations are considered alongside these notations when calculating the stacking order, but do not have a tucking index property.
- Playing techniques have a separate tucking index that allows you to change the vertical order of playing techniques relative to each other.

A **Tucking index** value of **0** positions items closest to notes. The higher the number, the further away the item is positioned from notes in the stacking order.

Changing the vertical stacking order of octave lines

You can change the placement of individual octave lines relative to other objects in the vertical stack by changing their tucking index value. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

According to general convention, octave lines are placed outside all other objects, but there are some instances where they can go inside other objects; for example, inside a slur if that slur is longer than the octave line.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the octave lines whose placement in the vertical stack you want to change.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Tucking index** in the **Octave Lines** group.
3. Change the value in the value field.

   0 positions items closest to notes. The higher the number, the further the item is positioned from notes in the stacking order.

RESULT

The placement of the selected octave lines in the vertical stacking order is changed. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

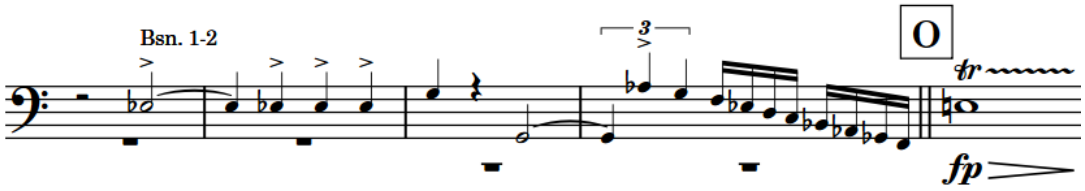
RELATED LINKS

Changing the property scope on page 617
Copying property settings to other layouts/frame chains on page 599
Changing the vertical order of playing techniques on page 1067

Cues

Cues are passages of music shown in instrumental parts that are played by a different player, usually to help orientate players before entries or solos following a significant passage of rests.

Cues can also be used to assist with co-ordination or tuning between players, or to indicate material that the player might be asked to double.



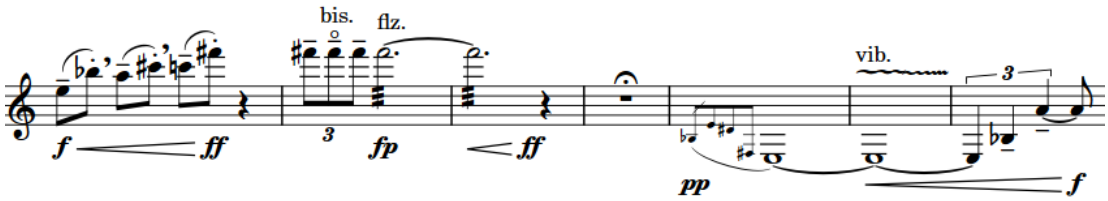
A cue in a timpani part showing music from the bassoons

NOTE

In Dorico Elements, you cannot input or edit cues. However, cues are shown if you import or open a project that contains them.

Dynamics

Dynamics indicate the loudness of the music and can be combined with expressive text to give further clarification about how to perform the music. Dynamics can indicate an immediate change in volume or a gradual change over a specified duration.



A phrase with multiple different dynamics

You can add modifiers to dynamics that can give stylistic direction context alongside the volume level, such as ***f*** *espressivo*, which indicates that a passage is played loudly but also with expressive feeling.

While almost all expressive text is written in italics, dynamics such as ***ff*** and ***pp*** use a bold italic font.

RELATED LINKS
Input methods for dynamics on page 296
Positions of dynamics on page 829
Gradual dynamics on page 842
Messa di voce hairpins on page 849
Niente markings on page 851
Dynamic modifiers on page 839
Voice-specific dynamics on page 838
Groups of dynamics on page 853
Linked dynamics on page 855
Dynamics editor on page 645

Types of dynamics

Dorico Elements categorizes dynamics into different groups according to their function.

Immediate dynamics

Immediate dynamics apply to the note to which they are attached until the next dynamic marking, and indicate an immediate change from any previous dynamic. Immediate dynamics include dynamic symbols, such as ***pp*** or ***f***, and dynamic modifiers, such as *subito* or *molto*.

Gradual dynamics and hairpins

Gradual dynamics indicate a change in volume that happens incrementally over the specified duration. They usually appear either as hairpins or as text instructions, such as *cresc.* or *dim.*.

Gradual dynamics can also have dynamic modifiers that qualify the change in volume, such as *poco*, *molto*, *poco a poco*, and *niente*.

In Dorico Elements, a hairpin can be shown as *messa di voce*, which shows a pair of hairpins. In some cases, this is easier than having separate lines for each half of the pair.

Force/Intensity of attack

These dynamics, such as *fz* and *sffz*, indicate that a note has a stronger attack than is usually expected for the dynamic, similar to an accent articulation.

Combined dynamics

Combined dynamics, such as *fp* or *p–mf*, specify a sudden change of dynamic.

You can create custom combined dynamics in Dorico Elements, and control the intensity of each dynamic in the pair, in the **Combined Dynamics** section of the Dynamics panel. For example, you can make dynamics such as *pppf*, *fff–mp*, and *ffff pppp*.

NOTE

Combined dynamics must include one *f* level and one *p* level.

RELATED LINKS
Gradual dynamics on page 842
Messa di voce hairpins on page 849
Niente markings on page 851
Dynamic modifiers on page 839
Hiding/Showing immediate dynamics on page 836
Changing the appearance/position of subito modifiers on page 840
Changing the appearance of sforzando/rinforzando dynamics on page 837
Hiding/Showing combined dynamic separators on page 837

Positions of dynamics

By default, dynamics are placed below instrumental staves, where they can be read alongside the notes, and above vocal staves. This way, they do not clash with lyrics placed below the staff, and are still close enough to the notes to be read simultaneously.

Immediate dynamics, such as *pp* or *f*, are centered on the notehead to which they apply.
The beginnings of gradual dynamics are centered on the notehead from which they begin, or immediately after an immediate dynamic at the same position. The ends of gradual dynamics are centered on the notehead at which they end, or immediately before an immediate dynamic at the same position.

The staff-relative placement of dynamics varies, depending on their function and the type of player. For example, dynamics are placed below instrumental staves and above vocal staves by default. This ensures dynamics are kept as close to the staff as possible for legibility but are not placed between noteheads and lyrics on vocal staves. For grand staff instruments, such as piano or harp, dynamics are usually placed between the two staves, but can be placed both above and below when each staff requires separate dynamics.

In general, dynamics are not placed within the staff, as hairpins in particular become very hard to read. They are also not usually placed within tuplet brackets. Dynamics are placed outside of notations such as slurs, which must be kept close to noteheads, but inside pedal lines, which can be placed further from noteheads and still be clearly understood.

You can move dynamics to different rhythmic positions in Write mode. They are automatically positioned to avoid collisions.

NOTE

When using the mouse, you can only move and lengthen/shorten dynamics to noteheads. When using the keyboard, you can move and lengthen/shorten dynamics according to the current rhythmic grid resolution.

You can move dynamics graphically in Engrave mode; however, this does not change the rhythmic positions to which they are attached.

RELATED LINKS
General placement conventions for hairpins relative to barlines on page 832
Changing the alignment of dynamics relative to noteheads on page 831
Moving the center of messa di voce hairpins on page 849
Changing the staff-relative placement of items on page 414
Moving notes/items rhythmically on page 437
Lengthening/Shortening items on page 410
Moving items graphically on page 481
Gradual dynamics in Engrave mode on page 843
Gradual dynamics on page 842
Messa di voce hairpins on page 849
Niente markings on page 851

Changing the horizontal beat-relative position of dynamics

You can position individual dynamics before or after the beat. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

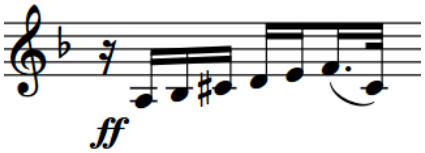
PROCEDURE

1. Select the dynamics whose position relative to the beat you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Beat-relative position** in the **Dynamics** group.
3. Choose one of the following options:
   - **Before**
   - **After**

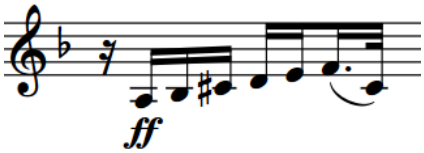
RESULT

The beat-relative position of the selected dynamics is changed. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

EXAMPLE



A dynamic positioned before the beat



A dynamic positioned after the beat

RELATED LINKS

Erasing the background of dynamics on page 834
Changing the property scope on page 617
Copying property settings to other layouts/frame chains on page 599

Changing the alignment of dynamics relative to noteheads

Immediate dynamics, such as ***ff*** and ***mp***, are usually horizontally aligned with the optical center of noteheads. However, you can change the horizontal alignment of immediate dynamics individually. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the dynamics whose alignment relative to noteheads you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Text alignment** in the **Dynamics** group.
3. Choose one of the following options:
   - **Align optical center with notehead**
   - **Left-align with notehead**
   - **Align optical center with left of notehead**

RESULT

The alignment of the selected immediate dynamics is changed. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

Aligning dynamics

You can graphically align individually selected dynamics in a row without grouping/ungrouping them; for example, if system breaks in part layouts are different to the full score layout and so require parts of different groups of dynamics to be aligned. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the dynamics you want to align.
2. Choose **Edit** > **Notations** > **Dynamics** > **Align Dynamics**. You can also choose this option from the context menu.

RESULT

The selected dynamics are aligned in a row with the dynamic within the selection that was furthest from the staff. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

RELATED LINKS

Groups of dynamics on page 853

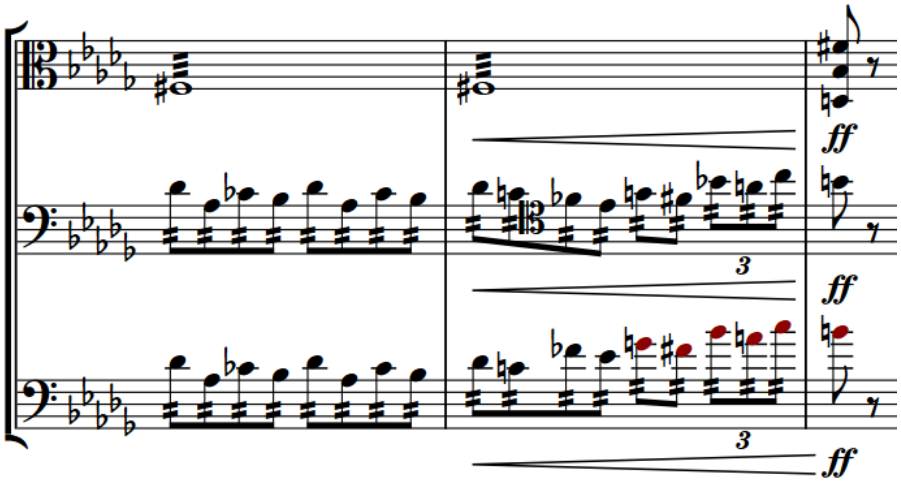
General placement conventions for hairpins relative to barlines

In Dorico Elements, the ends of hairpins align with the left edge of the note to their right. This can include hairpins extending across barlines.

Hairpins that end on the first note of a bar extend across the preceding barline in the following cases:

- If there is no immediate dynamic on the first note in the next bar.
- If there is a time signature or key signature change at the barline that increases the gap between the end of the current bar and the first note in the new bar.

Dorico Elements avoids hairpins overlapping barlines by a small amount, as this is less visually clear. However, this means that the same dynamic phrase on different staves can appear differently if one of the staves does not have a barline join extending below it.



The hairpin ends are not aligned because the barline does not extend beyond the bottom staff

You can allow/disallow hairpins across barlines if the hairpin ends on the first note in the next bar. Disallowing hairpins across barlines ensures hairpins appear the same length on all staves.

Allowing/Disallowing hairpins across barlines

You can allow/disallow hairpins across barlines when they end on the first note in the next bar; for example, so all hairpins appear the same length across multiple staves that do not all have

barline joins. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the hairpins you want to allow/disallow across barlines. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Barline interaction** in the **Dynamics** group.
3. Choose one of the following options:
   - **Stop before**
   - **Continue**

RESULT

The selected hairpins are allowed across barlines when you choose **Continue**, and disallowed when you choose **Stop before**. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

RELATED LINKS

Changing the property scope on page 617
Copying property settings to other layouts/frame chains on page 599

Parenthesizing dynamics

You can show individual dynamics in parentheses; for example, to indicate editorial dynamics that were not in the original manuscript. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the dynamics you want to parenthesize. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Parenthesized** in the **Dynamics** group.

RESULT

Parentheses are shown around each selected dynamic. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

Deactivating **Parenthesized** removes parentheses from the selected dynamics.

Erasing the background of dynamics

You can erase the background of individual dynamics; for example, to ensure dynamics remain legible when crossing barlines. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the dynamics whose backgrounds you want to erase.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Erase background** in the **Dynamics** group.

RESULT

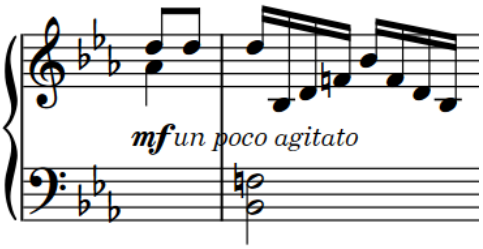
The backgrounds of the selected dynamics are erased. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

Deactivating **Erase background** returns the selected dynamics to the default non-erased background.

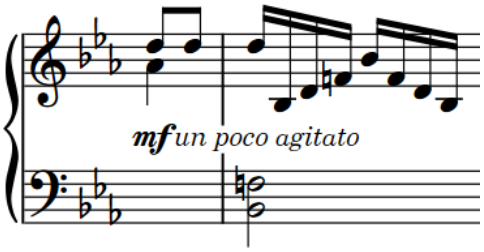
NOTE

This does not affect hairpins, including stems crossed by hairpins.

EXAMPLE



Dynamic with non-erased background



Dynamic with erased background

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

You can change the padding between dynamics and each edge of their erased areas.

RELATED LINKS

Positions of dynamics on page 829
Changing the property scope on page 617
Copying property settings to other layouts/frame chains on page 599
Dynamic modifiers on page 839

Changing the erasure padding of dynamics

You can change the erasure padding of individual dynamics, including changing the padding between dynamics and each edge of their erased areas independently. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

Erasure padding considers the prefix/suffix separately from immediate dynamics and also takes into account ascenders/descenders in the text. This can cause the erasure padding to appear larger below the dynamic than above, such as for “espressivo” due to the “p”. In such cases, you can change the padding on the affected edge to make the padding appear symmetrical.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the dynamics whose erasure padding you want to change.
2. In the Properties panel, activate the **Erasure padding** properties, individually or together, in the **Dynamics** group.
   - **L** changes the padding between dynamics and their left edge.
   - **R** changes the padding between dynamics and their right edge.
   - **T** changes the padding between dynamics and their top edge.
   - **B** changes the padding between dynamics and their bottom edge.
3. Change the values in the value fields.

RESULT

Increasing the values increases the padding, decreasing the values decreases the padding. This also affects the area considered for collision avoidance. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

Changing dynamic levels

You can change the levels of dynamics without reopening the dynamics popover and for multiple different dynamics simultaneously; for example, if you want to increase the dynamic level of all dynamics in a phrase.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the dynamics whose dynamic level you want to change.
2. Change the dynamic level in one of the following ways:
   - To increase the dynamic level, choose **Edit** > **Notations** > **Dynamics** > **Increase Dynamic Intensity**.
   - To decrease the dynamic level, choose **Edit** > **Notations** > **Dynamics** > **Decrease Dynamic Intensity**.

   TIP

   You can also choose these options from the context menu.

RESULT

The dynamic level of the selected dynamics is increased/decreased. For example, increasing the dynamic level of a *mf* dynamic changes it to *f*.

TIP

You can assign key commands for these options on the **Key Commands** page in **Preferences**.

RELATED LINKS

Input methods for dynamics on page 296
Dynamics editor on page 645
Changing existing items on page 412
Dynamic modifiers on page 839
Key Commands page in the Preferences dialog on page 59

Hiding/Showing immediate dynamics

You can hide/show individual immediate dynamics such as *f* and *pp*; for example, if you only want to show the dynamic modifier, such as “sim.”, without its accompanying immediate dynamic. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the immediate dynamics you want to hide, or the signposts of immediate dynamics you want to show. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate/deactivate **Hide intensity marking** in the **Dynamics** group.

RESULT

The selected immediate dynamics are hidden when **Hide intensity marking** is activated, and shown when it is deactivated. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

If no other dynamic exists at their rhythmic position, they are indicated by signposts. However, signposts are not printed by default.

RELATED LINKS

Dynamic modifiers on page 839
Changing the property scope on page 617
Copying property settings to other layouts/frame chains on page 599
Signposts on page 426
Annotations on page 554
Input methods for dynamics on page 296

Hiding/Showing combined dynamic separators

You can hide/show different separators in combined dynamics individually. For example, if you want to separate some ***fp*** dynamics with slashes. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

By default, only combined dynamics with at least one *mezzo* dynamic in the pair, such as ***mf-p***, show a separator.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the combined dynamics whose separator you want to hide/show. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Separator shown** in the **Dynamics** group.
3. Activate/Deactivate the corresponding checkbox.
4. Optional: If you showed separators, activate **Separator** and select one of the following options from the menu:
   - **Hyphen**
   - **Colon**
   - **Space**
   - **Slash**

RESULT

Separators are shown when the **Separator shown** checkbox is activated, and hidden when it is deactivated. The separator shown follows your selection for **Separator**. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

RELATED LINKS

Types of dynamics on page 828
Changing the appearance/position of subito modifiers on page 840

Changing the appearance of sforzando/rinforzando dynamics

You can change the appearance of individual ***rfz*** and ***sfz*** dynamics. For example, if you want some ***sfz*** dynamics to appear as ***sf***. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

NOTE

These steps do not apply to force/intensity of attack dynamics with other intensities, such as ***sffz***.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.

- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the *rfz* and/or *sfz* dynamics whose appearance you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **rfz/sfz style** in the **Dynamics** group.
3. Choose one of the following options:
   - *sf rf*
   - *sfzrfz*

RESULT

The appearance of the selected *rfz* and/or *sfz* dynamics is changed. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

RELATED LINKS

Types of dynamics on page 828
Changing the appearance/position of subito modifiers on page 840

Voice-specific dynamics

Voice-specific dynamics only apply to a single voice on a staff, which allows you to specify different dynamics for each voice in multiple-voice contexts or for the separate staves of grand staff instruments. By default, dynamics apply to all voices on all staves belonging to a single instrument, including grand staff instruments.

Inputting voice-specific dynamics allows you to show different dynamics for multiple voices on a staff, or to highlight an inner melody voice in a piano part. Voice-specific dynamics change the dynamics of each voice in playback independently.

NOTE

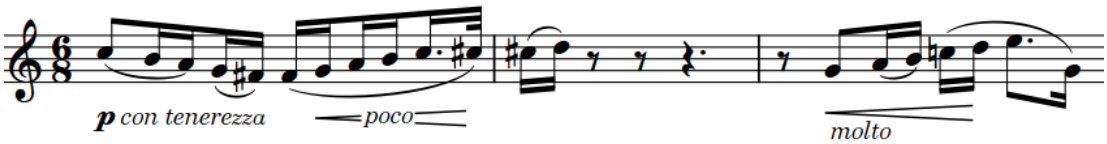
- You can only input voice-specific dynamics when the caret is active, such as during note input. Voice-specific dynamics apply to the voice indicated by the quarter note symbol beside the caret.
- Voice-specific dynamics only affect playback automatically for sounds that use velocity to control dynamics. When using playback devices that control dynamics in other ways, such as with CC, you must enable independent voice playback to hear different dynamics in different voices for the same instrument.

RELATED LINKS

Input methods for dynamics on page 296
Caret on page 205
Enabling independent voice playback on page 506
Dynamics editor on page 645
Extra staves on page 1193

Dynamic modifiers

Modifiers add further detail to dynamics than simply their volume level, and can help guide how a player performs a note or phrase. Modifiers include *poco a poco*, *molto* and *subito*. They are also known as “expressive text”.



Modifiers accompanying immediate and gradual dynamics

In Dorico Elements, modifiers must accompany either a dynamic level, such as ***p*** or ***f***, or a gradual dynamic.

You can input dynamic modifiers by entering them into the dynamics popover alongside an immediate dynamic or by clicking available options in the Dynamics panel. You can also add dynamic modifiers to existing dynamics.

You can add modifiers both before and after immediate dynamics. Modifiers can also appear either inside hairpins or above/below the start of hairpins.

TIP

You can hide immediate dynamics if you only want to show the modifier.

RELATED LINKS
Input methods for dynamics on page 296
Hiding/Showing immediate dynamics on page 836
Adding poco a poco text to gradual dynamics on page 847
Changing the appearance/position of subito modifiers on page 840
Showing modifiers centered inside hairpins on page 841
Changing the appearance of sforzando/rinforzando dynamics on page 837
Showing consecutive hairpins as continuous on page 845

Adding modifiers to existing dynamics

You can add modifiers both before and after dynamics after they have been input; for example, if you want to add “sim.” instead of repeating dynamics across multiple phrases.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the dynamics to which you want to add modifiers. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate the following properties, individually or together, in the **Dynamics** group:
   - To add modifiers before dynamics, activate **Prefix**.
   - To add modifiers after dynamics, activate **Suffix**.
3. Enter the text you want to add into the corresponding value field.

4. Press **Return**.

RESULT

The text you entered is added to the selected dynamics as a modifier. Text entered into the **Prefix** field appears before immediate dynamics, while text entered into the **Suffix** field appears after immediate dynamics.

Modifiers appear below hairpins placed below the staff and above hairpins placed above the staff, and are aligned with the start of the hairpin.

Deactivating the properties removes the corresponding modifiers from the selected dynamics.

NOTE

Deactivating properties permanently deletes any custom text entered.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

If you added modifiers to hairpins, you can show them centered inside the hairpins.

RELATED LINKS

Niente markings on page 851
Input methods for dynamics on page 296
Showing modifiers centered inside hairpins on page 841
Adding poco a poco text to gradual dynamics on page 847

Changing the appearance/position of subito modifiers

You can change the appearance and/or position of individual *subito* modifiers. For example, if you want to show *subito* modifiers as *sub.* on the left of dynamics, or *fp sub.* dynamics as *sfp*. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the dynamics whose *subito* modifier appearance and/or position you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Subito style** in the **Dynamics** group and choose one of the following options:
   - ***subito***
   - ***sub.***
3. Optional: If you selected dynamics that include at least one *f*, activate **Subito forte style** and choose one of the following options:
   - ***sub. f***
   - ***sf***
4. Activate **Subito position** and choose one of the following options:
   - **Left**

- **Right**

RESULT

The appearance and/or position of the selected *subito* modifiers is changed. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

RELATED LINKS

Changing the appearance of sforzando/rinforzando dynamics on page 837
Changing the property scope on page 617
Copying property settings to other layouts/frame chains on page 599

Showing modifiers centered inside hairpins

You can show modifiers you have added to hairpins, such as *poco a poco* or *molto*, centered both horizontally and vertically inside hairpins. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains. By default, modifiers appear at the start of and either above or below hairpins.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

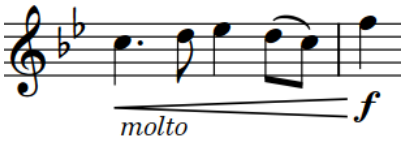
PROCEDURE

1. Select the hairpins whose modifiers you want to show centered inside hairpins. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Modifier position** in the **Dynamics** group.
3. Choose one of the following options:
   - **Above or Below**
   - **Inside**

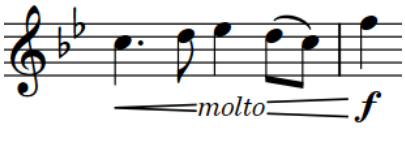
RESULT

Modifiers on the selected hairpins appear centered inside the hairpins. They automatically erase their background so the text does not collide with the hairpin lines. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

EXAMPLE



Modifier (molto) below a hairpin



Modifier (molto) centered inside hairpin

RELATED LINKS

Adding modifiers to existing dynamics on page 839
Changing the erasure padding of dynamics on page 835

Showing consecutive hairpins as continuous on page 845
Changing the property scope on page 617
Copying property settings to other layouts/frame chains on page 599

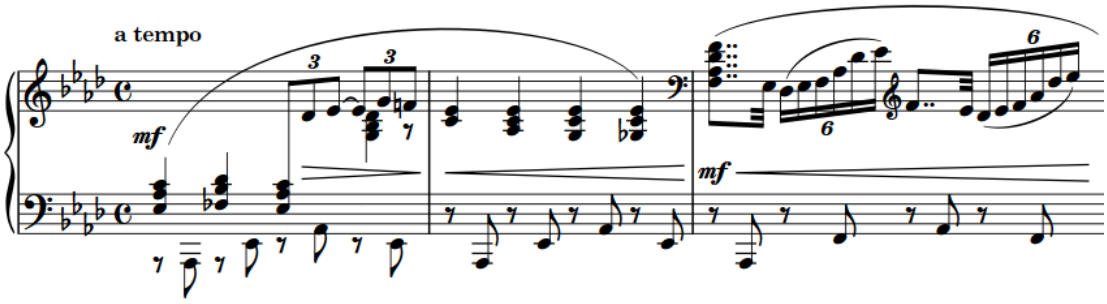
Gradual dynamics

Gradual dynamics indicate a change in volume that happens incrementally over the specified duration. They usually appear either as hairpins or as text instructions, such as *cresc.* or *dim.*.

The change in volume indicated by individual hairpins is shown in the distance between the two diverging lines at their apertures.

Hairpins typically have a closed end and an open end. If the hairpin crosses a system or frame break, the closed end appears with a small gap so that the hairpin is not misread as two separate hairpins.

A pair of hairpins without an immediate dynamic in the middle is known as a *messa di voce*.



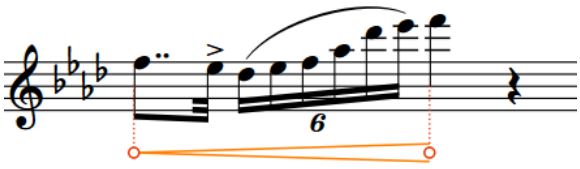
A phrase containing multiple gradual dynamics

In Dorico Elements, gradual dynamics appear as hairpins by default. You can change the appearance of individual gradual dynamics. For example, if you want to show a particularly long crescendo using *cresc.* text rather than a hairpin.

You can show gradual dynamic text in the following ways:

- *cresc.* or *dim.*: Abbreviated text with no continuation line
- *cresc...* or *dim...*: Abbreviated text with a dotted continuation line
- *cre-scen-do* or *di-mi-nuen-do*: The full word spread out across the duration of the gradual dynamic

In Write mode, ungrouped gradual dynamics each have start and end handles that show their duration.



NOTE

Pairs of separate hairpins are treated differently than *messa di voce* hairpins. For example, separate hairpins each have start and end handles in Write mode, whereas *messa di voce* hairpins share a single center handle.

RELATED LINKS
Input methods for dynamics on page 296
Types of dynamics on page 828
Messa di voce hairpins on page 849
Niente markings on page 851
Groups of dynamics on page 853
Gradual dynamics in Engrave mode on page 843
Changing the appearance of gradual dynamics on page 844
Moving items graphically on page 481
General placement conventions for hairpins relative to barlines on page 832
Showing consecutive hairpins as continuous on page 845
Moving the center of messa di voce hairpins on page 849
Moving notes/items rhythmically on page 437
Lengthening/Shortening items on page 410

Gradual dynamics in Engrave mode

In Engrave mode, each hairpin has multiple handles that you can move to adjust their graphical position, length, angle, and aperture.

- The middle handles at the start/end of hairpins change their start/end offset positions. Moving one middle handle changes the angle of the hairpin.
- The pair of outer handles at the start/end of hairpins, and in the center of *messa di voce* hairpins, adjusts the corresponding aperture. These handles are linked and mirror each other: moving one handle also moves the other handle by the same amount, but in the opposite direction. This ensures that hairpins remain symmetrical.

A hairpin with the start middle handle selected in Engrave mode

A *messa di voce* hairpin with a center aperture handle selected in Engrave mode

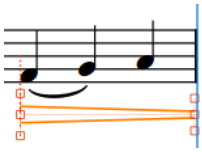
NOTE

- You can also change the aperture of individual hairpins by activating **Hairpin open aperture** and/or **Hairpin closed aperture** in the **Dynamics** group of the Properties panel.

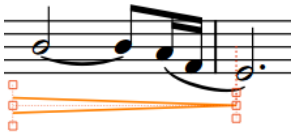
  Increasing the value makes the corresponding aperture wider. Decreasing the value makes the corresponding aperture narrower.
- Pairs of separate hairpins are treated differently than *messa di voce* hairpins. For example, separate hairpins each have start and end handles in Write mode, whereas *messa di voce* hairpins share a single center handle.

  You can move separate hairpins independently; for example, if you want to adjust the graphical peak of a pair of hairpins. You cannot move the graphical peak of *messa di voce* hairpins.

EXAMPLE



A diminuendo that goes across a system break: aperture at the start is open, aperture at the end is closed. It appears slightly open to indicate the diminuendo continues after the system break.



The diminuendo continues onto a new system: aperture at the start is open, aperture at the end is closed.

RELATED LINKS

Input methods for dynamics on page 296
Groups of dynamics on page 853
Niente markings on page 851
Messa di voce hairpins on page 849
Moving items graphically on page 481
Moving notes/items rhythmically on page 437
Lengthening/Shortening items on page 410
Note spacing on page 579

Changing the appearance of gradual dynamics

You can change the appearance of individual gradual dynamics; for example, to show a particularly long crescendo using “cresc.” text rather than a hairpin. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

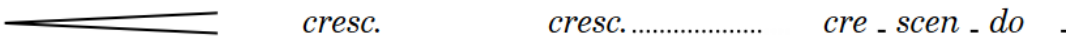
1. Select the gradual dynamics whose appearance you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Gradual style** in the **Dynamics** group.
3. Select one of the following options from the menu:
   - **Hairpin**
   - **cresc./dim.**
   - **cresc...**
   - **cre - scen - do**
4. Optional: Customize the appearance of the selected gradual dynamics in one of the following ways, depending on their **Gradual style**:
   - If you selected **Hairpin**, activate **Hairpin line style** and choose one of the available options.
   - If you selected **cresc./dim.**, **cresc...**, or **cre - scen - do**, activate **Diminuendo style** and select one of the available options from the menu.

- If you selected **cresc...**, activate **Continuation line style** and choose one of the available options.

RESULT

The appearance of the selected gradual dynamics is changed. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

EXAMPLE



Hairpin **cresc./dim.** **cresc....** **cre - scen - do**

RELATED LINKS

Showing modifiers centered inside hairpins on page 841
Turning existing gradual dynamics into messa di voce hairpins on page 850
Adding niente markings to existing gradual dynamics on page 852

Showing consecutive hairpins as continuous

You can show two or more consecutive hairpins of the same direction that are separated by immediate dynamics as a single hairpin that continues through any immediate dynamics; for example, to indicate that you want a single smooth change in dynamic rather than multiple separate ones. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- The hairpins are grouped together.
- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

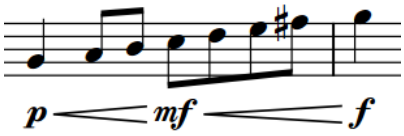
PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select at least one of the hairpins in each group that you want to show as continuous.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Hairpin shown as continuation** in the **Dynamics** group.
3. Activate the corresponding checkbox.

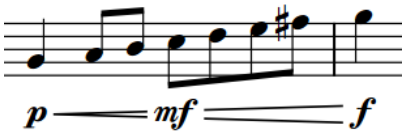
RESULT

Consecutive hairpins of the same direction in the selected groups appear as a single continuous hairpin. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

EXAMPLE



Hairpin not shown as continuation



Hairpin shown as continuation

RELATED LINKS

Grouping dynamics together on page 854
Changing the property scope on page 617
Copying property settings to other layouts/frame chains on page 599

Hiding/Showing flared ends on hairpins

Flared ends are usually shown at the end of crescendo hairpins and indicate a sudden burst in volume at the end of the crescendo. You can hide/show flared ends on any hairpin.

NOTE

You can only show flared ends on hairpins with solid lines.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the hairpins on which you want to hide/show flared ends. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate/deactivate **Flared end** in the **Dynamics** group.

RESULT

A flared end is shown on the selected dynamics when **Flared end** is activated, and hidden when it is deactivated.

EXAMPLE

Crescendo hairpin with flared end hidden

Crescendo hairpin with flared end shown

Changing the size of flared ends on hairpins

You can change the height and width of flared ends on individual hairpins. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the flared hairpins whose flare size you want to change.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Flare size** in the **Dynamics** group.
3. Change the flare size of the selected hairpins in any of the following ways:
   - To change the width of the flared ends, change the value for **W**.
   - To change the height of the flared ends, change the value for **H**.

RESULT

The size of the flared ends on the selected hairpins is changed. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

- Increasing the **W** value makes the selected flared ends wider by starting their angle earlier in the hairpin, decreasing the value makes the selected flared ends narrower.
- Increasing the **H** value makes the selected flared ends taller, decreasing the value makes them shorter.
- Changing the values independently of each other changes the angle of the flared ends. For example, increasing the **W** value without changing the **H** value makes the angle shallower.

RELATED LINKS

Moving items graphically on page 481
Changing the property scope on page 617
Copying property settings to other layouts/frame chains on page 599

Adding poco a poco text to gradual dynamics

You can add *poco a poco* text to individual gradual dynamics after they have been input.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

PROCEDURE

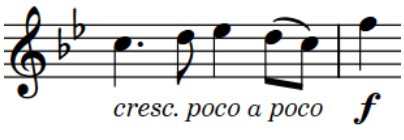
1. Select the gradual dynamics to which you want to add *poco a poco*. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Poco a poco (little by little)** in the **Dynamics** group.

RESULT

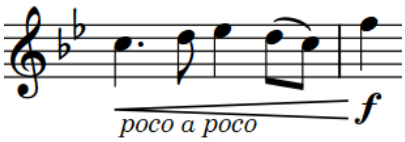
Poco a poco is shown immediately after gradual dynamic text, below hairpins placed below the staff, and above hairpins placed above the staff.

Deactivating **Poco a poco (little by little)** removes *poco a poco* text from the selected gradual dynamics.

EXAMPLE



Text gradual dynamic with poco a poco



Hairpin gradual dynamic with poco a poco

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

You can show *poco a poco* text centered inside hairpins.

RELATED LINKS

Dynamic modifiers on page 839
Showing modifiers centered inside hairpins on page 841

Gradual dynamic spacing

Dorico Elements ensures that hairpins can always be clearly distinguished by giving hairpins a minimum default length. However, this can affect note spacing.

The default minimum hairpin length is three spaces. When hairpins are shorter than this, they can sometimes be confused with the accent articulation mark. Therefore, if you add a hairpin to a note which would make the hairpin less than three spaces long, the spacing of the note is changed to ensure the hairpin meets the minimum length.

RELATED LINKS

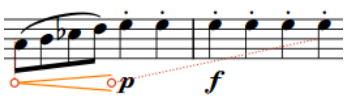
Gradual dynamics in Engrave mode on page 843
Moving the center of messa di voce hairpins on page 849

Gradual dynamics truncated by immediate dynamics

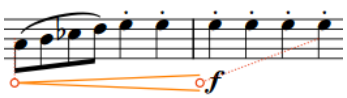
A hairpin is automatically truncated if an immediate dynamic is positioned within its range, either before or after the hairpin is input.

The hairpin remains tied to its originally designated rhythmic positions, even if graphically it appears shorter. This means that if the immediate dynamic that truncated it is ever deleted, the hairpin extends up to its end or the next immediate dynamic within its range.

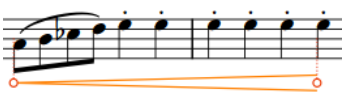
The examples demonstrate a crescendo hairpin that is truncated by two dynamics, but the hairpin extends to its total length as they are deleted. The dotted attachment line shows the link between the hairpin and the rhythmic position to which its end is attached.



A long hairpin truncated by a ***p***



After deleting the ***p***, the hairpin is now truncated by the ***f***

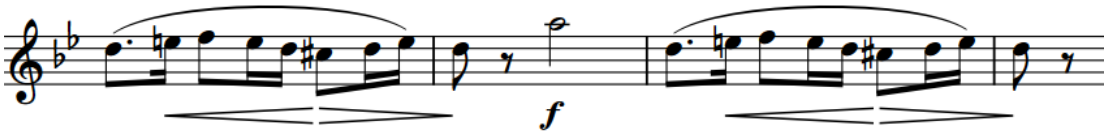


Deleting both immediate dynamics allows the hairpin to extend to its full length

RELATED LINKS
Showing consecutive hairpins as continuous on page 845
Lengthening/Shortening items on page 410

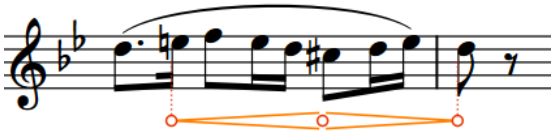
Messa di voce hairpins

Messa di voce hairpins are single gradual dynamic items that appear as a pair of hairpins without an immediate dynamic in the middle. They indicate that within their duration, the volume either increases then decreases, or decreases then increases.



A phrase containing two *messa di voce* hairpins

In Write mode, *messa di voce* hairpins have three handles: one at the start, one at the end, and one in the center. This is different to separate, ungrouped hairpins, which each have a handle at the start and end.



In Engrave mode, *messa di voce* hairpins have center handles that control their center aperture only. You cannot move the graphical peak of *messa di voce* hairpins.

RELATED LINKS
Input methods for dynamics on page 296
Groups of dynamics on page 853
Gradual dynamics in Engrave mode on page 843
Note spacing on page 579

Moving the center of messa di voce hairpins

You can move the center of individual *messa di voce* hairpins rhythmically; for example, if you want them to peak on different notes.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the *messa di voce* hairpins whose center you want to move. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Messa di voce inflection** in the **Dynamics** group.
3. Move the center of the selected *messa di voce* hairpins in any of the following ways:
   - To move them to the right, increase the value in the left value field.
   - To move them to the left, decrease the value in the left value field.

- To move them to the left to grace notes at the rhythmic position set by the left value field, decrease the value in the right value field.

TIP

1 represents a quarter note.

RESULT

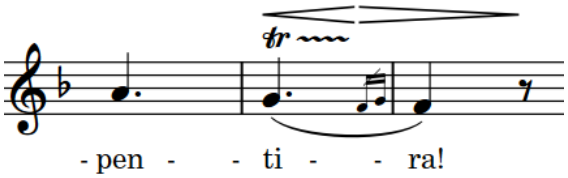
The centers of the selected *messa di voce* hairpins are moved rhythmically.

TIP

In Write mode, you can also click and drag *messa di voce* hairpin center handles to noteheads to the right/left.

EXAMPLE

For example, entering **1 1/2** into the left value field and **-1/2** into the right value field moves *messa di voce* hairpin centers a dotted quarter note to the right of their start position, and to the first of two sixteenth grace notes at that rhythmic position.



RELATED LINKS

Hiding/Showing zones on page 44
Properties panel on page 615
Grace notes on page 897
Showing grace notes before/after barlines on page 900
Moving notes/items rhythmically on page 437
Lengthening/Shortening items on page 410

Turning existing gradual dynamics into messa di voce hairpins

You can turn existing gradual dynamics into *messa di voce* hairpins; for example, if you change your mind about the dynamic phrasing in some bars.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the gradual dynamics that you want to turn into *messa di voce* hairpins. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, choose **Messa di voce** for **Type** in the **Dynamics** group.

RESULT

The selected gradual dynamics are turned into *messa di voce* hairpins. The first direction follows the previous overall direction of the selected gradual dynamics.

TIP

You can also turn existing gradual dynamics into *messa di voce* hairpins by selecting them and clicking the corresponding buttons in the **Gradual Dynamics** section of the Dynamics panel.

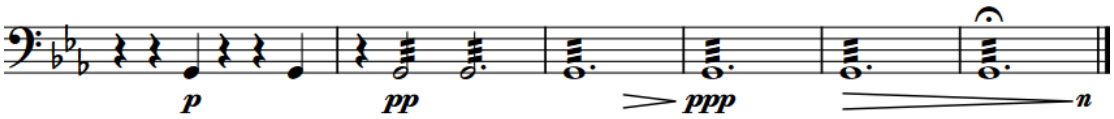
You can also press **Shift-Alt/Opt-,** for a crescendo/diminuendo *messa di voce* hairpin, or **Shift-Alt/Opt-.** for a diminuendo/crescendo *messa di voce* hairpin.

RELATED LINKS
Hiding/Showing zones on page 44
Properties panel on page 615
Dynamics panel on page 298
Inputting dynamics with the popover on page 299
Inputting dynamics with the panel on page 302
Grace notes on page 897

Niente markings

Niente markings at the start/end of gradual dynamics indicate that the dynamic either increases from, or decreases to, silence.

This effect works very well on strings and singers with vowels, but it cannot always be played literally. For example, singers with words beginning with consonants cannot begin from silence, nor can reed and brass instruments, as they have to achieve a certain air pressure before a note sounds.



Niente markings can be shown in the following ways, depending on the gradual dynamic style:

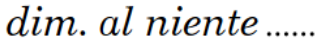
- For hairpins, *niente* markings can be shown as either a circle, or the letter “n”.
- For text gradual dynamics, *niente* markings appear as “dal niente” for crescendos, and as “al niente” for diminuendos.

You can input gradual dynamics with *niente* markings in the same ways as inputting other dynamics. You can also add *niente* markings to existing gradual dynamics.

EXAMPLE

Circle *niente* marking

Letter *niente* marking



Niente marking alongside a text gradual dynamic

RELATED LINKS
Input methods for dynamics on page 296
Changing the appearance of niente hairpins on page 852
Gradual dynamics in Engrave mode on page 843
Lengthening/Shortening items on page 410
Showing consecutive hairpins as continuous on page 845

Adding niente markings to existing gradual dynamics

You can add *niente* markings to, and remove them from, existing gradual dynamics; for example, if you change your mind about which diminuendos should decrease to silence.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the gradual dynamics to which you want to add *niente* markings. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Niente** in the **Dynamics** group.

RESULT

Niente markings are added to the selected gradual dynamics.

TIP

- Deactivating the property removes *niente* markings from the selected gradual dynamics.
- You can also add *niente* markings to, and remove them from, existing gradual dynamics by selecting them and clicking **niente** in the **Gradual Dynamics** section of the Dynamics panel.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

You can change the appearance of individual *niente* hairpins; for example, if you want to show some *niente* hairpins with a circle but others with text.

RELATED LINKS

Hiding/Showing zones on page 44
Properties panel on page 615
Dynamics panel on page 298

Changing the appearance of niente hairpins

You can show *niente* hairpins in two ways in Dorico Elements, and you can change how they appear individually. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the hairpins whose *niente* style you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Niente style** in the **Dynamics** group.
3. Choose one of the following options:
    - **Circle on hairpin**

- **Text** *n*

RESULT

The *niente* style of the selected hairpins is changed. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

EXAMPLE

A *niente* shown as **Circle on hairpin**

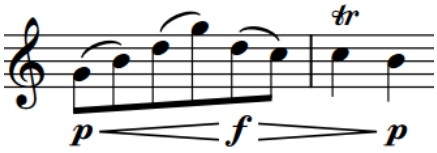
A *niente* shown as **Text**

RELATED LINKS

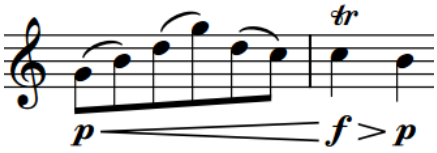
Hiding/Showing zones on page 44
Properties panel on page 615
Changing the property scope on page 617
Copying property settings to other layouts/frame chains on page 599

Groups of dynamics

Groups of dynamics are automatically aligned in a row and can be moved and edited as a group. When you move immediate dynamics within a group, the length of the hairpins on either side automatically adjust to compensate.



A group of dynamics

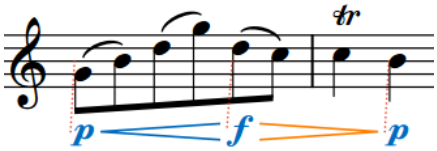


The same group of dynamics adjusts to compensate when the middle dynamic moves rhythmically.

A single dynamic, either immediate or gradual, is considered a group on its own.

Two or more dynamics are automatically grouped together if they immediately follow each other horizontally on the staff, were input together or in sequence, and have gradual dynamics between the immediate dynamics.

All of the dynamics in a group are highlighted when any of the dynamics in the group are selected.



NOTE

- Groups of dynamics apply project-wide, meaning you cannot have dynamics grouped one way in some layouts but differently in other layouts. However, you can graphically align selected dynamics independently of their groups.

- As well as horizontal groups of dynamics, you can also link groups of dynamics vertically if you want the same dynamics to appear on multiple staves. This can be useful when multiple instruments play the same dynamics simultaneously and you want to make the same change in all staves; for example, moving the peak of a crescendo to a later beat, or changing a *f* to a *fff*.

RELATED LINKS
Linked dynamics on page 855
Aligning dynamics on page 831

Grouping dynamics together

You can manually group dynamics together that were not automatically grouped when they were input. Grouped dynamics are automatically aligned in a row and can be moved and edited as a group.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the dynamics you want to group together.
2. Choose **Edit** > **Notations** > **Dynamics** > **Group Dynamics**. You can also choose this option from the context menu.

RESULT

The selected dynamics are grouped together. If the first dynamic in the group is linked to other staves, all dynamics in the group are added to those staves. This applies to all layouts in which the dynamics appear.

RELATED LINKS
Linked dynamics on page 855

Ungrouping dynamics and removing dynamics from groups

You can ungroup dynamics so that all dynamics in the group become ungrouped. You can also remove only selected dynamics from groups while leaving other dynamics in the group.

This applies to all layouts in which the dynamics appear.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the dynamics you want to ungroup or remove from groups.
2. Do one of the following:
   - To ungroup all dynamics in the selected groups, choose **Edit** > **Notations** > **Dynamics** > **Ungroup Dynamics**.
   - To remove only the selected dynamics from their groups, choose **Edit** > **Notations** > **Dynamics** > **Remove from Group**.

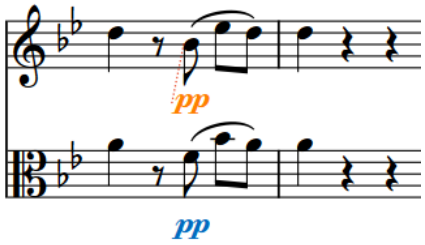
   TIP

   You can also choose these options from the context menu.

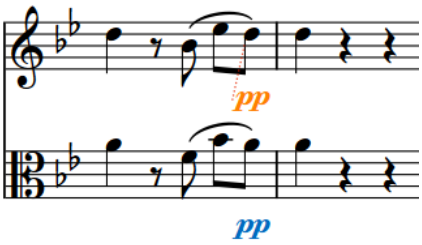
Linked dynamics

Identical dynamics at the same rhythmic position on multiple staves can be linked together. This happens automatically when you copy and paste dynamics between staves.

If you select one dynamic in a linked group, all other dynamics in the linked group appear highlighted. If one linked dynamic is moved to a new rhythmic position, all linked dynamics move.



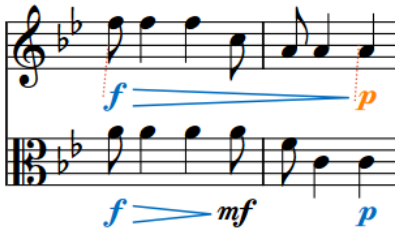
Two linked dynamics with only the top dynamic selected



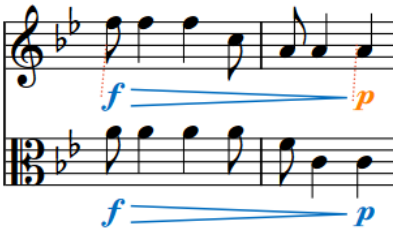
Moving just the top dynamic of the linked group automatically moves the other to match its new position.

Similarly, if you change one linked dynamic, for example, from ***p*** to ***mf***, all dynamics linked to the changed dynamic are also changed. If you group other dynamics to one of the linked dynamics, such as a hairpin, the hairpin is added at the same position in all linked staves.

If one staff has another immediate dynamic before the end of a hairpin, the hairpin is truncated automatically. If you delete such a dynamic, the hairpin extends automatically up to the next immediate dynamic or to its full length, whichever comes first.



Two staves with linked dynamics, but the lower staff has another immediate dynamic that truncates the hairpin.



Deleting the **mf** at the end of the first bar in the second staff causes the hairpin to extend to match the range of the top staff.

NOTE

- If you delete only some dynamics from a group that is linked to other staves, those dynamics are also deleted from the linked staves. If you delete a whole dynamic group from one staff, this does not affect linked dynamics on other staves.
- As well as vertically linked dynamics, you can also group dynamics horizontally. This automatically aligns the dynamics in a row and allows them to be moved and edited as a group.
- Linking or unlinking dynamics applies project-wide, meaning you cannot have dynamics linked one way in some layouts but differently in other layouts.

RELATED LINKS
Groups of dynamics on page 853
Linked slurs on page 1169
Disabling automatic linking of dynamics and slurs when pasting on page 436

Linking dynamics together

When you copy and paste identical dynamics to the same rhythmic position on other staves, those dynamics are linked together automatically. You can also manually link dynamics and groups of dynamics together that are not automatically linked to allow simultaneous editing.

NOTE

Groups of dynamics must be the same in order to link them together. For example, you can link two *p* dynamics together if neither is part of a group, but you cannot link them together if one is grouped with a hairpin.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the dynamics you want to link together.
2. Choose **Edit** > **Notations** > **Dynamics** > **Link**. You can also choose this option from the context menu.

RESULT

The selected dynamics are linked together. If you later change one of the linked dynamics, all linked dynamics are changed to match. This applies to all layouts in which the dynamics appear.

RELATED LINKS
Groups of dynamics on page 853
Copying and pasting notes/items on page 433

Unlinking dynamics

You can unlink dynamics, including dynamics that were linked automatically. For example, if you want to lengthen/shorten gradual dynamics independently of each other.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select a dynamic in each linked group that you want to unlink.
2. Choose **Edit** > **Notations** > **Dynamics** > **Unlink**. You can also choose this option from the context menu.

RESULT

All dynamics in the linked groups are unlinked. This applies to all layouts in which the dynamics appear.

RELATED LINKS
Disabling automatic linking of dynamics and slurs when pasting on page 436

Dynamics in playback

The volume settings for sustaining instruments and non-sustaining instruments vary in terms of their control of gradual dynamics.

Sustaining instruments

Sustaining instruments include string, wind, and brass instruments, because they can hold a note while being in control of its volume throughout.

Dorico Elements applies gradual dynamics to these instruments in playback.

Non-sustaining instruments

Non-sustaining instruments, such as piano, harp, marimba, and most percussion instruments, have no further control of the dynamic of notes after they have been struck. For this reason, non-sustaining software instruments often use note velocity for dynamics, because this is set at the start of the note.

TIP

You can control settings for each software instrument in the **Expression Maps** dialog.

RELATED LINKS
Expression Maps dialog on page 683
Dynamics editor on page 645
MIDI CC editor on page 651

VST Expression Maps for volume types

If you are using a third-party sound library, you may need to change or edit the expression map to make instruments respond to gradual dynamics. Otherwise, the sound library uses velocity by default.

The setup of the expression map for dynamics depends on how the instrument is configured. Consult the documentation for the sound library for further information.

Dorico Elements provides the following default expression maps:

- **CC11 Dynamics** for dynamics produced by changing MIDI channel expression
- **Modulation Wheel Dynamics** for dynamics produced by changing MIDI controller 1

TIP

You can edit expression maps in the **Expression Maps** dialog.

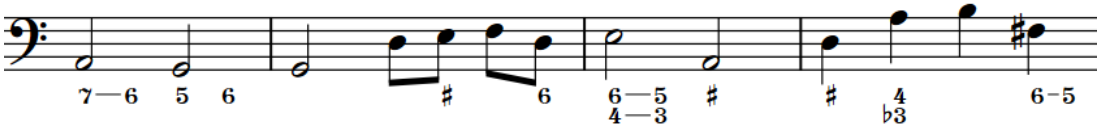
Figured bass

Figured bass is a shorthand that uses figures to specify the harmony above the notated bass notes. It is particularly common in Baroque and early Classical music and in the parts of accompanying instruments, such as harpsichords and viols.

Figured bass informs performers about the intended harmony but allows room for interpretation, such as improvised arpeggiated phrases using notes from the chord.

Figures use a combination of Arabic numbers, accidentals, and horizontal hold lines to specify both the intervals above the bass note that make up the chord and its duration. For example, they show where suspensions resolve or when the bass note changes but the chord remains the same.

Tasto solo indications inform performers that sections should be played without harmony.



A basso continuo part with figured bass below the staff

In Dorico Elements, figured bass exists globally at the corresponding rhythmic positions by default because most music that includes figured bass is tonal, meaning players perform notes from the same chord. Therefore, you only have to input figures once, but they can appear above multiple or no staves as required and the figures automatically update according to the notes on each staff. However, in some circumstances it is necessary to specify different chords for different players at the same rhythmic position. In such cases, you can input local figured bass.

Dorico Elements calculates and saves the pitches implied by the figures you enter in relation to the lowest note at that rhythmic position. This semantic understanding of the harmony implied by figures allows Dorico Elements to update the displayed figures on different staves and if you transpose or change the pitch of notes.

When you transpose music that includes figured bass, Dorico Elements also transposes the figures accordingly.

Figured bass in Dorico Elements uses a bold roman font by default.

You can hide or show figured bass in each layout independently and only above the staves of specific players. You can also change whether figured bass appears above or below staves by default in each layout independently. Figures appear as signposts if Dorico Elements either does not normally show them, such as third intervals, or cannot identify the bass note for them, such as on a rest.

NOTE

Figured bass does not yet include notations commonly used for harmonic analysis, such as Roman numerals. This is planned for future versions.

RELATED LINKS

Inputting figured bass on page 377
Figured bass hold lines on page 861

Showing figured bass on rests on page 860
Showing single brackets on figured bass on page 861
Changing the staff-relative placement of figured bass on page 866
Appearance of figured bass on page 868

Hiding/Showing figured bass in layouts

You can hide/show figured bass in each layout independently and only above the staves of specific players. For example, you can show figured bass in the full score and bass part layouts but hide figured bass in the other part layouts.

Any player on whose staff you input figured bass is automatically set to show figured bass in the current layout.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-L** to open **Layout Options**.
2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to hide/show figured bass.

   By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar, clicking and dragging across multiple layouts, **Shift**-clicking adjacent layouts, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking individual layouts.
3. In the category list, click **Players**.
4. In the **Figured Bass** section, activate/deactivate each player above/below which you want to show figured bass.
5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

Figured bass is shown above/below all instruments belonging to the corresponding players in the selected layouts when their checkboxes are activated, and hidden when their checkboxes are deactivated. Figured bass is hidden completely when no checkboxes are activated.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

- You can change the staff-relative placement of figured bass.
- You can hide figured bass figures individually in layouts where figured bass is shown.

RELATED LINKS

Inputting figured bass on page 377
Changing the staff-relative placement of figured bass on page 866
Figured bass hold lines on page 861

Hiding/Showing figured bass figures individually

You can hide/show individual figured bass figures in layouts in which figured bass is shown. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains. However, you cannot show individual figures in layouts where figured bass is hidden.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the figured bass figures you want to hide, or the signposts of figures you want to show. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate/deactivate **Hidden** in the **Figured Bass** group.

RESULT

The selected figured bass figures are hidden when **Hidden** is activated, and shown when it is deactivated. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

Signposts are shown at the position of each hidden figure. However, signposts are not printed by default.

TIP

- You can hide/show figured bass signposts by choosing **View** > **Signposts** > **Figured Bass**.
- You can assign a key command for **Hide/Show Item** on the **Key Commands** page in **Preferences**, which applies to chord symbols, playing techniques, figured bass, text items, and time signatures.

RELATED LINKS

Signposts on page 426
Changing the property scope on page 617
Copying property settings to other layouts/frame chains on page 599
Key Commands page in the Preferences dialog on page 59
Annotations on page 554

Showing figured bass on rests

By default, figured bass is hidden on rests because figures typically indicate harmony in relation to a bass note. You can show figured bass on individual rests; for example, if the harmony changes while the bass is resting. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- You have input figured bass at the positions of the rests.
- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the rests on which you want to show figured bass. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Show figured bass** in the **Notes and Rests** group.

RESULT

Figured bass is shown on the selected rests. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

Deactivating **Show figured bass** hides figured bass on selected rests again.

Showing single brackets on figured bass

You can show only a single left or right bracket on individual bracketed figured bass figures. For example, if you want to indicate that all figures between two bracketed figures are optional. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- You have input figured bass figures with brackets.
- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

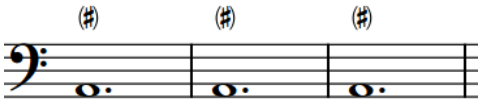
PROCEDURE

1. Select the bracketed figures on which you want to show a single bracket. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Hide single bracket** in the **Figured Bass** group.
3. Choose one of the following options:
   - **Start**
   - **End**

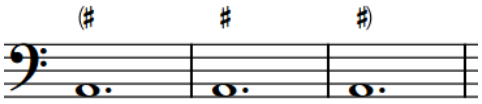
RESULT

Brackets are hidden on the corresponding side of the selected figures, leaving a single bracket on the other side. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

EXAMPLE



Brackets shown on both sides of all figures



Brackets shown at the start of the first figure and the end of the last figure only

RELATED LINKS

Inputting figured bass on page 377
Showing brackets on figured bass hold lines on page 864
Bracketed noteheads on page 953

Figured bass hold lines

Figured bass hold lines indicate that chords remain the same over changing notes in the bass.

By default, Dorico Elements shows hold lines for figures that have duration, but hides lines between suspensions and resolutions or after resolutions. You can hide/show hold and suspension lines for individual suspension figures.

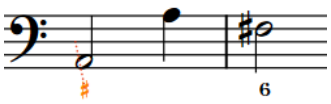


Figure (selected) with no duration

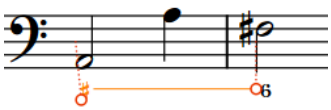


Figure (selected) with duration and hold line

TIP

You can move figures graphically in Engrave mode, including changing the graphical length of hold lines.

RELATED LINKS

Figured bass in Engrave mode on page 865
Moving items graphically on page 481
Grace notes on page 897

Hiding/Showing figured bass hold/suspension lines

You can hide/show suspension lines between suspension and resolution figures and hold lines after resolution figures, independently of each other.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

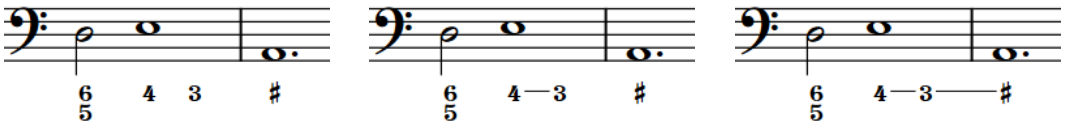
PROCEDURE

1. Select the figured bass suspensions whose hold/suspension lines you want to hide/show. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate the following properties, individually or together, in the **Figured Bass** group:
   - **Line between susp. and resolution**
   - **Continue line after resolution**
3. Activate/Deactivate the corresponding checkboxes.

RESULT

Hold lines are shown between suspension and resolution figures and/or after resolutions in the selected figured bass suspensions when the corresponding checkboxes are activated, and hidden when the checkboxes are deactivated.

EXAMPLE



Suspension and hold lines both hidden

Suspension line between suspension and resolution shown

Suspension line between suspension and resolution and hold line after resolution both shown

RELATED LINKS

Hiding/Showing zones on page 44
Properties panel on page 615
Showing figured bass on rests on page 860
Moving figured bass resolutions on page 867

Lengthening/Shortening figured bass hold lines

You can change the duration of figured bass figures after they have been input, which changes the length of their hold lines. Lengthening a figure that was input without duration gives it duration and shows a hold line. You can also change the end positions of figured bass hold lines relative to notes.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the figured bass figures you want to lengthen/shorten. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Duration** in the **Figured Bass** group.
3. Lengthen/Shorten the selected figured bass figures in any of the following ways:
   - To lengthen them, increase the value in the left value field.
   - To shorten them, decrease the value in the left value field.
   - To move their end to the left to a grace note at the rhythmic position set by the left value field, decrease the value in the right value field.

   TIP

   1 represents a quarter note.
4. Do one of the following:
   - To position the end of hold lines to the right of noteheads and across grace notes, activate **Draw line through figures at end**.
   - To position the ends of hold lines to the left of noteheads and before grace notes, deactivate **Draw line through figures at end**.

RESULT

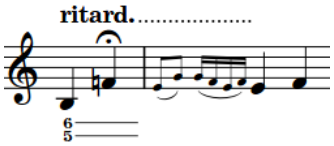
The duration of the selected figured bass figures, and the length of their hold lines, is changed.

TIP

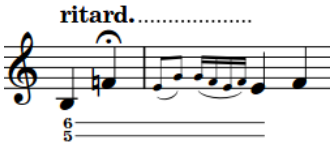
You can also lengthen/shorten figured bass figures in the same ways as for other items.

EXAMPLE

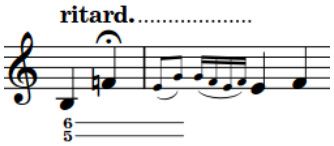
These examples all have an overall duration of a half note; that is, **2** entered into the left value field.



Draw line through figures at end deactivated



Draw line through figures at end activated



-1 1/4 entered into the right value field and **Draw line through figures at end** activated

RELATED LINKS

Figured bass in Engrave mode on page 865
Lengthening/Shortening items on page 410

Showing brackets on figured bass hold lines

You can show brackets on individual figured bass hold and suspension lines; for example, to indicate editorial hold lines.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

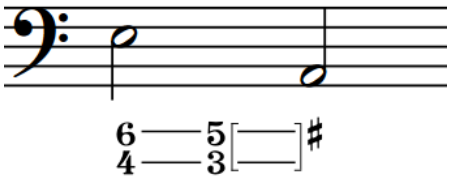
PROCEDURE

1. Select the figured bass hold/suspension lines on which you want to show brackets. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate the following properties, individually or together as appropriate for your selection, in the **Figured Bass** group:
   - **Bracket sus. lines**
   - **Bracket hold lines**
3. Select one of the following options from each menu:
   - **Both ends**
   - **Start**
   - **End**

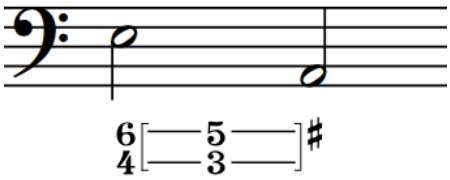
RESULT

Brackets are shown at the corresponding ends of the selected figured bass hold/suspension lines.

EXAMPLE



Both ends brackets on hold lines



Start bracket on suspension lines and **End** bracket on hold lines

RELATED LINKS
Hiding/Showing zones on page 44
Properties panel on page 615
Inputting figured bass on page 377

Positions of figured bass

Figured bass is automatically organized into rows according to the number of rows required in each system independently. By default, rows are aligned at the top when below the staff and at the bottom when above the staff to minimize the gap between figured bass and the staff.

The vertical position of figured bass is determined by the staves above which they are set to appear and your per-layout setting for their staff-relative placement.

You can move individual figured bass figures to different rhythmic positions in Write mode. They are automatically positioned to avoid collisions. This includes Dorico Elements's kerning, which applies across whole systems to ensure all figures and alterations are legible.

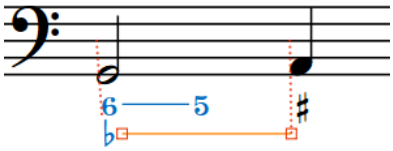
You can move figures and hold lines graphically in Engrave mode, but this does not change the rhythmic positions to which they apply.

RELATED LINKS
Hiding/Showing figured bass in layouts on page 859
Hiding/Showing figured bass hold/suspension lines on page 862
Lengthening/Shortening figured bass hold lines on page 863
Moving figured bass resolutions on page 867
Moving notes/items rhythmically on page 437
Moving items graphically on page 481

Figured bass in Engrave mode

In Engrave mode, each figured bass hold line has two square handles, one at the start and one at the end. You can move these handles to adjust the graphical position and length of figured bass hold lines.

You can also move whole figured bass hold lines graphically.



Handles on a hold line in Engrave mode

Moving figures with hold lines moves them both together. Moving hold lines or hold line handles moves the hold lines independently of the figure. Dorico Elements automatically lengthens hold lines between suspensions and resolutions when you move resolution figures.

NOTE

- A single figure includes all numbers at that position. For example, you cannot select and move the **6** in a **6,4** figure independently of the **4**.
- If you want to move handles at the start/end of figured bass hold lines because you want to change their length, we recommend that you lengthen/shorten them rhythmically first before refining their graphical length.
- Multiple different properties in the **Figured Bass** group of the Properties panel are activated automatically when you move the corresponding figure, hold line, or hold line handle.
  - **Main figure offset** moves figures. **X** moves them horizontally, **Y** moves them vertically.
  - **Resolution offset** moves the resolution figure in suspensions. **X** moves them horizontally, **Y** moves them vertically.
  - **Line [n] offset** moves the start and end handles of hold lines in the corresponding figured bass row horizontally. **L** moves start (left) handles, **R** moves end (right) handles.
  - **Line [n] Y offset** moves whole hold lines in the corresponding figured bass row vertically.

Changing the staff-relative placement of figured bass

You can change the default staff-relative placement of all figured bass figures in each layout independently.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-L** to open **Layout Options**.
2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to change the staff-relative placement of figured bass.

   By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar, clicking and dragging across multiple layouts, **Shift**-clicking adjacent layouts, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking individual layouts.
3. In the category list, click **Players**.
4. In the **Figured Bass** section, choose one of the following options for **Default placement**:
   - **Above staff**
   - **Below staff**
5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

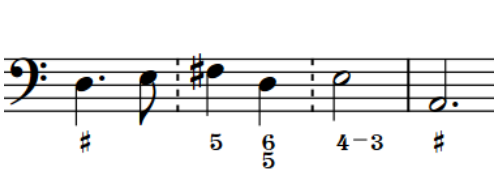
RESULT

The default staff-relative placement of all figured bass figures in the selected layouts is changed.

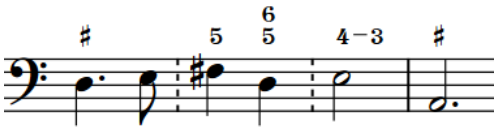
TIP

You can also change the staff-relative placement of individual figured bass figures by selecting them and pressing **F**. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

EXAMPLE



Figured bass below the staff



Figured bass above the staff

RELATED LINKS
Changing the property scope on page 617
Copying property settings to other layouts/frame chains on page 599

Moving figured bass resolutions

You can move resolution figures rhythmically, without affecting the position of the suspension figure or the overall duration of the figured bass suspension; for example, if you want a suspension to resolve on a different note.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the resolution figures you want to move. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Resolution pos.** in the **Figured Bass** group.
3. Move the selected resolution figures in any of the following ways:
   - To move them to the right, increase the value in the left value field.
   - To move them to the left, decrease the value in the left value field.
   - To move them to the left to grace notes at the rhythmic position set by the left value field, decrease the value in the right value field.

   TIP

   1 represents a quarter note.

RESULT

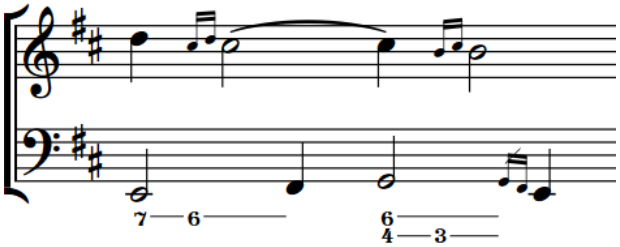
The selected resolution figures are moved rhythmically.

TIP

In Write mode, you can also click and drag resolution figure handles to the right/left according to the current rhythmic grid resolution.

EXAMPLE

For example, entering **1** into the left value field and **-1/2** into the right value field moves resolution figures a quarter note to the right of suspension figures, and to the first of two sixteenth grace notes at that rhythmic position.



RELATED LINKS
Figured bass hold lines on page 861
Figured bass in Engrave mode on page 865
Moving notes/items rhythmically on page 437
Changing the rhythmic grid resolution on page 204
Inputting figured bass on page 377

Appearance of figured bass

The appearance of individual figures is determined either by the default settings in Dorico Elements or your popover entry, depending on whether you instructed Dorico Elements to follow your entry literally when you input each figure.

When inputting figured bass, by default Dorico Elements interprets your entries and applies its default settings for the appearance of figured bass to them. You can specify that you want Dorico Elements to follow your entries exactly for individual figures; for example, if you are reproducing a piece of music and know in advance exactly how you want figures to appear.

You can reset individual figures that you input with the figured bass input setting **Follow input literally** so they follow the default settings, and you can fix the current appearance of individual figures.

Figured bass in Dorico Elements uses a bold roman font by default.

Figures appear as signposts if Dorico Elements either does not normally show them, such as third intervals, or cannot identify the bass note for them, such as on a rest.

RELATED LINKS
Inputting figured bass on page 377
Figured bass hold lines on page 861
Showing figured bass on rests on page 860
Showing single brackets on figured bass on page 861

Simplifying figured bass compound intervals

You can simplify compound intervals in individual figured bass figures; that is, figures 9 and above. Some editions prefer to simplify compound intervals so figures reflect the first octave and appear out of order in the stack.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the compound figured bass figures you want to simplify. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Show compound intervals as simple** in the **Figured Bass** group.

RESULT

The selected compound figures are simplified. Deactivating the property returns the selected figures to their default octave.

EXAMPLE

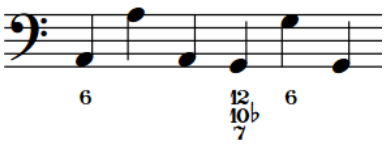


Figure with compound intervals

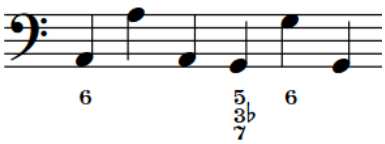


Figure with simplified compound intervals

RELATED LINKS

Properties panel on page 615

Fixing the current appearance of figured bass

You can fix the current appearance of individual figured bass figures; for example, if you input them with the input setting **Follow Engraving Options** but want to keep their current appearance, regardless of future changes you make to figured bass engraving options.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the figured bass figures whose current appearance you want to fix. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. Choose **Edit** > **Notations** > **Figured Bass** > **Force Current Appearance**.

RESULT

The current appearance of the selected figures is fixed, meaning they are not affected by any future changes to figured bass engraving options.

NOTE

- You cannot access the **Engraving Options** dialog in Dorico Elements, as it is only available in Dorico Pro. However, fixing figures maintains their appearance if you share the project with other users who later change figured bass engraving options.
- You can assign a key command for **Force Current Appearance** on the **Key Commands** page in **Preferences**.

Resetting figured bass

You can reset individual figured bass figures; for example, if they were input with the figured bass input setting **Follow input literally**. Reset figures follow the default settings in Dorico Elements.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the figured bass figures you want to reset. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. Choose **Edit** > **Notations** > **Figured Bass** > **Reset Figured Bass**.

RESULT

The selected figured bass figures are reset to follow the default settings. This can affect their appearance and suspension duration.

TIP

You can assign a key command for **Reset Figured Bass** on the **Key Commands** page in **Preferences**.

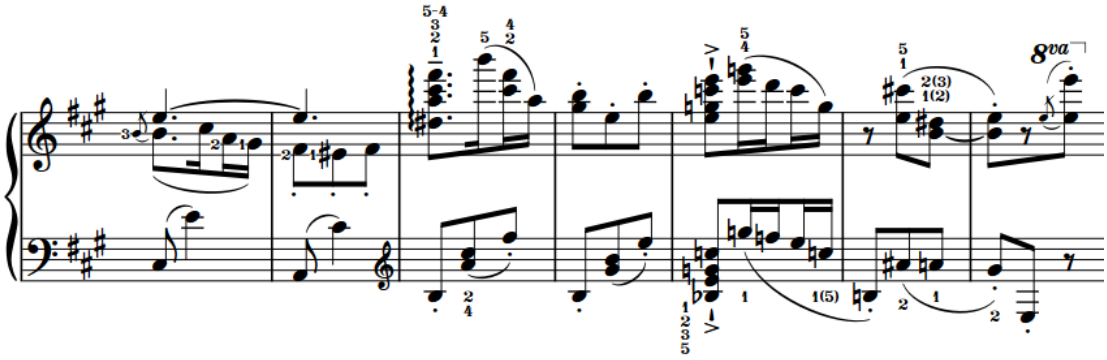
RELATED LINKS

Inputting figured bass on page 377
Key Commands page in the Preferences dialog on page 59

Fingering

Fingerings use numbers and letters to recommend which fingers players should use for notes. This can be useful for music aimed at players learning the instrument and for difficult musical passages where certain fingering patterns make the notes much easier to play.

Fingerings are often used in keyboard music, as players can use all ten fingers to play notes, and in guitar music, where fingerings are often used alongside fret positions. However, fingerings can also be useful for other instruments; for example, to indicate that string players should change the finger used to stop the string while holding the note, or to instruct wind players to use uncommon fingerings for particular notes in order to create a special sonic effect.



Piano music containing multiple fingerings, including a substitution fingering and alternative fingerings

Dorico Elements also provides fingerings for brass and fretted instruments. For example, you can specify which valves players should depress for instruments such as trumpet and horn, and you can specify the horn branch you want players to use for double horns. For fretted instruments, you can input fingerings for both hands.

Fingerings in Dorico Elements use a bold roman font by default, following accepted conventions for the appearance of fingerings.

RELATED LINKS
Inputting fingerings on page 262
Fingerings popover on page 263
Fingerings for fretted instruments on page 880
Fingerings for valved brass instruments on page 887
Fingering slides on page 885
Hiding/Showing fingering on page 878
String indicators on page 891
Hiding/Showing fingerings in chord diagrams on page 810

General placement conventions for fingering

Fingerings are placed as close as possible to the notes to which they apply, so the performer can read them easily and clearly.

In music for grand staff instruments, such as the piano and harp, it is accepted to place fingerings for the right hand above the top staff, and fingerings for the left hand below the

bottom staff. However, in dense contrapuntal music for these instruments, fingerings can be placed between the staves to follow the direction of the voices to which they apply.

Different conventions apply to fingerings for fretted instruments, as they require fingerings for both the right and left hands.

Right-hand fingering placement

By default, all right-hand fingerings are placed outside the staff and on the notehead side of notes, which can be above or below the staff depending on the stem direction. When shown beside notes inside the staff, Dorico Elements automatically joins adjacent notes with the same right-hand fingering with a bracket.

Left-hand fingering placement

Left-hand fingerings are usually positioned inside the staff and to the left of the notes to which they apply. However, they also must not collide with other items, such as accidentals and rhythm dots. Dorico Elements automatically calculates the most appropriate positions for left-hand fingerings and erases their backgrounds by default, which improves their readability when placed on staff lines.

RELATED LINKS
Fingerings for fretted instruments on page 880

Changing fingerings to substitution fingerings

Substitution fingerings indicate where players should change the finger used for the note. You can change existing fingerings to substitution fingerings.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the fingerings you want to change to substitution fingerings. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Substitution** in the **Fingering and Positions** group.
3. Enter the fingering you want for the substitution into the value field.
4. Press **Return**.

RESULT

The selected fingerings are now shown as substitution fingerings. The deferred position of the substitution is the same as the original fingering by default, but you can change the rhythmic position of substitution fingerings.

RELATED LINKS
Inputting fingerings on page 262
Fingerings popover on page 263

Changing the rhythmic position of substitution fingerings

Substitution fingerings are shown as immediate by default, meaning that the substitution takes place on the same note, but you can change the rhythmic position at which individual substitutions take place.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the substitution fingering whose deferred rhythmic position you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. Change the rhythmic position of the substitution fingering in any of the following ways:
   - In Write mode, click and drag the circular handle to the right/left.
   - In Write mode and Engrave mode, activate **Substitution offset** in the **Fingering and Positions** group of the Properties panel.

     Change the rhythmic position of substitutions as fractions of a quarter note (crotchet) by entering a value into the left value field, or by clicking the arrows beside the value field. Increasing the value moves substitutions to later positions, decreasing the value moves them to earlier positions.

     NOTE

     The right value field is for the grace note position at which substitutions occur, if applicable.

RESULT

The rhythmic position of the substitution fingering is changed.

Dorico Elements automatically arranges deferred substitutions so they are ordered appropriately alongside any fingerings that coincide with the substitution.

NOTE

You can only change the position of single substitution fingerings when dragging their handles with the mouse. However, you can change the positions of multiple substitution fingerings with **Substitution offset** in the **Fingering and Positions** group of the Properties panel.

Deferred substitutions are always shown with horizontal lines.

Changing existing fingerings

You can change fingerings after you have input them; for example, if you decide a different fingering would be better.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the fingerings you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, enter the new fingering you want into the **Finger or position** value field in the **Fingering and Positions** group.

3. Press **Return**.

RESULT

The selected fingerings are changed.

TIP

You can also change existing fingerings in Write mode by opening the fingerings popover. Any existing fingerings on the selected note are shown in the popover.

RELATED LINKS

Inputting fingerings on page 262
Fingerings popover on page 263

Changing the staff-relative placement of fingerings

Dorico Elements automatically follows conventions for fingering placement, but you can show individual fingerings belonging to non-fretted instruments either above or below the staff. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

According to convention, keyboard instrument fingering is positioned above the right-hand staff, and below the left-hand staff. String and brass instrument fingering is always positioned above the staff.

NOTE

These steps only apply to non-fretted instruments.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the fingerings whose staff-relative placement you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Staff-relative position** in the **Fingering and Positions** group.
3. Choose one of the following options:
   - **Above**
   - **Below**

RESULT

The selected fingerings appear above/below the staff. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

TIP

You can also change the staff-relative placement of fingerings by selecting them in Engrave mode and pressing **F**.

RELATED LINKS
Fingerings for fretted instruments on page 880
Changing the property scope on page 617
Copying property settings to other layouts/frame chains on page 599

Showing fingerings inside the staff

You can show individual fingerings belonging to non-fretted instruments beside noteheads inside the staff.

NOTE

- These steps only apply to non-fretted instruments. Left-hand fingerings for fretted instruments are shown inside the staff by default.
- These steps do not apply to substitution fingerings.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

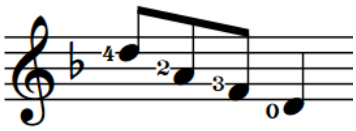
PROCEDURE

1. Do one of the following:
   - In Write mode, select the notes whose fingerings you want to show inside the staff.
   - In Engrave mode, select the fingerings you want to show inside the staff.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Position left of notehead** in the **Fingering and Positions** group.

RESULT

Fingerings belonging to the selected notes are shown inside the staff, directly beside the noteheads. By default, if they belong to a note on a staff line, they erase part of the staff line to ensure legibility.

EXAMPLE



Changing the position of individual fingerings relative to slurs, octave lines, and tuplet brackets

By default, fingerings are positioned inside the arcs of slurs, but outside the start/end of slurs. You can change the position of individual fingerings relative to slurs. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the fingerings whose position relative to slurs you want to change.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Slur-relative position** in the **Fingering and Positions** group.
3. Choose one of the following options:
   - **Inside**
   - **Outside**

RESULT

The position of the selected fingerings relative to slurs, octave lines, and tuplet brackets is changed. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

NOTE

If fingerings also coincide with the first note or last note of slurs, fingerings are positioned outside all of these notations.

RELATED LINKS

Changing the property scope on page 617
Copying property settings to other layouts/frame chains on page 599

Changing the size of fingerings

You can change the size of fingerings individually without changing the size of the noteheads to which they apply. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the fingerings whose size you want to change.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Scale** in the **Fingering and Positions** group.
3. Change the value in the value field.
4. Press **Return**.

RESULT

The scale size of the selected fingerings is changed. For example, changing the value to **50** scales the selected fingerings to half their normal size. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

Showing enclosures/underlines on fingerings

You can show individual fingerings belonging to non-fretted instruments with either a circle enclosure or an underline.

NOTE

These steps only apply to non-fretted instruments. For fretted instruments, you can instead show string indicators inside the staff, which are shown in a circle enclosure.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

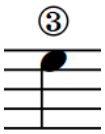
PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the fingerings on which you want to show an enclosure/underline.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Decoration** in the **Fingering and Positions** group.
3. Choose one of the following options:
   - **Circle**
   - **Underline**

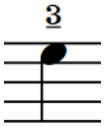
RESULT

The selected fingerings are shown with the chosen decoration.

EXAMPLE



Fingering with circle



Fingering with underline

RELATED LINKS

String indicators on page 891

Showing individual fingerings in italics

Fingerings are normally shown in a bold, non-italic font, but you can show individual fingerings in italics.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the fingerings you want to show in italics.

2. In the Properties panel, activate **Italic** in the **Fingering and Positions** group.

RESULT

The selected fingerings are shown in a bold italic font if your project-wide setting for fingerings is a bold font, and in a plain italic font if your project-wide setting for fingerings is a plain font.

NOTE

Bold italic fingerings look very similar to tuplet numbers, which can be confusing.

Hiding/Showing fingering

You can hide/show fingering in each layout independently. For example, you can show fingering in part layouts but hide fingering in full score layouts as conductors rarely require fingering information.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-L** to open **Layout Options**.
2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to hide/show fingering.

   By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar, clicking and dragging across multiple layouts, **Shift**-clicking adjacent layouts, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking individual layouts.
3. In the category list, click **Players**.
4. In the **Fingering** section, activate/deactivate **Show fingering**.
5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

All fingerings are shown in the selected layouts when the checkbox is activated, and hidden when the checkbox is deactivated.

RELATED LINKS

Changing the appearance of cautionary fingerings on page 879
Hiding/Showing fingerings in chord diagrams on page 810

Deleting fingerings

You can remove fingerings from notes after you have input them. However, because fingerings are properties of notes rather than separate items in Dorico Elements, you cannot select and delete them as you would for other items.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the notes from which you want to remove fingerings. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. Choose **Edit** > **Notations** > **Fingering** > **Reset Fingering**.

RESULT

All fingerings are removed from the selected notes.

TIP

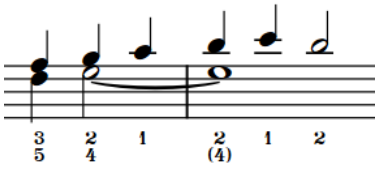
You can assign a key command for **Reset Fingering** on the **Key Commands** page in **Preferences**.

RELATED LINKS
Large selections on page 403
Assigning key commands on page 63

Cautionary fingerings

Cautionary fingerings remind players that fingerings specified at previous rhythmic positions continue to apply to notes that are still sounding. Dorico Elements automatically shows cautionary fingerings when you add other fingerings at rhythmic positions where notes with existing fingerings are still sounding.

By default, cautionary fingerings are shown enclosed in parentheses. You can change the appearance of cautionary fingerings individually; for example, if you want to show cautionary fingerings manually on tied notes that cross system or frame breaks.



Cautionary fingering shown in parentheses (default)

RELATED LINKS
Inputting fingerings on page 262
Fingerings popover on page 263

Changing the appearance of cautionary fingerings

You can change the appearance of cautionary fingerings individually; for example, if you want particular fingerings to appear without parentheses or to hide specific cautionary fingerings. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

NOTE

These steps only apply to cautionary fingerings.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the noteheads whose cautionary fingering appearance you want to change.

NOTE

You must select the specific noteheads to which the cautionary fingerings apply, not the fingerings themselves.

2. In the Properties panel, activate **Cautionary** in the **Fingering and Positions** group.
3. Select one of the following options from the menu:
   - **Default**
   - **With parentheses**
   - **Without parentheses**
   - **Suppress**

RESULT

The appearance of cautionary fingerings on the selected notes is changed. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

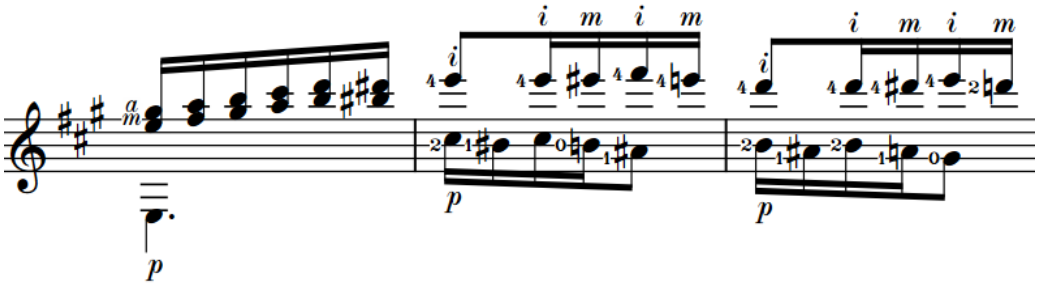
RELATED LINKS

Changing the property scope on page 617
Copying property settings to other layouts/frame chains on page 599

Fingerings for fretted instruments

Fretted instruments, such as the classical guitar, require additional fingering instructions for both hands due to the complex nature of the music.

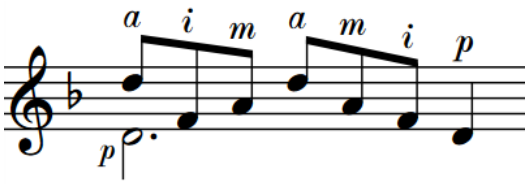
Fingerings for fretted instruments use the same fonts as normal fingerings.



A passage for guitar with right-hand and left-hand fingerings

Right-hand fingering

Right-hand fingerings tell the performer which finger to use to pluck the string, which is usually the right hand. By default, all right-hand fingerings are placed outside the staff, on the notehead side of notes, and follow the stem directions of voices in multiple-voice contexts. When the same finger plays multiple notes in a chord, you can show a single fingering with a bracket for the notes plucked by that finger.



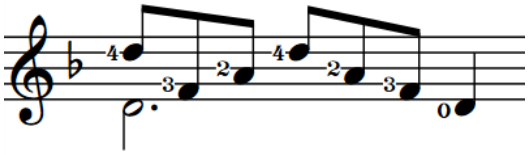
Dorico Elements shows “p” for right-hand thumb fingerings and “e” for right-hand fingerings for the pinky finger.

NOTE

In Dorico Elements, we use “pinky” to refer to the smallest finger, but it can also be called “little” or “fifth digit”.

Left-hand fingering

Left-hand fingerings tell the performer which finger to use to stop the string, which is usually the left hand. In Dorico Elements, left-hand fingerings are placed inside the staff and to the left of the notes to which they apply.



When shown inside the staff next to notes, left-hand fingering appears smaller than fingering shown outside the staff.

RELATED LINKS
Inputting fingerings on page 262
Fingerings popover on page 263
Adding fingerings to arpeggio signs on page 884
Fingering slides on page 885
String indicators on page 891
Tapping on page 1022
Hammer-ons and pull-offs on page 1023

Hiding/Showing brackets for right-hand fingerings

When multiple notes in the same chord are plucked by the same right-hand finger, you can show the same fingering multiple times, once for each note, or show a single fingering for all notes with a bracket spanning the notes plucked by that finger. When showing a separate fingering for each note, you can also choose to place each fingering either above or below the staff. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

NOTE

These steps only apply to right-hand fingerings belonging to fretted instruments.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

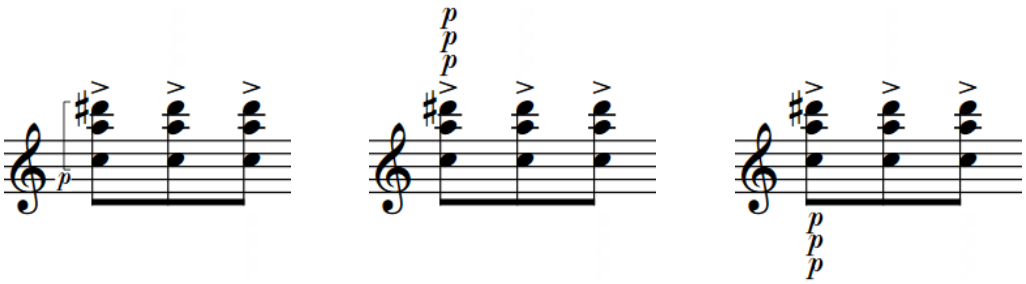
1. Select all the notes for which you want to hide/show brackets for right-hand fingerings. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Vertical position** in the **Plucked Fingering** group.
3. Select one of the following options from the menu:
   - To hide brackets and show a separate fingering for each selected note, select **Above staff** or **Below staff**.

- To show brackets and a single fingering for all notes in each bracket, select **Next to note**.

RESULT

Brackets on the selected right-hand fingerings are hidden/shown. If you selected **Above staff** or **Below staff**, their staff-relative placement is changed accordingly. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

EXAMPLE



Right-hand fingerings shown next to notes with a bracket

Right-hand fingerings shown above the staff

Right-hand fingerings shown below the staff

RELATED LINKS

Changing the property scope on page 617
Copying property settings to other layouts/frame chains on page 599

Changing the position of left-hand fingerings

You can change the position of individual left-hand fingerings. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains. By default, they are positioned inside the staff and to the left of the notes to which they apply.

NOTE

These steps only apply to left-hand fingerings belonging to fretted instruments.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

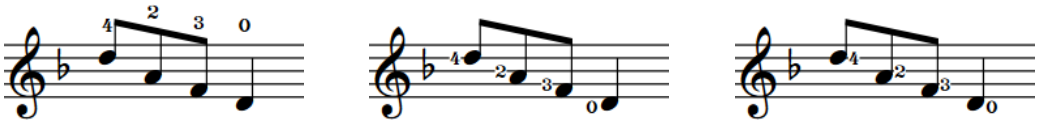
1. Select the left-hand fingerings whose position you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Stopping finger position** in the **Fingering and Positions** group.
3. Select one of the following options from the menu:
   - **Outside staff**
   - **Left of note**

- **Right of note**

RESULT

The position of the selected left-hand fingerings is changed. When shown outside the staff, they are placed above the staff by default. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

EXAMPLE



Outside staff **Left of note** **Right of note**

RELATED LINKS

General placement conventions for fingering on page 871
Inputting fingerings on page 262

Erasing the background of left-hand fingerings inside the staff

By default in Dorico Elements, left-hand fingerings have erased backgrounds because they are often placed in the staff on staff lines. You can change whether individual left-hand fingerings have erased backgrounds or not. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

NOTE

These steps only apply to left-hand fingerings belonging to fretted instruments positioned inside the staff.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

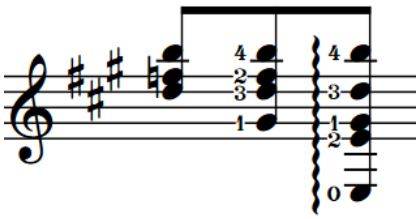
1. In Engrave mode, select the left-hand fingerings whose background erasure you want to change.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Erase background** in the **Fingering and Positions** group.
3. Activate/Deactivate the corresponding checkbox.

RESULT

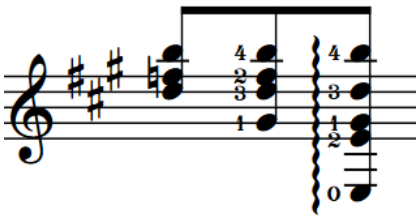
The backgrounds of the selected left-hand fingerings are erased when the checkbox is activated, and not erased when the checkbox is deactivated. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

When the property is deactivated, left-hand fingerings have erased backgrounds by default.

EXAMPLE



Left-hand fingerings with erased backgrounds



Left-hand fingerings without erased backgrounds

Adding fingerings to arpeggio signs

You can add fingerings to arpeggio signs to indicate which right-hand finger should be used to strum a chord. By default, fingerings are placed at the bottom of arpeggio signs.

NOTE

These steps only apply to arpeggio signs belonging to fretted instruments.

PREREQUISITE

- You have input the arpeggio signs to which you want to add fingerings.
- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

PROCEDURE

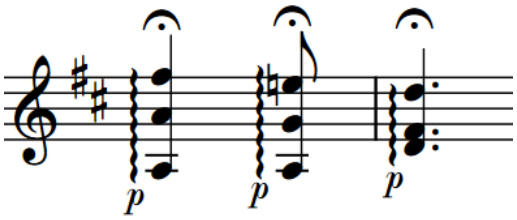
1. Select the arpeggio signs belonging to fretted instruments to which you to add fingerings. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Finger** in the **Plucked Fingering** group.
3. Enter the fingering you want into the value field.

   For example, for the thumb, enter **p**.

RESULT

The specified fingering is added to the selected arpeggio signs. It is positioned at the bottom of the arpeggio signs by default.

EXAMPLE



Arpeggio signs played with the thumb

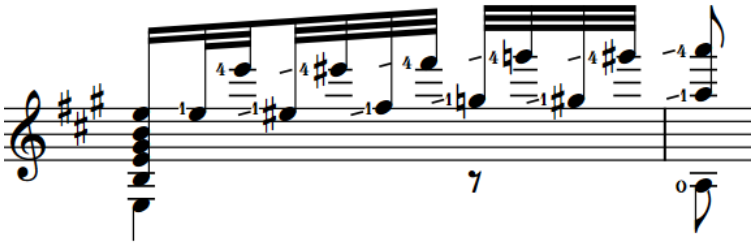
RELATED LINKS

Input methods for ornaments, arpeggio signs, glissando lines, and jazz articulations on page 325

Fingering slides

Fingering slides indicate that the performer should slide their finger up/down the neck of the instrument. They are notated as an angled line between fingerings.

The note at the start of a fingering slide is known as a source note. The note at the end of a fingering slide is known as the destination note.



A passage with fingering slides

When the source and destination notes are sufficiently close horizontally, fingering slides are shown between the fingerings, joining them directly in their existing positions without moving them. When the source and destination notes are far apart horizontally, fingering slides appear with a fixed length to the left of the destination note. You can change the length of individual fingering slides.

Fingering slides automatically avoid obstructions, such as noteheads, accidentals, and other fingerings.

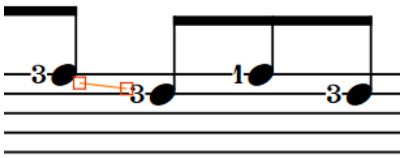
NOTE

- Dorico Elements automatically adjusts the length/angle of fingering slides when you move the fingerings at the start/end.
- In Dorico Elements, you can only show fingering slides on staves belonging to fretted instruments. You can show string fingering shift indicators on staves belonging to other string instruments.

RELATED LINKS
Hiding/Showing string fingering shift indicators on page 888
Glissando lines on page 1000
Jazz articulations on page 1028

Fingering slides in Engrave mode

In Engrave mode, each join fingering slide has two square handles, one at the start and one at the end. You can move these handles to adjust the graphical position, length, and angle of join fingering slides.



Handles on a slide joining two notes in Engrave mode

NOTE

- If you want to change the length of fingering slides, we recommend that you do so by first changing their **Slide type** property or by moving the fingerings. Dorico Elements automatically adjusts the length/angle of fingering slides when you move the fingerings at the start/end.
- You cannot move fingering slides rhythmically. If you want to change the notes to which fingering slides apply, you must hide them between their original notes and show new fingering slides between the new notes.
- Fingering slides shown only before the destination note have a fixed length, and so do not have handles at the start/end.
- You cannot move whole fingering slides that join notes. You can only move their handles.

Hiding/Showing fingering slides

You can hide/show slides between notes played by the same left-hand finger on the same string on fretted instruments.

NOTE

These steps only apply to fingerings belonging to fretted instruments.

PREREQUISITE

- You have input the same left-hand fingering for the notes at the start and end of the slides.
- You have specified the same string for the notes at the start and end of the slides.
- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the destination notes before which you want to hide/show fingering slides. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate/deactivate **Slide in** in the **Fingering and Positions** group.

RESULT

Fingering slides are shown before the selected notes when **Slide in** is activated, and hidden when it is deactivated. If the gap between the source and destination notes is small enough, fingering slides appear as an angled line joining the fingerings. If the gap is large, fingering slides appear as a fixed length angled line to the left of the destination notes.

RELATED LINKS

Inputting fingerings on page 262
Changing existing fingerings on page 873
Assigning notes to strings on page 947
Moving items graphically on page 481

Changing the length of fingering slides

You can change the length of individual fingering slides and show them either joining the source and destination fingerings or with a fixed length before the destination note. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

NOTE

These steps only apply to fingerings belonging to fretted instruments.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

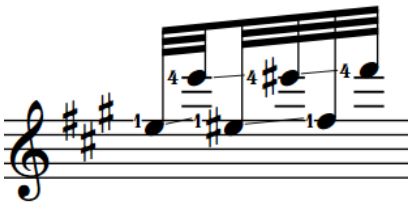
PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the fingering slides whose length you want to change.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Slide type** in the **Fingering and Positions** group.
3. Choose one of the following options:
   - To show fingering slides between the fingerings at the start/end, choose **Join**.
   - To show fixed length fingering slides before the destination fingerings, choose **Destination only**.

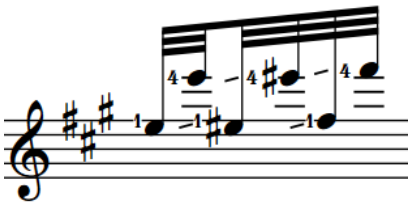
RESULT

The length of the selected fingering slides is changed. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

EXAMPLE



Join



Destination only

RELATED LINKS

Fingerings for fretted instruments on page 880
Changing the property scope on page 617
Copying property settings to other layouts/frame chains on page 599

Fingerings for valved brass instruments

For instruments like trumpet and horn, fingering is used to show which valves must be depressed to produce a specific note.

You can enter fingerings for valved brass instruments into the fingerings popover as numbers without any separation. For example, enter **12** for a C♯ on a trumpet to indicate that the first two valves must be depressed.

By default, Dorico Elements automatically stacks fingerings added to notes on brass instrument staves vertically. They are shown with no separator by default.

RELATED LINKS
Inputting fingerings on page 262
Fingerings popover on page 263

Showing horn branch indicators

You can indicate the branch on which notes are played for double horns and triple horns by adding branch indicators as prefixes to horn fingerings. Some publications simply indicate “T” for thumb, while others more explicitly indicate which branch is to be used by specifying its pitch.

NOTE

You can only add branch indicators to notes belonging to horns in F.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the horn fingerings to which you want to add branch indicators. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Horn branch** in the **Fingering and Positions** group.
3. Select one of the following horn branches from the menu:
   - **F**
   - **B flat**
   - **F alto**
   - **E flat alto**
   - **Thumb trigger**

RESULT

Branch indicators are added to the selected fingerings.

Hiding/Showing string fingering shift indicators

You can hide/show shift indicators after individual fingerings belonging to string instruments. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

Shift indicators are angled lines that indicate the direction of movement when string players must shift their finger position on the fingerboard to play a higher/lower note with the same finger as the previous note.

NOTE

These steps do not apply to fingerings belonging to fretted instruments, which can show fingering slides instead.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the notes or fingerings on string instrument staves from which you want to indicate a fingering shift. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate/deactivate **Indicate shift to next note** in the **Fingering and Positions** group.

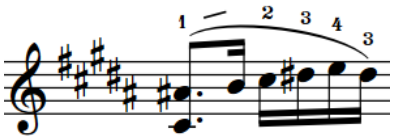
RESULT

Shift indicators are shown when the property is activated, even if neither of the notes at each end have explicit fingerings, and hidden when the property is deactivated. They are positioned between the selected notes and the notes that immediately follow them. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

TIP

You can specify that fingerings should show shift indicators when inputting fingerings for string instruments.

EXAMPLE



RELATED LINKS

Inputting fingerings on page 262
Fingering slides on page 885
Assigning notes to strings on page 947
Changing the property scope on page 617

Changing the direction of string fingering shift indicators

You can change the direction of individual string fingering shift indicators if they do not point in the direction required.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the shift indicators whose direction you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Shift direction** in the **Fingering and Positions** group.
3. Choose one of the following options:
   - **Up**
   - **Down**

RESULT

The selected shift indicators are angled up/down.

NOTE

You can also affect the direction of string shift indicators by specifying the strings on which notes are played.

Fingerings imported from MusicXML files

Dorico Elements imports fingerings that are specified using the fingering element in MusicXML files.

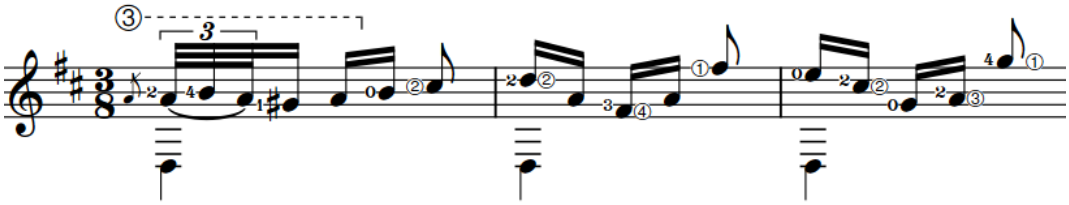
MusicXML files exported from Finale typically represent fingerings in the correct way. However, because Sibelius does not use the fingering element, Dorico Elements cannot import fingerings from MusicXML files exported by Sibelius.

String indicators

String indicators are commonly used in guitar music to tell performers the string on which they should play a note, particularly for pitches that are possible on multiple strings.

String indicators show the string number inside a circle enclosure, optionally with a dashed line to indicate they apply to a range of notes. Open pitches commonly appear as a zero without an enclosure.

In Dorico Elements, string indicators for stopped pitches appear in a plain font while string indicators for open strings use the fingering font.



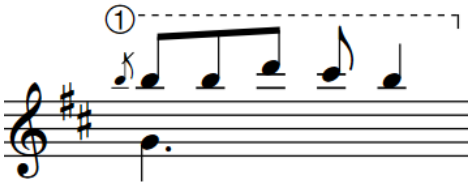
A phrase with string indicators and left-hand fingerings

There are two types of string indicators in Dorico Elements, which you input in different ways.

String indicators outside the staff

String indicators outside the staff always appear inside circle enclosures. They automatically show dashed duration lines when they have duration to indicate that multiple notes are played on that string.

In Dorico Elements, string indicators outside the staff are considered playing techniques. You can select and delete them independently of the notes to which they apply. You can also change the duration line style of string indicators outside the staff in the same ways as for playing technique continuation lines.



String indicator outside the staff with duration line

String indicators inside the staff

String indicators inside the staff appear inside circle enclosures, except when they show open strings, which appear as a bold number zero without an enclosure. They automatically erase their backgrounds so they do not collide with staff lines. They appear to the left of noteheads by default but automatically appear to the right if left-hand fingerings are present.

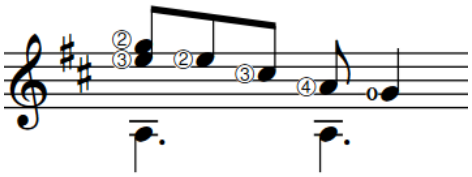
The string number shown in string indicators inside the staff is calculated automatically, but you can also specify the string manually.

String indicators inside the staff for stopped pitches are scaled-down versions of string indicators outside the staff.

In Dorico Elements, string indicators inside the staff are considered properties of the corresponding notes. You can only select them independently of their corresponding notes in Engrave mode.

NOTE

You can only show string indicators inside the staff on notes belonging to fretted instruments.



String indicators inside the staff, with the last one for an open string

RELATED LINKS

Fingerings for fretted instruments on page 880
Input methods for playing techniques, pedal lines, string indicators, and harp pedal diagrams on page 351
Playing techniques on page 1062
Playing technique duration on page 1068
Playing technique continuation lines on page 1067
Lengthening/Shortening items on page 410
Assigning notes to strings on page 947

Deleting string indicators

You can remove string indicators inside the staff from notes after you have input them. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains. However, because string indicators inside the staff are properties of notes rather than separate items, you cannot select and delete them as you would for other items.

NOTE

These steps only apply to string indicators inside the staff. You can delete string indicators outside the staff in the same ways as for other items.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the notes from which you want to remove string indicators inside the staff. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, deactivate **Show** in the **String Indicators** group.

RESULT

String indicators inside the staff are removed from the selected notes. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

RELATED LINKS
Deleting notes/items on page 431
Inputting string indicators inside the staff on page 366
Changing the property scope on page 617
Copying property settings to other layouts/frame chains on page 599

Positions of string indicators

String indicators outside the staff are placed above it by default. In multiple-voice contexts, string indicators for the up-stem voices are placed above the staff and string indicators for the down-stem voices are placed below the staff.

String indicators inside the staff automatically erase their backgrounds so they do not collide with staff lines. They appear to the left of noteheads by default but automatically appear to the right if left-hand fingerings are present. You can change the notehead-relative position of string indicators individually.

You can move string indicators outside the staff to different rhythmic positions in Write mode. They are automatically positioned to avoid collisions. You can also change the staff-relative placement of string indicators outside the staff individually, in the same ways as for playing techniques.

You can move string indicators graphically in Engrave mode, but this does not change the rhythmic positions to which they are attached.

RELATED LINKS
Playing technique continuation lines on page 1067
Lengthening/Shortening items on page 410
Moving notes/items rhythmically on page 437
Moving items graphically on page 481
Changing the staff-relative placement of items on page 414

Changing the notehead-relative position of string indicators

By default, string indicators inside the staff appear to the left of noteheads when there are no left-hand fingerings and to the right of noteheads when there are left-hand fingerings. You can change the side of noteheads on which string indicators inside the staff appear individually. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

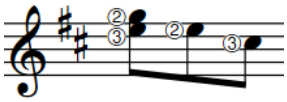
PROCEDURE

1. Select the string indicators inside the staff whose notehead-relative position you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Notehead-relative pos.** in the **String Indicators** group.
3. Choose one of the following options:
   - **Left**
   - **Right**

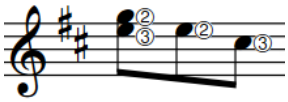
RESULT

The notehead-relative position of the selected string indicators is changed. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

EXAMPLE



String indicators to the left of noteheads



String indicators to the right of noteheads

Front matter

Front matter in Dorico Elements is a broad term that covers all information included before the first bar of music in scores.

Front matter includes musical information often added on pages before the first pages of scores, such as a title page, instrumentation list, program note, and performance instructions.

Front matter also includes information above the music on the first page of scores and parts, such as the dedication, title, subtitle, composer, and lyricist.

TIP

An efficient way of keeping information consistent across all layouts is to use tokens that refer to fields in the **Project Info** dialog. The default page templates in Dorico Elements contain tokens for the project title, lyricist, and composer on the first pages in layouts, and the flow title (score layouts) or layout name (part layouts) at the top of subsequent pages. Part layouts also automatically show the layout name in the top left of the first page.

RELATED LINKS

Project Info dialog on page 75
Flow names and flow titles on page 178
Tokens on page 607
Page templates on page 599
Frames on page 605
Page formatting on page 555
Hiding/Showing flow headings on page 567

Editing layout transposition text

You can override layout transposition token text in each layout independently; for example, if you want some layouts to display “Concert Pitch” but others to display “Full Score in C”.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-L** to open **Layout Options**.
2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts whose layout transposition text you want to edit.

   By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar, clicking and dragging across multiple layouts, **Shift**-clicking adjacent layouts, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking individual layouts.
3. In the category list, click **Page Setup**.
4. In the **Text Tokens** section, activate the following options, individually or together:
   - **Custom text for concert layout**
   - **Custom text for transposed layout**
5. Enter the text you want into the corresponding value fields.
6. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RELATED LINKS
Tokens on page 607
Layouts on page 165
Concert vs. transposed pitch on page 170
Making layouts transposing/concert pitch on page 169

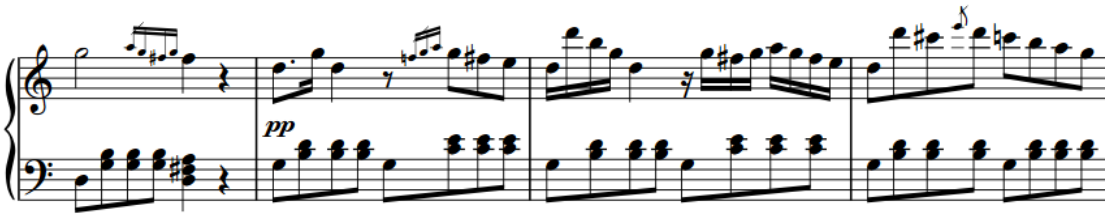
Grace notes

Grace notes are notes without a fixed duration, which are intended to be played quickly. They are scaled-down versions of normal notes, and are commonly shown with a slash through their stem.

Grace notes with slashed stems are known as “acciaccaturas” and are often played very fast. Grace notes without slashed stems are known as “appoggiaturas” and are often played slower than acciaccaturas. In Baroque music, appoggiaturas are often understood to last for a specific duration, based on the prevailing meter and the rhythmic value of the notehead to which they are attached. Therefore in Dorico Elements, slashed and unslashed grace notes are handled differently in playback.

Grace notes do not take up space rhythmically, as they are intended to be fitted into the space before the note to which they are attached, which is the note immediately to their right.

There can be multiple grace notes before a notehead. If there are two or more grace notes attached to the same notehead, and they have a rhythmic value that shows a flag on the stem, such as eighth notes (quavers) and 16th notes (semiquavers), they are automatically beamed together.



Multiple grace notes before notes

In Dorico Elements, grace notes are scaled to 3/5 the size of a normal notehead by default and are affected by your note spacing settings. There is a separate option specifically for grace note spacing.

You can add notations, such as slurs and articulations, to grace notes in the same ways as to normal notes, and you can transpose grace notes after they have been input.

RELATED LINKS

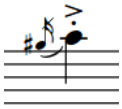
Inputting grace notes on page 239
Turning existing notes into grace notes on page 899
Grace note slashes on page 901
Grace notes in playback on page 904
Slur placement relative to grace notes on page 1157
Changing the pitch of individual notes on page 444
Inputting articulations on page 259
Inputting slurs on page 260
Note spacing on page 579

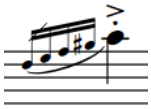
General placement conventions for grace notes

Grace notes function like normal notes in many ways, but there are some specific conventions about their stem direction, position relative to noteheads, and the placement of stem slashes.

Grace notes are always positioned before a notehead, even if they are intended to be played on the beat rather than before the beat. They are normally placed after a barline, so they can be positioned directly before the notehead to which they are attached. You can show grace notes before barlines instead; for example, if you have a group of three or more grace notes and want to reduce the gap between the barline and the first beat in the bar.

Grace note stem slashes appear at the beginning of grace note beams. If there is a single grace note, the slash appears across its stem and flag, if applicable, and extends either side of the stem.





Adding accidentals causes their spacing to readjust so that the accidentals are clearly legible, similar to normal notes.

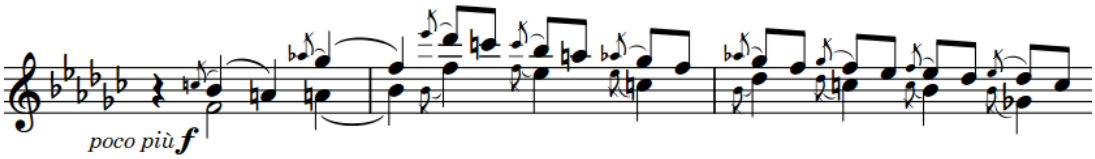
Articulations can be added to grace notes wherever they are most clearly legible, which is most likely outside the staff. Dorico Elements automatically places articulations on the stem-side of grace notes, and outside the staff if the stem or beam is within the staff.

Grace notes in multiple-voice contexts

According to accepted notation convention, grace notes appear stem up by default when there is only one voice on a staff, even if the notehead to which they are attached is stem down.

However, when there are multiple voices on the staff, all notes in the upper voices appear stem up and all notes in the lower voices appear stem down, including grace notes. This also affects the curvature direction of slurs.

This adjustment happens automatically in Dorico Elements, but you can also change the stem direction of grace notes manually.



Slurs relative to grace notes

By default, slurs starting on grace notes and ending on tie chains end on the first note of the tie chain. You can change the position of individual slurs relative to tie chains, including those starting from grace notes.

TIP

You can change the note spacing scale factor for grace notes in each layout independently on the **Note Spacing** page in **Layout Options**.

RELATED LINKS
Showing grace notes before/after barlines on page 900
Slur placement relative to grace notes on page 1157
Slur position relative to tie chains on page 1156
Changing the stem direction of notes on page 963
Layout Options dialog on page 677

Turning existing notes into grace notes

You can turn any existing notes into grace notes; for example, if you want to edit music you input using MIDI recording.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the notes that you want to turn into grace notes.
2. Optional: Change the grace note type to slashed/unslashed in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Alt/Opt-/**.
   - In the Notes toolbox, click and hold **Grace Notes**, then click **Unslashed Grace Notes** or **Slashed Grace Notes**.
3. Do one of the following:
   - Press **/**.
   - In the Notes toolbox, click **Grace Notes**.

RESULT

The selected notes are turned into grace notes with the same notated duration. However, any rhythm dots are removed.

By default, slashed grace notes attach to the rhythmic position following the last selected note in each range, while unslashed grace notes attach to the rhythmic position of the first selected note in each range.

TIP

You can change the default direction when turning existing notes into grace notes in **Preferences** > **Note Input and Editing** > **Editing**.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

You can change the duration of grace notes.

RELATED LINKS
Notes toolbox on page 187
Inputting grace notes on page 239
Changing the duration of notes on page 248
Changing the type of grace notes on page 901
Turning existing notes into tuplets on page 1273
Preferences dialog on page 58

Turning grace notes into normal notes

You can turn any existing grace notes into normal notes starting from their original rhythmic position; for example, if you want to turn a run of grace notes at the start of a flow into standard notes in a pick-up bar.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the grace notes you want to turn into normal notes.
2. Optional: If you want the selected grace notes to push subsequent notes to later rhythmic positions if required, press **I** to activate Insert mode.
3. Optional: If you activated Insert mode, choose the appropriate Insert mode scope.
4. Do one of the following:
   - Press **/**.
   - In the Notes toolbox, click **Grace Notes**.

RESULT

The selected grace notes are turned into normal notes with the same notated duration. For example, an eighth grace note becomes a standard eighth note.

If Insert mode was activated, subsequent existing notes are pushed to later rhythmic positions to accommodate the extra rhythmic durations if required. If Insert mode was deactivated, the grace notes expand and overwrite subsequent notes.

RELATED LINKS

Turning tuplets into normal notes on page 1273
Pick-up bars on page 1253
Insert mode on page 427
Insert mode scopes on page 428

Showing grace notes before/after barlines

By default, grace notes are positioned after barlines and directly before the notehead to which they apply, including for the first note in a bar. You can position individual grace notes before barlines; for example, so the first normal note in the bar is not pushed too far from the barline, or to indicate that grace notes are played before the beat.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the grace notes whose position relative to barlines you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate/deactivate **Grace note before barline** in the **Grace Notes** group.

RESULT

Grace notes at the selected rhythmic positions are positioned before barlines when the property is activated, and after barlines when the property is deactivated.

NOTE

This affects all grace notes at the selected rhythmic positions.

RELATED LINKS
Barlines on page 734
Inputting grace notes on page 239

Grace note size

Grace notes are smaller versions of normal notes, and are scaled down by a ratio that is set by default to 3/5 of a normal note.

You can change the size of grace notes individually in the same way as for normal notes.

RELATED LINKS
Changing the size of notes/items on page 413

Grace note slashes

Slashes shown diagonally across grace note stems are often used to distinguish different types of grace notes. Grace notes with slashed stems are known as acciaccaturas and are often played very fast. Grace notes without slashed stems are known as appoggiaturas and are often played slower than acciaccaturas.

In Dorico Elements, grace notes appear with slashed stems by default. You can change whether grace notes are slashed or unslashed during note input as well as by changing the type of existing grace notes.

Changing the type of grace notes

You can change the type of individual grace notes after they have been input. Grace notes have slashed stems by default, but you can change them to have unslashed stems.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the grace notes whose type you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, choose one of the following options for **Grace note type** in the **Grace Notes** group:
   - **Slashed stem**
   - **Unslashed stem**

RESULT

The selected grace notes are shown with slashed/unslashed stems.

TIP

You can also change the type of selected grace notes by pressing **Alt/Opt-/** or clicking and holding **Grace Notes** in the Notes toolbox, then clicking **Unslashed Grace Notes** or **Slashed Grace Notes**.

Moving slashes on grace note stems

You can change the vertical position of individual grace note slashes. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the grace notes whose slash positions you want to change.
2. In the Properties panel, activate the following properties, individually or together, in the **Grace Notes** group:
   - **Slash inset from stem tip**
   - **Slash offset to right**
3. Change the values in the value fields.

RESULT

Increasing **Slash inset from stem tip** moves grace note slashes further from the tips of stems and closer to the noteheads. Decreasing the value moves them closer to the tips of stems and further from the noteheads.

Increasing **Slash offset to right** moves grace note slashes to the right, decreasing the value moves them to the left.

If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

RELATED LINKS

Inputting grace notes on page 239
Changing the property scope on page 617
Copying property settings to other layouts/frame chains on page 599

Changing the length of grace note slashes

You can change the length of slashes on grace note stems individually. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the grace notes whose slash length you want to change.
2. In the Properties panel, activate the following properties, individually or together, in the **Grace Notes** group:
   - **Slash length**
   - **Slash protrusion from beam** (beamed grace notes only)

   NOTE

   Grace note slashes seem to disappear when you activate **Slash length** because activating the property resets the value to **0**.
3. Change the length and/or protrusion of the selected slashes by changing the values in the corresponding value fields.

RESULT

Increasing **Slash length** lengthens grace note slashes on both single grace notes and grace note beams, decreasing the value shortens grace note slashes.

Increasing **Slash protrusion from beam** increases how far slashes extend beyond grace note beams, decreasing the value decreases how far slashes extend beyond grace note beams.

If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

Grace note stems

Grace notes are scaled-down notes, so the length of grace note stems is determined by the default settings for the stem length of all notes.

Following accepted conventions, grace notes in Dorico Elements are stem up by default in any clef, regardless of the stem direction of the note to which they apply. The stem directions of grace notes are changed automatically when there are multiple voices on a staff, but you can change the stem direction of individual grace notes manually. You can also lengthen/shorten grace note stems in the same ways as for normal stems.

RELATED LINKS

Stems on page 961
Changing the stem direction of notes on page 963
Lengthening/Shortening stems on page 965
Hiding/Showing stems on page 966

Grace note beams

Dorico Elements automatically beams multiple adjacent grace notes together if they are an eighth note (quaver) or shorter in duration.

Like all beams, grace note beams ideally follow the accepted standards for beam placement relative to staff lines, in order to avoid wedges. However, because grace notes are smaller than normal notes, this can lead to extreme slants in grace note beams.

You can adjust the slants of individual grace note beams in the same ways as for normal beams.

RELATED LINKS
Beaming on page 754

Grace notes in playback

Slashed and unslashed grace notes are handled differently in playback.

Slashed grace notes of any note duration, and unslashed grace notes a 16th note or shorter, play back before the beat with a single default sounding duration.

Unslashed grace notes an eighth note or longer play back on the beat. Their sounding duration is half the note duration of the note to which they are attached. For example, if an unslashed eighth note grace note is attached to a quarter note, both notes play back as if they were eighth notes.

RELATED LINKS
Inputting grace notes on page 239
Grace note slashes on page 901

Holds and pauses

Different notations are used to show where the established rhythmic flow of the music is interrupted, either with a moment of repose or a short silence, before continuing. The most subtle effect is produced by a tenuto mark, with more significant effects denoted with holds and pauses.

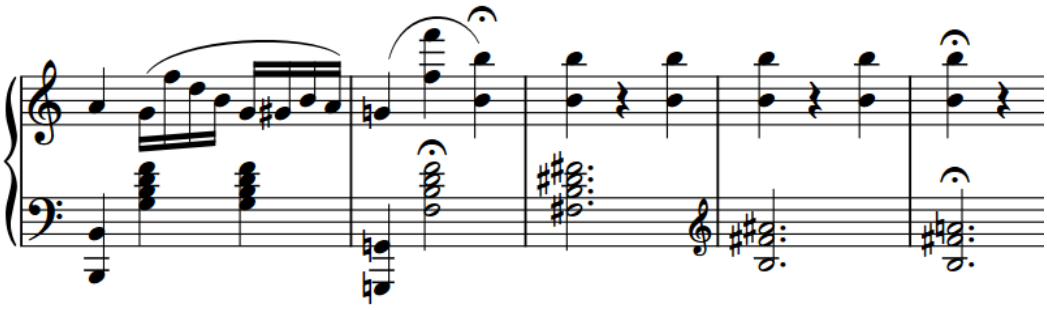
The duration of the break in the music intended by the hold or pause does not need to be specified. This leaves significant room for interpretation, even though the different styles of holds and pauses normally indicate larger or smaller breaks.

In Dorico Elements, there are the following types of holds and pauses:

Fermatas

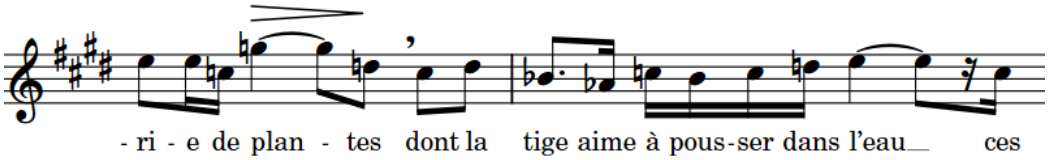
Fermatas indicate that a note is held for longer than its notated length, which applies to the whole ensemble. In Dorico Elements, fermatas exist globally at the corresponding rhythmic positions, meaning they are automatically shown on all staves and voices.

They are also known as “pauses” and informally sometimes called “birds’ eyes”.



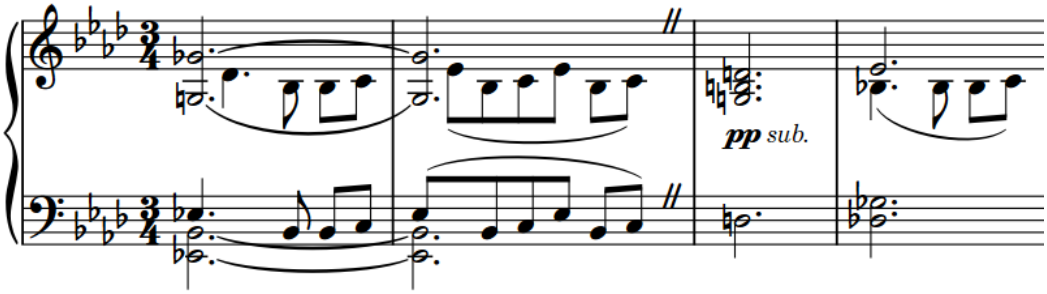
Breath marks

Breath marks show suitable places for players to breathe, or suggest how the music is phrased to create a similar effect.



Caesuras

Caesuras indicate that a note is sustained for its full value and is followed by a break in sound before continuing. In Dorico Elements, caesuras exist globally at the corresponding rhythmic positions, meaning they are automatically shown on all staves.



NOTE

Holds and pauses do not currently have an effect in playback, but this is planned for future versions.

RELATED LINKS
Input methods for holds and pauses on page 320
Types of fermatas on page 906
Types of breath marks on page 907
Types of caesuras on page 907

Types of fermatas

There are different types of fermatas available in Dorico Elements. Each fermata indicates a suggested pause duration whilst leaving room for interpretation.

Fermata	Description
Very short fermata	Indicates that a note is held only a fraction longer than the rhythm indicates.
Short fermata	Indicates that a note is held a little bit longer than the rhythm indicates.
Short fermata (Henze)	Indicates that a note is held a little bit longer than the rhythm indicates, as used by Hans Werner Henze.
Fermata	Indicates that a note is held for longer than the rhythm indicates.
Long fermata	Indicates that a note is held quite a lot longer than the rhythm indicates.
Long fermata (Henze)	Indicates that a note is held quite a lot longer than the rhythm indicates, as used by Hans Werner Henze.
Very long fermata	Indicates that a note is held for much longer than the rhythm indicates.
Curlew (Britten)	Indicates that a note or rest is held until the next synchronization point in asynchronous music, as used by Benjamin Britten.

Fermatas can be divided into two styles. Because their meanings overlap, it can be confusing for players if both styles are used in a single project.

Style	Very short fermata	Short fermata	Fermata	Long fermata	Very long fermata
Standard					
Henze	N/A				N/A

RELATED LINKS
Input methods for holds and pauses on page 320
Changing existing items on page 412

Types of breath marks

There are different types of breath marks available in Dorico Elements. Breath marks indicate a suitable place for a player to take a breath, or create a musical effect like a breath.

Comma-like	Tick-like	Upbow-like	Salzedo

Types of caesuras

There are different types of caesuras available in Dorico Elements. All caesuras indicate a break in sound, but different types are often needed for different styles of musical scores.

Caesura	Thick caesura	Short caesura	Curved caesura	Single-stroke caesura
Two diagonal slashes	Two thick diagonal slashes	Two straight, vertical slashes	Two curved diagonal slashes	One straight, vertical slash

If you intend to communicate a specific length of hold or gap with each type of caesura, we recommend that you consider adding a legend, as different players may interpret these symbols differently.

RELATED LINKS
Input methods for holds and pauses on page 320
Changing existing items on page 412

Positions of holds and pauses

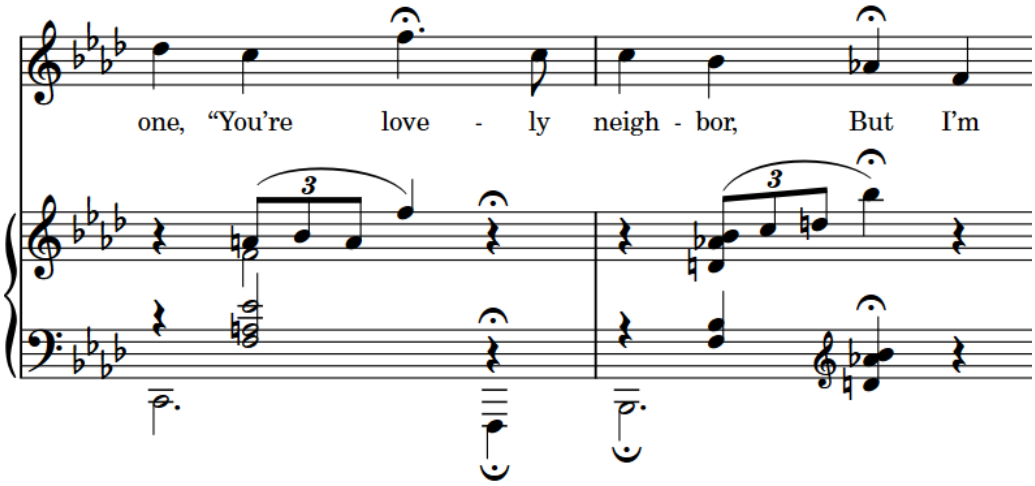
Holds and pauses are placed above the staff by default in single-voice contexts, and are shown on all staves at the closest rhythmic position available; for example, if a single staff has a fermata on the last beat in the bar, it is shown above the bar rests on the other empty staves. For staves with multiple voices, fermatas are also shown inverted below the staff.

You can move holds and pauses to different rhythmic positions in Write mode. They are automatically positioned to avoid collisions.

You can move holds and pauses graphically in Engrave mode; however, this does not change the rhythmic positions to which they are attached.

Fermatas

Fermatas are positioned horizontally so that they are centered on front noteheads in the first voice column, regardless of the stem direction of notes.



Fermatas affect the overall tempo of the piece, so all players must be able to see where they occur. Therefore, fermatas are shown on all staves at the same rhythmic position, or the rhythmic position of the note, chord, or rest that corresponds with the end of the fermata, including over a bar rest if a staff has no notes in that bar.

Breath marks

Breath marks are placed above the top line of the staff by default, at the end of the note to which they apply; that is, they appear just before the following note.

Breath marks apply only to the staff to which they were added, as they do not affect the overall tempo, but instead only indicate to a single player or group of players a suitable place to break their line in order to breathe.

Caesuras

Caesuras are positioned at the top of the staff, with the top staff line passing through the middle of the caesura and the bottom of the caesura resting on the second staff line. They are commonly placed at the end of a bar, before the barline.

Caesuras are automatically added to all staves at the same rhythmic position, immediately to the left of the notehead or barline to which they were input. They are not linked to noteheads, and adjust note spacing to create a clear gap.

RELATED LINKS
Input methods for holds and pauses on page 320
Moving notes/items rhythmically on page 437
Moving items graphically on page 481

Multiple holds and pauses at the same rhythmic position

Because fermatas apply to all staves, only one type of fermata can exist at the same rhythmic position. For example, you cannot have a short fermata on one staff and a long fermata at the same rhythmic position on another staff.

A Britten curlew can be used at the same rhythmic position as another kind of fermata, but it cannot exist simultaneously with any breath mark. This is the only exception in Dorico Elements.

Caesuras can co-exist with any type of breath mark, but you cannot have a caesura and a fermata at the same rhythmic position.

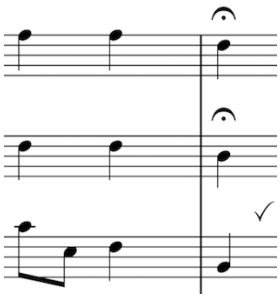
RELATED LINKS
Input methods for holds and pauses on page 320
Moving notes/items rhythmically on page 437
Rhythmic position on page 26

Changes to fermatas on single staves

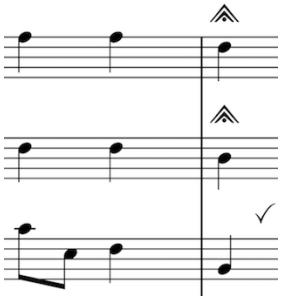
Changing the type of fermata or caesura on one staff automatically changes the type on all staves at that rhythmic position, as a pause at one particular rhythmic position can only be of one duration.

However, if you override a particular fermata on one staff, for example, by changing it to a Britten curlew or a breath mark, changing the existing fermata on another staff does not change the marking on the overridden staff. Deleting the marking on the overridden staff reverts that marking to match the fermata on the other staves.

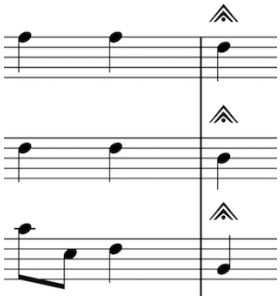
For example, changing a fermata to a breath mark changes the marking for only that staff. That note is not affected when the type of fermata on the other staves at that rhythmic position is changed.



The bottom staff is overridden to show a breath mark instead of a fermata.



The fermata is changed to a very short fermata, but the bottom staff is exempt as it was overridden to show a breath mark.



Deleting the breath mark from the bottom staff returns it to showing the fermata currently chosen for that rhythmic position.

Changing the number of fermatas per staff

You can change the maximum number of fermatas that appear on each staff at individual positions when there are multiple voices on a staff.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the fermatas whose maximum number per staff you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Max. fermatas per staff** in the **Holds and Pauses** group.
3. Select one of the following options from the menu:
   - **One per voice**
   - **One per each side of staff**
   - **One per staff**

RESULT

The number of fermatas shown at the selected positions is changed.

Positioning fermatas on barlines

You can position individual fermatas over a barline instead of over a note to indicate a gap before the start of the following bar.

NOTE

Fermatas cannot be positioned on barlines if **Max. fermatas per staff** is also activated.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

PROCEDURE

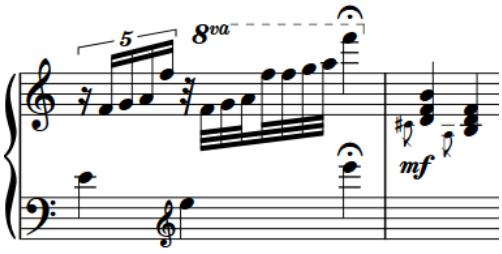
1. Select the fermatas you want to position over barlines. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Attach to barline** in the **Holds and Pauses** group.

RESULT

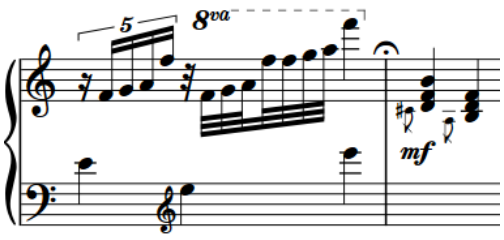
The selected fermatas are positioned above the barline at the end of the bars they were in originally, appearing only above staves that are not joined by the barline. Depending on the instrumentation, this may mean they only appear at the top of the system.

Deactivating **Attach to barline** returns the selected fermatas to their default positions.

EXAMPLE



Fermata input on last quarter note in the bar



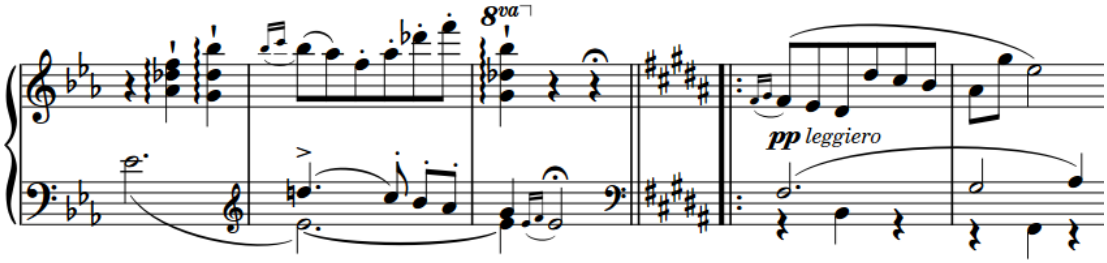
Fermata positioned on barline

Key signatures

Key signatures are the markings that show the current key of music by indicating which notes in the scale for that key are sharpened or flattened. They are shown at the start of each system on every applicable staff.

Traditionally, accidentals are organized following the pattern of the circle of fifths, which is different for sharp keys and flat keys.

Using key signatures saves space, as by indicating which notes are generally going to be sharp or flat in the music in one group at the start of each system, these notes do not need an accidental beside them every time they occur.



Once you have input a key signature, all notes you subsequently input follow the key signature; for example, if you input an **F** after inputting a G major key signature, an F♯ is input automatically.

Key signatures that do not show accidentals, such as A minor or open key signatures, are indicated by signposts.

Instruments that do not usually have key signatures, such as timpani or horn, have a **No key sig** version in Dorico Elements which never show key signatures. You can select the appropriate instrument type from the instrument picker when adding or changing instruments.

Flows without any key signatures are treated as if there were an open/atonal key signature rather than A minor or C major.

By default, key signatures apply to all staves. However, there are certain situations, such as in polytonal music, where some parts require their own key signature, independently of the rest of the ensemble. You can input key signatures that apply to all staves or only apply to single staves in Dorico Elements.

In Dorico Elements, key signatures exist within the overarching tonality system for your project. The only tonality system that comes as standard in Dorico Elements is 12-EDO.

NOTE

- You cannot hide key signatures as they provide crucial information about the pitch of notes. If you do not want to see a key signature, you can input an open key signature or delete all key signatures from the flow or project.
- You do not have to input multiple simultaneous key signatures if you have transposing instruments in your score. Dorico Elements handles instrument transpositions automatically.

RELATED LINKS

Input methods for key signatures on page 265

Types of key signatures on page 913
Tonality systems on page 918
Instrument picker on page 109
Note input on page 210
Deleting notes/items on page 431
Transposing instruments on page 133
Concert vs. transposed pitch on page 170
MIDI Import Options dialog on page 86

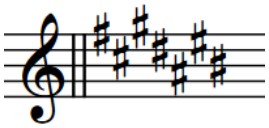
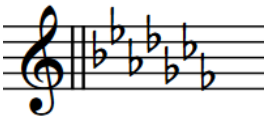
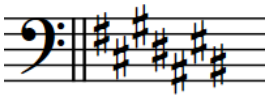
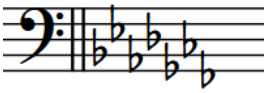
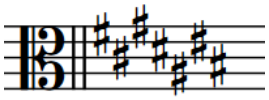
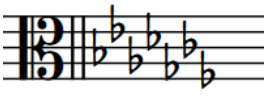
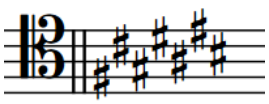
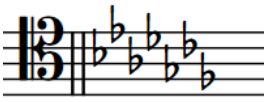
Key signature arrangements

Dorico Elements automatically follows conventions for the placement and appearance of key signatures, such as showing accidentals in the accepted circle of fifths order and positioning key signatures between clefs and time signatures.

The order in which accidentals are shown in key signatures is different for sharp keys and flat keys.

- For sharps: F♯, C♯, G♯, D♯, A♯, E♯, B♯
- For flats: B♭, E♭, A♭, D♭, G♭, C♭, F♭

Accidentals are arranged automatically in these orders in Dorico Elements for all standard Western key signatures. There is an accepted pattern for the placement of accidentals in a key signature, so that they fit inside the staff according to the current clef. The pattern of accidentals is the same in all clefs, apart from the tenor clef, which requires sharp key signatures to follow a different, ascending pattern to ensure the accidentals fit on the staff.

Clef	Arrangement of sharps	Arrangement of flats
Treble		
Bass		
Alto		
Tenor		

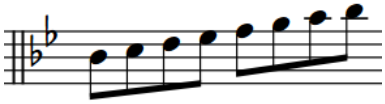
RELATED LINKS
Positions of key signatures on page 914

Types of key signatures

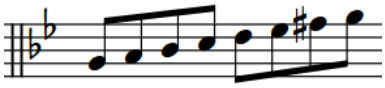
There are multiple types of key signatures in Dorico Elements, which can all be input, moved, and deleted in the same ways.

Major and minor key signatures

The key signature for a major key appears the same as the key signature for its relative minor, and vice versa. For example, B♭ major has two flats in its key signature. This is the same number of flats as for G minor, which is the relative minor key to B♭ major. The difference is that music in G minor usually has sharpened Fs, as the seventh degree of the scale is raised in minor keys. Therefore, if you input an F♯/G♭ after a G minor key signature, Dorico Elements prefers to spell it as F♯ in most cases, in order to follow the convention of harmonic minor keys.



A B flat major scale following a B flat major key signature



A G minor scale following a G minor key signature

Open key signature

Although open, or atonal, key signatures appear the same as C major or A minor key signatures because none shows any accidentals, open key signatures behave differently.

In an open key signature, the spelling of accidentals is based on the current direction of the music. If the music is rising, sharps are preferred, whereas if the music is falling, flats are preferred. There is no hierarchy of pitches in an open key signature, so the same pitch might be spelled differently each time it appears depending on its context, even within a few bars.

In a C major or A minor key signature, accidentals are spelled based on the context of the major or minor tonality implied. For example, in C major, sharps in general are preferred, whether the music is going up or going down. Similarly, in A minor, G♯ in particular is preferred, whether the music is going up or going down, as G♯ is the leading note in A minor.

No key signature

Some instruments are accustomed to seeing no key signatures in their parts, no matter the overall key of the piece. These instruments include timpani, percussion, horn, trumpet, and sometimes the harp. If you have added the **No key sig** version of these instruments, then no key signature is shown in their parts, even if they are a transposing instrument, such as horn or trumpet.

Any pitch can be input into these instruments, and they show accidentals if needed.

RELATED LINKS
Input methods for key signatures on page 265
Instrument picker on page 109
Adding instruments to players on page 133

Hiding/Showing key signatures at the start of systems

By default, key signatures are shown at the start of all systems. You can hide/show key signatures at the start of single-staff systems from the second system onwards in each flow independently.

Hiding key signatures on single-staff systems after the first system is a convention used in hand-copied lead sheets, usually in combination with hiding clefs and showing systemic barlines.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-N** to open **Notation Options**.
2. In the **Flows** list, select the flows in which you want to hide/show key signatures after the first system.

   By default, only the current flow is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other flows by clicking **Select All** in the action bar, clicking and dragging across multiple flows, **Shift**-clicking adjacent flows, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking individual flows.
3. In the category list, click **Key Signatures**.
4. Choose one of the following options for **Key signatures at start of systems following first system**:
   - **Show key signatures**
   - **Hide key signatures**
5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

Key signatures are hidden or shown at the start of single-staff systems from the second system onwards in the selected flows.

NOTE

- Key signature changes that occur at system breaks after the first system are always shown.
- Key signatures are always shown at the start of systems that contain more than one staff.

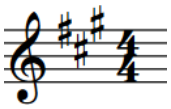
RELATED LINKS

Hiding/Showing systemic barlines on single-staff systems on page 738
Hiding/Showing clefs at the start of systems on page 818

Positions of key signatures

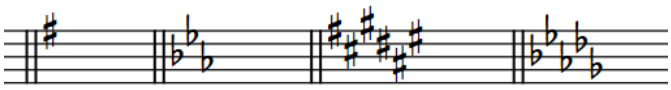
Key signatures are positioned between clefs and time signatures by default, and are shown on every staff that requires a key signature. They are not shown on staves for unpitched instruments.

Key signatures are shown at the start of a piece and at the start of subsequent movements, even if the music carries straight on and in the same key. Unlike time signatures, key signatures appear at the start of every system, even if the key signature has not changed. They apply until the end of the flow or until the next key signature change, whichever comes first.



The correct position for key signatures is between clefs and time signatures.

If a key signature change occurs during a piece or movement, it should be placed immediately after a barline. It is customary to have a double barline where a key signature change takes place, which is the default setting in Dorico Elements.



Examples of key signatures positioned after double barlines

You can move key signatures to new rhythmic positions in Write mode. They are automatically positioned correctly.

RELATED LINKS
Cautionary key signatures on page 915
Key signature arrangements on page 912
Moving notes/items rhythmically on page 437

Cautionary key signatures

When a key signature change occurs at a system break, either in the score or in a part, the new key signature is shown at the end of the first system as well as at the start of the new system.

This is sometimes considered a “cautionary key signature”, as players become used to seeing the key signature at the start of the system and therefore may miss a change of key signature if it is not conspicuously shown at the end of systems.

In Dorico Elements, the key signatures shown at the end of one system and at the start of the next system are the same item, not separate items. You cannot hide cautionary key signatures.

If the music is separate enough that you do not want to see a key signature at the end of a system and you cannot change where the system break occurs, you can separate the music by creating a new flow at the point of the system break.

RELATED LINKS
Flows on page 162
Splitting flows on page 470
Hiding/Showing key signatures at the start of systems on page 914
System breaks on page 586
Cautionary time signatures on page 1252
Clefs on page 816

Enharmonic equivalent key signatures

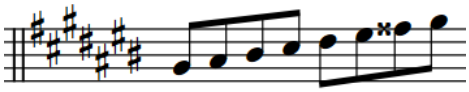
Enharmonic equivalent key signatures are keys with different names that include the same pitches, such as C♯ major and D♭ major. Dorico Elements follows the convention for transposing

to keys with the same type of accidental as the previous key, except where the enharmonic equivalent key signature has fewer accidentals.

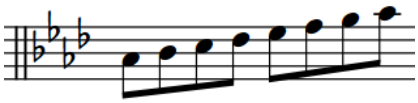
When transposing selections of notes, Dorico Elements prefers keys with the same type of accidental as the previous key signature. When choosing key signatures for transposing instruments, Dorico Elements prefers key signatures with the same type of accidental as the current concert pitch key.

However, there are some instances where you might prefer to transpose to a key with a different type of accidental as it has fewer accidentals than the enharmonic equivalent key. For example, C♯ major has seven sharps, whereas the enharmonic equivalent key of D♭ major only has five flats. This means the player has to remember the accidentals for fewer notes.

Transposing to an enharmonic equivalent key with fewer accidentals can have the added benefit of improving readability by avoiding double sharps or double flats. For example, transposing music from F♯ to G♯ requires the leading note to be spelled as an F𝄪, but transposing to A♭ instead means the leading note is G♮.



G♯ major requires a double sharp leading note



A♭ major, the enharmonic equivalent to G♯, does not require a double sharp leading note

By default, Dorico Elements selects an enharmonic equivalent key signature if it has fewer accidentals. You can change this setting in each flow independently.

How key signatures affect transposing instruments

If there is a key signature in the full score, it is transposed for a transposing instrument by the same degree as the transposing interval for the instrument. For example, in a project in E major, a B♭ clarinet part has a key of F♯ major, as a B♭ clarinet sounds a whole step (tone) below its notated pitch.

Instruments that do not show a key signature

Some instruments are accustomed to seeing no key signatures in their parts, no matter the overall key of the piece. These instruments include timpani, percussion, horn, trumpet, and sometimes the harp. If you have input the **No key sig** version of these instruments, then no key signature is shown in their parts, even if they are a transposing instrument, such as horn or trumpet.

You can still transpose music in the staves of these instruments, but they show accidentals as necessary, instead of showing a key signature.

RELATED LINKS
Notation Options dialog on page 679
Transpose dialog on page 446
Transposing selections on page 445
Respelling notes on page 449
Adding instruments to players on page 133
Concert vs. transposed pitch on page 170
Transposing instruments on page 133

Allowing/Disallowing enharmonic equivalent key signatures

By default, Dorico Elements selects enharmonic equivalent key signatures if they have fewer accidentals when transposing selections that include a key signature and in transposing layouts. You can change this setting in each flow independently; for example, if you want all layouts to have flats in their key signatures, regardless of the number of accidentals.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-N** to open **Notation Options**.
2. In the **Flows** list, select the flows in which you want to allow/disallow enharmonic equivalent key signatures.

   By default, only the current flow is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other flows by clicking **Select All** in the action bar, clicking and dragging across multiple flows, **Shift**-clicking adjacent flows, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking individual flows.
3. In the category list, click **Accidentals**.
4. In the **Transposition** section, activate/deactivate **Prefer enharmonic equivalent key signatures with fewer accidentals**.
5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

Enharmonic equivalent key signatures with fewer accidentals are allowed when the option is activated, and disallowed when the option is deactivated. This affects resulting key signatures when transposing selections that include a key signature and in transposing layouts.

Tonality systems

The term “tonality system” is used in Dorico Elements to encompass three crucial elements that together make up the concept of tonality.

The three elements that make up tonality systems are:

- A number of equal divisions of the octave, or EDO. For example, standard Western scales with half-step (semitone) steps have 12-EDO.
- A set of accidentals. This allows you to notate how much a note is raised or lowered.
- A key signature. In Dorico Elements, you can use any traditional Western key signature.

Dorico Elements provides the following tonality systems in each project by default:

- **Equal temperament (12-EDO)**: Contains twelve half-step (semitone) steps
- **Equal temperament (24-EDO, Gould arrows)**: Contains 24 quarter tone steps and uses Gould arrow quarter tone accidentals
- **Equal temperament (24-EDO, Stein-Zimmermann)**: Contains 24 quarter tone steps and uses Stein-Zimmermann quarter tone accidentals

You can find existing tonality systems in your project in the **Tonality System** section of the Key Signatures, Tonality Systems, and Accidentals panel.

RELATED LINKS
Key Signatures, Tonality Systems, and Accidentals panel on page 267

Equal Division of the Octave (EDO)

EDO stands for Equal Division of the Octave: the number of equal pieces, or intervals, into which an octave is divided.

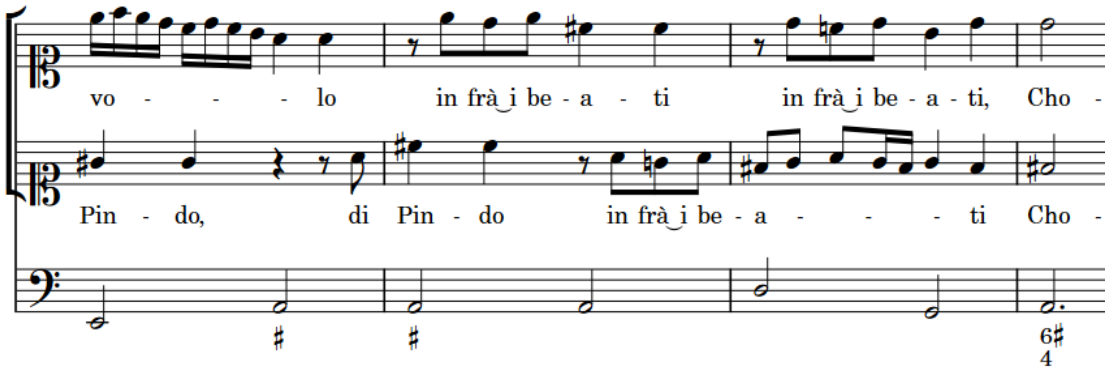
Traditional Western harmony is based on equal temperament, another method used to describe tonality systems, or 12-EDO, as the traditional scale from C-C is made up of twelve steps spread across the seven notes in the scale.

For example, between the notes A and B there are two steps, but between B and C there is one step. This is because in 12-EDO, each step represents a half-step (semitone), and there are two half-steps between A and B according to standard equal temperament, but only one half-step between B and C.

Other tonality systems can have different equal divisions of the octave; for example, in 24-EDO each octave division is a quarter tone. However, the only tonality system in Dorico Elements is 12-EDO.

Lyrics

In Dorico Elements, the term “lyrics” is used for all text that is sung by singers.



Lyrics for a soprano duet with basso continuo accompaniment

Lyrics are organized into lyric lines to ensure consistent horizontal alignment and to make showing verse numbers simple and accurate. There are different types of lyric lines for lyrics with different purposes, and the appearance of lyrics changes depending on their line type. For example, lyrics in chorus and translation lines are shown in an italic font by default.

In Dorico Elements, lyrics were designed so that it is simple to make changes to existing lyrics without having to re-input new lyrics each time. For example, you can change the syllable type of lyrics so that they are either followed or not followed by a hyphen.

When inputting lyrics, you can use key commands to switch between lyric lines, to change on which side of the staff lyrics are input, and to switch the lyric style between normal lyrics, chorus lyrics, and translation lyrics. You can also change the type of lyrics after they have been input.

You can input multiple lines of lyrics, chorus lyrics, and translations, both above or below staves. You can filter existing lyrics according to their type and lyric line.

RELATED LINKS
Inputting lyrics on page 374
Positions of lyrics on page 925
Lyric line numbers on page 935
Filters for lyrics on page 924
Lyric hyphens and lyric extender lines on page 934
Exporting lyrics on page 924

Types of lyrics

Lyrics are divided into different lyric types in Dorico Elements.

Lyric lines

Lyric lines contain normal lyrics and can be shown with verse numbers. They can be both below and above the staff.

Chorus lines

Chorus lines contain lyrics in an italic font and are placed between lyric lines. For example, if there are two lyric lines, the chorus line appears between Line 1 and Line 2.

Chorus lines do not have verse numbers.

Lyric line translations

Lyric line translations show the text in lyric lines or chorus lines in different languages. They are placed directly below the lyric line or chorus line of which they are a translation. They are shown in an italic font.

Each lyric line can have its own lyric line translation, including chorus lines.

Lyric line translations do not have verse numbers, as they are part of the line of which they are a translation.

You can input all types of lyrics using the lyrics popover. The icon shown on the left-hand side of the popover indicates the type of lyric currently being input.

RELATED LINKS
Lyric line numbers on page 935
Inputting lyrics on page 374
Lyrics popover on page 375

Changing the type of individual lyrics

You can change the type of individual lyrics after they have been input. For example, you can change lyrics into chorus lyrics or translation lyrics.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the individual lyrics whose type you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate/deactivate the following properties, individually or together, in the **Lyrics** group:
   - **Chorus**
   - **Is translation**

RESULT

- Activating **Chorus** changes the selected individual lyrics to chorus lyrics.
- Activating **Is translation** changes the selected lyrics to translation lyrics of the same lyric line number. For example, selecting lyrics in Line 2 and activating **Is translation** turns them into translation lyrics for Line 2.
- Activating both properties changes the selected lyrics to translation lyrics of the chorus.
- Deactivating both properties changes the selected lyrics to normal lyrics. Their line number is indicated by the number in **Line number** in the **Lyrics** group of the Properties panel.

NOTE

If other chorus lines exist at the same position on the side of the staff where you want to change your current selection to chorus lines, the two lines collide. To avoid this, change the type of the whole lyric line, which automatically avoids collisions.

RELATED LINKS
Showing lyrics in italics on page 933

Types of syllables in lyrics

There are different types of syllables in lyrics, depending on their position in words. The key you press to advance the popover indicates the syllable type for each lyric.

Dorico Elements defines lyrics as different syllables depending on how you advance the popover when inputting lyrics.

Whole word

Lyrics are considered a whole word if the lyric comes after a gap and is followed by a gap or a period.

No hyphens are shown either side of whole word lyrics. Extender lines can be shown after lyrics.

Start

Lyrics are considered the start syllable in a multi-syllabic word if the lyric comes after a gap, but is followed by a hyphen.

Hyphens are shown after start lyrics, which can be continuation hyphens depending on the distance before the next lyric in the same lyric line.

Middle

Lyrics are considered the middle syllable in a multi-syllabic word if the lyric comes after a hyphen, and is followed by a hyphen.

Hyphens are shown after middle lyrics, which can be continuation hyphens depending on the distance before the next lyric in the same lyric line.

End

Lyrics are considered the end syllable in a multi-syllabic word if the lyric comes after a hyphen but is followed by a gap or a period.

Extender lines can be shown after end lyrics.

RELATED LINKS
Inputting lyrics on page 374
Lyric hyphens and lyric extender lines on page 934
Positions of lyrics on page 925
Changing the alignment of lyrics relative to notes on page 927

Changing the syllable type of existing lyrics

You can change the syllable type of lyrics after they have been input.

For example, if you advanced the lyrics popover to the next note by pressing **Space** but you later want it to be followed by a hyphen, you can change its syllable type.

NOTE

Changing the syllable type changes whether a hyphen is shown after the selected lyrics, not before them. Therefore, if you want to show a hyphen before lyrics, you must change the syllable type of the lyrics immediately preceding them.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the lyrics whose syllable type you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, select one of the following options from the **Syllable type** menu in the **Lyrics** group:
   - **Whole word**
   - **Start**
   - **Middle**
   - **End**

RESULT

Lyrics with a syllable type of **Whole word** or **End** are followed by a space.

Lyrics with a syllable type of **Start** or **Middle** are followed by a hyphen.

Copying and pasting lyrics

You can copy and paste lyrics from both existing lyric lines in Dorico Elements and from external text editors; for example, if you want to copy a lyric line to a player who has different rhythms to the source but uses the same lyrics.

When copying text from outside Dorico Elements, you must format the text so it is suitably separated into syllables; for example, by adding hyphens in multi-syllabic words. This ensures Dorico Elements can correctly identify the characters required for each word/syllable and therefore format the resulting lyrics appropriately. There are automatic hyphenation tools that you can use, but results from these are not always reliable. Dorico Elements checks text you have copied to your clipboard to make sure it contains only single spaces and single hyphens for correct syllable input.

NOTE

You cannot currently copy and paste lyrics containing Chinese, Japanese, or Korean characters. This is planned for future versions.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the lyrics/text you want to copy. You can do this within Dorico Elements or externally.

   NOTE

   - If you are copying existing lyrics/text in Dorico Elements, you must be in Write mode.

- If you want to select many existing lyrics in Dorico Elements, you can use filters for lyric lines or you can select a single lyric and press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-A** multiple times to select the rest of the lyrics in the lyric line.

2. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-C** to copy the selected lyrics/text.
3. In Write mode, select the first note in the voice to which you want to copy lyrics.
4. Open the lyrics popover in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Shift-L**.
   - In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers**, then **Lyrics**.
5. Optional: Change the lyric type into which you will paste lyrics in one of the following ways:
   - To change the lyric line number, press **Down Arrow**.
   - To change to a lyric line above the staff, press **Shift**-**Up Arrow**.
   - To change to a chorus line, press **Up Arrow**.
   - To change to a translation lyric line, press **Alt/Opt**-**Down Arrow**.
6. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-V** to paste the first word/syllable of the copied lyrics/text.

   The lyrics popover automatically advances to the next note in the selected voice according to the source text. For example, for syllables followed by hyphens in the source, the popover advances as if you had pressed **-** (hyphen), which automatically shows hyphens after those syllables.
7. Optional: For words/syllables that you want to apply to two or more notes, you must advance the popover manually in one of the following ways:
   - After complete words or the final syllable in multi-syllabic words, press **Space**.
   - After syllables that are not the final syllable in multi-syllabic words, press **-** (hyphen).
   - After syllables that you do not want to be followed by an extension line or hyphen, press **Right Arrow**.
8. Continue pressing **Ctrl/Cmd-V** for each word/syllable you want to paste.

RESULT

The selected lyrics/text is pasted into the selected lyric line belonging to the voice in which you selected a note.

NOTE

Words/syllables are removed from your clipboard as you paste them. If you want to paste the same lyrics/text into another lyric line or staff, you must copy the source again.

RELATED LINKS

Edit Lyrics dialog on page 931
Lyric line numbers on page 935
Large selections on page 403
Inputting lyrics on page 374
Lyrics popover on page 375
Copying and pasting notes/items on page 433

Exporting lyrics

You can export all lyrics from all flows in the project to a plain text file; for example, if you want to create a libretto of all the text sung in a project.

PROCEDURE

1. Choose **File** > **Export** > **Lyrics** to open the File Explorer/macOS Finder.
2. Specify a name and location for the text file.
3. Click **Save**.

RESULT

All lyrics from all flows in the project are exported to a plain text file, which opens automatically in your default text editor.

Dorico Elements automatically removes hyphens between syllables, and adds contextual information for lyrics, such as their line number and the instrument to which they belong.

RELATED LINKS

File import and export on page 78
Lyric hyphens and lyric extender lines on page 934
Types of lyrics on page 919
Positions of lyrics on page 925
Exporting comments on page 476

Filters for lyrics

In Dorico Elements, lyrics filters allow you to select all lyrics of a specified type across your project or across a specific selection.

The following lyrics filters are available:

All Lyrics

Selects all types of lyrics in the current selection, with any lyric line number and placement above/below the staff.

Line 1

Selects only Line 1 lyrics and translation lyrics for Line 1 in the current selection, including Line 1 below the staff and Line 1 above the staff.

Line 2

Selects only Line 2 lyrics and translation lyrics for Line 2 in the current selection, including Line 2 below the staff and Line 2 above the staff.

Line 3

Selects only Line 3 lyrics and translation lyrics for Line 3 in the current selection, including Line 3 below the staff and Line 3 above the staff.

Line 4

Selects only Line 4 lyrics and translation lyrics for Line 4 in the current selection, including Line 4 below the staff and Line 4 above the staff.

Line 5

Selects only Line 5 lyrics and translation lyrics for Line 5 in the current selection, including Line 5 below the staff and Line 5 above the staff.

Above Staff

Selects all lyrics above the staff in the current selection. You can use this filter in addition to the other filters. For example, you can filter first by line number, and then filter again by staff-relative placement.

Below Staff

Selects all lyrics below the staff in the current selection. You can use this filter in addition to the other filters. For example, you can filter first by line number, and then filter again by staff-relative placement.

Chorus

Selects all chorus lyrics in the current selection.

Translations

Selects all translation lyrics in the current selection.

RELATED LINKS
Filters on page 407
Changing filters to select/deselect on page 408
Large selections on page 403

Selecting lyrics using filters

You can use lyric filters to select all lyrics of a specified type across your project or across a specific selection.

PREREQUISITE

You filter setting is set to **Select Only**.

PROCEDURE

1. In the music area, make a selection that includes all the lyrics you want to select.
   For example, press **Ctrl/Cmd-A** to select the whole flow.
2. Choose **Edit** > **Filter** > **Lyrics** > **[Lyrics type]**.

RESULT

All lyrics of the selected type in your selection are selected. For example, if you choose **Edit** > **Filter** > **Lyrics** > **Chorus**, all chorus lyrics in your selection are selected.

Positions of lyrics

Dorico Elements automatically positions lyrics and makes adjustments to accommodate variations in the length of lyrics, including adjusting the horizontal alignment of lyrics in melismatic music. However, you can also move lyrics manually.

You can move lyrics to different rhythmic positions in Write mode.

You can move individual lyrics graphically in Engrave mode, but this does not change the rhythmic positions to which they are attached.

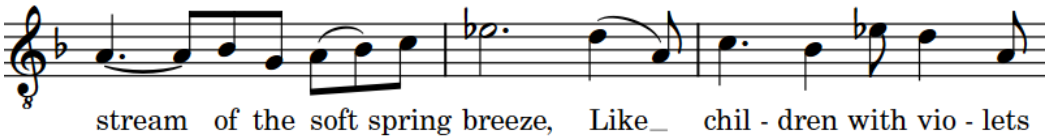
Positions of syllables

Lyrics typically coincide with notes. The number of notes sung on syllables or words determines the alignment of lyrics relative to notes:

- Single syllables, which are whole words or parts of longer words that are sung on only one note, are centered on their corresponding note.
- Melismata, which are syllables or words that are sung on more than one note, are left-aligned with the left side of the first note to which they apply.

The horizontal spacing of lyrics must be wide enough so that words or syllables do not overlap with the words or syllables on either side. For this reason, note spacing must sometimes be adjusted to accommodate lyrics.

To reduce how severely the note spacing is changed to accommodate lyrics, which can distort the appearance of rhythms, Dorico Elements allows the alignment of some lyrics to be adjusted relative to their corresponding notes. For example, if a long, single-syllable word on a long note follows another long, single-syllable word on a short note, the second word is moved a little to the right to give both words enough space.



In this musical phrase, the lyric "breeze" has been moved to the right to accommodate the lyric "spring" on the previous note.

NOTE

Moving lyrics graphically in Engrave mode overrides the automatic spacing for the selected lyrics. If you move a lyric whose position was automatically readjusted, the note spacing at that rhythmic position might change.

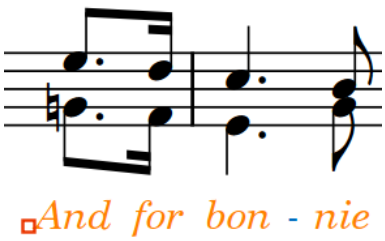
You can prevent Dorico Elements from considering lyrics in note spacing calculations using the **Make space for lyrics** option on the **Note Spacing** page in **Layout Options**; however, we recommend using this option with caution.

Placement of lyric lines

Lyrics are generally placed below the staff to which they apply and relative to other lyric lines according to their line number. For example, lyrics in Line 1 are placed at the top, including when there are multiple lyric lines above the staff.

If a line of lyrics is missing across the width of a whole system, no additional gap is left between the remaining lines of lyrics.

You can also move individual lyric lines vertically. In Engrave mode, when you select any lyric in a lyric line, a square handle appears on the bottom left of the first lyric in the line on that system. This allows you to adjust the vertical position of lyric lines independently of other lyric lines.



Square handle selected at the start of a lyric line in Engrave mode

EXAMPLE

You have three lines of lyrics, but one system does not have a second line of lyrics. On this system, the third line of lyrics is moved upwards, closer to the first line of lyrics.

If a subsequent system does not have a first line, but does have the second and third lines, then the second and third lines of lyrics are moved upwards. The second line of lyrics takes the place of the first line.

RELATED LINKS

Moving notes/items rhythmically on page 437
Moving items graphically on page 481
Moving lyric lines vertically on page 929
Changing the line number and type of lyric lines on page 936
Changing the staff-relative placement of lyric lines on page 928
Layout Options dialog on page 677
Per-layout note spacing options on page 580

Changing the alignment of lyrics relative to notes

You can change the horizontal alignment of individual lyrics relative to notes; for example, if you want to force lyrics at the same position on multiple staves with different default alignments to have the same alignment. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

There is no default setting for the alignment of lyrics relative to notes, as Dorico Elements automatically adjusts the horizontal position of lyrics to minimize note spacing changes. By default, lyrics on single noteheads are center-aligned, and lyrics spanning multiple noteheads are left-aligned.

NOTE

Changing the alignment of lyrics manually overrides Dorico Elements's automatic spacing for the selected lyrics, meaning that note spacing at the affected rhythmic positions might change.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

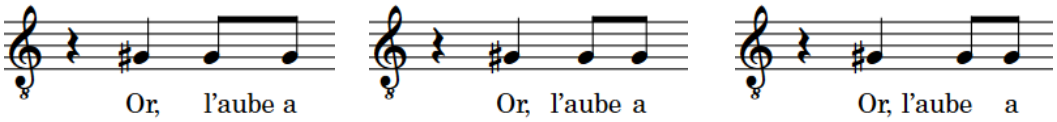
1. Select the lyrics whose alignment you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Lyric text alignment** in the **Lyrics** group.
3. Select one of the following alignment options from the menu:
   - **Left**
   - **Center**
   - **Right**

RESULT

The alignment of the selected lyrics is changed. Note spacing is automatically adjusted to avoid collisions with adjacent lyrics.

If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

EXAMPLE



Left-aligned lyric "l'aube" Center-aligned lyric "l'aube" Right-aligned lyric "l'aube"

RELATED LINKS
Types of syllables in lyrics on page 921
Hiding/Showing zones on page 44
Changing the property scope on page 617
Copying property settings to other layouts/frame chains on page 599

Changing the staff-relative placement of lyric lines

You can show whole lyric lines either above or below the staff after they have been input.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select a lyric in each line whose staff-relative placement you want to change.

   TIP

   You can also make a selection and use the lyric filters to select different lyric lines according to their line numbers and staff-relative placement.

2. Choose one of the following staff-relative placements:
   - Choose **Edit** > **Notations** > **Lyrics** > **Placement** > **Above**.
   - Choose **Edit** > **Notations** > **Lyrics** > **Placement** > **Below**.

   TIP

   You can also choose these options from the context menu.

RESULT

The staff-relative placement of the whole lyric lines in which you selected lyrics is changed.

NOTE

If other lyric lines with the same lyric line number exist at the same position on the side of the staff to which you want to change your current selection, the two lines switch sides. For example, if there is already a Line 2 above the staff at the position where you want to change the placement of Line 2 below the staff, then the existing Line 2 above the staff is placed below the staff to accommodate your most recent preference.

RELATED LINKS
Lyric line numbers on page 935
Filters for lyrics on page 924

Changing the staff-relative placement of individual lyrics

You can show individual lyrics either above or below the staff, independently of the staff-relative placement of their lyric line. For example, to clarify the lyrics for each part when two voices on the same staff have different rhythms.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the lyrics whose staff-relative placement you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, choose one of the following options for **Line placement** in the **Lyrics** group:
   - **Above**
   - **Below**

RESULT

The staff-relative placement of the selected lyrics is changed.

NOTE

If other lyric lines with the same lyric line number already exist at the same position on the same side of the staff, the two lines collide. To avoid this, you can change the lyric line number of one of the lyric lines, for example.

Moving lyric lines vertically

You can move lyric lines graphically upwards/downwards on a per-system basis, independently of other layouts and your project-wide settings. For example, if the shapes of phrases on certain systems make lyric lines appear unevenly centered between staves.

NOTE

- You cannot move individual lyrics upwards/downwards; instead, you can change their lyric line number or staff-relative placement.
- We recommend that you add extra pages and finish laying out your pages before moving individual lyric lines vertically, as lyric line offsets are automatically deleted if the frame in which they occur changes. For example, if you move lyric lines individually and then add a blank page at the start of the layout, all of the individual lyric line offsets in the layout are deleted.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select any of the following in each system where you want to move lyric lines vertically:
   - Any lyric in each lyric line you want to move vertically.
   - The handles on the bottom left of the first lyric on each lyric line you want to move vertically.

NOTE

When using the mouse, you must only select handles at the start of each lyric line.

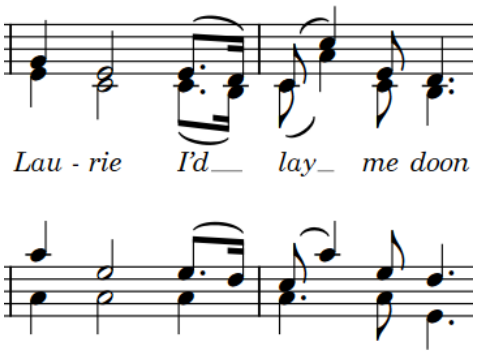
2. Move the selected lyric lines upwards/downwards in any of the following ways:
   - To move them a standard amount, press **Alt/Opt-Up Arrow** / **Alt/Opt-Down Arrow**. This moves lyric lines by 1/4 space per press.
   - To move them a large amount, press **Ctrl/Cmd-Alt/Opt-Up Arrow** / **Ctrl/Cmd-Alt/Opt-Down Arrow**. This moves lyric lines by 1 space per press.
   - To move them a moderate amount, press **Shift-Alt/Opt-Up Arrow** / **Shift-Alt/Opt-Down Arrow**. This moves lyric lines by 1/2 space per press.
   - To move them a small amount, press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-Alt/Opt-Up Arrow** / **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-Alt/Opt-Down Arrow**. This moves lyric lines by 1/32 space per press.
   - Click and drag the handles upwards/downwards.

RESULT

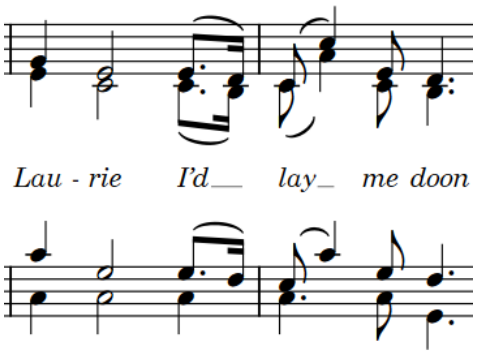
The selected lyric lines are moved upwards/downwards on the selected systems. This does not affect the vertical offset of any other lyric lines on those systems or the same lyric lines in other layouts.

EXAMPLE

Because of the shape of the music in this example, the default vertical alignment of the chorus in the middle of the three lyric lines for the verses in the previous bar causes the chorus to appear much closer to notes on the top staff than the bottom staff. Moving the chorus line downwards makes it appear more evenly distributed between the staves.



Default chorus placement



Chorus line moved downwards

RELATED LINKS

Changing the line number of individual lyrics on page 937
Changing the type of individual lyrics on page 920

Lyric text editing

Proofreading lyrics can be challenging, because lyrics are spaced more widely than regular text and individual words are often split up over large horizontal distances. In Dorico Elements, you

can change the text and formatting of individual lyrics, including viewing entire lyric lines in a single dialog.

Changing the text of existing lyrics

You can change the text of lyrics after they have been input; for example, to correct misspellings.

NOTE

- You can only change one lyric at a time when following these steps. To edit multiple lyrics at once, you can use the **Edit Lyrics** dialog.
- If you want to edit the formatting of individual lyrics, you can use the **Edit Lyric** dialog. However, any edits you have made to the formatting of individual lyrics are removed when you change their text using the popover.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the lyric whose text you want to change.
2. Press **Return** or **Shift-L** to open the lyrics popover.
3. Change the existing text in the lyrics popover.
4. Optional: If you want to change other existing lyrics, advance the popover in one of the following ways:
   - To advance the popover to the next note if you entered a complete word, or the final syllable in a multi-syllabic word, press **Space**.

     Existing lyrics are automatically selected in the popover when you press **Space**.
   - To advance the popover to the next note if you entered one syllable of a multi-syllabic word, press **-**.
   - To move the cursor one character to the right, press **Right Arrow**.
   - To move the cursor one character to the left, press **Left Arrow**.

     The cursor automatically moves to the next/previous lyric/note if you keep pressing the arrow keys.
5. Press **Return** or **Esc** to close the popover when you have finished changing lyrics.

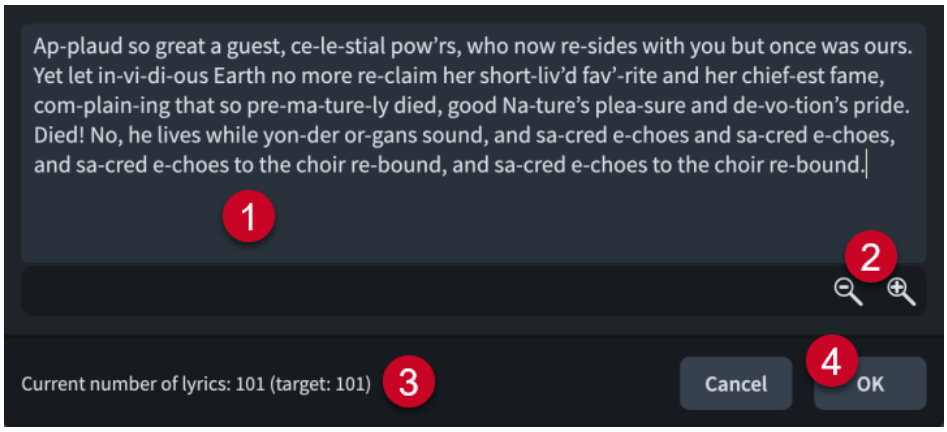
   The popover closes automatically when you reach the last note on the staff.

Edit Lyrics dialog

The **Edit Lyrics** dialog allows you to view and edit entire lyric lines in one place and with the text displayed with consistent spacing. This is more convenient than changing each word/syllable individually alongside the music, where lyrics can be split up over large horizontal distances.

- You can open the **Edit Lyrics** dialog by selecting at least one lyric and choosing **Edit** > **Notations** > **Lyrics** > **Edit Line of Lyrics**. You can also choose this option from the context menu.

The dialog shows all lyrics in the same lyric line as the selected lyric and allows you to edit the lyrics, such as fixing misspellings, adding commas, or changing where in a word the hyphen is placed. If you selected multiple lyrics to open the dialog, Dorico Elements populates the dialog with the lyric line of the earliest lyric on the highest staff you selected.



The **Edit Lyrics** dialog comprises the following:

1 **Text editor**

Allows you to edit all the lyrics in the selected lyric line in the current flow, with hyphens and spaces as appropriate. For example, you can add a comma after the final syllable in a line for a poem setting or replace a hyphen with a space.

NOTE

You cannot add, delete, or change the duration/rhythmic position of lyrics, such as the number of notes to which each lyric applies.

2 **Zoom controls**

Allow you to increase/decrease the size of text in the dialog.

3 **Current number of lyrics**

Displays the number of lyrics currently shown in the text editor and the target number of lyrics in the lyric line. The target number is the number of lyrics that already exists in the selected lyric line in the flow.

The current number of lyrics updates automatically as you work in the dialog. Dorico Elements requires the current number and target number of lyrics to match before you can confirm the dialog.

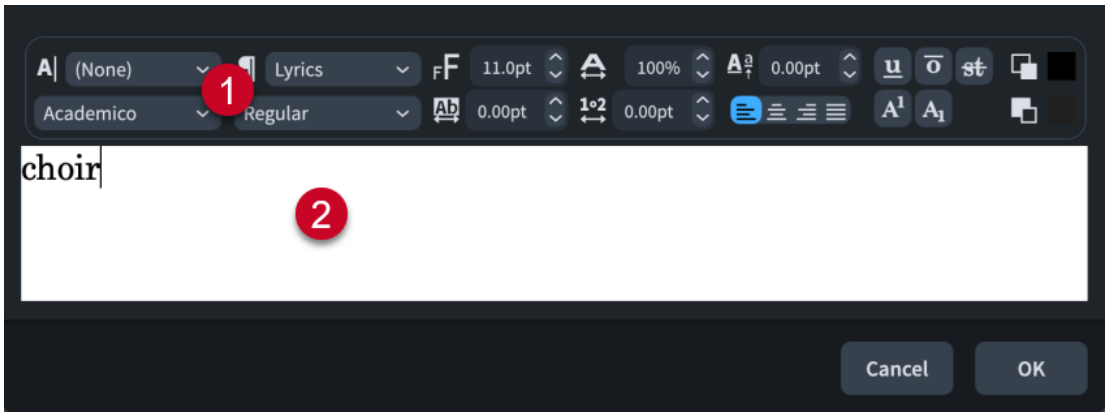
4 **OK button**

Allows you to confirm your changes and close the dialog. You can only confirm the dialog when the current number and target number of lyrics match.

Edit Lyric dialog

The **Edit Lyric** dialog allows you to edit the formatting of individual lyrics, such as making single characters underlined.

- You can open the **Edit Lyric** dialog by selecting a lyric and choosing **Edit** > **Notations** > **Lyrics** > **Edit Single Lyric**. You can also choose this option from the context menu.



The **Edit Lyric** dialog comprises the following:

1 **Text editor options**

Allows you to customize the font, size, and formatting of the selected part of the lyric.

2 **Text editing area**

Shows the current text for the lyric. You can select any part of the lyric and edit it independently of other parts; for example, if you want some characters to appear underlined.

RELATED LINKS

Text editor options in Write mode on page 371
Changing the paragraph style used for lyrics on page 934
Resetting the appearance of items on page 415

Showing lyrics in italics

You can show individual lyrics in an italic font without changing their paragraph style, lyric type, or staff-relative placement. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

TIP

- If you want to show lyrics in an italic font because they are intended to be either chorus lyrics or translation lyrics, you can change their lyric type instead.
- You can use the **Edit Lyric** dialog to show individual characters in lyrics in italics.
-

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the lyrics you want to show in an italic font. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Italic** in the **Lyrics** group.

RESULT

The selected lyrics are shown in an italic font. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

RELATED LINKS

Types of lyrics on page 919
Lyric line numbers on page 935
Lyric hyphens and lyric extender lines on page 934
Edit Lyric dialog on page 932
Changing the property scope on page 617
Copying property settings to other layouts/frame chains on page 599

Changing the paragraph style used for lyrics

You can change the paragraph style used for individual lyrics; for example, if you want to use narrower paragraph styles for lyrics on tightly spaced systems. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the lyrics whose paragraph style you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Paragraph style** in the **Lyrics** group.
3. Select a paragraph style from the menu.

RESULT

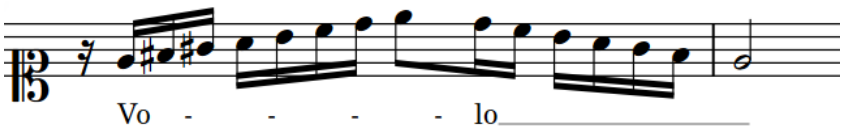
The paragraph style used for the selected lyrics is changed. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

RELATED LINKS

Types of lyrics on page 919
Lyric line numbers on page 935
Lyric hyphens and lyric extender lines on page 934

Lyric hyphens and lyric extender lines

Lyric hyphens indicate that individual lyrics are syllables within multi-syllabic words; for example, “Hal-le-lu-jah”. Lyric extender lines indicate that individual lyrics, either whole words or the last syllables in multi-syllabic words, extend across multiple notes.

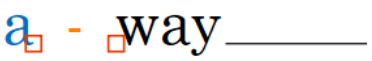


A phrase containing hyphens and an extender line

Dorico Elements automatically shows lyric hyphens when you advance the lyrics popover by pressing **-** between syllables, and lyric extender lines when you advance the lyrics popover by pressing **Space** multiple times after an entry, provided there is sufficient horizontal space between the end of the lyric and the end position of the extender line. Lyric extender lines end at the right edge of the last notehead to which they apply.

In Engrave mode, lyric hyphens and lyric extender lines have two square handles, one at the start and one at the end. You can move whole lyric hyphens and lyric extenders lines, and you can also move their handles independently of each other. This allows you to lengthen/shorten lyric hyphens and extender lines. For lyric hyphens, this increases/decreases the space in which lyric hyphens are shown and can result in more/fewer hyphens appearing.

Lyric extender line with handles shown



Lyric hyphen with handles shown

The start handles of lyric extender lines are attached to the lyrics from which they extend, and the start handles and end handles of lyric hyphens are attached to the lyrics on each side. If you move either of those lyrics, the corresponding lyric extender line or hyphen handles also move.

NOTE

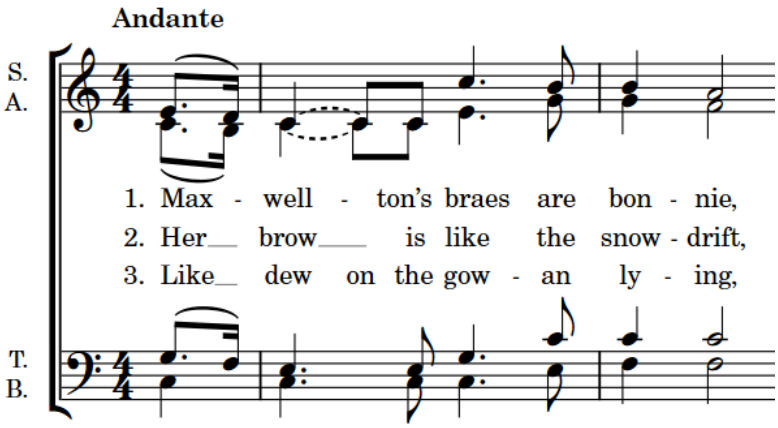
You cannot move lyric extender lines or hyphens upwards/downwards, as their vertical position is determined by their lyric line number and the vertical position of their lyric line.

RELATED LINKS
Inputting lyrics on page 374
Navigation during lyric input on page 376
Moving items graphically on page 481

Lyric line numbers

Lyric line numbers are used to organize lyrics when a single musical passage can have different lyrics sung to it, such as music that contains multiple verses. In Dorico Elements, you can specify the line number of lyrics as you input them and by changing the line number of existing lyrics.

For example, if you input lyrics in Line 3 but later want to change those lyrics to Line 4 because you want to input different lyrics as Line 3, you can change your current Line 3 into Line 4, and then input a new line of lyrics as Line 3. The spacing is automatically adjusted to show lyric lines in the correct order.



The start of a choral piece with three lyric lines for its three verses

In Dorico Elements, you can have multiple lines of lyrics both above and below the same staff. Turning lyric lines into chorus lyric lines or lyric line translations changes both their placement and appearance as chorus lyrics generally use an italic font.

RELATED LINKS
Verse numbers on page 938
Filters for lyrics on page 924
Positions of lyrics on page 925
Showing lyrics in italics on page 933

Changing the line number and type of lyric lines

You can change the lyric line number of whole lyric lines after they have been input. You can also change whole lyric lines to chorus lines and lyric line translations.

For example, you can change the existing Line 1 into a lyric translation of Line 4, or change Line 2 into a chorus line.

TIP

To identify which line you are working on, select a syllable in the line of lyrics and check the number in the **Line number** value field in the **Lyrics** group of the Properties panel.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select a lyric in the line whose lyric line type you want to change. The lyric line can be above or below the staff.

   TIP

   You can also make a selection and use the lyric filters to select different lyric lines according to their line numbers.

2. Change the line number and/or type of the selected lyric line in one of the following ways:
   - Choose **Edit** > **Notations** > **Lyrics** > **Line** > **[Line number]**.
   - Choose **Edit** > **Notations** > **Lyrics** > **Line** > **Chorus**.
   - Choose **Edit** > **Notations** > **Lyrics** > **Translations** > **[Line number Translation]**.
   - Choose **Edit** > **Notations** > **Lyrics** > **Translations** > **Chorus Translation**.

TIP

You can also choose these options from the context menu.

RESULT

The line number or type of the whole lyric line of the selected lyric is changed.

NOTE

The position of the selected lyric line relative to other lyric lines at the same position might be changed. For example, if there were two lyric lines and you changed Line 1 to Line 3, it now appears below Line 2.

If a lyric line with the same number already exists at the same position on the same side of the staff, the two lines switch. For example, if there is already a Line 1 at the rhythmic position where you want to change Line 2 to Line 1, then the existing Line 1 becomes Line 2 to accommodate your most recent preference. The same applies to chorus lines and lyric line translations.

RELATED LINKS

Types of lyrics on page 919
Filters for lyrics on page 924

Changing the line number of individual lyrics

You can change the lyric line number of individually selected lyrics after they have been input.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the individual lyrics whose line number you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, change the value for **Lyric number** in the **Lyrics** group.

RESULT

The line number of the selected lyrics is changed to match the value in the value field.

NOTE

The position of the selected lyrics relative to other lyric lines might be changed. For example, if there were two lyric lines and you changed lyrics in Line 1 to Line 3, they now appear below Line 2.

Verse numbers

Verse numbers indicate the order in which lyrics are sung when multiple lines of lyrics share the same musical passage. They are commonly used in hymns and song sheets.

Depending on the type of music you are writing, verse numbers might not be appropriate. Therefore, hiding/showing verse numbers in Dorico Elements is optional. By default, verse numbers are not shown. You can hide/show verse numbers on individually selected lyrics.

NOTE

Lyric line translations are part of the lyric line of which they are a translation so do not have their own verse number.

Hiding/Showing verse numbers

You can hide/show verse numbers on individual lyrics; for example, if you want to show the verse number at the start of every system.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the lyrics before which you want to hide/show verse numbers. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate/deactivate **Show verse number** in the **Lyrics** group.
3. Activate/Deactivate the corresponding checkbox.

RESULT

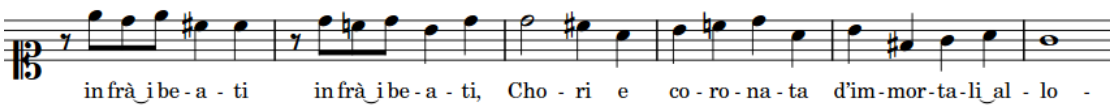
Verse numbers are shown before the selected lyrics when the checkbox is activated, and hidden when the checkbox is deactivated.

RELATED LINKS

Hiding/Showing zones on page 44
Changing the property scope on page 617
Copying property settings to other layouts/frame chains on page 599

Elision slurs

Elision slurs are used to show that two or more syllables or characters are part of the same lyric. Elision slurs are also sometimes used to tell singers not to breathe between the joined lyrics.



A soprano part containing multiple elision slurs

Dorico Elements automatically shows elision slurs in lyrics that contain the underscore character.

RELATED LINKS
Inputting lyrics on page 374
Navigation during lyric input on page 376
Slurs on page 1155

Hiding/Showing East Asian elision slurs

You can hide/show East Asian elision slurs for individual lyrics. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

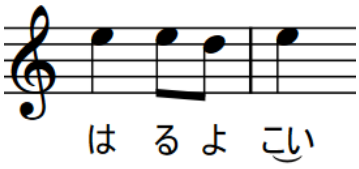
PROCEDURE

1. Select the lyrics on which you want to show East Asian elision slurs. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate/deactivate **Show East Asian elision slur** in the **Lyrics** group.
3. Activate/Deactivate the corresponding checkbox.

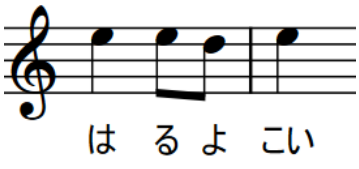
RESULT

East Asian elision slurs are shown on the selected lyrics when the checkbox is activated, and hidden when the checkbox is deactivated. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

EXAMPLE



East Asian elision slur shown



East Asian elision slur hidden

Notes

Notes are shapes that are positioned on staves to indicate musical pitches. Notes are most commonly shown with oval-shaped, round noteheads that are either filled or void depending on their duration, but there are many different designs of noteheads that you can use.

Depending on their duration, notes can have stems that help indicate their duration.

In Dorico Elements, a sequence of adjacent notes joined with ties is considered a single note of the total duration of the tie chain, rather than separate notes. Note grouping is automatically adjusted according to the prevailing beat grouping, which is normally set by the time signature.

RELATED LINKS
Inputting notes on page 211
Note spacing on page 579
Stems on page 961
Notehead sets on page 940
Changing the notehead design of individual noteheads on page 946
Note tools popover on page 462
Adding notes above/below existing notes on page 247
Bracketed noteheads on page 953
Ties on page 1232
Note and rest grouping on page 774
Beam grouping according to meters on page 755

Notehead sets

A notehead set is a collection of related noteheads that together allow you to represent all the different noteheads required for the different durations used in music notation.

A typical notehead set contains at least four noteheads:

- A black notehead for quarter notes (crotchets) and shorter
- A white notehead for half notes (minims)
- A wider white notehead for whole notes (semibreves)
- A wider white notehead with one or two vertical strokes on either side, or a square white notehead, for double whole notes (breves)

Pitch-dependent notehead sets contain noteheads that vary according to the pitch of notes rather than their duration.

- In *pitched* notehead sets, there are different noteheads for different pitches.

  For example, the Pitch Names notehead set shows the letter name and any applicable accidental of each note within its notehead.
- In *scale degree* notehead sets, there is a different notehead for each scale degree, relative to the current key signature.

  For example, the Aikin 7-shape notehead set uses a different notehead shape for each pitch.

NOTE

- A single notehead can appear in multiple notehead sets. If you edit a notehead within one notehead set, your changes affect the appearance of that notehead in all notehead sets that contain it.
- Notehead sets can only contain noteheads of the same type. For example, you cannot use a normal notehead in a pitched notehead set.
- You cannot change the type of an existing notehead set or an existing notehead.

RELATED LINKS
Pitch-dependent notehead set designs on page 945

Notehead set designs

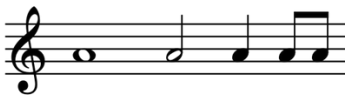
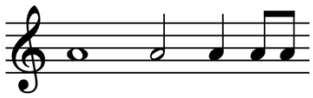
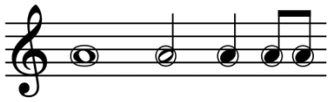
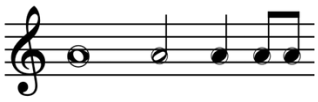
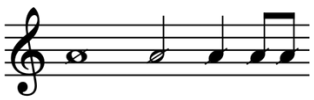
There are a number of different notehead set designs that you can use for individual noteheads in Dorico Elements.

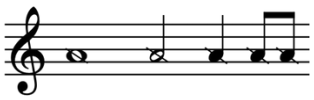
- You can find the available notehead designs by selecting at least one note and choosing **Edit** > **Notations** > **Notehead** > **[Notehead type or design]** > **[Notehead design]**. You can also choose these options from the context menu.

NOTE

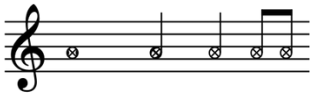
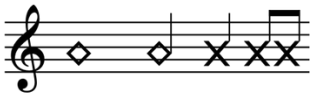
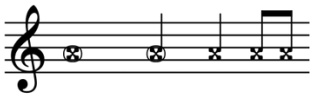
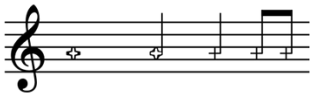
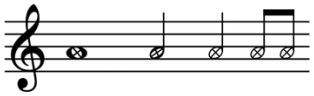
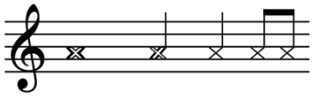
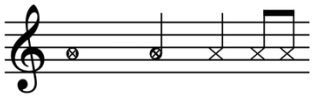
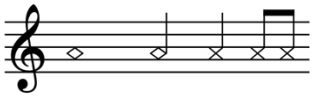
Dorico Elements does not offer stemless noteheads. Instead, you can hide the stems of notes with any notehead design.

General noteheads

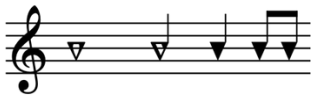
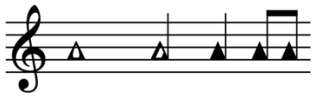
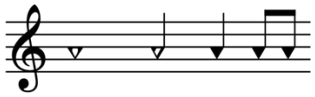
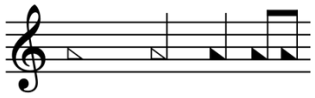
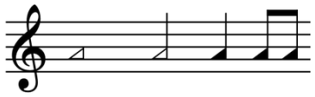
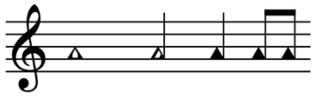
Notehead set design	Notehead set name
	Larger Noteheads
	Default Noteheads
	Large Circled Noteheads
	Circled Noteheads
	Slashed Noteheads (Bottom Left to Top Right)

Notehead set design	Notehead set name
	Slashed Noteheads (Top Left to Bottom Right)

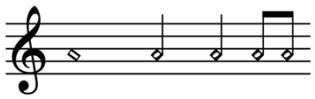
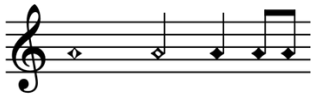
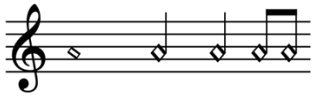
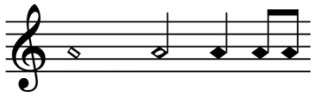
Cross noteheads

Notehead set design	Notehead set name
	Circle X Noteheads
	Large X and Diamond Noteheads
	Ornate X Noteheads
	Plus Noteheads
	With X Noteheads
	X Noteheads
	X and Circle X Noteheads
	X and Diamond Noteheads

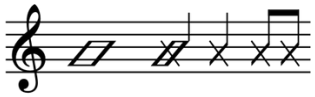
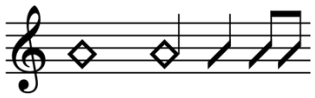
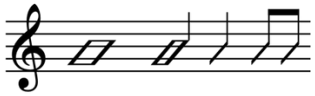
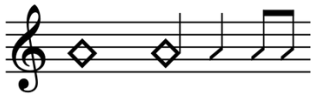
Triangular noteheads

Notehead set design	Notehead set name
	Large Arrow Down Noteheads
	Large Arrow Up Noteheads
	Triangle Down Noteheads
	Triangle Left Noteheads
	Triangle Right Noteheads
	Triangle Up Noteheads

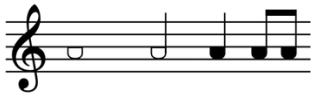
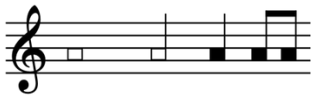
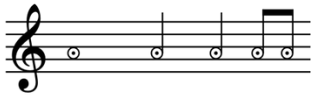
Diamond noteheads

Notehead set design	Notehead set name
	Diamond Noteheads
	Old-Style Diamond Noteheads
	White Diamond Noteheads
	Wide Diamond Noteheads

Slash noteheads

Notehead set design	Notehead set name
	Muted Slash Noteheads
	Oversized Slash Noteheads
	Slash Noteheads
	Small Slash Noteheads

Round and square noteheads

Notehead set design	Notehead set name
	Moon Noteheads
	Rectangular Noteheads
	Round White with Dot Noteheads

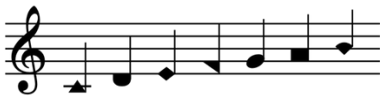
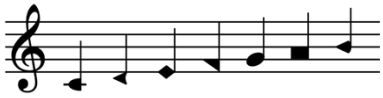
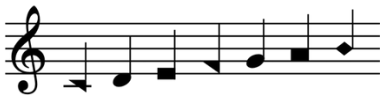
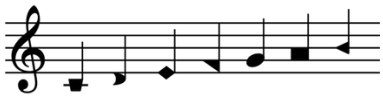
RELATED LINKS
Changing the notehead design of individual noteheads on page 946
Hiding/Showing stems on page 966
Hiding/Showing noteheads on page 949

Pitch-dependent notehead set designs

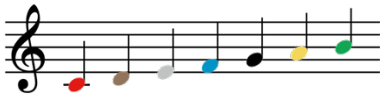
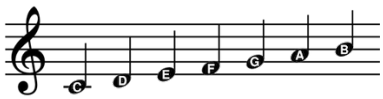
Pitch-dependent notehead sets use different notehead designs or different notehead colors depending on the pitch of notes. There are a number of different pitch-dependent notehead sets available in Dorico Elements.

- You can find the available notehead designs by selecting at least one note and choosing **Edit** > **Notations** > **Notehead** > **[Notehead type or design]** > **[Notehead design]**. You can also choose these options from the context menu.

Scale degree noteheads

Notehead set design	Notehead set name
	Aikin 7-shape Noteheads
	Funk 7-shape Noteheads
	Walker 4-shape Noteheads
	Walker 7-shape Noteheads

Pitched noteheads

Notehead set design	Notehead set name
	Figurenotes© Noteheads
	Pitch Name Noteheads

RELATED LINKS
Notehead sets on page 940
Changing the notehead design of individual noteheads on page 946
Hiding/Showing stems on page 966
Hiding/Showing noteheads on page 949

Changing the notehead design of individual noteheads

You can change the notehead design of individual noteheads, including trill auxiliary notes. For example, cross noteheads might be used to indicate where players should produce pitchless sounds, such as air sounds on wind instruments.

NOTE

- These steps do not apply to notes in slash voices.
- If you want to change the notehead design to represent different playing techniques for notes belonging to unpitched percussion instruments, you can instead change their playing technique.
- If you want to change the notehead design to represent harmonics or rhythm slashes, you can instead turn notes into harmonics or change them to a slash voice. You can also input slash regions.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the noteheads whose design you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. Choose **Edit** > **Notations** > **Notehead** > **[Notehead type]** > **[Notehead design]**.

   For example, to change the notehead design of the selected notes to X noteheads, choose **Edit** > **Notations** > **Notehead** > **Crosses** > **X Noteheads**.

   TIP

   You can also choose these options from the context menu.

RESULT

The notehead design of the selected notes is changed.

TIP

You can assign a key command for each factory default notehead design on the **Key Commands** page in **Preferences**.

RELATED LINKS

Rhythm slashes on page 1132
Slash voices on page 1141
Slash regions on page 1132
Changing the voice of existing notes on page 442
Harmonics on page 968
Turning notes into harmonics on page 969
Playing technique-specific noteheads on page 1283
Changing playing technique-specific noteheads on page 1286
Hiding/Showing stems on page 966
Hiding/Showing noteheads on page 949
Key Commands page in the Preferences dialog on page 59
Changing the size of accidentals on page 714

Assigning notes to strings

You can change the string on which individual notes belonging to string instruments are played; for example, to allow you to specify the correct harmonic. Many notes can be played on multiple strings, depending on where along its length the string is stopped.

Assigning notes to strings can be useful for glissando lines or fingering shifts, as the string and finger position required to play the note affects the direction of these changes. However, the string number is not shown in the music. You can instead input string indicators and/or fingerings, which can help string players understand the string on which they should play.

NOTE

You can only change the assigned string of notes belonging to string instruments, such as violin, cello, or guitar.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the notes whose assigned string you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.

   NOTE

   If selecting multiple notes at once, select notes only in staves of the same instrument type. For example, select multiple Cs in Violin 1 and Violin 2 staves.

2. In the Properties panel, activate **String** in the **Notes and Rests** group.
3. Select the string you want from the menu.

   The string number for the instrument is shown, followed by the fundamental pitch and the octave number of that string in parentheses. For example, the lowest cello string is expressed as **4 (C2)**.

   NOTE

   The options available in the menu depend on the selected pitches and the instrument type.

RESULT

The string to which the selected notes are assigned is changed.

NOTE

If you subsequently change the pitches of notes, **String** is automatically deactivated for all notes that can no longer be played on their assigned string.

RELATED LINKS

Glissando lines on page 1000
Changing the direction of string fingering shift indicators on page 889
Fingerings for fretted instruments on page 880
String indicators on page 891
Inputting string indicators inside the staff on page 366

Turning notes into harmonics on page 969
Changing the harmonic partial on page 970

Changing the width of ledger lines

You can change the width of ledger lines on individual notes; for example, to allow notes with short durations to be spaced more tightly and still be legible. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the noteheads whose ledger line width you want to change.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Ledger line** in the **Notes and Rests** group.
3. Change the values for **L** and **R**.

RESULT

Increasing **Ledger line L** makes the left side of ledger lines longer, decreasing the value makes the left side of ledger lines shorter.

Increasing **Ledger line R** makes the right side of ledger lines longer, decreasing the value makes the right side of ledger lines shorter.

If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

RELATED LINKS

Changing the property scope on page 617
Copying property settings to other layouts/frame chains on page 599

Hiding/Showing ledger lines

You can hide/show ledger lines on individual notes; for example, if you want to indicate approximate pitches using the relative vertical positions of notes. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the noteheads whose ledger lines you want to hide/show.

   NOTE

   If you want to hide ledger lines, you must also select all other noteheads in the same voice and voice column index.

2. In the Properties panel, activate/deactivate **Hide ledger lines** in the **Notes and Rests** group of the Properties panel.

RESULT

Ledger lines are hidden/shown for the selected notes. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

If you deactivated **Hide ledger lines** for only some notes in a chord, ledger lines are also shown on all notes between the selected notes and the staff in the same voice and voice column index.

RELATED LINKS

Voice column index on page 1307

Hiding/Showing noteheads

You can hide/show the noteheads of individual notes with any notehead design; for example, if you want to indicate the exact durations of glissando lines using stems without noteheads.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the notes whose noteheads you want to hide.
2. In the Properties panel, activate/deactivate **Hide notehead** in the **Notes and Rests** group.

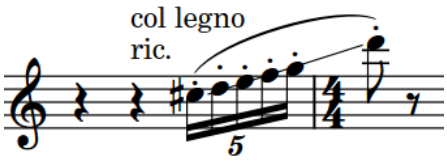
RESULT

The selected noteheads are hidden when **Hide notehead** is activated, and shown when it is deactivated.

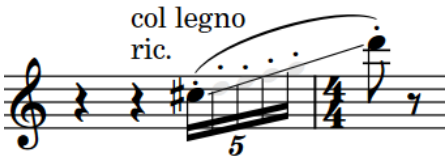
This also hides rhythm dots, provided all noteheads represented by consolidated rhythm dots are hidden, but does not affect the visibility of accidentals or ledger lines.

Hidden noteheads are included in note spacing calculations as if they were shown.

EXAMPLE



Noteheads shown



Middle noteheads hidden

RELATED LINKS

Properties panel on page 615
Hiding/Showing zones on page 44
Hiding/Showing hidden noteheads on page 952
Hiding/Showing ledger lines on page 948
Hiding/Showing stems on page 966
Hiding/Showing or parenthesizing accidentals on page 713

Changing the consolidation of rhythm dots on page 950
Note spacing on page 579

Changing the consolidation of rhythm dots

You can change how rhythm dots in multiple voices are consolidated at individual rhythmic positions. For example, if you want to show fewer rhythm dots for a very dense chord. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

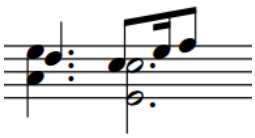
PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the notes whose rhythm dot consolidation you want to change.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Rhythm dot consolidation** in the **Notes and Rests** group.
3. Activate/Deactivate the corresponding checkbox.

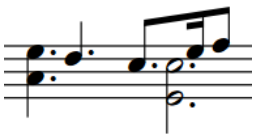
RESULT

Rhythm dots for notes of any duration are consolidated when the checkbox is activated, and no rhythm dots are consolidated when the checkbox is deactivated. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

EXAMPLE



Notes of any duration have rhythm dots consolidated



No rhythm dot consolidation

RELATED LINKS

Changing the property scope on page 617
Copying property settings to other layouts/frame chains on page 599
Note positions in multiple-voice contexts on page 1306
Voice column index on page 1307
Allowing/Disallowing noteheads in opposing voices to overlap on page 1305

Moving rhythm dots

You can move rhythm dots horizontally. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains. However, you cannot move an individual rhythm dot independently of other rhythm dots at the same rhythmic position.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.

- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select a notehead at each rhythmic position where you want to move rhythm dots.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Rhythm dot X** in the **Notes and Rests** group.
3. Change the value in the value field.

RESULT

Increasing the **Rhythm dot X** value moves all rhythm dots at the selected rhythmic positions to the right, decreasing the value moves them to the left. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

Viewing options for notes and rests

You can show notes and rests in different colors in various contexts, which can help you identify them more easily as you are working. For example, showing voice colors makes notes and rests appear in different colors according to their voice.

RELATED LINKS
Color setup on page 52
Hiding/Showing rest colors on page 1148
Hiding/Showing voice colors on page 1304
Hiding/Showing colors for muted notes/items on page 509

Hiding/Showing colors for notes out of range

You can show colors for notes that are considered out of range, such as notes too high/low for the instrument to play or the voice type to sing, or pitches that do not fit with the current harp pedal settings. When colors for notes out of range are hidden, all notes appear black by default.

Colors for notes out of range are considered annotations and are not printed by default.

NOTE

You cannot show colors for voices and notes out of range simultaneously.

PROCEDURE

- Do one of the following:
  - To show colors for notes out of range, choose **View** > **Note And Rest Colors** > **Notes Out Of Range**.
  - To hide colors for notes out of range, choose **View** > **Note And Rest Colors** > **None**.

RESULT

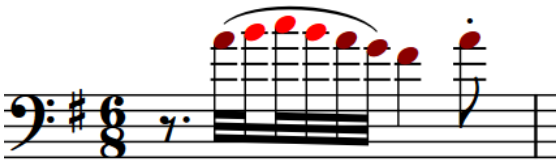
Colors for notes out of range are hidden/shown.

Notes that are considered challenging are shown in a darker red, while notes that are impossible or virtually impossible are shown in a bright red.

NOTE

Notes out of the fret range of the corresponding string on tablature are always shown as question marks, even if you do not show colors for notes out of range.

EXAMPLE



Colors for notes out of range shown. Three notes in the middle of the phrase are bright red, while the rest are the darker red.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

If showing colors for notes out of range reveals some notes do not fit with the current harp pedal settings, you can input a new pedal diagram for that passage or calculate a suitable harp pedal diagram.

RELATED LINKS

Changing music area colors on page 54
Inputting harp pedal diagrams on page 362
Calculating harp pedal diagrams based on existing music on page 363
Hiding/Showing voice colors on page 1304
Annotations on page 554

Hiding/Showing hidden noteheads

You can show hidden noteheads in translucent gray, so you can identify and select them more easily.

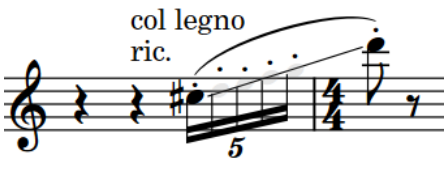
PROCEDURE

- Choose **View** > **Note And Rest Colors** > **Hidden Noteheads**.

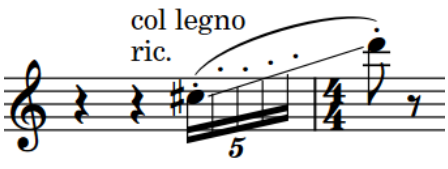
RESULT

Hidden noteheads are hidden/shown.

EXAMPLE



Hidden noteheads shown



Hidden noteheads hidden

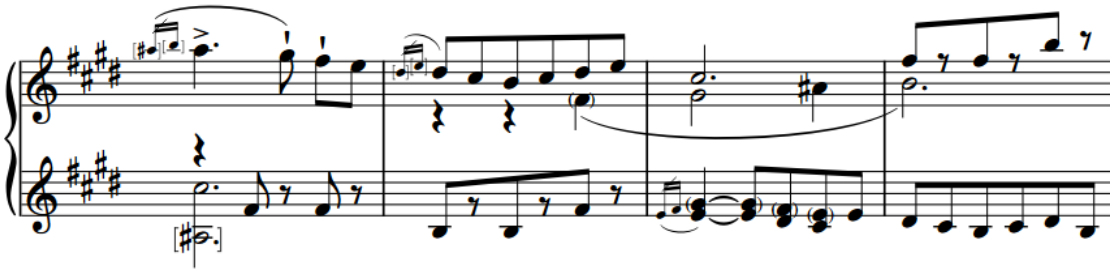
RELATED LINKS

Hiding/Showing noteheads on page 949

Bracketed noteheads

Bracketed noteheads are often used to indicate that notes are optional, editorial, not played in all playthroughs in music with repeats, or pressed down but not fully struck on the piano. In Dorico Elements, you can show brackets on any notehead.

Notehead brackets extend slightly above and below noteheads so it is clear which notes are included in each bracket.



A phrase containing round and square notehead brackets

You can also show brackets on noteheads on notation staves and tablature independently of each other.

By default, bracketed notes have reduced velocity, causing them to sound quieter in playback than normal notes.

The following types of notehead brackets are available in Dorico Elements:

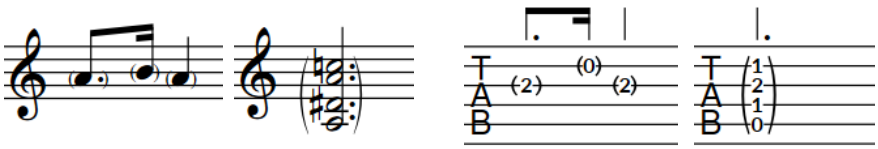
Round notehead brackets

Round notehead brackets have a similar appearance to slurs, but vertical.

By default, round brackets on single noteheads use the font glyph on notation staves and the drawn curve on tablature. In Engrave mode, round notehead brackets that use the drawn curve have handles that allow you to change their shape. Round notehead brackets that use the font glyph do not have handles in Engrave mode.

NOTE

On tablature, round brackets are automatically shown around the second note/chord and all subsequent notes/chords in tie chains. If you show brackets around all noteheads in tie chains on tablature, these automatic notehead brackets are included.



Round brackets on single noteheads on a notation staff

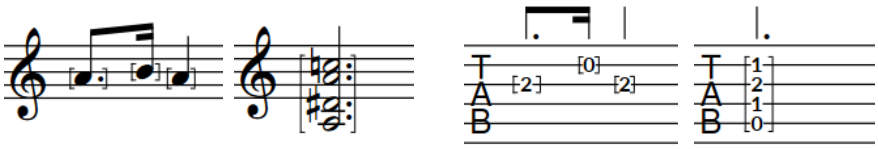
Round bracket on a chord on a notation staff

Round brackets on single noteheads on tablature

Round bracket on a chord on tablature

Square notehead brackets

Square notehead brackets comprise a straight vertical line with horizontal hooks at the top and bottom. Dorico Elements automatically adjusts the length of square brackets to ensure they do not end on staff lines and their hooks remain visible.



Square brackets on single noteheads on a notation staff

Square bracket on a chord on a notation staff

Square brackets on single noteheads on tablature

Square bracket on a chord on tablature

RELATED LINKS

Showing brackets around one/all noteheads in tie chains on page 956
Notehead brackets in Engrave mode on page 958
Showing notes as dead notes on page 1025
Inputting notes on page 211
Ties on page 1232
Guitar bends on page 1006
Guitar pre-bends and pre-dives on page 1008
Vibrato bar dives and returns on page 1011
Parenthesized chord symbols on page 799

Showing brackets on noteheads

You can show round or square brackets on individual noteheads, on single notes within chords, and on whole chords. For example, if you want to indicate that specific notes are optional or an editorial change, or to show notes belonging to unpitched percussion instruments as ghost notes.

NOTE

If you want to show brackets on noteheads to represent dead notes, you can instead show notes belonging to fretted instruments as dead notes.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the noteheads on which you want to show brackets. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.

   NOTE

   - If you want to show brackets on individual noteheads in tie chains that are not the first notehead, you must select them in Engrave mode.
   - If you want to show brackets on whole chords, you must select all notes in those chords.

- If you want to show brackets on both notation staves and tablature, you must select notes on both.

2. In the Properties panel, activate **Bracket style** in the **Bracketed Noteheads** group.
3. Choose one of the following options:
   - **Round**
   - **Square**

RESULT

The corresponding type of notehead brackets is shown on the selected notes. If you only selected notes on tablature, brackets are not shown on the corresponding notes on the notation staff, and vice versa.

In Write mode, only the first noteheads in tie chains are bracketed. In Engrave mode, only the selected noteheads are bracketed, including in tie chains.

If you selected all notes in chords, Dorico Elements shows a single bracket for each chord unless they contain very large gaps, in which case Dorico Elements automatically splits brackets. If you selected individual notes within chords, they are each shown with separate brackets.

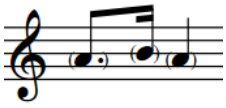
By default, bracketed notes have reduced velocity, causing them to sound quieter in playback than normal notes.

TIP

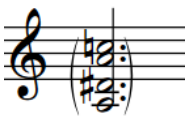
- Deactivating **Bracket style** hides brackets on the selected notes.
- You can also hide/show brackets on noteheads by choosing **Edit** > **Notations** > **Notehead** > **Toggle Round Brackets** or **Edit** > **Notations** > **Notehead** > **Toggle Square Brackets**. You can also choose these options from the context menu.

  You can assign key commands for these options on the **Key Commands** page in **Preferences**.

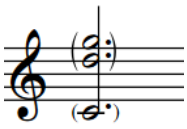
EXAMPLE



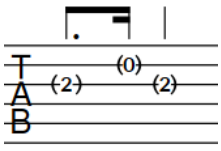
Round brackets on single noteheads on a notation staff



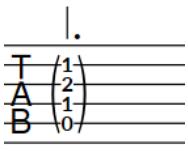
Round bracket on a chord on a notation staff



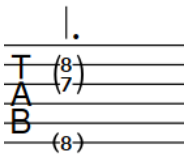
Split round bracket on a chord on a notation staff



Round brackets on single noteheads on tablature



Round bracket on a chord on tablature



Split round bracket on a chord on tablature

RELATED LINKS

Showing notes as dead notes on page 1025
Notehead brackets in Engrave mode on page 958

Inputting notes on page 211
Velocity editor on page 642

Showing brackets around one/all noteheads in tie chains

You can change whether brackets appear only on the first notehead in tie chains or span the entire duration of the tie chain; that is, with the left bracket on the first notehead and the right bracket on the last notehead in the tie chain. By default, brackets appear only on the first notehead in tie chains.

PREREQUISITE

- You have shown brackets on the required notes.
- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the notes whose notehead bracket positions relative to tie chains you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate/deactivate **Bracket until end of tie chain** in the **Bracketed Noteheads** group.

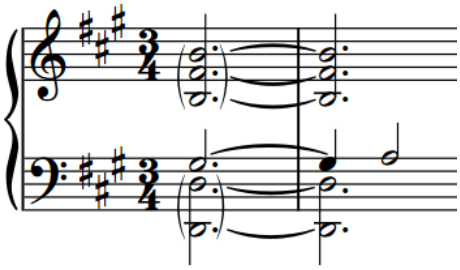
RESULT

Brackets appear at the start and end of the selected tie chains when **Bracket until end of tie chain** is activated, and only around the first note/chord when it is deactivated.

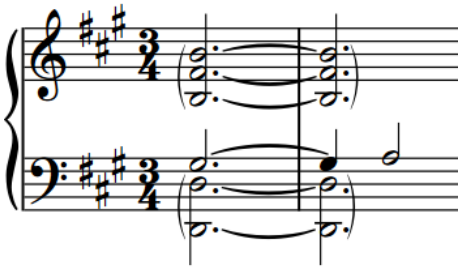
If you activated **Bracket until end of tie chain** for a single note in a bracketed chord, the bracket on the first chord is not split but an additional bracket appears at the end of the tie chain for the selected note only. If you deactivated **Bracket until end of tie chain** for a single note in a bracketed chord whose other notes are bracketed to the end of the tie chain, the bracket at the end of the tie chain is split.

If you selected notes on tablature, the automatic brackets shown around the second note/chord and all subsequent notes/chords in tie chains are updated to follow your property setting.

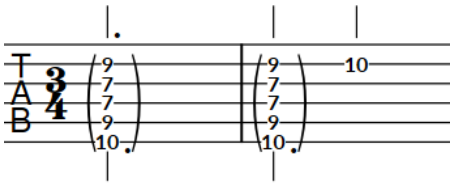
EXAMPLE



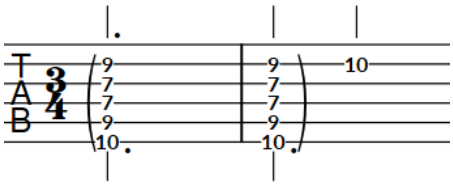
Brackets around only the first chords in tie chains on a notation staff



Brackets at the start and end of whole tie chains on a notation staff



Brackets around only the first chord in a tie chain, with automatic brackets shown on the second chord on tablature



Brackets around the start and end of the whole tie chain on tablature

RELATED LINKS

Ties on page 1232
Showing single brackets on figured bass on page 861

Splitting brackets on chords

You can split brackets on any notehead within a chord. By default, Dorico Elements automatically shows a single bracket for all notes in a chord unless it contains very large gaps, in which case Dorico Elements automatically splits brackets.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

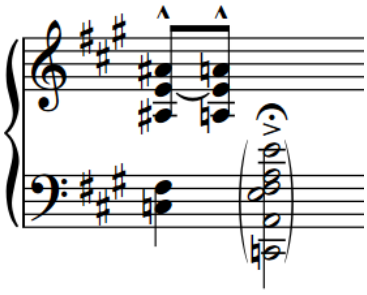
PROCEDURE

1. Select the individual notes in chords immediately above where you want to split brackets. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Break bracket** in the **Bracketed Noteheads** group.

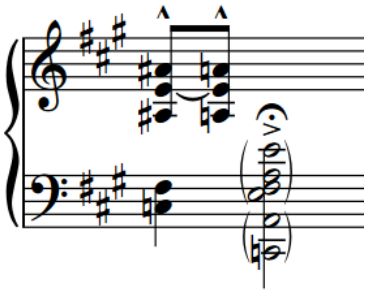
RESULT

Brackets are split immediately below the selected notes.

EXAMPLE



Chord with single round bracket



Chord with split round bracket

RELATED LINKS

Inputting chords on page 240
Parenthesized chord symbols on page 799

Notehead brackets in Engrave mode

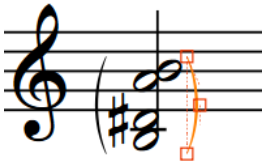
In Engrave mode, each round notehead bracket has multiple handles that you can move independently to adjust their graphical position, length, and shape.

Round notehead brackets that use the drawn curve have three square handles that you can move independently. When you move either of the top/bottom handles, the middle handle also moves to retain its position relative to the start/end handles.

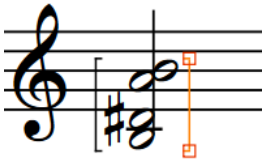
NOTE

Round brackets on single noteheads that use the font glyph do not show handles in Engrave mode, meaning you cannot lengthen/shorten them or change their shape/width.

Square notehead brackets have two handles, one at the top and one at the bottom.



Round notehead bracket handles in Engrave mode



Square notehead bracket handles in Engrave mode

- Top and bottom handles move the corresponding end of the notehead bracket, controlling its graphical length.
- Middle handles control the shape of round notehead brackets. Moving them vertically adjusts their curve by changing the angle at which notehead bracket endpoints approach noteheads, while moving them horizontally changes the width of round notehead brackets.

You can move these handles to change the graphical length of notehead brackets and the shape of round notehead brackets. If necessary, other nearby items, such as ties and slurs, automatically move to avoid collisions.

TIP

The following properties in the **Bracketed Noteheads** group of the Properties panel are activated automatically when you move the corresponding notehead bracket or handle:

- **L bracket body** moves left notehead brackets. **X** moves them horizontally, **Y** moves them vertically.
- **R bracket body** moves right notehead brackets. **X** moves them horizontally, **Y** moves them vertically.
- **L bracket extents** controls the height of left notehead brackets. **T** moves their top handles, **B** moves their bottom handles.
- **R bracket extents** controls the height of right notehead brackets. **T** moves their top handles, **B** moves their bottom handles.

RELATED LINKS

Showing brackets on noteheads on page 954
Moving items graphically on page 481

Changing the shape of round notehead brackets

You can change the shape of individual round notehead brackets; for example, if you want some notehead brackets to appear wider or to change their curvature, so that their endpoints approach noteheads at a sharper angle. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

NOTE

You can only change the shape of round notehead brackets on single noteheads if they use the drawn curve, rather than the font glyph.

PREREQUISITE

You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the middle handles of each round notehead bracket whose shape you want to change.
2. Change the shape of the selected round notehead brackets in any of the following ways:
   - To widen right notehead brackets or narrow left notehead brackets, press **Alt/Opt-Right Arrow**.
   - To narrow right notehead brackets or widen left notehead brackets, press **Alt/Opt-Left Arrow**.
   - To increase the angle of notehead bracket endpoints, press **Alt/Opt-Up Arrow**.
   - To decrease the angle of notehead bracket endpoints, press **Alt/Opt-Down Arrow**.

     TIP

     - To move handles by large increments, press **Ctrl/Cmd** plus the standard key command; for example, **Ctrl/Cmd-Alt/Opt-Left Arrow**.
     - To move handles by moderate increments, press **Shift** plus the standard key command; for example, **Shift-Alt/Opt-Left Arrow**.
     - To move handles by small increments, press **Ctrl/Cmd**-**Shift** plus the standard key command; for example, **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-Alt/Opt-Left Arrow**.
     - You can also click and drag middle handles in the corresponding directions.

RESULT

The shape of the selected notehead brackets is changed. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

If necessary, other nearby items, such as ties and slurs, automatically move to avoid collisions. This might affect note spacing and casting off.

TIP

The following properties in the **Bracketed Noteheads** group of the Properties panel are activated automatically when you move the middle handle of notehead brackets.

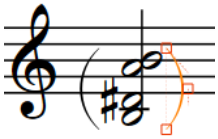
- **L round br. middle** moves left notehead bracket middle handles. **X** moves them horizontally, changing the width of notehead brackets, and **Y** moves them vertically, changing the curvature of notehead brackets.

- **R round br. middle** moves right notehead bracket middle handles. **X** moves them horizontally, changing the width of notehead brackets, and **Y** moves them vertically, changing the curvature of notehead brackets.

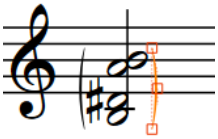
You can also use these properties to change the width and shape of round notehead brackets by changing the values in the value fields.

Deactivating the properties resets the selected notehead brackets to their default shape.

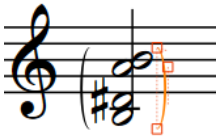
EXAMPLE



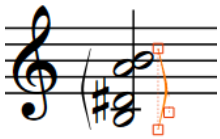
Widened round notehead bracket



Narrowed round notehead bracket



Endpoint angle increased



Endpoint angle decreased

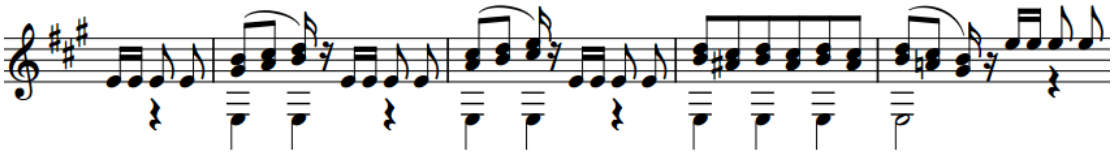
RELATED LINKS

Slur shoulder offset on page 1177
Moving items graphically on page 481
Changing the property scope on page 617
Copying property settings to other layouts/frame chains on page 599

Stems

Stems are vertical lines that extend from noteheads that are a half note or shorter in duration. In combination with notehead design, they allow the duration of each note to be clearly identified.

For example, quarter notes (crotchets) and eighth notes (quavers) both have solid black noteheads and stems, but eighth notes also have flags on their stems. 16th notes have two flags, 32nd notes have three flags, and so on. The length of stems is determined by default in Dorico Elements, so stems automatically adjust their length to accommodate more/fewer flags.



The stems of notes and chords can point upwards/downwards, depending on the conventions of music engraving and the context of the music. For example, in choral music on two staves, stems in the soprano and tenor lines point up, and stems in the alto and bass lines point down.

RELATED LINKS
Note and rest grouping on page 774
Altered unisons on page 717
Voices on page 1303
Inputting notes on page 211

Stem direction

In Dorico Elements, the stem direction of notes and chords follows rules that are based on the conventions of music engraving.

Stem direction is determined automatically, but you can manually change the stem direction of individual notes, chords, or of an entire voice. The rules that are applied depend on the following:

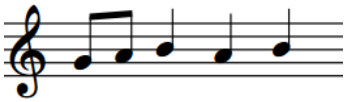
- How many voices are active on the staff.
- Whether notes, chords, or beamed groups of notes are affected.
- Whether notes in the same chord or notes in the same beamed group are split between staves.

Single notes in single voices

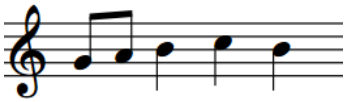
On a five-line staff with only a single voice active, the default stem direction of a single note is determined by its staff position.

- If the note is above the middle line, its stem points downwards.
- If the note is below the middle line, its stem points upwards.
- If the note is on the middle line of the staff, its stem direction is determined by the stem directions of any adjacent notes, beam groups, or chords. If they both have the same stem direction, the note matches them. If the adjacent notes, beam groups, or chords have different stem directions, or if there are no adjacent notes, beam groups, or chords, the note follows the default stem direction.

The default stem direction depends on the instrument type. By default, the stems of notes on the middle lines of staves point downwards on instrumental staves and upwards on vocal staves, to avoid lyrics.



Notes on the middle line are stem up because the fourth note is stem up



Notes on the middle line are stem down because the fourth note is stem down

By default, notes are first input into an up-stem voice, and Dorico Elements treats notes as the only voice on the staff until you input more voices.

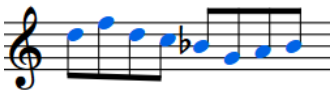
Single notes in multiple voices

When there are multiple voices on a staff and all voices contain notes, the stem direction of notes is determined by the stem direction of their voice. Notes in up-stem voices have up stems, and notes in down-stem voices have down stems. This applies even when the stems of notes would normally point in the other direction, based on their position on the staff.

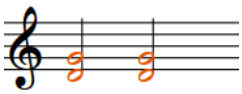
NOTE

The order in which notes appear between different up-stem voices and different down-stem voices depends on their pitch and your settings on the **Voices** page in **Notation Options**. You can also change the voice column index of notes individually.

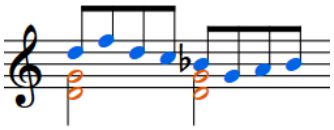
When there are only notes in one voice for at least a whole bar, Dorico Elements automatically changes the directions of stems so they point in the default direction for their pitch. For example, if a staff contains a single up-stem voice and a single down-stem voice but only the down-stem voice contains notes or rests, then the stems of notes in the down-stem voice may point upwards, depending on the position of the notes on the staff. However, showing rests or implicit rests in empty voices forces the stem direction of notes to follow the stem direction of their voice.



Notes in an up-stem voice shown in blue.



Notes in a down-stem voice shown in orange.



When notes in up-stem and down-stem voices are in the same bar, the stem direction is automatically changed.

Chords in single voices

The stem direction for a chord in a single voice is determined by the balance of notes above/below the middle line of the staff.

- If the note furthest from the middle line is above the middle line, the stem of the chord points downwards.
- If the note furthest from the middle line is below the middle line, the stem of the chord points upwards.
- If the chord is equally balanced on either side of the middle line of the staff, the stem direction is determined by the stem directions of any adjacent notes, beam groups, or

chords. If they both have the same stem direction, the chord matches them. If the adjacent notes, beam groups, or chords have different stem directions, equally balanced chords follow the default stem direction.

The default stem direction depends on the instrument type. By default, the stems of notes on the middle lines of staves point downwards on instrumental staves and upwards on vocal staves, to avoid lyrics.

Beam groups in single voices

The stem direction within beam groups is determined by the balance of notes within the beam group that are above/below the middle line of the staff.

- If the majority of notes in the beam group are above the middle line, stems in the beam group point downwards.
- If the majority of notes in the beam group are below the middle line, stems in the beam group point upwards.
- If the beam group contains an equal number of notes either side of the middle line of the staff, the stem direction is determined by the stem directions of any adjacent notes, beam groups, or chords. If they both have the same stem direction, the beam group matches them. If the adjacent notes, beam groups, or chords have different stem directions, equally balanced beam groups follow the default stem direction.

  The default stem direction depends on the instrument type. By default, the stems of notes on the middle lines of staves point downwards on instrumental staves and upwards on vocal staves, to avoid lyrics.

RELATED LINKS
Per-flow notation options for voices on page 1304
Notation Options dialog on page 679
Voice column index on page 1307
Implicit rests in multiple-voice contexts on page 1146
Hiding/Showing voice colors on page 1304
Altered unisons on page 717

Changing the stem direction of notes

You can manually change the stem direction of any note. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the notes whose stem direction you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.

   NOTE

   - In Write mode, you can only select whole tie chains. In Engrave mode, you can select individual notes within tie chains.
   - Changing the stem direction in Write mode only affects the first note in the tie chain.

2. Change the stem direction in one of the following ways:

   - Choose **Edit** > **Notations** > **Stem** > **Force Stem Up**.

- Choose **Edit** > **Notations** > **Stem** > **Force Stem Down**.

TIP

You can also choose these options from the context menu.

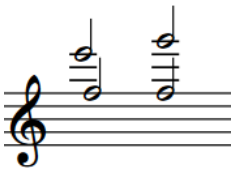
RESULT

The stem direction of the selected notes is changed. The selected notes follow this stem direction, even if you later change their pitch to one that usually requires a different stem direction. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

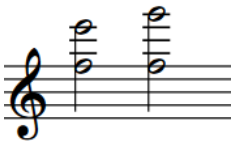
NOTE

- This does not change the voice to which notes belong.
- You can also change the stem direction of notes by selecting them and pressing **F**.

EXAMPLE



Stems pointing in the same direction but in different voices



Stems in the same direction and in the same voice

RELATED LINKS

Changing the voice of existing notes on page 442
Changing the staff-relative placement of items on page 414
Changing the property scope on page 617
Copying property settings to other layouts/frame chains on page 599

Changing the default stem direction of voices

You can change the default stem direction of voices after they have been input, including slash voices.

NOTE

This changes the implicit stem direction of the voice, but may not change the stem direction of all notes in single-voice contexts. Stem directions are automatically changed in Dorico Elements when only one voice contains notes.

PROCEDURE

1. Select a note or chord in the voice whose stem direction you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. Change the default stem direction of the selected voice in one of the following ways:
   - Choose **Edit** > **Notations** > **Voices** > **Default Stems Up**.

- Choose **Edit** > **Notations** > **Voices** > **Default Stems Down**.

TIP

You can also choose these options from the context menu.

Removing stem direction changes

You can remove changes to the directions of stems and revert stems to their default directions.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the notes whose stem direction changes you want to remove. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. Choose **Edit** > **Notations** > **Stem** > **Remove Forced Stem**. You can also choose this option from the context menu.

RESULT

All stem direction changes are removed from the selected notes. The stems of the selected notes revert to their default directions.

NOTE

Alternatively, you can change the stem direction to the opposite direction. However, notes with forced stems do not change automatically if, for example, you later change their pitch.

Stem length

The length of stems is determined by default in Dorico Elements, according to accepted standards for the appearance of stems of notes at different positions on staves.

You can lengthen/shorten individual stems in Engrave mode.

Lengthening/Shortening stems

You can lengthen/shorten the stems of individual notes. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the stems you want to lengthen/shorten.
2. Lengthen/Shorten the stems by moving the selected stem handles in any of the following ways:
   - To move them upwards/downwards a standard amount, press **Alt/Opt** plus the corresponding arrow key. For example, press **Alt/Opt-Up Arrow** to move handles upwards. This moves handles by 1/8 space per press.
   - To move them upwards/downwards a large amount, press **Ctrl/Cmd** plus the standard key command; for example, **Ctrl/Cmd-Alt/Opt-Up Arrow**. This moves handles by 1 space per press.

- To move them upwards/downwards a moderate amount, press **Shift** plus the standard key command; for example, **Shift-Alt/Opt-Up Arrow**. This moves handles by 1/2 space per press.
- To move them upwards/downwards a small amount, press **Ctrl/Cmd**-**Shift** plus the standard key command; for example, **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-Alt/Opt-Up Arrow**. This moves handles by 1/32 space per press.
- Click and drag them upwards/downwards.

RESULT

The selected stems are lengthened/shortened. For example, moving the end of downwards-pointing stem upwards shortens the stem. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

TIP

Stem adj. in the **Notes and Rests** group of the Properties panel is activated when you lengthen/shorten stems.

You can also use this property to lengthen/shorten stems by changing the value in the value field. However, the **Notes and Rests** group is only available when the notehead is selected rather than the stem.

Deactivating the property resets the selected stems to their default length.

RELATED LINKS

Changing the property scope on page 617
Copying property settings to other layouts/frame chains on page 599

Hiding/Showing stems

You can hide/show the stems on notes with any notehead design. For example, you might hide stems if you do not want to show exact rhythms in an unmeasured passage.

Dorico Elements allows you to hide stems rather than using a stemless notehead design as this allows you to hide the stem of any notehead design.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the notes whose stems you want to hide.
2. In the Properties panel, activate/deactivate **Hide stem** in the **Notes and Rests** group.

RESULT

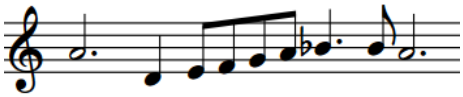
The stems and any applicable flags of the selected notes are hidden when **Hide stem** is activated, and shown when it is deactivated.

NOTE

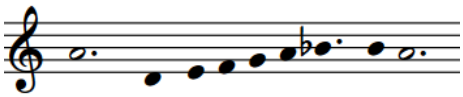
- Beams are only hidden when you hide the stems of all notes in beamed groups.

- You can assign a key command for **Toggle Hide Stem** on the **Key Commands** page in **Preferences**.

EXAMPLE



Stems shown



Stems hidden

RELATED LINKS

Notehead set designs on page 941
Inputting notes on page 211
Hiding/Showing noteheads on page 949
Preferences dialog on page 58

Harmonics

Harmonics are pitches produced by touching resonating strings at specific positions along their length, allowing the corresponding harmonic partial to sound. Harmonics often have a high pitch with a glassy, purer sound than stopped pitches. There are two different types of harmonics: natural and artificial.

Harmonic partials are numbered according to their order in the harmonic series, which also correlates to the node on the string which produces them. For example, the second partial in the harmonic series is produced by the node halfway along a string; that is, the node that divides the string into two equal parts. The third partial is produced by the node that divides the string into thirds, and so on.

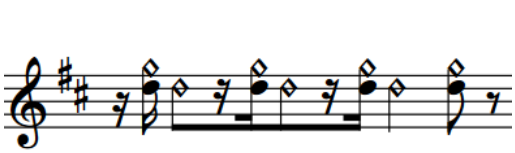
Natural harmonics

Natural harmonics are produced by touching an open string at one of its nodes and then bowing or plucking the string. The sounding pitch of the resulting harmonic varies according to the node and its corresponding partial in the harmonic series. For example, touching the node halfway along a string produces the second partial, which sounds an octave above the open string pitch.

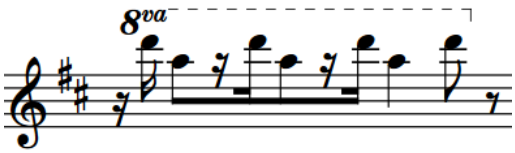
Artificial harmonics

Artificial harmonics are produced by stopping a string fully (as if playing a normal note) and then touching the string at one of the nodes of its stopped length. The sounding pitch of the resulting harmonic varies according to the node and its corresponding partial in the harmonic series. For example, touching the node that is the equivalent of a fourth higher than the stopped pitch produces the fourth partial, which sounds two octaves above the stopped pitch.

To produce artificial harmonics, players must both fully stop the string and touch the string at the correct node. This can be more difficult to produce than natural harmonics.



A passage for violin alternating between artificial and natural harmonics on the A string



The sounding pitches of the same passage

Dorico Elements supports multiple conventions for the notation of harmonics on stringed and fretted instruments, including for both natural and artificial harmonics. For artificial harmonics shown using two noteheads, one normal and one diamond, Dorico Elements automatically calculates the correct pitch for the touched pitch diamond notehead for the second to sixth harmonic partials. These pitches are reflected in playback, using dedicated sounds for harmonics if the corresponding playback device includes them.

Turning notes into harmonics

You can turn existing notes into artificial and natural harmonics. Harmonics can represent the sounding, touched, or stopped pitch.

PREREQUISITE

- You have input the notes you want to turn into harmonics. However, the pitch you should input depends on the harmonic type you want to use.
  - For natural harmonics, we recommend that you input the desired sounding pitch.
  - For artificial harmonics, we recommend that you input the stopped pitch.
- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the notes you want to turn into harmonics. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Type** in the **Harmonics** group.
3. Choose one of the following options:
   - **Artificial**
   - **Natural**

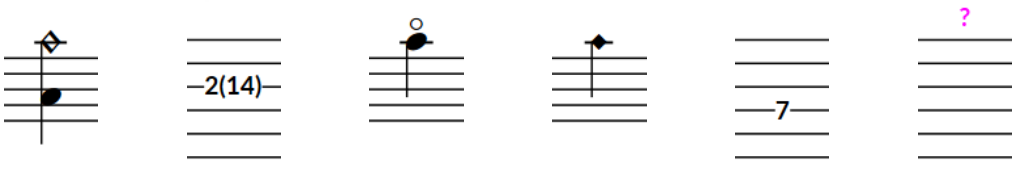
RESULT

The selected notes are turned into harmonics of the corresponding type. If the corresponding playback device has dedicated sounds for harmonics, the selected notes automatically use those sounds. The sounding pitch of artificial harmonics in playback is also changed accordingly.

- Artificial harmonics represent the second partial by default. They are shown with a diamond notehead indicating the touched pitch an octave above the selected notes. On tablature, the stopped fret is shown on the left and the touched fret is shown on the right in parentheses.
- Natural harmonics represent the sounding pitch by default. They are shown with a circle symbol above the selected notes. On fretted instrument notation staves, natural harmonics appear as black diamond noteheads. On tablature, the fret of the touched pitch is shown, if it can be calculated; if it cannot be calculated, a pink question mark is shown.

EXAMPLE

The following examples show the default appearances of natural and artificial harmonics on different staves.



Artificial harmonic on notation staff (any instrument)

Artificial harmonic on tablature

Natural harmonic on non-fretted instrument staff

Natural harmonic on fretted instrument notation staff

Natural harmonic on tablature

Natural harmonic on tablature that cannot be calculated

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

You can change the partial for harmonics. You can also change the appearance of natural harmonics and the style of artificial harmonics.

If you want to turn harmonics back into normal notes, deactivate **Type** in the **Harmonics** group.

RELATED LINKS

Inputting notes on page 211
Appearances/Styles of harmonics on page 972
Changing music area colors on page 54
Assigning notes to strings on page 947
Tablature on page 1200

Changing the harmonic partial

By default, harmonics indicate the second partial in the harmonic series, which is an octave above the fundamental. You can change the partial for individual harmonics; for example, if you want a higher partial instead.

NOTE

Dorico Elements can only correctly calculate artificial harmonic partials for nodes two to six.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

PROCEDURE

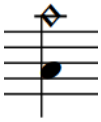
1. Select the harmonics whose partial you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Partial** in the **Harmonics** group.
3. Change the value in the value field to the node at which the string should be touched to produce the partial you want.

RESULT

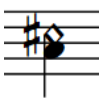
The partial of the selected harmonics is changed. For artificial harmonics using the **Normal** type, the pitch of the white diamond notehead/parenthesized fret number is updated automatically. The sounding pitch of artificial harmonics in playback is also changed accordingly.

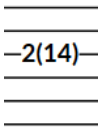
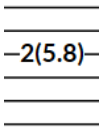
EXAMPLE

Artificial harmonic with default partial (notation and tablature)



Partial changed to the fifth (notation and tablature)



Artificial harmonic with default partial (notation and tablature)	Partial changed to the fifth (notation and tablature)
	

Hiding/Showing or parenthesizing harmonic accidentals

You can hide/show individual harmonic accidentals, or show them in round or square brackets, independently of hiding/showing or parenthesizing accidentals of stopped pitch notes. For example, you can show cautionary accidentals on subsequent notes in tie chains that cross system/frame breaks by showing accidentals in round brackets. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the harmonics whose accidentals you want to hide/show or parenthesize. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.

   NOTE

   You can only select individual noteheads within tie chains in Engrave mode.

2. In the Properties panel, activate **Accidental** in the **Harmonics** group.
3. Select one of the following options from the menu:
   - **Hide**
   - **Show**
   - **Round brackets**
   - **Square brackets**

RESULT

Accidentals on the selected harmonics are hidden, shown, or shown in round or square brackets. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

NOTE

- Hiding accidentals does not affect the pitch of notes in playback.
- You can assign key commands for **Hide Accidental**, **Show Accidental**, **Show Accidental in Round Brackets**, and **Show Accidental in Square Brackets** on the **Key Commands** page in **Preferences**.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

You can also hide/show or parenthesize accidentals on the normal noteheads that indicate the stopped pitch for artificial harmonics shown using diamond noteheads.

RELATED LINKS

Hiding/Showing or parenthesizing accidentals on page 713
Changing the property scope on page 617
Copying property settings to other layouts/frame chains on page 599

Appearances/Styles of harmonics

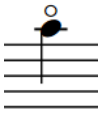
Both artificial and natural harmonics can be notated in different ways. In Dorico Elements, it is possible to indicate the desired sounding pitch, either the stopped or touched pitch, or both stopped and touched pitches for individual harmonics.

In this documentation we refer to “styles” of artificial harmonics, because one artificial harmonic style indicates the use of a different performance technique, and “appearances” of natural harmonics, as their different appearances do not indicate different performance techniques.

Natural harmonics

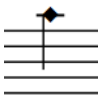
Circle above

Shows a harmonic circle symbol on the notehead side of notes. Usually indicates the desired sounding pitch of the harmonic. Used for natural harmonics on staves that do not belong to fretted instruments by default, such as violin.



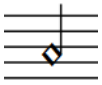
Diamond notehead

Changes the notehead of notes to a diamond notehead. The diamond notehead appears black/filled when the note is a quarter note or shorter, and white/unfilled when the note is a half note or longer. Usually indicates the touched pitch required. Used for natural harmonics on fretted instrument notation staves by default.

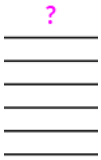


White diamond notehead

Changes the notehead of notes to a diamond notehead that is always unfilled, regardless of the duration of notes. Usually indicates the touched pitch required.



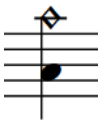
On tablature, the touched fret is always shown for natural harmonics, regardless of the selected appearance. If the touched fret cannot be calculated, a pink question mark is shown.



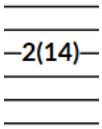
Artificial harmonics

Normal

Shows two noteheads: one indicating the stopped pitch, the other the touched pitch. The touched pitch is automatically calculated based on the partial; the default partial is the second partial. On tablature, the stopped fret is shown on the left and the touched fret is shown on the right in parentheses. This is the default appearance of artificial harmonics on all staves.



Normal artificial harmonic on notation staff



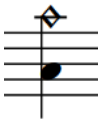
Normal artificial harmonic on tablature

Pinch

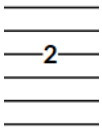
Shows two noteheads: one indicating the stopped pitch, the other the sounding pitch. The sounding pitch is automatically calculated based on the partial; the default partial is the second partial. On tablature, only the stopped fret is shown.

NOTE

Intended for fretted instruments only. A pinch is produced by the performer catching a resonating string at a node near the pick-ups, producing a high-pitched squeal. Also known as a “false harmonic” or “squeal”.



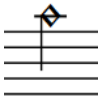
Pinch harmonic on notation staff



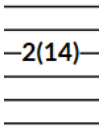
Pinch harmonic on tablature

Single notehead (sounding)

Shows a single notehead indicating the sounding pitch. On tablature, the stopped fret is shown on the left and the sounding pitch is shown on the right in parentheses.



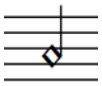
Single notehead (sounding) artificial harmonic on notation staff



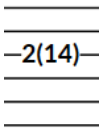
Single notehead (sounding) artificial harmonic on tablature

Single notehead (stopped)

Shows a single notehead indicating the stopped pitch. On tablature, the stopped fret is shown on the left and the touched fret is shown on the right in parentheses.



Single notehead (stopped) artificial harmonic on notation staff



Single notehead (stopped) artificial harmonic on tablature

RELATED LINKS

Changing music area colors on page 54

Changing the appearance of natural harmonics

By default, natural harmonics appear as normal noteheads with a circle shown above, which indicates the desired sounding pitch. You can change the appearance of natural harmonics individually; for example, to show them as a white diamond notehead to indicate the touched pitch.

NOTE

These steps only apply to harmonics with the **Natural** type.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the natural harmonics whose appearance you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Style** in the **Harmonics** group.
3. Select one of the following options from the menu:
   - **Circle above**
   - **Diamond notehead**
   - **White diamond notehead**

RESULT

The appearance of the selected natural harmonics is changed, including on fretted instrument notation staves. The touched pitch shown on tablature is not changed automatically.

NOTE

- Changing the appearance of natural harmonics does not automatically change their notated pitch. For example, if you want to change a sounding pitch **Circle above** harmonic to a touched pitch **White diamond notehead** harmonic, you must also change the pitch of the note.
- Dorico Elements automatically assigns natural harmonics with the **White diamond notehead** style to the lowest possible string for that harmonic. You can specify different strings if necessary.
- You can change the staff-relative placement of harmonic circle symbols by activating **Placement** in the **Harmonics** group of the Properties panel and choosing the option you want.

RELATED LINKS

Turning notes into harmonics on page 969
Changing the pitch of individual notes on page 444
Assigning notes to strings on page 947
Tablature on page 1200

Changing the style of artificial harmonics

By default, artificial harmonics appear as two noteheads: one normal, which indicates the stopped pitch, and one diamond, which indicates the touched pitch. You can change the style of artificial harmonics individually; for example, to indicate pinch harmonics.

NOTE

These steps only apply to harmonics with the **Artificial** type.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the artificial harmonics whose style you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Style** in the **Harmonics** group.
3. Select one of the following options from the menu:
   - **Normal**
   - **Pinch**
   - **Single notehead (sounding)**
   - **Single notehead (stopped)**

RESULT

The style of the selected artificial harmonics is changed.

NOTE

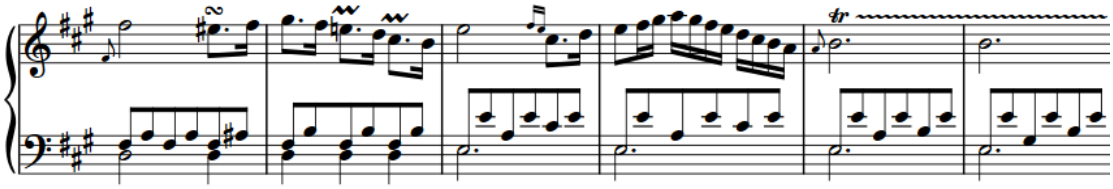
Pinch indicates the use of a different technique to produce the harmonic.

Ornaments

Ornaments are markings that indicate multiple notes are played in addition to the notated pitch. They are used to decorate music, such as in Baroque music, which is highly decorated with trills and other ornaments.

Over time, specific ways of notating how performers should play notes have developed and different ornament symbols indicate different patterns of decorative notes. Nonetheless, ornaments give some freedom to performers to embellish music in their own way.

In Dorico Elements, the term “ornaments” refers to ornament symbols, including mordents and turns, and trill marks.



A phrase containing a turn, short trills, and a trill with extension line

NOTE

Only trills are currently reflected in playback. Playback of other ornaments is planned for future versions.

RELATED LINKS

Input methods for ornaments, arpeggio signs, glissando lines, and jazz articulations on page 325
Grace notes on page 897
Positions of ornaments on page 978
Trills on page 981
Trills in playback on page 991

Changing ornament intervals

You can change the intervals of ornaments, both above and below the notated pitch, to indicate which pitches are played in the ornament. The intervals of ornaments are indicated by accidentals.

For some ornaments, you can only change the interval in one direction. For example, you can only change the interval above short trills and below mordents.

NOTE

These steps do not apply to trills.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the ornaments whose interval you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate the following properties, individually or together, in the **Ornaments** group, as appropriate for the selected ornaments:
   - **Interval above**
   - **Interval below**
3. Change the values in the value fields to the intervals you want.
   - **0** or **4** and above shows no accidental.
   - **1** shows a flat.
   - **2** shows a natural.
   - **3** shows a sharp.

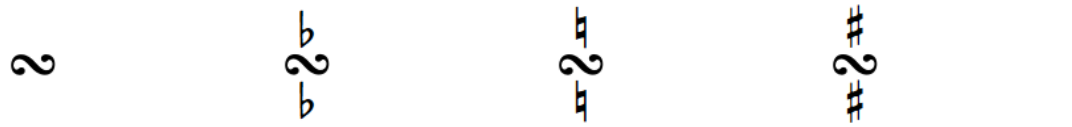
RESULT

The intervals of the selected ornaments are changed.

NOTE

Some ornaments do not show accidentals either above or below, depending on their type.

EXAMPLE



No accidentals | Flats above and below | Naturals above and below | Sharps above and below

RELATED LINKS

Trill intervals on page 984
Changing vibrato bar dip intervals on page 1026

Positions of ornaments

Ornaments, including trills, are placed above the notes to which they apply. They are only placed below the staff for down-stem voices in multiple-voice contexts.

Ornaments and trills are positioned outside of slurs by default. Similarly, they are positioned further from noteheads than articulations.

The center of ornaments aligns with the center of the notehead to which they apply. Trills are aligned differently, as the left side of trill marks aligns with the left edge of the notehead to which the trill applies.

Dorico Elements automatically positions ornaments correctly according to their type, and attaches them to their notehead.

You can move ornaments to different rhythmic positions in Write mode. They are automatically positioned to avoid collisions.

You can move ornaments graphically in Engrave mode, but this does not change the rhythmic positions to which they are attached.

RELATED LINKS
Trills on page 981
Hiding/Showing trill marks on page 981
Moving notes/items rhythmically on page 437
Moving items graphically on page 481

Changing the position of ornaments relative to slurs

Ornaments are positioned outside of slurs by default. You can change the position of ornaments relative to slurs individually. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the ornaments whose slur-relative position you want to change.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Slur-relative position** in the corresponding group for the selected ornaments:
   - **Ornaments**
   - **Trills**
3. Choose one of the following options:
   - **Inside**
   - **Outside**

RESULT

The selected ornaments are positioned either inside or outside of slurs. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

Changing the start position of trills

You can change whether the start position of individual trills is aligned with the notehead or with its accidental. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the trills whose start position you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Start position** in the **Trills** group.
3. Choose one of the following options:
   - **Notehead**
   - **Accidental**

RESULT

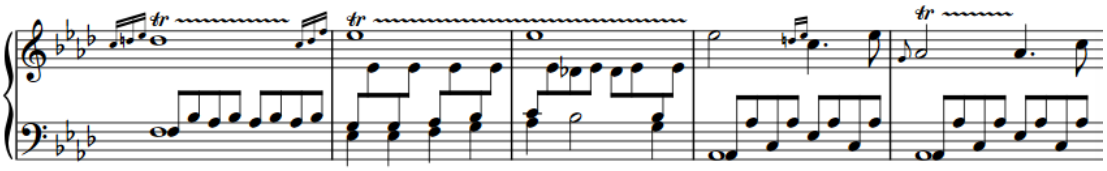
The start position of the selected trills is changed. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

RELATED LINKS

Changing the property scope on page 617
Copying property settings to other layouts/frame chains on page 599
Hiding/Showing trill extension lines on page 983

Trills

Trills are fast alternations between two notes, similar to a tremolo, that were a common decoration in Baroque, Classical, and Romantic music. Trill marks are usually added to a single note, to indicate the performed notes are the notated pitch and the note either a half-step or whole step above, and can have extension lines to show the duration of the trill.



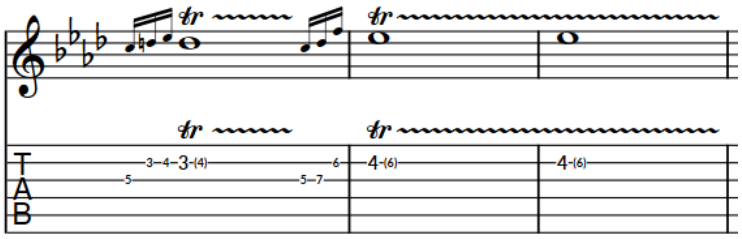
A phrase containing multiple trills with extension lines

Because of their legacy as an ornament, many performers interpret trills differently to tremolos: some players add more emphasis to the notated pitch in a trill and less on the trilled-to note but play both notes equally in tremolos.

The most common trills are to notes a major or minor second above, but it is also possible to specify other trill intervals.

In Dorico Elements, you can specify any trill interval, change their appearance on notation staves, and hear them in playback.

On tablature, the trilled-to pitch always appears as a parenthesized fret number.



Trills on a notation staff and tablature

RELATED LINKS

Input methods for ornaments, arpeggio signs, glissando lines, and jazz articulations on page 325
Trill intervals on page 984
Changing the start position of trills on page 979
Trills in playback on page 991
Tablature on page 1200
MIDI Import Options dialog on page 86

Hiding/Showing trill marks

You can hide/show trill marks at the start of individual trills. This also hides/shows trill marks on all systems on which the trills extend.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.

- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the trills whose trill marks you want to hide/show. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Show trill mark** in the **Trills** group.
3. Activate/Deactivate the corresponding checkbox.

RESULT

Trill marks are shown when the checkbox is activated, and hidden when the checkbox is deactivated.

When the property is deactivated, trill marks are shown by default.

RELATED LINKS

Trill interval appearance on page 989
Hiding/Showing trill interval accidentals on page 985
Hiding/Showing speed changes in trill extension lines on page 983
Hiding/Showing trill extension lines on page 983

Changing the speed of trills

You can indicate different speeds for trills, including indicating a change of speed within a single trill, by changing the height and frequency of wiggles in their extension lines.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the trills whose speed you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate the following properties, individually or together, in the **Trills** group:
   - **Start speed**
   - **End speed**
3. Select one of the following options from each property menu:
   - **Slow**
   - **Normal**
   - **Fast**

RESULT

The speed of the selected trills is changed. This affects both the frequency of wiggles in their extension lines and their playback speed.

If only **Start speed** is activated, the speed of the whole trill extension line is changed. If only **End speed** is activated, the speed of the end half of the trill extension line is changed.

EXAMPLE

A trill extension line starting slow and ending fast

Trill with normal speed throughout

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

You can customize the playback speed of trills individually.

RELATED LINKS

Changing the playback speeds of trills on page 992

Hiding/Showing speed changes in trill extension lines

You can hide/show speed changes in the extension lines for individual trills; for example, if you want to hear different speeds in playback but show extension lines with consistent wiggles.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the trills whose speed changes you want to hide/show. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate/deactivate **Suppress drawing speed changes** in the **Trills** group.

RESULT

Speed changes are hidden when the property is activated, and shown when it is deactivated.

Hiding/Showing trill extension lines

You can hide/show the extension lines of individual trills. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the trills whose extension lines you want to hide/show. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate/deactivate **Has trill line** in the **Trills** group.
3. Activate/Deactivate the corresponding checkbox.

RESULT

Trill extension lines are shown when the checkbox is activated, and hidden when the checkbox is deactivated. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

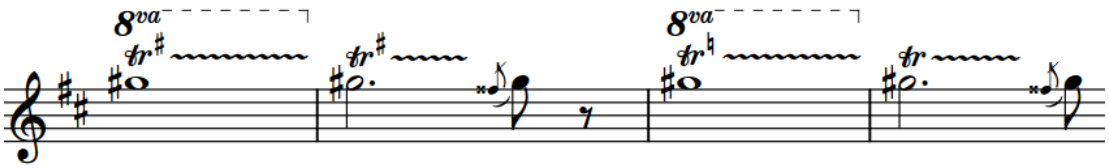
When the property is deactivated, trill extension lines are only shown on tied notes by default.

RELATED LINKS

Changing the start position of trills on page 979
Changing the speed of trills on page 982
Changing the playback speeds of trills on page 992
Changing the property scope on page 617
Copying property settings to other layouts/frame chains on page 599

Trill intervals

Trill intervals tell performers which notes to play and also affect the pitches used in playback in Dorico Elements. For example, a trill with a sharp accidental on an E indicates that the performer trills between E and F♯, rather than between E and F.



The different accidentals on these trills indicate changes in the trilled-to note.

If you do not specify an interval when inputting a trill, Dorico Elements calculates an appropriate interval based on the top note in the voice to which the trill belongs, the current key signature, and any accidentals earlier in the bar. For example, inputting a trill on an E♮ in C major produces a half-step/minor second trill interval to F♮. If there were a sharp accidental on the F earlier in the bar, the trill interval produced is a whole step/major second between the E♮ and F♯.

In open/atonal key signatures, Dorico Elements produces whole step/major second trill intervals by default.

You can specify trill intervals when inputting them with the popover, including at different noteheads in the same trill, and you can change individual trill intervals after they have been input. In 12-EDO, you can describe trill intervals based on their quality, such as major or minor.

When trill intervals do not require a trill interval indicator, they are indicated by signposts. However, trill interval signposts are hidden by default.

Trills and accidentals

If required, Dorico Elements shows accidentals to clarify trill intervals. Dorico Elements also automatically shows accidentals on other notes in the bar if they have different accidentals to any upper notes of trills.

By default, trill marks themselves show intervals, unless the upper note is modified by an accidental in the key signature. If the upper note has been modified by an accidental earlier in the bar, trills always show the interval. If trills modify pitches modified by an accidental in the key signature, any subsequent notes of that pitch show the appropriate accidental automatically. Any cautionary accidentals required in the current and following bars are also shown automatically.

Microtonal trill intervals

When using other tonality systems than 12-EDO, such as 24-EDO, you must specify trill intervals as an interval degree, expressed as the number of staff position steps, and total number of octave divisions from the notated pitch. This is because specifying only the interval quality is insufficient in such cases.

RELATED LINKS
Input methods for ornaments, arpeggio signs, glissando lines, and jazz articulations on page 325
Trill interval appearance on page 989
Inputting ornaments/trills with the popover on page 331
Ornaments popover on page 326
Signposts on page 426
Changing ornament intervals on page 977
Changing vibrato bar dip intervals on page 1026

Hiding/Showing trill interval accidentals

You can hide/show accidentals for individual trill intervals; for example, if you want to show the accidental for the first note of a trill but hide the accidentals for subsequent notes. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

NOTE

- In order to show trill interval accidentals, trills must have intervals that require accidentals.
- These steps only hide the accidentals shown in trill intervals, they do not hide auxiliary notes or Hollywood-style markings.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the trill intervals, or trill interval signposts whose accidentals you want to hide/show. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.

   NOTE

   For trills that span multiple notes and have multiple trill interval accidentals, you must select each accidental or signpost individually. If you select the whole trill, only the first trill interval accidental is changed.

2. In the Properties panel, activate **Accidental** in the **Trills** group.
3. Choose one of the following options:
   - **Hide**
   - **Show**

RESULT

Accidentals in the selected trill intervals are hidden when you choose **Hide**, and shown when you choose **Show**. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

Signposts are shown at the position of each hidden trill interval accidental. However, trill interval signposts are hidden by default.

RELATED LINKS
Changing the appearance of trill intervals on page 990
Changing the property scope on page 617
Copying property settings to other layouts/frame chains on page 599
Annotations on page 554
Hiding/Showing signposts on page 427

Changing trill intervals

The default trill interval is a second, either major or minor depending on the context. In addition to specifying the interval when inputting trills with the ornaments popover, you can change the intervals of trills and existing trill intervals within their duration individually after they have been input.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the trills, trill intervals, or trill interval signposts whose interval you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode, but in Engrave mode you must select the trill intervals/trill interval signposts.

   NOTE

   For trills that span multiple notes and have multiple interval changes, you must select each trill interval you want to change individually. If you select the trill mark/extension line, only the first trill interval is changed.

2. In the Properties panel, activate **Interval** in the **Trills** group.
3. Change the interval degree, expressed as the number of staff position steps, by changing the value in the value field.
4. Change the interval quality or total number of octave divisions from the trilled note in one of the following ways:
   - For trills in 12-EDO, select an interval quality from the menu.
   - For trills in other tonality systems, select a total number of octave divisions from the menu.

   Together, the interval degree and either interval quality or total number of octave divisions specify the desired note name and accidental for the trilled-to note.

RESULT

The interval of the selected trill intervals is changed. This applies from the selected trill intervals until the next interval change in the trill or the end of the trill, whichever comes first. For example, if you selected a trill with no interval changes within its duration, the interval is changed for the whole trill.

By default, trill intervals appear as accidentals when the interval is a second and as auxiliary notes for all other intervals. Signposts are shown at the position of each trill interval that does not require an accidental or auxiliary note. However, trill interval signposts are hidden by default.

RELATED LINKS
Resetting trill intervals on page 988
Ornaments popover on page 326

Changing trill intervals partway through trills

You can change the intervals of existing trills at any notehead within their duration; for example, if you want a trill to change seamlessly from a minor second in one bar to a major second in the next.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select one of the following:
   - The note whose trill interval you want to change.
   - An item or rest on the staff where you want to specify trill intervals.
2. Start note input in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Shift-N**.
   - In the Notes toolbox, click **Start Note Input**.
   - Double-click the staff.
3. Press **Right Arrow** / **Left Arrow** to move the caret according to the current rhythmic grid resolution to the notehead where you want to change the trill interval.

   NOTE

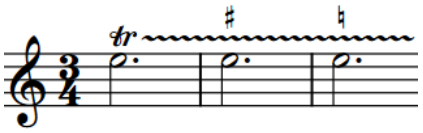
   You can only change trill intervals at noteheads.
4. Open the ornaments popover in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Shift-O**.
   - In the Notations toolbox, click **Popovers**, then **Ornaments**.
5. Enter the trill interval you want into the popover. For example, enter **m3** for a minor third.
6. Press **Return** to close the popover.
7. Optional: Repeat steps 3 to 6 to change the trill interval at other noteheads in the trill.
8. Stop note input in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Esc** or **Return**.
   - In the Notes toolbox, click **Start Note Input**.

RESULT

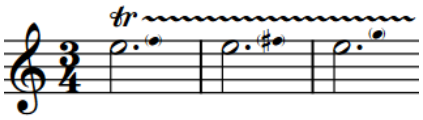
The trill interval is changed at the corresponding noteheads. By default, all trill intervals in the trill appear as accidentals when the intervals are all seconds and as auxiliary notes when the trill contains at least one trill interval with a different interval.

Signposts are shown at the position of each trill interval that does not require an accidental or auxiliary note. However, trill interval signposts are hidden by default.

EXAMPLE



Trill with interval changes shown as accidentals



Trill with interval changes shown as auxiliary notes

RELATED LINKS
Changing the appearance of trill intervals on page 990
Ornaments popover on page 326
Signposts on page 426
Hiding/Showing signposts on page 427
Notes toolbox on page 187
Rhythmic grid on page 204

Resetting trill intervals

You can reset trill intervals to the default trill interval of a second, either major or minor depending on the context, including resetting individual trill intervals within a single trill independently.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the trills, trill intervals, or trill interval signposts whose interval you want to reset. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode, but in Engrave mode you must select the trill intervals/trill interval signposts.

   NOTE

   For trills that span multiple notes and have multiple interval changes, you must select each trill interval you want to reset individually. If you select the trill mark/extension line, only the first trill interval change is reset.

2. In the Properties panel, deactivate **Interval** in the **Trills** group.

RESULT

The interval of the selected trill intervals is reset. This applies from the selected trill intervals until the next interval change in the trill or the end of the trill, whichever comes first. For example, if you selected a trill with no interval changes within its duration, the interval is reset for the whole trill.

By default, trill intervals appear as accidentals when the interval is a second and as auxiliary notes for all other intervals. Signposts are shown at the position of each trill interval that does not require an accidental or auxiliary note. However, trill interval signposts are hidden by default.

RELATED LINKS
Properties panel on page 615

Signposts on page 426
Hiding/Showing signposts on page 427

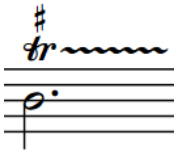
Trill interval appearance

There are different accepted ways to present trill intervals on notation staves, including accidental symbols and the Hollywood convention of showing “H.T.” for a half-step (semitone) and “W.T.” for a whole step (tone).

In Dorico Elements, trill intervals can appear in the following ways on notation staves:

Accidental

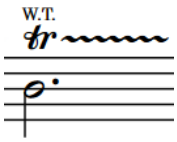
Indicates the trill interval using accidentals positioned above, below, or beside the **tr** mark. This is the default trill interval appearance in Dorico Elements for major or minor second trills.



Hollywood-style

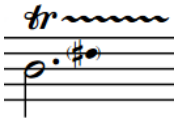
Indicates the trill interval using text.

- **H.T.** for half-step/minor second trills
- **W.T.** for whole step/major second trills



Auxiliary note

Indicates the trill interval using a small, parenthesized, stemless notehead shown in the staff immediately to the right of the first note to which the trill applies, and at the correct staff position for the trilled-to pitch. Auxiliary notes are used for all trill intervals that are not a major or minor second, but are automatically hidden for unison trills if the notehead design of the auxiliary note has not been overridden.



NOTE

On tablature, the trilled-to pitch always appears as a parenthesized fret number.

RELATED LINKS

Input methods for ornaments, arpeggio signs, glissando lines, and jazz articulations on page 325

Changing the appearance of trill intervals

You can change the appearance of trills with a second interval on notation staves individually; for example, if you want to show auxiliary notes on some trills to clarify a change in the trilled-to pitch.

NOTE

You can only change the trill interval appearance of trills with a major/minor second interval.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the trills whose trill interval appearance you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Appearance** in the **Trills** group.
3. Select one of the following options from the menu:
   - **Accidental**
   - **Hollywood style**
   - **Auxiliary note**

RESULT

The appearance of the selected trill intervals on notation staves is changed. This does not affect their appearance on tablature.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

You can change the notehead design of individual auxiliary notes; for example, to show that the trilled-to note is a harmonic.

RELATED LINKS

Changing the notehead design of individual noteheads on page 946

Changing the position of trill interval indicators

You can change where trill interval indicators, such as an accidental or W.T. marking, are positioned relative to individual trill marks. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

NOTE

This does not affect the position of trill interval accidentals on subsequent notes over which trills extend.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the trills whose interval indicator position you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Interval position** in the **Trills** group.
3. Select one of the following options from the menu:
   - **Above**
   - **Below**
   - **On the right**
   - **Superscript**

RESULT

The position of interval indicators relative to the selected trill marks is changed. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

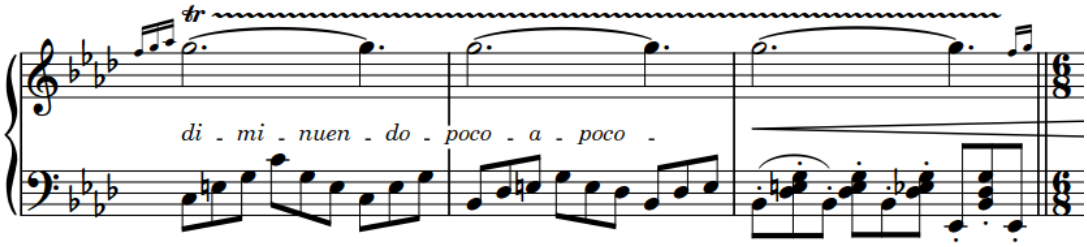
EXAMPLE

Trills in playback

Dorico Elements plays back trills by using a combination of sampled trills, when available, and triggering multiple notes.

Dorico Elements can play back sampled half-step (semitone) and whole step (tone) trills automatically if these playing techniques are defined in the VST expression map, which is the case for a number of instruments in HALion Symphonic Orchestra. For sound libraries that do not provide sampled trills, or for intervals beyond a whole step, Dorico Elements generates trills.

When playing generated trills, Dorico Elements incorporates grace notes immediately before and after trills. A single unslashed grace note on the initial trill note produces an appoggiatura, while multiple grace notes on the initial trill note are included in the trill pattern. Grace notes on the note immediately following a trill are also included in the trill pattern.



A trill with grace notes at both the start and end

Variable speeds within trills are included in playback, and you can change the playback speed of individual trills. Additionally, you can hide trill speed changes in trill extension lines whilst retaining the speed changes in playback.

In contemporary performance practice, trills are usually performed starting on the written note, while in the historical performance practice of the Baroque and Classical eras, trills are usually performed starting on the upper (trilled-to) note. You can change the default starting pitch for trills individually.

RELATED LINKS
Changing the speed of trills on page 982
Hiding/Showing speed changes in trill extension lines on page 983
Changing the starting pitch of trills on page 993
Playback techniques on page 706
Input methods for ornaments, arpeggio signs, glissando lines, and jazz articulations on page 325

Sampled vs. generated trills

Sampled trills are recorded, looped samples, whereas generated trills are produced by manually triggering separate notes.

Because they use fixed sounds, sampled trills typically offer no parameters that allow any kind of variation in the trill interpretation, such as different trill speeds or incorporating grace notes and termination notes into the pattern of trilled notes. By contrast, generated trills can provide greater flexibility but produce a less natural and realistic sound.

Changing the playback speeds of trills

In addition to changing the speed of trills, which changes both the frequency of wiggles in their extension lines and their playback speed, you can also change the playback speed of each speed variant in individual trills; for example, if you want to make the fastest part of an individual trill faster than your default setting.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the trills whose playback speeds you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate any of the following properties, as appropriate for your selected trills:
   - **Slow trill speed**
   - **Normal trill speed**
   - **Fast trill speed**
3. Change the values in the value fields.

RESULT

The playback speed of the selected trills is changed. The values in the value fields correspond to the number of notes sounding per second.

RELATED LINKS
Changing the speed of trills on page 982
Hiding/Showing speed changes in trill extension lines on page 983

Changing the starting pitch of trills

By default in Dorico Elements, trills start on the lower note, which is usually the written note. However, the accepted practice in Baroque and Classical music is to start trills on the upper note. You can change the starting pitch of trills individually.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

PROCEDURE

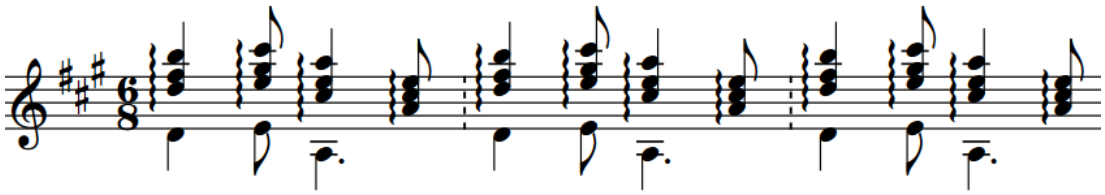
1. Select the trills whose starting note you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Start on upper note** in the **Trills** group.
3. Activate/Deactivate the corresponding checkbox.

RESULT

The selected trills start on the upper note when the checkbox is activated, and on the lower note when the checkbox is deactivated.

Arpeggio signs

Arpeggio signs are vertical lines that indicate chords are to be played arpeggiated, or “spread”, so that the notes in the chord are played very quickly one after another. Arpeggio signs are normally shown as vertical wavy lines.



Arpeggiated chords can be played in two directions:

- Upwards, starting from the bottom note in the chord.
- Downwards, starting from the top note in the chord.

It is most common for up arpeggio signs to have nothing at the top end, because chords are usually arpeggiated upwards, and for down arpeggio signs to have an arrow at the bottom, so these are the defaults in Dorico Elements. However, it is also accepted practice to show up arpeggio signs with an arrow at the top if down arpeggio signs are also used in the same piece of music.

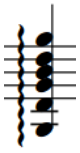
Arpeggio signs in Dorico Elements automatically span the range of all notes in the voices/staves to which they apply.

RELATED LINKS
Input methods for ornaments, arpeggio signs, glissando lines, and jazz articulations on page 325
Glissando lines on page 1000
Jazz articulations on page 1028
Lines on page 1075

Types of arpeggio signs

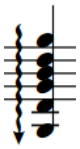
There are different types of arpeggio signs to convey the different arpeggiation directions and techniques.

Up arpeggio



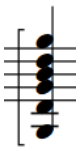
A vertical wavy line that indicates chords are to be arpeggiated from the bottom note upwards.

Down arpeggio



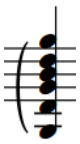
A vertical wavy line that indicates chords are to be arpeggiated from the top note downwards.

Non arpeggio



A bracket with straight lines that indicates all notes in the chord are to be played together, not arpeggiated.

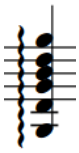
Curved arpeggio



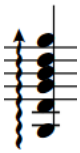
A curved line, similar to a slur but vertical, that some composers use to indicate gentle or partial arpeggiation.

You can show both up and down arpeggio signs with one of the following ends in Dorico Elements:

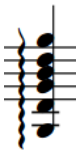
- Nothing
- Arrow
- Swash



Up arpeggio sign with nothing at the end



Up arpeggio sign with an arrow at the end



Up arpeggio sign with a swash at the end

Changing the type of arpeggio signs

You can change the type of arpeggio signs after they have been input.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the arpeggio signs whose type you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.

2. In the Properties panel, select one of the following options from the **Arpeggio type** menu in the **Arpeggios** group:
   - **Non arpeggio**
   - **Up arpeggio**
   - **Down arpeggio**
   - **Up arpeggio (curve)**

RESULT

The type of the selected arpeggio signs is changed.

TIP

You can also change the arpeggio type by opening the ornaments popover and changing the entry.

Changing the end appearance of arpeggio signs

Down arpeggio signs have an arrowhead at the bottom of the line by default, but up arpeggio signs have no arrowhead by default. You can change the appearance of the ends of arpeggio signs individually.

NOTE

These steps only apply to up and down arpeggio signs. They do not apply to curved or non arpeggio signs.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

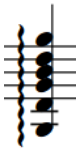
PROCEDURE

1. Select the arpeggio signs of any direction whose ends you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Sign end** in the **Arpeggios** group.
3. Select the end you want from the menu:
   - **Nothing**
   - **Arrow**
   - **Swash**

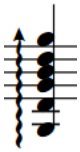
RESULT

The appearance of the ends of the selected arpeggio signs is changed.

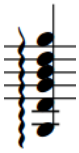
EXAMPLE



Up arpeggio sign with nothing at the end



Up arpeggio sign with an arrow at the end



Up arpeggio sign with a swash at the end

Length of arpeggio signs

The length of arpeggio signs is determined by the pitch range of notes in the voices/staves to which the arpeggio sign applies. Dorico Elements automatically adjusts the length of arpeggio signs if pitches change or you add notes to, or delete notes from, chords.

In Engrave mode, each arpeggio sign has two square handles, one at the top and one at the bottom. You can move these handles to adjust the graphical position and length of arpeggio signs. For example, you might lengthen an arpeggio sign on a chord with a small pitch range so the arpeggio sign is more clearly visible.

RELATED LINKS
Moving items graphically on page 481
Moving notes/items rhythmically on page 437

General placement conventions for arpeggio signs

Arpeggio signs are positioned to the left of the notes, including any applicable accidentals, to which they apply, but are positioned between grace notes and normal notes. They should appear within the same bar as the notes to which they apply, and not on the other side of the barline.

Dorico Elements makes automatic adjustments to note spacing and staff spacing to accommodate arpeggio signs and ensure they are positioned correctly.

Arpeggio signs should cover the whole vertical range of all notes in the chord to which they apply, and protrude slightly at each end. However, they do not need to cover the stems of notes. Dorico Elements automatically creates the lengths of arpeggio signs to cover the notes in chords, and adjusts their lengths if the notes in chords change or are deleted.

If an arpeggiated chord spans two staves, such as in a piano part, its arpeggio sign can extend across both staves.

You can move arpeggio signs to different rhythmic positions in Write mode.

You can move arpeggio signs graphically in Engrave mode; however, this does not change the rhythmic positions to which they are attached.

Showing arpeggio signs before/after grace notes

You can show arpeggio signs before/after grace notes individually. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains. By default, arpeggio

signs are positioned immediately to the left of the notes to which they apply, and so are positioned between normal notes and grace notes.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the arpeggio signs you want to show before grace notes. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate/deactivate **Arpeggio before grace notes** in the **Arpeggios** group.

RESULT

The selected arpeggio signs are shown before grace notes when the property is activated, and after grace notes when the property is deactivated. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

RELATED LINKS

Changing the property scope on page 617

Changing arpeggio playback relative to the beat

You can change whether individual arpeggios are played before their notated position or after their notated position.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

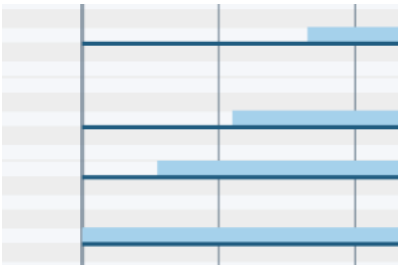
PROCEDURE

1. Select the arpeggio signs whose playback relative to the beat you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Playback position** in the **Arpeggios Playback** group.
3. Choose one of the following options:
   - **Start on beat**
   - **End on beat**

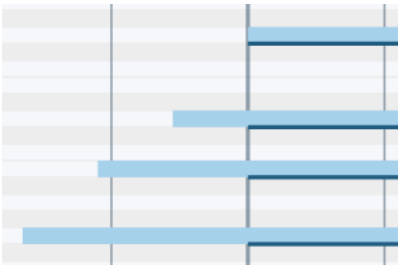
RESULT

The beat-relative position of the selected arpeggios in playback is changed.

EXAMPLE



Arpeggio starting on the beat



Arpeggio ending on the beat

Changing the playback duration of arpeggios

You can change the duration of individual arpeggios in playback.

The duration of arpeggios is expressed as a fraction of the notated rhythm of chords. For example, an arpeggio on a quarter note (crotchet) chord with a note offset value of 1/2 lasts an eighth note (quaver), whereas with a note offset value of 1/8 it lasts a 32nd note.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

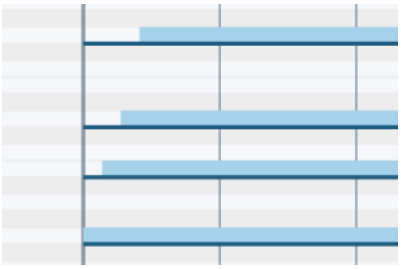
PROCEDURE

1. Select the arpeggio signs whose playback duration you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Note offset** in the **Arpeggios Playback** group.
3. Change the playback duration of the selected arpeggio signs by changing the value in the value field.
4. Press **Return**.

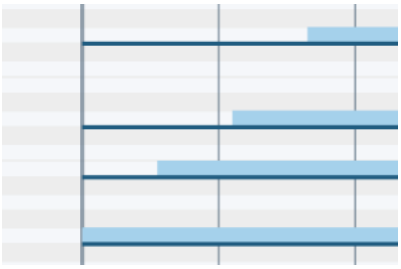
RESULT

The playback duration of the selected arpeggios is changed.

EXAMPLE



Arpeggiated chord with a note offset value of 1/8



Arpeggiated chord with a note offset value of 1/2

Glissando lines

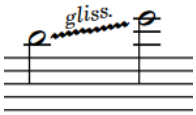
Glissando lines indicate a continuous transition between two notes, which can be smooth or in chromatic steps. They can have straight lines or wiggly lines, and can be shown with a text indication or as a line without text.

Because glissando lines are positioned between noteheads, the steepness of their angle reflects the interval between the notes: the steeper the angle, the greater the interval.

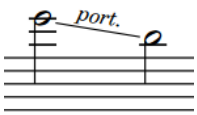
There are different conventions regarding the playing techniques for glissando and portamento. Some people understand glissando lines to indicate a chromatic scale between the two notes, either rising or falling in a series of half-steps (semitones), and portamento lines to indicate a smooth, continuous glide between the two notes. However, the terms glissando and portamento can be used interchangeably in other cases.

You can input both glissando lines and portamento lines in Dorico Elements, and you can easily change their style after they have been input.

Glissando lines in Dorico Elements automatically follow the notes at each end, meaning if you change the pitch of either note, the glissando line end positions move accordingly. Dorico Elements automatically positions glissando lines so they do not collide with accidentals.



An example glissando line with text shown and a wiggly line



An example portamento line with text shown and a straight line

Glissando lines can cross system breaks and page breaks. If text is shown for glissando lines that span system or page breaks, then that text is shown on every glissando line segment. By default, the start and end positions of each segment match the original start and end points of the whole glissando line.

RELATED LINKS

Input methods for ornaments, arpeggio signs, glissando lines, and jazz articulations on page 325
Changing the style of glissando lines on page 1001
Glissando lines in Engrave mode on page 1003
Arpeggio signs on page 994
Jazz articulations on page 1028
Fingering slides on page 885
Playing technique continuation lines on page 1067
Lines on page 1075
Changing the pitch of individual notes on page 444

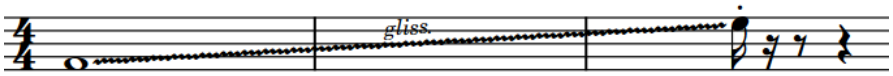
Glissando lines across empty bars

In Dorico Elements, you can input glissando lines between any two notes, even if there are rests or other notes between them, and including between notes in different voices and notes on different staves.

For very long glissando lines that extend across multiple bars, you might not want to show pitches at the start of each bar; for example, to indicate that performers do not emphasize pitches during the course of the glissando, or that performers can play the glissando at their own speed. By default, Dorico Elements shows notes or rests in every bar.

Once you have input a glissando line between the selected notes, you can delete any rests between them.

EXAMPLE



A glissando line across multiple bars with no rests shown between the two notes

RELATED LINKS

Input methods for ornaments, arpeggio signs, glissando lines, and jazz articulations on page 325
Hiding/Showing bar rests in empty bars on page 1150
Deleting rests on page 1149
Turning explicit rests into implicit rests on page 1147

Changing the style of glissando lines

Glissando lines can be shown as straight lines or wiggly lines. You can change the glissando line style of glissando lines individually.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the glissando lines whose style you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Glissando style** in the **Glissando Lines** group.
3. Choose one of the following options:
    - **Straight line**
    - **Wiggly line**

RESULT

The glissando line style is changed for the selected glissando lines.

TIP

- Deactivating **Glissando style** returns the selected glissando lines to the default style.

- You can also change the glissando style by opening the ornaments popover and changing the entry.

RELATED LINKS
Ornaments popover on page 326
Changing existing items on page 412

Changing glissando line text

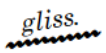
You can show individual glissando lines with “gliss.” text, “port.” text, or without text. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

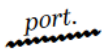
- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

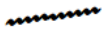
1. Select the glissando lines whose text you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Glissando text** in the **Glissando Lines** group.
3. Select one of the following options from the menu:
   - **Gliss.**

   - **Port.**

   - **No text**

RESULT

The text shown on the selected glissando lines is changed. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

RELATED LINKS
Changing the property scope on page 617
Copying property settings to other layouts/frame chains on page 599
Input methods for ornaments, arpeggio signs, glissando lines, and jazz articulations on page 325

Changing when glissando line text is shown

By default, glissando text is not shown when glissando lines are too short to accommodate the text. You can choose to show text on individual glissando lines always, or only if there is sufficient

space. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the glissando lines whose setting for when text is shown you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Glissando text shown** in the **Glissando Lines** group.
3. Choose one of the following options:
   - **Show if sufficient space**
   - **Always show**

RESULT

When **Show if sufficient space** is chosen, glissando line text is not shown if the glissando line is too short.

When **Always show** is chosen, glissando line text is always shown, even if the glissando line is short. However, this can cause the glissando line text to collide with other items, such as noteheads and stems.

If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

TIP

You can increase the default gaps between noteheads by changing the default note spacing.

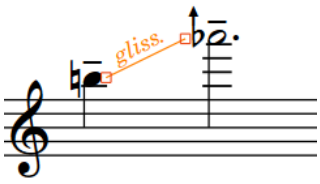
RELATED LINKS

Note spacing on page 579
Changing the default note spacing on page 580

Glissando lines in Engrave mode

In Engrave mode, each glissando line has two square handles, one at the start and one at the end. You can move these handles to adjust the graphical position, length, and angle of glissando lines.

You can also move whole individual glissando lines graphically. If glissando lines cross system and frame breaks, you can move the glissando line segments on each side of the break independently.



Handles on a glissando line in Engrave mode

NOTE

You cannot move glissando lines rhythmically. If you want to change the rhythmic positions of glissando lines, you must delete them from their original positions and input new glissando lines at the new positions.

RELATED LINKS
Moving items graphically on page 481

Glissando lines in playback

Glissando lines are reflected in playback using a sequence of notes, all a small interval apart, between the start and end notes for each glissando.

Glissandos belonging to harps consider the current harp pedaling when determining the pitches to use in playback. Glissandos for all other instruments use the 12-EDO chromatic scale, regardless of the current tonality system.

When glissando lines start or end on tie chains, their playback starts on the last note in tie chains and ends on the first note in tie chains.

By default in playback, glissandos sound across their full duration, but you can delay the start of glissandos in playback individually.

NOTE

Playing back glissando lines as a continuous, smooth slide is not yet supported. This is planned for future versions.

RELATED LINKS
Harp pedaling on page 1036

Delaying the start of glissandos in playback

You can delay the start of glissandos in playback so that they start partway through their duration. By default, glissandos sound for their full duration in playback.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the glissando lines whose playback start you want to delay. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Delayed start** in the **Glissando Lines** group.
3. Optional: If you want to specify exactly how far through the glissando lines playback starts, activate **Delay** and change the value in the value field.

   The value represents fractions of a quarter note. For example, **1/2** delays the start of glissandos by an eighth note.

RESULT

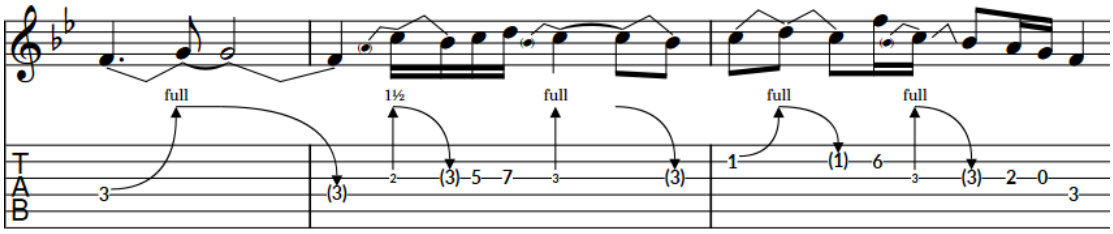
If you activated **Delayed start** only, playback of the selected glissando lines starts halfway through their duration.

If you also activated **Delay**, playback of the selected glissando lines follows your set value.

Guitar bends

The guitar bend is a technique commonly performed on electric guitars, where the performer pushes strings out of their normal alignment after notes start to sound. Bending strings tightens them, which produces the characteristic pitch fluctuation.

Performing a guitar bend often also involves sustaining the bent pitch before allowing the string to return to its natural position and un-bent pitch. In Dorico Elements, these actions are called a “guitar bend hold” and “release” respectively.



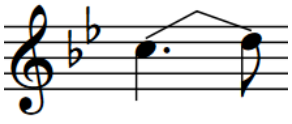
A phrase containing guitar bends, a guitar bend hold, guitar pre-bends, and releases, shown on both a notation staff and tablature

Guitar bends and releases with bend intervals of up to a whole step (tone) are reflected in playback.

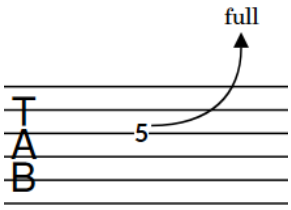
Guitar bends

Guitar bends indicate that the performer should bend the string after playing a note, so that the pitch increases while the note sounds. In Dorico Elements, each guitar bend joins two notes: the start pitch and the pitch at the peak of the bend.

On notation staves, guitar bends are notated using an angled line between the noteheads at the start and end. On tablature, guitar bends are notated using an upwards-pointing curved line with an arrowhead at the top and a bend interval above the arrowhead. The fret number of the end note is hidden automatically.

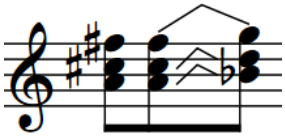


Guitar bend on notation staff

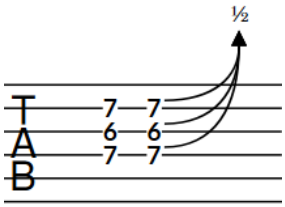


Guitar bend on tablature

If you input guitar bends on multiple notes in chords, their arrowheads are automatically aligned on tablature.

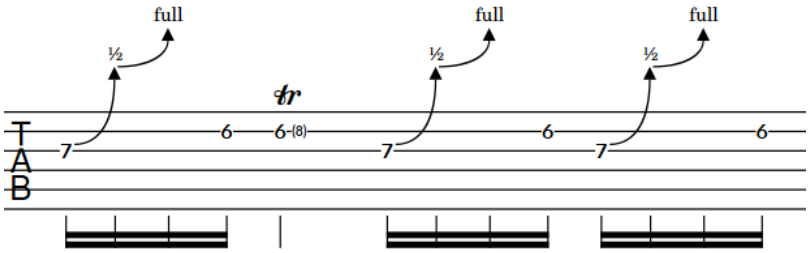


Guitar bends on chord on notation staff



Guitar bends on chord on tablature

Sequences of consecutive guitar bends are notated as bend runs on tablature. In Engrave mode, guitar bend runs function as a group.

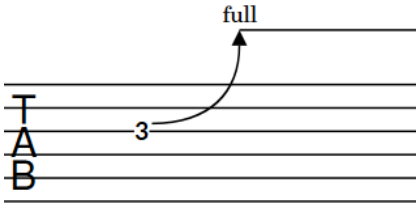


Guitar bend runs on tablature

Guitar bend holds

Guitar bend holds indicate that the performer should maintain the pitch at the peak of a guitar bend. They are usually shown on tied notes.

On tablature, guitar bend holds are notated using a horizontal line. They are not notated on notation staves.

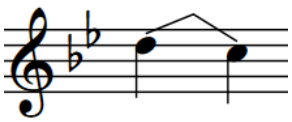


Guitar bend hold on tablature

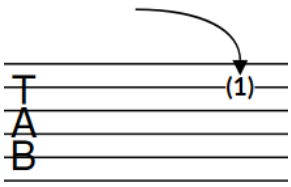
Releases

Releases indicate that the performer should allow a bent string to return to its natural position, which decreases the pitch. In Dorico Elements, each release joins two notes: the pitch at the peak of the bend and the end pitch.

On notation staves, releases are notated using an angled line between the noteheads at the start and end. On tablature, releases are notated using a downwards-pointing curved line with an arrowhead at the bottom and parenthesized fret numbers below the arrowhead to indicate the end pitches. The fret number of the start note is hidden automatically.

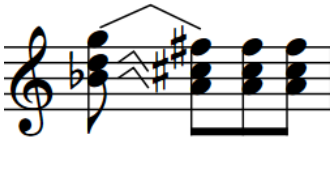


Release on notation staff

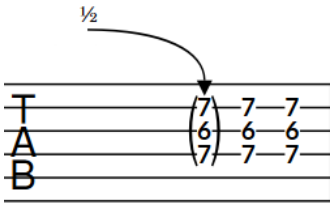


Release on tablature

If you input releases on multiple notes in chords, they are notated with a single downwards-pointing curved line on tablature. If the bend intervals are the same for all notes, the end pitches are parenthesized together.



Releases on chord on notation staff



Releases on chord on tablature

NOTE

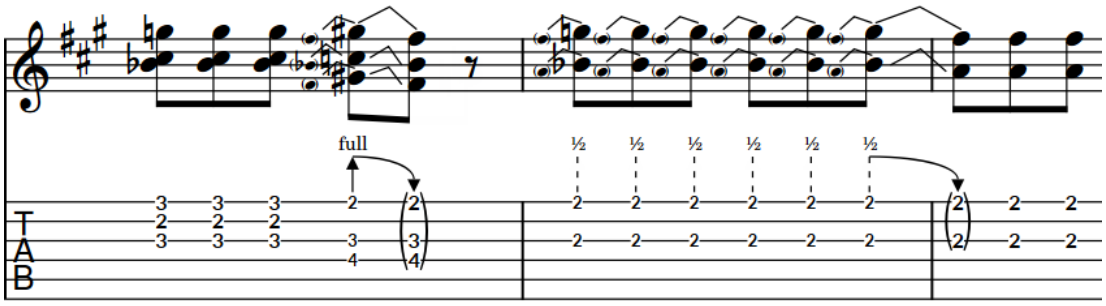
- In addition to guitar bends, Dorico Elements supports guitar pre-bends/pre-dives, guitar post-bends, vibrato bar dives and returns, and other guitar techniques.
- Because you input releases in the same way as you input guitar bends, in this documentation, “guitar bends” refers to both guitar bend and release items in projects.
- Stems, stem flags, and beaming always appear stem-up on tablature in single-voice contexts, which means they can collide with guitar bends.

RELATED LINKS

Bend intervals on page 1012
Guitar bends in Engrave mode on page 1015
Guitar techniques on page 1021
Input methods for guitar bends and guitar techniques on page 338
Tablature on page 1200
Hiding/Showing notation staves and tablature on page 1201
Bracketed noteheads on page 953
String indicators on page 891
Lines on page 1075

Guitar pre-bends and pre-dives

Guitar pre-bends and pre-dives are techniques commonly performed on electric guitars, where the performer changes the initial sounding pitch of strings before playing notes, either by bending strings to tighten them or using the vibrato bar to loosen them.



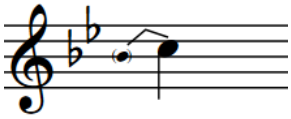
A phrase containing a guitar pre-bend with release and multiple guitar pre-dives with release

In Dorico Elements, guitar pre-bends and pre-dives are properties of notes belonging to fretted instruments, meaning they only apply to single notes.

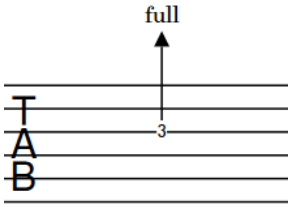
Guitar pre-bends

Guitar pre-bends indicate that the performer should bend the string before playing the note to raise the pitch; for example, to repeat a note that was at the end of a previous guitar bend. The pitch can then be lowered after starting to sound.

On notation staves, guitar pre-bends are notated using an angled line between the noteheads at the start and end. However, unlike guitar bends, the parenthesized auxiliary notehead at the start is shown automatically as part of the pre-bend. On tablature, guitar pre-bends are notated using a solid vertical line with an arrowhead at the top, a bend interval above the arrowhead, and a small fret number below the line to indicate the start pitch.



Guitar pre-bend on notation staff

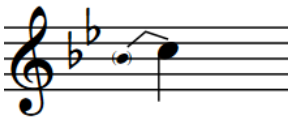


Guitar pre-bend on tablature

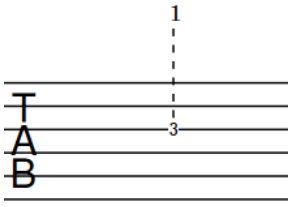
Guitar pre-dives

Guitar pre-dives indicate that the performer should use the vibrato bar to lower the pitch before playing the note. The pitch can then be raised after starting to sound.

On notation staves, guitar pre-dives appear the same as guitar pre-bends. On tablature, guitar pre-dives are notated using a dashed vertical line with an arrowhead at the top, a bend interval above the arrowhead, and a small fret number below the line to indicate the start pitch.



Guitar pre-dive on notation staff



Guitar pre-dive on tablature

NOTE

Stems, stem flags, and beaming always appear stem-up on tablature in single-voice contexts, which means they can collide with guitar bends.

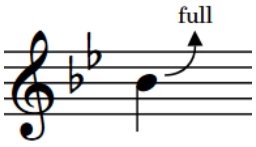
RELATED LINKS
Guitar pre-bends/pre-dives in Engrave mode on page 1017
Inputting guitar pre-bends/pre-dives on page 340
Tablature on page 1200

Guitar post-bends

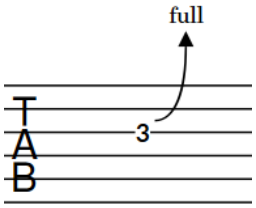
The guitar post-bend is a technique commonly performed on electric guitars, where the performer pushes strings out of their normal alignment after notes start to sound. Bending

strings tightens them, which produces the characteristic pitch fluctuation. Microtonal post-bends are particularly idiomatic in Blues music.

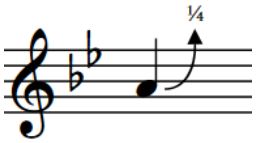
In Dorico Elements, guitar post-bends are properties of notes belonging to fretted instruments, meaning they only apply to single notes. They are notated the same on notation staves and tablature, using an upwards-pointing curved line with an arrowhead at the top and a bend interval above the arrowhead.



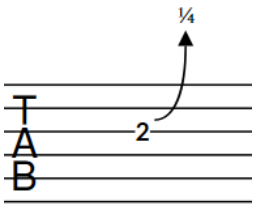
Guitar post-bend on notation staff



Guitar post-bend on tablature

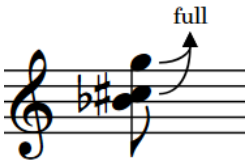


Microtonal post-bend on notation staff

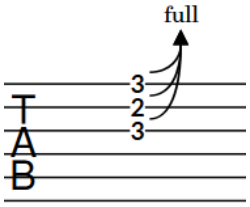


Microtonal post-bend on tablature

If you input guitar post-bends on multiple notes in chords, their arrowheads are automatically aligned. On notation staves, the appropriate number of curved lines is shown according to the staff positions of notes in chords.



Guitar post-bends on chord on notation staff



Guitar post-bends on chord on tablature

NOTE

Guitar post-bends are not currently reflected in playback. This is planned for future versions.

RELATED LINKS

Guitar post-bends in Engrave mode on page 1018
Inputting guitar post-bends on page 341

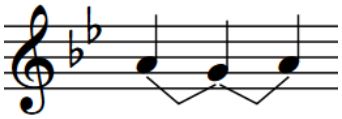
Vibrato bar dives and returns

The vibrato bar dive and return is a technique performed on electric guitars with a vibrato bar, where the performer uses the vibrato bar to loosen then tighten strings after notes start to sound. This produces the characteristic downwards-then-upwards pitch fluctuation.

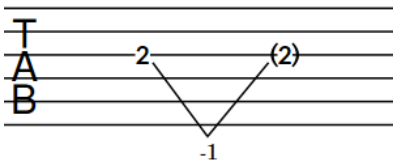
In Dorico Elements, each vibrato bar dive and return comprises two vibrato bar bend items, where the first vibrato bar bend ends on the same note that the second vibrato bar bend starts on. Vibrato bar bends each join two notes.

Vibrato bar dives and returns with bend intervals of up to a whole step (tone) are reflected in playback.

On notation staves, vibrato bar dives and returns are notated using an angled line between the noteheads at the start and end, meaning they appear the same as guitar bends. On tablature, vibrato bar dives and returns are notated using two straight lines that form a V and a bend interval shown at the point. The fret number of the middle note is hidden and the fret number of the end note is parenthesized automatically.

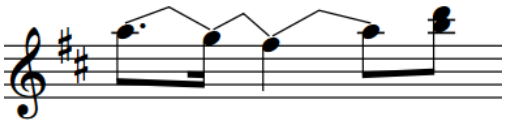


Vibrato bar dive and return on notation staff

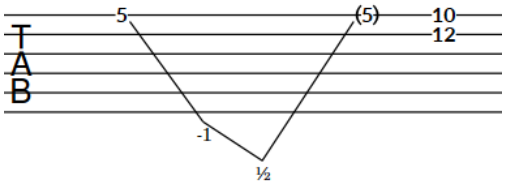


Vibrato bar dive and return on tablature

Sequences of consecutive vibrato bar bends on notes with the same pitch direction, such as E-D-C, are notated on tablature with an additional line protrusion beyond the staff and bend interval for each vibrato bar bend.

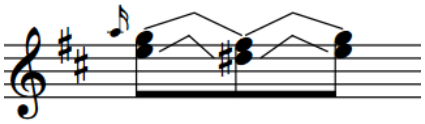


Consecutive vibrato bar bends on notation staff

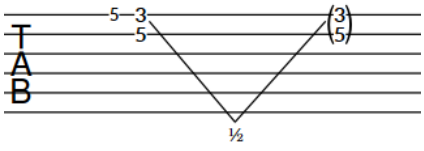


Consecutive vibrato bar bends on tablature

If you input vibrato bar dives and returns on multiple notes in chords, a single V appears on tablature as long as the bend intervals are the same for all notes.



Vibrato bar dive and return on chords on notation staff



Vibrato bar dive and return on chords on tablature

RELATED LINKS
Inputting vibrato bar dives and returns with the popover on page 343
Inputting vibrato bar dives and returns with the panel on page 344
Vibrato bar dives and returns in Engrave mode on page 1019
Vibrato bar techniques on page 1021
Bracketed noteheads on page 953
Tablature on page 1200

Bend intervals

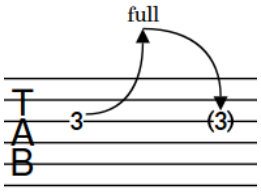
Bend intervals indicate the amount guitar bends, pre-bends, pre-dives, post-dives, and dives and returns change the pitch, expressed in relation to whole steps using text or numbers/fractions. Bend intervals appear only on tablature for most types of bends, except for guitar post-bends, whose bend intervals also appear on notation staves.

For example, **full** indicates a whole step guitar bend, pre-bend, or post-bend, **1/2** a half-step, and **1 1/2** a minor third.

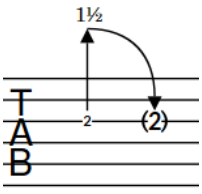
Bend intervals for guitar pre-dives and vibrato bar dives and returns always appear as numbers/fractions, such as **1** for a whole step vibrato bar dive and return.

Microtonal bend intervals appear as fractions according to the prevailing tonality system, such as **3/4**. Bend intervals for microtonal post-bends appear as **1/4**.

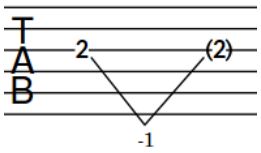
EXAMPLE



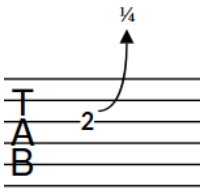
Guitar bend with whole step interval, displayed as **full**



Guitar pre-bend with minor third interval, displayed as **1 1/2**



Vibrato bar dive and return with whole step interval, displayed as **-1**



Guitar post-bend with microtonal interval, displayed as **1/4**

Bend intervals for guitar bends, pre-bends, pre-dives, and post-dives are positioned above the arrowhead/line for the corresponding notation. For dives and returns, bend intervals appear at the point of the V, either above or below the staff according to the pitch direction of notes in the dive and return.

Bend intervals appear only on tablature for guitar bends, pre-bends, pre-dives, and dives and returns. They appear on both notation staves and tablature for guitar post-bends.

RELATED LINKS
Tablature on page 1200
Changing vibrato bar dip intervals on page 1026
Input methods for guitar bends and guitar techniques on page 338

Hiding/Showing guitar bend hold lines

Guitar bend hold lines indicate that the bend should be held for the duration of the note, which is usually a tied note. You can hide/show hold lines on guitar bends on tablature.

NOTE

These steps only apply to guitar bends. You cannot show hold lines on pre-bends or releases.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

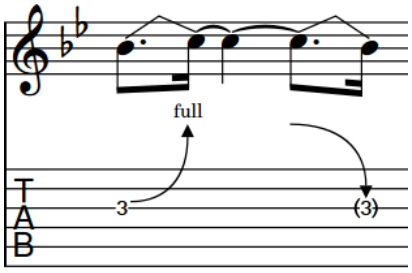
PROCEDURE

1. Select the guitar bends on which you want to hide/show hold lines. You can do this on notation staves and tablature in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate/deactivate **Show hold** in the **Guitar Bends** group.

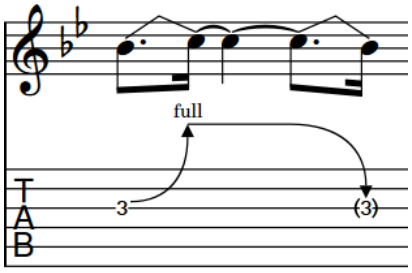
RESULT

Hold lines are shown on the selected bends on tablature when **Show hold** is activated, and hidden when it is deactivated.

EXAMPLE



Hold line hidden



Hold line shown

Changing the direction of guitar pre-bends/pre-dives

You can change the direction of guitar pre-bends/pre-dives individually. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains. By default, guitar pre-bends/pre-dives are positioned on the notehead-side of notes in single-voice contexts. In multiple-voice contexts, they are positioned on the stem-side of notes.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the guitar pre-bends/pre-dives whose direction you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Pre-bend direction** in the **Guitar Pre-bends** group.
3. Choose one of the following options:
   - **Up**
   - **Down**

RESULT

The direction of the selected guitar pre-bends/pre-dives is changed. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

TIP

You can change the direction of guitar bends on notation staves by selecting them and pressing **F**. However, you cannot use this key command for guitar pre-bends/pre-dives.

RELATED LINKS

Changing the staff-relative placement of items on page 414
Changing vibrato bar dip intervals on page 1026
Changing the staff-relative placement of guitar techniques on page 1026
Changing the property scope on page 617
Copying property settings to other layouts/frame chains on page 599

Hiding/Showing accidentals on guitar pre-bends/pre-dives

You can hide/show accidentals on guitar pre-bends/pre-dives individually; for example, to save horizontal space in a layout that also shows the interval clearly on tablature. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the guitar pre-bends/pre-dives whose accidentals you want to hide/show. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Pre-bend accidental** in the **Guitar Pre-bends** group.
3. Choose one of the following options:
   - **Hide**
   - **Show**

RESULT

Accidentals on the selected guitar pre-bends are hidden when you choose **Hide**, and shown when you choose **Show**. This does not affect the interval shown for the selected guitar pre-bends

on tablature. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

Deleting guitar pre-bends, pre-dives, and post-bends

You can remove guitar pre-bends, pre-dives, and post-bends from notes after you have input them. However, because guitar pre-bends, pre-dives, and post-bends are properties of notes rather than separate items in Dorico Elements, you must select and delete them differently from other items.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the notes from which you want to remove guitar pre-bends, pre-dives, and/or post-bends.
2. Do one of the following:
   - To remove guitar pre-bends/pre-dives, deactivate **Pre-bend interval** in the **Guitar Pre-bends** group of the Properties panel.
   - To remove guitar post-bends, deactivate **Post-bend interval** in the **Guitar Post-bends** group of the Properties panel.

RESULT

Guitar pre-bends, pre-dives, and/or post-bends are removed from the selected notes.

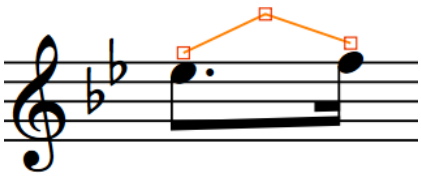
RELATED LINKS

Inputting guitar pre-bends/pre-dives on page 340
Inputting guitar post-bends on page 341

Guitar bends in Engrave mode

In Engrave mode, each guitar bend, release, and hold has multiple handles that you can move independently to adjust their graphical position and shape on notation staves and tablature independently.

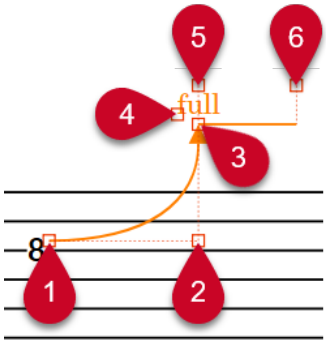
On notation staves, guitar bends and releases have three square handles. When you move either of the start/end handles, the middle handle also moves to retain its position relative to the start/end handles.



Guitar bend handles on notation staff in Engrave mode

Guitar bends and holds

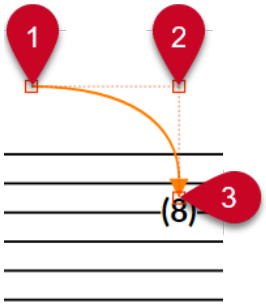
On tablature, guitar bends and holds have the following handles:



1 Guitar bend start handle
2 Guitar bend middle handle
3 Guitar bend end handle
4 Bend interval handle
5 Hold start handle
6 Hold end handle

Releases

On tablature, releases have the following handles:



1 Release start handle
2 Release middle handle
3 Release end handle

You can move these handles to change the shape of guitar bends and releases, change the graphical length and angle of guitar bend holds, and move bend intervals. When you move guitar bend end handles, the bend interval also moves to retain its position relative to the end handle.

If guitar bends cross system and frame breaks, you can move the guitar bend segment on each side of the break independently.

NOTE

- Adjoining guitar bends, such as guitar bend runs or a guitar bend that ends on the same note that a return starts on, function as a group. When using the mouse, moving any guitar bend in the group upwards/downwards moves all the others. When you move individual handles within the group using the mouse, adjacent guitar bends automatically adjust to compensate.

  When you move individual guitar bends in a group or individual handles using the keyboard, this does not affect adjacent guitar bends.

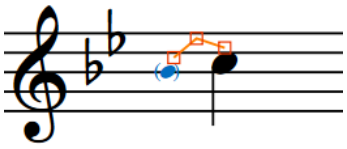
- You cannot move whole holds, you must move their handles.
- The following properties in the **Guitar Bends** group of the Properties panel are activated automatically when you move the corresponding guitar bend handle:
  - **Start offset** moves start guitar bend and release handles. **X** moves them horizontally, **Y** moves them vertically.
  - **Mid offset** moves middle guitar bend and release handles. **X** moves them horizontally, **Y** moves them vertically.
  - **End offset** moves end guitar bend and release handles. **X** moves them horizontally, **Y** moves them vertically.
  - **Interval offset** moves guitar bend interval handles. **X** moves them horizontally, **Y** moves them vertically.
  - **Hold start offset** moves start guitar bend hold handles. **X** moves them horizontally, **Y** moves them vertically.
  - **Hold end offset** moves end guitar bend hold handles. **X** moves them horizontally, **Y** moves them vertically.

RELATED LINKS
Moving items graphically on page 481
Bend intervals on page 1012
System breaks on page 586
Frame breaks on page 589
Input methods for guitar bends and guitar techniques on page 338

Guitar pre-bends/pre-dives in Engrave mode

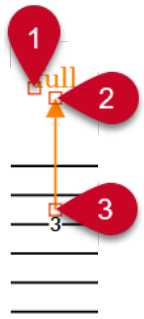
In Engrave mode, each guitar pre-bend/pre-dive has multiple handles that you can move independently to adjust their graphical position and shape on notation staves and tablature independently.

On notation staves, guitar pre-bends/pre-dives have three square handles. When you move either of the start/end handles, the middle handle also moves to retain its position relative to the start/end handles.

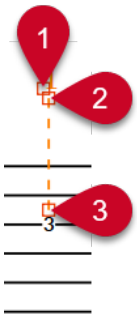


Guitar pre-bend/pre-dive handles on notation staff in Engrave mode

On tablature, guitar pre-bends/pre-dives have the following handles:



Guitar pre-bend handles



Guitar pre-dive handles

1 Bend interval handle

2 Guitar pre-bend/pre-dive end handle

3 Guitar pre-bend/pre-dive start handle

You can move these handles to change the shape of guitar pre-bends/pre-dives on notation staves, change the graphical length and angle of guitar pre-bends/pre-dives on tablature, and move bend intervals. When you move guitar pre-bend/pre-dive end handles, the bend interval also moves to retain its position relative to the end handle.

NOTE

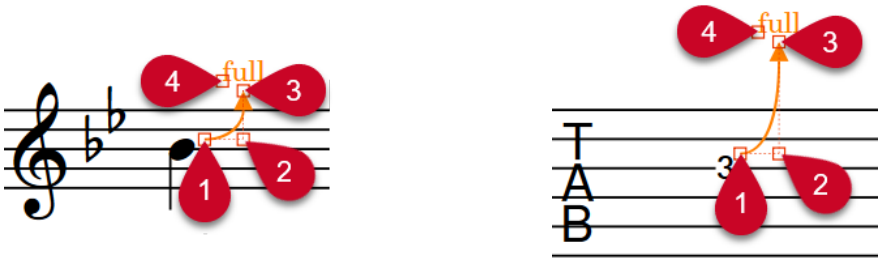
- You cannot move whole guitar pre-bends/pre-dives, you must move their handles.
- The following properties in the **Guitar Pre-bends** group of the Properties panel are activated automatically when you move the corresponding guitar pre-bend/pre-dive handle:
  - **Start offset** moves guitar pre-bend/pre-dive start handles. **X** moves them horizontally, **Y** moves them vertically.
  - **Mid offset** moves guitar pre-bend/pre-dive middle handles. **X** moves them horizontally, **Y** moves them vertically.
  - **End offset** moves guitar pre-bend/pre-dive end handles. **X** moves them horizontally, **Y** moves them vertically.
  - **Interval offset** moves guitar pre-bend/pre-dive interval handles. **X** moves them horizontally, **Y** moves them vertically.

RELATED LINKS
Inputting guitar pre-bends/pre-dives on page 340

Guitar post-bends in Engrave mode

In Engrave mode, each guitar post-bend has multiple handles that you can move independently to adjust their graphical position and shape on notation staves and tablature independently.

On both notation staves and tablature, guitar post-bends have the following handles:



1 Guitar post-bend start handle

2 Guitar post-bend middle handle

3 Guitar post-bend end handle

4 Bend interval handle

You can move these handles to change the shape of guitar post-bends and move bend intervals. When you move guitar post-bend end handles, the bend interval also moves to retain its position relative to the end handle.

NOTE

The following properties in the **Guitar Post-bends** group of the Properties panel are activated automatically when you move the corresponding guitar post-bend handle:

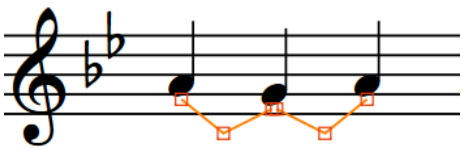
- **Start offset** moves guitar post-bend start handles. **X** moves them horizontally, **Y** moves them vertically.
- **Mid offset** moves guitar post-bend middle handles. **X** moves them horizontally, **Y** moves them vertically.
- **End offset** moves guitar post-bend end handles. **X** moves them horizontally, **Y** moves them vertically.
- **Interval offset** moves guitar post-bend interval handles. **X** moves them horizontally, **Y** moves them vertically.

RELATED LINKS
Moving items graphically on page 481
Inputting guitar post-bends on page 341

Vibrato bar dives and returns in Engrave mode

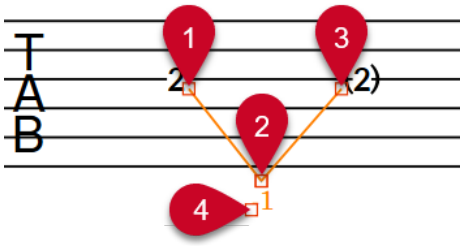
In Engrave mode, each vibrato bar dive and return has multiple handles that you can move independently to adjust their graphical position and shape.

On notation staves, each vibrato bar dive and vibrato bar return has three square handles that you can move independently. When you move either of the start/end handles, the middle handle also moves to retain its position relative to the start/end handles.



Vibrato bar dive and return handles on notation staff in Engrave mode

On tablature, vibrato bar dives and returns have the following handles:



1 Vibrato bar dive start handle

2 Vibrato bar dive end handle/Vibrato bar return start handle

3 Vibrato bar return end handle

4 Bend interval handle

You can move these handles to change the shape or angle of vibrato bar dives and returns and move bend intervals. When you move the vibrato bar dive end handle/vibrato bar return start handle with the mouse, both handles move together. When you move the handle using the keyboard, by default only the vibrato bar dive end handle moves. The same is true for consecutive vibrato bar bends with the same pitch direction.

When you move the vibrato bar dive end handle, the bend interval also moves to retain its position relative to the end handle.

If vibrato bar dives and returns cross system and frame breaks, you can move the vibrato bar dive and return segment on each side of the break independently.

NOTE

The following properties in the **Guitar Bends** group of the Properties panel are activated automatically when you move the corresponding vibrato bar dive/return handle:

- **Start offset** moves vibrato bar dive/return start handles. **X** moves them horizontally, **Y** moves them vertically.
- **Mid offset** moves vibrato bar dive/return middle handles. **X** moves them horizontally, **Y** moves them vertically.
- **End offset** moves vibrato bar dive/return end handles. **X** moves them horizontally, **Y** moves them vertically.
- **Interval offset** moves vibrato bar dive/return interval handles. **X** moves them horizontally, **Y** moves them vertically.

RELATED LINKS

Vibrato bar techniques on page 1021
Input methods for guitar bends and guitar techniques on page 338
System breaks on page 586
Frame breaks on page 589

Guitar techniques

The term “guitar techniques” covers a range of techniques typically associated with guitar music, such as hammer-ons, pull-offs, and pitch alterations that use the vibrato bar on electric guitars.

RELATED LINKS
Input methods for guitar bends and guitar techniques on page 338
Guitar bends on page 1006
Guitar pre-bends and pre-dives on page 1008
Guitar post-bends on page 1009
Vibrato bar dives and returns on page 1011
Bend intervals on page 1012

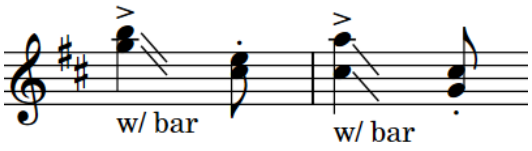
Vibrato bar techniques

There are a number of different techniques that can be performed using the vibrato bar on electric fretted instruments, typically guitars. In Dorico Elements, the available vibrato bar techniques are categorized differently.

Vibrato bar dives

Vibrato bar dives indicate that the performer should use the vibrato bar to lower the pitch after playing the note, so that the pitch falls after starting to sound. This technique is also known as a “dive bomb”.

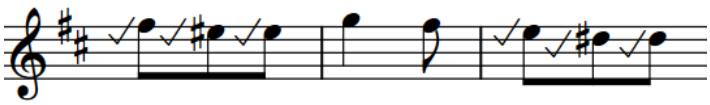
In Dorico Elements, you can notate vibrato bar dives using jazz articulations to show falling lines to the right of noteheads in combination with a vibrato bar indication.



Vibrato bar scoops

Vibrato bar scoops indicate that the performer should depress the vibrato bar just before playing the note and then release the vibrato bar quickly, so that the pitch rises after starting to sound.

In Dorico Elements, vibrato bar scoops are properties of notes, meaning they only apply to single notes. By default, vibrato bar scoops only appear on notation staves and are placed to the left of noteheads on the staff.

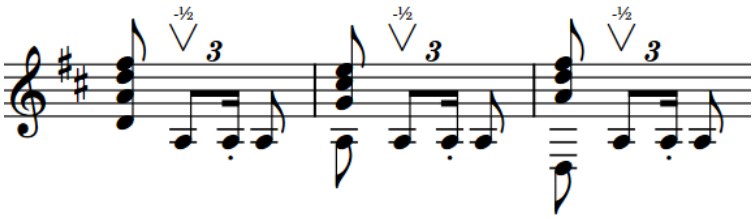


Vibrato bar dips

Vibrato bar dips indicate that the performer should use the vibrato bar to lower and then raise the pitch by the specified interval after playing the note.

In Dorico Elements, vibrato bar dips are considered ornaments. You can select and delete them independently of the notes to which they apply. Vibrato bar dips appear

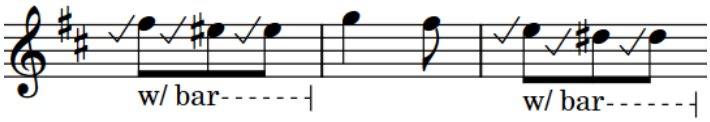
on both notation staves and tablature and are placed above the staff. You can change the staff-relative placement of individual vibrato bar dips.



Vibrato bar indications/lines

Vibrato bar indications are text instructions that indicate that the performer should use the vibrato bar. When they apply to a range of notes, they typically show dashed lines.

In Dorico Elements, vibrato bar indications/lines are considered playing techniques. They show lines when they have duration. You can select and delete them independently of the notes to which they apply. You can also change the duration line style of vibrato bar lines in the same ways as for playing technique continuation lines.



NOTE

Vibrato bar techniques are not currently reflected in playback. This is planned for future versions.

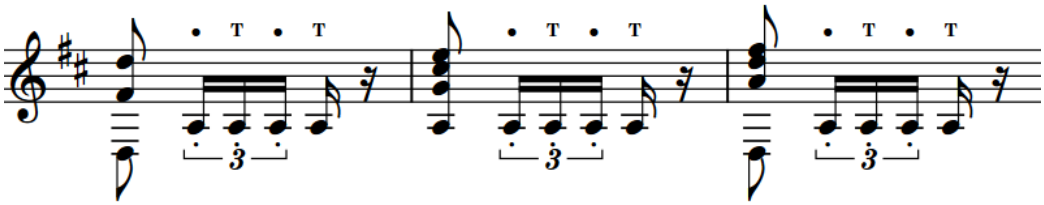
RELATED LINKS

Input methods for guitar bends and guitar techniques on page 338
Inputting guitar pre-bends/pre-dives on page 340
Guitar pre-bends and pre-dives on page 1008
Vibrato bar dives and returns on page 1011
Jazz articulations on page 1028
Ornaments on page 977
Playing techniques on page 1062
Playing technique continuation lines on page 1067
Playing technique duration on page 1068
Lengthening/Shortening items on page 410
Changing the style of playing technique continuation lines on page 1071
Changing the staff-relative placement of items on page 414
Changing the staff-relative placement of guitar techniques on page 1026

Tapping

Tapping involves performers pressing the strings of fretted instruments strongly enough that the corresponding pitch sounds without additional striking. Tapping indications can specify whether the performer should use their right or left hand for individual notes. They typically appear as the letter T, a plus sign, or a dot.

According to convention, tapping indications for the same hand and for consecutive notes on the same string with different pitches are notated alongside slurs that span the tapped phrase. This is similar to hammer-ons and pull-offs, except tapping indications appear on every note whereas hammer-on and pull-off indications typically appear centered on slurs.



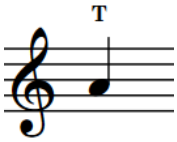
A phrase containing right-hand and left-hand tapping

By default, tapping indications only appear on notation staves and are placed above the staff. You can change the staff-relative placement of individual tapping indications.

In Dorico Elements, tapping indications are considered properties of notes. There are the following types of tapping indications:

Right-hand tapping

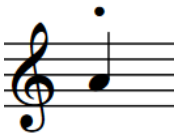
Right-hand tapping indications specify that the performer should tap the string at the specified pitch with their right hand. In Dorico Elements, right-hand tapping indications appear as the letter T.



Right-hand tapping on notation staff

Left-hand tapping

Left-hand tapping indications specify that the performer should tap the string at the specified pitch with their left hand. In Dorico Elements, left-hand tapping indications appear as a dot.



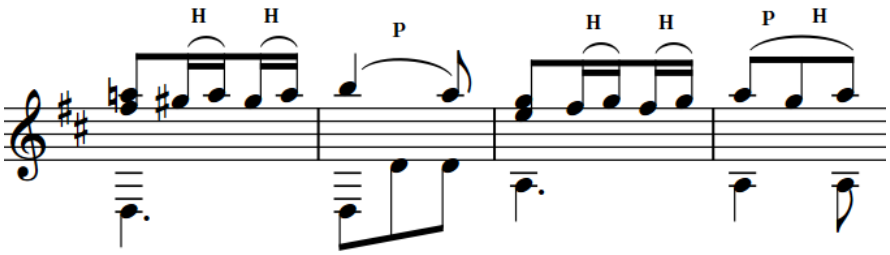
Left-hand tapping on notation staff

RELATED LINKS
Inputting tapping on page 350
Changing the staff-relative placement of guitar techniques on page 1026
Moving items graphically on page 481
Fingerings for fretted instruments on page 880

Hammer-ons and pull-offs

Hammer-ons and pull-offs involve performers tapping or plucking the strings of fretted instruments with their left hand strongly enough that the corresponding pitch sounds without additional striking, producing a legato effect. Ligados are a combination of at least one hammer-on and one pull-off in a single phrase.

Hammer-ons and pull-offs are notated as the letters H or P, respectively, combined with a slur spanning the corresponding notes. Dorico Elements automatically centers hammer-on/pull-off indications on slurs. For ligados, each hammer-on/pull-off indication is centered over the range of notes in the corresponding direction.



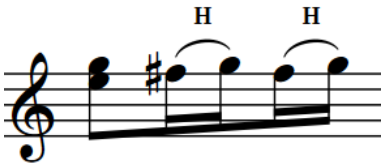
A phrase containing hammer-ons, a pull-off, and a ligado

By default, hammer-ons/pull-offs appear on both notation staves and tablature and are placed above the staff. You can change the staff-relative placement of individual hammer-on/pull-off indications.

In Dorico Elements, hammer-on/pull-off indications are considered properties of notes.

Hammer-ons

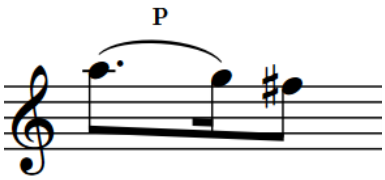
Hammer-ons specify that the performer should tap the string at the specified pitch with their left hand without restriking the string. Hammer-ons require at least two notes on the same string with an ascending pitch direction, such as C-D. In Dorico Elements, hammer-ons appear as a letter H.



Hammer-ons on notation staff

Pull-offs

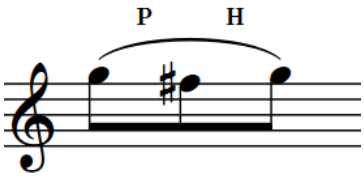
Pull-offs specify that the performer should pluck the string at the specified pitch with their left hand without restriking the string. Pull-offs require at least two notes on the same string with a descending pitch direction, such as D-C. In Dorico Elements, pull-offs appear as a letter P.



Pull-off on notation staff

Ligados

Ligados specify that the performer should both hammer on and pull off notes within a single phrase. Ligados require at least three notes on the same string with alternating pitch directions, such as C-D-C. In Dorico Elements, ligados comprise at least one hammer-on and pull-off.



Ligado on notation staff

RELATED LINKS
Inputting hammer-ons/pull-offs on page 349
Changing the staff-relative placement of guitar techniques on page 1026
Moving items graphically on page 481
Fingerings for fretted instruments on page 880

Showing notes as dead notes

You can show individual notes belonging to fretted instruments as dead notes. Dead notes are notated with cross noteheads on notation staves and with an X on tablature.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the notes belonging to fretted instruments that you want to show as dead notes. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Dead note** in the **Notes and Rests** group.

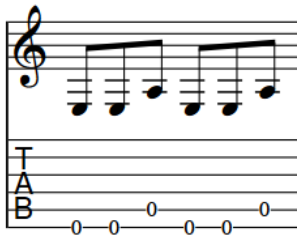
RESULT

The selected notes are shown as dead notes.

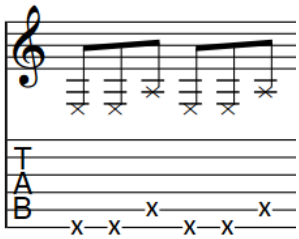
NOTE

This does not currently affect their sound in playback; this is planned for future versions.

EXAMPLE



Normal notes



Dead notes

RELATED LINKS
Inputting notes on tablature on page 232
Bracketed noteheads on page 953
Tablature on page 1200

Changing vibrato bar dip intervals

You can change the intervals of individual vibrato bar dips. By default, vibrato bar dips have half step intervals.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

PROCEDURE

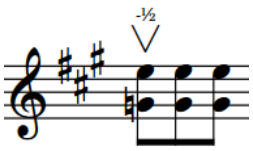
1. Select the vibrato bar dips whose interval you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, change the value for **Interval above** in the **Ornaments** group.

   For example, enter **1** for a half step interval, **2** for a whole step interval, or **3** for a minor third interval.

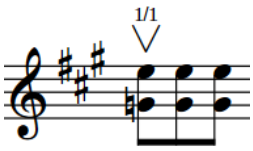
RESULT

The interval of the selected vibrato bar dips is changed.

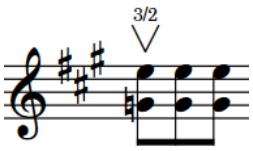
EXAMPLE



Vibrato bar dip with half step interval



Vibrato bar dip with whole step interval



Vibrato bar dip with minor third interval

RELATED LINKS

Inputting vibrato bar dips with the popover on page 346
Inputting vibrato bar dips with the panel on page 347
Changing ornament intervals on page 977
Trill intervals on page 984

Changing the staff-relative placement of guitar techniques

You can show individual tapping, hammer-on, and pull-off indications either above or below the staff. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the notes whose guitar technique staff-relative placement you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Technique placement** in the **Guitar Techniques** group.
3. Choose one of the following options:
   - **Above**
   - **Below**

RESULT

The staff-relative placement of tapping, hammer-on, and pull-off indications on the selected notes is changed. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

TIP

You can change the staff-relative placement of vibrato bar dips and lines by selecting them and pressing **F**.

RELATED LINKS

Changing the direction of guitar pre-bends/pre-dives on page 1013
Moving items graphically on page 481
Changing the staff-relative placement of items on page 414
Changing the property scope on page 617
Copying property settings to other layouts/frame chains on page 599

Deleting guitar techniques

You can remove vibrato bar scoops and tapping, hammer-on, and pull-off indications from notes after you have input them. However, because these guitar techniques are properties of notes rather than separate items in Dorico Elements, you must select and delete them differently from other items.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the notes from which you want to remove guitar techniques.
2. Remove guitar techniques in any of the following ways:
   - To remove tapping, hammer-on, and pull-off indications, deactivate **Technique** in the **Guitar Techniques** group of the Properties panel.
   - To remove guitar vibrato bar scoops, deactivate **Vibrato bar scoop** in the **Guitar Techniques** group of the Properties panel.

RESULT

Tapping, hammer-on, and pull-off indications and/or vibrato bar scoops are removed from the selected notes.

Jazz articulations

Jazz articulations in Dorico Elements cover a range of note ornamentations that are idiomatic to jazz music, and brass instruments in particular.

Although they are often known as jazz “articulations”, these techniques function more like ornaments than articulations because they change the pitch rather than the duration or attack of notes. For this reason, they are considered ornaments in Dorico Elements. They are found in the Ornaments panel, and you can also input them using the ornaments popover.

Jazz articulations can be shown as a curved line similar to a slur, which is called a “bend” in Dorico Elements, and as a straight line, which can be solid, dashed, or wiggly, which is called “smooth” in Dorico Elements.

Each note can have a single jazz articulation on each side of it, one before the note and one after. Jazz articulations after notes can have different lengths.

The following jazz articulations can be shown before notes:

Plop

An approach into the note from above.

Plop (bend)

Plop (smooth)

Scoop/Lift

An approach into the note from below. A bend approach is a scoop, a smooth approach is a lift.

Scoop

Lift (straight)

The following jazz articulations can be shown after notes:

Doit

A rise in pitch after the note.

Doit (bend)

Doit (smooth)

Fall

A lowering of pitch after the note.

Fall (bend)

Fall (smooth)

Additionally, there are other jazz ornaments commonly used by brass instruments that you can add to notes in the same ways as inputting jazz articulations.

If your sound library includes samples for jazz articulations, Dorico Elements loads the required samples using playback techniques.

RELATED LINKS
Input methods for ornaments, arpeggio signs, glissando lines, and jazz articulations on page 325
Playback techniques on page 706
Glissando lines on page 1000
Arpeggio signs on page 994
Fingering slides on page 885
Lines on page 1075

Jazz ornaments

Jazz ornaments are notations that are commonly used in jazz music and by brass instruments, such as flips and smears, that are positioned outside of the staff rather than beside noteheads like jazz articulations.

Jazz ornaments behave more like other ornaments than jazz articulations, in that they are items separate from notes, and so can be selected independently of notes in Write mode and added to notes in addition to jazz articulations. Because they are so commonly used alongside jazz articulations, in Dorico Elements they are also included in the **Jazz** section of the Ornaments panel.

You can input jazz ornaments in the same ways as inputting other ornaments rather than jazz articulations.

The following ornaments are considered jazz ornaments in Dorico Elements:

Flip

Smear

Jazz turn/Shake

Bend

NOTE

Jazz articulations are not currently reflected in playback.

RELATED LINKS
Ornaments on page 977

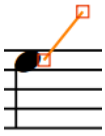
Input methods for ornaments, arpeggio signs, glissando lines, and jazz articulations on page 325

Positions of jazz articulations

In Dorico Elements, jazz articulations are automatically positioned relative to the noteheads to which they apply, with any other notations on those notes, such as rhythm dots, accidentals, and back notes, automatically considered.

When multiple notes in a chord have a jazz articulation, Dorico Elements considers the best way to align them based on how close to the noteheads they can be positioned and how many jazz articulations to show in total. Dorico Elements allows a maximum of one jazz articulation per space, meaning fewer jazz articulations than noteheads are sometimes shown on cluster chords.

In Engrave mode, each smooth jazz articulation has two square handles, one at the start and one at the end. You can move these handles to adjust the graphical position, length, and angle of jazz articulations. You can also move whole individual jazz articulations graphically.



Handles on a smooth doit in Engrave mode

NOTE

- You cannot move jazz articulations rhythmically. If you want to change the notes to which jazz articulations apply, you must delete them from their original notes and input new jazz articulations on the new notes.
- The following properties in the **Jazz Articulations** group of the Properties panel are activated automatically when you move the corresponding smooth jazz articulation handle:
  - **In far offset** moves the start handle of jazz articulations shown before notes; that is, the handle further from the note. **X** moves them horizontally, **Y** moves them vertically.
  - **In offset** moves the end handle of jazz articulations shown before notes; that is, the handle closer to the note. **X** moves them horizontally, **Y** moves them vertically.
  - **Out offset** moves the start handle of jazz articulations shown after notes; that is, the handle closer to the note. **X** moves them horizontally, **Y** moves them vertically.
  - **Out far offset** moves the end handle of jazz articulations shown after notes; that is, the handle further from the note. **X** moves them horizontally, **Y** moves them vertically.

RELATED LINKS

Input methods for ornaments, arpeggio signs, glissando lines, and jazz articulations on page 325
Moving items graphically on page 481
Deleting jazz articulations on page 1032

Changing the type/length of existing jazz articulations

You can change the type and length of jazz articulations after you have input them; for example, if you want to change a smooth doit to a long bend doit. You can specify the type/length of jazz articulations when using the Ornaments panel but not when using the ornaments popover.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the notes whose jazz articulation you want to change.

2. In the Ornaments panel, click the jazz articulation you want in the **Jazz** section.

RESULT

The jazz articulation shown on the selected notes is changed.

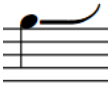
TIP

You can also change the type/duration of jazz articulations using the **In** and **Out** properties in the **Jazz Articulations** group of the Properties panel.

EXAMPLE

Short bend doit

Medium bend doit



Long bend doit

Changing the line style of smooth jazz articulations

You can change the line style of smooth jazz articulations individually. For example, if you want selected smooth falls to have straight lines instead of wavy lines.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the notes with smooth jazz articulations whose line style you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.

   NOTE

   You must select notes with smooth jazz articulations on the same side; for example, only select notes with smooth jazz articulations before them.

2. In the Properties panel, select one of the following line styles from the **In line style** menu and/or **Out line style** menu in the **Jazz Articulations** group:

   - **Straight**
   - **Wavy**
   - **Dashed**

   NOTE

   In line style is available when you select notes with smooth jazz articulations before them, and **Out line style** is available when you select notes with smooth jazz articulations after them. Both are available when you select notes with smooth jazz articulations on both sides.

RESULT

The line style of the selected smooth jazz articulations is changed.

TIP

You can reset jazz articulations back to their default line style by selecting them and choosing **Edit** > **Reset Appearance**.

EXAMPLE

Doit smooth with straight line

Doit smooth with wavy line

Doit smooth with dashed line

Deleting jazz articulations

You can remove jazz articulations from notes after you have input them. However, because jazz articulations are properties of notes rather than separate items in Dorico Elements, you must select and delete them differently from other items.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the notes from which you want to remove jazz articulations.
2. In the Ornaments panel, click **Remove** in the **Jazz** section.

RESULT

All jazz articulations are removed from the selected notes.

Page numbers

Page numbers are used to give each page a unique number, and indicate its position relative to other pages. Just as in newspapers and books, musical scores and parts use page numbers to make sure the music stays in the correct order.

Because you can have multiple flows in a single project in Dorico Elements, you do not need to change page numbers manually in most cases. However, if you have separate files that together make up a single piece, page number changes are necessary to make sure the page numbers continue seamlessly from movement to movement.

In such cases, you can change the default page numbers. For example, if you want to have four pages of front matter before the first page of music in the score, but you want the first page of music in the score to be shown as page 1, you can insert a page number change on the first page of music.

Page numbers are layout-specific in Dorico Elements, meaning you can change the page numbers in each layout independently. For example, you can change the page numbers in the score but show the default page numbers in the parts.

Page numbers in Dorico Elements use a token to ensure the number is correct.

NOTE

You must have a text frame containing the page number token on every page on which you want page numbers to be shown.

Default page templates contain text frames with page number tokens. You can change the position of page number text frames in the page template editor, which changes the position of page numbers on all pages that use that page template. You can also move page number text frames on individual pages.

You can also change the type of number used to show page numbers in each layout. For example, if you want the front matter to use Roman numerals but the music pages to use Arabic numerals, you can change the type of number together with the page number.

RELATED LINKS
Page templates on page 599
Types of page templates on page 601
Tokens on page 607

Changing the page number numeral style

Page numbers can appear as Arabic or Roman numerals. You can change the numeral style of page numbers in each layout independently.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-L** to open **Layout Options**.
2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts whose page number numeral style you want to change.

   By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar, clicking

and dragging across multiple layouts, **Shift**-clicking adjacent layouts, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking individual layouts.

3. In the category list, click **Page Setup**.
4. In the **Page Numbers** section, select one of the following options from the **Use** menu:
   - **Number**
   - **Roman numeral**
5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

The page number numeral style is changed in the selected layouts.

Hiding/Showing page numbers

You can hide/show page numbers in each layout independently, including specifying whether to hide/show a page number on the first page. For example, you can show page numbers on every page in the score but hide page numbers on the first page in the parts.

NOTE

To show page numbers, there must be a text frame containing the page number token on the page. The **First** page templates in the default page template sets do not contain text frames containing page number tokens, so you must add these if you want to show page numbers on pages that use these page templates.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-L** to open **Layout Options**.
2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to hide/show page numbers.

   By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar, clicking and dragging across multiple layouts, **Shift**-clicking adjacent layouts, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking individual layouts.
3. In the category list, click **Page Setup**.
4. In the **Page Numbers** section, select one of the following options from the **Visibility** menu:
   - **Always shown**
   - **Always hidden**
   - **Not on first page**
5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

- If you select **Always shown**, page numbers are shown on all pages that have a text frame containing the page number token in the selected layouts.
- If you select **Always hidden**, page numbers are hidden on all pages in the selected layouts, including on pages that have a text frame containing the page number token.
- If you select **Not on first page**, page numbers are hidden on the first page in the selected layouts, but shown on all other pages that have a text frame containing the page number token.

NOTE

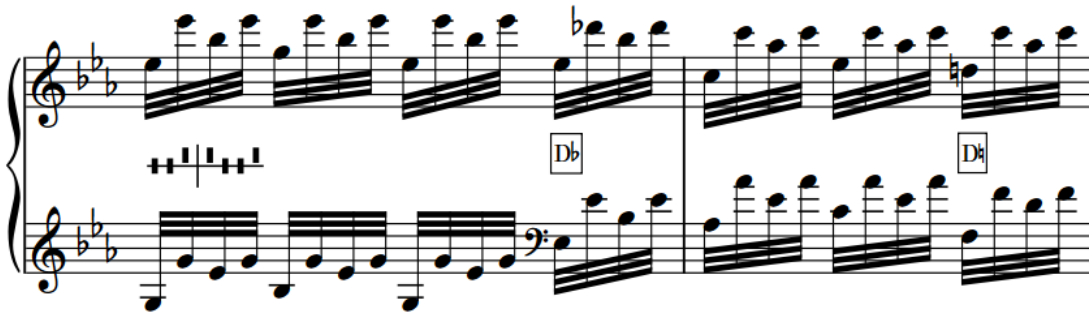
Your per-layout setting for whether page numbers are hidden/shown above flow headings affects whether page numbers are shown on pages where they are higher on the page than flow headings.

RELATED LINKS

Tokens on page 607
Flow headings on page 603
Hiding/Showing information in running headers above flow headings on page 568

Harp pedaling

Harp pedaling is a broad term that covers the specific requirements for notating music for harps. This primarily involves harp pedal diagrams, which are often necessary due to the way in which modern concert harps change their tuning.



A passage with a full harp pedal diagram at the start and two subsequent partial pedal changes

Harps have seven strings in each octave, one for each diatonic pitch C-B, unlike pianos, which have twelve keys in each octave, one for each half-step (semitone) degree between C-B. Therefore, harps have a mechanical action to change their tuning that includes seven pedals, with each pedal controlling the pitch of the corresponding note in all octaves. These pedals are organized into two groups, one for each foot: three pedals for the left foot and four pedals for the right foot.

Each harp pedal has three possible positions:

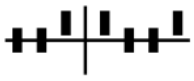
1. Flat or highest position: lowers the pitch of the corresponding note by a half-step
2. Natural or middle position
3. Sharp or lowest position: raises the pitch of the corresponding note by a half-step

NOTE

The lowest two harp strings, C and D, are not affected by the C and D pedal positions.

There are different ways to notate the pedal settings required for a piece of music or a passage within a piece. In Dorico Elements, you can show harp pedaling in the following ways:

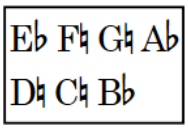
Diagram



Indicates the physical positions of the seven pedals. The vertical line represents the split between left-foot and right-foot pedals and the horizontal line represents the natural position.

- Pedals below the horizontal line indicate sharpened notes.
- Pedals above the horizontal line indicate flattened notes.

Note Names



Indicates the required accidentals for the seven diatonic pitches, arranged in two lines. Right-foot pedals are shown on top and left-foot pedals are shown below.

Any pitches that you input that do not fit with the current harp pedal diagram are considered out of range, and appear red when colors are shown for notes that are out of range. If you do not input any harp pedaling, Dorico Elements assumes all harp pedals are in their natural setting, as they would be for C major.

In Dorico Elements, you can input harp pedal diagrams using the playing techniques popover and you can automatically generate accurate harp pedal diagrams based on an entire flow or a specific passage of music. However, you can only input and show harp pedal diagrams on staves belonging to harp instruments; if you copy material from harp staves to other instruments, harp pedaling is automatically removed.

By default, harp pedaling is hidden in full score/custom score layouts and shown in part layouts. In layouts where harp pedaling is hidden, harp pedal diagrams are indicated by signposts. You can hide/show harp pedaling in each layout independently and hide individual harp pedal diagrams in layouts where harp pedaling is shown. You can also determine when to show partial harp pedaling, such as when only a single pedal must be changed at one time.

Harp pedal diagrams in Dorico Elements affect the pitches played back in glissando lines.

RELATED LINKS
Partial harp pedaling on page 1042
Inputting harp pedal diagrams on page 362
Hiding/Showing harp pedaling in layouts on page 1038
Calculating harp pedal diagrams based on existing music on page 363
Hiding/Showing colors for notes out of range on page 951
Glissando lines in playback on page 1004

Changing the appearance of harp pedal diagrams

Harp pedaling can be shown as a diagram or using note names. You can change the appearance of harp pedal diagrams individually. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- Harp pedaling is shown in the current layout.
- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the harp pedal diagrams whose appearance you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Appearance** in the **Harp Pedals** group.
3. Choose one of the following options:

- **Diagram**
- **Note Names**

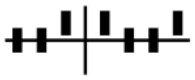
RESULT

The appearance of the selected harp pedal diagrams is changed in the current layout. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

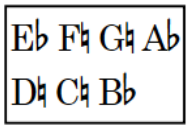
TIP

You can change the default appearance of harp pedaling in each layout independently in the **Harp Pedaling** section of the **Players** page in **Layout Options**.

EXAMPLE



Harp pedaling shown as a diagram



Harp pedaling shown using note names

RELATED LINKS

Layout Options dialog on page 677
Partial harp pedaling on page 1042
Inputting harp pedal diagrams on page 362
Changing the property scope on page 617
Copying property settings to other layouts/frame chains on page 599

Hiding/Showing harp pedaling in layouts

You can input and calculate harp pedaling in any layout, but by default harp pedaling is not shown in full score layouts, as they are usually only useful for the performer. You can hide/show harp pedaling in each layout independently.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-L** to open **Layout Options**.
2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to hide/show harp pedaling.

   By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar, clicking and dragging across multiple layouts, **Shift**-clicking adjacent layouts, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking individual layouts.
3. In the category list, click **Players**.
4. In the **Harp Pedaling** section, activate/deactivate **Show harp pedaling**.
5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

Harp pedaling is shown in the selected layouts when the checkbox is activated, and hidden when the checkbox is deactivated.

In layouts where harp pedaling is hidden, harp pedal diagrams are indicated by signposts.

NOTE

- You can hide individual harp pedal diagrams in layouts where harp pedaling is shown, but you cannot show individual harp pedal diagrams in layouts where harp pedaling is hidden.
- You can hide/show harp pedaling signposts by choosing **View** > **Signposts** > **Harp Pedals**.

Hiding/Showing harp pedal diagrams individually

You can hide/show individual harp pedal diagrams in layouts in which harp pedaling is shown. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- Harp pedaling is shown in the current layout.
- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. In the music area, open the layout in which you want to hide/show individual harp pedal diagrams. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. Select the harp pedal diagrams you want to hide, or the signposts of harp pedal diagrams you want to show.
3. In the Properties panel, activate/deactivate **Hide** in the **Harp Pedals** group.

RESULT

The selected harp pedal diagrams are hidden when **Hide** is activated, and shown when it is deactivated. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

Signposts are shown at the position of each hidden harp pedal diagram. However, signposts are not printed by default.

RELATED LINKS

Changing the property scope on page 617
Copying property settings to other layouts/frame chains on page 599
Signposts on page 426
Annotations on page 554

Hiding/Showing borders on harp pedal diagrams

You can hide/show borders on individual note name harp pedal diagrams. For example, on systems with very tight vertical spacing, hiding borders on harp pedal diagrams can give you a little extra space.

NOTE

These steps only apply to harp pedal diagrams using note names.

PREREQUISITE

- Harp pedaling is shown in the current layout.
- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

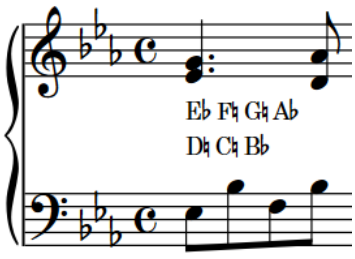
PROCEDURE

1. Select the note name harp pedal diagrams on which you want to hide/show borders. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Border** in the **Harp Pedals** group.
3. Activate/Deactivate the corresponding checkbox.

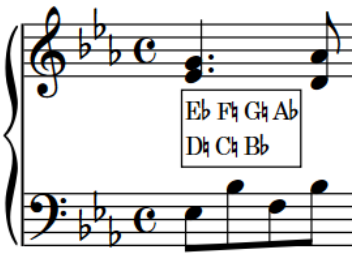
RESULT

Borders are shown on the selected note name harp pedal diagrams when the checkbox is activated, and hidden when the checkbox is deactivated.

EXAMPLE



Note name harp pedal diagram with border hidden



Note name harp pedal diagram with border shown

Changing the thickness of harp pedal diagram borders

You can change the thickness of borders on individual note name harp pedal diagrams.

NOTE

These steps only apply to harp pedal diagrams using note names.

PREREQUISITE

- Harp pedaling is shown in the current layout.
- The lower zone is shown.

- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the note name harp pedal diagrams whose border thickness you want to change.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Border thickness** in the **Harp Pedals** group.
3. Change the value in the value field.

RESULT

The thickness of borders on the selected harp pedal diagrams is changed.

Changing the padding around harp pedal diagrams

You can change the padding around harp pedal diagrams individually, and for each edge independently. This affects the distance between harp pedal diagrams and erased backgrounds and borders. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- Harp pedaling is shown in the current layout.
- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the harp pedal diagrams whose padding you want to change.
2. In the Properties panel, activate the following properties, individually or together, in the **Harp Pedals** group:
   - **Left padding**
   - **Right padding**
   - **Top padding**
   - **Bottom padding**
3. Change the values in the value fields.

RESULT

The padding around the selected harp pedal diagrams is changed. Increasing the values increases the padding, decreasing the values decreases the padding. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

RELATED LINKS

Changing the property scope on page 617
Copying property settings to other layouts/frame chains on page 599

Positions of harp pedal diagrams

By default, harp pedal diagrams are centered vertically between the two staves usually shown for harps.

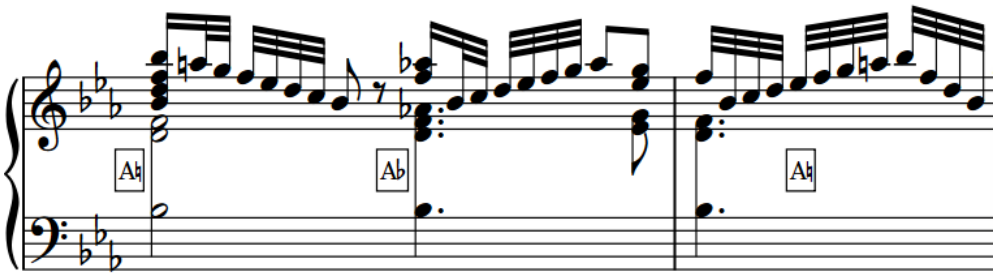
You can move harp pedal diagrams to different rhythmic positions in Write mode. They are automatically positioned to avoid collisions.

You can move harp pedal diagrams graphically in Engrave mode, but this does not change the rhythmic positions to which they are attached.

RELATED LINKS
Moving notes/items rhythmically on page 437
Moving items graphically on page 481

Partial harp pedaling

Partial harp pedal diagrams only show the notes whose pedal setting must change at that position, rather than showing the required settings for all pedals. This can make those changes immediately clear to the performer, as they have fewer pedals to read.



Partial pedal diagrams for a sequence containing several quick pedal changes

You can allow partial harp pedaling for individual harp pedal diagrams and you can set a maximum threshold of pedal changes at a single position, above which all harp pedal diagrams must show all pedals. This is because performers are used to the pattern of note names in complete harp pedal diagrams, and if there are many changes in a partial harp pedal diagram, this can be harder to read than a complete one.

By default, Dorico Elements shows notes in partial harp pedal diagrams on two lines with right-foot pedals on top and left-foot pedals below.

NOTE

Only harp pedal diagrams using note names can be shown as partial.

Allowing/Disallowing partial harp pedaling

You can allow/disallow partial harp pedaling for individual note name harp pedal diagrams. The default setting in Dorico Elements is to allow partial harp pedaling for up to three pedal changes. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

NOTE

- These steps only apply to harp pedal diagrams using note names.

- Harp pedal diagrams positioned at the very beginning of a flow can only appear as full harp pedal diagrams.

PREREQUISITE

- Harp pedaling is shown in the current layout.
- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

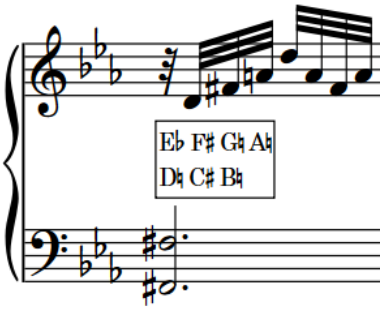
PROCEDURE

1. Select the note name harp pedal diagrams for which you want to allow/disallow partial harp pedaling. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Partial pedaling** in the **Harp Pedals** group.
3. Activate/Deactivate the corresponding checkbox.

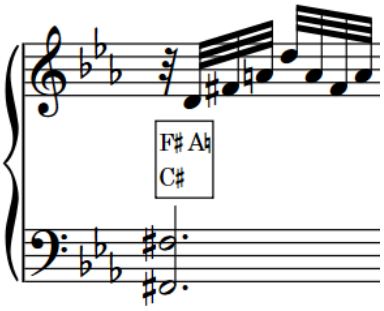
RESULT

Partial harp pedaling is allowed for the selected note name harp pedal diagrams when the checkbox is activated, and disallowed when the checkbox is deactivated. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

EXAMPLE



Harp pedal diagram showing all pedals



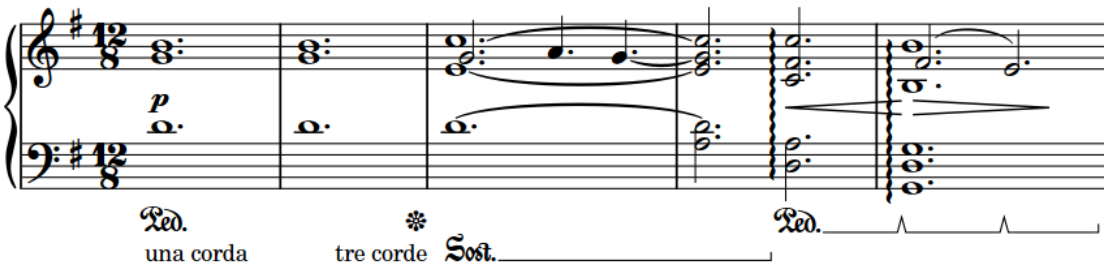
Partial harp pedal diagram

RELATED LINKS

Hiding/Showing harp pedaling in layouts on page 1038
Inputting harp pedal diagrams on page 362
Changing the property scope on page 617
Copying property settings to other layouts/frame chains on page 599

Pedal lines

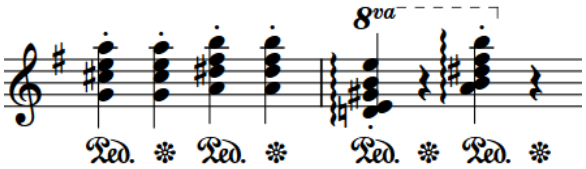
Pedal lines indicate to performers which piano pedals to use, and can also give performance instructions, such as how far down to depress the pedals and when to lift the pedal to clear the resonance.



Most pianos have either two or three pedals. These pedals are:

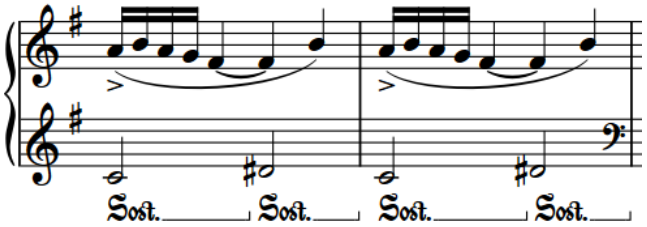
Sustain pedal

The sustain pedal controls the dampers on the piano strings, which is why it is also known as the “damper pedal”. It is also the most commonly used pedal. Depressing the sustain pedal removes the dampers, allowing the strings to resonate longer. Sustain pedals are usually on the right.



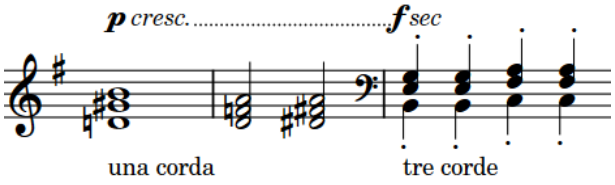
Sostenuto pedal

The *sostenuto* pedal only allows the strings of the notes currently depressed on the keyboard to resonate. It is also known as the “middle pedal” as it is usually in the middle of the other pedals.



Una corda pedal

The *una corda* pedal shifts the action inside the piano so that the hammers hit fewer strings than normal. Historically, this caused hammers only to hit one string, not the usual three, which is where the name comes from. Because this reduces the volume and impact of the sound, it is also known as the “soft pedal”.



Dorico Elements offers comprehensive notational and playback support for piano pedal lines. You can create pedaling for the sustain, *sostenuto*, and *una corda* pedals, with support for modern sustain pedaling techniques, including changing the pedal level over the course of a single pedal instruction.

You can change the appearance of pedal lines, including changing their start sign and continuation type. For example, if you want to show some pedal lines with a continuation line and some only with a sign at the end.

In Dorico Elements, pedal lines are considered playing techniques because they alter the sound produced by the instrument. Therefore, pedal lines are included in the Playing Techniques panel in Write mode and you can input them using the playing techniques popover. However, pedal lines have additional, unique requirements that do not apply to other playing techniques, such as retakes, pedal level changes, start signs, end signs, and continuation lines.

RELATED LINKS
Input methods for playing techniques, pedal lines, string indicators, and harp pedal diagrams on page 351
Pedal line start signs, hooks, and continuation lines on page 1053
Text pedal line signs on page 1058
Pedal lines in playback on page 1061
Playing technique continuation lines on page 1067
Lines on page 1075
MIDI Import Options dialog on page 86

Sustain pedal retakes and pedal level changes

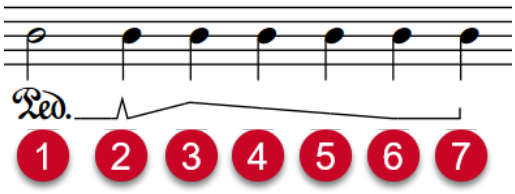
Pedal retakes indicate where a player should lift the sustain pedal, which dampens the piano's strings and clears the resonance, before depressing the pedal again. Pedal level changes indicate a change to how far the pedal is depressed.

Dorico Elements provides clear representations of pedal retakes and level changes for pedal lines with the line continuation type.

NOTE

- In Dorico Elements, you cannot input pedal level changes. However, pedal level changes are shown if you import or open a project that contains them, and you can remove them in the same way as removing retakes.
- You can only add pedal retakes to sustain pedal lines.

EXAMPLE



1 Ped. glyph

2 Retake

3 One quarter depressed

4 Half depressed

5 Three quarters depressed

6 Fully depressed

7 Line end hook

RELATED LINKS

Changing the pedal line continuation type on page 1056
Positions of pedal lines on page 1050
Removing retakes and pedal level changes on page 1050
Input methods for playing techniques, pedal lines, string indicators, and harp pedal diagrams on page 351

Sustain pedal lines in Engrave mode

When you select sustain pedal lines in Engrave mode, handles appear at the start/end of each pedal line, and on any retakes or pedal level changes on the line. These handles allow you to move each part of the pedal line independently, and to change the pedal levels at the start, end, and at each retake or pedal level change.

A sustain pedal with a retake in Engrave mode

There are two handles for the start of the pedal line, three for retakes and pedal level changes, and three for the end of the pedal line.

NOTE

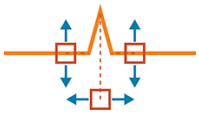
- Pedal levels cannot be lower than **0** or higher than **1**, as shown in properties in either the **Pedal Lines** group or the **Pedal Line Retakes** group of the Properties panel.
  - **1** is fully depressed.
  - **0** is not depressed.
- *Sostenuto* and *una corda* pedal lines only have a single handle at their start/end, which allows you to move their start/end positions graphically, but only horizontally.

Start of sustain pedal lines

There are two handles at the start of pedal lines.

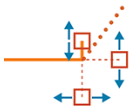
- The left handle moves the start point of the pedal line. You can move this handle to the right/left.
- The right handle changes the start pedal level of the pedal line. You can move this handle upwards/downwards. This changes the angle of the pedal continuation line in relation to the next retake or pedal level change, or the end of the pedal line.

Pedal level changes and retakes



- The left handle changes the pedal level before the retake or pedal level change. You can move this handle upwards/downwards.
- The right handle changes the pedal level after the retake or pedal level change. You can move this handle upwards/downwards.
- The bottom handle corresponds to the position of the retake or pedal level change. You can move this handle to the right/left.

End of sustain pedal lines



- The top handle changes the hook length. You can move this handle upwards/downwards.
- The right handle changes the pedal level at the end of the pedal line. You can move this handle upwards/downwards.
- The bottom handle moves the end point of the pedal line. You can move this handle to the right/left.

RELATED LINKS
Pedal line start signs, hooks, and continuation lines on page 1053
Moving items graphically on page 481

Changing the type of pedal line retakes

You can change existing retakes on sustain pedal lines to pedal level changes and vice versa.

For example, if you do not want the pedal to be released completely between the old and new levels, change the type to **Change Level** instead of **Retake**.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the retake or pedal level change whose type you want to change.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Retake type** in the **Pedal Line Retakes** group.
3. Choose the type you want from the following options:
   - **Retake**
   - **Change Level**

RESULT

The type of pedal line retake is changed.

NOTE

The appearance of the new type of pedal line retake depends on the pedal levels already set on each side. For example, a retake notch is only shown on one side of the retake if the pedal level on the other side is set to **0**.

Changing the global level for pedal lines

You can change the global level for individual sustain pedal lines and show the level as a prefix before the pedal line start sign, such as “1/2 Ped.”. For example, to indicate a pianist should only half depress the sustain pedal throughout a piece.

By default, the global level of sustain pedal lines is fully depressed.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the pedal lines whose global level you want to change.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Global level** in the **Pedal Lines** group.
3. Select one of the following options from the menu:
   - **1/8**
   - **1/4**
   - **1/2**
   - **3/4**

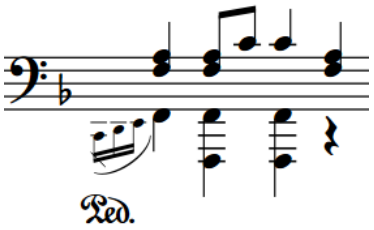
RESULT

The global level for the selected pedal lines is changed and the selected level appears as a prefix before their start signs.

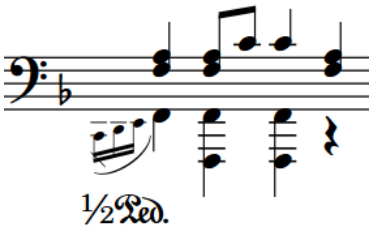
NOTE

Level prefixes do not appear for pedal lines with hook start signs.

EXAMPLE



Pedal line with default fully depressed pedal level



Pedal line with half depressed pedal level

RELATED LINKS

Pedal line start signs, hooks, and continuation lines on page 1053

Changing the start sign appearance of pedal lines on page 1054

Changing pedal line levels

You can change the level at the start and end of individual sustain pedal lines, and at each retake or pedal level change. For example, if you want to specify how far to depress the pedal at specific rhythmic positions.

NOTE

You can only change the level of pedal lines with the line continuation type.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select any of the following handles on each pedal line whose pedal line levels you want to change:
   - To change the start pedal level, select the right handles on start signs.
   - To change the pedal level immediately before retakes/level changes, select the left handle of retakes/level changes.
   - To change the pedal level immediately after retakes/level changes, select the right handle of retakes/level changes.
   - To change the end pedal level, select the right handles on end hooks.
2. Move the handles in any of the following ways:
   - To move them upwards, press **Alt/Opt-Up Arrow**.
   - To move them downwards, press **Alt/Opt-Down Arrow**.
   - To snap the level to 0 (not depressed), press **Ctrl/Cmd-Alt/Opt-Up Arrow**.
   - To snap the level to 1 (fully depressed), press **Ctrl/Cmd-Alt/Opt-Down Arrow**.
   - Click and drag the handles upwards/downwards to the level you want.

RESULT

The pedal levels at the selected positions on the corresponding pedal lines are changed.

TIP

The following properties in the **Pedal Lines** group of the Properties panel are activated when you change the corresponding pedal line level:

- **Start level**
- **Start level at retake**
- **End level at retake**
- **End level**

You can also use these properties to change the pedal line level at the corresponding positions by changing the values in the value fields. For example, **1** is fully depressed and **0** is not depressed.

Deactivating the properties resets the selected pedal lines to their default pedal line levels.

RELATED LINKS

Changing the pedal line continuation type on page 1056

Removing retakes and pedal level changes

You can remove pedal retakes and level changes without deleting the sustain pedal line or changing its rhythmic position.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select an item on each staff and at each rhythmic position where you want to remove retakes or pedal level changes.
2. Remove the retakes or pedal level changes in any of the following ways:
   - Open the playing techniques popover, enter **nonotch** into the popover, then press **Return**.

     NOTE

     nonotch must be spelled as one word, without a space.
   - Choose **Edit** > **Notations** > **Pedal Lines** > **Remove Retake**. You can also choose this option from the context menu.

RESULT

The retakes or pedal level changes at each selected rhythmic position on each selected staff are removed. The corresponding sustain pedal lines return to their previous levels as set by either the start of the pedal line, or the retake or pedal level change immediately preceding the ones you removed.

RELATED LINKS

Playing techniques popover on page 352
Adding retakes with the popover on page 360
Adding retakes with the panel on page 362

Positions of pedal lines

The default placement of pedal lines is below the bottom staff, even if there are only notes in the upper staff for the right hand. They are placed outside all other notations, including octave lines, slurs, and articulations.

If one pedal is used, it is placed as close to the bottom of the staff as possible, while remaining outside of all other notations.

If multiple pedals are used simultaneously, they are organized below the bottom of the staff as follows:

1. Sustain pedal: closest to the staff
2. *Sostenuto* pedal: below the sustain pedal line
3. *Una corda* pedal: furthest from the staff

The beginning of the glyph/text that indicates the start position of pedal lines aligns with the note to which it applies. If you are using a line end hook to indicate the end of pedal lines, the hook aligns with the note or rhythmic position to which it applies.

You can move pedal lines to different rhythmic positions in Write mode. They are automatically positioned to avoid collisions.

NOTE

You cannot move retakes rhythmically. You must remove them and input a new retake at the position you want.

You can move pedal lines graphically in Engrave mode. However, this does not change the rhythmic positions to which they are attached. You can move multiple pedal lines together, but only upwards/downwards. Similarly, you can move handles on multiple pedal lines together, but only to the right/left.

RELATED LINKS
Text pedal line signs on page 1058
Pedal line start signs, hooks, and continuation lines on page 1053
Sustain pedal retakes and pedal level changes on page 1045
Moving items graphically on page 481
Moving notes/items rhythmically on page 437
Lengthening/Shortening items on page 410
Input methods for playing techniques, pedal lines, string indicators, and harp pedal diagrams on page 351

Changing the position of pedal lines relative to grace notes

You can change the start/end positions of individual pedal lines relative to grace notes.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the pedal lines whose position relative to grace notes you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate any of the following properties in the **Pedal Lines** group:
   - **Starts before grace notes**
   - **Ends before grace notes**
3. Activate/Deactivate the corresponding checkboxes.

RESULT

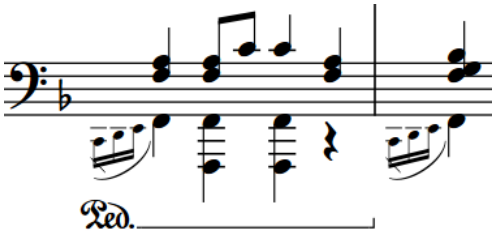
When the checkboxes are activated, the corresponding parts of the selected pedal lines are positioned before grace notes.

When the checkboxes are deactivated, the corresponding parts of the selected pedal lines are positioned after grace notes.

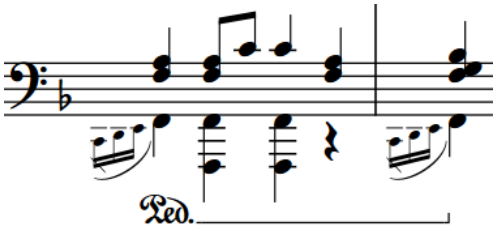
TIP

You can adjust the precise position of pedal lines in further detail in Engrave mode.

EXAMPLE



Pedal line starting/ending before grace notes



Pedal line starting/ending after grace notes

Splitting pedal lines

You can split sustain pedal lines at any rhythmic position with an existing item along their length into two separate pedal lines.

NOTE

These steps only apply to sustain pedal lines.

PROCEDURE

1. Select an item on the staff and at the rhythmic position where you want to split the sustain pedal line. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.

   NOTE

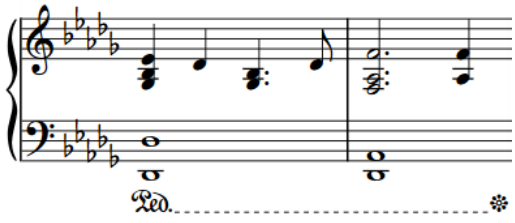
   You can only split one pedal line at a time.

2. Choose **Edit** > **Notations** > **Pedal Lines** > **Split Pedal Line**. You can also choose this option from the context menu.

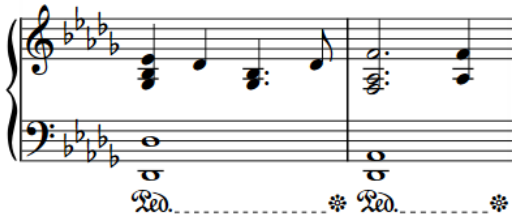
RESULT

The pedal line on the selected staff is split at the selected rhythmic position.

EXAMPLE



A single pedal line



The pedal line after being split into two

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

You can move, lengthen/shorten, and edit both pedal lines independently.

RELATED LINKS

Moving notes/items rhythmically on page 437
Selecting/Deselecting notes and items individually on page 401
Pedal line start signs, hooks, and continuation lines on page 1053
Changing the pedal line continuation type on page 1056
Text pedal line signs on page 1058
Input methods for playing techniques, pedal lines, string indicators, and harp pedal diagrams on page 351

Merging pedal lines

You can merge existing sustain pedal lines together; for example, if you want to fill in a gap between two sustain pedal lines.

NOTE

These steps only apply to sustain pedal lines.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the sustain pedal lines on the same staff that you want to merge together. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.

   NOTE

   You can only merge pedal lines on one staff at a time.

2. Choose **Edit** > **Notations** > **Pedal Lines** > **Merge Pedal Lines**. You can also choose this option from the context menu.

RESULT

The selected pedal lines are merged together into a single pedal line. If there were gaps between them, a continuation line is automatically shown across them.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

You can input retakes and pedal level changes; for example, if you want to show a retake at the position where previously one of the pedal lines started.

Pedal line start signs, hooks, and continuation lines

Pedal lines normally comprise a start sign, a continuation line, and an end hook. This indicates clearly to performers where to depress each type of pedal, how long to keep it depressed, and where to lift it.

1 Start sign

2 Continuation line

3 End hook

In Dorico Elements, you can change the appearance of each part of pedal lines individually; for example, if you want the start sign of an individual pedal line to show text instead of a glyph.

You can select whole pedal lines in Write mode and change most aspects of their appearance according to the type of pedal line, such as their continuation line or start sign.

For sustain pedals only, you can select each segment of a sustain pedal independently in Engrave mode, and set different properties for each segment. Sustain pedal lines have independent segments on each separate system on which they appear.

RELATED LINKS

Sustain pedal lines in Engrave mode on page 1046
Input methods for playing techniques, pedal lines, string indicators, and harp pedal diagrams on page 351

Changing the start sign appearance of pedal lines

You can change the appearance of the start of pedal lines individually. Pedal line start signs can be shown as variations of the traditional pedal line glyph, other symbols, or text.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the pedal lines whose start sign appearance you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.

   NOTE

   The pedal lines you select must be the same type; for example, only sustain pedal lines.

2. In the Properties panel, activate **Sign appearance** in the **Pedal Lines** group.
3. Select one of the options from the menu.

   The options are different according to the type of pedal line selected.

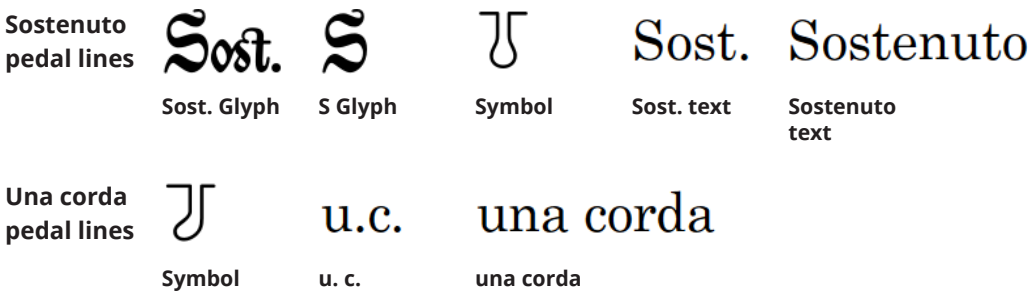
RESULT

The start sign appearance of the selected pedal lines is changed.

TIP

- The end signs of una corda pedal lines automatically match their start signs.
- Deactivating **Sign appearance** returns the selected pedal lines to your default setting for start sign appearance.

EXAMPLE



AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

If you selected a text sign appearance, you can edit the text shown.

RELATED LINKS

Editing pedal line start text on page 1059

Changing the type of hook at the start/end of pedal lines

You can change the type of hook shown at the start/end of pedal lines individually.

NOTE

You can only change the start hook type of pedal lines that have a hook as their start sign, and you can only change the end hook type of pedal lines that have a continuation line.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

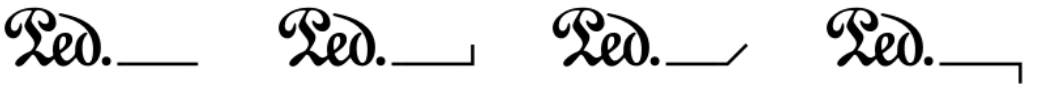
PROCEDURE

1. Select the pedal lines whose hook type you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate the following properties, individually or together, in the **Pedal Lines** group:
   - **Line start hook**
   - **Line end hook**
3. Select one of the following options from each menu:
   - **No Hook**
   - **Vertical Hook**
   - **Slant Hook**
   - **Inverse Hook**

RESULT

The hook type at the start/end of the selected pedal lines is changed.

EXAMPLE



No Hook line end | **Vertical Hook** line end | **Slant Hook** line end | **Inverse Hook** line end

Changing the pedal line continuation type

You can change the continuation type used for individual pedal lines. For example, if you want some pedal lines to show a dashed line and a sign at the end, but others to show a line and end hook.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the pedal lines whose continuation type you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Continuation type** in the **Pedal Lines** group.
3. Select one of the following continuation types from the menu:
   - **Line**
   - **Sign at End**
   - **Sign at End and Dashed Line**
   - **None**

RESULT

The continuation type of the selected pedal lines is changed.

EXAMPLE

Line | **Sign at End** | **Sign at End and Dashed Line** | **None**

RELATED LINKS

Properties panel on page 615
Sustain pedal retakes and pedal level changes on page 1045
Inputting pedal lines with the popover on page 359
Editing una corda pedal line restorative text on page 1060

Lengthening/Shortening gaps and dashes in pedal continuation lines

You can change the length of dashes and the gaps between dashes in individual dashed pedal continuation lines. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

NOTE

These steps only apply to pedal lines with dashed continuation lines.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the pedal lines whose dashes you want to change.
2. In the Properties panel, activate the following properties, individually or together, in the **Pedal Lines** group:
   - **Dash length**
   - **Dash gap length**
3. Change the values in the value fields.

RESULT

Increasing **Dash length** makes dashes in pedal continuation lines longer, decreasing the value makes dashes shorter.

Increasing **Dash gap length** makes gaps between dashes in pedal continuation lines longer, decreasing the value makes gaps shorter.

If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

RELATED LINKS

Changing the property scope on page 617
Copying property settings to other layouts/frame chains on page 599

Changing the line width of pedal lines

You can change the thickness of continuation lines individually. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the pedal lines whose continuation line thickness you want to change.

2. In the Properties panel, activate **Line width** in the **Pedal Lines** group.

   The value resets to **0** automatically when you first activate the property.

3. Change the value in the value field.

RESULT

Increasing **Line width** makes pedal continuation lines thicker, decreasing the value makes pedal continuation lines thinner. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

Parenthesizing pedal line continuation signs

You can show individual pedal line continuation signs with/without parentheses. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

Pedal line continuation signs are shown by default at the start of new systems when pedal lines continue across system/frame breaks.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the pedal lines whose continuation sign appearance you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Show continuation sign in parentheses** in the **Pedal Lines** group.
3. Activate/Deactivate the corresponding checkbox.

RESULT

Continuation signs are shown with parentheses when the checkbox is activated, and without parentheses when the checkbox is deactivated. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

Text pedal line signs

All types of pedal lines can have text as their start signs, instead of glyphs or hooks. You can override the text shown at the start of pedal lines that have text start signs, you can change the continuation text shown at the start of new systems, and you can override the restorative text shown at the end of *una corda* pedal lines.

Pedal lines that use a text indication rather than a symbol

For pedal lines such as *una corda* or sustain that have text for their start sign, such as **Ped. Text**, rather than the more ornate symbol, you can override the text shown at the start of the pedal line and replace it with your preferred performance direction.

Continuation sign/text

When pedal lines continue onto subsequent systems, a continuation sign/text is shown in parentheses by default. If the pedal line is using text for their start sign, such as **Ped. Text**,

rather than a symbol, you can change the text shown at the start of a new system and replace it with your preferred performance direction.

Una corda pedal lines

The equivalent to the final pedal lift for the *una corda* pedal marking is the indication to return to *tre corde*. You can override the *tre corde* text shown at the end of the pedal line and replace it with your preferred performance direction.

RELATED LINKS

Changing the start sign appearance of pedal lines on page 1054
Input methods for playing techniques, pedal lines, string indicators, and harp pedal diagrams on page 351

Editing pedal line start text

You can change the text shown at the start of individual pedal lines that use text as their start sign.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the pedal lines whose start text you want to edit. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Text** in the **Pedal Lines** group.
3. Enter the text you want into the value field.
4. Press **Return**.

RESULT

The text shown at the start of the selected pedal lines is changed.

Deactivating **Text** restores the default start text for the selected pedal lines.

NOTE

Deactivating properties permanently deletes any custom text entered.

Editing pedal line continuation text

You can change the text shown at the start of subsequent systems when pedal lines continue across system/frame breaks.

NOTE

These steps only apply to pedal lines that use text as their start sign.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.

- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the pedal lines whose continuation text you want to edit. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Continuation text** in the **Pedal Lines** group.
3. Enter the text you want into the value field.
4. Press **Return**.

RESULT

The continuation text shown at the start of subsequent systems for the selected pedal lines is changed.

Deactivating **Continuation text** restores the default continuation text for the selected pedal lines.

NOTE

Deactivating properties permanently deletes any custom text entered.

Editing una corda pedal line restorative text

The equivalent to the final pedal lift for *una corda* pedal lines is the indication to return to *tre corde*. You can change the *tre corde* text shown at the end of individual *una corda* pedal lines.

NOTE

These steps only apply to *una corda* pedal lines that use text as their start sign.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the *una corda* pedal lines whose restorative text you want to edit. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Restorative text** in the **Pedal Lines** group.
3. Enter the text you want into the value field.
4. Press **Return**.

RESULT

The restorative text shown at the ends of the selected *una corda* pedal lines is changed.

Deactivating **Restorative text** restores the default restorative text for the selected pedal lines.

NOTE

Deactivating properties permanently deletes any custom text entered.

Pedal lines in playback

Pedal lines are automatically played back in Dorico Elements.

The three piano pedals send MIDI controllers as follows:

- Sustain pedal lines send MIDI controller 64 (Sustain).
- *Sostenuto* pedal lines send MIDI controller 66 (Sostenuto).
- *Una corda* pedal lines send MIDI controller 67 (Soft Pedal).

Some piano VST instruments, such as Pianoteq and Garritan CFX Concert Grand, support partial depression of the sustain pedal. Consult the manufacturer's documentation for more information.

RELATED LINKS
MIDI CC editor on page 651

Pedal lines imported from MusicXML files

Sustain pedal lines can be imported from MusicXML files. MusicXML can only describe the sustain pedal, and it cannot describe changes in pedal depression level.

Playing techniques

The term “playing techniques” covers a wide range of instructions intended to tell performers to modify the sound of the notes they are playing; for example, by changing their embouchure or changing the position of their bow, or by modifying their instrument, such as adding a mute or depressing a pedal.

In Dorico Elements, there are the following types of playing techniques:

Glyph playing techniques

Playing techniques that display symbols, such as up bow or down bow markings.

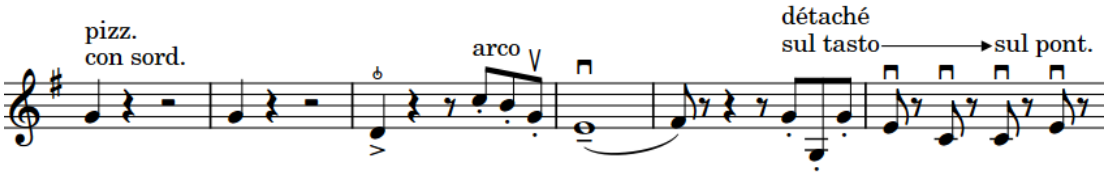
Text playing techniques

Playing techniques that display text, such as *pizz.* or *con sordino*.

You can find all available playing techniques in the Playing Techniques panel in Write mode, organized by instrument family. For example, you can find pedal lines in the **Keyboard** section of the Playing Techniques panel.

NOTE

Because pedal lines have additional, unique requirements that do not apply to other playing techniques, such as retakes, start signs, and continuation lines, they are documented separately. Pedal lines also have their own group of the Properties panel that is separate from the **Playing Techniques** group.



Musical phrase with glyph and text playing techniques, including grouped text playing techniques with a continuation line

Playing techniques can change how instruments play back. For example, inputting a *pizz.* playing technique on a violin staff activates a key switch that changes the sound produced by the VST instrument. Dorico Elements uses playback techniques to produce the required sounds in playback for the playing techniques you input, provided your sound library includes the corresponding samples.

Many playing techniques that only appear once in the music nonetheless imply that the playing technique continues. For example, *pizzicato* usually appears once but applies until the next playing technique, such as *arco*. In Dorico Elements, you can show continuation lines after and between playing techniques to convey clearly to performers the notes to which you want them to apply. You can also group multiple playing techniques together.

Playing technique texts use a plain font, neither bold nor italic, so they are not confused with dynamics and expressive text.

NOTE

Pedal lines use a separate font style to other playing techniques.

RELATED LINKS
Input methods for playing techniques, pedal lines, string indicators, and harp pedal diagrams on page 351
Playback techniques on page 706
Pedal lines on page 1044
String indicators on page 891
Playing technique continuation lines on page 1067
Groups of playing techniques on page 1072
Positions of playing techniques on page 1066
MIDI Import Options dialog on page 86

Adding text to playing techniques

You can add text to playing techniques after they have been input; for example, to clarify the intention of the playing technique. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

NOTE

These steps do not apply to pedal lines.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

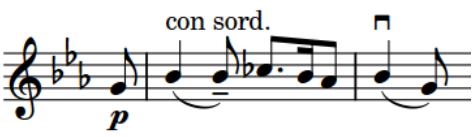
PROCEDURE

1. Select the playing techniques to which you want to add text. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Suffix** in the **Playing Techniques** group.
3. Enter the text you want into the value field.
4. Press **Return**.

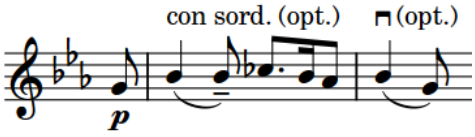
RESULT

The text you entered is added to the selected playing techniques and appears after them. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

EXAMPLE



Playing techniques without suffixes



Suffixes added to playing techniques

RELATED LINKS
Text pedal line signs on page 1058

Changing the property scope on page 617
Copying property settings to other layouts/frame chains on page 599
Input methods for playing techniques, pedal lines, string indicators, and harp pedal diagrams on page 351

Erasing the background of text playing techniques

You can erase the background of individual text playing techniques; for example, to ensure they remain legible when crossing barlines. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

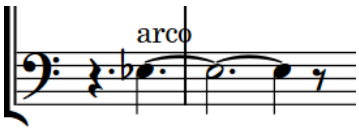
1. In Engrave mode, select the playing techniques whose backgrounds you want to erase.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Erase background** in the **Playing Techniques** group.

RESULT

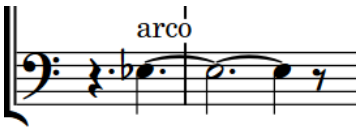
The backgrounds of the selected playing techniques are erased. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

Deactivating **Erase background** returns the selected playing techniques to the default non-erased background.

EXAMPLE



Text playing technique with non-erased background



Text playing technique with erased background

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

You can change the padding between playing techniques and each edge of their erased areas.

Changing the erasure padding of text playing techniques

You can change the erasure padding of individual playing techniques, including changing the padding between playing techniques and each edge of their erased areas independently. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the text playing techniques whose erasure padding you want to change.
2. In the Properties panel, activate the **Erasure padding** properties, individually or together, in the **Playing Techniques** group.
   - **L** changes the padding between playing techniques and their left edge.
   - **R** changes the padding between playing techniques and their right edge.
   - **T** changes the padding between playing techniques and their top edge.
   - **B** changes the padding between playing techniques and their bottom edge.
3. Change the values in the value fields.

RESULT

Increasing the values increases the padding, decreasing the values decreases the padding. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

Hiding/Showing playing techniques

You can hide/show playing techniques individually; for example, if your expression map requires you to input a playing technique to trigger the correct playback but you do not want that technique to appear in the music.You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the playing techniques you want to hide, or the signposts of playing techniques you want to show. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate/deactivate **Hidden** in the **Playing Techniques** group.

RESULT

The selected playing techniques are hidden when **Hidden** is activated, and shown when it is deactivated. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

Signposts are shown at the position of each hidden playing technique. However, signposts are not printed by default.

TIP

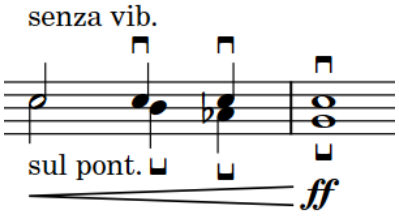
- You can hide/show playing technique signposts by choosing **View** > **Signposts** > **Playing Techniques**.
- You can assign a key command for **Hide/Show Item** on the **Key Commands** page in **Preferences**, which applies to chord symbols, playing techniques, figured bass, text items, and time signatures.

RELATED LINKS
Expression maps on page 682
Signposts on page 426
Hiding/Showing zones on page 44
Changing the property scope on page 617
Copying property settings to other layouts/frame chains on page 599
Key Commands page in the Preferences dialog on page 59
Annotations on page 554

Positions of playing techniques

Playing techniques, both as text and symbols, are placed above the staff by default. On vocal staves, they are placed above the staff and below dynamics. In multiple-voice contexts, playing techniques for the up-stem voices are placed above the staff and playing techniques for the down-stem voices are automatically placed below the staff.

Glyph playing techniques are center-aligned on noteheads. Text playing techniques are left-aligned with noteheads.



Placement of playing techniques with two voices on the same staff

You can move playing techniques to different rhythmic positions in Write mode. They are automatically positioned to avoid collisions.

You can move playing techniques graphically in Engrave mode, but this does not change the rhythmic positions to which they are attached.

In Engrave mode, each playing technique continuation line has two square handles, one at the start and one at the end. You can move these handles to adjust the graphical position, length, and angle of playing technique continuation lines.

If playing technique continuation lines cross system and frame breaks, you can move the line segments on each side of the break independently.

Moving playing techniques with continuation lines moves them both together, including any adjacent playing techniques and continuation lines in the same group. Moving continuation lines or continuation line handles moves the continuation lines independently of the playing technique.

RELATED LINKS
Playing techniques on page 1062
Input methods for playing techniques, pedal lines, string indicators, and harp pedal diagrams on page 351
Text pedal line signs on page 1058
Playing technique continuation lines on page 1067
Playing technique continuation line components on page 1069

Groups of playing techniques on page 1072
Moving notes/items rhythmically on page 437
Moving items graphically on page 481
Changing the staff-relative placement of items on page 414

Changing the vertical order of playing techniques

You can change the vertical order of playing techniques when multiple playing techniques exist at the same rhythmic position. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains. By default, glyph playing techniques are placed closer to the staff than text playing techniques, and playing techniques without lines are placed closer to the staff than playing techniques with lines.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the playing techniques whose vertical order you want to change.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Tucking index** in the **Playing Techniques** group.
3. Change the value in the value field.

RESULT

The order of the selected playing techniques relative to any other playing techniques at the same rhythmic position, or along their duration, is changed. This also affects other playing techniques in the same groups. Playing techniques with higher **Tucking index** values are placed further from the staff, while playing techniques with lower values are placed closer.

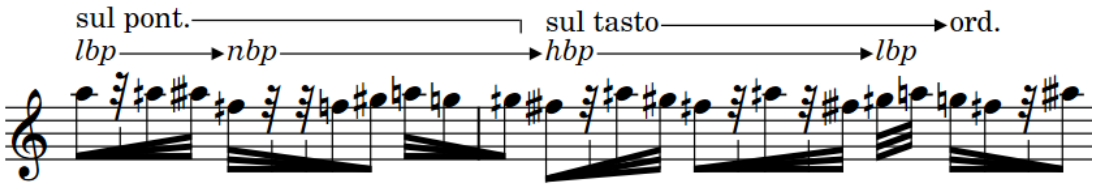
If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

RELATED LINKS

Tucking index properties on page 825

Playing technique continuation lines

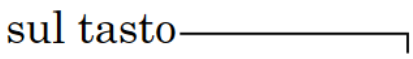
Playing technique continuation lines convey exactly the notes to which playing techniques apply, and can also indicate a gradual transition between playing techniques.



A phrase with multiple playing technique continuation lines

In Dorico Elements, there are the following types of playing technique continuation lines:

Duration line

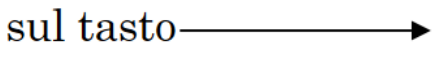


Indicates a specific duration to which the playing technique applies. The duration line for most playing techniques is a solid line with a hook cap at the end.

Playing techniques show duration lines when the following conditions are met:

- The playing technique has duration.
- The continuation type for the playing technique is set to show lines.
- The playing technique is ungrouped or is the final playing technique in a group.

Transition line



Indicates that the playing technique at the start must gradually turn into the playing technique at the end over the duration specified by the line. The transition line for most playing techniques is a solid line with an arrow cap at the end.

Transition lines are automatically shown between playing techniques in groups.

NOTE

Playing technique continuation lines do not affect playback. The sounds produced in playback rely on the playback technique associated with the playing technique, the expression map settings, and the sound libraries loaded in the project.

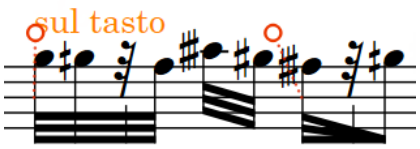
RELATED LINKS

Input methods for playing techniques, pedal lines, string indicators, and harp pedal diagrams on page 351
Positions of playing techniques on page 1066
Groups of playing techniques on page 1072
Playing technique continuation line components on page 1069
Lengthening/Shortening items on page 410
Moving items graphically on page 481
Lines on page 1075
Line components on page 1077

Playing technique duration

In Dorico Elements, playing techniques have an explicit duration when they apply to a specific range, rather than from a single rhythmic position onwards. Playing techniques with duration only affect playback within their duration and can show continuation lines.

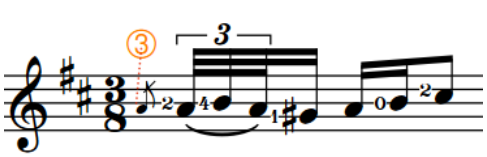
In Write mode, playing techniques with duration have start and end handles that show their duration.



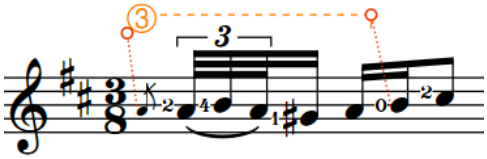
Start and end handles on a playing technique with duration

You can give duration to any playing technique in any of the following ways:

- Group playing techniques together
- Input playing techniques with an open end during note input and extend them
- Add playing techniques to a range of notes
- Lengthen playing techniques



String indicator (selected) with no duration



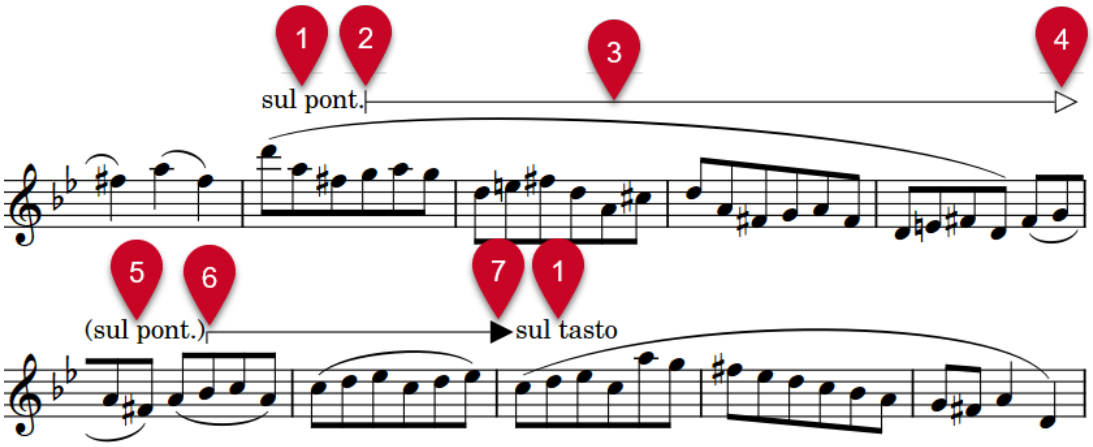
String indicator (selected) with duration and duration line

RELATED LINKS

Input methods for playing techniques, pedal lines, string indicators, and harp pedal diagrams on page 351
Lengthening/Shortening items on page 410
Hiding/Showing playing technique duration lines on page 1070
Grouping playing techniques together on page 1073
Vibrato bar techniques on page 1021
String indicators on page 891

Playing technique continuation line components

In Dorico Elements, playing technique continuation lines consist of multiple components that together function as a single item. The duration line and transition line for the same playing technique can have different default components.



1 **Playing technique**

Controls the default appearance of the following line.

2 **Start cap**

Symbol shown at the start of playing technique continuation lines.

3 **Line body**

Horizontal line, pattern, or wedge that makes up the main part of a playing technique continuation line and extends across its entire length.

4 **Continuation end cap**

Symbol shown at the end of segments of playing technique continuation lines that continue across multiple systems.

5 **Playing technique continuation sign**

Parenthesized reminder of the current playing technique shown at the start of subsequent segments of playing technique continuation lines that continue across multiple systems. You cannot hide playing technique continuation signs independently of the playing technique.

6 **Continuation cap**

Symbol shown at the start of subsequent segments of playing technique continuation lines that continue across multiple systems.

7 **End cap**

Symbol shown at the end of playing technique continuation lines.

RELATED LINKS

Changing the style of playing technique continuation lines on page 1071
Changing the caps of playing technique continuation lines on page 1072
Lines on page 1075

Hiding/Showing playing technique duration lines

You can hide/show duration lines for individual playing techniques. When hiding duration lines, you can show nothing or *sim.*. When showing duration lines, you can show a line or repeat the signs of glyph playing techniques. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

NOTE

These steps only apply to playing technique duration lines. They do not apply to playing technique transition lines.

PREREQUISITE

- The playing techniques whose duration lines you want to hide/show have duration.
- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the playing techniques whose duration lines you want to hide/show.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Continuation type** in the **Playing Techniques** group.
3. Select one of the following options from the menu:
   - **None**
   - **sim.**
   - **Line**
   - **Repeat the signs** (glyph playing techniques only)

RESULT

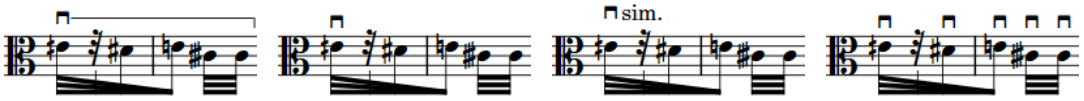
Duration lines are hidden after the selected playing techniques when you select **None**. When you select **sim.**, duration lines are hidden and *sim.* is shown once after each selected playing technique.

Duration lines are shown after the selected playing techniques when you select **Line**.

For glyph playing techniques, the playing technique is repeated for each note within the duration automatically when you select **Repeat the signs**.

If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

EXAMPLE



Duration line shown | Duration line hidden | Duration line hidden but sim. shown | Signs repeated on each note

RELATED LINKS
Changing the property scope on page 617
Copying property settings to other layouts/frame chains on page 599

Changing the style of playing technique continuation lines

You can change the style of individual playing technique duration lines and transition lines; for example, if you want to show a single duration line as a wiggly line. You can change the whole line style, including the caps, or only the body style, which does not affect the caps.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the playing technique continuation lines whose style you want to change.
2. In the Properties panel, activate one of the following properties in the **Playing Techniques** group:
   - To change the whole line style, including caps, activate **Line style**.
   - To change only the body style, excluding caps, activate **Line body style**.
3. Select the style you want from the menu.

RESULT

The corresponding style of the selected playing technique continuation lines is changed.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

You can change the caps of individual playing technique continuation lines.

RELATED LINKS
Playing technique continuation line components on page 1069
Changing the body style of lines on page 1085

Changing the caps of playing technique continuation lines

You can change the caps of individual playing technique continuation lines independently of their line body styles. You can also change the caps of individual segments of playing technique continuation lines that continue across multiple systems.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the playing technique continuation lines whose caps you want to change.
2. In the Properties panel, activate the following properties, individually or together, in the **Playing Techniques** group:
   - To change the cap at the start of the selected lines, activate **Start cap**.
   - To change the cap at the end of the selected lines, activate **End cap**.
   - To change the cap at the start of segments of the selected lines on subsequent systems, activate **Continuation cap**.
   - To change the cap at the end of segments of the selected lines on subsequent systems, activate **Continuation end cap**.
3. Select the style you want from each menu.

RESULT

The corresponding caps of the selected playing technique continuation lines are changed.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

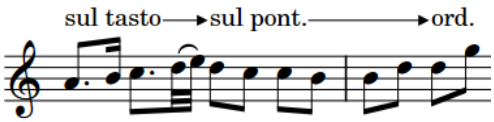
You can change the style of individual playing technique continuation lines.

RELATED LINKS

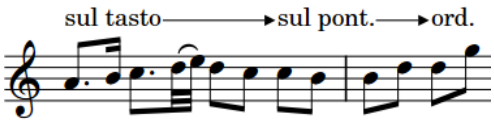
Changing the caps of lines on page 1086

Groups of playing techniques

Groups of playing techniques are automatically aligned in a row and can be moved and edited as a group. When you move individual playing techniques within a group, the lengths of any continuation lines on either side automatically adjust to compensate.



A group of playing techniques

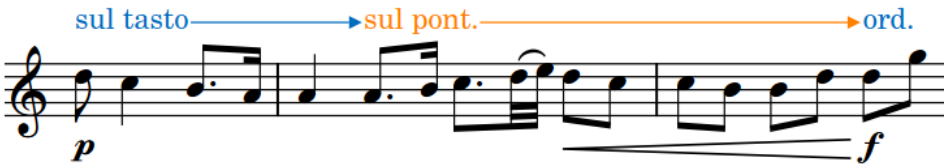


The same group of playing techniques with adjusted transition lines after the middle playing technique moved rhythmically

Two or more playing techniques are automatically grouped together if they are adjoining with duration between them and were added to existing music together or input in sequence during note input.

Transition lines are automatically shown between playing techniques in groups. The final playing technique in playing technique groups can show a duration line if it has duration.

All of the playing techniques in a group are highlighted when any of the playing techniques in the group are selected.



In Engrave mode, you can move each playing technique and continuation line within a group individually. Playing techniques in groups are attached to continuation lines, meaning that if you move a playing technique, any adjacent continuation lines automatically move with it. Groups of playing techniques have a handle at the start of the group, which controls the vertical position of the whole group.

NOTE

- You cannot group a playing technique group to another playing technique group, you can only group single playing techniques together or single playing techniques to an existing group.
- Groups of playing techniques apply project-wide, meaning you cannot have playing techniques grouped one way in some layouts but differently in other layouts. However, you can move playing techniques graphically in each layout independently and independently of their groups.

RELATED LINKS
Input methods for playing techniques, pedal lines, string indicators, and harp pedal diagrams on page 351
Playing technique continuation lines on page 1067
Playing technique duration on page 1068
Lengthening/Shortening items on page 410
Moving notes/items rhythmically on page 437
Moving items graphically on page 481

Grouping playing techniques together

You can manually group playing techniques together that were not automatically grouped when they were input. Grouped playing techniques are automatically aligned in a row, show transition lines between them, and can be moved and edited as a group.

NOTE

You cannot group a playing technique group to another playing technique group, you can only group single playing techniques together or single playing techniques to an existing group.

If you want to group a playing technique group to another playing technique group, you must first ungroup them.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the playing techniques you want to group together.
2. Choose **Edit** > **Notations** > **Playing Techniques** > **Group Playing Techniques**. You can also choose this option from the context menu.

RESULT

The selected playing techniques are grouped together. Their durations are extended to reach the next playing technique in the group, and transition lines are shown between playing techniques in the group.

RELATED LINKS

Playing technique continuation lines on page 1067

Ungrouping playing techniques and removing playing techniques from groups

You can ungroup playing techniques so that all playing techniques in the group become ungrouped. You can also remove only selected playing techniques from groups while leaving other playing techniques in the group.

This applies to all layouts in which the playing techniques appear.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the playing techniques you want to ungroup or remove from groups.
2. Do one of the following:
   - To ungroup all playing techniques in the selected groups, choose **Edit** > **Notations** > **Playing Techniques** > **Ungroup Playing Techniques**.
   - To remove only the selected playing techniques from their groups, choose **Edit** > **Notations** > **Playing Techniques** > **Remove Playing Technique from Group**.

   TIP

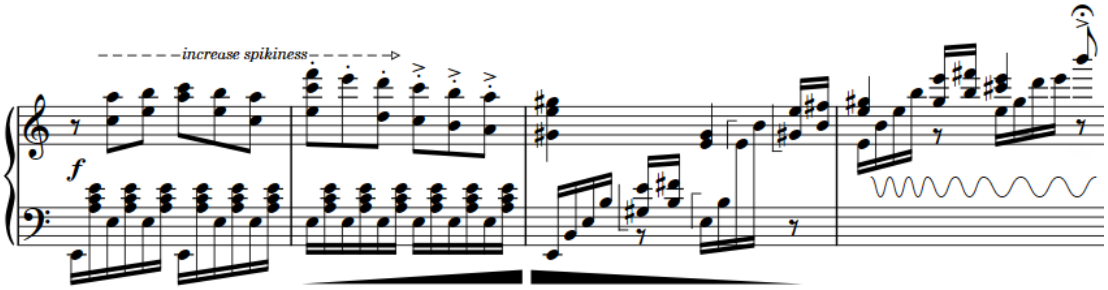
   You can also choose these options from the context menu.

RESULT

The selected playing techniques or all playing techniques are removed from the selected groups. Playing techniques that previously had transition lines now appear with duration lines.

Lines

Lines can convey a variety of meanings in music, such as indicating which hand to use in piano music or a gradual change in bow pressure. In Dorico Elements, lines can be vertical, horizontal, or angled between notes and have different styles and appearances.



A phrase containing horizontal and vertical lines that convey a range of meanings

NOTE

Due to their generic designs, such as a dashed line with arrow end cap, lines in Dorico Elements have no definitive musical meaning and function primarily graphically, meaning they do not affect playback. Dorico Elements includes dedicated features for specific notations that affect playback if applicable, such as dynamics, arpeggios, glissandi, and trills.

The following types of lines are available in Dorico Elements:

Horizontal lines

Horizontal lines span a specified duration; that is, they start at one rhythmic position and end at a later rhythmic position. They might indicate a change over time, such as a wedge that represents bow pressure, or suggest a link between notes, such as a bracket spanning the theme in a fugue or a straight line between notes showing where a melody moves to a different staff.

By default, horizontal lines only apply to single staves. However, there are certain situations where you require a horizontal line to appear in all part layouts but only at system object positions in the full score layout. You can input horizontal lines that apply to all staves or only apply to single staves in Dorico Elements.

Attachment types control the positions of horizontal lines and certain aspects of their functionality. Horizontal lines can have different attachment types at their start and end.

NOTE

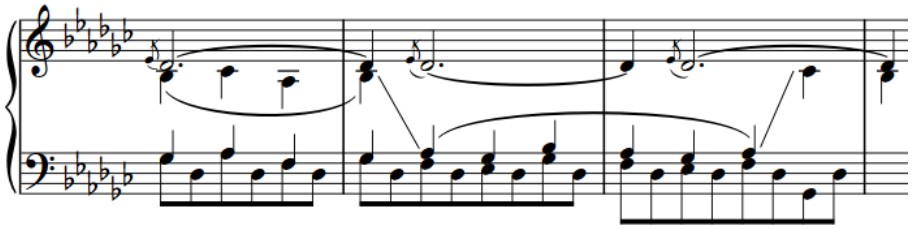
You cannot change the attachment type of horizontal lines after they have been input.

In Dorico Elements, each end of horizontal lines can have the following attachment types:

- **Notehead-attached**

  Attached to an individual note independently of its rhythmic position, meaning that the ends of notehead-attached lines move with notes if you change their pitch or move them rhythmically. Notehead-attached lines can be both angled

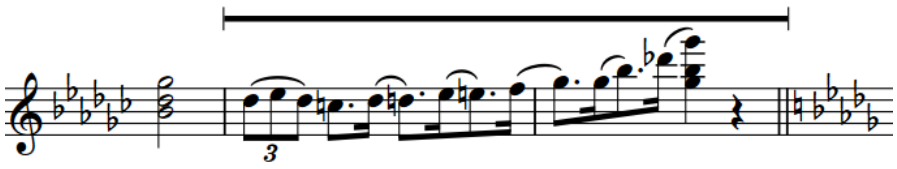
or horizontal, as their end positions and resulting angles are determined by the interval between the start and end notes.



A phrase containing two notehead-attached lines, showing where the melody moves between piano staves

- **Barline-attached**

  Attached to a rhythmic position and aligned with barlines, if their rhythmic positions coincide with barline positions. Barline-attached lines are always horizontal.

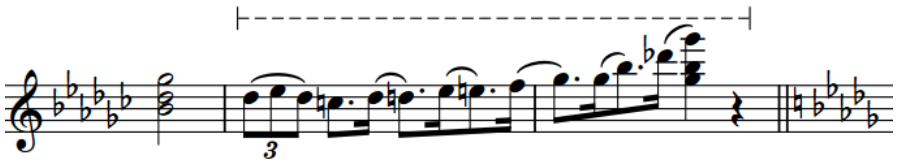


A barline-attached line spanning two full bars

- **Rhythmic position-attached**

  Attached to a rhythmic position and positioned relative to notes, chords, or rests at those rhythmic positions.

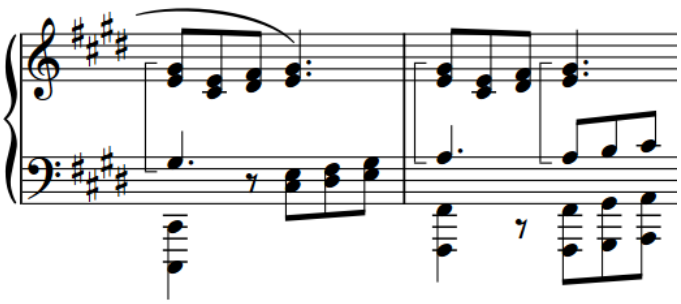
  Rhythmic position-attached lines are horizontal and placed above the staff by default. Their endpoints start to the left and end to the right of notes, chords, or rests at the corresponding rhythmic positions.



A rhythmic position-attached line spanning two full bars

Vertical lines

Vertical lines exist at a single rhythmic position and are positioned relative to notes or chords at that position. They might convey details about a specific moment, such as indicating which hand to use for specific notes in piano music.

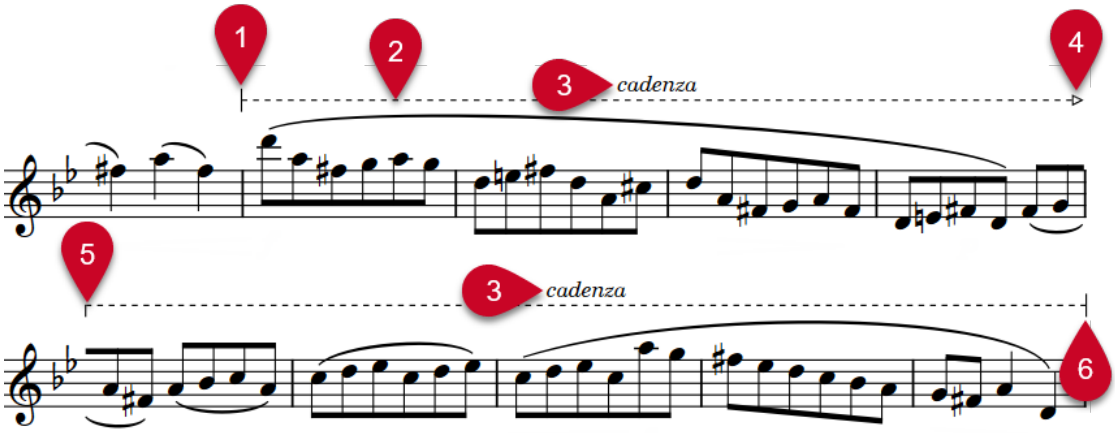


Vertical lines indicating which notes to play with the right hand

RELATED LINKS
Input methods for lines on page 367
Lines panel on page 367
Adding text to lines on page 1088
Changing the placement of horizontal lines on page 1081
Arpeggio signs on page 994
Glissando lines on page 1000
Jazz articulations on page 1028
Octave lines on page 822
Trills on page 981
Playing technique continuation lines on page 1067
Pedal lines on page 1044
Repeat endings on page 1107
Guitar bends on page 1006
Tuplet brackets on page 1276

Line components

In Dorico Elements, lines consist of multiple components that together function as a single item.



1 **Start cap**

Symbol shown at the start of lines. Caps can be arrowheads, hooks, or terminal lines.

2 **Line body**

Horizontal or vertical line, repeating symbols, dash/dot pattern, or wedge that makes up the main part of a line and extends across its entire length or height.

3 **Text**

Text shown in addition to caps, either centered in the middle of each line segment or only at the start or end of lines. On vertical lines, text reads upwards by default.

4 **Continuation end cap**

Symbol shown at the end of segments of lines that continue across multiple systems. Caps can be arrowheads, hooks, or terminal lines.

5 **Continuation cap**

Symbol shown at the start of subsequent segments of lines that continue across multiple systems. Caps can be arrowheads, hooks, or terminal lines.

6 **End cap**

Symbol shown at the end of lines. Caps can be arrowheads, hooks, or terminal lines.

NOTE

Dorico Pro provides further options for customizing lines and line components, such as using text for caps and music symbols for annotations in the center of lines. You might encounter lines with different components than are available in Dorico Elements if you import or open a project that contains them.

RELATED LINKS
Input methods for lines on page 367
Changing the body style of lines on page 1085
Changing the caps of lines on page 1086
Adding text to lines on page 1088
Changing the position of text relative to horizontal lines on page 1089
Changing the position of text relative to vertical lines on page 1089
Playing technique continuation lines on page 1067

Positions of lines

The position of lines relative to notes and staves depends on the line type and, for horizontal lines, their attachment type.

Notehead-attached horizontal lines

Notehead-attached lines are positioned in relation to the corresponding noteheads; that is, starting to the right of the start note and ending to the left of the end note. They automatically follow the notes at each end, meaning if you change the pitch of either note or move them rhythmically, the line end positions move accordingly. Because their positions depend on the pitches of notes, they can appear both inside and outside the staff. If they are only attached to noteheads at one end, they remain horizontal but follow the staff position of the note to which they are attached.

Barline-attached horizontal lines

Barline-attached horizontal lines are placed above the staff by default. Their endpoints align with barlines if their duration coincides with barline positions. If their endpoints do not coincide with barlines, they are positioned like rhythmic position-attached lines.

Rhythmic position-attached horizontal lines

Rhythmic position-attached lines are placed above the staff by default. Their endpoints start to the left and end to the right of notes, chords, or rests at the corresponding rhythmic positions.

Vertical lines

Vertical lines are positioned to the left of the notes to which they apply, including any applicable accidentals, but are positioned between grace notes and normal notes. If multiple vertical lines exist at the same rhythmic position, the most recent line is positioned furthest to the right; that is, directly to the left of notes or chords.

You can change the position/placement of lines in a variety of ways, such as showing vertical lines on the right of notes or changing the placement of horizontal lines to show them inside the staff.

RELATED LINKS
Changing the horizontal order of vertical lines on page 1079
Showing vertical lines before grace notes on page 1080
Changing the placement of horizontal lines on page 1081
Moving items graphically on page 481

Input methods for lines on page 367

Showing vertical lines on the right/left of notes

You can change the side of notes on which vertical lines appear; for example, to show selected vertical lines on the right side of notes.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

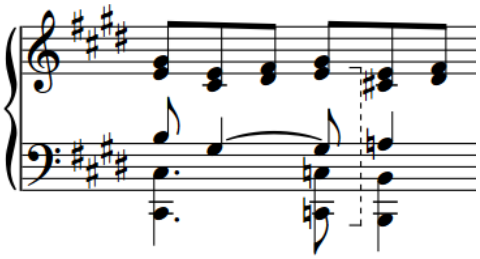
PROCEDURE

1. Select the vertical lines whose horizontal position you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Side** in the **Vertical Lines** group.
3. Choose one of the following options:
   - **Left**
   - **Right**

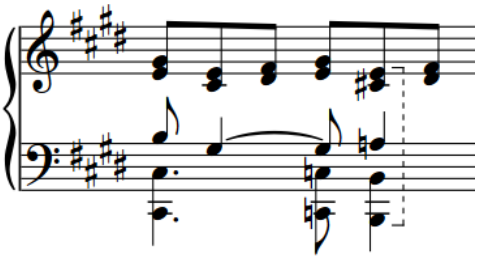
RESULT

The selected lines appear on the corresponding side of notes.

EXAMPLE



Vertical line on the left of notes



Vertical line on the right of notes

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

You can change the order of vertical lines when multiple vertical lines exist at the same rhythmic position and on the same side of notes.

Changing the horizontal order of vertical lines

You can change the horizontal order of vertical lines when multiple vertical lines exist at the same rhythmic position and on the same side of notes.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the vertical lines whose order you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Column** in the **Vertical Lines** group.
3. Change the value in the value field.

RESULT

The order of the selected vertical lines relative to any other vertical lines at the same rhythmic positions is changed. Lines with higher **Column** values are placed further to the left, while lines with lower values are placed further to the right.

Showing vertical lines before grace notes

You can position individual vertical lines so they appear to the left of grace notes. By default, vertical lines are positioned after grace notes; that is, between grace notes and normal notes.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

PROCEDURE

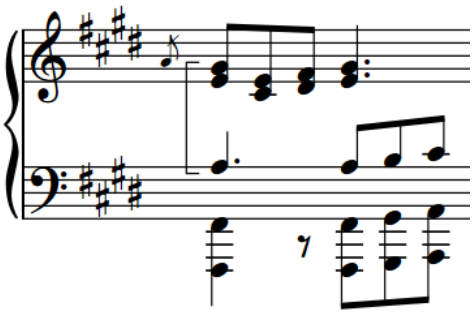
1. Select the vertical lines you want to show before grace notes. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Line before grace notes** in the **Vertical Lines** group.

RESULT

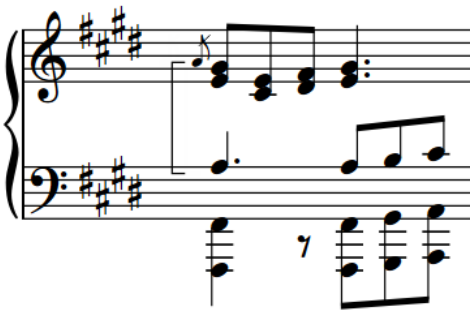
The selected vertical lines are positioned before grace notes.

Deactivating **Line before grace notes** shows the selected vertical lines after grace notes again.

EXAMPLE



Vertical line after grace notes



Vertical line before grace notes

Changing the placement of horizontal lines

You can show individual horizontal lines above, below, or inside the staff. By default, horizontal lines are placed above the staff.

NOTE

These steps only apply to barline-/rhythmic position-attached horizontal lines.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the horizontal lines whose placement you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Placement** in the **Horizontal Lines** group.
3. Select one of the following options from the menu:
   - **Above**
   - **Below**
   - **Inside staff**

RESULT

The placement of the selected horizontal lines is changed. Horizontal lines inside the staff are centered on the middle staff line by default.

TIP

You can also cycle through the different placement options for selected horizontal lines by pressing **F**.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

- You can change the staff position of lines shown inside the staff.
- You can erase the background of text on lines shown inside the staff.

RELATED LINKS

Moving items graphically on page 481
Changing the staff-relative placement of items on page 414

Changing the staff position of horizontal lines inside the staff

You can change the staff position of horizontal lines shown inside the staff, including changing the staff position of the start/end of lines independently of each other; for example, if you want lines to appear angled.

PREREQUISITE

- The horizontal lines whose staff position you want to change are placed inside the staff and have at least one barline-/rhythmic position-attached end.
- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

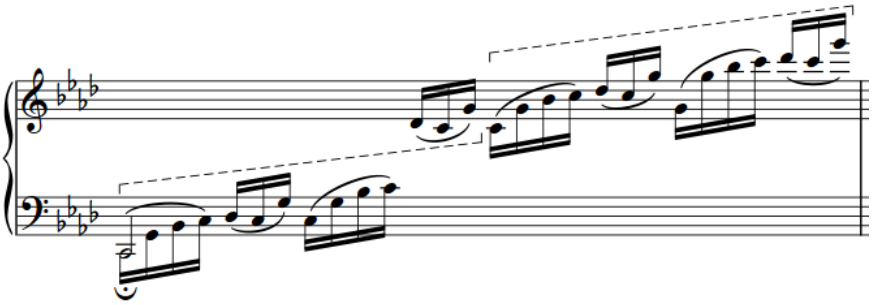
PROCEDURE

1. Select the horizontal lines placed inside the staff whose staff position you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate the following properties, individually or together, in the **Horizontal Lines** group:
   - **Start position**
   - **End position**
3. Change the values in the value fields.

RESULT

The staff positions of the corresponding ends of the selected lines are changed according to the new values. For example, **0** is the middle line of the staff, **4** is the top line of the staff, and **-4** is the bottom line of the staff.

EXAMPLE



Horizontal lines inside the staff with different staff positions at their start/end

Length of lines

Dorico Elements automatically calculates the appropriate length for both horizontal and vertical lines.

- The length of horizontal lines is determined by the rhythmic duration of the line. Horizontal lines with different attachment types are positioned differently, which can affect their graphical length. For example, barline-attached lines can appear longer than rhythmic position-attached lines with the same duration.
- The length of vertical lines is determined by the pitch range of notes in the voices/staves to which the line applies. Dorico Elements automatically adjusts the length of vertical lines if pitches change or you add notes to, or delete notes from, chords.

You can lengthen/shorten both horizontal and vertical lines; for example, if you want an individual vertical line to extend above the top note in a chord.

Lengthening/Shortening horizontal lines

You can lengthen/shorten horizontal lines rhythmically after they have been input.

NOTE

These steps only apply to barline-/rhythmic position-attached horizontal lines. You cannot lengthen/shorten notehead-attached horizontal lines, except by lengthening/shortening the notes to which they are attached.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the horizontal lines you want to lengthen/shorten.

   NOTE

   When using the mouse, you can only lengthen/shorten one line at a time.

2. Lengthen/Shorten the lines in any of the following ways:
   - To lengthen them by the current rhythmic grid resolution, press **Shift-Alt/Opt-Right Arrow**.
   - To shorten them by the current rhythmic grid resolution, press **Shift-Alt/Opt-Left Arrow**.
   - To snap the end of a single line to the next notehead, press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-Alt/Opt-Right Arrow**.
   - To snap the end of a single line to the previous notehead, press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-Alt/Opt-Left Arrow**.

     NOTE

     - When multiple lines are selected, you can only lengthen/shorten them according to the current rhythmic grid resolution.
     - When using the keyboard, lengthening/shortening lines only moves their end. You can move the start of lines by moving lines rhythmically, or by clicking and dragging the start handle of a single line.

   - Click and drag the circular handle at the start/end to the right/left.

RESULT

Single lines are lengthened/shortened according to the current rhythmic grid resolution or to the next/previous notehead, whichever is closer.

Multiple lines are lengthened/shortened according to the current rhythmic grid resolution.

TIP

You can move lines graphically in Engrave mode, including changing their graphical length.

RELATED LINKS

Inputting horizontal lines on page 368
Moving notes/items rhythmically on page 437
Moving items graphically on page 481
Rhythmic grid on page 204

Lengthening/Shortening vertical lines

You can lengthen/shorten individual vertical lines to different staff positions. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains. By default, vertical lines automatically span the pitch range of notes in the voices to which they apply.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the vertical lines you want to lengthen/shorten. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate the following properties, individually or together, in the **Vertical Lines** group:
   - **Top position**
   - **Bottom position**
3. Change the values in the value fields.

RESULT

The vertical length of the selected lines is changed. Increasing the values moves the corresponding end up by staff positions, decreasing the values moves the corresponding end down by staff positions. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

TIP

You can move lines graphically in Engrave mode, including changing their graphical length.

RELATED LINKS

Moving items graphically on page 481
Inputting vertical lines on page 369
Changing the property scope on page 617
Copying property settings to other layouts/frame chains on page 599

Changing the start/end positions of horizontal lines

By default, rhythmic position-attached horizontal lines start before notes/accidentals and end immediately after the last note, chord, or rest at their end rhythmic position. You can change the start and end positions of individual rhythmic position-attached horizontal lines independently; for example, if you want them to start before noteheads rather than accidentals and end immediately before the following note, chord, or rest.

NOTE

These steps only apply to rhythmic position-attached horizontal lines.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.

- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

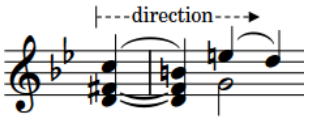
PROCEDURE

1. Select the rhythmic position-attached horizontal lines whose start and/or end position you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Horizontal start position** in the **Horizontal Lines** group.
3. Select one of the following options from the menu:
   - **Notehead**
   - **Notehead center**
   - **Accidental**
4. Activate **Horizontal end position** in the **Horizontal Lines** group.
5. Select one of the following options from the menu:
   - **End at right-hand side of final note**
   - **End on center of final note**
   - **End immediately before following note**

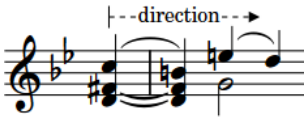
RESULT

The start and/or end position of the selected rhythmic position-attached horizontal lines is changed.

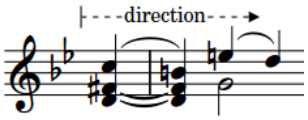
EXAMPLE



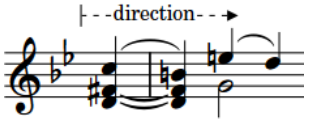
Horizontal line starting before the notehead



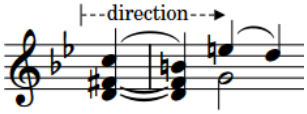
Horizontal line starting centered on the notehead



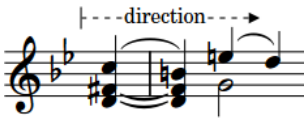
Horizontal line starting before the accidental



Horizontal line ending after final note



Horizontal line ending centered on the final notehead



Horizontal line ending before following note

Changing the body style of lines

You can change the body style of individual lines without changing their caps.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the lines whose body style you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.

   NOTE

   You must select either only horizontal lines or only vertical lines.

2. In the Properties panel, activate **Line body style** in either the **Horizontal Lines** or **Vertical Lines** group.
3. Select the style you want from the menu.

RESULT

The body style of the selected lines is changed.

NOTE

This does not affect the caps of the selected lines.

RELATED LINKS

Line components on page 1077
Lines panel on page 367
Input methods for lines on page 367

Changing the caps of lines

You can change the caps of individual lines without changing their body style.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the lines whose caps you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.

   NOTE

   You must select either only horizontal lines or only vertical lines.

2. In the Properties panel, activate the following properties, individually or together, in either the **Horizontal Lines** or **Vertical Lines** group:
   - To change the cap at the start/bottom of the selected lines, activate **Start cap**.
   - To change the cap at the end/top of the selected lines, activate **End cap**.
   - To change the segment start cap of the selected horizontal lines on subsequent systems, activate **Continuation cap**.
   - To change the segment end cap of the selected horizontal lines on previous systems to where the lines end, activate **Continuation end cap**.
3. Select the style you want from each menu.

RESULT

The corresponding caps of the selected lines are changed.

NOTE

This does not affect the body style of the selected lines.

Changing the direction of lines

You can change the direction of both horizontal and vertical lines; for example, to make a horizontal line with an arrow end cap point to the left, or to make a vertical line with text appear upside-down with its text reading downwards.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the lines whose direction you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.

   NOTE

   You must select either only horizontal lines or only vertical lines.

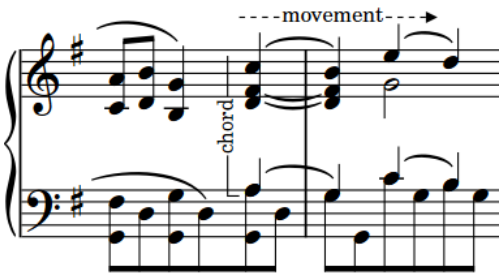
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Reverse** in either the **Horizontal Lines** or **Vertical Lines** group.

RESULT

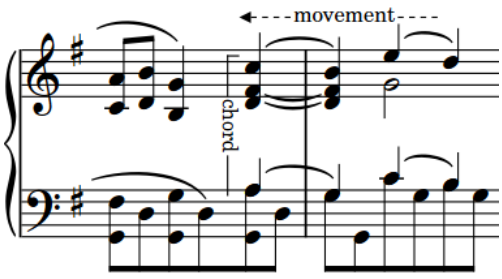
The direction of the selected lines is change. Text on vertical lines now reads downwards.

Deactivating **Reverse** returns the selected lines to their default direction.

EXAMPLE



Horizontal and vertical lines with default directions



Reversed horizontal and vertical lines

Adding text to lines

You can add text to both horizontal and vertical lines; for example, to clarify the intention of the line.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the lines to which you want to add text. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.

   NOTE

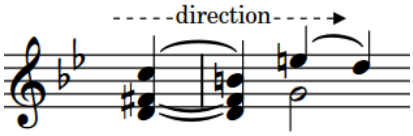
   You must select either only horizontal lines or only vertical lines.

2. In the Properties panel, activate **Text** in either the **Horizontal Lines** or **Vertical Lines** group.
3. Enter the text you want into the value field.
4. Press **Return**.

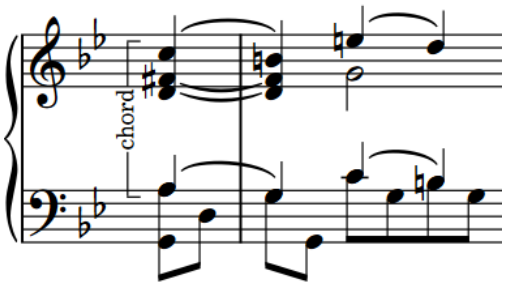
RESULT

The text you entered into the value field is shown centered in the middle of the selected lines. On vertical lines, it reads upwards.

EXAMPLE



Text on a horizontal line



Text on a vertical line

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

- If you want text on vertical lines to read downwards, you can reverse the lines.
- You can erase the backgrounds of text on lines.

RELATED LINKS

Line components on page 1077
Input methods for lines on page 367

Changing the position of text relative to horizontal lines

You can change the position of text relative to horizontal lines individually; for example, to show text above horizontal lines. By default, text is centered on horizontal lines.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

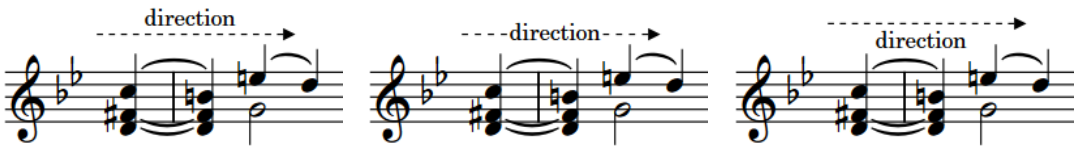
PROCEDURE

1. Select the horizontal lines whose text position you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Text position** in the **Horizontal Lines** group.
3. Select one of the following options from the menu:
   - **Above**
   - **Centered**
   - **Below**
   - **Inside**
   - **Outside**

RESULT

The position of text relative to the selected horizontal lines is changed. When annotations are positioned **Inside** or **Outside**, their position relative to the line changes according to the staff-relative placement of the line.

EXAMPLE



Text **Above** Text **Centered** Text **Below**

RELATED LINKS

Changing the placement of text relative to lines on page 1090

Changing the position of text relative to vertical lines

You can change the position of text relative to vertical lines individually; for example, to show text on the left of vertical lines. By default, text is centered on vertical lines.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

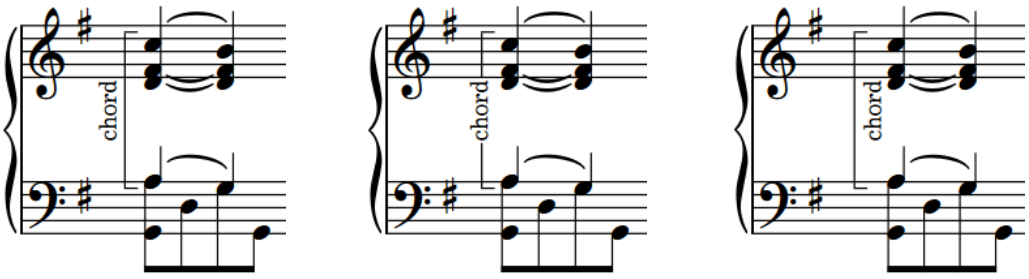
PROCEDURE

1. Select the vertical lines whose text position you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Text position** in the **Vertical Lines** group.
3. Select one of the following options from the menu:
   - **Left**
   - **Centered**
   - **Right**

RESULT

The position of text relative to the selected vertical lines is changed.

EXAMPLE



Text **Left** Text **Centered** Text **Right**

Changing the placement of text relative to lines

You can change the placement of text relative to lines individually; for example, to show text at the start of horizontal lines or the top of vertical lines. By default, text appears in the center of lines.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the lines whose text placement you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.

   NOTE

   You must select either only horizontal lines or only vertical lines.

2. In the Properties panel, activate **Text placement** in either the **Horizontal Lines** or **Vertical Lines** group.
3. Select one of the following options from the menu:
   - **Start**
   - **Center**

- **End**

4. Optional: If you chose **Start** or **End** and want to change the offset from the corresponding end of the line, activate **Start/end gap** in either the **Horizontal Lines** or **Vertical Lines** group and change the value in the value field.

RESULT

The placement of text relative to the selected lines is changed. For vertical lines, **Start** places text at the bottom of the line, **End** places text at the top.

If you also activated **Start/end gap**, the gap between text on the selected lines and the corresponding end is changed.

RELATED LINKS

Changing the direction of lines on page 1087

Forcing line text to be horizontal

You can force the text of individual lines always to appear horizontal; for example, to make text on vertical lines easier to read.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the lines whose text you want to keep horizontal. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.

   NOTE

   You must select either only horizontal lines or only vertical lines.

2. In the Properties panel, activate **Keep text horizontal** in either the **Horizontal Lines** or **Vertical Lines** group.

RESULT

Text on the selected lines always appears horizontal, even if the line is angled or vertical.

Adding borders to line text

You can add borders to text shown on individual lines and change the border thickness; for example, if you want to make the boundary of the text relative to the line clear. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the lines whose text you want to add borders to.

NOTE

You must select either only horizontal lines or only vertical lines.

2. In the Properties panel, activate **Border thickness** in either the **Horizontal Lines** or **Vertical Lines** group.
3. Change the value in the value field.

RESULT

Borders with the corresponding thickness are added to text on the selected lines. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

RELATED LINKS

Changing the placement of text relative to lines on page 1090
Adding borders to text items on page 1227
Changing the property scope on page 617
Copying property settings to other layouts/frame chains on page 599

Erasing the background of line text

You can erase the background of text shown on individual lines; for example, to ensure they remain legible if they appear inside the staff. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the lines whose text backgrounds you want to erase.

   NOTE

   You must select either only horizontal lines or only vertical lines.

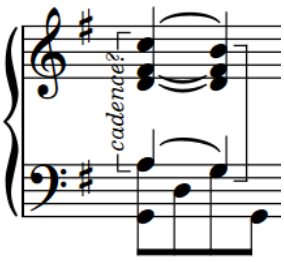
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Erase background** in either the **Horizontal Lines** or **Vertical Lines** group.

RESULT

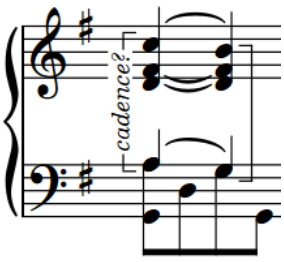
The backgrounds of text on the selected lines are erased. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

Deactivating **Erase background** returns text on the selected lines to the default non-erased background.

EXAMPLE



Line text with non-erased background



Line text with erased background

Changing the erasure padding of line text

You can change the erasure padding of text on individual lines, including changing the padding between line text and each edge of their erased areas independently. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the lines whose text erasure padding you want to change.

   NOTE

   You must select either only horizontal lines or only vertical lines.

2. In the Properties panel, activate the **Erasure padding** properties, individually or together, in either the **Horizontal Lines** or **Vertical Lines** group.
   - **L** changes the padding between line text and their left edge.
   - **R** changes the padding between line text and their right edge.
   - **T** changes the padding between line text and their top edge.
   - **B** changes the padding between line text and their bottom edge.
3. Change the values in the value fields.

RESULT

Increasing the values increases the padding, decreasing the values decreases the padding. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

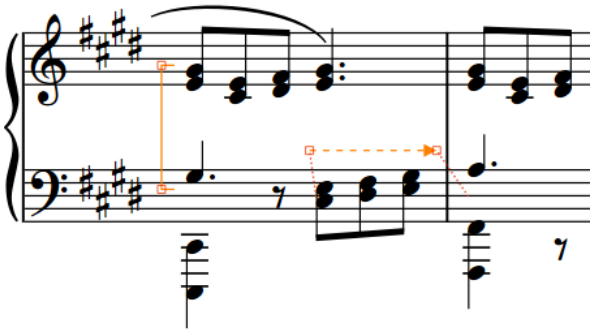
RELATED LINKS

Changing the property scope on page 617
Copying property settings to other layouts/frame chains on page 599

Lines in Engrave mode

In Engrave mode, each line has two square handles, one at the start and one at the end of horizontal lines, and one at the top and one at the bottom of vertical lines. You can move these handles to adjust the graphical position, length, and angle of lines.

You can also move whole individual lines graphically. If horizontal lines cross system and frame breaks, you can move the line segments on each side of the break independently.



Handles on a vertical line and horizontal line in Engrave mode

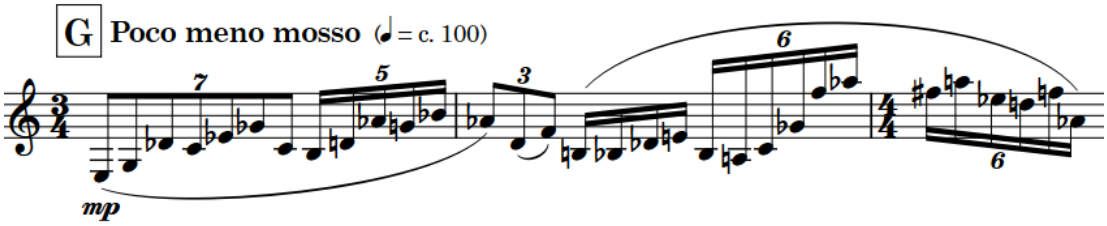
RELATED LINKS

Line components on page 1077
Positions of lines on page 1078
Lengthening/Shortening horizontal lines on page 1083
Lengthening/Shortening vertical lines on page 1084
Showing vertical lines on the right/left of notes on page 1079
Changing the horizontal order of vertical lines on page 1079
Changing the placement of horizontal lines on page 1081
Changing the staff position of horizontal lines inside the staff on page 1081
Moving items graphically on page 481

Rehearsal marks

Rehearsal marks are ordered sequences of letters or numbers that provide useful reference points, such as indicating significant changes in the music. They allow performers to co-ordinate easily in rehearsals and make the chronological sequence of the music clear.

In Dorico Elements, rehearsal marks follow an automatic sequence where each rehearsal mark has a unique index, ensuring there are never duplicate rehearsal marks.



A rehearsal mark, showing the letter G

By default, rehearsal marks in Dorico Elements appear as letters, but you can change the sequence type to show letters, numbers, or bar numbers. You can use all three available rehearsal mark sequences simultaneously.

In order to ensure they are easily noticeable, and cannot be confused with bar numbers when using numbers for rehearsal marks, rehearsal marks are shown in a rectangular enclosure.

In Dorico Elements, rehearsal marks are categorized as system objects. Therefore, rehearsal marks follow your per-layout settings for the visibility and positioning of system objects.

RELATED LINKS
Inputting rehearsal marks on page 382
Changing the index of rehearsal marks on page 1096
Changing the rehearsal mark sequence type on page 1097
Going to rehearsal marks on page 419
Layout Options dialog on page 677
System objects on page 1196
Changing the positions of system objects on page 1197
Tempo marks on page 1204
Bar numbers on page 742

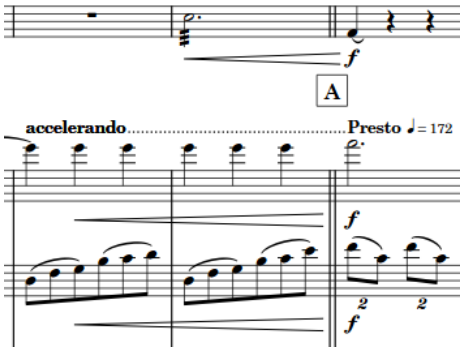
Positions of rehearsal marks

Rehearsal marks are placed outside the music, above the staff, and at the same positions as other system objects so they can be seen easily.

By default, rehearsal marks are positioned above barlines and to the right of clefs or key signatures at the start of systems. Although you can input rehearsal marks at rhythmic positions within a bar in Dorico Elements, this is not common practice.

When rehearsal marks coincide with tempo changes, Dorico Elements automatically positions tempo marks to the right of rehearsal marks. Dorico Elements automatically adjusts staff spacing to ensure rehearsal marks are correctly positioned.

You can move rehearsal marks to different rhythmic positions in Write mode. They are automatically positioned to avoid collisions.



The vertical spacing between the top two staves is increased to allow room for the rehearsal mark and the tempo marks.

You can move rehearsal marks graphically in Engrave mode, but this does not change the rhythmic positions to which they are attached.

Rehearsal marks are categorized as system objects in Dorico Elements, which you can show above the first bracket of selected instrument families. You can change the instrument families above which system objects appear in each layout independently; for example, if you want rehearsal marks to appear at multiple vertical positions in each system in the full score only.

RELATED LINKS
Inputting rehearsal marks on page 382
Input methods for bars, beats, and barlines on page 287
Moving items graphically on page 481
Changing the positions of system objects on page 1197

Changing the index of rehearsal marks

By default, the rehearsal mark sequence resets at the start of each flow. If you want the rehearsal mark sequence to continue across flows, for example, to avoid having multiple rehearsal marks with the same letter in the same project, you can change the index position of individual rehearsal marks.

Changing the index position changes the shown number or letter. For example, index position 1 appears as rehearsal mark A or 1, position 2 appears as B or 2, and so on.

You can also change the index position of a rehearsal mark to avoid showing a letter that could easily be confused with another letter or another number, such as I or O.

NOTE

These steps do not apply to rehearsal marks using the bar number sequence type.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the rehearsal mark whose index position you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.

2. In the Properties panel, activate **Index** in the **Rehearsal Marks** group.
3. Change the value in the value field.

RESULT

The selected rehearsal mark changes according to the **Index** value and its sequence type.

Any subsequent rehearsal marks without index changes in the same sequence follow the new index automatically. For example, if you changed a rehearsal mark from A to P, the next rehearsal mark changes from B to Q.

TIP

You can also change the sequence type of rehearsal marks; for example, if you want rehearsal mark C to appear as rehearsal mark 3.

Changing the rehearsal mark sequence type

Rehearsal marks can be letters, numbers, or bar numbers. You can change the sequence type of individual rehearsal marks, and create secondary rehearsal mark sequences.

In Dorico Elements, you can use all three available rehearsal mark sequences simultaneously. For example, you can have the main sequence of rehearsal marks showing letters, but also have a secondary sequence of numbers to mark different moments, perhaps entry points for a solo line, and also highlight prominent bar numbers within those sections.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the rehearsal mark whose sequence type you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Sequence type** in the **Rehearsal Marks** group.
3. Select one of the following options from the menu:
   - **Letters**
   - **Numbers**
   - **Bar numbers**

RESULT

The selected rehearsal mark now displays a letter, a number, or the current bar number.

If it is the first rehearsal mark in either the letters sequence or the numbers sequence in the flow, it shows either A or 1. If there are already rehearsal marks in either the letters sequence or the numbers sequence in the flow, it shows the next letter or number according to the index.

NOTE

You can change the index of a rehearsal mark sequence independently of other rehearsal mark sequences. However, you cannot change the index of rehearsal marks using the bar number sequence type.

RELATED LINKS
Inputting rehearsal marks on page 382
Adding bar number changes on page 750

Adding prefixes/suffixes to rehearsal marks

You can add both prefixes and suffixes to individual rehearsal marks.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

PROCEDURE

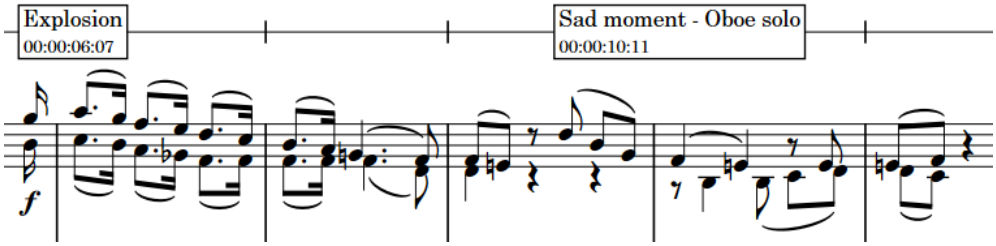
1. Select the rehearsal marks to which you want to add a prefix or suffix. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate the following properties, individually or together, in the **Rehearsal Marks** group:
   - **Prefix**
   - **Suffix**
3. Enter the text you want into the value field.
4. Press **Return**.

RESULT

The text you entered into the value field is added to the selected rehearsal marks as a prefix or a suffix.

Markers

Markers are labels locked to a particular position in time, most commonly in relation to a video. They typically indicate an important moment that requires musical prominence, and composers often use them to help shape the writing process.



Markers on a timecode staff showing custom text and timecodes

By default, markers in Dorico Elements show the default text “Marker” and also include the timecode of their fixed position in time.

In Dorico Elements, you can use markers in any project. However, because they are most commonly used in conjunction with video, markers are included in the Video panel in Write mode. There is also a Markers track in Play mode that displays markers, and allows you to input new ones.

You can use markers to help find suitable tempos for your project, as Dorico Elements can calculate possible tempos between important markers so that the markers occur on strong beats in the time signature.

You can show markers above/below the start of each system or below the timecode staff, if there is one, in each layout independently.

Any markers you input are automatically included when you export MIDI.

RELATED LINKS
Inputting markers/timecodes on page 383
Editing marker text on page 1101
Video panel on page 384
Changing the timecodes of markers on page 1102
Defining markers as important on page 1102
Timecodes on page 1103
Markers track on page 497

Hiding/Showing markers

By default, markers are shown in full score layouts and hidden in part layouts. You can hide and show markers in each layout independently; for example, if markers are helpful for the conductor to see but not for the players.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-L** to open **Layout Options**.
2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to hide/show markers.

By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar, clicking and dragging across multiple layouts, **Shift**-clicking adjacent layouts, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking individual layouts.

3. In the category list, click **Markers and Timecode**.
4. Activate/Deactivate **Show markers**.
5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

Markers are hidden/shown in the selected layouts.

Changing the vertical position of markers

You can show markers above the system, below the system, or on a separate single-line timecode staff above a selected bracketed instrument family group, which can make them clearer in the score. When markers are shown on a timecode staff, timecodes are also automatically shown below the timecode staff.

NOTE

You cannot show multiple timecode staves in a system.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-L** to open **Layout Options**.
2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to change the vertical position of markers.

   By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar, clicking and dragging across multiple layouts, **Shift**-clicking adjacent layouts, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking individual layouts.
3. In the category list, click **Markers and Timecode**.
4. In the **Markers** subsection, choose one of the following options for **Vertical position**:
   - **Above system**
   - **Below system**
   - **Timecode staff**
5. Optional: If you chose **Timecode staff**, select the bracketed instrument family above which you want to show the timecode staff from the **Position timecode staff above bracket** menu.
6. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

The vertical position of markers is changed in the selected layouts.

NOTE

- If you show markers on a timecode staff, timecodes are also shown on the staff by default. If you only want to show markers on a separate staff and exclude timecodes, you must then change **Timecode frequency on timecode staff** to **Never**.

You can also change the vertical position of timecodes so they appear above/below the start of systems rather than on the timecode staff.

- You can change the default distance between the timecode staff and other staves on the **Vertical Spacing** page in **Layout Options**.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

You can change the frequency of timecodes on the timecode staff.

RELATED LINKS

Inputting markers/timecodes on page 383
Changing the vertical position of timecodes on page 1104
Changing the timecode frequency on page 1105
Layout Options dialog on page 677

Editing marker text

The default text shown in new markers is “Marker”. You can change the text shown in each marker individually.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the markers whose text you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Marker text** in the **Markers** group.
3. Enter the text you want into the value field.
4. Press **Return**.

RESULT

The text shown in the selected markers is changed. It uses the **Marker Text Font** font style.

TIP

You can also enter custom text for markers when inputting them using the **Add Marker** dialog, and change marker text in the **Markers** section of the Video panel in Write mode.

RELATED LINKS

Add Marker dialog on page 383

Changing the timecodes of markers

You can change the timecodes of individual markers after they have been input; for example, if the video has been edited and the marker now occurs ten seconds later.

NOTE

Because this changes where markers occur in the project, this also moves markers relative to the notated music.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select an item in the flow containing the markers whose timecodes you want to change.
2. In the Notations toolbox, click **Panels**, then **Video** to show the Video panel.
3. In the **Markers** section, double-click the timecode you want to change.
4. Enter the new timecode you want into the value field.
5. Press **Return**.

RESULT

The timecode of the marker is changed. The marker automatically moves relative to the music to reflect its new time position.

RELATED LINKS

Video panel on page 384
Changing the initial timecode value on page 1104

Defining markers as important

You can define individual markers as important, which allows them to be considered when finding suitable tempos in the **Find Tempo** dialog.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, click **Video** in the Notations toolbox to show the Video panel.
2. In the **Markers** section, activate the checkbox in the **Imp.** column for each marker you want to define as important.

RESULT

Markers with activated checkboxes are defined as important. The **Find Tempo** button at the bottom of the **Markers** section becomes available.

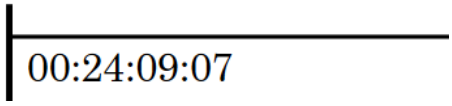
RELATED LINKS

Find Tempo dialog on page 385

Timecodes

Timecodes indicate an exact position in time, usually in the context of a video. They allow precise synchronization between multiple elements, such as music and moving images, and can be used as a reference tool.

Timecodes are displayed in the format hh:mm:ss:ff, which is two-digit hours, minutes, seconds, and frames.



A timecode on a timecode staff

In Dorico Elements, you can specify the type of timecode from the following types:

Non-drop frame timecodes

Each frame is numbered sequentially from the preceding one without skipping any frame numbers.

Non-drop frame timecodes are shown with the suffix **fps** and use a colon separator between seconds and frames; for example, 00:00:01:05.

Drop frame timecodes

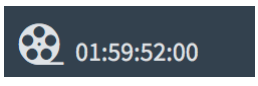
Some frame numbers are skipped in order to accommodate the difference in frame rate between 29.97 fps and 30 fps. In every minute except every tenth minute, two timecode numbers are dropped from the frame count.

Drop frame timecodes are shown with the suffix **dfps** and use a semicolon separator between the seconds and frames; for example, 00:00:01;05.

Timecodes in Dorico Elements are flow-specific, meaning you can set timecodes for each flow that are completely independent of the timecodes for other flows. You can set timecodes in the **Video Properties** dialog, including for flows without a video.

NOTE

The timecodes shown in flow cards in the **Flows** panel in Setup mode reflect the timecode at the start of the flow, which can be different to the timecode you set in the **Video Properties** dialog. For example, if you set the **Timecode start** to **02:00:00:00** but also set the **Flow attachment position** to **8** quarter note beats, and the tempo is 60 bpm, the timecode shown in the flow card is 01:59:52:00.



By default, timecodes appear in markers. You can show markers above/below the start of each system or below the timecode staff, if there is one, in each layout independently.

Additionally, you can change the time displayed in the **Transport** window to be the timecode rather than elapsed time, which is shown by default.

RELATED LINKS
Inputting markers/timecodes on page 383
Frame rates on page 185
Video Properties dialog on page 181
Changing the timecode frequency on page 1105
Changing the content shown in the transport display on page 517
Markers on page 1099
Hiding/Showing markers on page 1099
Changing the vertical position of markers on page 1100
Changing the vertical position of timecodes on page 1104

Changing the initial timecode value

You can change the timecode at which each flow in your project starts; for example, if you are using a separate project for the second reel of a film. You can also change the initial timecode in projects without videos.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select an item in the flow whose initial timecode value you want to change.
2. In the Notations toolbox, click **Panels**, then **Video** to show the Video panel.
3. In the Video panel, click **Properties** to open the **Video Properties** dialog.
4. Change the value for **Timecode start**.
5. Click **OK** to save your changes and close the dialog.

RESULT

The initial timecode for the flow in which you selected an item is changed.

RELATED LINKS
Video panel on page 384
Changing the start position of videos on page 183
Changing the timecodes of markers on page 1102

Changing the vertical position of timecodes

You can show timecodes either above/below the start of systems or on a separate single-line staff in each layout independently. For example, you can show timecodes and markers on a separate timecode staff in full score layouts but show only timecodes above the start of systems in part layouts.

NOTE

You cannot show timecodes on multiple staves in a system.

PREREQUISITE

If you want to show timecodes on a separate staff, you have changed the vertical position of markers so they appear on a separate staff.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-L** to open **Layout Options**.

2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to change the vertical position of timecodes.

   By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar, clicking and dragging across multiple layouts, **Shift**-clicking adjacent layouts, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking individual layouts.
3. In the category list, click **Markers and Timecode**.
4. In the **Timecode** subsection, choose one of the following options for **Show timecode**:
   - **Above or below start of system**
   - **Below timecode staff**
5. Optional: If you chose **Above or below start of system**, choose one of the following options for **Timecode position relative to system**:
   - **Above system**
   - **Below system**
6. Optional: If you chose **Above or below start of system** and want to change the gap between timecodes and the staff, change the values in the **Offset at start of system** value fields.
7. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

The vertical position of timecodes is changed in the selected layouts.

NOTE

Your setting for **Timecode frequency on timecode staff** also applies when timecodes are shown above/below the start of systems.

RELATED LINKS

Changing the vertical position of markers on page 1100
Changing the timecode frequency on page 1105

Changing the timecode frequency

You can show timecodes at different intervals in layouts in which timecodes are shown on a separate staff. For example, you can show timecodes every bar in full score layouts but only at the start of each system in part layouts.

NOTE

We do not recommend that you show timecodes every bar in layouts with multi-bar rests, as the result is illegible overlapping timecodes. If you want to show timecodes in part layouts with multi-bar rests, we recommend either showing timecodes only at the start of each system or not showing multi-bar rests in the layout.

PREREQUISITE

Markers are shown in the selected layouts.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-L** to open **Layout Options**.

2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to change the timecode frequency.

   By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar, clicking and dragging across multiple layouts, **Shift**-clicking adjacent layouts, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking individual layouts.

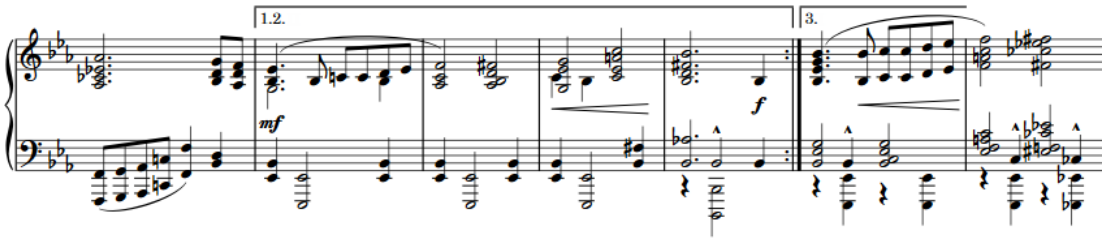
3. In the category list, click **Markers and Timecode**.
4. Optional: If the selected layouts do not show timecodes on a separate staff, choose **Timecode staff** for **Vertical position**.
5. Choose one of the following options for **Timecode frequency on timecode staff**:
   - **Start of system**
   - **Every bar**
   - **Never**
6. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RELATED LINKS
Hiding/Showing markers on page 1099
Hiding/Showing multi-bar rests on page 1152

Repeat endings

For music with repeated passages, repeat endings show which bars are played at the end of each repetition, with different endings each time if required. They are also known as “volta lines”, or as “first and second endings”, but in this documentation, we refer to them as “repeat endings”.

Repeat endings comprise two or more segments, where each segment contains a different possible ending. When you input repeat endings, Dorico Elements automatically inputs an end repeat barline at the end of the first segment. Segments in repeat endings are clearly marked with solid lines above and numbers that indicate the playthroughs in which the segment is used.



A repeat ending with three playthroughs divided across two endings

Dorico Elements allows you to create repeat endings containing any number of segments, and allows you to control which segments are used for each playthrough. For example, you might want a repeat ending with two segments but four total playthroughs, where the first two playthroughs use the first repeat ending segment and the final two playthroughs use the second repeat ending segment.

In Dorico Elements, repeat endings are categorized as system objects. Therefore, repeat endings follow your per-layout settings for the visibility and positioning of system objects.

RELATED LINKS

Input methods for repeats and tremolos on page 386
Layout Options dialog on page 677
System objects on page 1196
Repeats in playback on page 509
Changing the number of playthroughs at repeat barlines on page 510
Types of barlines on page 735
Lines on page 1075

Changing the total number of playthroughs in repeat endings

By default, each segment in repeat endings is played once, so each segment shows a single digit that indicates the playthrough for which it is used. You can increase the total number of playthroughs for repeat endings individually so that segments are played more than once.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the repeat endings whose total number of playthroughs you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **No. times played** in the **Repeat Endings** group.
3. Change the value in the value field.

   NOTE

   You cannot have fewer playthroughs than the number of segments.

RESULT

The total number of playthroughs in the selected repeat endings is changed. Dorico Elements adds additional playthroughs to the last closed segment in the repeat ending.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

Once you have set the total number of playthroughs, you can then change which segment is used for each playthrough.

RELATED LINKS

Repeats in playback on page 509
Changing the number of playthroughs at repeat barlines on page 510
Input methods for repeats and tremolos on page 386

Dividing playthroughs across repeat ending segments

You can control how the total number of playthroughs is divided across the different segments in individual repeat endings. For example, if in a repeat ending with six playthroughs, you want to include playthroughs 1 to 3 in the first ending and playthroughs 4 to 6 in the second ending.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select an individual segment in the repeat ending structure whose included playthroughs you want to change.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Times played for segment** in the **Repeat Endings** group.
3. Enter the number of each playthrough that you want to include in the selected segment, with each playthrough separated by a comma.

   For example, for a repeat ending with six playthroughs, enter **4,5,6** to include the 4th, 5th, and 6th playthroughs in the second segment.

RESULT

The playthroughs included in the selected segment are changed.

EXAMPLE

Default distribution of playthroughs

Customized distribution of playthroughs

Lengthening/Shortening segments in repeat endings

You can increase/decrease the number of bars included in each segment of repeat endings by lengthening/shortening each segment independently.

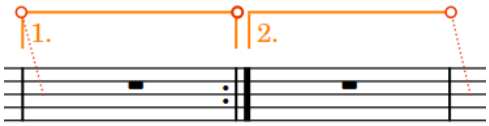
PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the repeat ending you want to lengthen/shorten.

   NOTE

   You can only lengthen/shorten one repeat ending segment at a time.

2. Select the circular handle at the end of the segment you want to lengthen/shorten.

   The selected handle in the middle has a thicker line.

3. Click and drag the handle to the right/left to snap it to the next/previous barline.

   NOTE

   Segments must contain at least one bar.

4. Optional: Repeat steps 1 to 3 for each segment in the repeat ending.

RESULT

The selected segment is lengthened/shortened.

NOTE

- This does not automatically input or move repeat barlines. You must input and delete repeat barlines as appropriate manually.
- You can also lengthen/shorten the final segment in a single repeat ending by selecting the repeat ending and using the following key commands:
  - To lengthen the final segment, press **Shift-Alt/Opt-Right Arrow**.
  - To shorten the final segment, press **Shift-Alt/Opt-Left Arrow**.

RELATED LINKS

Input methods for bars, beats, and barlines on page 287
Deleting notes/items on page 431

Moving items graphically on page 481

Positions of repeat endings

Repeat endings are placed above the staff at the same positions as other system objects, and their hooks align with barlines. They are commonly positioned outside of other notations, but some long items, such as gradual tempo changes, can be placed above repeat endings.

You can move repeat endings to different rhythmic positions in Write mode.

You can move each repeat ending segment graphically in Engrave mode and independently of other segments in the repeat ending; however, this does not change the rhythmic positions to which they are attached.

In Engrave mode, each repeat ending segment has two square handles, one at the start and one at the end.

If repeat ending segments cross system and frame breaks, you can move the segments on each side of the break independently.

Repeat endings are categorized as system objects in Dorico Elements, which you can show above the first bracket of selected instrument families. You can change the instrument families above which system objects appear in each layout independently; for example, if you want repeat endings to appear at multiple vertical positions in each system in the full score only.

RELATED LINKS
Moving notes/items rhythmically on page 437
Moving items graphically on page 481
System objects on page 1196
Input methods for repeats and tremolos on page 386

Editing repeat ending text

You can replace the text shown in individual segments in repeat endings with custom text. By default, it shows the playthrough numbers for the segment.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the repeat ending segments whose text you want to change.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Custom text** in the **Repeat Endings** group.
3. Enter the text you want into the value field.
4. Press **Return**.

RESULT

The text shown in the selected segments is changed.

Deactivating **Custom text** restores the default text for the selected repeat ending segments.

NOTE

Deactivating properties permanently deletes any custom text entered.

RELATED LINKS
Changing the total number of playthroughs in repeat endings on page 1107
Dividing playthroughs across repeat ending segments on page 1108

Changing the appearance of individual final repeat ending segments

You can change the appearance of the line ends in the final segments of individual repeat endings.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the repeat endings whose final segment appearance you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.

   NOTE

   In Engrave mode, you can select any segment in the repeat ending.

2. In the Properties panel, activate **End of line** in the **Repeat Endings** group.
3. Select one of the following options from the menu:
   - **Open, short**
   - **Open, full length**
   - **Closed**

RESULT
The end of the line of the final segment in the selected repeat endings is changed.

Lengthening/Shortening repeat ending hooks

You can lengthen/shorten the hooks in repeat endings individually. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

NOTE

You cannot change the hook length of an individual segment in a repeat ending. Changing the hook length affects the whole repeat ending.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the repeat endings whose hooks you want to lengthen/shorten.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Hook length** in the **Repeat Endings** group.
3. Change the value in the value field.

RESULT

Increasing the value makes repeat ending hooks longer. Decreasing the value makes repeat ending hooks shorter. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

RELATED LINKS

Changing the property scope on page 617
Copying property settings to other layouts/frame chains on page 599

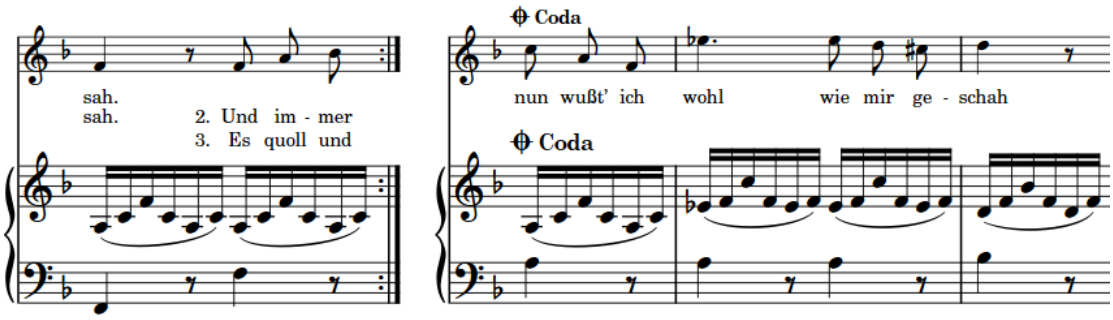
Repeat endings in MusicXML files

All aspects of repeat endings can be imported from and exported in MusicXML files.

However, while MusicXML can represent this, segments in the middle of sets of endings cannot have an open right-hand end in Dorico Elements.

Repeat markers

Repeat markers show that musical material is to be repeated, but unlike repeat endings, repeat markers often involve jumping to different positions and sections in the music instead of moving through the music consecutively.



A mid-system coda section

In Dorico Elements, repeat markers are divided into the following types:

Repeat jumps

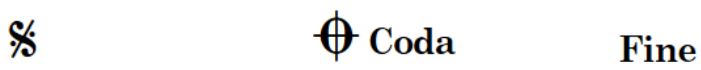
Specify the position from which players or playback must jump, such as *D.C. al Coda* or *D.S. al Fine*.

Repeat jumps are right-aligned with their rhythmic position, meaning their text or symbol ends at that rhythmic position and extends to the left.

Repeat sections

Specify the destinations for jumps, such as *segno* or *coda*, or where the music should end, such as *Fine*. In Dorico Elements, coda sections that start mid-system are automatically separated from the preceding music with a gap. Coda sections at the start of systems are indented by the same amount.

Repeat markers are left-aligned with their rhythmic position, meaning their text or symbol starts at that rhythmic position and extends to the right.



By default, repeat markers are shown on a single line, but you can show them on two lines individually to reduce their horizontal length if necessary.

RELATED LINKS

Input methods for repeats and tremolos on page 386
Showing repeat markers on one/two lines on page 1115
Hiding/Showing repeat markers on page 1116
Changing the index for repeat markers on page 1114
Repeats in playback on page 509

Repeat counts on page 1118
Types of barlines on page 735

Changing the index for repeat markers

You can change the index of individual repeat markers; for example, if a flow requires two different codas with different symbols so players can tell them apart.

By default, all repeat markers of the same type have the same appearance, even when there are multiple repeat markers in the flow.

NOTE

You cannot change the index of *Fine* or *D.C.* repeat markers.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the repeat marker whose index you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate the following properties, individually or together as appropriate for your selection, in the **Repeat Markers** group:
   - **Marker index**
   - **'Jump to' index**
3. Change the values in the value fields.

   NOTE

   You can only enter values between 1 and 3.

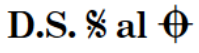
RESULT

Marker index changes the order of the selected repeat marker relative to other repeat markers of the same type.

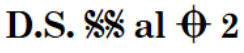
'Jump to' index changes the destination of the selected repeat marker.

EXAMPLE

If you have two codas in a flow with two different D.S. al Coda markers, you might set **Marker index** to **1** for the first coda and **2** for the second, then set **'Jump to' index** to **1** for the first D.S. al Coda marker and **2** for the second.



D.S. al Coda marker with default indexes



D.S. al Coda marker with both indexes set to 2

RELATED LINKS

Repeats in playback on page 509
Input methods for repeats and tremolos on page 386

Editing repeat marker text

You can change the text shown in individual repeat markers; for example, if you are typesetting a score with an unusual repeat marker instruction.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the repeat markers whose text you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Custom text** in the **Repeat Markers** group.
3. Enter the text you want into the value field.
4. Press **Return**.

RESULT

The text shown in the selected repeat markers is changed. Segno symbols and coda symbols in *D.C./D.S.* repeat jumps are removed and replaced with your custom text.

Showing repeat markers on one/two lines

You can show individual repeat markers either on a single line or spread across two lines, independently of your per-layout settings; for example, if a single long repeat marker extends beyond the page margins in one part layout. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

NOTE

You can only change the word wrapping of repeat jumps, such as *D.C. al Fine* and *D.S. al Coda*, that do not have custom text.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the repeat markers whose word wrapping you want to change.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Word wrap** in the **Repeat Markers** group.
3. Activate/Deactivate the corresponding checkbox.

RESULT

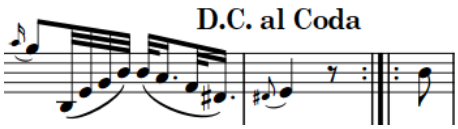
The selected repeat markers are shown on two lines when the checkbox is activated, and on one line when the checkbox is deactivated. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

When the property is deactivated, repeat markers follow your per-layout setting for word wrapping.

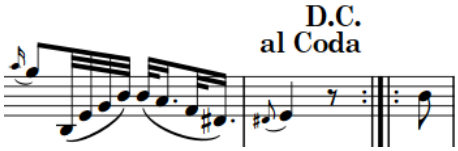
TIP

You can show all repeat markers on two lines in each layout independently in **Layout Options** > **Staves and Systems** > **Repeat Markers**. For example, you can show them on one line in the full score but on two lines in part layouts.

EXAMPLE



Repeat marker without word wrapping



Repeat marker with word wrapping

RELATED LINKS
Layout Options dialog on page 677
Changing the property scope on page 617
Copying property settings to other layouts/frame chains on page 599

Hiding/Showing repeat markers

You can hide/show repeat markers individually; for example, if you want a separated coda section without showing the coda symbol and text.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the repeat markers you want to hide, or the signposts of repeat markers you want to show. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate/deactivate **Hide** in the **Repeat Markers** group.

RESULT

The selected repeat markers are hidden when **Hide** is activated, and shown when it is deactivated.

Signposts are shown at the position of each hidden repeat marker. However, signposts are not printed by default.

TIP

You can hide/show repeat marker signposts by choosing **View** > **Signposts** > **Repeat Markers**.

RELATED LINKS
Signposts on page 426

Hiding/Showing zones on page 44
Annotations on page 554
Input methods for repeats and tremolos on page 386

Positions of repeat markers

Repeat markers are placed above the staff by default, and at the same positions as other system objects. Coda sections are separated from the preceding music by a gap in the system.

You can move repeat markers to different rhythmic positions in Write mode.

You can move repeat markers graphically in Engrave mode, but this does not change the rhythmic positions to which they are attached.

You can change the default staff-relative placement of repeat markers in each layout independently in the **Repeat Markers** section of the **Staves and Systems** page in **Layout Options**.

Repeat markers are categorized as system objects in Dorico Elements, which you can show above the first bracket of selected instrument families. You can change the instrument families above which system objects appear in each layout independently; for example, if you want repeat markers to appear at multiple vertical positions in each system in the full score only.

RELATED LINKS
Input methods for repeats and tremolos on page 386
Layout Options dialog on page 677
Changing the positions of system objects on page 1197
Changing the staff-relative placement of repeat markers on page 1117
Moving notes/items rhythmically on page 437
Moving items graphically on page 481
Repeats in playback on page 509

Changing the staff-relative placement of repeat markers

You can show repeat markers either above, below, or both above and below the staff in each layout independently.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-L** to open **Layout Options**.
2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to change the staff-placement of repeat markers.

   By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar, clicking and dragging across multiple layouts, **Shift**-clicking adjacent layouts, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking individual layouts.
3. In the category list, click **Staves and Systems**.
4. In the **Repeat Markers** section, choose one of the following options for **Default placement for repeat jumps and 'Fine'**:
   - **Above staff**
   - **Below staff**
   - **Above and below bottom staff**

5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

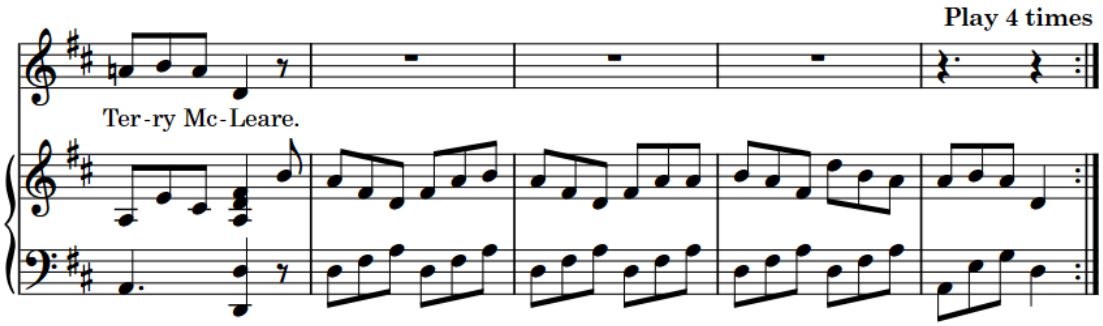
RESULT

The staff-relative placement of all repeat markers is changed in the selected layouts.

Repeat counts

Repeat counts at end repeat barlines tell performers how many times to play through sections of music. This is particularly helpful for sections played through three or more times, as end repeat barlines typically indicate that the preceding music is played through twice.

By default, Dorico Elements shows repeat counts at system object positions for end repeat barlines set to have three or more playthroughs, when repeats are included in playback.



Repeat count at the end of a section, indicating it should be played four times

Repeat counts are right-aligned with their end repeat barline by default. You can change the location of repeat counts; for example, if you want to show repeat counts at both the start and end of repeated sections, or hide repeat counts entirely. Repeat counts shown at the start of repeated sections are left-aligned with start repeat barlines.

RELATED LINKS

Changing the number of playthroughs at repeat barlines on page 510
Repeats in playback on page 509
Input methods for bars, beats, and barlines on page 287
System objects on page 1196
Changing the application language on page 56
Bar repeat counts on page 1122
Slash region counts on page 1138
Numbered bar region counts on page 1128

Changing the location of repeat counts

You can change the location of individual repeat counts relative to the repeated section. For example, if you want to show some repeat counts at the start of repeated sections or hide some repeat counts entirely. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- Repeats are included in playback.
- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

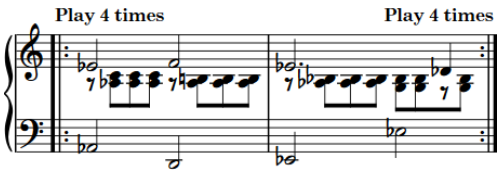
1. Select the end repeat barlines or repeat counts whose count location you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Count location** in the **Time Signatures** group.
3. Select one of the following options from the menu:
   - **Start**
   - **End**
   - **Neither**
   - **Both**

RESULT

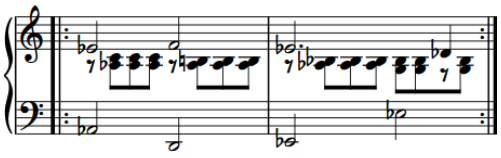
The location of the selected repeat counts is changed. Repeat counts shown at the start of repeated sections are left-aligned with the start repeat barlines that correspond to the selected end repeat barlines.

If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

EXAMPLE



Both



Neither

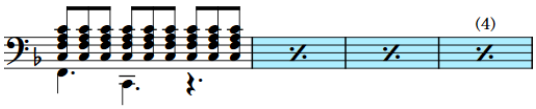
RELATED LINKS

Repeats in playback on page 509
Hiding/Showing zones on page 44
Changing the property scope on page 617
Copying property settings to other layouts/frame chains on page 599
Moving items graphically on page 481

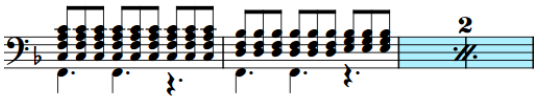
Bar repeats

Bar repeats indicate that the musical material in preceding bars must be repeated exactly, but without notating that material again. Bar repeats can comprise groups of one, two, or four bars.

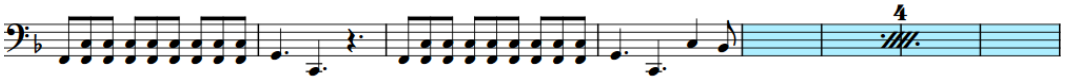
For example, a one-bar repeat indicates that the material in one bar is repeated, meaning every bar in the region repeats the same material. A four-bar repeat indicates that the material in the previous four bars is repeated.



One-bar repeat region



Two-bar repeat region

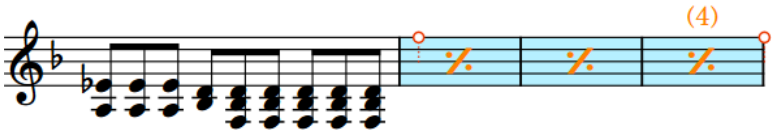


Four-bar repeat region

This notation short-hand can make repetitive music easier to read, as performers must only read the repeated phrase once and then simply count how many times they repeat it. Bar repeats can also save horizontal space, as bar repeat symbols are usually narrower than the equivalent fully written-out bars.

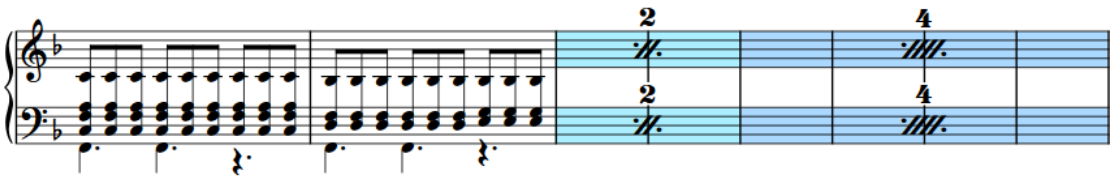
In Dorico Elements, bar repeat regions are used to display bar repeats, meaning as many bar repeat symbols as necessary to fill the region are shown automatically.

In Write mode, each region has a handle at the start and end, which you can use to move and lengthen/shorten regions.



By default, bar repeat regions are highlighted with a colored background. As you zoom out, the highlights become more opaque, which is especially useful when viewing full score layouts in galley view. These highlights are considered annotations, are not printed by default, and you can hide/show them.

You can also show adjacent bar repeat regions; for example, if you want to use a two-bar repeat in the first iteration of a phrase, and then a four-bar repeat to indicate the whole phrase is repeated. When two different bar repeat regions are adjacent, they alternate highlight colors to ensure the separate regions are always identifiable.



Phrase containing two adjacent bar repeat regions

RELATED LINKS
Inputting bar repeats on page 399
Repeats popover on page 387
Bar repeat counts on page 1122
Bar repeat grouping on page 1125
Numbered bar regions on page 1127
Slash regions on page 1132
Repeat counts on page 1118
Moving notes/items rhythmically on page 437
Lengthening/Shortening items on page 410
Hiding/Showing multi-bar rests on page 1152
Types of barlines on page 735
Changing the number of playthroughs at repeat barlines on page 510
Annotations on page 554

Changing the length of the repeated phrase in bar repeat regions

You can change the number of bars that make up the repeated phrase in individual bar repeats after you have input them; for example, if you want the region to repeat the previous two bars rather than the previous four bars.

NOTE

You cannot repeat more bars than exist before the bar repeat region. For example, if a bar repeat region follows the first notated bar in a flow, you cannot increase the number of bars in the repeated phrase.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the bar repeat regions whose phrase length you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, select one of the following options from the **No. bars** menu in the **Bar Repeat Regions** group:
   - **One bar**
   - **Two bars**
   - **Four bars**

RESULT

The number of bars that make up the repeated phrase in the selected bar repeat regions is changed. This is also reflected in playback.

TIP

- Any dynamics you add within bar repeat regions affect the playback of the repeated music.
- You can also change the length of the repeated phrase by opening the repeats popover and changing the entry.

RELATED LINKS
Bar repeat grouping on page 1125
Inputting bar repeats on page 399
Repeats popover on page 387
Changing existing items on page 412

Hiding/Showing region highlights

You can hide/show colored highlights for bar repeat and numbered bar regions at any time; for example, if you want to show the highlights when inputting music but hide them when engraving.

PROCEDURE

- Choose **View** > **Highlight Bar Repeat Regions**.

RELATED LINKS
Numbered bar regions on page 1127

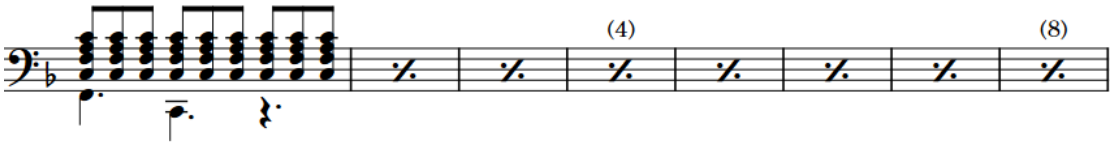
Bar repeat counts

Bar repeat counts are numbers shown at regular intervals either above or below bar repeats, to help performers keep track of how many bars have passed. The intervals are usually based on typical musical phrases, such as every four or eight bars.

NOTE

Bar repeat counts are only shown on one-bar repeat regions.

Because bar repeats must start with a fully notated phrase of at least one bar, the bar repeat count starts from the notated bar rather than the first bar in the bar repeat region. For example, the third bar in a bar repeat region shows the count number 4, as that bar is the fourth time the original notated bar is played. Each bar repeat region has its own separate count.



Bar repeat region with counts shown every four bars

In Dorico Elements, you can change the start count of each bar repeat region, how frequently counts are shown, and whether counts are shown with parentheses, without parentheses, or hidden.

RELATED LINKS
Repeats popover on page 387
Inputting bar repeats on page 399
Bar repeat grouping on page 1125
Hiding/Showing bar number ranges on multi-bar rests on page 744
Hiding/Showing multi-bar rests on page 1152
Repeat counts on page 1118
Slash region counts on page 1138
Numbered bar region counts on page 1128

Changing the start count of bar repeats

You can change the number from which individual bar repeats start; for example, if you want to notate the first bar in a repeated phrase at the start of each system, but show a continuous count across multiple bar repeats.

NOTE

- The start count applies to the first bar in the bar repeat, which is the notated bar. For example, changing the start count of a one-bar repeat region lasting three bars to **5**, with bar repeat counts shown every four bars, causes the count at the end of the bar repeat region to show the number 8.
- Bar repeat counts are only shown on one-bar repeat regions.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

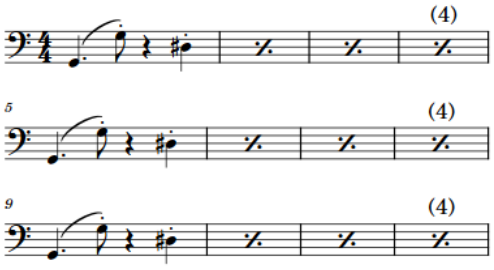
PROCEDURE

1. Select the one-bar repeat regions whose start count you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Count from** in the **Bar Repeat Regions** group.
3. Change the value in the value field.

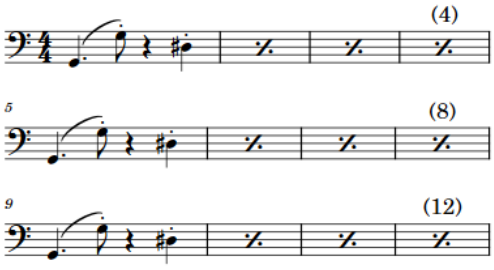
RESULT

The start count of the selected bar repeat regions is changed. If the count frequency is every two bars or more, counts appear on different bars. For example, changing the start count from 1 to 2, with counts shown every four bars, causes the count to appear on the second bar in the bar repeat region instead of the third.

EXAMPLE



Separate bar repeats on multiple systems in the same part layout with the default count



Separate bar repeats on multiple systems in the same part layout with their counts changed to imply a continuous region

Changing the bar repeat count frequency

You can change how often counts are shown on individual one-bar repeat regions; for example, if you want to show the count after eight bars on a single bar repeat region.

NOTE

Bar repeat counts are only shown on one-bar repeat regions.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the one-bar repeats whose count frequency you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Count frequency** in the **Bar Repeat Regions** group.
3. Change the value in the value field.

RESULT

The count frequency is changed for the selected bar repeat regions.

RELATED LINKS

Bar repeat counts on page 1122
Hiding/Showing bar number ranges on multi-bar rests on page 744

Hiding/Showing or parenthesizing bar repeat counts

You can hide counts or show counts with or without parentheses for individual bar repeat regions. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

NOTE

Bar repeat counts are only shown on one-bar repeat regions.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the one-bar repeats whose counts you want to hide/show or parenthesize. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Count appearance** in the **Bar Repeat Regions** group.
3. Select one of the following options from the menu:
   - **With parentheses**
   - **Without parentheses**
   - **Do not show**

RESULT

Counts in the selected bar repeat regions are shown with parentheses, without parentheses, or hidden. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

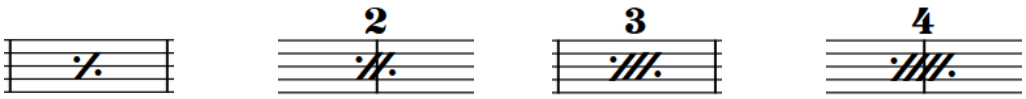
RELATED LINKS

Changing the property scope on page 617
Copying property settings to other layouts/frame chains on page 599

Bar repeat grouping

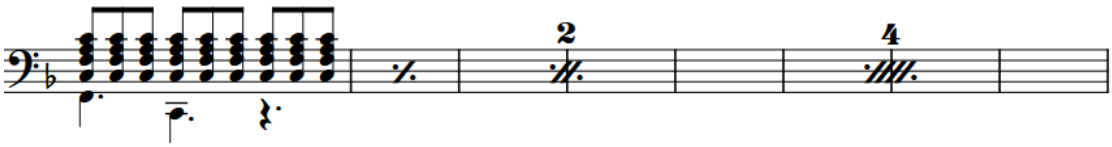
Bar repeat grouping allows you to consolidate longer bar repeat regions, which can be helpful in very regular music as it can simplify the overall phrasing.

The symbols shown on the staff are different for the different groupings, and two-bar and four-bar repeats also show a number to indicate how many bars are included in the group.



One-bar repeat symbol | Two-bar repeat symbol | Three-bar repeat symbol | Four-bar repeat symbol

You can specify the grouping when inputting bar repeats, and you can change the grouping of bar repeats after they have been input. Depending on where the bar repeat region starts and ends relative to the written material, Dorico Elements automatically adjusts the displayed symbols to achieve an accurate result. For example, an eight-bar phrase containing a single notated bar followed by seven one-bar repeats grouped every four bars is automatically shown with a one-bar repeat, two-bar repeat, then four-bar repeat to fill the seven bars.



Eight-bar phrase with seven one-bar repeats grouped every four bars

TIP

When showing multi-bar rests, you can also choose to consolidate one-bar repeat regions.

RELATED LINKS

Repeats popover on page 387
Inputting bar repeats on page 399
Hiding/Showing multi-bar rests on page 1152

Changing bar repeat grouping

You can change how bar repeats are grouped after they have been input; for example, if you want to group a region of one-bar repeats every two bars.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.

- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the bar repeat regions whose grouping you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, select one of the following options from the **Group every** menu in the **Bar Repeat Regions** group:
   - **One bar**
   - **Two bars**
   - **Four bars**

   NOTE

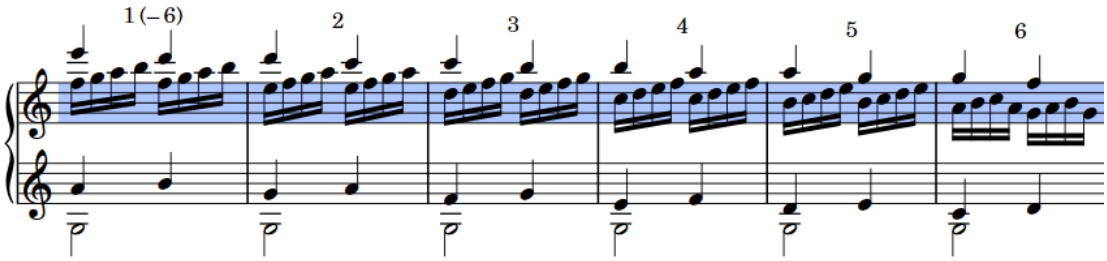
   The options available depend on the minimum length of the selected bar repeat regions. For example, if you select bar repeat regions that last three bars, only **One bar** and **Two bars** are available in the menu.

RESULT

The grouping in the selected bar repeat regions is changed. Dorico Elements automatically calculates the clearest way to group the region. For example, an eight-bar phrase containing a single notated bar followed by seven one-bar repeats grouped every four bars is automatically shown with a one-bar repeat, two-bar repeat, then four-bar repeat to fill the seven bars.

Numbered bar regions

Numbered bar regions allow you to show bar counts in specific regions without additional notations. This can help performers keep track of how many bars have passed when playing repetitive music.



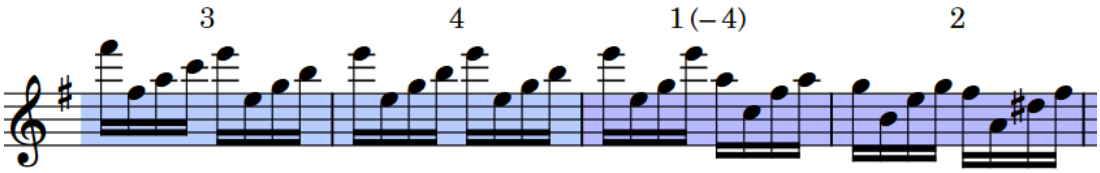
Numbered bar region spanning six bars

By default, numbered bar regions are hidden in full score/custom score layouts and shown in part layouts. You can hide/show numbered bar regions in each layout independently.

In Write mode, each region has a handle at the start and end, which you can use to move and lengthen/shorten regions.

By default, numbered bar regions are highlighted with a colored background. As you zoom out, the highlights become more opaque, which is especially useful when viewing full score layouts in galley view. These highlights are considered annotations, are not printed by default, and you can hide/show them.

When two different numbered bar regions are adjacent, they alternate highlight colors to ensure the separate regions are always identifiable.



Phrase containing two adjacent numbered bar regions

RELATED LINKS

Inputting numbered bar regions on page 400
Hiding/Showing region highlights on page 1122
Lengthening/Shortening items on page 410
Bar repeats on page 1120
Slash regions on page 1132
Repeat counts on page 1118
Bar numbers on page 742

Hiding/Showing numbered bar regions

You can input numbered bar regions in any layout, but by default they do not appear in full score layouts, as they are normally most useful in part layouts. You can hide/show numbered bar regions in each layout independently.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-L** to open **Layout Options**.
2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to hide/show numbered bar regions.

   By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar, clicking and dragging across multiple layouts, **Shift**-clicking adjacent layouts, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking individual layouts.
3. In the category list, click **Players**.
4. In the **Numbered Bar Regions** section, activate/deactivate **Show bar count in numbered bar regions**.
5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

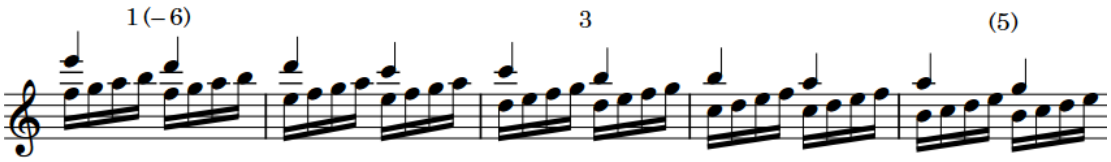
Numbered bar regions are shown in the selected layouts when the checkbox is activated, and hidden when the checkbox is deactivated.

Numbered bar region counts

Numbered bar region counts are numbers shown at regular intervals either above or below the staff, to help performers keep track of how many bars have passed.

By default, bar counts are shown on every bar in numbered bar regions. They are also shown on the last bar in each system and on the first and last bars in each region, regardless of the count frequency.

When numbered bar regions last four or more bars, Dorico Elements adds the total range in parentheses to the count on the first bar, such as showing “1 (-8)” on the first bar in a numbered bar region lasting eight bars.



Numbered bar region with counts shown every three bars, count and range shown at the start, and parenthesized count shown at the end of the system

In Dorico Elements, you can change the start count of each numbered bar region, how frequently counts are shown, their staff-relative placement, and whether counts and ranges are shown with parentheses, without parentheses, or hidden.

RELATED LINKS

Inputting numbered bar regions on page 400
Repeat counts on page 1118
Bar repeat counts on page 1122
Slash region counts on page 1138

Changing the start count of numbered bar regions

You can change the number from which individual numbered bar regions start; for example, if you want to show a continuous count across multiple numbered bar regions.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the numbered bar regions whose start count you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Count from** in the **Bar Repeat Regions** group.
3. Change the value in the value field.

RESULT

The start count of the selected numbered bar regions is changed. If the count frequency is every two bars or more, counts appear on different bars. For example, changing the start count from 1 to 2, with counts shown every four bars, causes the count to appear on the third bar in the region instead of the fourth.

Changing the numbered bar region count frequency

You can change how frequently counts are shown in individual numbered bar regions; for example, if you want to show the count after eight bars in a single numbered bar region.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the numbered bar regions whose count frequency you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Count frequency** in the **Bar Repeat Regions** group.
3. Change the value in the value field.

RESULT

The count frequency is changed for the selected numbered bar regions.

RELATED LINKS

Hiding/Showing bar number ranges on multi-bar rests on page 744

Hiding/Showing or parenthesizing numbered bar region counts

You can show counts with or without parentheses for individual numbered bar regions. You can also hide/show or parenthesize counts at the ends of systems and on the first and last bars in each region independently of each other. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

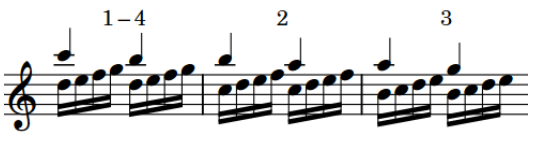
PROCEDURE

1. Select the numbered bar regions whose counts you want to hide/show or parenthesize. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Count appearance** in the **Bar Repeat Regions** group.
3. Select one of the following options from the menu:
   - **Without parentheses**
   - **With parentheses**
4. Activate **Range appearance** and select one of the following options from the menu:
   - **With parentheses**
   - **Without parentheses**
   - **No range**
5. Activate the following properties, individually or together, to change the appearance of the corresponding count:
   - **Show in first bar**
   - **Show in final bar**
   - **Show at ends of systems**
6. Select one of the following options from each menu:
   - **With parentheses**
   - **Without parentheses**
   - **Do not show**

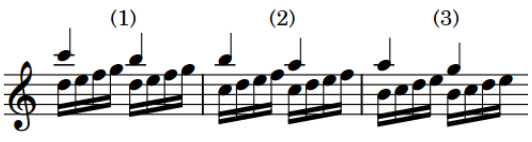
RESULT

The corresponding counts and ranges in the selected numbered bar regions are shown with parentheses, without parentheses, or hidden. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

EXAMPLE



Counts and range shown without parentheses



Range hidden and counts shown with parentheses

RELATED LINKS

Numbered bar region counts on page 1128
Inputting numbered bar regions on page 400
Changing the property scope on page 617
Copying property settings to other layouts/frame chains on page 599

Changing the staff-relative placement of numbered bar region counts

You can show the counts in individual numbered bar regions either above or below the staff. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

NOTE

Changing the staff-relative placement of counts affects all counts in the region. You cannot change the placement of a single count independently of other counts in the region.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the numbered bar regions whose count staff-relative placement you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Staff-relative position** in the **Bar Repeat Regions** group.
3. Choose one of the following options:
   - **Above**
   - **Below**

RESULT

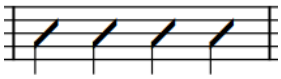
The staff-relative placement of all counts in the selected numbered bar regions is changed. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

Rhythm slashes

Rhythm slashes are diagonal lines positioned on staves that are used to indicate that performers should play something, but without specifying the exact rhythms and pitches. They are often accompanied by chord symbols to indicate the set of notes the performer should use.

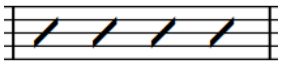
There are two different types of rhythm slashes:

Slashes with stems



Slashes with stems usually indicate the rhythm to be played, but not the pitches. Also known as “rhythmic notation”.

Slashes without stems



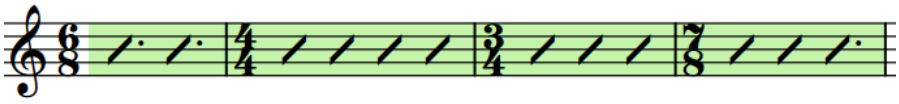
Slashes without stems do not usually indicate either rhythms or pitches. Also known as “slash notation”

In Dorico Elements, you can present both types of rhythm slashes simultaneously by using a combination of slash regions and slash voices.

RELATED LINKS
Slash voices on page 1141
Inputting notes into slash voices on page 223
Chord symbols on page 782
Hiding/Showing chord symbols on page 789

Slash regions

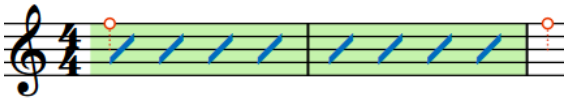
Slash regions automatically display rhythm slashes as appropriate for the meter throughout their duration; for example, they show four slashes per bar in 4/4 and two slashes per bar in 6/8 by default. A single slash region can extend across multiple different meters.



A single slash region covering multiple different meters

Multiple slash regions can exist at the same rhythmic position. When slash regions overlap, Dorico Elements treats this as a multiple-voice context and changes the staff position of slashes automatically.

In Write mode, each region has a handle at the start and end, which you can use to move and lengthen/shorten regions.



By default, slash regions are highlighted with a colored background. As you zoom out, the highlights become more opaque, which is especially useful when viewing full score layouts in galley view. These highlights are considered annotations, are not printed by default, and you can hide/show them.

When two different slash regions are adjacent, they alternate highlight colors to ensure the separate regions are always identifiable.

Two adjacent slash regions with different highlight colors

You can use slash regions and slash voices in the same project and at the same rhythmic positions; for example, you can input a slash region where you do not want to be specific about the rhythm, then input notes in a slash voice for a single bar where you want to specify an exact rhythm.

TIP

Because rhythm slashes are often accompanied by chord symbols to indicate the set of notes the performer should use, you can hide/show chord symbols in slash/chord symbol regions on instrument staves where chord symbols are hidden.

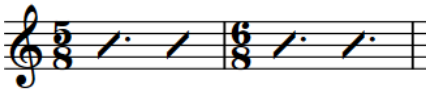
RELATED LINKS
Inputting slash regions on page 398
Slash voices on page 1141
Slash region counts on page 1138
Slashes in multiple-voice contexts on page 1134
Moving notes/items rhythmically on page 437
Lengthening/Shortening items on page 410
Hiding/Showing notes alongside slash regions on page 1136
Hiding/Showing chord symbols on page 789
Chord symbol regions on page 793
Numbered bar regions on page 1127
Bar repeats on page 1120
Repeat counts on page 1118
Annotations on page 554

Note grouping in slash regions

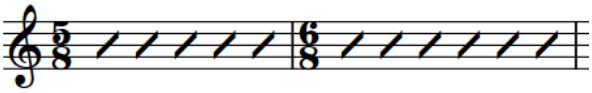
You can find options to control the grouping and duration of rhythm slashes in slash regions in each flow independently in **Notation Options** > **Note Grouping** > **Rhythmic Slashes**.

The available options include changing whether rhythm slashes follow the beat grouping or the time signature denominator, and set the duration for rhythm slashes in open meter. For example, you can show six slashes in 6/8 instead of two dotted slashes.

Musical examples demonstrate how each option affects the appearance of your music.



Rhythm slashes following beat grouping



Rhythm slashes following time signature denominator

RELATED LINKS
Notation Options dialog on page 679
Note and rest grouping on page 774
Time signatures on page 1249

Hiding/Showing slash region highlights

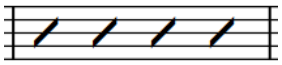
You can hide/show the colored highlights for slash regions at any time; for example, if you want to show the highlights when inputting music but hide them when engraving.

PROCEDURE

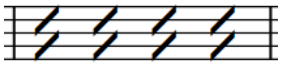
- Choose **View** > **Highlight Slash Regions**.

Slashes in multiple-voice contexts

Multiple slash regions and slash voices can exist at the same rhythmic positions. In multiple-voice contexts for slash voices and when slash regions overlap, Dorico Elements automatically changes their staff position and offset to accommodate all slashes as legibly as possible.



Single slash region



Two slash regions, one up-stem and one down-stem

You can set default per-flow settings for the position and offset of slashes relative to other slashes at the same rhythmic positions on the **Voices** page in **Notation Options**.

NOTE

These options affect all rhythm slashes, including notes in slash voices as well as slash regions.

You can also control the positions of rhythm slashes relative to each other manually by changing their stem/voice direction and by changing their staff position.

RELATED LINKS
Notation Options dialog on page 679
Note positions in multiple-voice contexts on page 1306
Changing the voice of existing notes on page 442

Changing the voice direction of slash regions

You can change the voice direction of slash regions individually. When multiple slash regions overlap, this affects their stem directions.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

PROCEDURE

1. Select any part of each slash region whose voice direction you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Voice direction** in the **Slash Regions** group.
3. Choose one of the following options:
   - **Up**
   - **Down**

RESULT

The voice direction, and therefore stem direction, of the selected slash regions is changed.

NOTE

This only affects the direction of stems in slash regions on the middle line of the staff and when multiple slash regions exist at the same rhythmic position. For example, if you change the voice direction of a slash region on the bottom line of the staff to **Down**, its stem direction does not change if it does not overlap with another slash region.

RELATED LINKS

Stem direction on page 961

Changing the staff position of rhythm slashes

You can change the staff position of rhythm slashes in both slash voices and slash regions; for example, to accommodate other notes at the same rhythmic positions better. By default, rhythm slashes are positioned on the middle line of the staff.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the rhythm slashes whose staff position you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
   - For notes in slash voices, you must select every note whose staff position you want to change.
   - For slash regions, you can select any part of each region whose staff position you want to change.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Slash pos.** in the corresponding group for the type of rhythm slash whose staff position you want to change:

- **Notes and Rests** for notes in slash voices
- **Slash Regions** for slash regions

3. Change the value in the value field.

RESULT

The staff position of the selected rhythm slashes is changed. For example, changing the **Slash pos.** value to **4** positions rhythm slashes on the top line of a five-line staff, while **-4** positions them on the bottom line.

If any of the rhythm slashes have stems, their stem direction is adjusted automatically.

Hiding/Showing notes alongside slash regions

You can hide/show notes at the same rhythmic positions as slash regions; for example, if you want to input notes to hear in playback but only want to show the slash region, or if you want to notate suggested notes in addition to the slash region.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

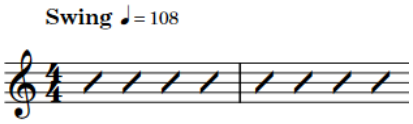
PROCEDURE

1. Select any part of each slash region alongside which you want to hide/show other notes. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate/deactivate **Show other voices** in the **Slash Regions** group.

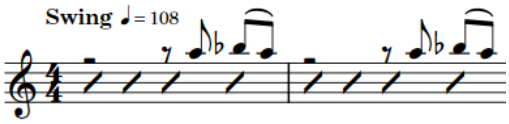
RESULT

All notes in other voices present alongside the selected slash regions are shown when **Show other voices** is activated, and hidden when it is deactivated.

EXAMPLE



Notes hidden alongside a slash region



Notes shown alongside a slash region

RELATED LINKS

Slash regions on page 1132
Slash voices on page 1141
Hiding/Showing slash region highlights on page 1134
Inputting slash regions on page 398

Hiding/Showing padding rests before/after slash regions

You can hide/show padding rests before/after slash regions that start partway through bars individually; for example, if you have other notes at those positions and the rests would be

misleading. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

By default, Dorico Elements automatically shows implicit padding rests around slash regions that start/end partway through bars, so that the full duration of each bar is clear.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select any part of each slash region whose padding rests you want to hide/show. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate the following properties, individually or together, in the **Slash Regions** group:
   - **Hide rests before start**
   - **Hide rests after end**

RESULT

Padding rests are hidden on the corresponding side of the selected slash regions. For example, activating both properties hides padding rests both before and after the selected slash regions. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

RELATED LINKS

Implicit vs. explicit rests on page 1145
Changing the property scope on page 617
Copying property settings to other layouts/frame chains on page 599

Splitting slash regions

You can split slash regions after they have been input; for example, if you later want to input more precise notation in the middle of an existing slash region.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select a slash in each slash region you want to split, immediately to the right of where you want to split them.
2. Split the slash regions in any of the following ways:
   - Press **U**.
   - In the Notes toolbox, click **Scissors** .

RESULT

The slash regions are split immediately to the left of the selected slashes. Each part now has its own start/end handles, which you can use to lengthen/shorten each part independently.

RELATED LINKS

Notes toolbox on page 187
Slash regions on page 1132

Changing the slash region count frequency on page 1139
Lengthening/Shortening items on page 410
Moving notes/items rhythmically on page 437

Hiding/Showing stems in slash regions

You can hide/show stems and beams, where applicable, on slashes in individual slash regions. By default, slashes in slash regions are shown without stems.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

PROCEDURE

1. Select any part of each slash region in which you want to hide/show stems. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Slash type** in the **Slash Regions** group.
3. Choose one of the following options:
   - **With stems**
   - **Without stems**

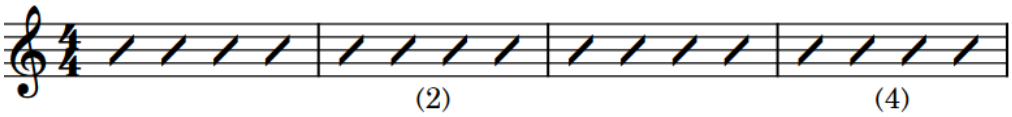
RESULT

Stems are hidden in the selected slash regions when you choose **Without stems**, and shown when you choose **With stems**. If appropriate for the prevailing meter, such as 3/8, beams are shown in addition to stems.

Slash region counts

Slash region counts are numbers shown at regular intervals, either above or below slash regions, to help performers keep track of how many bars have passed. The intervals are usually based on typical musical phrases, such as every four or eight bars.

By default, slash region counts are shown in parentheses every four bars and are placed below the staff. Each slash region has its own separate count.



Slash region with counts shown every two bars

In Dorico Elements, you can change the start count of each slash region, how frequently counts are shown, their staff-relative placement, and whether counts are shown with parentheses, without parentheses, or hidden.

RELATED LINKS

Slash regions on page 1132
Repeat counts on page 1118
Bar repeat counts on page 1122
Numbered bar region counts on page 1128

Changing the start count of slash regions

You can change the number from which individual slash region counts start; for example, if you want to input more precise notation between two slash regions but want the count to appear to continue across the regions.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

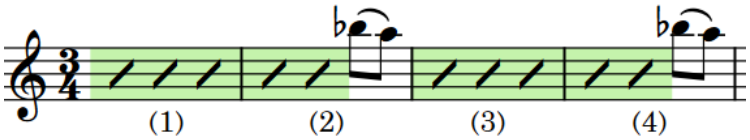
PROCEDURE

1. Select any part of each slash region whose start count you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Count from** in the **Slash Regions** group.
3. Change the value in the value field.

RESULT

The start count of the selected slash regions is changed. If the count frequency is every two bars or more, counts appear on different bars. For example, changing the start count from 1 to 2, with counts shown every four bars, causes the count to appear on the third bar in the region instead of the fourth.

EXAMPLE



Two separate slash regions, where the start count in the second region has been changed so it appears to continue on from the first region.

Changing the slash region count frequency

You can change how frequently counts are shown on individual slash regions; for example, if you want to show the count after eight bars on a single slash region. By default, slash region counts are shown every four bars.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

PROCEDURE

1. Select any part of each slash region whose count frequency you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Count frequency** in the **Slash Regions** group.
3. Change the value in the value field.

RESULT

The count frequency is changed for the selected slash regions.

RELATED LINKS
Splitting slash regions on page 1137
Hiding/Showing bar number ranges on multi-bar rests on page 744

Hiding/Showing or parenthesizing slash region counts

You can hide counts or show counts with or without parentheses for individual slash regions. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select any part of each slash region whose counts you want to hide/show or parenthesize. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Count appearance** in the **Slash Regions** group.
3. Select one of the following options from the menu:
   - **With parentheses**
   - **Without parentheses**
   - **Do not show**

RESULT

Counts in the selected slash regions are shown with parentheses, without parentheses, or hidden. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

RELATED LINKS
Changing the property scope on page 617
Copying property settings to other layouts/frame chains on page 599

Changing the staff-relative placement of slash region counts

You can show the counts in individual slash regions either above or below the staff. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

NOTE

Changing the staff-relative placement of counts affects all counts in the region. You cannot change the placement of a single count independently of other counts in the region.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select any part of each slash region whose count staff-relative placement you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Count position** in the **Slash Regions** group.
3. Choose one of the following options:
   - **Above**
   - **Below**

RESULT

The staff-relative placement of all counts in the selected slash regions is changed. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

RELATED LINKS

Moving items graphically on page 481

Slash voices

Slash voices allow you to notate specific rhythms for rhythm slashes. They behave similarly to normal voices as you must input notes and rhythms manually, but all notes in slash voices are positioned by default on the middle line of the staff, regardless of the pitches you input.

If you later change the time signature, such as from 3/4 to 6/8, Dorico Elements only changes the note grouping to fit the meter just like for other notes; it does not change the presentation of rhythm in slash voices like it does for slash regions.

NOTE

- Because you can change notes in slash voices to normal voices and vice versa, the pitches you input are retained.
- Notes in slash voices are not played back.

You can have multiple slash voices active at the same time. To accommodate all slash voices in multiple-voice contexts, Dorico Elements changes their staff position automatically. However, you can also change the staff position of rhythm slashes manually.

You can use slash regions and slash voices in the same project and at the same rhythmic positions; for example, you can input a slash region where you do not want to be specific about the rhythm, then input notes in a slash voice for a single bar where you want to specify an exact rhythm.

RELATED LINKS

Rhythm slashes on page 1132
Slash regions on page 1132
Slashes in multiple-voice contexts on page 1134
Implicit rests in multiple-voice contexts on page 1146
Inputting notes into slash voices on page 223
Changing the voice of existing notes on page 442

Changing the slash voice type

You can change the voice type of slash voices; for example, if you want to change a slash voice from having stems to being stemless. You can also change the type to normal notes, which restores the original pitches you input, and change normal notes to rhythm slashes.

NOTE

This affects all notes in the same voice. If you only want to change the slash voice type of some notes, you must change the voice of those notes instead.

PROCEDURE

1. Select a note in the voice whose slash type you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. Choose **Edit** > **Notations** > **Voices** > **Rhythmic Slashes** > **[Voice type]**.

   For example, to change a whole normal voice to a stemless slash voice, choose **Edit** > **Notations** > **Voices** > **Rhythmic Slashes** > **Slashes without Stems**.

   TIP

   You can also choose these options from the context menu.

RESULT

The slash voice type of all notes in the same voice and flow as the selected note is changed.

If you change normal notes to a slash voice, they are all automatically positioned on a single staff line. By default in single-voice contexts, this is the middle line of the staff.

If you change rhythm slashes to normal notes, their original pitches are restored, meaning their staff positions reflect their pitches.

RELATED LINKS

Inputting notes into slash voices on page 223
Changing the voice of existing notes on page 442

Adding slash voices to percussion kits

You can add slash voices to percussion kits; for example, to show the desired rhythm for a passage without specifying the instruments to be played. You can add multiple slash voices to the same kit, including slash voices with and without stems.

NOTE

Rhythm slashes in percussion kits only appear when the five-line staff presentation is used. They do not appear in grid or single-line instrument presentations.

PROCEDURE

1. In Setup mode, in the **Players** panel, expand the card of the player holding the percussion kit to which you want to add slash voices.
2. In the kit instrument label, click the instrument menu ··· and choose **Edit Percussion Kit** to open the **Edit Percussion Kit** dialog.
3. In the action bar below the five-line staff editor, click the button that corresponds to the type of slash voice you want to add.

- Slashes with stems
- Slashes without stems

RESULT

The corresponding type of slash voice is added to the kit. It is positioned on the middle line of the staff by default.

During note input, you can move the caret to slash voices just like moving it to other instruments in the kit, and input notes into slash voices just like inputting notes in percussion kit instruments.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

You can change the staff position of slash voices in the kit.

RELATED LINKS

Percussion kit presentation types on page 1293
Voices in percussion kits on page 1300
Players panel on page 107
Edit Percussion Kit dialog on page 150
Inputting notes for unpitched percussion on page 227
Changing the positions of instruments within percussion kits on page 156

Rests

Rests are markings with a rhythmic value that indicate no note is played for that duration. Each note duration has an equivalent rest; for example, a quarter note rest is different to a sixteenth note rest.

All notes and rests within a bar must add up to the duration of the bar, according to the prevailing time signature. Dorico Elements automatically fills the gaps between notes with implicit rests of the appropriate duration. Therefore, it is usually not necessary to input rests in Dorico Elements.

The table shows some examples of notes and the rests with the equivalent rhythmic value.

Duration	Note	Rest
Half		
Quarter		
Eighth		
Sixteenth		

RELATED LINKS
Inputting rests on page 235
Deleting rests on page 1149
Inputting notes on page 211
Rests within beams on page 771
Note and rest grouping on page 774
Implicit rests in multiple-voice contexts on page 1146
Showing figured bass on rests on page 860

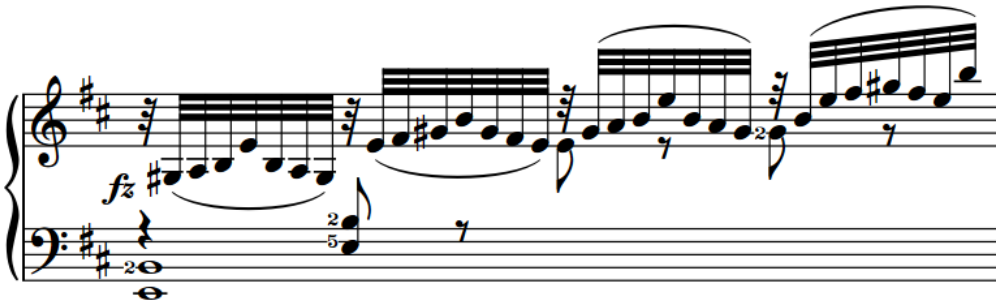
General placement conventions for rests

Rests are positioned at the rhythmic position at the start of their duration, and not in the middle of beats as this can cause confusion over when the rest begins and ends. Rests are aligned with other items at the same rhythmic position.

The only exception is whole bar rests, which are positioned at the visual center of bars. This way, they are clearly distinguishable from half note and whole note rests that are followed by notes in the same bar.

Rests stay within the staff wherever possible. They do not move above or below the staff when the notes around them are very high or very low.

However, on staves with multiple voices, rests are placed higher on the staff, or above the staff, for up-stem voices and lower on the staff, or below the staff, for down-stem voices.



Example rest positions in a multiple-voice context

Rests in multiple voices must not overlap. You can consolidate rests so that only one is shown when multiple voices have a rest of the same duration at the same rhythmic position.

The precise vertical positioning of rests is limited, as their detailed shapes require specific positions relative to staff lines and staff spaces.

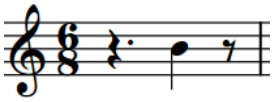
RELATED LINKS
Voices on page 1303
Inputting notes into multiple voices on page 221
Creating cross-staff beams/tremolos on page 764

Implicit vs. explicit rests

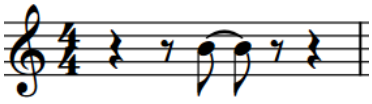
Implicit rests are automatically shown between the notes you input, and their duration automatically follows the time signature and their position in the bar. Explicit rests are rests that are explicitly entered during note input by forcing their duration, or rests that were imported from a MusicXML file.

Dorico Elements notates implicit rests according to the prevailing time signature; for example, different implicit rests are shown in 6/8 compared to 4/4. This also applies if you later change the time signature for existing notes and rests.

Therefore, it is not necessary to input rests in Dorico Elements, as implicit rests are automatically shown around the notes that you input. You can turn implicit rests into explicit rests by forcing their duration to be fixed.



A quarter note input at the fourth eighth note of the bar in a 6/8 time signature has a dotted quarter implicit rest at the start of the bar.



A quarter note input at the fourth eighth note of the bar in a 4/4 time signature has two implicit rests, a quarter and an eighth, at the start of the bar.

Explicit rests cannot be suppressed when using the **Starts voice** and **Ends voice** properties to hide rests before the first note in voices and after the last note in voices.

You can show rest colors to see which rests are implicit and which are explicit in your project.

RELATED LINKS
Inputting rests on page 235
Inputting notes on page 211
Deleting rests on page 1149
Forcing the duration of notes/rests on page 250
Turning explicit rests into implicit rests on page 1147
Hiding/Showing rest colors on page 1148

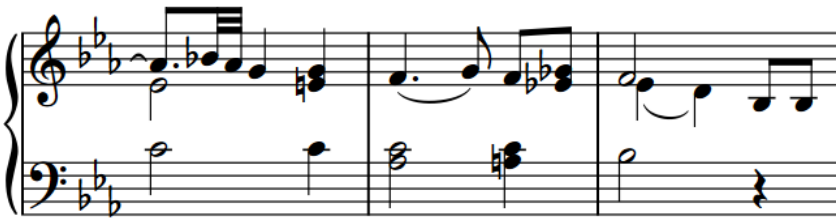
Implicit rests in multiple-voice contexts

In Dorico Elements, implicit rests are shown automatically to fill in rhythmic positions around notes, including when there are multiple voices on the staff. However, in these contexts you might want more control over when and where rests are shown.

Usually, rests or notes are shown for whole bars when voices contain at least one note in the bar. This helps make the rhythmic position of every note in all voices in the bar immediately clear.

When there are multiple voices on a staff, implicit rests are shown in every bar in which there are notes of any duration in more than one voice. Bar rests are always shown for the first voice on a staff, including in bars that only contain notes in a slash voice.

However, there might be circumstances in which you do not want to show rests either before the first note in a voice or after the last note in a voice when there are multiple voices on the staff. For example, it can be useful to hide rests when a voice is being used to show passing notes within a bar that otherwise contains a single melodic line.



A second voice used to notate passing notes

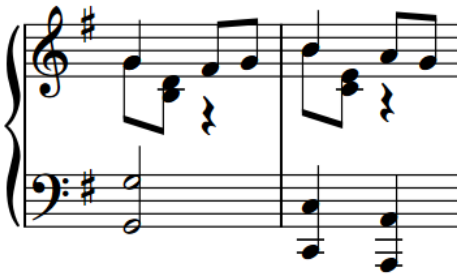
You can choose when rests are shown in a number of different multiple-voice contexts in each flow independently on the **Rests** page in **Notation Options**.

You can also delete rests from selected passages.

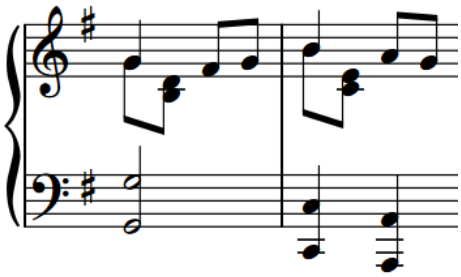
TIP

By default, Dorico Elements consolidates rests when multiple voices have rests of the same duration at the same rhythmic position.

You can show multiple rests at individual rhythmic positions by changing the vertical position of rests. You can also change your per-flow settings for the consolidation of rests in multiple-voice contexts on the **Rests** page in **Notation Options**.



A phrase with multiple voices showing implicit rests.



The same phrase without implicit rests.

RELATED LINKS
Notation Options dialog on page 679
Per-flow notation options for rests on page 1147
Moving rests vertically on page 1148
Deleting rests on page 1149
Slash voices on page 1141

Turning explicit rests into implicit rests

Implicit rests and explicit rests behave differently. For example, you can hide implicit rests using the Properties panel, but you cannot hide explicit rests or rests with forced durations.

NOTE

You can only hide implicit rests using **Starts voice** and **Ends voice** in the **Notes and Rests** group of the Properties panel.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the explicit rests you want to turn into implicit rests.
2. Press **Backspace or Delete**.

RESULT

The selected explicit rests are now implicit rests. You can check this by showing rest colors.

RELATED LINKS
Hiding/Showing rest colors on page 1148
Deleting rests on page 1149

Per-flow notation options for rests

You can find per-flow options controlling how rests are positioned and notated, and when rests are shown, on the **Rests** page in **Notation Options**.

For example, you can change whether bar rests are shown in additional voices, when dotted rests are permitted, and the default positions of rests in different contexts. You can also change whether rests of the same duration and at the same rhythmic position in different voices are consolidated into a single rest.

Musical examples demonstrate how each option affects the appearance of your music.

RELATED LINKS
Notation Options dialog on page 679
Voices on page 1303
Per-flow notation options for voices on page 1304
Stem direction on page 961

Hiding/Showing rest colors

You can hide/show rest colors, which causes implicit rests and explicit rests to appear with different colors.

When rest colors are shown, implicit rests appear gray and explicit rests appear black. For example, this can help diagnose why rests do not disappear when you activate **Starts voice** and **Ends voice**, as these properties only hide implicit rests.

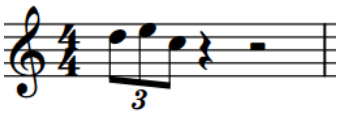
PROCEDURE

- Choose **View** > **Note And Rest Colors** > **Implicit Rests**.

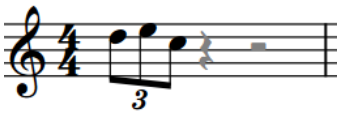
RESULT

Rest colors are hidden/shown.

EXAMPLE



Rest colors hidden



Rest colors shown

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

You can delete rests that you have identified as explicit rests. The implicit rests that replace them now respect the **Starts voice** and **Ends voice** properties.

Moving rests vertically

You can change the vertical position of rests individually; for example, if you want to change the staff line from which a whole bar rest hangs, or you want to show rests for all voices at a particular rhythmic position. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

Moving rests vertically shows multiple rests at that rhythmic position if more than one voice on the staff has a rest of the same duration. By default, Dorico Elements consolidates coincident rests of the same duration in multiple-voice contexts and automatically positions rests in multiple-voice contexts to avoid collisions.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the rests whose vertical positions you want to change, or rests at the rhythmic positions where you want to see rests for every voice. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Rest pos.** in the **Notes and Rests** group.
3. Change the value in the value field.

RESULT

Increasing the value moves rests upwards, decreasing the value moves rests downwards. Position 0 is the middle line of the staff. If there are multiple voices on the staff with rests of the same duration at the same rhythmic position, multiple rests are now shown.

If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

TIP

- Deactivating **Rest pos.** returns the selected rests to their default positions.
- You can choose to show coincident rests of the same duration in every voice or only show one rest for all voices in the **Rest positioning** section of the **Rests** page in **Notation Options**.

RELATED LINKS

Notation Options dialog on page 679
Note spacing on page 579
Changing the property scope on page 617
Copying property settings to other layouts/frame chains on page 599

Deleting rests

You can delete both implicit rests and explicit rests; for example, if you want to hide rests before/after notes in another voice used to show passing notes.

TIP

- If you want to delete rests because you want to remove the corresponding duration from the flow, you can instead delete bars/beats.
- If you want to delete rests because you do not want to show bar rests in empty bars, you can instead hide bar rests.
- If you want to delete rests because multiple rests of the same duration appear at the same position in multiple-voice contexts, you can choose to consolidate these rests in **Notation Options** > **Rests** > **Rest Positioning**.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the rests you want to delete.

   TIP

   You can select rests individually, or make a larger selection that contains the rests you want to delete.

2. Choose **Edit** > **Remove Rests**.

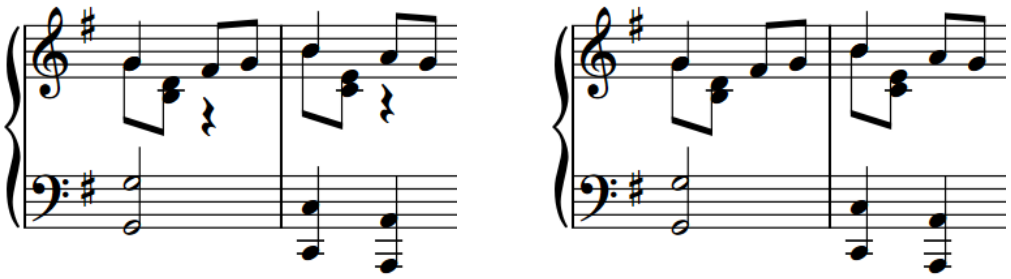
RESULT

All rests in the selection are deleted. This is done by automatically activating **Starts voice** and **Ends voice** in the **Notes and Rests** group of the Properties panel on the notes or rests immediately to the right/left of deleted rests, so that no rests are shown in the selected regions.

NOTE

- You can show rests again later by selecting the notes or rests immediately to the right/left of deleted rests, then deactivating the corresponding **Starts voice** or **Ends voice** properties in the **Notes and Rests** group of the Properties panel.
- You can assign a key command for **Remove Rests** on the **Key Commands** page in **Preferences**.
- In layouts where no other notes, rests, or items with duration exist at rhythmic positions where you have deleted rests, Dorico Elements has nothing to use to calculate horizontal spacing. Therefore, such empty bars/beats can appear narrower.

EXAMPLE



A phrase with multiple voices showing implicit rests. The same phrase after deleting the rests.

RELATED LINKS

Notation Options dialog on page 679
Implicit vs. explicit rests on page 1145
Large selections on page 403
Deleting bars/beats on page 729
Note spacing on page 579
Changing the horizontal justification of final systems on page 569

Hiding/Showing bar rests in empty bars

You can hide/show bar rests in empty bars in each layout independently. For example, you can hide bar rests in full score layouts but show bar rests in part layouts.

Bar rests are usually shown in empty bars in music to indicate to performers that they have nothing to play. However, there are contexts in which it is preferable to hide bar rests in empty bars, and instead leave the bar completely empty.

For example, hiding bar rests in empty bars is sometimes the preferred visual aesthetic in large scores, so that it is quicker to identify bars containing music. You can also hide bar rests in layouts where you want to include other instructions, such as verbal indications for performers to do something other than play notated pitches.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-L** to open **Layout Options**.
2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to hide/show bar rests in empty bars.

   By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar, clicking and dragging across multiple layouts, **Shift**-clicking adjacent layouts, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking individual layouts.
3. In the category list, click **Players**.
4. In the **Bar Rests and Multi-bar Rests** section, activate/deactivate **Show bar rests in empty bars**.
5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

All bar rests in empty bars in the selected layouts are shown when the checkbox is activated, and hidden when the checkbox is deactivated.

RELATED LINKS

Hiding/Showing multi-bar rests on page 1152

Hiding/Showing bar rests in additional voices

You can hide/show bar rests between notes or explicit rests in additional voices on a per-flow basis; for example, you might show bar rests in contrapuntal music to ensure each voice can be easily followed.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-N** to open **Notation Options**.
2. In the **Flows** list, select the flows in which you want to hide/show bar rests in additional voices.

   By default, only the current flow is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other flows by clicking **Select All** in the action bar, clicking and dragging across multiple flows, **Shift**-clicking adjacent flows, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking individual flows.
3. In the category list, click **Rests**.
4. In the **Rests in Additional Voices** section, choose one of the following options for **Bar rests in additional voices**:
   - **Show bar rests**
   - **Omit bar rests**
5. Optional: To show bar rests for each voice in empty bars, in the **Rest Positioning** section, choose **Show every rest in each voice** for **Coincident rests of the same duration in opposing voices**.
6. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

Bar rests are shown between notes and explicit rests in all voices in the selected flows when you choose **Show bar rests**, and hidden when you choose **Omit bar rests**.

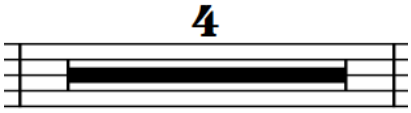
NOTE

Show bar rests does not automatically show bar rests in empty bars before the first note or explicit rest in additional voices. For additional voices that do not start in the first bar, you must input a bar rest in the first bar manually.

RELATED LINKS
Per-flow notation options for rests on page 1147
Implicit vs. explicit rests on page 1145
Inputting notes into multiple voices on page 221
Inputting bar rests into specific voices on page 236

Multi-bar rests

Multi-bar rests group two or more consecutive empty bars together into a single unit, commonly shown with a thick horizontal line positioned on the middle staff line, known as an “H-bar”. They can reduce the horizontal space required by multiple empty bars and make it easier for players to find their place in the music.



A multi-bar rest representing four empty bars

NOTE

Multi-bar rests are automatically split by items positioned within their range, such as system-attached text, rehearsal marks, and holds and pauses. However, if items are positioned at the start of the first bar in a multi-bar rest, that bar remains part of the subsequent multi-bar rest.

You can hide/show multi-bar rests in each layout independently in Dorico Elements, and you can hide/show bar number ranges below them.

By default, the multi-bar rest bar counts only appear once between the staves of grand staff instruments.

RELATED LINKS
Hiding/Showing bar number ranges on multi-bar rests on page 744
Splitting multi-bar rests on page 1154

Hiding/Showing multi-bar rests

You can hide/show multi-bar rests in each layout independently, and choose whether or not to consolidate one-bar repeats. For example, you can hide multi-bar rests in full score layouts but show multi-bar rests in part layouts.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-L** to open **Layout Options**.
2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to hide/show multi-bar rests.

   By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar, clicking

and dragging across multiple layouts, **Shift**-clicking adjacent layouts, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking individual layouts.

3. In the category list, click **Players**.
4. In the **Bar Rests and Multi-bar rests** section, choose one of the following options for **Consolidate**:
   - **None**
   - **Multi-bar Rests**
   - **Multi-bar Rests and Bar Repeats**
5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

- When you choose **None**, no multi-bar rests are shown in the selected layouts. Each empty bar is shown separately.
- When you choose **Multi-bar Rests**, any adjacent empty bars are consolidated into multi-bar rests in the selected layouts. However, bar repeats prevent the consolidation of multi-bar rests, even if there are no other notes in those bars.
- When you choose **Multi-bar Rests and Bar Repeats**, any adjacent empty bars or bars that only contain one-bar repeats are consolidated into multi-bar rests in the selected layouts. Multi-bar rest counts are also shown above consolidated one-bar repeats.

RELATED LINKS
Bar repeats on page 1120
Hiding/Showing bar number ranges on multi-bar rests on page 744

Changing the width of multi-bar rest H-bars

You can change the width of individual multi-bar rest H-bars. This allows you to control the exact positions of multi-bar rests; for example, when there are clef changes at the end of multi-bar rests.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the multi-bar rests whose width you want to change.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **H-bar width delta** in the **Multi-bar Rests** group.
3. Change the value in the value field.

RESULT

The width of the selected H-bars is changed. Increasing the value increases their width, decreasing the value decreases their width.

RELATED LINKS
Properties panel on page 615
Casting off on page 581

Moving multi-bar rest H-bars

You can move individual multi-bar rest H-bars horizontally. This allows you to control the exact positions of multi-bar rests; for example, when there are clef changes at the end of multi-bar rests.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the multi-bar rests you want to move.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **H-bar X offset** in the **Multi-bar Rests** group.
3. Change the value in the value field.

RESULT

The selected H-bars are moved horizontally. Increasing the value moves H-bars to the right, decreasing the value moves H-bars to the left.

Splitting multi-bar rests

You can manually split multi-bar rests without showing any extra notation in the music. Splitting multi-bar rests affects all layouts in the project, including full scores and parts.

NOTE

Multi-bar rests are automatically split by items positioned within their range, such as system-attached text, rehearsal marks, and holds and pauses.

PREREQUISITE

You have opened a layout in the music area that either has items in the bars where you want to split multi-bar rests or in which multi-bar rests are hidden. You cannot select rhythmic positions within multi-bar rests.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select an item at the rhythmic position where you want to split multi-bar rests.
2. Choose **Engrave** > **Split Multi-bar Rest**.

RESULT

All multi-bar rests in all layouts are split at the selected position. A signpost is shown at the position of the multi-bar rest split.

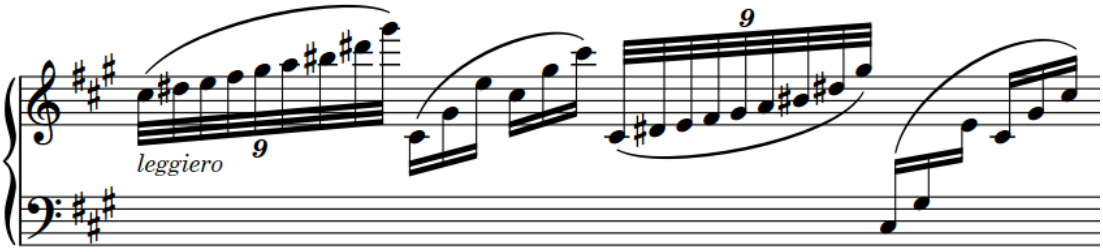
RELATED LINKS

Hiding/Showing signposts on page 427
Hiding/Showing multi-bar rests on page 1152
Switching between layouts on page 43

Slurs

Slurs are tapered, curved lines that join notes to indicate legato articulation and phrasing.

Depending on the context and the instrument to which they apply, slurs can have additional meanings to simply marking phrases. For example, for wind players, a slur indicates that all the notes in the phrase are played in the same breath and without re-tonguing or re-articulating any notes. For string players, a slur indicates that all the notes in the phrase are played legato and under one bow. For singers, slurs indicate that more than one note is sung to the same syllable.



Slurs both above and below the staff, including a cross-staff slur

Dorico Elements automatically determines the appropriate endpoint position and curvature direction for slurs based on the notes within their ranges, but you can change this manually.

You can input any number of nested slurs.

NOTE

Slurs must not be confused with ties, which look superficially similar, but instead join notes of the same pitch to indicate that they are played as a single note. In that sense, ties are part of rhythmic notation, while slurs are considered articulation.

RELATED LINKS

Inputting slurs on page 260
Inputting nested slurs on page 1167
Ties vs. slurs on page 1233
Cross-staff and cross-voice slurs on page 1166
Elision slurs on page 938
Slurs in playback on page 1178
Slur endpoint positions on page 1158
Slur curvature direction on page 1164
Changing the position of slurs relative to tie chains on page 1156
MIDI Import Options dialog on page 86

General placement conventions for slurs

There are different conventions for the placement, endpoint position, shape, and curvature direction of slurs in various contexts.

RELATED LINKS

Slur endpoint positions on page 1158

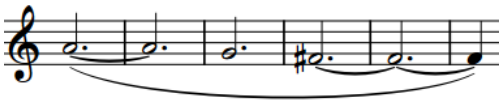
Short slurs that cover large pitch ranges on page 1160
Slurs over system and frame breaks on page 1159
Slur curvature direction on page 1164

Slur position relative to tie chains

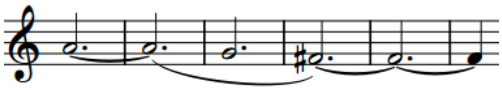
There are different conventions for the position of slurs relative to tie chains in music for modern use and historical editions.

Modern practice is for slurs to start on the first note in tie chains, and end on the last note in tie chains. This makes the full length of the phrase visually clear to the performer, which helps their performance, and is the default in Dorico Elements.

However, in historical editions, slurs might end on the first note in a tie chain, and start on the last note in a tie chain. Both of these changes save vertical space, as shorter slurs do not extend as far above or below a staff.



Slur starting on the first note and ending on the last note in tie chains



Slur starting on the last note and ending on the first note in tie chains

Changing the position of slurs relative to tie chains

You can change the position of individual slurs relative to tie chains, including slurs starting on grace notes. For example, slurs that start on the last note in tie chains and end on the first note in tie chains are shorter and require less vertical space.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the slurs whose position relative to tie chains you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate the following properties, individually or together, in the **Slurs** group:
   - **Start pos. in tie chain**
   - **End pos. in tie chain**
3. Choose one of the following options for each property:
   - **First note**
   - **Last note**

RESULT

The position of the selected slurs relative to tie chains is changed.

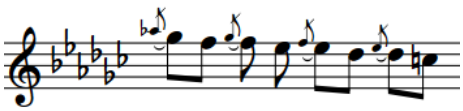
Slur placement relative to grace notes

There are specific placement rules that affect slurs when they start from a grace note and end on a normal note immediately following the grace note.

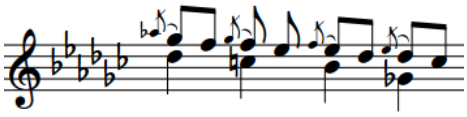
These rules are:

- Slurs connect noteheads rather than stems.
- Slurs are scaled to match the proportions of grace notes.
- Slurs must not obscure ledger lines.
- Slurs are placed above notes if they would collide with the accidental of a standard note when placed below the notes.

Due to the general placement conventions of grace notes, slurs in Dorico Elements appear below grace notes and curve downwards by default. Slurs starting from grace notes only appear above notes and curve upwards in up-stem voices in multiple-voice contexts.



Slur curvature direction on grace notes in a single-voice context



Slur curvature direction on grace notes in a multiple-voice context

You can change the automatic placement of grace note slurs by changing the stem direction of a grace note, changing the direction of a slur, and using the slur handles in Engrave mode to adjust the position of a slur in finer detail.

RELATED LINKS
Changing the curvature direction of slurs on page 1165
Changing the stem direction of notes on page 963
General placement conventions for grace notes on page 898
Slurs in Engrave mode on page 1171
Changing the shape/angle of slurs on page 1173

Slur position relative to staff lines

Slur endpoints must not touch staff lines, and the high point of the arcs of slurs should not stop on staff lines.

This is the convention because a slur whose arc peaks on a staff line can create the appearance of a triangular wedge between the staff line and the curve of the slur. If a slur peaks on a staff line, you can adjust its height so that it peaks either above/below the staff.

NOTE

Although Dorico Elements automatically ensures slur endpoints do not touch staff lines, manual adjustments might be necessary to position the arcs of slurs correctly.

RELATED LINKS
Changing the height of slurs on page 1176

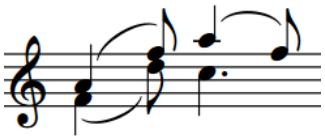
Slur endpoint positions

In order to avoid collisions, the default positions of slur endpoints vary depending on whether slurs are placed on the notehead side or stem side of notes, their position relative to staff lines, and whether articulations, ties, and other slurs exist at the same rhythmic position.

Slur endpoints relative to noteheads and stems

The default position of slur endpoints relative to noteheads is 1/2 space above a notehead in a space on the staff, and 1/4 space above a notehead on a line on the staff.

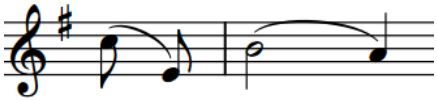
Slurs appear between the stems of unbeamed notes when placed on their stem side, and the default setting is for their endpoints to attach a short distance from the end of the stem.



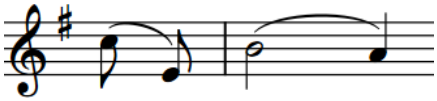
Slurs between the stems of unbeamed notes

Slur endpoints relative to notes with different stem directions

For slurs between notes with different stem directions, Dorico Elements positions their endpoints close to the notehead by default so that the shape and curvature direction of slurs reflects the rising or descending pitch contour of phrases, including when they span multiple staves.



Slur endpoints near noteheads



Slur endpoints near stem ends

Slur endpoints relative to articulations

By default, articulations of force and stress are placed outside slur endpoints, and articulations of duration are placed inside slur endpoints, which automatically raises the endpoints. For example, accents and stress marks are placed outside the ends of slurs but staccato and tenuto marks are placed inside the ends of slurs.

Slurs are placed outside articulations on notes in the middle of slurs.

Slur endpoints relative to ties and other slurs

The default position of slur endpoints is 1/4 space above an existing slur that starts/ends on the same note.

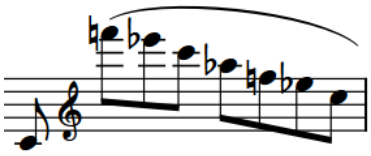
RELATED LINKS
Slurs in Engrave mode on page 1171
Changing the shape/angle of slurs on page 1173
Cross-staff and cross-voice slurs on page 1166
Nested slurs on page 1167
Stem direction on page 961
Articulations on page 723
Changing the placement of articulations relative to slurs on page 727

Slurs over system and frame breaks

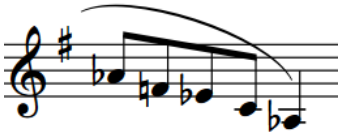
Slurs automatically cross system breaks and frame breaks, appearing in two parts on either side of the break.

By default, the endpoints of slurs that cross system/frame breaks are positioned at least 1/2 space outside the outer staff line and at a suitable position based on the pitch contour of the phrase before/after the break; that is, indicating whether the phrase rises or falls after the break.

If multiple slurs cross the same system break or frame break, such as if a phrase split by a break contains nested slurs, the ends of the slurs are stacked automatically and spaced a minimum of 1/2 space apart vertically.



The end of a system showing the first slur part; the end on the right indicates a continuation to the next system.



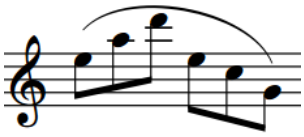
The start of the next system showing the second slur part; the end on the left indicates a continuation from the previous system.

In Engrave mode, you can move and edit each slur part separately. This allows you to adjust the start/end height of each slur part independently on each system.

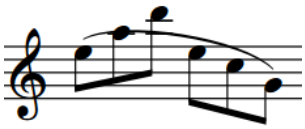
Slur collision avoidance

By default, Dorico Elements automatically adjusts the shape and position of slurs to avoid collisions with items under their arc.

This means that if a notehead under a slur is either higher than the others under a slur curving upwards, or lower than the others under a slur curving downwards, the curvature of the slur is adjusted to avoid the collision and keep the notehead under the slur. You can manually disable collision avoidance for individual slurs.



Slur with collision avoidance activated (default)



Slur with collision avoidance deactivated

RELATED LINKS
Cross-staff and cross-voice slurs on page 1166
Accidentals on page 712

Enabling/Disabling slur collision avoidance

You can allow or prevent individual slurs from automatically adjusting to avoid collisions. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the slurs whose collision avoidance you want to enable/disable.
2. In the Properties panel, activate/deactivate **Avoid collisions** in the **Slurs** group.
3. Activate/Deactivate the corresponding checkbox.

RESULT

The selected slurs avoid collisions when the checkbox is activated, and do not avoid collisions when the checkbox is deactivated. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

RELATED LINKS

Changing the property scope on page 617
Copying property settings to other layouts/frame chains on page 599

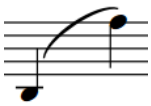
Short slurs that cover large pitch ranges

When short slurs span large pitch ranges, they are significantly rotated to compensate. This can make the ends of short slurs appear too angular.

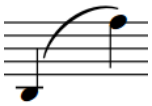
You can move the control point handles of slurs to improve their curves.

Of the three examples, the middle slur has the smoothest curve. The handles on the slur on the right have been moved poorly, making the curve far too angular.

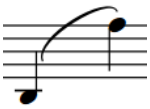
In the bottom row, the positions of the handles are shown to indicate how each curve above was created.



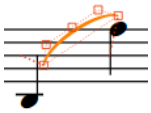
Short slur spanning a large pitch range, without adjustment



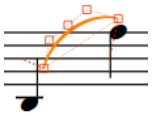
The same slur with some shape adjustment, making the curve smoother



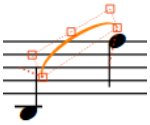
The same slur again with poor adjustment, making the curve too angular



Default slur handle placement



Slur handle placement to create the corresponding slur



Slur handle placement to create the corresponding slur

TIP

When adjusting slur ends, you can achieve the best results using the following guidelines:

- The control point at the lower end of the slur does not extend outside the width of the slur, as marked by its neighboring endpoint.
- The control point at the higher end of the slur does not form an angle greater than 90 degrees relative to the endpoints. You can use the dashed lines to help you judge this.

You can adjust the shape of short slur ends in different ways:

- Individually, by activating **Start handle offset** and **End handle offset** in the Properties panel in Engrave mode, and changing their **X** values.
- Individually, by moving the handles of slurs in Engrave mode.

RELATED LINKS
Slurs in Engrave mode on page 1171
Slur shoulder offset on page 1177
Changing the shape/angle of slurs on page 1173

Slur styles

There are different styles of slurs available in Dorico Elements, which indicate different meanings and have different use cases.

The following options for slur style are available when you activate **Style** in the **Slurs** group of the Properties panel:

Solid

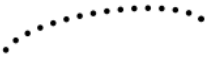
This is the default style for slurs. Slurs appear as tapered solid lines: thinner at the ends and thicker in the middle.

Dashed

Slurs appear as tapered dashed lines. Can be used to indicate an optional slur; for example, to recommend breathing/bowing patterns.

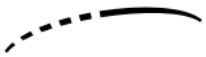
Dotted

Slurs appear as dotted lines. The dots are the same size and the same distance apart over the whole length of the slur.



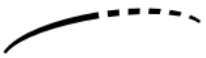
Half-dashed start

The first halves of slurs appear as dashed lines, the second halves as solid lines. Used to denote that a slur was written incompletely in the source in critical editions.



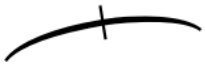
Half-dashed end

The first halves of slurs appear as solid lines, the second halves as dashed lines. Used to denote that a slur was written incompletely in the source in critical editions.



Editorial

Slurs appear as solid black lines, but with a smaller vertical line intersecting them exactly halfway along their length, perpendicular to the curve of the slur. Used to show that a slur was added by the editor and was not present in the original source.



Changing the style of slurs

You can change the style of individual slurs after they have been input. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the slurs whose style you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Style** in the **Slurs** group.
3. Select one of the following options from the menu:
   - **Solid**
   - **Dashed**
   - **Dotted**
   - **Half-dashed start**
   - **Half-dashed end**
   - **Editorial**

RESULT

The style of the selected slurs is changed. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

RELATED LINKS

Changing the property scope on page 617
Copying property settings to other layouts/frame chains on page 599

Changing the size of dashes/dots in slurs

You can change the length of dashes and the size of dots in dashed/dotted slurs individually. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

NOTE

These steps only apply to dashed/dotted slurs.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the dashed/dotted slurs whose dash length/dot size you want to change.
2. In the Properties panel, activate one of the following properties in the **Slurs** group:
   - For dashed slurs, activate **Dash length**.
   - For dotted slurs, activate **Dot size**.
3. Change the value in the value field.

RESULT

Increasing the value makes dashes longer and dots bigger, decreasing the value makes dashes shorter and dots smaller. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

Changing the size of gaps in dashed/dotted slurs

You can change the length of gaps in dashed/dotted slurs individually. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the dashed/dotted slurs whose gap length you want to change.
2. In the Properties panel, activate one of the following properties in the **Slurs** group:
   - For dashed slurs, activate **Dash gap length**.
   - For dotted slurs, activate **Dot gap length**.
3. Change the values in the value fields.

RESULT

Increasing the values makes the gaps between dashes/dots larger. Decreasing the values makes the gaps between dashes/dots smaller. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

Changing individual slurs to flat slurs

Although they are not often used as standard, some publishers use flat slurs in order to reduce the vertical space occupied by slurs. You can change individual slurs to flat slurs. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

NOTE

Short slurs, that is, slurs between only a few notes, can look odd as flat slurs, so it may not be appropriate to select the flat curvature style project-wide. However, it would also be unusual only to use flat slurs once or twice in a project. Therefore, we recommend that you avoid changing the curvature style for only one or two slurs in a project.

It can be more effective to modify them rather than changing their curvature style; for example, by making an individual slur thicker/thinner, adjusting the shoulder offset of slurs, or adjusting their height using their slur height handles in Engrave mode.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the slurs whose curvature style you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Curvature type** in the **Slurs** group.
3. Choose one of the following options:
   - **Normal (curved)**
   - **Flat**

RESULT

The curvature style of the selected slurs is changed. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

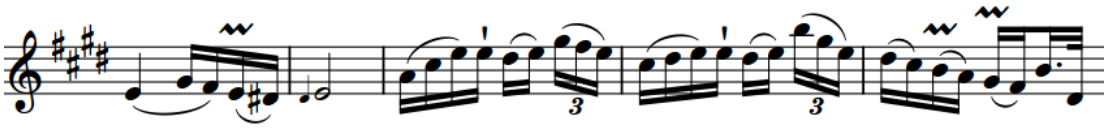
RELATED LINKS

Changing the thickness of slurs on page 1175
Changing the height of slurs on page 1176
Changing the shoulder offset of slurs on page 1177
Changing the property scope on page 617
Copying property settings to other layouts/frame chains on page 599

Slur curvature direction

Slurs can curve upwards, downwards, or have a multi-segment S-shape. Dorico Elements automatically determines the appropriate curvature direction for slurs based on the notes within their ranges, but you can change the curvature direction of slurs manually.

A slur on a single staff always curves upwards and is placed above the notes, unless all of the notes under the slur are up-stem, in which case it curves downwards and is placed below the notes. If a slur applies to a mixture of up-stem and down-stem notes, it is placed above the staff and curves upwards.



Examples of the slur direction changing according to the stem direction

The following options for slur curvature direction are available when you activate **Direction** in the **Slurs** group of the Properties panel:

Up

Forces slurs to curve upwards, and appear above notes.

Down

Forces slurs to curve downwards, and appear below notes.

Up/Down

Forces slurs to comprise two segments: the first curves upwards, the second curves downwards to create a mirrored S-shape. It is typically used when phrases start in the lower staff and end in the upper staff; for example, in piano parts.

Down/Up

Forces slurs to comprise two segments: the first curves downwards, the second curves upwards to create an S-shape. It is typically used when phrases start in the upper staff and end in the lower staff; for example, in piano parts.

TIP

- You can adjust the precise shapes of individual slurs, and each slur segment, in Engrave mode using the square handles on each slur.
- In jazz scores, slurs are sometimes treated as an articulation, so positioning all slurs above the staff is preferred.

RELATED LINKS

Slurs over system and frame breaks on page 1159
Cross-staff and cross-voice slurs on page 1166
Slurs in Engrave mode on page 1171

Changing the curvature direction of slurs

You can change the curvature direction of individual slurs so that they curve upwards, downwards, or have a multi-segment S-shape. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the slurs whose curvature direction you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Direction** in the **Slurs** group.
3. Choose one of the following options:
   - **Up**
   - **Down**
   - **Up/Down** (mirrored S-shape)

- **Down/Up** (S-shape)

RESULT

The curvature direction of the selected slurs is changed. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

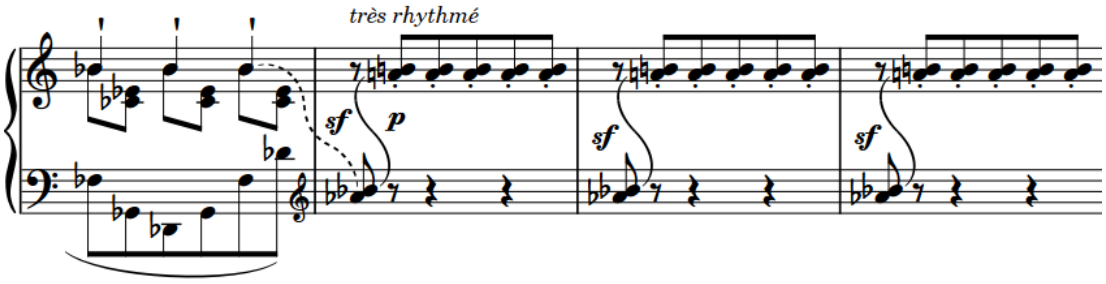
TIP

You can adjust the precise shapes of slurs, and each slur segment, in Engrave mode using the handles on each slur.

RELATED LINKS
Slurs in Engrave mode on page 1171
Changing the shape/angle of slurs on page 1173
Changing the property scope on page 617
Copying property settings to other layouts/frame chains on page 599

Cross-staff and cross-voice slurs

Cross-staff slurs start on one staff and end on another staff, and cross-voice slurs start in one voice and end in another voice.



Cross-staff slurs between two piano staves

Dorico Elements positions cross-staff and cross-voice slurs in the same way as it positions standard slurs. You can move and lengthen/shorten cross-staff and cross-voice slurs in the same ways as standard slurs; however, they do not behave in the same way. For example, you cannot move cross-voice slurs to notes on the same staff in other voices, and you cannot lengthen cross-voice slurs to notes on the same staff in other voices. You also cannot lengthen/shorten cross-voice slurs to notes in different voices to those in which the slur started/ended.

You can only move and lengthen/shorten cross-staff slurs to notes on the same staff as the corresponding endpoint. For example, if a cross-staff slur covers a phrase that starts on the bottom staff and ends on the upper staff, you can only shorten the cross-staff slur to the first note on the upper staff, you cannot shorten it to any notes on the bottom staff.

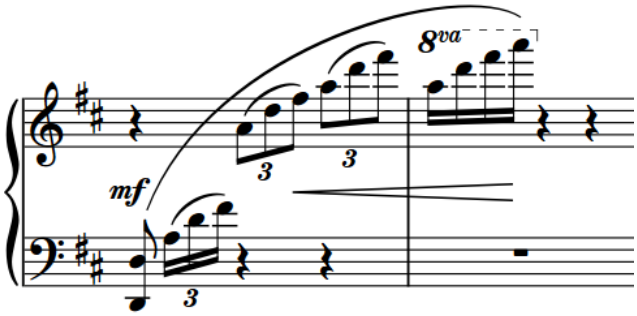
The different voices can be on the same staff, or on different staves.

RELATED LINKS
Inputting slurs on page 260
Lengthening/Shortening items on page 410
Slur collision avoidance on page 1159
Slur endpoint positions on page 1158
Moving notes/items rhythmically on page 437

Nested slurs

Nested slurs are two or more slurs used simultaneously, where the overarching slur shows the structure of the phrase and the inner slurs show the articulation within the phrase. They are also known as “slurs within slurs”.

Depending on the stem directions within the overarching outer slur, inner slurs may appear on the opposite side of the staff to the outer slur.



A phrase with nested slurs

You can input nested slurs in the same ways as inputting standard slurs. By default, Dorico Elements makes automatic adjustments to their positioning to avoid collisions.

RELATED LINKS
Slur collision avoidance on page 1159

Inputting nested slurs

You can input nested slurs, both during note input and by adding them to existing notes. You can also add nested slurs to existing notes on multiple staves at the same time and to notes in different voices or on different staves belonging to the same instrument; for example, when phrases span both staves of grand staff instruments.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, do one of the following:
   - Start note input.
   - Select the notes you want to include in the outer slur.

     TIP

     - If you only select a single note, the slur connects that note to the next note in the same voice on the staff. To input slurs between notes in different voices, you must select both notes; for example, by selecting the first note then **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking the second note.
     - For instruments with multiple staves, such as piano and harp, you can select existing notes on multiple staves to create cross-staff slurs. However, you cannot create cross-staff slurs between different instruments.
     - You can select notes on multiple staves to input slurs on those staves simultaneously.
2. Optional: If you want to input slurs onto multiple staves at once, extend the caret to those staves.
3. Input or start the outer slur in any of the following ways:

- Press **S**.
- In the Notes panel, click **Slur**.
- In the Keyboard panel toolbar, click **Slur**.

4. Input the inner slur in one of the following ways:
   - When adding nested slurs to existing notes: Select the notes within the outer slur that you want to place under an inner slur and press **S** or click **Slur** in the Notes panel.
   - To start the inner slur on the same note as the outer slur during note input, press **S** or click **Slur** in the Notes panel.
   - To start the inner slur on a later note during note input, input notes or advance the caret manually to where you want the inner slur to start, then press **S** or click **Slur** in the Notes panel.

   NOTE

   If you added nested slurs to existing notes, stop here.

5. During note input, input the notes you want to include in the inner slur.

   The slurs extend automatically as you continue inputting notes, even if there are rests between the notes you input.

6. End the inner slur on the currently selected note in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Shift-S**.
   - In the Keyboard panel toolbar, click **Slur**.
7. Continue inputting notes.
8. Optional: Start/End other inner slurs.
9. End the outer slur on the currently selected note in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Shift-S**.
   - In the Keyboard panel toolbar, click **Slur**.

RESULT

During note input, slurs begin from the currently selected note on all staves across which the caret extends, not from the caret position. Slurs extend automatically as you input notes, and end on the currently selected note.

When adding slurs to existing notes, the selected notes are connected by slurs. For example, if you select two notes belonging to one instrument and two notes belonging to another, two slurs are input connecting the notes on each selected staff. If you selected notes on different staves belonging to the same instrument, a cross-staff slur is input.

Slurs are placed either above or below the notes, depending on the stem direction of the notes within the selection. Inner slurs can have different curvature directions to outer slurs. By default, Dorico Elements makes automatic adjustments to their positioning to avoid collisions.

TIP

You can input the outer slur and inner slurs in any order as Dorico Elements automatically adjusts slurs so that shorter slurs are positioned within longer slurs, and ensures they do not collide.

RELATED LINKS

Inputting slurs on page 260

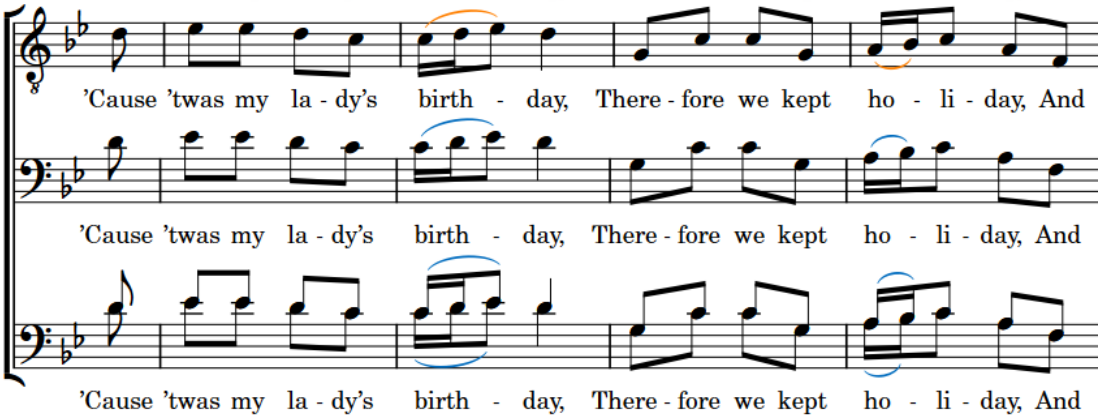
Changing the curvature direction of slurs on page 1165

Linked slurs

Slurs of the same duration at the same rhythmic position on multiple staves can be linked together. This happens automatically when you copy and paste slurs or material including slurs between staves, or enter them simultaneously.

If slurs are linked, moving one slur in the linked group moves any slurs linked to it in the same way. Similarly, lengthening or shortening a slur in a linked group lengthens or shortens any slurs linked to it in the same way. However, deleting one slur in a linked group only deletes the slur selected, not the whole group.

Linked slurs appear highlighted when any slur in the linked group is selected.



Linked slurs with the top slurs selected

You can also manually link and unlink slurs.

RELATED LINKS
Inputting slurs on page 260
Linked dynamics on page 855
Disabling automatic linking of dynamics and slurs when pasting on page 436

Linking slurs together

Dorico Elements automatically links slurs of the same duration at the same rhythmic positions together when you copy and paste slurs or material including slurs between staves, or enter them simultaneously. However, you can also link slurs together manually.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the slurs you want to link together.

   NOTE

   Only slurs that have the same duration and start at the same position can be linked together.

2. Choose **Edit** > **Notations** > **Slurs** > **Link**. You can also choose this option from the context menu.

RESULT

The selected slurs are linked together.

Unlinking slurs

You can unlink slurs, including slurs that were linked automatically. For example, if you want to lengthen/shorten slurs independently of each other.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select a slur in each linked group that you want to unlink.
2. Choose **Edit** > **Notations** > **Slurs** > **Unlink**. You can also choose this option from the context menu.

RESULT

All slurs in the linked groups are unlinked. This applies to all layouts in which the slurs appear.

Slur segments

A standard slur consists of one segment. You can make more elaborate shapes with slurs with multiple segments; for example, to allow you to create more complex slur shapes than are possible with a single curved segment.

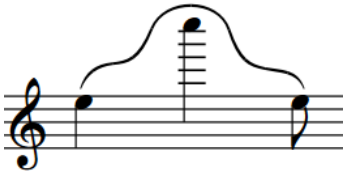
Adding more segments to a slur by default creates evenly spaced waves within its length. Therefore, having more segments makes each wave shorter.

Slur with eight segments

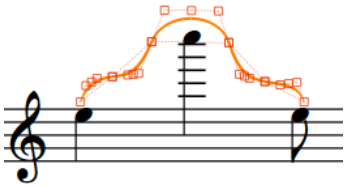
In Engrave mode, you can move each segment graphically as each segment has its own set of five square handles. These allow you to form slurs into unusual and complicated shapes.

NOTE

- You may find that you need more segments than there are curves in your planned shape, as in many cases you need a segment for each significant change of angle. In Dorico Elements, you can increase/decrease the number of segments in existing slurs.
- Handles on multi-segment slurs are connected between adjacent segments. Moving a connected control point causes the control point at the start/end of the next/previous segment to move the same amount in the opposite direction.



An unusual slur shape created using five segments.



The same slur, showing the positions of the handles of all five segments.

Changing the number of segments in individual slurs

You can change the number of segments in individual slurs; for example, to allow you to create slurs with unusual shapes. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the slurs whose number of segments you want to change.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Number of segments** in the **Slurs** group.
3. Change the value in the value field.

RESULT

Increasing the value increases the number of slur segments. Decreasing the value decreases the number of slur segments. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

You can adjust the shape of slur segments in more detail using their handles.

NOTE

Handles on multi-segment slurs are connected to the corresponding type of handle on adjacent segments. Moving handles causes any connected handles to move the same amount in the opposite direction.

RELATED LINKS

Changing the shape/angle of slurs on page 1173
Changing the property scope on page 617
Copying property settings to other layouts/frame chains on page 599

Slurs in Engrave mode

In Engrave mode, each slur has five square handles that you can move independently. Some handles are connected to others, meaning moving one can affect the position of neighboring handles.

Slurs have the following handles in Engrave mode:

1. Left endpoint
2. Left control point
3. Slur height
4. Right control point
5. Right endpoint

For example, moving the left endpoint moves both the start of a slur and the other handles apart from the right endpoint. However, moving the right control point only causes the slur height handle to move as well. This gives you fine control over the shape of slurs, while ensuring the end result remains curved and smooth.

NOTE

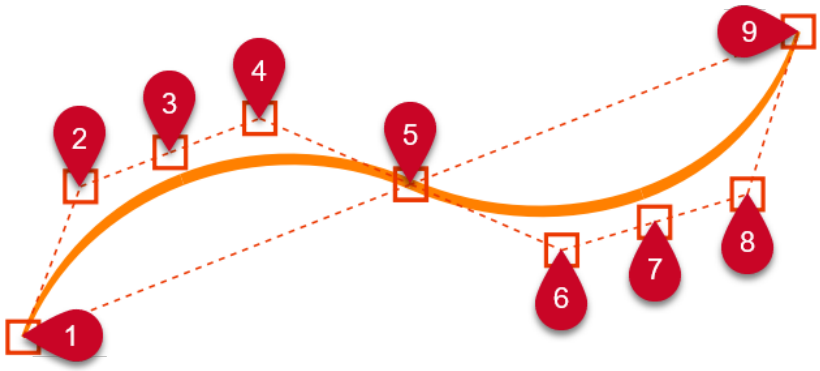
Multi-segment slurs have additional links between control point handles that affect how they move in relation to other handles moving.

You can move these handles to change the shape of slurs with the keyboard, with the mouse, and by using properties in the **Slurs** group of the Properties panel. You can also change the angle of slurs without changing their overall shape.

RELATED LINKS
Slur height on page 1176
Slur shoulder offset on page 1177

Multi-segment slurs in Engrave mode

In Engrave mode, each segment in multi-segment slurs, such as S-shaped slurs, has handles just like standard slurs. This allows you to edit each segment of multi-segment slurs independently as if they were separate slurs, but in order to maintain a consistent shape, moving certain handles causes other handles to move simultaneously.



Multi-segment slurs have the following handles in Engrave mode:

1. Left endpoint
2. Left control point
3. Slur height
4. Right control point
5. Center control point
6. Left control point
7. Slur height

8 Right control point

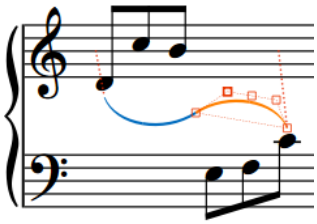
9 Right endpoint

You can select and move each handle in the same ways as for standard slurs; however, handles on multi-segment slurs are connected between adjacent segments. Moving a connected control point causes the control point at the start/end of the next/previous segment to move the same amount in the opposite direction. This avoids tight corners, ensuring that multi-segment slurs are always as smoothly and symmetrically curved as possible.

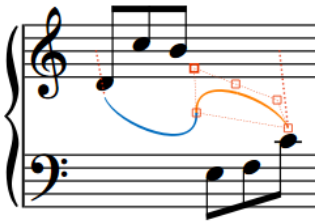
In multi-segment slurs, right control points are connected to the left control point in the adjacent segment. If there is no adjacent segment, the right/left control points next to the right/left endpoints can be moved independently. For example, in the labeled diagram, control point 4 is connected to control point 6, but control points 2 and 8 are not connected to another control point.

Similarly, moving the slur height handle causes the slur height handle on any adjacent segments to move the same amount in the opposite direction. For example, if you move the slur height handle on the middle segment of a slur with three segments, all three slur height handles are moved.

EXAMPLE



The left control point is selected.



Moving the selected left control point upwards and to the left causes the right control point on the adjacent segment to move downwards and to the right.

Changing the shape/angle of slurs

You can move slurs and slur handles graphically, allowing you to change the shape and/or angle of individual slurs; for example, to adjust an endpoint relative to an individual notehead. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

Changing the angle of slurs is useful, for example, if you want one end of a slur to start higher after a system break than its default position, as you can change the rotation of the slur while keeping all slur handles on the slur in the same positions relative to each other.

PREREQUISITE

You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the whole slurs or individual slur handles you want to move in any of the following ways:
   - **Ctrl/Cmd**-click multiple slurs.
   - **Ctrl/Cmd**-click individual handles on multiple slurs.

- Select a whole slur and press **Tab** to cycle through the handles until the one you want to move is selected.
- Click the handle you want to move.

NOTE

- To change the angle of slurs, select slur endpoints only.
- You cannot move whole slurs to the right/left, you can only move them upwards/downwards.

2. Move the slurs or handles in any of the following ways:
   - To move them a standard amount to the right, left, up, or down, press **Alt/Opt** plus the corresponding arrow key. For example, press **Alt/Opt-Left Arrow** to move slurs/handles to the left. This moves slurs/handles by 1/8 space per press.
   - To move them a large amount, press **Ctrl/Cmd** plus the standard key command; for example, **Ctrl/Cmd-Alt/Opt-Left Arrow**. This moves slurs/handles by 1 space per press.
   - To move them a moderate amount, press **Shift** plus the standard key command; for example, **Shift-Alt/Opt-Left Arrow**. This moves slurs/handles by 1/2 space per press.
   - To move them a small amount, press **Ctrl/Cmd**-**Shift** plus the standard key command; for example, **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-Alt/Opt-Left Arrow**. This moves slurs/handles by 1/32 space per press.
   - Click and drag whole slurs upwards/downwards.
   - Click and drag handles in any direction.

RESULT

The selected slurs or slur handles are moved. Depending on the handles you selected and the directions in which you moved them, this can change the shape, angle, and/or proportional size of the corresponding slurs. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

TIP

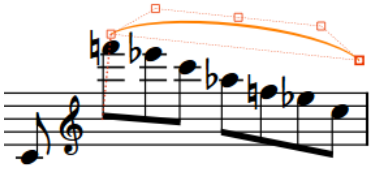
The following properties in the **Slurs** group of the Properties panel are activated automatically when you move the corresponding slur handles:

- **Start offset** moves the left endpoints of slurs. **X** moves them horizontally, **Y** moves them vertically.
- **End offset** moves the right endpoints of slurs. **X** moves them horizontally, **Y** moves them vertically.
- **Start handle offset** moves the left control points of slurs. **X** moves them horizontally, **Y** moves them vertically.
- **End handle offset** moves the right control points of slurs. **X** moves them horizontally, **Y** moves them vertically.

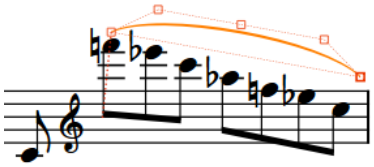
For example, if you move a whole slur upwards and to the right, all of its handles are moved so all properties are activated. You can also use these properties to change the shape of individual slurs by changing the values in the value fields.

Deactivating the properties resets the corresponding handles on the selected slurs to their default positions.

EXAMPLE



Slur with default angle and right endpoint selected



Slur with changed angle after moving the right endpoint downwards

RELATED LINKS

Inputting slurs on page 260
Slur shoulder offset on page 1177
Slurs over system and frame breaks on page 1159
Lengthening/Shortening items on page 410
Changing the property scope on page 617
Copying property settings to other layouts/frame chains on page 599

Changing the thickness of slurs

You can change the thickness of individual slurs, including changing the thickness of the middle of slurs independently of the ends of slurs. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the slurs whose thickness you want to change.
2. In the Properties panel, activate the following properties, individually or together, in the **Slurs** group:
   - **End thickness**
   - **Middle thickness**
3. Change the values in the value fields.

RESULT

Increasing the values makes the corresponding part of the selected slurs thicker, decreasing the values makes the corresponding part of the selected slurs thinner. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

Deactivating the properties returns the corresponding part of the selected slurs to their default thickness.

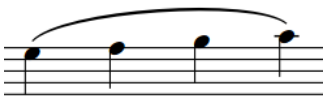
RELATED LINKS

Changing the property scope on page 617
Copying property settings to other layouts/frame chains on page 599

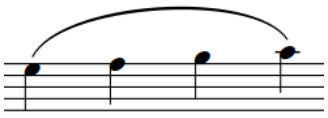
Slur height

The height of slurs determines how far above/below notes slurs extend vertically.

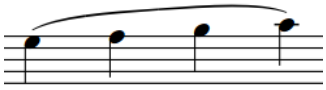
Increasing the height of slurs makes them extend further from the staff. This gives them a rounder shape, which takes up more vertical space. Where vertical space is limited, there should be a balance between how curved slurs are, which can help readability for players, and ensuring staves do not overlap.



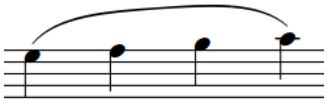
A long slur with default height



A long slur with increased height



A long flat slur with default height



A long flat slur with increased height

TIP

You can change the height of individual slurs in Engrave mode.

RELATED LINKS

Slurs over system and frame breaks on page 1159

Changing the height of slurs

You can change the height of individual slurs; for example, to reduce the height of a particularly long slur. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the slur height (middle) handle of the slurs whose height you want to change.
2. Move the handles in any of the following ways:
   - To move them upwards/downwards a standard amount, press **Alt/Opt** plus the corresponding arrow key. For example, press **Alt/Opt-Up Arrow** to move handles upwards. This moves handles by 1/8 space per press.
   - To move them upwards/downwards a large amount, press **Ctrl/Cmd** plus the standard key command; for example, **Ctrl/Cmd-Alt/Opt-Up Arrow**. This moves handles by 1 space per press.
   - To move them upwards/downwards a moderate amount, press **Shift** plus the standard key command; for example, **Shift-Alt/Opt-Up Arrow**. This moves handles by 1/2 space per press.

- To move them upwards/downwards a small amount, press **Ctrl/Cmd**-**Shift** plus the standard key command; for example, **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-Alt/Opt-Up Arrow**. This moves handles by 1/32 space per press.
- Click and drag them upwards/downwards.

RESULT

The height of the selected slurs is changed. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

NOTE

- To maintain a visually pleasing and symmetrical curve when changing the height of slurs manually, you may need to move slur height handles to the right/left by a small amount, as well as upwards/downwards.
- Moving slur height handles to the right/left affects the shape of the whole slur.

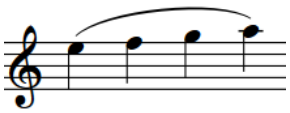
RELATED LINKS

Changing the shape/angle of slurs on page 1173
Changing the property scope on page 617
Copying property settings to other layouts/frame chains on page 599

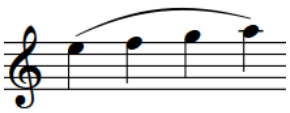
Slur shoulder offset

Slur shoulders affect the angles of the curves of slurs as they taper towards an endpoint, because the tapered ends often approach noteheads at a steeper angle than that of a slur's arch.

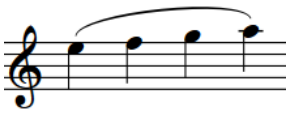
Increasing the shoulder offset makes the onset of the curve shallower, whereas decreasing the shoulder offset makes the onset steeper. The shoulder offset must therefore be balanced with the height of the slur in order to achieve the ideal curved shape.



A long slur with default shoulder offset of 1/3



A long slur with increased shoulder offset of 1.5



A long slur with decreased shoulder offset of -1/2

You can adjust the shoulders of individual slurs in Engrave mode.

Changing the shoulder offset of slurs

You can adjust the shoulders of individual slurs by moving their control point handles. You can move each control point independently. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select one of the control point handles on each of the slurs whose shoulders you want to adjust in any of the following ways:

- Select a whole slur and press **Tab** to cycle through the handles until the one you want to move is selected.
- Click the handle you want to move.
- **Ctrl/Cmd**-click individual handles on multiple slurs.

2. Move the handles in any of the following ways:
   - To move them a standard amount to the right, left, up, or down, press **Alt/Opt** plus the corresponding arrow key. For example, press **Alt/Opt-Left Arrow** to move handles to the left. This moves handles by 1/8 space per press.
   - To move them a large amount, press **Ctrl/Cmd** plus the standard key command; for example, **Ctrl/Cmd-Alt/Opt-Left Arrow**. This moves handles by 1 space per press.
   - To move them a moderate amount, press **Shift** plus the standard key command; for example, **Shift-Alt/Opt-Left Arrow**. This moves handles by 1/2 space per press.
   - To move them a small amount, press **Ctrl/Cmd**-**Shift** plus the standard key command; for example, **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-Alt/Opt-Left Arrow**. This moves handles by 1/32 space per press.
   - Click and drag them in any direction.
3. Optional: Repeat steps 1 and 2 for the other control point handle on the slurs whose shoulders you want to adjust.

RESULT

The shoulder offset of the selected slurs is changed. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

TIP

The following properties in the **Slurs** group of the Properties panel are activated automatically when you move the corresponding slur handles:

- **Start handle offset** moves the left control points of slurs. **X** moves them horizontally, **Y** moves them vertically.
- **End handle offset** moves the right control points of slurs. **X** moves them horizontally, **Y** moves them vertically.

You can also use these properties to change the shoulder offset of individual slurs by changing the values in the value fields.

Deactivating the properties resets the corresponding handles on the selected slurs to their default positions.

RELATED LINKS

Slurs in Engrave mode on page 1171

Slurs in playback

Slurs trigger the legato playing technique in playback. By default, this increases the length of the MIDI notes without affecting the notation of the music.

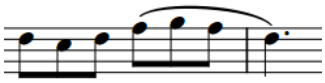
Slurred notes sound for 105% of the length indicated by their notated rhythm, as opposed to non-slurred notes which sound for 95% of their notated rhythm.

The final note of a slur sounds for 95% of its notated rhythm, as there is no slur after it and the legato technique is no longer required.

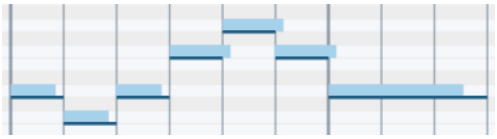
TIP

You can enable independent voice playback for individual instruments to hear different sounds in different voices simultaneously; for example, if you have slurs in one voice and staccatos in another voice.

The example shows how MIDI note length, indicated by the filled, light-colored rectangles, is increased when slurs are used. The thin, darker rod shows the notated duration of each note. The first three notes are non-slurred, so the MIDI length rectangle is shorter than the line of the notated rhythm. The last four notes are slurred together, so the MIDI length is longer than the notated length in order to create the legato, slurred sound. However, the last note of the slurred group is not longer, as the last note of a slurred phrase is treated like a normal, non-slurred note.



A phrase in an instrument staff



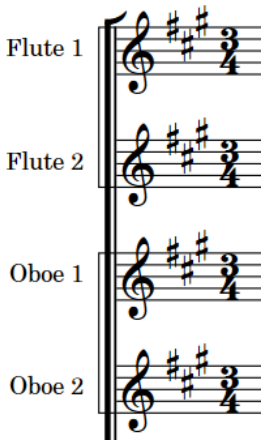
The same phrase in the piano roll editor

RELATED LINKS
Played vs. notated note durations on page 639
Piano roll editor on page 630
Enabling independent voice playback on page 506

Staff labels

Staff labels are used to identify the instruments playing the music on the corresponding staves, and are positioned to the left of systems, before the initial barline of each system. Staff labels are typically used in music containing multiple players.

It is usual to show instrument names in full in the staff labels for the first systems in each flow, and abbreviated instrument names in the staff labels of subsequent systems. Using abbreviated instrument names saves horizontal space, allowing you to include more music in each system.



Examples of staff labels on the first system in a flow

By default in Dorico Elements, staff labels show the instrument names set for each instrument. You can show player names in staff labels instead for each player in each layout independently; for example, for percussionists who play multiple instruments.

For players holding multiple instruments and showing instrument names in staff labels, the staff label shows the instrument they are currently playing. If the player changes instrument partway through a system, the name of the new instrument is shown above the staff at its first note and the staff label is updated at the start of the next system.

Dorico Elements includes the instrument transposition, or instrument pitch, in staff labels for transposing instruments by default. Transposing instruments are instruments whose sounding pitch is different to the notated pitch.

Part layouts by default do not show staff labels, as most parts only contain a single staff whose identity is clear from the context and the layout name. The layout name is shown at the top left of the first page in part layouts by default.

You can change when instrument transpositions, or instrument pitches, are shown in staff labels. You can also change whether the instrument transposition is shown before or after the instrument name in staff labels.

NOTE

- You do not need to number instruments in staff labels manually, as Dorico Elements automatically numbers instruments when there are multiple players of the same type holding instruments with identical names.
- Layout names are different to the instrument names used for staff labels.

- Staff labels do not show all instruments held by players; for example, in the staff label for the first system. You should include a comprehensive instrumentation list that shows any doubling at the front of your score.

Staff labels imported from MusicXML files

When exporting MusicXML files from Cubase and importing them into Dorico Elements, you can improve the accuracy of the automatic instrument selection by changing the instrument names in the Cubase **Score Editor** to the same English instrument names that Dorico Elements uses before exporting the file.

RELATED LINKS
Player, layout, and instrument names on page 172
Transposing instruments on page 133
Instrument numbering on page 129
Changing instrument names on page 175
Renaming players on page 173

Hiding/Showing staff labels

You can show full or abbreviated instrument names in staff labels, or hide all staff labels entirely, in each layout independently. The first system in each flow and all subsequent systems can have different staff label lengths.

By default, full staff labels are shown on the first system of each flow and abbreviated staff labels are shown on subsequent systems in full score layouts. In part layouts, staff labels are not shown on any systems.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-L** to open **Layout Options**.
2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to hide/show staff labels.

   By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar, clicking and dragging across multiple layouts, **Shift**-clicking adjacent layouts, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking individual layouts.
3. In the category list, click **Staves and Systems**.
4. In the **Staff Labels** section, choose one of the following options for **Staff labels on first system**:
   - **Full**
   - **Abbreviated**
   - **None**
5. Choose one of the following options for **Staff labels on subsequent systems**:
   - **Full**
   - **Abbreviated**
   - **None**
6. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

Staff labels are hidden/shown on the corresponding staves in the selected layouts.

- **None** hides staff labels.
- **Full** and **Abbreviated** show staff labels using the corresponding instrument name length.

TIP

These settings apply to each flow in the layout, not the project as a whole. If, for example, you want to show full staff labels on the first system in the first flow in your project, but want to show abbreviated staff labels on the first systems of all subsequent flows, we recommend choosing the setting appropriate for the most flows in the layout, then changing the length of staff labels at other positions as required.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

- You can change the full and short names for each instrument.
- You can change whether staff labels show instrument or player names for each player in each layout independently.

RELATED LINKS

Staff label contents on page 1184
Changing instrument names on page 175
Player, layout, and instrument names on page 172
Staff labels on condensed staves on page 1190
Staff labels for percussion kits on page 1189

Changing the minimum indent for systems with staff labels

You can change the minimum indent for all systems that show staff labels to optimize horizontal space in each layout independently.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-L** to open **Layout Options**.
2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts whose minimum indent for systems with staff labels you want to change.

   By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar, clicking and dragging across multiple layouts, **Shift**-clicking adjacent layouts, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking individual layouts.
3. In the category list, click **Staves and Systems**.
4. In the **Staff Labels** section, change the value for **Minimum indent for systems with staff labels**.
5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

The minimum indent on all systems that show staff labels is changed in the selected layouts.

RELATED LINKS

Changing the first system indent on page 1198

Hiding/Showing staff labels at system/frame breaks

You can change whether staff labels at individual system/frame breaks show full, abbreviated, or no instrument names, independently of your per-layout settings. For example, if you want full staff labels at the start of the first flow but abbreviated staff labels at the start of subsequent flows, or if you want to show staff labels in choral music only on systems that contain more complicated parts, solo lines, or divisi lines.

PREREQUISITE

- You have inserted system/frame breaks at the positions from which you want to change the length of instrument names in staff labels.
- Signposts are shown for system/frame breaks.
- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the system/frame break signposts at the positions where you want to hide/show staff labels.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Staff labels** in the **Format** group.
3. Select one of the following options from the menu:
   - **Full**
   - **Abbreviated**
   - **None**

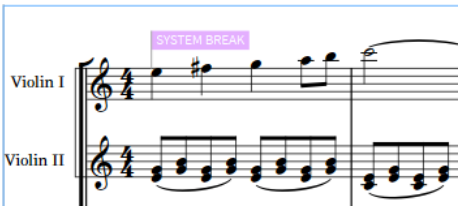
RESULT

Staff labels are hidden/shown on the corresponding systems to the selected system/frame breaks. Horizontal spacing is automatically adjusted so the system fills the width of the music frame.

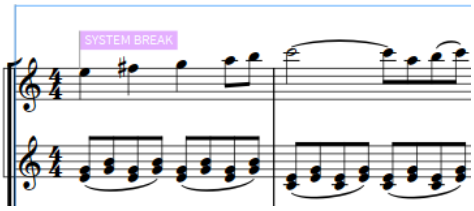
- **None** hides staff labels.
- **Full** and **Abbreviated** show staff labels using the corresponding instrument name length.

Deactivating the property returns any selected system break signposts to your per-layout settings.

EXAMPLE



Full staff labels shown



No staff labels shown

RELATED LINKS

Inserting system breaks on page 586
Inserting frame breaks on page 590
Hiding/Showing system break signposts on page 588

Hiding/Showing frame break signposts on page 592

Staff label contents

Staff labels can show the instrument names set for each instrument or the player name of the corresponding player. Staff labels can show full or short names.

Instrument numbers are automatically shown in both full and abbreviated staff labels that use instrument names.

- **Full** staff labels use full instrument/player names.
- **Abbreviated** staff labels use short instrument/player names.
- **None** shows no staff labels.

NOTE

- You can change the full and short names for each instrument and player.
- Renaming instruments and players does not change the name shown at the top of each part layout if you have already renamed the layout. You can rename layouts separately.

RELATED LINKS
Player, layout, and instrument names on page 172
Instrument numbering on page 129
Changing instrument names on page 175
Renaming players on page 173
Renaming layouts on page 174
Instrument changes on page 130
Layout Options dialog on page 677

Showing instrument/player names in staff labels

You can change whether staff labels show instrument or player names for each player in each layout independently. For example, you can show the player names for percussionists in full score layouts and instrument names in percussion part layouts.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-L** to open **Layout Options**.
2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to change the contents of staff labels.

   By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar, clicking and dragging across multiple layouts, **Shift**-clicking adjacent layouts, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking individual layouts.
3. In the category list, click **Staves and Systems**.
4. In the **Staff Labels** section, in the **Show player name instead of instrument names** list, activate the checkbox for each player whose player name you want to show in staff labels.
5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

Player names are shown for players when their checkbox is activated. Instrument names are shown for players when their checkbox is deactivated.

Full and short player names are used according to your staff label settings.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

You can change the full and short names for each instrument and player.

RELATED LINKS
Percussion kit presentation types on page 1293
Renaming groups in grid presentation percussion kits on page 155

Instrument transpositions in staff labels

Instrument transpositions indicate the interval between the note an instrument plays and the sounding note produced. Transposing instruments, such as Horn in F and Clarinet in B♭, are commonly shown with their transposition, also known as their "instrument pitch", as part of their instrument name or layout name.

Depending on the options set for **Show transposition** in the **Edit Instrument Names** dialog for each transposing instrument, they might show transpositions in staff labels even if you have hidden transpositions in staff labels in their layout.

Dorico Elements sets common transposing instruments, such as Clarinet in B♭ and Trumpet in B♭, to follow your per-layout settings for hiding/showing instrument transpositions in staff labels.

To reduce the risk of confusion, uncommon transposing instruments, such as Clarinet in A or Trumpet in E, are set to show their transposition in staff labels always, even if you have hidden instrument transpositions in the layout.

RELATED LINKS
Transposing instruments on page 133
Player, layout, and instrument names on page 172
Changing instrument names on page 175
Changing the language for instrument names on page 57
Hiding/Showing staff labels on page 1181

Hiding/Showing instrument transpositions in staff labels

You can hide/show instrument transpositions in staff labels in each layout independently. For example, you can hide instrument transpositions in staff labels in full score layouts but show them in part layouts.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-L** to open **Layout Options**.
2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to hide/show instrument transpositions in staff labels.

   By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar, clicking and dragging across multiple layouts, **Shift**-clicking adjacent layouts, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking individual layouts.
3. In the category list, click **Staves and Systems**.
4. In the **Staff Labels** section, activate/deactivate the following options for **Instrument pitch or transposition**:
   - **Show in full staff labels**

- **Show in abbreviated staff labels**

5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

Instrument transpositions are shown in staff labels of the corresponding length in the selected layouts when the corresponding checkbox is activated, and hidden when the corresponding checkbox is deactivated.

NOTE

Depending on the options set for **Show transposition** in the **Edit Instrument Names** dialog for each transposing instrument, they might show transpositions in staff labels even if you have hidden transpositions in staff labels in their layout.

Changing the appearance/position of instrument transpositions in staff labels

You can change the appearance and position of instrument transpositions in staff labels in each layout independently. For example, if you want to show instrument transpositions on a separate line in part layouts, but on the same line and parenthesized in full score layouts.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-L** to open **Layout Options**.
2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts whose instrument transposition appearance/position you want to change.

   By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar, clicking and dragging across multiple layouts, **Shift**-clicking adjacent layouts, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking individual layouts.
3. In the category list, click **Staves and Systems**.
4. In the **Staff Labels** section, choose one of the following options for **Position of instrument pitch in full staff labels**:

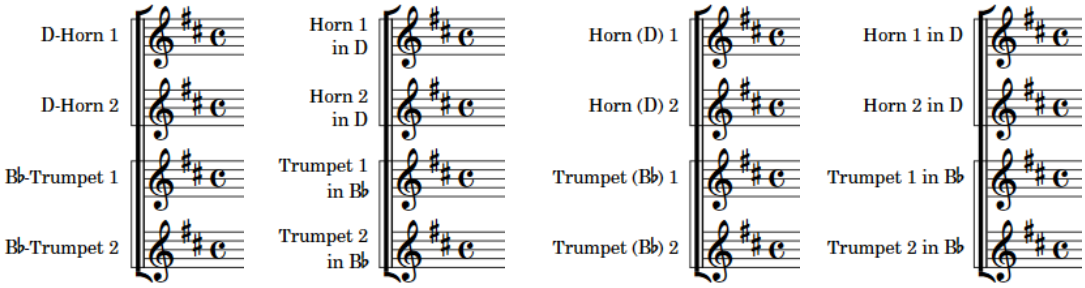
   - **Start**
   - **End**
5. Optional: If you chose **Start**, enter the characters you want to appear as separators into the **Separator between instrument pitch at start and name** field.
6. Optional: If you chose **End**, activate/deactivate the following options:

   - **Show on separate line**
   - **Show in parentheses**
   - **Show instrument number before transposition**
7. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

The appearance and position of instrument transpositions in staff labels is changed in the selected layouts.

EXAMPLE



Instrument transposition shown at start, with hyphen separator

Instrument transposition shown at end, on separate line

Instrument transposition shown at end, in parentheses

Instrument transposition shown at end, after instrument number

RELATED LINKS

Changing the language for instrument names on page 57
Instrument numbering on page 129

Hiding/Showing instrument change labels at the start of flows

You can hide/show instrument change labels at the start of each flow in each layout independently. These labels can be useful for players holding multiple instruments as a way of clarifying the instrument required in their part layouts, which do not normally show staff labels.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-L** to open **Layout Options**.
2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to hide/show instrument change labels at the start of flows.

   By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar, clicking and dragging across multiple layouts, **Shift**-clicking adjacent layouts, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking individual layouts.
3. In the category list, click **Players**.
4. In the **Instrument Changes** section, activate/deactivate **Show instrument change label at start of flow**.
5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

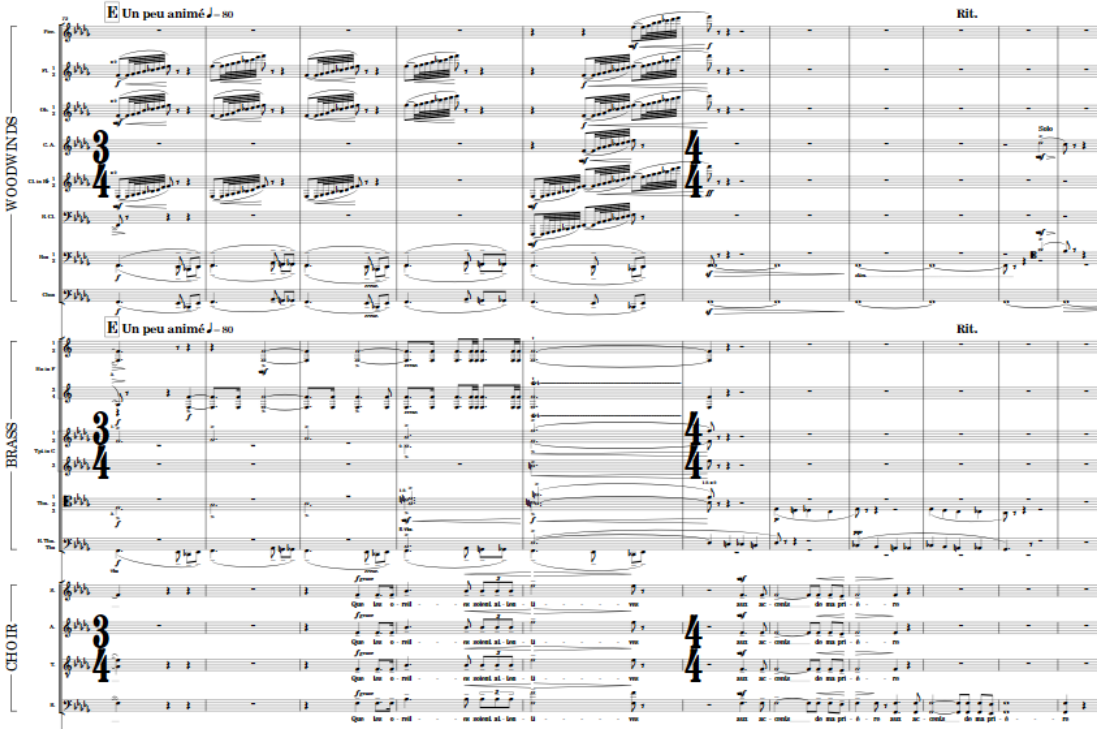
Instrument change labels are shown in the first bar of each flow in the selected layouts when **Show instrument change label at start of flow** is activated, and hidden when it is deactivated.

RELATED LINKS

Instrument changes on page 130

Player group labels

Player group labels show the names of player groups as vertical text on vertical brackets to the left of staff labels. They allow you to identify groups of staves and are typically used in large-scale works, such as for orchestra and double choir.



Player group labels to the left of staff labels, showing sections in an orchestra

Player group labels show full player group names by default. Short player group names are used when the full player group name is longer than the bracket.

You can show player group labels in each layout independently.

RELATED LINKS
Player groups on page 158
Renaming player groups on page 160
Brackets and braces on page 776

Hiding/Showing player group labels

You can hide/show player group labels in each layout independently. For example, if you want to show player group labels for choirs in the full score layout but hide them in the vocal score layout.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-L** to open **Layout Options**.
2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to hide/show player group labels.

   By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar, clicking and dragging across multiple layouts, **Shift**-clicking adjacent layouts, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking individual layouts.
3. In the category list, click **Staves and Systems**.

4. In the **Staff Labels** section, activate/deactivate **Show player group names**.
5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

Player group labels are shown in the selected layouts when **Show player group names** is activated, and hidden when it is deactivated.

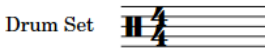
Staff labels for percussion kits

The staff labels shown for percussion kit staves depend on their percussion kit presentation type.

The following staff labels are shown for the corresponding percussion kit presentation type:

5-line staff

Single instrument name using the instrument name of the percussion kit.

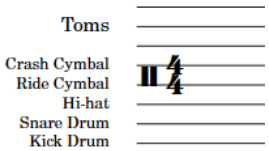


Grid

Multiple instrument names: one for each kit instrument, positioned at the staff position of the corresponding instrument.

Group names are centered between instruments in each group.

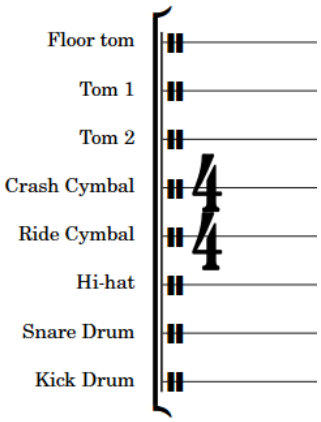
Staff labels for individual instruments in grids use a smaller font and a different paragraph style than used for standard instrument staff labels. Groups in grids use the standard staff label paragraph style.



Single-line instruments

Multiple instrument names: one for each kit instrument, positioned beside the corresponding single-line staff.

Staff labels for single-line instruments use the same font and paragraph style as used for standard instrument staff labels.



You can change the player names, layout names, and instrument names of percussion kits in the same ways as for other players and instruments. However, to change the staff labels for percussion kits, you must change kit instrument names in different ways for percussion kits, depending on your percussion kit presentation type:

- 5-line staff: Open the **Edit Instrument Names** dialog from the **Players** panel in Setup mode, or use the **Name** field in the **Edit Percussion Kit** dialog, to change the name of the kit.
- Grid/Single-line instruments: Open the **Edit Instrument Names** dialog from inside the **Edit Percussion Kit** dialog in Setup mode to change the names of individual instruments.

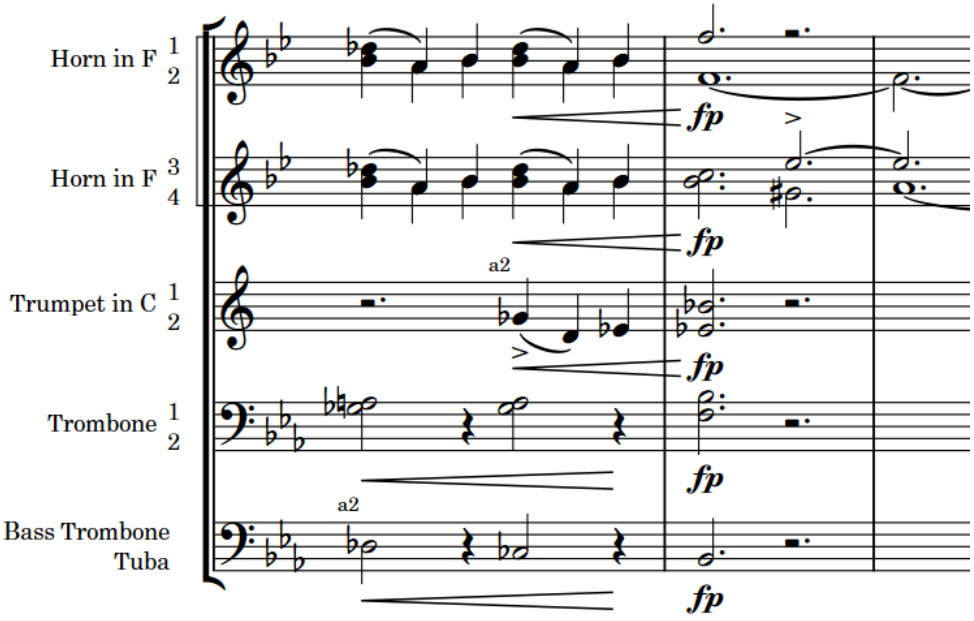
The same instrument name fields and options are available for kit instruments as for standard pitched instruments.

RELATED LINKS
Edit Instrument Names dialog on page 176
Player, layout, and instrument names on page 172
Renaming groups in grid presentation percussion kits on page 155
Creating groups of instruments within grid presentation percussion kits on page 154
Edit Percussion Kit dialog on page 150
Unpitched percussion on page 1282
Percussion kit presentation types on page 1293

Staff labels on condensed staves

Staff labels on condensed staves must reflect all the players included on the staff. Dorico Elements automatically consolidates identical instrument names in staff labels on condensed staves but always shows all the required player numbers.

On condensed staves containing different types of instruments or instruments with different names, all required instrument names are shown.



Staff labels on condensed brass staves

Because condensing can change frequently, staff labels on condensed staves can vary from one system to another. The staff labels for condensed divisi staves reflect the divisions at the start of the system and show instrument names.

Dorico Elements also shows player labels above/below condensed staves to identify the players to which notes on condensed staves belong, as condensing can change within a single system. For condensed divisi staves, Dorico Elements shows the player labels “div.”, with any required qualifications, and your set unison indication where each division starts and ends respectively.

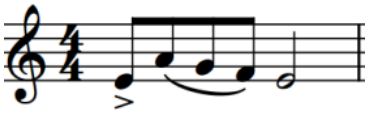
RELATED LINKS

Hiding/Showing staff labels on page 1181
Condensing on page 595
Player, layout, and instrument names on page 172

Staves

A staff is a line or group of lines on which musical notes are notated to indicate the pitch and rhythm of music. Pitched instruments use the traditional five-line staff and unpitched instruments often use a single-line staff.

Notes are positioned on the lines and in the spaces on five-line staves, and can also use ledger lines above/below the staff to represent pitches that cannot fit on the staff.

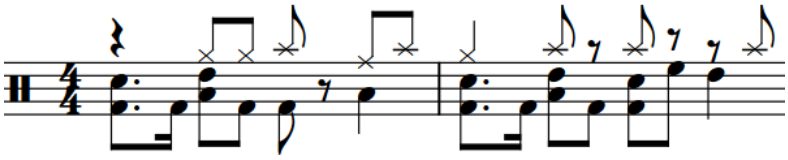


A phrase on a five-line staff

The same phrase on a single-line staff

The pitch and register of notes on five-line staves are determined by clefs, which can also be combined with octave lines to indicate what pitches performers play.

On five-line staves for unpitched percussion instruments, the different staff positions correspond to different percussion instruments.



Because it is often necessary to have different staff sizes in different layouts depending on their type, such as having smaller staves in full score layouts than in part layouts, in Dorico Elements you can change various aspects of staves in **Layout Options**.

RELATED LINKS

Page formatting on page 555
Layout Options dialog on page 677
Clefs on page 816
Octave lines on page 822
Percussion kit presentation types on page 1293
Hiding/Showing empty staves on page 562
Hiding/Showing blank staves after final flows on page 564
Adding players on page 121
Adding instruments to players on page 133
Condensing on page 595
Divisi on page 1199
System dividers on page 1194
System objects on page 1196
System indents on page 1198

Per-layout options for staves

You can change settings that affect the staves in each layout independently.

You can change the size of staves in each layout in the **Space Size** section of the **Page Setup** page in **Layout Options**.

You can change other aspects of staves on the **Staves and Systems** page in **Layout Options**. For example, you can change which staff labels are shown on systems, indent the first system of each flow, and fix the number of bars included in each system. You can also select above which staves system objects appear, according to their instrument families.

NOTE

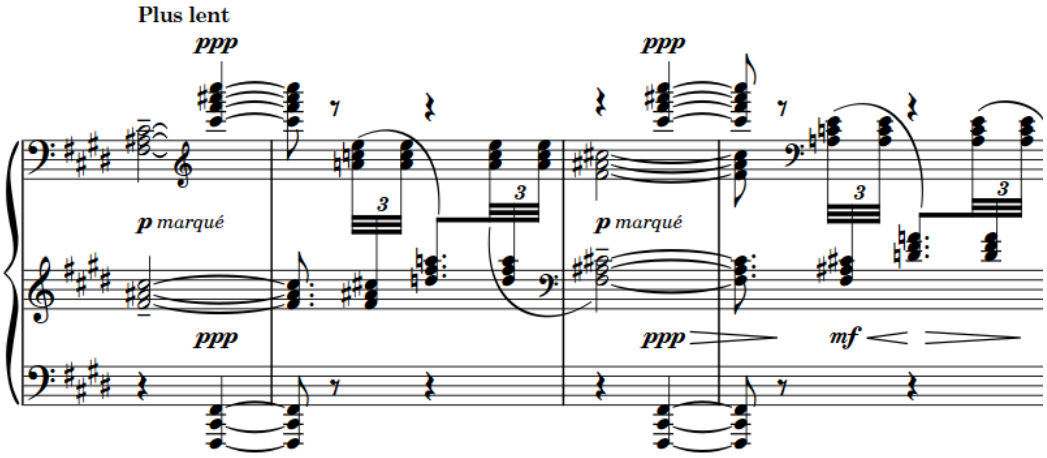
- If the size of system object font styles is set to **Staff-relative**, the staff size of the top staff in each instrument family group affects the size of system objects if they are shown above that bracketed group. Font styles that are set to **Absolute** are unaffected by staff size.
- System objects are only shown above bracketed groups in your project. If you have no brackets, system objects only appear at the top of systems.

RELATED LINKS
Page formatting on page 555
Layout Options dialog on page 677
Staff size on page 573
System objects on page 1196
Hiding/Showing empty staves on page 562
Hiding/Showing system dividers on page 1195
Brackets and braces on page 776

Extra staves

It is sometimes necessary to add extra staves to instruments; for example, to make complex contrapuntal music easier to read because it is spread out across more staves than usual for that instrument.

In Dorico Elements, you cannot add extra staves. However, extra staves are shown if you import or open a project that contains them.



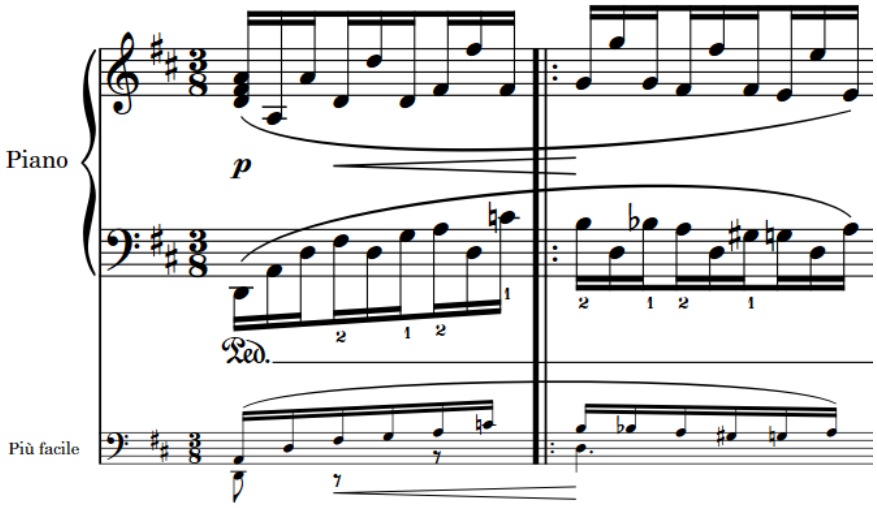
An extract of Debussy's piano prelude "Feuilles mortes" with three staves

RELATED LINKS
Ossia staves on page 1194
Divisi on page 1199
Voice-specific dynamics on page 838
Hiding/Showing empty staves on page 562
Signposts on page 426

Ossia staves

Ossia staves are smaller staves shown above/below the main staff of an instrument. They are used to show alternative phrases that can be played instead of the original phrase, such as suggestions for ornaments, alternative notations from other sources, or an easier version.

In Dorico Elements, you cannot add ossia staves. However, ossia staves are shown if you import or open a project that contains them.



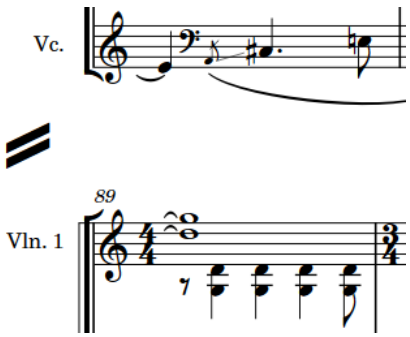
An ossia staff below the left-hand piano staff shows an easier alternative

RELATED LINKS
Extra staves on page 1193

System dividers

System dividers are used to clarify the separation of different systems when they appear on the same page. They are usually shown as two thick, parallel angled lines positioned to the left of initial barlines.

In Dorico Elements, the outer edges of system dividers are aligned with the corresponding edges of music frames.



A system divider between two systems in a string quartet score

You can show system dividers in different circumstances and change their appearance in each layout independently.

Hiding/Showing system dividers

You can change the circumstances in which system dividers are shown, including specifying the minimum number of players required to show them, in each layout independently. For example, if you only want to show system dividers between systems that contain different numbers of staves.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-L** to open **Layout Options**.
2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to hide/show system dividers.

   By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar, clicking and dragging across multiple layouts, **Shift**-clicking adjacent layouts, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking individual layouts.
3. In the category list, click **Staves and Systems**.
4. In the **System Dividers** section, activate/deactivate **Show system dividers**.
5. If you activated **Show system dividers**, choose one of the following options:
   - To show system dividers only between systems containing more than a set number of staves, choose **When min. staves exceeded**.
   - To show system dividers between all systems in flows that contain more than a set number of players, choose **When min. players exceeded**.
   - To show system dividers only between systems containing different numbers of staves, **When number of staves differs**.
6. Optional: Do one of the following:
   - If you chose **When min. staves exceeded**, change the value for **Minimum number of staves in system**.
   - If you chose **When min. players exceeded**, change the value for **Minimum number of players**.
7. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

- If you deactivated **Show system dividers**, system dividers are hidden in the selected layouts.
- If you activated **Show system dividers**, system dividers are shown in the corresponding circumstances in the selected layouts.

RELATED LINKS
Hiding/Showing empty staves on page 562

Changing the length of system dividers

You can change the length of system dividers in each layout independently; for example, if you want to show longer system dividers in layouts that show full staff labels.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-L** to open **Layout Options**.
2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to show system dividers.

   By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar, clicking and dragging across multiple layouts, **Shift**-clicking adjacent layouts, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking individual layouts.
3. In the category list, click **Staves and Systems**.
4. In the **System Dividers** section, choose one of the following options for **Appearance**:
   - **Default**
   - **Long**
   - **Extra long**
5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

System objects

System objects are items that apply to all staves in the system and appear in all layouts, but are not necessary to show on every staff in full score layouts. For example, tempo marks and rehearsal marks are important for all players to see in their parts, but would cause an orchestral full score to appear very cluttered if they were shown on every staff.

In Dorico Elements, the following items are considered system objects:

- Rehearsal marks
- Repeat endings
- Repeat markers
- System-attached text
- Tempo marks
- Time signatures shown above the staff
- Horizontal lines that apply to all staves

System objects automatically appear at least once in all layouts. You can show system objects at multiple positions in each system by showing them above multiple instrument families. For example, you might show them above the woodwind, brass, percussion, and string families. In an orchestral full score, this would ensure system objects are spread out evenly across the page, meaning no staff is very far from these important markings. You can also show rehearsal marks and repeat endings additionally below the bottom staff.

NOTE

- System objects are only shown above instrument families that are bracketed or braced together. You can change bracket grouping in each layout independently.

- If the size of system object font styles is set to **Staff-relative**, the staff size of the top staff in each instrument family group affects the size of system objects if they are shown above that bracketed group. Font styles that are set to **Absolute** are unaffected by staff size.

RELATED LINKS
Changing bracket grouping according to ensemble type on page 777
Brackets and braces on page 776
Rehearsal marks on page 1095
Tempo marks on page 1204
Repeat endings on page 1107
Large time signatures on page 1254
Inputting text items on page 370

Changing the positions of system objects

You can show system objects above different instrument families in each layout independently. Multiple items are categorized as system objects, including system-attached text, rehearsal marks, tempo marks, repeat markers, and repeat endings.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-L** to open **Layout Options**.
2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to change the instrument families above which system objects appear.

   By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar, clicking and dragging across multiple layouts, **Shift**-clicking adjacent layouts, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking individual layouts.
3. In the category list, click **Staves and Systems**.
4. In the **System Objects** section, activate the checkboxes for the instrument families above which you want system objects to appear.
5. Activate/Deactivate the following options for **Also show below bottom staff**:
   - **Repeat endings**
   - **Rehearsal marks**
6. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

System objects appear above the top staff in each bracketed group you select, provided a bracketed group for that instrument family is included in the selected layouts. If you activated options for **Also show below bottom staff**, the corresponding notations additionally appear below the bottom staff.

NOTE

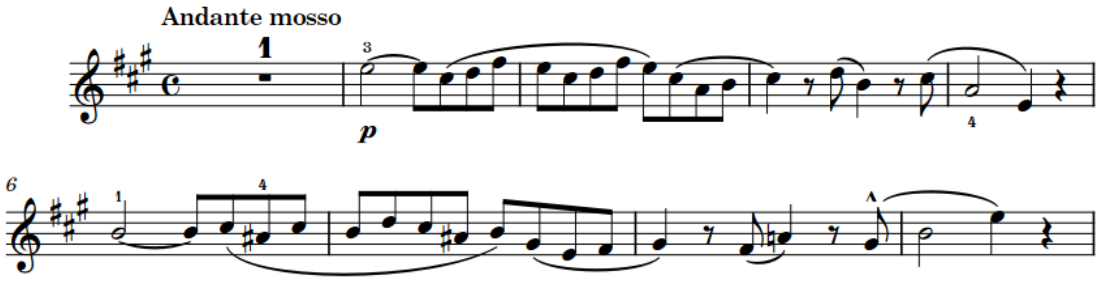
System objects are only shown above instrument families that are bracketed or braced together. You can change bracket grouping in each layout independently.

RELATED LINKS
System objects on page 1196

System indents

System indents control the distance between the left page margin and the start of systems of music. According to tradition, the first system in part layouts is indented, but in modern use this is not always necessary.

According to convention, coda sections at the start of new systems are also indented. Dorico Elements uses the same gap size before the start of codas whether they occur partway through systems or at the start of a new system.



A violin part with the first system indented

In Dorico Elements, system indents automatically adjust to accommodate staff labels. For example, if a system contains a staff label that is significantly longer than the minimum system indent, Dorico Elements increases the indent on that system to ensure the staff label remains legible and is not cut off on the left edge or collides with the music.

You can change both the minimum indent on systems with staff labels and the first system indent in each layout independently. You can also adjust the system indent at both the start and end of individual systems, independently of your per-layout settings.

RELATED LINKS
Changing the minimum indent for systems with staff labels on page 1182
Hiding/Showing staff labels on page 1181
Changing the horizontal justification of final systems on page 569

Changing the first system indent

By default in Dorico Elements, the first system of each flow is indented in part layouts. You can change the indent for the first system of all flows in each layout independently.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-L** to open **Layout Options**.
2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts whose first system indent you want to change.

   By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar, clicking and dragging across multiple layouts, **Shift**-clicking adjacent layouts, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking individual layouts.
3. In the category list, click **Staves and Systems**.
4. In the **Staff Labels** section, change the value for **Indent first system of flow by**.
5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

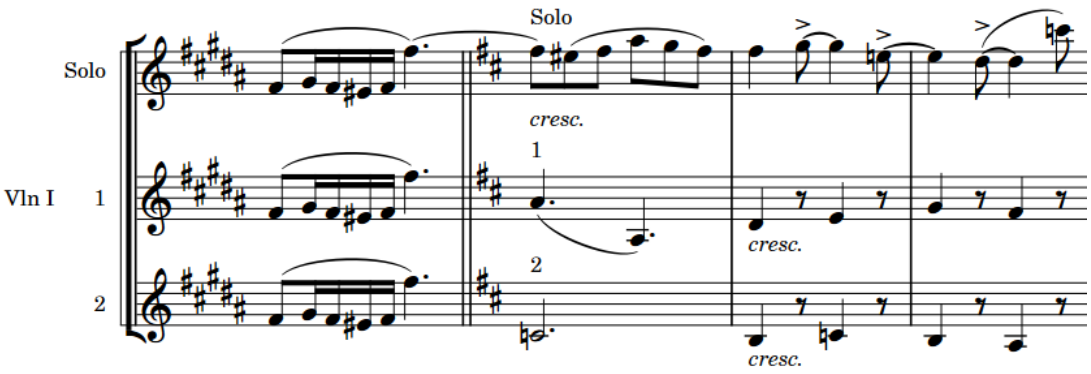
RESULT

The indent of the first system of all flows is changed in the selected layouts.

Divisi

Divisi is when players split, or “divide”, in order to play multiple lines of music, commonly for a limited passage, before returning to play together, or “tutti”. Divisi passages can be notated with all lines on a single staff or across multiple staves.

Divisi is a technique most commonly used in orchestral string writing, as the string section typically contains a large number of players compared to the number of staves. For example, large orchestras commonly have twelve first violins all playing the same part most of the time. Dividing those players into multiple parts allows composers to write more complex contrapuntal music.



An example divisi change in a Violin I part, splitting it into two sections and a solo line

If the division is relatively simple, it is possible to write all parts on the same staff and label the section, with an indication of how many players are required for each line if necessary. If the parts have different rhythms at times, you can input them into separate voices on the same staff.

However, when a section is divided into multiple parts that are too different to be clearly written on a single staff, it is necessary to divide them onto multiple staves. In Dorico Pro, divisi changes allow you not only to divide sections into any number of parts with any number of staves, but also to include solo lines and group staves as required.

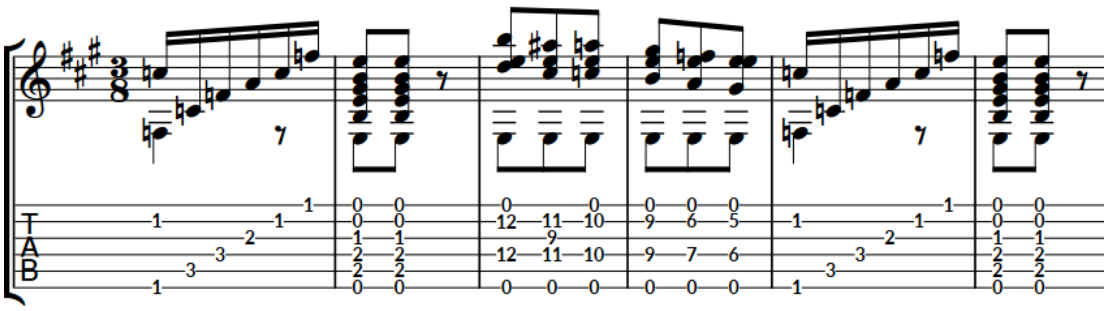
In Dorico Elements, you cannot input divisi changes. However, divisi changes are shown if you import or open a project that contains them.

RELATED LINKS

Extra staves on page 1193
Inputting notes into multiple voices on page 221
Condensing on page 595

Tablature

Tablature is an alternative notation to the five-line staff, and is used for fretted instruments. On tablature, pitches are indicated by fret numbers positioned on lines, each of which represents a string on the instrument. As tablature is commonly used for guitars, it usually shows six lines.

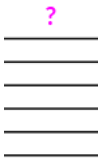


An extract of guitar music shown on both a notation staff and tablature

In Dorico Elements, you can show music for fretted instruments, such as the guitar or bass, on a regular notation staff and tablature together or only show one or the other. Notes and notations are linked between both presentations, meaning any changes you make to one, including inputting notes, automatically update the other.

On tablature, ties are automatically notated as round brackets around the second note/chord and all subsequent notes/chords in tie chains.

Any notes beyond the range of the instrument or impossible to calculate, such as below the nut on the lowest string or a natural harmonic without a suitable node, are shown on tablature as pink question marks. If two notes are allocated to the same string at the same rhythmic position, both notes appear beside each other and are colored green.



Note on tablature that cannot be calculated

The appropriate tablature is automatically shown for instruments according to their strings and tuning settings. There are default tunings stored for each instrument type in Dorico Elements, which you can customize in the **Edit Strings and Tuning** dialog.

RELATED LINKS
Hiding/Showing notation staves and tablature on page 1201
Fretted instrument tuning on page 138
Edit Strings and Tuning dialog on page 138
Inputting notes on tablature on page 232
Changing music area colors on page 54
Harmonics on page 968
Guitar bends on page 1006
Guitar techniques on page 1021
Ties on page 1232

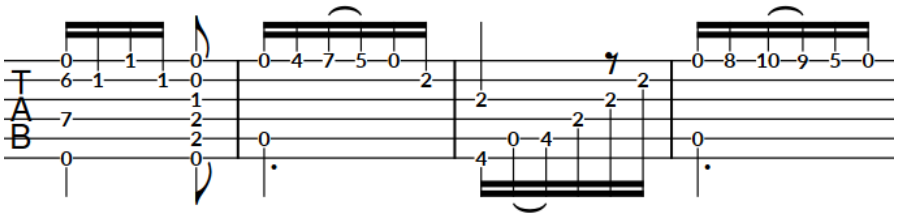
Trills on page 981

Rhythms on tablature

When notation staves and tablature are both shown, it is customary only to notate rhythms on the notation staff. However, when only tablature is shown, it is necessary to show rhythms on tablature.

The following items are shown to indicate rhythms on tablature:

- Time signatures
- Stems, stem flags, and beaming
- Rhythm dots



Rhythms shown on tablature

NOTE

Stems, stem flags, and beaming always appear stem-up on tablature in single-voice contexts, which means they can collide with guitar bends.

RELATED LINKS
Inputting notes on tablature on page 232

Hiding/Showing notation staves and tablature

You can show notation staves only, tablature only, or both in each layout independently and for each player holding at least one fretted instrument independently. For example, you can show only notation staves in the full score layout, but the notation staff and tablature in a guitar part layout.

When tablature is shown, it can appear with or without rhythms.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-L** to open **Layout Options**.
2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to hide/show tablature.

   By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar, clicking and dragging across multiple layouts, **Shift**-clicking adjacent layouts, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking individual layouts.
3. In the category list, click **Players**.
4. In the **Fretted Instruments** section, choose one of the following options for each player holding at least one fretted instrument in your project:
   - To show only notation staves and hide tablature, choose **Notation only**.
   - To show both notation staves and tablature, choose **Notation and tablature**.

- To show only tablature and hide notation staves, choose **Tablature only**.

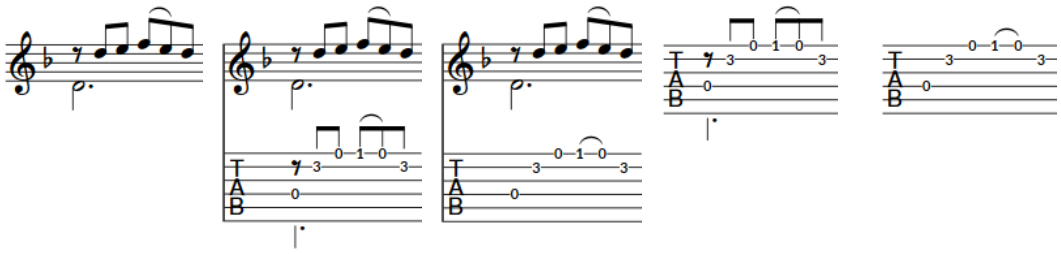
5. Optional: If you chose **Notation and tablature** or **Tablature only**, activate/deactivate **Show rhythms in tablature**.
6. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

Notation staves and tablature are hidden/shown for the corresponding players in the selected layouts.

If tablature is shown, it appears with rhythms when **Show rhythms in tablature** is activated, and without rhythms when it is deactivated.

EXAMPLE



Notation only | **Notation and tablature** with rhythms | **Notation and tablature** without rhythms | **Tablature only** with rhythms | **Tablature only** without rhythms

RELATED LINKS

Players on page 120
Fretted instrument tuning on page 138
Inputting notes on tablature on page 232
Guitar bends on page 1006
Guitar techniques on page 1021
Hiding/Showing empty staves on page 562
Changing instruments on page 136

Changing the allocated string for notes on tablature

You can change the string to which individual notes are allocated on tablature manually; for example, if you input the notes on the notation staff and want to change their default string allocation.

NOTE

You cannot allocate notes to a string on which they are impossible, such as if the note is lower than the open pitch of the string.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

PROCEDURE

1. On tablature, select the fret numbers of notes whose allocated string you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.

   NOTE

   You must select fret numbers on tablature, you cannot select the notes on notation staves.

2. Change their allocated string in any of the following ways:
   - To move them up a string, press **N**.
   - To move them down a string, press **M**.
   - In the Properties panel, select a string from the **String** menu in the **Notes and Rests** group.

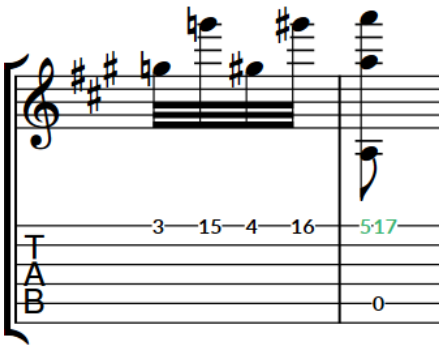
RESULT

The string to which the selected notes are allocated is changed. Using the key commands changes the string of the selected notes proportionally, whereas selecting a string from the **String** menu allocates all selected notes to the selected string.

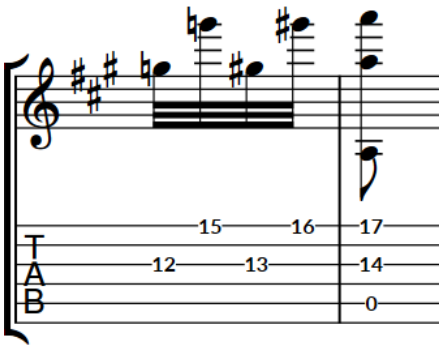
NOTE

- If they are now allocated to the same string as another note at that rhythmic position, both notes appear beside each other and are colored green.
- Deactivating the property resets the selected notes to their default string.

EXAMPLE



Notes allocated to the same string



After changing the strings for some notes to reduce the distance between frets

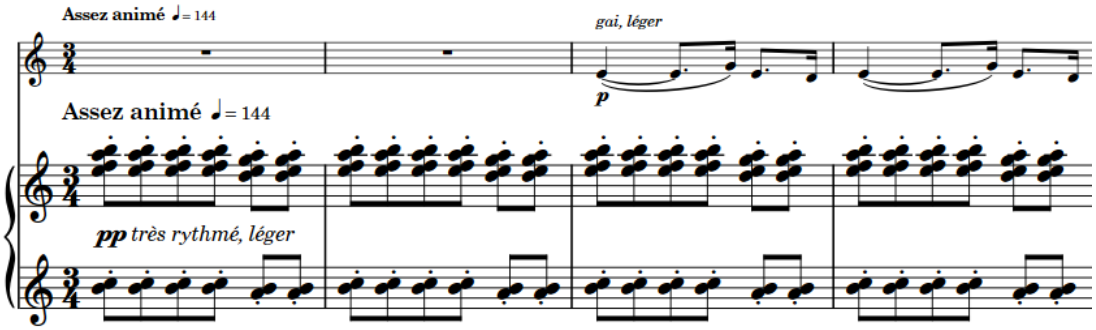
RELATED LINKS

Inputting notes on tablature on page 232

Tempo marks

Tempo marks indicate how fast music is played, often with a combination of text instructions and metronome marks. They are also known as “tempo changes”, “tempo indications”, and “tempo markings”.

A tempo mark can show text instructions, a metronome mark, or a combination of the two.



Tempo mark containing text instruction in French and metronome mark

Text instructions are traditionally expressed in Italian, such as *largo* or *allegretto*, but other languages, such as English, French, and German, have become widely accepted. The text instruction can express simply how fast the music is played, but can also suggest its character. For example, *grave* means slow but also solemn and sad, and *vivo* means fast but also lively and sprightly.

Metronome marks show the speed of the music, indicated in beats per minute, or “bpm”. Metronome marks can show a fixed bpm or indicate a range of possible or acceptable values.

Gradual tempo changes indicate a change in tempo over a defined period of time. They can appear differently; for example, with/without a continuation line or with the text split into syllables and spread across their duration.

Tempo marks use a bold font with a large point size, so they are clearly noticeable on the page. They do not usually use an italic font.

In Dorico Elements, tempo marks are categorized as system objects. Therefore, tempo marks follow your per-layout settings for the visibility and positioning of system objects.

By default, the tempo marks you input set the tempo for playback and MIDI recording, but you can change the tempo mode if, for example, you want to use a single fixed tempo when recording MIDI. Gradual tempo changes also affect the playback tempo, and you can change the final tempo at the end of gradual tempo changes; for example, if you want to reach a specific bpm at the end. If you do not input any tempo marks into your project, the default playback tempo is 120 bpm.

RELATED LINKS

Metronome marks on page 1211
Gradual tempo changes on page 1215
Tempo mark components on page 1206
Tempo track on page 496
Tempo editor on page 656
Input methods for tempo marks on page 280

Positions of tempo marks on page 1208
System objects on page 1196
Changing the positions of system objects on page 1197
Changing the tempo mode on page 504
Layout Options dialog on page 677

Types of tempo marks

Dorico Elements groups tempo marks into different types according to their function and effect on the music.

In Dorico Elements, there are the following types of tempo marks:

Absolute Tempo Change

Indicates a defined change in tempo, and is often shown with a metronome mark. For example, “Adagio ♩=76”.

Gradual Tempo Change

Indicates a change in tempo over a defined period of time, such as *rallentando* (slowing down) or *accelerando* (speeding up).

Relative Tempo Change

Indicates a change in tempo that is relative to the previous tempo, such as *mosso* (movement).

Relative tempo changes often include modifiers that qualify the change, such as *poco meno mosso* (a little less movement), and are not defined by a metronome mark. You can, however, set a relative metronome mark change as a percentage of the previous metronome mark that updates automatically if the previous metronome mark changes.

Reset Tempo

Returns the tempo to the previous tempo, such as *A tempo*, or a previously defined tempo, such as *Tempo primo* (return to the first tempo of the piece).

Tempo Equation

Indicates a change in the beat unit on which metronome marks are based. For example, if the time signature changes from 3/4 to 6/8, a tempo equation of ♩=♩. indicates the same metronome mark value that applied to the quarter note beat unit in 3/4 now applies to the dotted quarter note beat unit in 6/8.

RELATED LINKS

Metronome marks on page 1211
Gradual tempo changes on page 1215
Tempo equations on page 1218
Input methods for tempo marks on page 280
Tempo panel on page 283
Tempo popover on page 280
Changing the relative tempo mark value on page 1213

Tempo mark components

Tempo mark components include text, metronome marks, parentheses, and approximate indications. Tempo marks can include different components in different combinations, depending on your preference or the requirements for different projects.

You can activate properties that correspond to the different components in the **Tempo** group of the Properties panel. You can activate one or more of the following tempo mark properties in any combination for individual absolute tempo changes:

Text shown

Shows tempo text when activated, and no tempo text when deactivated.

Metronome mark shown

Shows metronome marks when activated, and no metronome marks when deactivated.

Parenthesized

Shows metronome marks in parentheses when activated, and without parentheses when deactivated. This also applies to approximate metronome marks.

Is approximate

Shows metronome marks as approximate when activated, and absolute when deactivated.

Approximate appearance

Allows you to choose how approximate metronome marks appear; for example, **c.** or **circa**.

NOTE

This property applies specifically to approximate tempo marks, and is only available when **Is approximate** is activated.

Show equals sign

An equals sign is shown when the property and its corresponding checkbox are both activated. No equals sign is shown when the checkbox is deactivated.

NOTE

This property applies specifically to approximate tempo marks, and is only available when **Is approximate** is activated.

Components for gradual tempo changes

The following components only apply to gradual tempo changes, such as *rallentando*:

Poco a poco

Poco a poco text is shown immediately after gradual tempo change text when the checkbox beside the property is activated.

RELATED LINKS
Changing the order of metronome marks on page 1214
Changing tempo text on page 1209
Hiding/Showing tempo marks on page 1211
Tempo track on page 496
Tempo editor on page 656

Changing the type and appearance of absolute tempo changes

You can change which components are included in individual absolute tempo changes, and how they appear. For example, if you want to show only parenthesized metronome marks in some tempo marks and only text in other tempo marks.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the absolute tempo marks whose components you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate any of the following properties in the **Tempo** group:
   - **Text shown**
   - **Metronome mark shown**
   - **Parenthesized**
   - **Is approximate**
   - **Approximate appearance** (only available when **Is approximate** is activated)
   - **Show equals sign** (only available when **Is approximate** is activated)

RESULT

The selected tempo marks are changed to include the corresponding components.

When all properties are deactivated, tempo marks are hidden and indicated by signposts.

RELATED LINKS

Hiding/Showing zones on page 44
Tempo mark components on page 1206
Signposts on page 426

Adding poco a poco text to gradual tempo changes

You can add *poco a poco* text immediately after individual gradual tempo changes.

NOTE

You can also enter **poco a poco** directly into the tempo popover. However, this means the entry is treated as a tempo mark rather than a gradual tempo change, which changes the properties you can use on it.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

PROCEDURE

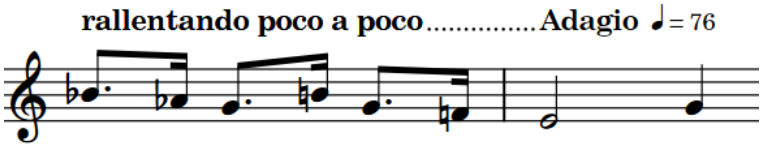
1. Select the gradual tempo changes to which you want to add *poco a poco* text. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Poco a poco** in the **Tempo** group.

RESULT

Poco a poco text is shown immediately after the text in the selected gradual tempo changes.

Deactivating **Poco a poco (little by little)** removes *poco a poco* text from the selected gradual tempo changes.

EXAMPLE



Rallentando with *poco a poco* text

Positions of tempo marks

Tempo marks are placed above the staff and at the same positions as other system objects, because they usually apply to all staves. They are placed above notations such as slurs, ties, and octave lines, and are often aligned with rehearsal marks to ensure clear readability.

By default in Dorico Elements, tempo marks align with either a time signature or the notehead/rest at the rhythmic position to which they apply. For example, if there is a notehead with an accidental at the rhythmic position of a tempo mark, it is convention to align the tempo mark with the accidental.

If a repeat mark occurs mid-system and is not treated as a barline, tempo marks are aligned with the repeat mark.

When a tempo mark includes both text and a metronome mark, the text appears first, followed by the metronome mark.

You can move tempo marks to different rhythmic positions in Write mode. They are automatically positioned to avoid collisions.

You can move tempo marks graphically in Engrave mode, but this does not change the rhythmic positions to which they are attached.

In Engrave mode, each gradual tempo change has two square handles, one at the start and one at the end. You can move these handles to adjust the graphical position and length of gradual tempo changes. You cannot change the angle of gradual tempo changes.

If gradual tempo changes cross system and frame breaks, you can move the line segments on each side of the break independently.

Tempo marks are categorized as system objects in Dorico Elements, which you can show above the first bracket of selected instrument families. You can change the instrument families above which system objects appear in each layout independently; for example, if you want tempo marks to appear at multiple vertical positions in each system in the full score only.

RELATED LINKS

Input methods for tempo marks on page 280
Changing the order of metronome marks on page 1214
System objects on page 1196
Changing the positions of system objects on page 1197
Moving notes/items rhythmically on page 437
Moving items graphically on page 481

Changing the end position of gradual tempo changes relative to barlines

You can change how the ends of individual gradual tempo change continuations are positioned relative to barlines. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

NOTE

This does not affect the appearance of gradual tempo changes with the text-only style.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the gradual tempo changes whose end position relative to barlines you want to change.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Barline interaction** in the **Tempo** group.
3. Choose one of the following options:
   - **Stop before**
   - **Continue**

RESULT

The end position of the selected gradual tempo changes is changed. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

RELATED LINKS

Changing the style of gradual tempo changes on page 1216
Changing the property scope on page 617
Copying property settings to other layouts/frame chains on page 599

Changing tempo text

You can change the text of existing tempo marks individually. For example, if you want to add “al fine” to a *ritardando* at the end of a flow.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the tempo marks whose tempo text you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, enter the tempo text you want into the **Text** field in the **Tempo** group.

3. Press **Return**.

RESULT

The tempo text for the selected tempo marks is changed.

TIP

You can also change the tempo text by opening the tempo popover and changing the entry.

RELATED LINKS

Properties panel on page 615
Input methods for tempo marks on page 280
Tempo popover on page 280
Changing existing items on page 412
Tempo mark components on page 1206
Changing the order of metronome marks on page 1214

Showing abbreviated tempo text

You can show individual tempo marks with custom abbreviated text in some layouts; for example, if a long tempo mark extends beyond the page boundary in some part layouts but the abbreviated version fits within the boundary.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. In the music area, open the layout in which you want to show abbreviated tempo text. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. Select the tempo marks you want to show with abbreviated text.
3. In the Properties panel, activate **Abbreviation** in the **Tempo** group.
4. Enter the text you want into the value field.
5. Activate **Abbreviate** in the **Tempo** group.
6. Activate the corresponding checkbox.

RESULT

The selected tempo marks appear with abbreviated text when **Abbreviation** is activated and **Abbreviate** is deactivated, or when **Abbreviation** and both **Abbreviate** and its corresponding checkbox are all activated. This allows you to switch between showing abbreviated/full text in different layouts without deleting your abbreviated text from the **Abbreviation** value field.

RELATED LINKS

Changing the property scope on page 617
Copying property settings to other layouts/frame chains on page 599

Hiding/Showing tempo marks

You can hide/show the different components in individual tempo marks without changing the speed of playback. This affects their appearance in all layouts.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the tempo marks you want to hide, or the signposts of tempo marks you want to show. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate/deactivate the following properties in the **Tempo** group:
   - **Text shown**
   - **Metronome mark shown**

RESULT

When at least one of the properties is activated, the selected tempo marks are shown. They display components according to the properties that are activated.

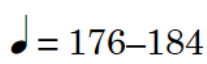
When neither property is activated, the selected tempo marks are hidden. Signposts are shown at the position of each hidden tempo mark as they still affect the speed of playback.

RELATED LINKS

Changing the type and appearance of absolute tempo changes on page 1207
Signposts on page 426
Changing the tempo mode on page 504
Muting notes/items individually on page 509

Metronome marks

Tempo marks often include a metronome mark value. Metronome marks show the speed of the music, indicated in beats per minute, or “bpm”. For example, a bpm of 60 means one beat per second. The more beats per minute, the faster the music.



A metronome mark shown as a range

Metronome marks can be precise, such as ♩ = 176, or can indicate an acceptable range, such as ♩ = 152-176. They can also be shown in parentheses, which is useful if the metronome mark is intended as a guide rather than a fixed value.

By default, metronome marks appear as integers and do not show decimal places. If you input a metronome mark with a decimal place, it is rounded to the nearest integer. Metronome marks that you input in the Tempo editor appear as signposts by default.

The beat unit used in metronome marks commonly relates to the meter; for example, the metronome mark beat unit is often a quarter note in 4/4 but a dotted quarter note in 6/8.

In Dorico Elements, metronome marks can appear as an individual value or as a range. Depending on the type and appearance of metronome marks, the bpm value can indicate a fixed tempo or an approximate tempo.

RELATED LINKS
Input methods for tempo marks on page 280
Changing the order of metronome marks on page 1214
Changing the type and appearance of absolute tempo changes on page 1207
Tempo mark components on page 1206
Tempo equations on page 1218
Tempo track on page 496
Tempo editor on page 656

Changing the metronome mark value

You can change the metronome mark value of individual absolute tempo marks after they have been input, including changing the beat unit.

NOTE

These steps do not apply to gradual tempo changes or reset/relative tempo marks.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the absolute tempo marks whose metronome mark values you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, change the value for **Tempo (bpm)** in the **Tempo** group.
3. Press **Return**.
4. Choose the appropriate note duration and rhythm dot, if applicable, for **Beat unit**.

RESULT

The metronome mark value and beat unit is changed for the selected absolute tempo marks. This affects the tempo of playback, even if no metronome mark component is shown for those tempo marks.

NOTE

- By default, any decimals you enter are hidden and the displayed metronome mark value appears as the nearest integer. However, metronome marks always reflect their exact values in playback.
- You can also change the metronome mark value by opening the tempo popover and changing the entry.

RELATED LINKS
Tempo popover on page 280
Changing existing items on page 412
Hiding/Showing zones on page 44
Properties panel on page 615

Showing the metronome mark value as a range

You can show the metronome mark value of individual absolute tempo marks as a range. For example, you can use this to indicate that any speed within the given range is musically appropriate for the piece.

NOTE

These steps do not apply to gradual tempo changes or reset/relative tempo marks.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the absolute tempo marks whose metronome mark values you want to show as a range. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Tempo range (bpm)** in the **Tempo** group.
3. Change the value in the value field.

RESULT

The tempo range, expressed as beats per minute, is changed for the selected tempo marks. By default, metronome mark ranges use a dash separator.

NOTE

Depending on the values set for each property, both **Tempo (bpm)** and **Tempo range (bpm)** can be the minimum/maximum tempo in the range, as Dorico Elements automatically arranges metronome mark ranges with the lower value first. However, the metronome mark used for playback is always **Tempo (bpm)**, regardless of whether that is the higher/lower value in the range.

Changing the relative tempo mark value

You can change the tempo of individual relative tempo marks, expressed as a percentage of the previous tempo mark.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the relative tempo marks whose value you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, change the value for **Relative %** in the **Tempo** group.
3. Press **Return**.

RESULT

The tempo at the relative tempo mark is changed. For example, if the previous tempo was 100 bpm, and you change a relative tempo mark to 90, the new tempo is 90% of 100 bpm, which is 90 bpm.

RELATED LINKS

Hiding/Showing zones on page 44
Properties panel on page 615

Changing the final tempo at the end of gradual tempo changes

You can change how significantly gradual tempo changes affect the tempo in playback, expressed as a percentage of the tempo at the start of the gradual tempo change.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the gradual tempo changes whose final tempo you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, change the value for **Final tempo %** in the **Tempo** group.
3. Press **Return**.

RESULT

The final tempo at the end of the selected gradual tempo changes is changed.

For example, if you change the value to 20 on a gradual tempo change that started at 100 bpm, the final tempo is 20% of 100 bpm, which is 20 bpm. If you change the value to 120 on a gradual tempo change that started at 100 bpm, the final tempo is 120% of 100 bpm, which is 120 bpm.

Changing the order of metronome marks

You can change the order of metronome marks relative to tempo text for individual tempo marks. For example, if you want to show metronome marks before tempo text in some tempo marks but after tempo text in others.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

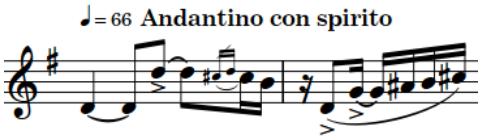
PROCEDURE

1. Select the tempo marks whose metronome mark order you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Metronome mark order** in the **Tempo** group.
3. Choose one of the following options:
   - **Before**
   - **After**

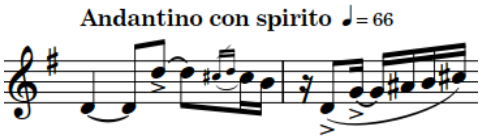
RESULT

The order of metronome marks relative to tempo text in the selected tempo marks is changed.

EXAMPLE



Metronome mark before tempo text



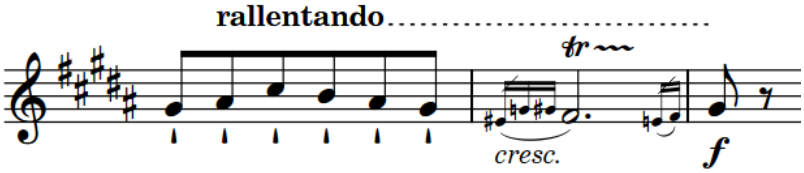
Metronome mark after tempo text

RELATED LINKS

Hiding/Showing zones on page 44
Properties panel on page 615
Types of tempo marks on page 1205
Metronome marks on page 1211
Tempo mark components on page 1206
Positions of tempo marks on page 1208
Hiding/Showing tempo marks on page 1211

Gradual tempo changes

Gradual tempo changes indicate a change in tempo over a defined period of time, such as *rallentando*, which indicates slowing down, and *accelerando*, which indicates speeding up.



Rallentando with dashed line

Gradual tempo changes are considered a type of tempo mark in Dorico Elements, meaning you can input them in the same ways as for tempo marks.

Because gradual tempo changes have a different metronome mark value at the start/end, you can change the final tempo at the end of individual gradual tempo changes.

In Dorico Elements, you can show gradual tempo changes with different styles, such as with a continuation line or with syllables spread across their duration. You can also show gradual tempo changes with different line styles, such as dotted or dashed.

NOTE

You cannot change the angle of gradual tempo changes.

RELATED LINKS

Input methods for tempo marks on page 280
Lengthening/Shortening items on page 410
Changing the line style of gradual tempo changes on page 1216
Changing the final tempo at the end of gradual tempo changes on page 1214

Changing the style of gradual tempo changes

You can change the style of individual gradual tempo changes. Gradual tempo changes can appear as text only with no continuation line, text with a continuation line, or with the word spread across their duration.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the gradual tempo changes whose style you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Gradual style** in the **Tempo** group.
3. Select one of the following options from the menu:
   - **rit.**
   - **rit...**
   - **rit-e-nu-to**

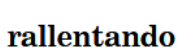
RESULT

The style of the selected gradual tempo changes is changed.

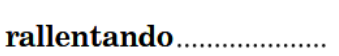
NOTE

Only gradual tempo changes with valid full text appear separated into syllables; for example, *ritenuto* or *accelerando*. Gradual tempo changes automatically have valid full text when you input them using the panel or select a suggested entry from the menu when using the popover. You can also change the text of existing gradual tempo changes, including adding hyphens manually to control how they are separated into syllables.

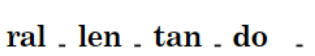
EXAMPLE



rit.: Text only



rit...: Text with a continuation line



rit-e-nu-to: Syllables in the text spread across the duration of the gradual tempo change

RELATED LINKS

Changing tempo text on page 1209

Changing the line style of gradual tempo changes

You can change the line style of individual gradual tempo changes whose style includes a continuation line.

NOTE

This does not affect the appearance of gradual tempo changes with the text-only style.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the gradual tempo changes whose line style you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Line style** in the **Tempo** group.
3. Select one of the following options from the menu:
   - **Solid**
   - **Dotted**
   - **Dashed**

RESULT

The line style of the selected gradual tempo changes is changed.

Lengthening/Shortening gaps and dashes in gradual tempo changes

You can change the length of dashes and the gaps between dashes in individual gradual tempo changes. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

NOTE

These steps only apply to gradual tempo changes with dashed lines.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the gradual tempo changes with dashed lines whose dash length you want to change.
2. In the Properties panel, activate the following properties, individually or together, in the **Tempo** group:
   - **Line dash length**
   - **Line dash gap**
3. Change the values in the value fields.

RESULT

Increasing **Line dash length** makes dashes in gradual tempo changes longer, decreasing the value makes dashes shorter.

Increasing **Line dash gap** makes gaps between dashes in gradual tempo change lines longer, decreasing the value makes gaps shorter.

If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

RELATED LINKS
Changing the property scope on page 617
Copying property settings to other layouts/frame chains on page 599

Changing the line thickness of gradual tempo changes

You can change the thickness of dashed and solid lines in individual gradual tempo changes. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

NOTE

These steps only apply to gradual tempo changes with dashed and solid lines.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the gradual tempo changes whose thickness you want to change.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Line thickness** in the **Tempo** group.
3. Change the value in the value field.

RESULT

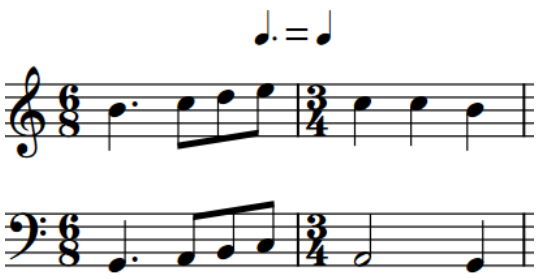
Increasing the value makes dashed and solid lines thicker, decreasing the value makes dashed and solid lines thinner. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

RELATED LINKS
Changing the line style of gradual tempo changes on page 1216
Changing the property scope on page 617

Tempo equations

Tempo equations indicate a change in the beat unit on which metronome marks are based. They are often used to maintain a consistent pulse across multiple different meters.

For example, if the time signature changes from 6/8 to 3/4, a tempo equation of ♩.=♩ indicates the same metronome mark value that applied to the dotted quarter note beat unit in 6/8 now applies to the quarter note beat unit in 3/4.



Tempo equations are considered a type of tempo mark in Dorico Elements, meaning you can input them in the same ways as for tempo marks.

NOTE

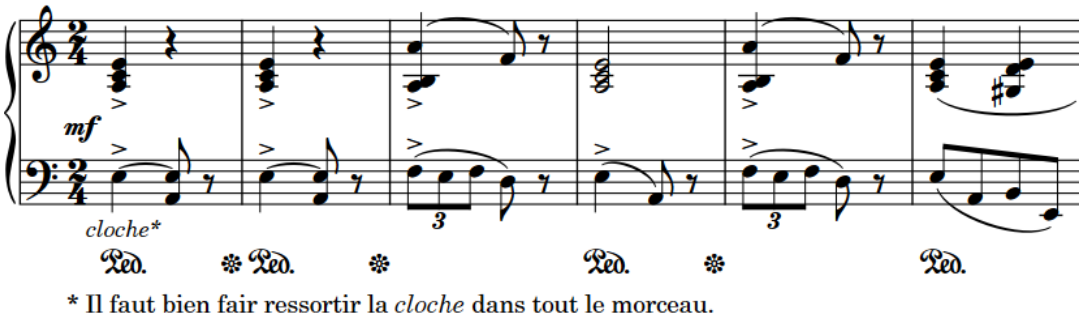
Tempo equations do not yet include tuplet durations. This is planned for future versions.

RELATED LINKS
Input methods for tempo marks on page 280

Text items

Text items exist at rhythmic positions within flows and allow you to display generic text in the music.

You can customize the formatting of text in text items using the available text editor options, such as by applying different paragraph styles to each line of text and different character styles to each character.



A text item below a piano staff

In Dorico Elements, there are the following types of text items:

Staff-attached text

Text items that apply to individual staves and only appear on those staves.

System-attached text

Text items that apply to all staves and appear in all applicable layouts. In Dorico Elements, system-attached text is categorized as a system object. Therefore, system-attached text follows your per-layout settings for the visibility and positioning of system objects.

NOTE

- You can only use tokens in text frames. You cannot use tokens in text items. Full text frame functionality is only available in Dorico Pro.
- There are dedicated features for other types of text that often appear in musical scores, such as tempo marks and dynamics.

RELATED LINKS

Tokens on page 607
Inputting text items on page 370
Text editor options in Write mode on page 371
Adding borders to text items on page 1227
Hiding/Showing text items on page 1230
Aligning text items with the start of systems on page 1225
System objects on page 1196
Changing the positions of system objects on page 1197

Types of text

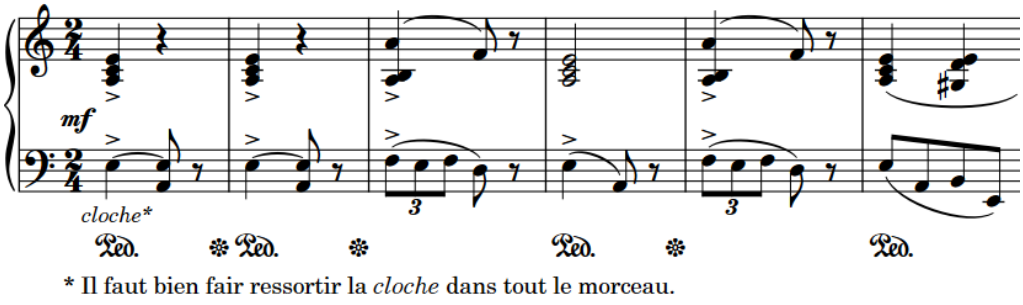
Generic text in Dorico Elements can exist as text items, either staff-attached or system-attached, or in text frames, which are fixed to the page rather than the music. There are dedicated features for other types of text that often appear in musical scores, such as tempo marks and dynamics.

In Dorico Elements, there are the following types of text:

Text items

Text items exist at rhythmic positions within flows. They can display any text you enter, apart from tokens. You can customize the formatting of text in text items using the available text editor options, such as by applying different paragraph styles to each line of text and different character styles to each character.

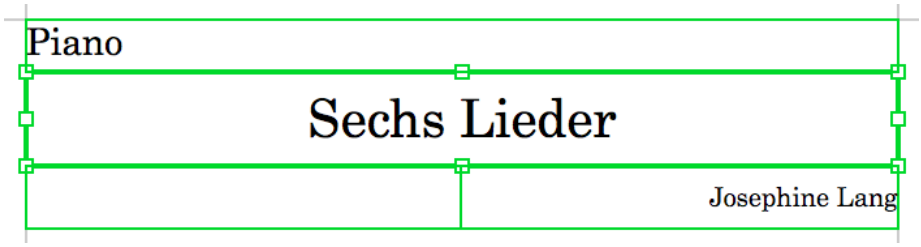
Text items can apply either to individual staves, which is known as “staff-attached text”, or to all staves, which is known as “system-attached text”.



A text item below a piano staff

Text in text frames

Text frames exist on pages independently of rhythmic positions within flows. They can display any text you enter, including tokens. You can customize the formatting of text in text frames using the available text editor options, such as by applying different paragraph styles to each line of text and different character styles to each character.



Text frames on the first page in a piano part layout, with the project title frame selected

NOTE

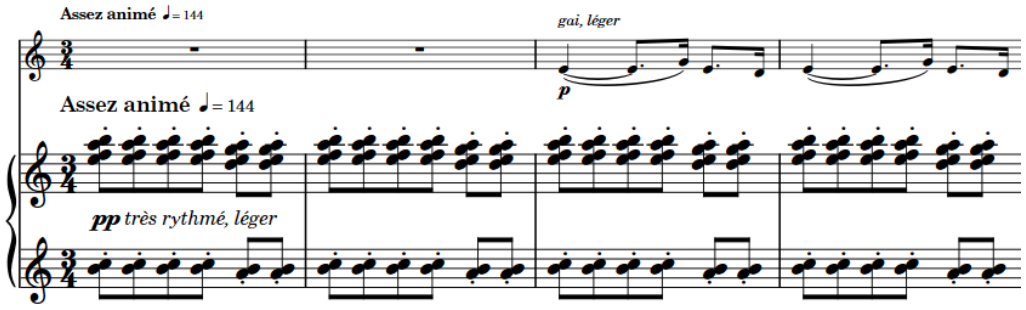
The project title, page numbers, and running headers that are automatically shown in layouts exist in text frames. Their contents and formatting come from page templates, which you cannot edit or create in Dorico Elements. Editing text frames in layouts is considered a page template override. Pages with page template overrides are not automatically deleted, even if they are empty because the layout became shorter.

If you want to change the information shown at the tops of pages, we recommend that you do so in the **Project Info** dialog to avoid page template overrides. The big title at the top of the first page is the project title. The running header on subsequent pages uses the flow title for the top flow on that page in scores, and the layout name in parts.

Tempo marks

Tempo marks indicate how fast music is played, often with a combination of text instructions and metronome marks.

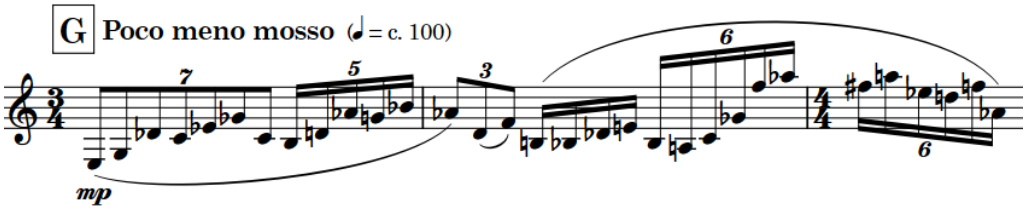
For example, *A tempo*, *Larghetto*, *ritardando*, and *accelerando* are all tempo marks.



Tempo mark containing text instruction in French and metronome mark

Rehearsal marks

Rehearsal marks are ordered sequences of letters or numbers that provide useful reference points. They are often shown in a rectangular enclosure.

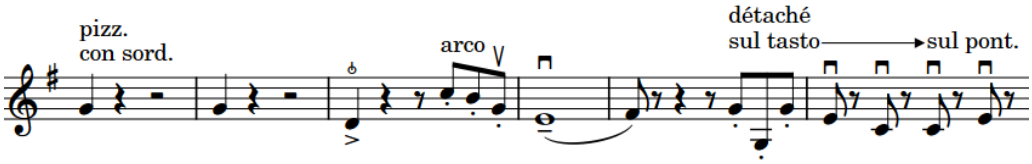


A rehearsal mark, showing the letter G

Playing techniques

The term “playing techniques” covers a wide range of instructions intended to tell performers to modify the sound of the notes they are playing; for example, by changing their embouchure or changing the position of their bow, or by modifying their instrument, such as adding a mute or depressing a pedal.

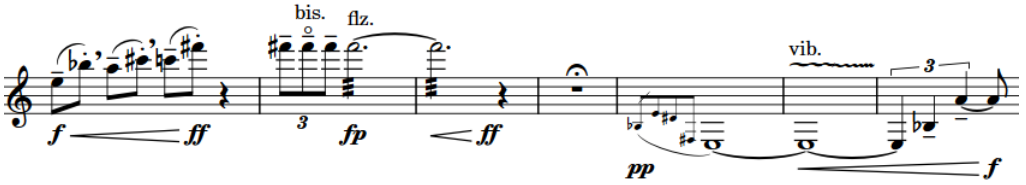
For example, *pizzicato*, *flutter-tongue*, *con sordino*, and “snares on” are all playing techniques.



Dynamics

Dynamics indicate the loudness of the music and can be combined with expressive text to give further clarification about how to perform the music. Dynamics can indicate an immediate change in volume or a gradual change over a specified duration.

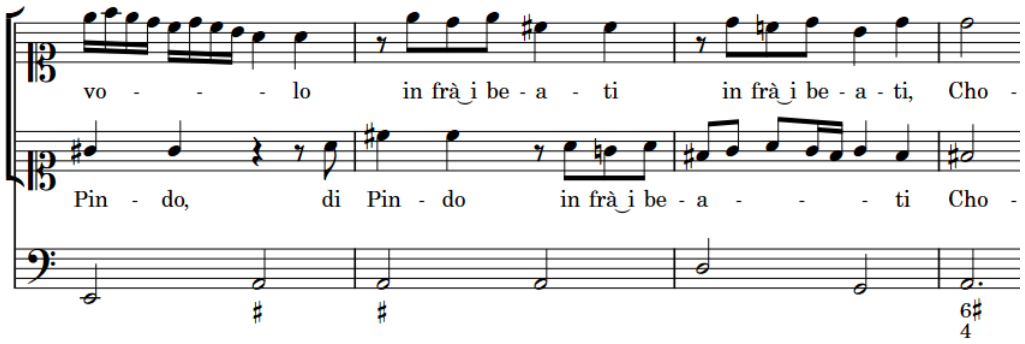
For example, ***pp***, ***f***, and “crescendo” are all dynamics.



A phrase with multiple different dynamics

Lyrics

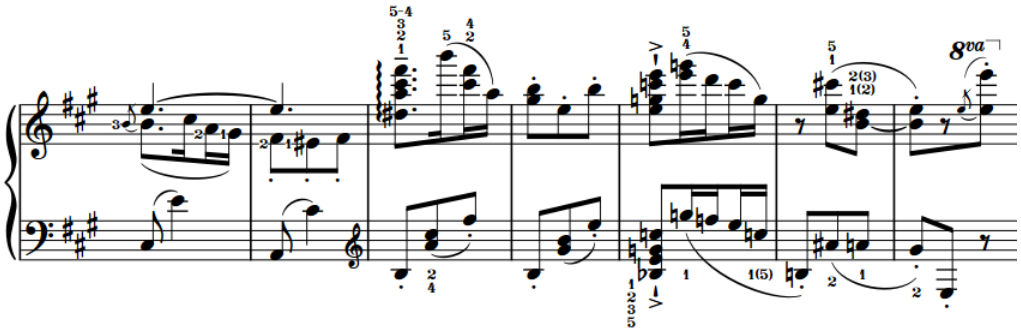
In Dorico Elements, the term “lyrics” is used for all text that is sung by singers. Lyrics are organized into lyric lines, with different types of lyric lines available for lyrics with different purposes. For example, lyrics in a chorus line are shown in an italic font by default.



Lyrics for a soprano duet with basso continuo accompaniment

Fingering

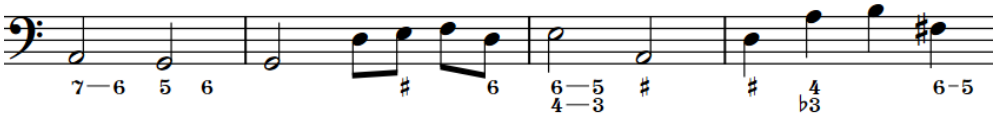
Fingerings use numbers and letters to recommend which fingers players should use for notes.



Piano music containing multiple fingerings, including a substitution fingering and alternative fingerings

Figured bass

Figured bass is a shorthand that uses figures to specify the harmony above the notated bass notes. Figures use a combination of Arabic numbers, accidentals, and horizontal hold lines to specify both the intervals above the bass note that make up the chord and its duration.

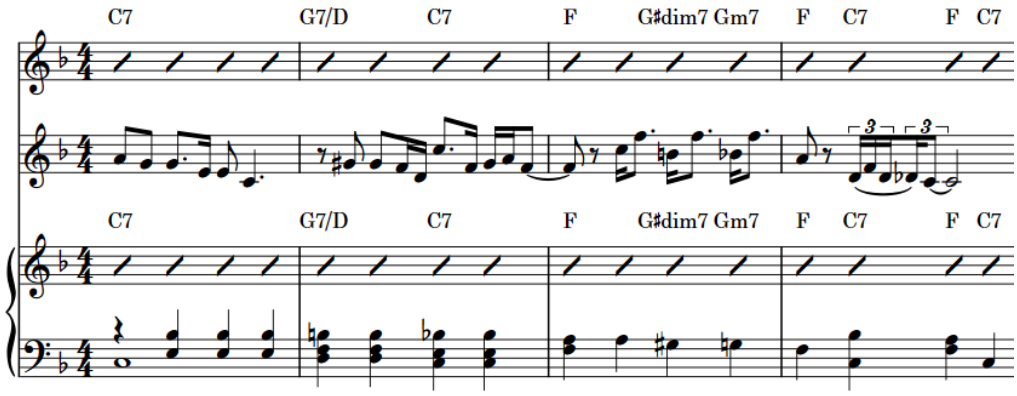


A basso continuo part with figured bass below the staff

Chord symbols

Chord symbols describe the vertical harmony of the music at a specific moment. They are frequently used in jazz and pop music, where players often improvise around chord progressions.

For example, “Gm7”, “Dsus4”, and “C6/9” are all chord symbols.

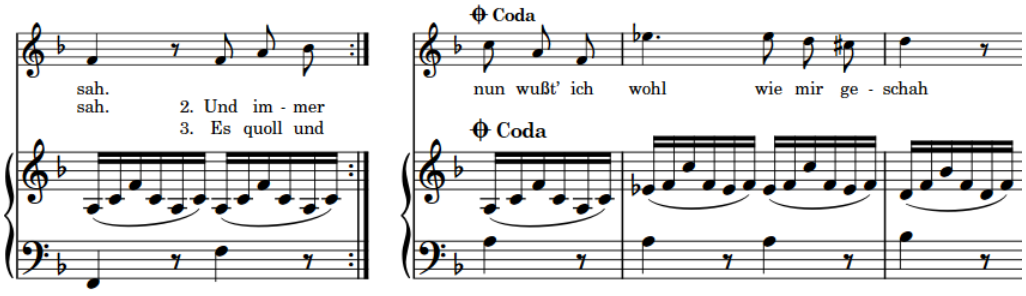


Chord symbols shown above slashes on the Clarinet and Piano staves to help the players improvise around the notated Cornet melody.

Repeat markers

Repeat markers show that musical material is to be repeated. They often involve jumping to different positions and sections in the music instead of moving through the music consecutively.

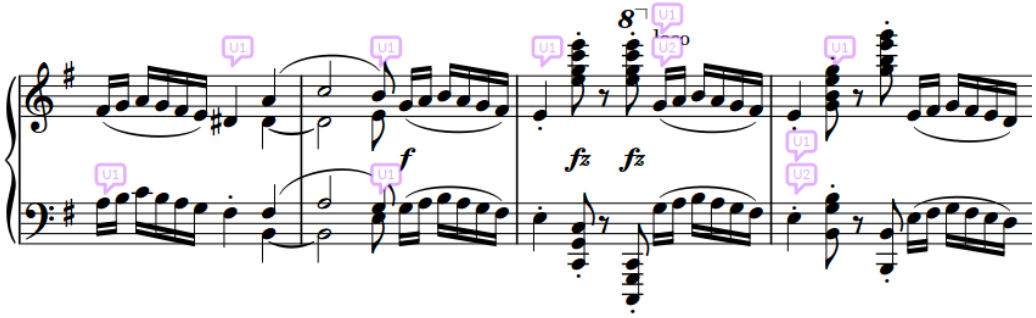
For example, *D.C. al Coda*, *D.S.*, and *Fine* are all repeat markers.



A mid-system coda section

Comments

Comments are notes or instructions added at precise positions in a project without affecting the music. They are considered annotations in Dorico Elements, meaning they are not printed by default.



A passage with comments and replies

RELATED LINKS
Tokens on page 607
Editing text in text items on page 373
Text editor options in Write mode on page 371
Hiding/Showing text items on page 1230
Text items on page 1220
Flow headings on page 603

Page numbers on page 1033
Tacets on page 592
Tempo marks on page 1204
Rehearsal marks on page 1095
Playing techniques on page 1062
Dynamics on page 828
Lyrics on page 919
Fingering on page 871
Figured bass on page 858
Chord symbols on page 782
Repeat markers on page 1113
Comments on page 470

Changing the paragraph style of text

You can change the paragraph style that is applied to individual text items; for example, if you want to use different paragraph styles according to the information included in different text items.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, double-click the text item whose paragraph style you want to change to open the text editor.
2. Select a paragraph style from the paragraph style menu in the text editor.
3. Press **Esc** or **Ctrl/Cmd**-**Return** to close the text editor.

RESULT

The paragraph style of the selected text item is changed. The formatting of the selected text item now follows the paragraph style, such as its font size, font style, or horizontal alignment.

RELATED LINKS

Removing page template overrides on page 602

Aligning text items with the start of systems

You can align individual text items whose rhythmic position is at the start of systems with the systemic barline rather than the first note/rest, independently of the system alignment setting for their paragraph style. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

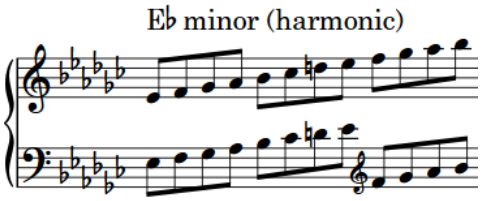
1. Select the text items you want to align with the start of systems. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Align with system start** in the **Text** group.
3. Activate/Deactivate the corresponding checkbox.

RESULT

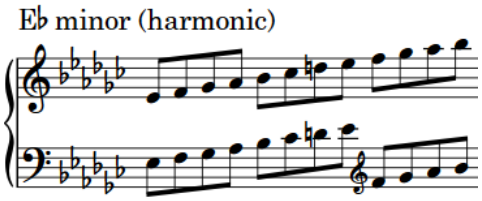
The selected text items are aligned with the start of systems when the checkbox is activated, and aligned with the first note/rest in systems when the checkbox is deactivated. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

When the property is deactivated, text items follow the system alignment setting of their paragraph style.

EXAMPLE



Text aligned with the first note in the system



Text aligned with the start of the system

RELATED LINKS

Inputting text items on page 370
Moving items graphically on page 481
Hiding/Showing zones on page 44
Properties panel on page 615
Changing the property scope on page 617
Copying property settings to other layouts/frame chains on page 599

Enabling/Disabling text collision avoidance

You can change whether individual text items automatically move to avoid collisions. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

Text items with collision avoidance disabled do not contribute to automatic staff spacing calculations.

NOTE

These steps do not apply to text in text frames.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the text items whose collision avoidance you want to enable/disable.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Avoid collisions** in the **Text** group.
3. Activate/Deactivate the corresponding checkbox.

RESULT

The selected text items avoid collisions when the checkbox is activated, and do not avoid collisions when the checkbox is deactivated. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

Adding borders to text items

You can add borders to individual text items; for example, if you want to make the boundaries of text items clear.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

PROCEDURE

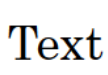
1. Select the text items to which you want to add borders. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Border** in the **Text** group.

RESULT

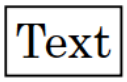
Borders are added to the selected text items.

Deactivating **Border** removes borders from the selected text items.

EXAMPLE



Text with no border



Text with border shown

RELATED LINKS

Hiding/Showing zones on page 44
Properties panel on page 615
Erasing the background of text items on page 1229

Changing the style of text item borders

You can change the style of borders shown on individual text items; for example, if you want to show rectangle borders on some text items but capsule borders on others. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the text items whose border style you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Border style** in the **Text** group.
3. Select one of the following options from the menu:
   - **Rectangle**
   - **Rounded rectangle**
   - **Capsule**
   - **Angled ends rectangle**

RESULT

The border style of the selected text items is changed. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

EXAMPLE

Rectangle **Rounded rectangle** **Capsule** **Angled ends rectangle**

RELATED LINKS

Hiding/Showing zones on page 44
Properties panel on page 615
Changing the property scope on page 617
Copying property settings to other layouts/frame chains on page 599
Changing the padding around text items on page 1229

Changing the thickness of text item borders

You can change the thickness of borders around individual text items.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the text items whose border thickness you want to change.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Border thickness** in the **Text** group.
3. Change the value in the value field.

RESULT

The thickness of borders around the selected text items is changed.

Changing the padding around text items

You can change the padding around text items individually, and for each edge independently. This affects the distance between text and erased backgrounds and borders. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the text items whose padding you want to change.
2. In the Properties panel, activate the **Erasure padding** properties, individually or together, in the **Text** group.
   - **L** changes the padding between text items and their left edge.
   - **R** changes the padding between text items and their right edge.
   - **T** changes the padding between text items and their top edge.
   - **B** changes the padding between text items and their bottom edge.
3. Change the values in the value fields for the edges whose padding you want to change.

RESULT

The padding around the selected text items is changed. Increasing the values increases the padding, decreasing the values decreases the padding. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

RELATED LINKS

Changing the property scope on page 617
Copying property settings to other layouts/frame chains on page 599

Erasing the background of text items

You can erase the background of individual text items; for example, to ensure the text remains legible when crossing barlines. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the text items whose backgrounds you want to erase.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Erase background** in the **Text** group.

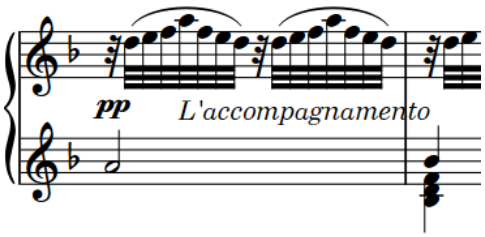
RESULT

The backgrounds of the selected text items are erased. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

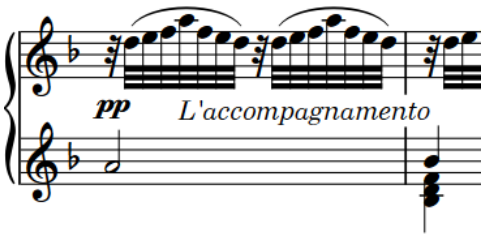
TIP

- You can show borders on text items in addition to erasing their backgrounds.
- Deactivating **Erase background** returns the selected text items to the default non-erased background.

EXAMPLE



Text with non-erased background



Text with erased background

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

You can change the padding between text items and each edge of their erased areas.

RELATED LINKS

Adding borders to text items on page 1227

Hiding/Showing text items

You can hide/show individual text items. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains. For example, you can show specific text items in part layouts but hide them in full score layouts.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the text items you want to hide, or the signposts of text items you want to show. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate/deactivate **Hide** in the **Text** group.

RESULT

The text items are hidden when **Hide** is activated, and shown when it is deactivated. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

Signposts are shown at the position of each hidden text item. However, signposts are not printed by default.

TIP

- You can hide/show text signposts by choosing **View** > **Signposts** > **Text**.

- You can assign a key command for **Hide/Show Item** on the **Key Commands** page in **Preferences**, which applies to chord symbols, playing techniques, figured bass, text items, and time signatures.

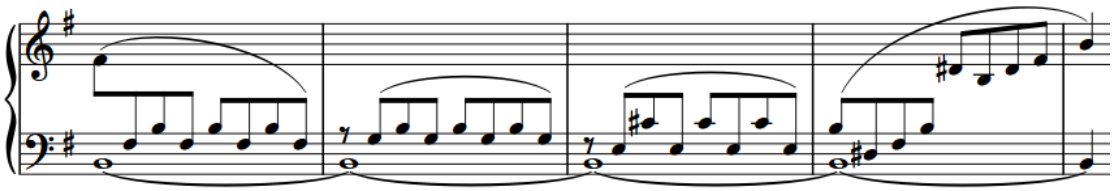
RELATED LINKS

Signposts on page 426
Hiding/Showing zones on page 44
Changing the property scope on page 617
Copying property settings to other layouts/frame chains on page 599
Key Commands page in the Preferences dialog on page 59
Annotations on page 554

Ties

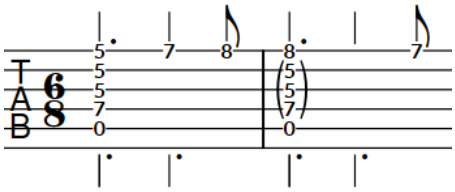
A tie is a curved line that joins two notes of the same pitch. When notes are longer than the maximum duration of a bar in the prevailing time signature, they automatically appear in Dorico Elements as tie chains; that is, a sequence of adjacent notes joined with ties.

Each sequence of ties, whether they join two notes or ten notes together, represents a single note with the duration of all the tied notes combined. A performer plays the notes as one note, without re-striking, re-blowing, or re-bowing the note at any point within the rhythmic duration of the tie chain.

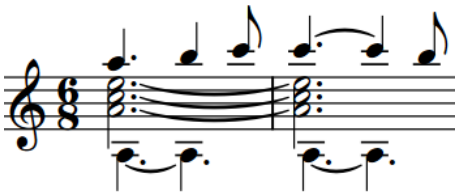


A tie chain across several bars on the bottom piano staff

On tablature, ties are automatically notated as round brackets around notes/chords in subsequent bars. When tablature is shown with rhythms, ties within the same bar are indicated with stems rather than bracketed noteheads.



A phrase on tablature with some ties within bars and a chord tied across two bars



The same phrase on a notation staff

In Dorico Elements, most ties are created automatically. Rhythms are notated according to the prevailing beat grouping, which is normally set by the time signature. Therefore, notes that cannot be notated using a single duration are automatically drawn as tie chains. For example, if you input a dotted whole note at the start of a bar in a 4/4 time signature, it is automatically notated as a whole note tied to a half note in the next bar. If the time signature changes, tie chains are automatically adjusted to remain correct in the new meter.

Dorico Elements automatically determines the appropriate endpoint position and curvature direction for ties to avoid collisions, according to the context.

NOTE

- Slurs must not be confused with ties, which look superficially similar, but instead join notes of the same pitch to indicate that they are played as a single note. In that sense, ties are part of rhythmic notation, while slurs are considered articulation.
- In Write mode, you can only select whole tie chains because Dorico Elements considers each tie chain to be a single note. Any edits you make to tie chains in Write mode affect all notes in them, such as changing the pitch, but only affect the first tie in the chain, such as changing the tie style to dashed. However, you can still input notations, such as dynamics,

in the middle of tie chains by activating the caret and moving it to the required rhythmic position within the tie chain.

In Engrave mode, you can select individual notes and ties within tie chains and edit them independently.

- When you tie existing notes together, they might be consolidated into fewer or more notes within a tie chain, depending on the musical context, the time signature, and the position of the start of the note in the bar.
- Articulations can only appear once on each tie chain, either at the start or the end, depending on the type of articulation. For example, staccato marks appear at the end whereas accents appear at the start. You can change the positions of articulations relative to individual tie chains.

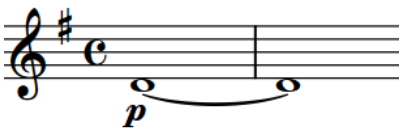
RELATED LINKS
Note and rest grouping on page 774
Beam grouping according to meters on page 755
Inputting notes on page 211
Forcing the duration of notes/rests on page 250
Inputting ties on page 237
Splitting tie chains on page 1241
Tie curvature direction on page 1237
Time signatures on page 1249
Notes on page 940
Bracketed noteheads on page 953
Positions of articulations on page 724
Changing the positions of articulations on tie chains on page 726
Hiding/Showing or parenthesizing accidentals on page 713
Tablature on page 1200
Caret on page 205
Input methods for dynamics on page 296
Numbered bar regions on page 1127

Ties vs. slurs

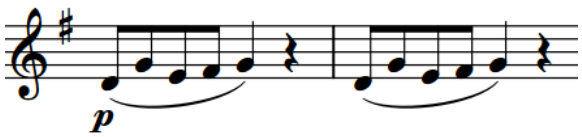
Ties and slurs look superficially similar but differ in meaning.

Ties indicate that a note should not be re-struck. They are used to join notes of the same pitch together. For example, ties can be used to extend notes across multiple bars. Although multiple notes can be included in a single tie chain, each tie in the chain only joins one notehead to the next notehead on the staff.

Articulations on tied notes only affect the attack at the start of the tie chain and the release at the end of the tie chain.



Two long notes tied together



Two phrases with slurs

Slurs indicate articulation, such as bowing or breathing, and normally group notes of different pitches together. Slurs can join two noteheads together with any number of pitches in between. They often indicate the shaping of phrases.

Slurs can also be used in conjunction with articulation. Unlike ties, articulation within slurs can affect the sound throughout the phrase. For example, staccato articulations on repeated notes of the same pitch within a slur indicate that notes should be played on a stringed instrument using the same bow direction, but stopping the bow between each note.

RELATED LINKS
Slurs on page 1155
Inputting ties on page 237
Inputting slurs on page 260

Tie styles

There are different styles of ties available in Dorico Elements, which you can use to indicate different meanings.

Solid

This is the default style for ties. Ties appear as tapered solid lines: thinner at the ends and thicker in the middle.

Dashed

Ties appear as tapered dashed lines. Can be used to denote optional or suggested ties; for example, in vocal music where some verses have more syllables than others and therefore require more notes.

Dotted

Ties appear as dotted lines. The dots are the same size and the same distance apart over the whole length of the tie. Can also be used to denote optional or suggested ties.

Half-dashed start

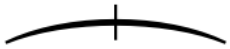
The first halves of ties appear as dashed lines, the second halves as solid lines. Used to denote that a tie was written incompletely in the source in critical editions.

Half-dashed end

The first halves of ties appear as solid lines, the second halves as dashed lines. Used to denote that a tie was written incompletely in the source in critical editions.

Editorial

Ties appear as solid black lines, but with a smaller vertical line intersecting them exactly halfway along their length. Used to show that ties were added by the editor and were not present in the source.



Changing the style of ties

You can change the style of individual ties. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains. By default, all ties are solid.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the ties whose style you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.

   NOTE

   - In Write mode, you can only select whole tie chains. In Engrave mode, you can select individual ties within tie chains.
   - Any changes to tie chains in Write mode only affect the first tie in the chain.

2. In the Properties panel, activate **Style** in the **Ties** group.
3. Select one of the following options from the menu:
   - **Solid**
   - **Dashed**
   - **Dotted**
   - **Half-dashed start**
   - **Half-dashed end**
   - **Editorial**

RESULT

The style of the selected ties is changed. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

RELATED LINKS

Changing the property scope on page 617
Copying property settings to other layouts/frame chains on page 599

Changing the size of dashes/dots in ties

You can change the size of the dashes/dots in dashed/dotted ties individually. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

NOTE

These steps only apply to dashed/dotted ties.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the dashed/dotted ties whose dash/dot size you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.

   NOTE

   - In Write mode, you can only select whole tie chains. In Engrave mode, you can select individual ties within tie chains.
   - Any changes to tie chains in Write mode only affect the first tie in the chain.

2. In the Properties panel, activate **Dash/dot** in the **Ties** group.
3. Change the value in the value field.

RESULT

Increasing the value makes dashes/dots bigger, decreasing the value makes dashes/dots smaller. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

RELATED LINKS

Changing the property scope on page 617
Copying property settings to other layouts/frame chains on page 599

Changing the size of gaps in dashed/dotted ties

You can change the size of the gaps in dashed/dotted ties individually. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the individual dashed/dotted ties whose gap size you want to change.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Gap** in the **Ties** group.
3. Change the value in the value field.

RESULT

Increasing the value makes the gaps between dashes/dots larger. Decreasing the value makes the gaps between dashes/dots smaller. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

Tie curvature direction

The direction of tie curvatures is determined by the stem direction of the notes/chords at each end of the tie, the number of notes in chords at each end, and the number of voices on the staff.

Tied single notes in single-voice contexts

If a single voice is active and a tie joins two single notes, tie curvature direction is determined by the stem directions of the notes at either end of the tie.

- If the stem directions match, the tie curves away from the notes and is positioned on the notehead side.
- If the stem directions differ, the tie curves upwards by default.

Tied chords in single-voice contexts

If a tie joins two chords, the direction of the ties is determined by the number of tied notes in the chords.

- For an even number, the ties are equally split between curving towards the notehead end and curving towards the stem end.
- For an uneven number, the majority of ties curve towards the notehead end.

Tied notes in multiple-voice contexts

Ties are positioned on the stem side and are curved as follows:

- For up-stem voices, ties curve upwards.
- For down-stem voices, ties curve downwards.
- For overlapping/interlocking pitches in multiple voices, the rules for tied chords in single-voice contexts apply. All notes in all voices are treated as if they belong to a single voice.

TIP

You can change the curvature direction of ties individually.

RELATED LINKS
Tie height on page 1245
Tie shoulder offset on page 1247

Changing the curvature direction of ties

You can change the curvature direction of ties individually, including individual ties within tie chains. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the ties whose curvature direction you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.

NOTE

- In Write mode, you can only select whole tie chains. In Engrave mode, you can select individual ties within tie chains.
- Any changes to tie chains in Write mode only affect the first tie in the chain.

2. In the Properties panel, activate **Direction** in the **Ties** group.
3. Choose one of the following options:
   - **Up**
   - **Down**

RESULT

The curvature direction of the selected ties is changed. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

RELATED LINKS

Changing the property scope on page 617
Copying property settings to other layouts/frame chains on page 599
Changing the shape/angle of ties on page 1243

Non-standard ties

Usually, ties join two notes of the same pitch in the same staff. However, ties can also cross system breaks and frame breaks, clef changes, or time signature changes. These types of ties are all positioned automatically in Dorico Elements.

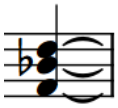
Ties can also join non-adjacent notes, notes in different voices, or notes in different staves together. In Dorico Elements, you must input these types of ties manually.

Ties across system/frame breaks

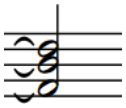
The ends of ties that cross system/frame breaks are automatically positioned in Dorico Elements.

Their vertical position remains the same, as both ends are centered on the noteheads to which they are attached. Their behavior also remains the same, as selecting one note in a tie chain that crosses a system/frame break in Write mode selects all notes in the tie chain.

The horizontal space for the parts of ties shown to the left of notes at the start of new systems/frames may not be sufficient to show an ideal tie curve.



The start of a tie chain before a system break



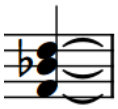
The end of the same tie chain after a system break

Tied notes with accidentals across system/frame breaks

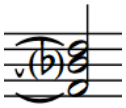
The ends of ties for tied notes with accidentals across system/frame breaks are also automatically positioned.

As tied notes in Dorico Elements are treated as one note notated to fit in time signatures, cautionary accidentals at the start of new systems/frames are not shown by default. If you

choose to show accidentals beside notes in tie chains at the start of new systems/frames, the position of the notes is changed to accommodate accidentals. However, this automatic position might not leave sufficient room for the part of the tie to the left of the notes to be shown with an ideal curve.



The start of a tie chain before a system break



The end of the same tie chain, with a cautionary accidental in parentheses

Ties across time signature changes

Ties are automatically positioned between notes that span a time signature change. If ties crossing a time signature change are joining notes in the middle of a staff, the top or bottom of the time signature change is partially obscured by the ties. However, as ties are curved, the time signature is unlikely to be completely obscured.

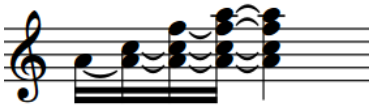
Ties across clef changes

Ties are automatically positioned between notes that span a change of clef. Ties across clef changes are not horizontal, as the same pitch is positioned differently in each clef.

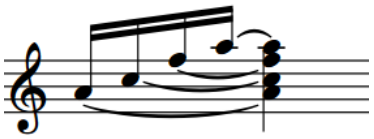
The result of cross-clef ties is likely to be visually and musically confusing, as they can be misread as slurs. In this case, consider moving the change of clef to before/after the tied note.

Ties between non-adjacent notes

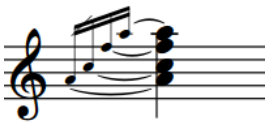
You can input ties between notes of the same pitch that are not directly beside each other and between grace notes and normal notes. This can be useful when inputting ties between multiple notes before a chord, for example.



Tied notes building up a chord



Notes tied to the following chord



Multiple grace notes tied to the following chord

Ties between different voices

You can input ties between notes of the same pitch in different voices belonging to the same instrument.

Ties between notes on different staves

You can input ties between notes of the same pitch in different staves belonging to the same instrument, such as the two staves of a piano.

Laissez vibrer ties

Laissez vibrer ties are short ties that indicate a note should be left to ring, and should not be stopped. They extend a small amount to the right of the note to which they apply, but do not connect to another note.

You can add *laissez vibrer* ties to any note. You can edit *laissez vibrer* ties in Engrave mode like any other tie.

RELATED LINKS
Inputting ties on page 237
Hiding/Showing or parenthesizing accidentals on page 713
System breaks on page 586
Frame breaks on page 589
Note spacing on page 579

Hiding/Showing laissez vibrer ties

You can add *laissez vibrer* ties to any note; for example, to specify which notes must not be stopped after being played but instead left to ring.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the notes on which you want to add a *laissez vibrer* tie. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate/deactivate **Laissez vibrer tie** in the **Notes and Rests** group.

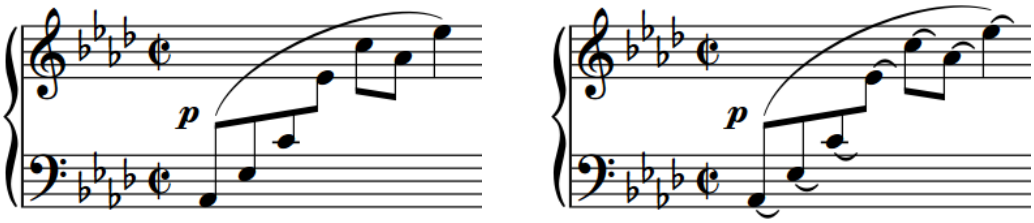
RESULT

Laissez vibrer ties are added to the selected notes when the property is activated, and are removed when the property is deactivated. *Laissez vibrer* ties are positioned automatically.

TIP

- You can edit the length and shape of *laissez vibrer* ties individually like any other tie in Engrave mode.
- You can assign a key command for **Toggle Laissez Vibrer Tie** on the **Key Commands** page in **Preferences**.

EXAMPLE



Phrase without laissez vibrer ties

Phrase with laissez vibrer ties

RELATED LINKS
Changing the shape/angle of ties on page 1243

Deleting ties

You can delete ties without deleting the notes to which they are attached.

NOTE

Deleting ties from tie chains removes all ties in the tie chain. If you want to remove single ties from longer tie chains, you can split the tie chain.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the tie chains from which you want to delete all ties.
2. Delete all ties in any of the following ways:
   - Press **U**.
   - In the Notes toolbox, click **Scissors**.

RESULT

All ties in the selected tie chains are deleted. Notes previously in the tie chain remain at their rhythmic positions.

RELATED LINKS
Notes toolbox on page 187
Changing the duration of notes on page 248

Splitting tie chains

You can split tie chains at specified positions; for example, if you want to change the pitch halfway through a tie chain or delete individual ties within tie chains. This does not remove any other ties in the tie chain.

NOTE

If you want to split ties because Dorico Elements notated notes differently than you expected, you can change the default note and rest grouping settings according to different meters. You can also set custom beat groupings for individual time signatures.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, double-click the staff where you want to split a tie chain to start note input at that position.
2. Optional: Move the caret to where you want to split the tie chain.
   - To move the caret according to the current rhythmic grid resolution, press **Right Arrow** / **Left Arrow**.
   - To advance the caret according to the note value currently selected, press **Space** or click **Advance Caret** in the Keyboard, Fretboard, or Drum Pads panel toolbar.
   - To move the caret to the next/previous bar, press **Ctrl/Cmd-Right Arrow** / **Ctrl/Cmd-Left Arrow**.
3. Split the tie chain in any of the following ways:
   - Press **U**.
   - In the Notes toolbox, click **Scissors**.
4. Optional: If you want to split the same tie chain in multiple places, move the caret to the next rhythmic position where you want to split the tie chain and repeat step 3.
5. Stop note input in any of the following ways:
   - Press **Esc** or **Return**.
   - In the Notes toolbox, click **Start Note Input**.

RESULT

The tie chain is split at the caret position.

RELATED LINKS

Note and rest grouping on page 774
Beam grouping according to meters on page 755
Creating custom beat groupings for meters on page 774
Splitting notes by duration on page 249
Notes toolbox on page 187
Caret on page 205
Moving the caret manually on page 210
Rhythmic grid on page 204
Keyboard panel on page 197
Fretboard panel on page 199
Drum Pads panel on page 200

Ties in Engrave mode

In Engrave mode, each tie has five square handles that you can move independently. Some handles are connected to others, meaning moving one can affect the position of neighboring handles.

Ties have the following handles in Engrave mode:

1. Left endpoint
2. Left control point
3. Tie height
4. Right control point
5. Right endpoint

For example, moving the left endpoint moves both the start of a tie and the other handles apart from the right endpoint. However, moving the right control point only causes the tie height handle to move as well. This gives you fine control over the shape of ties, while ensuring the end result remains curved and smooth.

You can move these handles to change the shape/angle of ties with the keyboard, with the mouse, and by using properties in the **Ties** group of the Properties panel.

RELATED LINKS
Tie height on page 1245
Tie shoulder offset on page 1247

Changing the shape/angle of ties

You can change move ties and tie handles graphically, allowing you to change the shape and/or angle of individual ties; for example, to adjust an endpoint relative to an individual notehead. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the whole ties or individual tie handles you want to move in any of the following ways:
   - **Ctrl/Cmd**-click multiple ties.
   - **Ctrl/Cmd**-click individual handles on multiple ties.
   - Select a whole tie and press **Tab** to cycle through its handles until the one you want to move is selected.
   - Click the handle you want to move.

   NOTE

   - To change the angle of ties, select tie endpoints only.
   - You cannot move whole ties to the right/left, you can only move them upwards/downwards.
2. Move the ties or handles in any of the following ways:
   - To move them a standard amount to the right, left, up, or down, press **Alt/Opt** plus the corresponding arrow key. For example, press **Alt/Opt-Left Arrow** to move handles to the left. This moves ties/handles by 1/8 space per press.
   - To move them a large amount, press **Ctrl/Cmd** plus the standard key command; for example, **Ctrl/Cmd-Alt/Opt-Left Arrow**. This moves handles by 1 space per press.
   - To move them a moderate amount, press **Shift** plus the standard key command; for example, **Shift-Alt/Opt-Left Arrow**. This moves handles by 1/2 space per press.

- To move them a small amount, press **Ctrl/Cmd** - **Shift** plus the standard key command; for example, **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-Alt/Opt-Left Arrow**. This moves handles by 1/32 space per press.
- Click and drag whole ties upwards/downwards.
- Click and drag them in any direction.

RESULT

The selected ties or tie handles are moved. Depending on the handles you selected and the directions in which you moved them, this can change the shape, angle, and/or proportional size of the corresponding ties. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

TIP

The following properties in the **Ties** group of the Properties panel are activated automatically when you move the corresponding tie handles:

- **Start offset** moves the left endpoints of ties. **X** moves them horizontally, **Y** moves them vertically.
- **End offset** moves the right endpoints of ties. **X** moves them horizontally, **Y** moves them vertically.
- **Start handle offset** moves the left control points of ties. **X** moves them horizontally, **Y** moves them vertically.
- **End handle offset** moves the right control points of ties. **X** moves them horizontally, **Y** moves them vertically.

You can also use these properties to change the shape of individual ties by changing the values in the value fields.

Deactivating the properties resets the corresponding handles on the selected ties to their default positions.

EXAMPLE

Moving the left endpoint moves both the start of a tie and the other handles apart from the right endpoint. This allows you to change the angle and/or width of the tie without changing its overall shape.

Moving the left control point causes the tie height handle to move but does not affect the position of the left and right endpoints or right control point. This gives you fine control over the shape of ties while ensuring that the end result remains curved and smooth.

RELATED LINKS

Changing the property scope on page 617
Copying property settings to other layouts/frame chains on page 599

Changing the thickness of ties

You can change the thickness of individual ties, including changing the thickness of the middle of ties independently of the ends of ties. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.

- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the ties whose thickness you want to change.
2. In the Properties panel, activate the following properties, individually or together, in the **Ties** group:
   - **End thickness**
   - **Middle thickness**
3. Change the values in the value fields.

RESULT

Increasing the values makes the corresponding part of the selected ties thicker, decreasing the values makes the corresponding part of the selected ties thinner. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

Deactivating the properties returns the corresponding part of the selected ties to their default thickness.

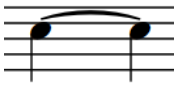
RELATED LINKS

Changing the property scope on page 617
Copying property settings to other layouts/frame chains on page 599

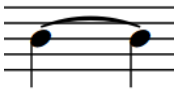
Tie height

The height of ties determines how far above/below their endpoints ties extend vertically.

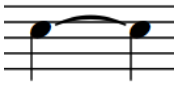
To avoid the end points or curve apexes of ties starting or ending on staff lines, Dorico Elements automatically makes small changes to the curvature shape, height, and vertical position of ties. These changes are small, but the placement of ties is subtly different depending on the position of notes relative to staff lines.



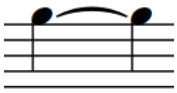
A tie outside noteheads



When transposed one note down, the tie appears with a steeper curve to avoid reaching its apex on the staff line.



A tie between noteheads, with the ends slightly above the vertical center of the noteheads to avoid the tie appearing too close to the staff line at its ends or apex.

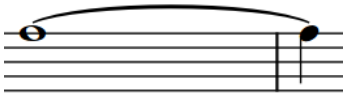


When transposed up, the ends of the tie are now positioned at the vertical center of the notehead, as there is no staff line with which it could collide.

You can change the height of individual ties in Engrave mode.

Increasing the height of ties makes them extend further from the vertical position of their endpoints, which gives them a rounder shape and means they take up more vertical space. Ties generally do not need to be as curved as slurs, as they join notes of the same pitch instead of arching over or above a range of pitches.

Where vertical space is tight, a balance must be found between how curved ties are and ensuring staves do not overlap.



A long tie with default height

A long tie with increased height

Changing the height of ties

You can change the height of individual ties; for example, to save vertical space on tightly-spaced pages. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the tie height (middle) handle of the ties whose height you want to change.
2. Move the handles in any of the following ways:
   - To move them upwards/downwards a standard amount, press **Alt/Opt** plus the corresponding arrow key. For example, press **Alt/Opt-Up Arrow** to move handles upwards. This moves handles by 1/8 space per press.
   - To move them upwards/downwards a large amount, press **Ctrl/Cmd** plus the standard key command; for example, **Ctrl/Cmd-Alt/Opt-Up Arrow**. This moves handles by 1 space per press.
   - To move them upwards/downwards a moderate amount, press **Shift** plus the standard key command; for example, **Shift-Alt/Opt-Up Arrow**. This moves handles by 1/2 space per press.
   - To move them upwards/downwards a small amount, press **Ctrl/Cmd**-**Shift** plus the standard key command; for example, **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-Alt/Opt-Up Arrow**. This moves handles by 1/32 space per press.
   - Click and drag them upwards/downwards.

RESULT

The height of the selected ties is changed. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

NOTE

- To maintain a visually pleasing and symmetrical curve when changing the height of ties manually, you may need to move tie height handles to the right/left by a small amount, as well as upwards/downwards.

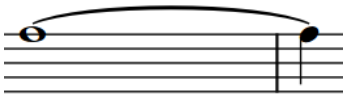
- Moving tie height handles to the right/left affects the shape of the whole tie.

RELATED LINKS
Changing the property scope on page 617
Copying property settings to other layouts/frame chains on page 599

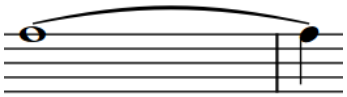
Tie shoulder offset

Tie shoulders affect the angles of the curves of ties as they taper towards an endpoint, as the tapered ends often approach noteheads at a steeper angle than that of a tie's arch.

Increasing the shoulder offset makes the onset of the curve shallower, whereas decreasing the shoulder offset makes the onset steeper.



A long tie with default shoulder offset



A long tie with increased shoulder offset

You can change the shoulder offset of ties individually by moving their control point handles in Engrave mode.

Changing the shoulder offset of ties

You can change the shoulder offset of individual ties. For example, you might want to change the shoulder offset of a few very short or very long ties in your project to improve their shape. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select one of the control point handles on each of the ties whose shoulders you want to adjust in any of the following ways:
   - Select a whole tie and press **Tab** to cycle through the handles until the one you want to move is selected.
   - Click the handle you want to move.
   - **Ctrl/Cmd**-click individual handles on multiple ties.
2. Move the handles in any of the following ways:
   - To move them a standard amount to the right, left, up, or down, press **Alt/Opt** plus the corresponding arrow key. For example, press **Alt/Opt-Left Arrow** to move handles to the left. This moves handles by 1/8 space per press.
   - To move them a large amount, press **Ctrl/Cmd** plus the standard key command; for example, **Ctrl/Cmd-Alt/Opt-Left Arrow**. This moves handles by 1 space per press.
   - To move them a moderate amount, press **Shift** plus the standard key command; for example, **Shift-Alt/Opt-Left Arrow**. This moves handles by 1/2 space per press.

- To move them a small amount, press **Ctrl/Cmd**-**Shift** plus the standard key command; for example, **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-Alt/Opt-Left Arrow**. This moves handles by 1/32 space per press.
- Click and drag them in any direction.

3. Optional: Repeat steps 1 and 2 for the other control point handle on the ties whose shoulders you want to adjust.

RESULT

Moving tie offset handles further apart reduces the shoulder offset, while moving them closer together increases the shoulder offset. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

TIP

The following properties in the **Ties** group of the Properties panel are activated automatically when you move the corresponding tie handles:

- **Start handle offset** moves the left control points of ties. **X** moves them horizontally, **Y** moves them vertically.
- **End handle offset** moves the right control points of ties. **X** moves them horizontally, **Y** moves them vertically.

You can also use these properties to change the shoulder offset of individual ties by changing the values in the value fields.

Deactivating the properties resets the corresponding handles on the selected ties to their default positions.

RELATED LINKS

Changing the property scope on page 617
Copying property settings to other layouts/frame chains on page 599

Time signatures

Time signatures indicate the meter of music, and apply to all bars from where they first appear until a subsequent change of time signature. Meter describes the rhythmic pulse of music, and its division into beats and bars.

A time signature is made up of two parts: numerator on top, and denominator underneath. These are the same mathematical terms as are used for fractions due to their similar arrangement.

1 Numerator

Specifies the number of beats in each bar for the time signature. The duration of beats is specified by the denominator.

2 Denominator

Specifies the beat duration for the time signature. The denominator doubles for every halving of the beat duration: 1 is a whole note (breve), 2 is a half note (minim), 4 is a quarter note (crotchet), 8 is an eighth note (quaver), and so on.

For example, a 4/4 time signature tells you the bar is made up of four beats, and each of those beats is a quarter note in length. A time signature of 4/2 contains four half notes in each bar, and 4/8 contains four eighth notes (quavers) in each bar. Both 3/4 and 6/8 contain six eighth notes, but it is understood that a 3/4 bar contains three quarter note beats, whereas a 6/8 bar contains two dotted quarter note beats.

Bars are rhythmic groups, divided according to the time signature, and they make following the music much more practical and easier to read. Notes are beamed differently in different time signatures for the same reasons.

By default, time signatures apply to all staves. However, there are certain situations, such as in polymetric music, where some parts require their own time signature, independently of the rest of the ensemble. You can input time signatures that apply to all staves or only apply to single staves in Dorico Elements.

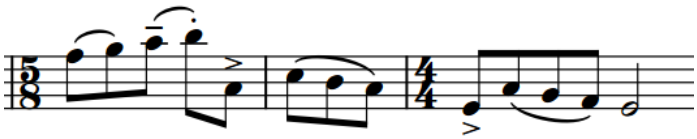
Time signatures apply until the next time signature change or the end of the flow, whichever comes first.

Time signatures traditionally use a unique, heavy font that ensures they stand out against staff lines, and fill the height of a single staff. For some types of music, particularly film music, it is typical to use large time signatures that span several staves.

NOTE

- You can input notes without inputting a time signature.
- Beat lengths are fixed across all staves in your project, regardless of the time signature. For example, if you have a 2/4 time signature on one staff and a 6/8 time signature on another staff, then one quarter note in the 2/4 time signature equals one quarter note in the 6/8 time signature, meaning their barlines do not match.

- Dorico Elements does not automatically add beats to fill bars when you input time signatures unless Insert mode is activated.



A 5/8 time signature input before an existing 4/4 time signature without Insert mode activated, leaving only three eighth note beats in the second 5/8 bar.

RELATED LINKS
Input methods for time signatures and pick-up bars on page 270
Types of time signatures on page 1250
Time signature styles on page 1256
Pick-up bars on page 1253
Large time signatures on page 1254
Beam grouping according to meters on page 755
Note and rest grouping on page 774
Time Signatures (Meter) panel on page 273
Creating custom beat groupings for meters on page 774
Bars on page 729
Insert mode on page 427
Inputting notes on page 211

Types of time signatures

There are different types of time signatures, which can indicate various and complex meters.

NOTE

Dorico Elements uses the definitions for meters commonly used in American English. These definitions, such as which meters are considered simple and compound, might be different in other languages.

Simple

In simple time signatures, each beat is divided by two into equal groups of notes. Simple time signatures can be simple duple, such as 2/4, simple triple, such as 3/4, or simple quadruple, such as 4/4.

Compound

In compound time signatures, each beat is divided by three into equal groups of dotted notes, such as 6/8, which contains two dotted quarter note beats, or 9/4, which contains three dotted half note beats.

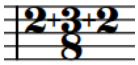
Irregular

Irregular time signatures, such as 5/4 or 7/8, cannot be subdivided into equal beat groups. Because the numerator is odd, these time signatures must be divided into

unequal beat groups. For example, 5/4 usually contains a half note beat and a dotted half note beat.

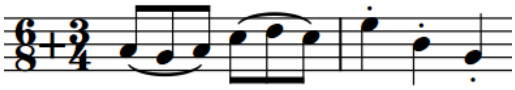
Additive

Additive time signatures show how bars are subdivided into beat groups. You can show beat group numerators for any type of time signature. For example, instead of 7/8, you could show an additive time signature of 2+3+2/8.



Alternating

An alternating time signature indicates a regular pattern that switches every bar between two or more time signatures, in the indicated order. For example, for a phrase with twelve eighth notes that needs to be emphasized 3+3+2+2+2, an alternating time signature of 6/8+3/4 might allow the two meters to be read more clearly.



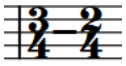
Interchangeable

An interchangeable time signature indicates a set of time signatures at the start of the piece that can be used during the piece, such as 3/4–2/4. Unlike alternating time signatures, interchangeable time signatures do not require a fixed pattern; any bar in the piece can follow any of the time signatures in the set without having to restate the time signature.

NOTE

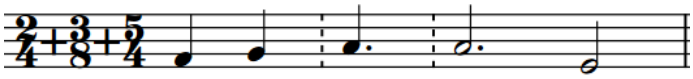
You must manually input the appropriate time signatures where you want them, as unlike alternating time signatures, there is no fixed pattern for them. Any time signatures you input after an interchangeable time signature that are specified in it are hidden automatically until you end the interchangeable time signature.

They can have different separator styles in Dorico Elements, which you can change for individual time signatures.



Aggregate

An aggregate time signature shows two or more meters within the same bar, such as 2/4+3/8+5/4. Dorico Elements automatically shows dashed barlines to indicate the divisions between the different meters, but you can also specify that you do not want to show dashed barlines when you input aggregate time signatures with the popover.



Open

An open time signature has no restrictions on meter, beaming, or beats. Any number of notes can be added, with any beaming. For example, open time signatures might be used for cadenza passages.

NOTE

In open meters, you must input barlines and add beats manually. You can also extend open meter bars by inputting notes with Insert mode activated and set to a global scope.

Non-power of two

A non-power of two time signature is one such as 5/6, which indicates five sextuplet quarter notes (crotchets) where the sextuplet overall equals a whole note (semibreve). Examples of time signatures like this can be found in the music of Adès.

NOTE

Some composers, such as Boulez, have written fractional time signatures. Dorico Elements does not currently support fractional time signatures.

RELATED LINKS
Time signature styles on page 1256
Large time signatures on page 1254
Note and rest grouping on page 774
Input methods for time signatures and pick-up bars on page 270
Input methods for bars, beats, and barlines on page 287
Ending interchangeable time signatures on page 1262
Insert mode on page 427

Cautionary time signatures

When a time signature change occurs at a system break, either in the score or in a part, the new time signature is shown at the end of the first system as well as at the start of the new system.

This is sometimes considered a “cautionary time signature”, because it warns performers of an upcoming change of time signature before it takes effect.

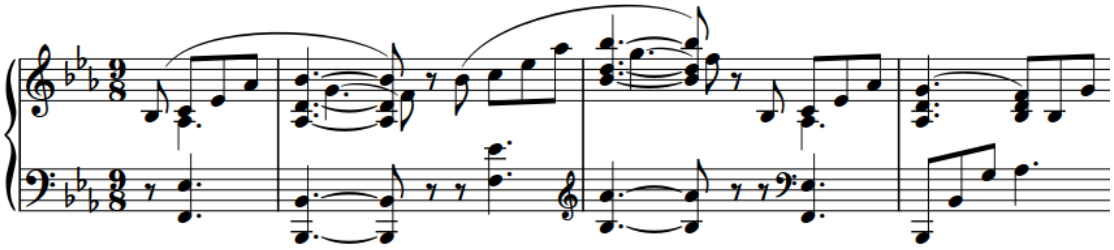
In Dorico Elements, the time signatures shown at the end of one system and at the start of the next system are the same item, not separate items. You cannot hide cautionary time signatures.

If the music is separate enough that you do not want to see a time signature at the end of a system and you cannot change where the system break occurs, you can separate the music by creating a new flow at the point of the system break.

RELATED LINKS
Flows on page 162
Adding flows on page 163
Splitting flows on page 470
System breaks on page 586
Inserting system breaks on page 586
Cautionary key signatures on page 915
Clefs on page 816

Pick-up bars

Pick-up bars allow you to include music before the first full bar. They are also known as an “upbeat” or “anacrusis”. Often, pick-up bars only comprise a few beats whose main purpose is to lead in to the start of the piece.



Pick-up bar of four eighth notes at the start of a piece in 9/8

Pieces that start with a pick-up bar have time signatures that are positioned at the start of the system as normal. However, the first full bar of the time signature occurs after the first barline and not before. Therefore, pick-up bars do not contribute to the bar number count. Bar numbers are counted from the first full bar in the flow.

Because pick-up bars are linked to the number of notes/rests in the music, in Dorico Elements they are linked to time signatures. However, you can hide time signatures you do not want to show in the music.

TIP

You can use the **Global Adjustment of Current Bar** Insert mode scope to create and delete pick-up bars by deleting notes/rests in the first bar in the flow. You can also use it to shorten the last bar in flows that start with a pick-up bar.

RELATED LINKS
Input methods for time signatures and pick-up bars on page 270
Hiding/Showing time signatures on page 1261
Insert mode scopes on page 428
Deleting notes/items on page 431
Bars on page 729
Bar numbers on page 742
Track overview on page 486
Turning existing notes into grace notes on page 899
Turning grace notes into normal notes on page 900

Defining partial bars as pick-up bars or irregular bars

You can change whether explicit irregular bars at the start of time signatures are defined as pick-up bars. This affects how notes in the bars are beamed and grouped.

Notes in irregular bars defined as pick-up bars are beamed/grouped backwards from the end of the bar, while notes in irregular bars not defined as pick-up bars are beamed/grouped forwards from the start of the bar.

NOTE

You must input explicit irregular bars and pick-up bars as part of a time signature, such as by entering **4/4,1.5** into the time signatures popover to input a 4/4 time signature with a pick-up bar containing 1.5 quarter note beats, or three eighth notes.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

PROCEDURE

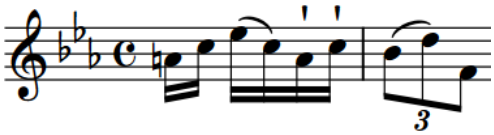
1. Select the time signatures or the signposts of time signatures starting with an explicit irregular bar whose pick-up definition you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Group first bar as pick-up** in the **Time Signatures** group.
3. Activate/Deactivate the corresponding checkbox.

RESULT

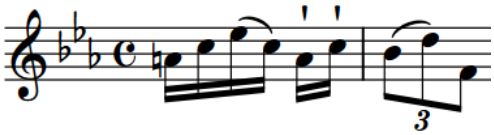
Irregular bars at the start of the selected time signatures are defined as pick-up bars when **Group first bar as pick-up** and its corresponding checkbox are both activated, and defined as normal irregular bars when the corresponding checkbox is deactivated.

When the property is deactivated, Dorico Elements uses internal heuristics to define them as either pick-up bars or normal irregular bars automatically.

EXAMPLE



Irregular bar defined as pick-up into common time



Irregular bar defined as normal irregular bar, not a pick-up

Large time signatures

Large time signatures are scaled-up time signatures that appear much larger than normal relative to the staff size. They can be helpful in orchestral scores, as the smaller staff size in such scores means standard time signatures are small and harder for conductors to read.

Large time signatures are also very commonly used in film scores, as conductors rarely have much time to prepare the scores before recording sessions. Having large time signatures makes changes in meter more visually clear on the page, especially when music contains multiple changes in meter.

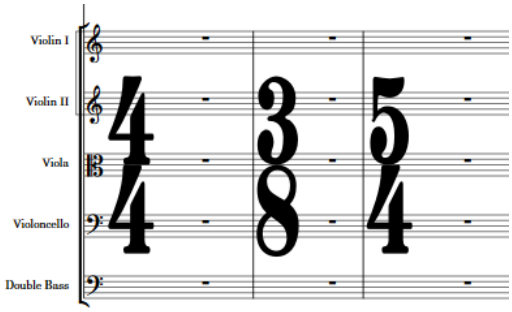
In Dorico Elements, you can show large time signatures at the following positions:

- Once per bracketed group
- Above the staff and at system object positions

Time signatures shown once per bracketed group

Instead of showing a time signature on every staff that is the same height as the staff, you can instead show a single large time signature on each bracketed group of staves. When shown once per bracketed group, time signatures are scaled up in size according to the number of staves in the bracketed group. The largest time signatures are shown on bracketed groups containing four

or more staves. When shown on single staves, they extend a small amount above and below the staff, which is commonly used for parts for film music recording sessions.

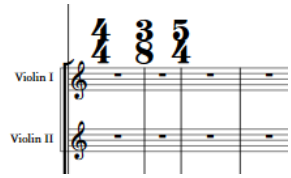


Narrow, serif time signatures shown once per bracketed group

Large time signatures shown on bracketed groups occupy horizontal space, which can be a significant amount when they are especially large and use the standard time signature design. Therefore, we recommend that you use one of the narrow designs in layouts that show large time signatures on bracketed groups.

Time signatures shown at system object positions

Similar to showing large time signatures once per bracketed group, you can also show time signatures only at system object positions and above the staff. Therefore, their positions in each system are controlled by the same options that control the positions of other system objects, such as rehearsal marks and tempo marks.



Normal time signatures shown at system object positions

Time signatures shown at system object positions do not occupy horizontal space, meaning it is less important to use a narrow font style. This also reduces the horizontal distance between notes either side of time signatures. Because of this reduced disruption to note spacing, this placement of time signatures has become popular in contemporary art music since the 20th Century.

When using the note denominator style for time signatures shown at system object positions, the note is shown to the right of the numerator rather than below.

By default, time signatures at system object positions are twice the size of normal time signatures and force other items at the same position to appear to the right.

RELATED LINKS
Input methods for time signatures and pick-up bars on page 270
Changing the design of time signatures on page 1262
System objects on page 1196
Changing the positions of system objects on page 1197
Hiding bar numbers at time signatures shown at system object positions on page 749

Changing the size and position of time signatures

You can change the size of time signatures in each layout independently, including changing their vertical position. For example, you can show large time signatures centered on each bracket in full score layouts but standard-sized time signatures on each staff in part layouts.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-L** to open **Layout Options**.
2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to change the size of time signatures.

   By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar, clicking and dragging across multiple layouts, **Shift**-clicking adjacent layouts, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking individual layouts.
3. In the category list, click **Time Signatures**.
4. Choose one of the following options for **Time signature position and size**:
   - **Show on every staff**
   - **Show once per bracket**
   - **Show at system object positions**
5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

The size and position of time signatures in the selected layouts is changed.

Showing large time signatures above the staff at system object positions means they do not occupy any rhythmic or horizontal space, whereas the other options do cause time signatures to occupy horizontal space.

RELATED LINKS

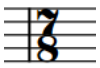
Large time signatures on page 1254
Positions of time signatures on page 1261
Changing the design of time signatures on page 1262
Hiding bar numbers at time signatures shown at system object positions on page 749

Time signature styles

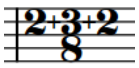
Dorico Elements allows you to show time signatures in a variety of styles. For example, you can show denominators as a number or as a note value.

Numerator styles

The numerator is always one or more numbers, and can either show the total number of beats in the bar as a single number, or show how the total duration of the bar is subdivided into beat groups.



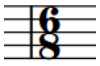
Number numerator



Beat group numerator

Denominator styles

The denominator can appear as a number, as a note indicating the equivalent duration, or not appear at all.



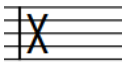
Number denominator

Note denominator

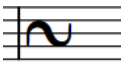
None denominator

Open meter styles

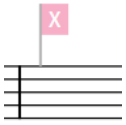
Open time signatures can be shown as an X, Penderecki's symbol, or be hidden with no symbol. Open time signatures with no symbol are indicated by signposts.



X open style



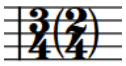
Penderecki's symbol open style



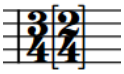
No symbol open style

Interchangeable time signature separator styles

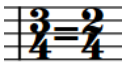
Interchangeable time signatures can have different separator styles. You can specify the separator style when inputting interchangeable time signatures using the popover and for individual interchangeable time signatures after they have been input.



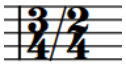
Parentheses separator



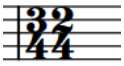
Brackets separator



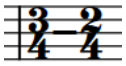
Equals sign separator



Slash separator



Space separator



Hyphen separator

RELATED LINKS
Types of time signatures on page 1250
Inputting time signatures with the popover on page 274
Time signatures popover on page 271
Changing the design of time signatures on page 1262
Changing the open meter style of time signatures on page 1258
Changing the separator style of interchangeable time signatures on page 1259
Changing the appearance of common/cut common time signatures on page 1260
Signposts on page 426

Changing the numerator style of time signatures

You can choose whether the numerators of individual time signatures show the total number of beats in each bar, or the subdivision of beats in each bar.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the time signatures whose numerator style you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Numerator style** in the **Time Signatures** group.
3. Choose one of the following options:
   - **Number**
   - **Beat group**

RESULT

The numerator style of the selected time signatures is changed.

Changing the denominator style of time signatures

You can change the denominator style of individual time signatures; for example, if you want to show the denominator as a note instead of a number.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the time signatures whose denominator style you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Denominator style** in the **Time Signatures** group.
3. Choose one of the following options:
   - **Number**
   - **Note**
   - **None**

RESULT

The denominator style of the selected time signatures is changed.

Changing the open meter style of time signatures

You can change the open meter style of individual time signatures.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the open meter time signatures whose style you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, choose one of the following options for **Open style** in the **Time Signatures** group:
   - **No symbol** NONE
   - **X** X
   - **Penderecki's symbol**

RESULT

The open meter style of the selected time signatures is changed. **No symbol** open time signatures are indicated by signposts.

RELATED LINKS

Time signature styles on page 1256
Input methods for time signatures and pick-up bars on page 270
Signposts on page 426

Changing the separator style of interchangeable time signatures

You can change the separator shown in interchangeable time signatures individually.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the interchangeable time signatures whose separator you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.

   NOTE

   In the Properties panel, **Separator** in the **Time Signatures** group is automatically activated for interchangeable time signatures.

2. Select one of the following options from the **Separator** menu:
   - **Parentheses** (..)
   - **Brackets** [..]
   - **Equals sign** =
   - **Slash** /
   - **Space**
   - **Hyphen** –

RESULT

The separator style of the selected interchangeable time signatures is changed.

TIP

- You can specify the separator style when inputting interchangeable time signatures using the popover.
- Although they might look similar to interchangeable time signatures, aggregate time signatures behave differently. Aggregate time signatures are separated by a + sign, whereas interchangeable time signatures can be shown with six different separators but not a + sign.

  Therefore, although you can activate **Separator** and choose from the available options for aggregate time signatures, the property only affects the appearance of interchangeable time signature separators.

RELATED LINKS
Time signature styles on page 1256
Inputting time signatures with the popover on page 274
Time signatures popover on page 271

Changing the appearance of common/cut common time signatures

You can show individual common/cut common time signatures with either common/cut common symbols or with a numerator and denominator, such as 2/2 or 4/4.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

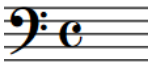
PROCEDURE

1. Select the common/cut common time signatures whose appearance you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate/deactivate **Common/Cut common** in the **Time Signatures** group.

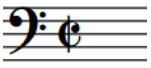
RESULT

The selected time signatures appear with common/cut common symbols when **Common/Cut common** is activated, and with a numerator and denominator when it is deactivated.

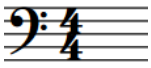
EXAMPLE



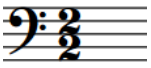
Common time signature symbol



Cut common time signature symbol



Common time signature, appearing as 4/4



Cut common time signature, appearing as 2/2

RELATED LINKS
Input methods for time signatures and pick-up bars on page 270

Positions of time signatures

Standard time signatures are positioned on staves with the middle staff line, or only staff line for single-line staves, passing through their center. Large time signatures can be positioned in the middle or at the top of bracket groups, or above staves at system object positions.

Dorico Elements automatically positions time signatures after clefs, key signatures, and barlines.

You can move time signatures to different rhythmic positions in Write mode. They are positioned automatically to avoid collisions.

You can also change the position of time signatures in each layout independently; for example, if you want to show time signatures above the staff and at system object positions in some layouts but only once per bracket in other layouts.

RELATED LINKS
System objects on page 1196
Cautionary time signatures on page 1252
Large time signatures on page 1254
Changing the positions of system objects on page 1197
Moving items graphically on page 481
Input methods for time signatures and pick-up bars on page 270

Hiding/Showing time signatures

You can hide/show time signatures without deleting them from your project. This hides/shows them in all layouts, not just the one currently open in the music area.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the time signatures you want to hide, or the signposts of time signatures you want to show. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate/deactivate **Hide time signature** in the **Time Signatures** group.

RESULT

The selected time signatures are hidden in all layouts when **Hide time signature** is activated, and shown when it is deactivated.

Signposts are shown at the position of each hidden time signature. However, signposts are not printed by default.

NOTE

- Hidden time signatures do not take up any horizontal space, so hiding/showing time signatures affects note spacing.
- You can hide/show time signature signposts by choosing **View** > **Signposts** > **Time Signatures**.

- You can assign a key command for **Hide/Show Item** on the **Key Commands** page in **Preferences**, which applies to chord symbols, playing techniques, figured bass, text items, and time signatures.

RELATED LINKS
Note spacing on page 579
Signposts on page 426
Input methods for time signatures and pick-up bars on page 270
Annotations on page 554

Ending interchangeable time signatures

Any time signatures you input after an interchangeable time signature that are specified in it are hidden automatically. You can end interchangeable time signatures from selected time signatures, which shows them.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the barlines or signposts of time signature from which you want to end interchangeable time signatures. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **End interchangeable** in the **Time Signatures** group.

RESULT

Interchangeable time signatures are ended at the selected time signatures. The selected time signatures and all subsequent time signatures specified in the prevailing interchangeable time signature are shown until the next existing interchangeable time signature or the end of the flow, whichever comes first.

Changing the design of time signatures

You can change the design of time signatures in each layout independently, including changing the font style used for them; for example, if you want to use a plain font for time signatures in full score layouts but the standard time signature font in part layouts.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-L** to open **Layout Options**.
2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to change the design of time signatures.

   By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar, clicking and dragging across multiple layouts, **Shift**-clicking adjacent layouts, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking individual layouts.
3. In the category list, click **Time Signatures**.
4. Choose one of the following options for **Time signature design**:
   - **Normal**

- **Narrow, serif**
- **Narrow, sans serif**
- **Plain font**

5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

The design of time signatures in the selected layouts is changed. If you choose **Plain font**, time signatures use a different font style than the one used for the other options.

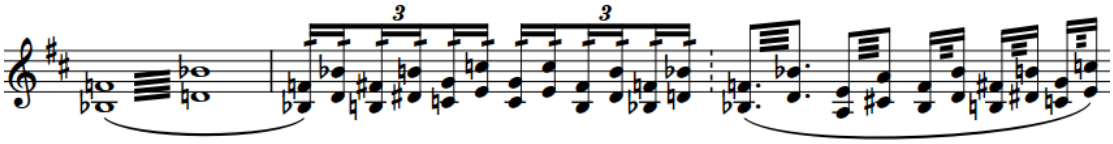
RELATED LINKS

Large time signatures on page 1254

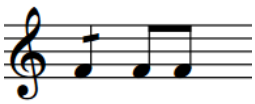
Tremolos

Tremolos are thick, slanted lines that cross individual stems or are positioned between multiple stems. They are used to indicate that notes are repeated, either individually or in sequences of multiple notes.

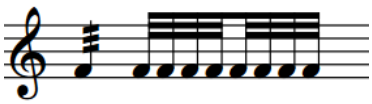
Using tremolo strokes instead of notating each notehead can save horizontal space and make fast passages easier to read.



The number of tremolo strokes indicates both how many times notes are repeated and how fast they are. In measured tremolos, for example, one tremolo stroke on the stem of a quarter note (crotchet) indicates two eighth notes (quavers) are played, whereas three tremolo strokes on the stem of a quarter note indicates eight 32nd notes are played.



Quarter note with a one-stroke single-note tremolo and its equivalent notation

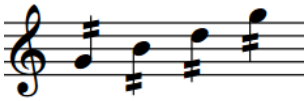


Quarter note with a three-stroke single-note tremolo and its equivalent notation

There are different types of tremolos:

Single-note tremolos

Individual notes are repeated. Single-note tremolos are positioned on note stems.



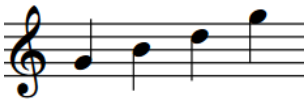
Two-stroke single-note tremolos added to four quarter notes

Multi-note tremolos

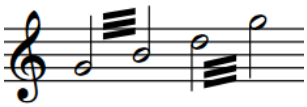
Multiple notes, usually two, are played in sequence, similar to a trill. However, trills usually indicate a fast alternation between two adjacent notes, such as G and A, whereas multi-note tremolos can be between any notes, limited only by the capabilities of the instrument.

All notes in multi-note tremolos indicate the total duration of the tremolo. For example, two quarter notes joined by a multi-note tremolo both appear as half notes.

Multi-note tremolos are positioned between the stems of two or more notes.



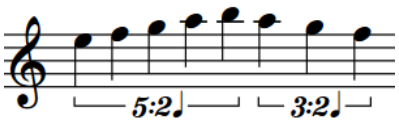
Four quarter notes without tremolos



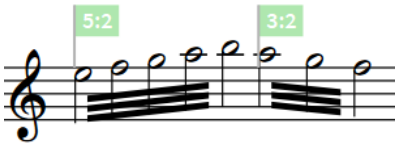
Multi-note tremolos input between those quarter notes, in two pairs

Tuplet tremolos

Multiple notes in tuplets are repeated in the notated sequence. Tuplet tremolos are positioned between all the notes in the tuplet.



Quarter notes in two different tuplets without tremolos



Multi-note tuplet tremolos input across those tuplets

Depending on the musical context, tremolos can be either measured or unmeasured. There is no visual difference between measured/unmeasured tremolos, so composers/arrangers often specify how they want tremolos to be played, such as an indication in the front matter of the score or as a text instruction in the score.

Measured tremolos

The number of tremolo strokes corresponds to a precise rhythm in the prevailing tempo and meter.

Unmeasured tremolos

There is no link between the number of strokes and rhythm. Instead, unmeasured tremolos are played as fast as possible, whatever the tempo.

Unmeasured tremolos often use three or more tremolo strokes, and can also be accompanied by a “trem.” text indication.

RELATED LINKS
Input methods for repeats and tremolos on page 386
Deleting tremolos on page 1268
Tremolos in tie chains on page 1266
Changing the speed of tremolos on page 1268
MIDI Import Options dialog on page 86

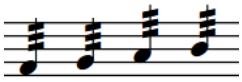
General placement conventions for tremolos

Single-note tremolos are positioned on note stems, whereas multi-note tremolos are positioned between the stems of two or more notes. When multi-note tremolos cross three or more notes, the tremolo strokes are positioned between all the notes.

Tremolo strokes are slightly thinner than beams, so that the gaps between strokes are large enough and the number of strokes can be instantly recognized.

Dorico Elements automatically avoids collisions between tremolo strokes and ledger lines or stem flags.

Tremolo strokes within the staff are positioned so that they are at least one staff space clear of noteheads, and at valid positions relative to staff lines and staff spaces. This means that tremolo strokes might not move every time you change the pitch of notes.



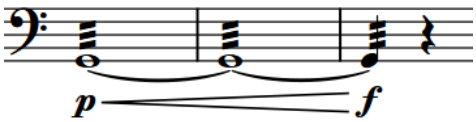
The positions of the tremolo strokes on the first two notes and the last two notes are the same, although the pitches are all different.

In Dorico Elements, the angle of single-note tremolo strokes is always the same, no matter the direction of the phrase. The angles of multi-note tremolo strokes are determined by the height of the stems to which the multi-note tremolos apply. You can change the angles of multi-note tremolo strokes individually by lengthening/shortening the stems at the start/end of the tremolo.

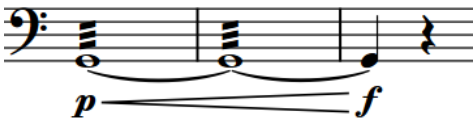
Tremolos in tie chains

By default, single-note tremolos appear either on all notes in tie chains, or on all notes apart from the first or last note. Deleting tremolo strokes from tied notes removes tremolo strokes from all notes in tie chains.

In Dorico Elements, we use “tremolo with attack” and “tremolo with release” to refer to single-note tremolos that appear on all notes in tie chains apart from the first and last note, respectively.

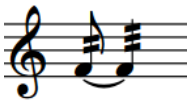


Single-note tremolo added to tie chain

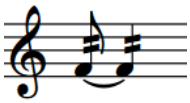


Tremolo with release added to tie chain

In Dorico Elements, tremolos are considered measured by default, so the number of tremolo strokes shown is automatically adjusted on subsequent notes in tie chains as required. For example, if an eighth note with two tremolo strokes is tied to a quarter note, the quarter note has three tremolo strokes. This is because tremolo strokes function like beams, so two tremolo strokes and an eighth note stem flag is the equivalent of three tremolo strokes.



The default number of tremolo strokes in a tie chain where the second note is longer than the first.



The number of tremolo strokes on the second note has been changed to match the first.

However, there might be circumstances in which you want all notes to have the same number of tremolo strokes, whatever their duration. You can also start tremolos partway through tie chains, or stop tremolos partway through tie chains.

You can change the number of tremolo strokes shown on individual notes independently in Engrave mode.

RELATED LINKS
Ties on page 1232
Inputting tremolos with the popover on page 395

Inputting tremolos with the panel on page 397
Deleting tremolos on page 1268

Changing the number of tremolo strokes on individual notes in tie chains

Dorico Elements automatically changes the number of tremolo strokes on subsequent notes in tie chains according to their duration, but you can manually change the number of single-note tremolo strokes shown on each note in tie chains individually to represent your intended rhythm. For example, if you want all notes in a tie chain to have the same number of tremolo strokes, whatever their duration.

TIP

If you want to remove tremolo strokes from the first or last notes in tie chains, you can input tremolos with an attack or release, respectively.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

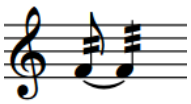
PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the noteheads of the notes whose number of tremolo strokes you want to change.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Single stem tremolo** in the **Notes and Rests** group.
3. Select one of the following options from the menu:
   - **None**
   - **One stroke**
   - **Two strokes**
   - **Three strokes**
   - **Four strokes**
   - **Buzz roll**

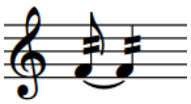
RESULT

The number of tremolo strokes shown on the selected notes is changed.

EXAMPLE



The default number of tremolo strokes in a tie chain where the second note is longer than the first.



The number of tremolo strokes on the second note has been changed to match the first.

RELATED LINKS

Changing the speed of tremolos on page 1268
Input methods for repeats and tremolos on page 386

Changing the speed of tremolos

You can change the speed of tremolos after they have been input by changing the number of strokes.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the notes with tremolos whose speed you want to change.

   The buttons with the number of tremolo strokes corresponding to your selection are highlighted in the **Tremolos** section of the Repeat Structures panel.

   NOTE

   Select single-note tremolos and multi-note tremolos separately.

2. Click the button with the number of tremolo strokes you want in the **Tremolos** section of the Repeat Structures panel.

   For example, click **Two Strokes Single-note Tremolo** to input single-note tremolos with two strokes, or click **Three Strokes Multi-note Tremolo** to input multi-note tremolos with three strokes.

RESULT

The number of tremolo strokes on the selected notes is changed, which changes the speed of the tremolos.

RELATED LINKS

Changing the number of tremolo strokes on individual notes in tie chains on page 1267

Deleting tremolos

You can remove single-note tremolos and multi-note tremolos from notes separately without affecting the notes to which they applied.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the notes whose tremolo strokes you want to delete.
2. In the Notations toolbox, click **Panels**, then **Repeat Structures** to show the Repeat Structures panel.
3. In the **Tremolos** section, click one or both of the following buttons, depending on the types of tremolos selected:
   - **Remove Single-note Tremolo**
   - **Remove Multi-note Tremolo**

RESULT

The corresponding types of tremolo strokes are deleted.

TIP

You can also delete tremolos by entering **0** or **clear** into the repeats popover.

RELATED LINKS

Notations toolbox on page 192

Repeat Structures panel on page 390
Repeats popover on page 387
Changing the number of tremolo strokes on individual notes in tie chains on page 1267

Rhythmic positions of notes with tremolos

You can move notes with single-note tremolos and multi-note tremolos to new rhythmic positions in the same ways as normal notes. However, if you move multi-note tremolos across barlines, the tremolo strokes are deleted automatically.

You can move single-note tremolos to new rhythmic positions and across barlines without affecting their tremolo strokes. The notes are automatically respelled as tie chains if required by their new rhythmic positions and time signature, in the same ways as normal notes.

NOTE

If tie chains with single-note tremolos contain notes of different durations, the number of tremolo strokes on each note in the tie chain is different. You can change the number of tremolo strokes shown on each note in tie chains individually.

RELATED LINKS
Moving notes/items rhythmically on page 437

Moving tremolo strokes

You can move tremolo strokes upwards/downwards graphically. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

NOTE

- You cannot move tremolo strokes to the right/left.
- You cannot move tremolo strokes rhythmically, as they apply to specific notes, but you can move notes with tremolos to different rhythmic positions. Notes with single-note tremolos can cross barlines; however, multi-note tremolo strokes are deleted automatically when their notes cross barlines.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the tremolo strokes you want to move.
2. Move the tremolo strokes in any of the following ways:
   - To move them upwards/downwards a standard amount, press **Alt/Opt** plus the corresponding arrow key. For example, press **Alt/Opt-Up Arrow** to move tremolo strokes upwards. This moves tremolo strokes by 1/8 space per press.
   - To move them upwards/downwards a large amount, press **Ctrl/Cmd** plus the standard key command; for example, **Ctrl/Cmd-Alt/Opt-Up Arrow**. This moves tremolo strokes by 1 space per press.

- To move them upwards/downwards a moderate amount, press **Shift** plus the standard key command; for example, **Shift-Alt/Opt-Up Arrow**. This moves tremolo strokes by 1/2 space per press.
- To move them upwards/downwards a small amount, press **Ctrl/Cmd**-**Shift** plus the standard key command; for example, **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-Alt/Opt-Up Arrow**. This moves tremolo strokes by 1/32 space per press.
- Click and drag them upwards/downwards.

RESULT

The selected tremolo strokes are moved upwards/downwards. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

NOTE

- Moving multi-note tremolo strokes also changes the length of the stems to which they are attached. You can change the angles of multi-note tremolo strokes individually by lengthening/shortening the stems at the start/end of the tremolo.
- When you first move tremolo strokes graphically, they may appear to move in the wrong direction or by a larger increment than you expected. This is because their positions are reset when you override those positions by moving them.
- The following properties in the **Beaming** group of the Properties panel are activated automatically when you move the start/end of multi-note tremolo strokes:
  - **Start Y offset** moves the start of multi-note tremolo strokes vertically by moving the end of the corresponding stem.
  - **End Y offset** moves the end of multi-note tremolo strokes vertically by moving the end of the corresponding stem.

  Tremolo Y in the **Notes and Rests** group of the Properties panel is activated automatically when you move single-note tremolo strokes. It moves single-note tremolo strokes vertically.

  For example, if you move a whole multi-note tremolo stroke upwards, both stem handles are moved so both properties are activated. You can also use these properties to move tremolo strokes by changing the values in the value fields. However, you must select the noteheads rather than the tremolo strokes in order to see the relevant groups in the Properties panel.

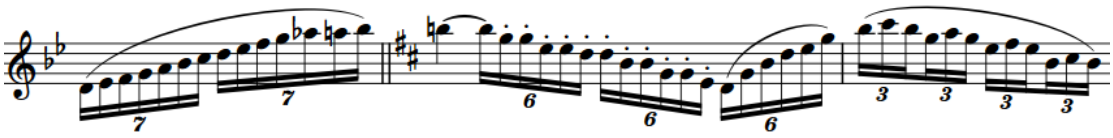
  Deactivating the properties resets the selected stem handles, and therefore tremolo strokes, to their default positions.

RELATED LINKS

Changing the property scope on page 617
Copying property settings to other layouts/frame chains on page 599
Input methods for repeats and tremolos on page 386
Deleting tremolos on page 1268

Tuplets

Tuplets indicate where a beat is divided into a different number of subdivisions than is usually expected according to the current meter. They can be used to fit more notes or fewer notes in a beat than usually exist in a beat, according to the usual pattern of subdivision.



Because these subdivisions are not standard but tuplet notes use the same rhythmic notation as normal notes, tuplets must be clearly marked to show that their rhythmic duration is different. Tuplet numbers/ratios indicate the number of notes in the tuplet, and tuplet brackets show the duration of tuplets that are not joined by beams.

In Dorico Elements, tuplets function like containers into which you can input notes of any duration, such as inputting a quarter note at the start of an eighth note triplet.

When tuplets extend across barlines, Dorico Elements automatically notates them correctly, such as a sextuplet appearing as two triplets. You can also allow tuplets to span barlines without division.

During tuplet input, tuplets are sticky when you input notes with the keyboard, meaning that Dorico Elements continues inputting notes as the specified tuplet until you stop tuplet input or note input.

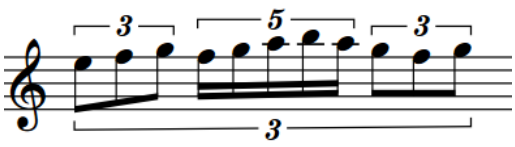
You can show tuplets with different combinations of tuplet brackets and tuplet numbers/ratios. You can also show note symbols indicating the note value of the tuplet alongside tuplet numbers/ratios.

RELATED LINKS
Inputting tuplets on page 243
Tuplet brackets on page 1276
Tuplet numbers/ratios on page 1279
Allowing/Disallowing tuplets to span barlines on page 1274
Moving notes/items rhythmically on page 437

Nested tuplets

Nested tuplets are tuplets within larger tuplets that are often used to create complex rhythms. In Dorico Elements, there is no limit to the number of levels you can have in nested tuplets.

EXAMPLE



Nested tuplets

Inputting nested tuplets

You can input nested tuplets on empty staves and select existing tuplets and input nested tuplets within them.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, start note input.
2. Open the tuplets popover in any of the following ways:
   - Press **;**.
   - In the Notes toolbox, click and hold **Tuplets**, then click **x:y**.

   When inputting tuplets with the keyboard, Dorico Elements automatically continues inputting notes as the specified tuplet.

   NOTE

   You can skip steps 3 and 4 if you are inputting nested tuplets into existing tuplets.
3. Optional: If inputting nested tuplets on an empty staff, enter the ratio for the outer tuplet into the popover.

   For example, enter **3:2q** to input quarter note triplets.
4. Optional: Press **Return** to close the popover and input the outer tuplet.
5. Press **;** to open the tuplets popover again.
6. Enter the ratio for the inner tuplet into the popover.

   For example, enter **5:4e** to input eighth note quintuplets.
7. Press **Return** to close the popover and input the inner tuplet.
8. Input the notes you want.

   When inputting tuplets with the keyboard, Dorico Elements automatically continues inputting notes as the specified tuplet.
9. Stop inputting nested tuplets in one of the following ways:
   - To stop the inner tuplet and continue inputting the outer tuplet, press **:** once.
   - To stop both tuplets and return to inputting normal notes, press **:** twice or move the caret with the arrow keys.
   - To stop note input completely, press **Esc**.

RESULT

Notes are input as nested tuplets, starting from the caret position.

If multiples of the inner tuplet fit exactly inside the outer tuplet, you can continue inputting notes as the specified nested tuplet until you stop the tuplets manually.

If multiples of the inner tuplet do not fit exactly inside the outer tuplet, the inner tuplet stops automatically at the end of the last tuplet that fits in the outer tuplet. After that, the outer tuplet continues until you stop it manually.

NOTE

You can also input nested tuplets by clicking and holding **Tuplets** in the Notes toolbox, then clicking the tuplet you want. However, the inner tuplet you click must fit inside the outer tuplet, based on the currently selected note duration.

RELATED LINKS
Tuplets popover on page 244
Notes toolbox on page 187
Inputting notes on page 211
Selecting note/rest durations on page 247

Turning existing notes into tuplets

You can turn any existing notes into tuplets; for example, if you need to fit extra notes into an existing duration.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the notes on a single staff that you want to turn into tuplets.
2. Open the tuplets popover in any of the following ways:
   - Press **;**.
   - In the Notes toolbox, click and hold **Tuplets**, then click **x:y**.

   The popover is automatically populated with a suggested ratio based on your selection.
3. Optional: Change the ratio in the popover. For example, enter **3:2** to input triplets.
4. Press **Return** to close the popover.

RESULT

The selected notes are turned into tuplets according to the ratio in the popover. For example, if you select five eighth notes and enter **5:4** into the popover, the selected notes become quintuplet eighth notes.

If the selected notes fit into a single tuplet of the specified ratio, only a single tuplet is created. If the selected notes do not fit into a single tuplet, as many tuplets as required are created automatically.

TIP

You can also turn existing notes into tuplets by clicking and holding **Tuplets** in the Notes toolbox, then clicking the tuplet you want.

RELATED LINKS
Tuplets popover on page 244
Inputting tuplets on page 243
Notes toolbox on page 187
Turning existing notes into grace notes on page 899

Turning tuplets into normal notes

You can turn any existing tuplet notes into normal notes; for example, if you want to turn tuplet eighth notes into standard eighth notes.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select just the brackets, numbers/ratios, or signposts of the tuplets you want to turn into normal notes.

NOTE

You must not select any of the noteheads in the tuplets.

2. Optional: If you want the selected tuplets to push subsequent notes to later rhythmic positions if required, press **I** to activate Insert mode.
3. Optional: If you activated Insert mode, choose the appropriate Insert mode scope.
4. Press **Backspace or Delete**.

RESULT

The selected tuplets are deleted. All notes previously in the tuplets are unscaled and appear as normal notes with the same notated duration; for example, a tuplet quarter note becomes a standard quarter note.

When Insert mode is activated, all notes in the tuplets are retained and any subsequent existing notes are pushed to later rhythmic positions to accommodate the extra rhythmic durations required. When Insert mode is deactivated, the earliest selected tuplets expand and overwrite subsequent notes and tuplets.

RELATED LINKS

Tuplet numbers/ratios on page 1279
Tuplet brackets on page 1276
Inputting notes on page 211
Turning grace notes into normal notes on page 900
Insert mode on page 427
Insert mode scopes on page 428

Allowing/Disallowing tuplets to span barlines

You can allow tuplets to span barlines; for example, in Renaissance music, you might want tuplets to span tick barlines without affecting their notation. By default, Dorico Elements automatically splits tuplets over barlines so that both the durations of bars and the divisions in tuplets are clear.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

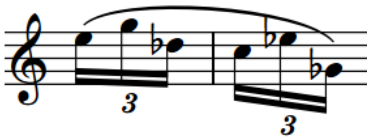
PROCEDURE

1. Select the tuplet brackets or tuplet numbers/ratios of the tuplets you want to allow/disallow to span barlines. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate/deactivate **Spans barline** in the **Tuplets** group.

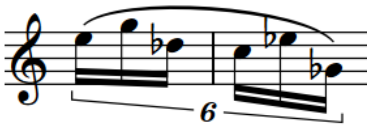
RESULT

The selected tuplets span barlines when **Spans barline** is activated, and are automatically split at barlines when it is deactivated.

EXAMPLE



A 16th note sextuplet across a barline, notated as two triplets



The same sextuplet allowed to span the barline

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

You can beam notes in the selected tuplets together.

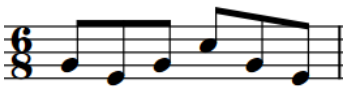
RELATED LINKS

Barlines on page 734
Beaming notes together manually on page 755
Tuplet brackets on page 1276
Tuplet numbers/ratios on page 1279

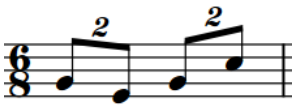
Tuplet beams

Tuplet beams join notes in tuplets that can be joined with beams just like non-tuplet beams. You can make the same changes to tuplet beams that you can make to any other beam.

For example, duplet eighth notes do not need a bracket as they can be joined by a beam and notated using only a tuplet number/ratio.



A 6/8 bar with the standard subdivision of six eighth notes



A 6/8 bar with a subdivision of four duplet eighth notes in the space of six regular eighth notes

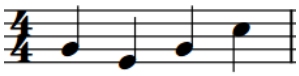
RELATED LINKS

Beaming on page 754
Tuplets within beams on page 771
Beaming notes together manually on page 755
Unbeaming notes on page 757
Splitting beam groups on page 757
Changing the direction of partial beams on page 769
Changing beam slants on page 761

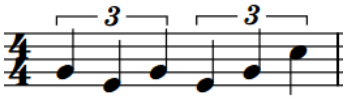
Tuplet brackets

Tuplet brackets show the duration of tuplets that are not joined by beams, such as triplet quarter notes, by showing the notes within the tuplet under a bracket.

EXAMPLE



A 4/4 bar with the standard subdivision of four quarter notes



A 4/4 bar with a subdivision of six triplet quarter notes in the space of four regular quarter notes

You can change the precise positions and shapes of tuplet brackets individually in Engrave mode.

Each tuplet bracket has four handles that can be moved graphically.

- The two upper handles set the position of the start/end of the tuplet bracket. These handles can be moved independently of each other to create angled tuplet brackets.
- The two lower handles set the length of the tuplet bracket hooks. Moving either of these handles changes the length of both hooks.

NOTE

You can use properties in the **Tuplets** group of the Properties panel to edit individual tuplet brackets; however, the **Tuplets** group is only shown if you select tuplet numbers/ratios or brackets. It is not shown if you select notes within the tuplet, or notes within the tuplet and the tuplet number/ratio or bracket.

RELATED LINKS
Moving items graphically on page 481
Lines on page 1075

Hiding/Showing tuplet brackets

You can hide/show tuplet brackets for individual tuplets, and independently of tuplet numbers/ratios. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the tuplet brackets you want to hide, or the signposts of tuplets whose brackets you want to show. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Bracket** in the **Tuplets** group.

3. Choose one of the following options:
   - **Hidden** 3
   - **Shown** ⌐3¬

RESULT

Brackets on the selected tuplets are hidden/shown. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

Signposts are shown at the position of each hidden tuplet; that is, tuplets with no numbers/ratios or brackets shown.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

If you want to hide indications of tuplets entirely, you might also need to hide the tuplet numbers/ratios.

RELATED LINKS

Signposts on page 426
Hiding/Showing tuplet numbers/ratios on page 1279
Changing the property scope on page 617
Copying property settings to other layouts/frame chains on page 599

Changing the staff-relative placement of tuplet brackets

You can show individual tuplet brackets and tuplet numbers/ratios above or below the staff or between staves. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the tuplet brackets and tuplet numbers/ratios whose staff-relative placement you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Placement** in the **Tuplets** group.
3. Choose one of the following options:
   - **Above** ⌐3¬
   - **Below** ⌙3⌟
   - **Cross-staff above** ⌙3¬
   - **Cross-staff below** ⌐3⌟

RESULT

The placement of the selected tuplet brackets is changed. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

TIP

- Deactivating **Placement** returns the selected tuplets to their default placement.

- You can also switch selected tuplets between being above/below the staff or cross-staff above/cross-staff below by pressing **F**.

RELATED LINKS
Tucking index properties on page 825
Changing the property scope on page 617
Copying property settings to other layouts/frame chains on page 599

Changing the rhythmic end position of tuplet brackets

You can change the rhythmic end position of tuplet brackets relative to individual notes individually. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the tuplet brackets whose end position you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **End position** in the **Tuplets** group.
3. Choose one of the following options:
   - **End at right-hand side of final note**
   - **End immediately before following note**
   - **End at position of final tuplet division**

RESULT

The end position for the selected tuplet brackets is changed. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

Deactivating the property returns the selected tuplets to your default settings.

RELATED LINKS
Changing the property scope on page 617
Copying property settings to other layouts/frame chains on page 599
Moving items graphically on page 481

Forcing tuplet brackets to be horizontal

You can change the angle of individual tuplet brackets so that they appear horizontal. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the tuplet brackets whose angle you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Force horizontal** in the **Tuplets** group.

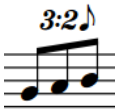
RESULT

The selected tuplet brackets appear horizontal when the property is activated. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

Tuplet numbers/ratios

Tuplet numbers and ratios are very similar: both indicate the number of equal notes included in the tuplet, such as 3 for triplets, but tuplet ratios also include the number of normal notes into whose duration the tuplet fits, such as 3:2 for triplets.

Additionally, tuplet ratios can include a note glyph that indicates the duration of notes in the tuplet.



A triplet with a ratio and note value indication

Tuplet numbers/ratios help performers quickly identify the type of tuplet and how they must fit the number of notes indicated into the prevailing tempo and meter.

NOTE

You can use properties in the **Tuplets** group of the Properties panel to edit individual tuplet numbers/ratios; however, the **Tuplets** group is only shown if you select tuplet numbers/ratios or brackets. It is not shown if you select notes within the tuplet, or notes within the tuplet and the tuplet number/ratio or bracket.

Hiding/Showing tuplet numbers/ratios

You can hide/show tuplet numbers/ratios for individual tuplets, and independently of tuplet brackets. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains. When showing tuplet numbers/ratios, you can choose a different type for each tuplet individually.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the tuplet brackets whose numbers/ratios you want to hide/change, or the signposts of tuplets whose numbers/ratios you want to show. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Number** in the **Tuplets** group.

3. Choose one of the following options:
    - **None**
    - **Number**
    - **Ratio**
    - **Ratio+note**

RESULT

The tuplet number/ratio shown for the selected tuplets is changed. If you selected **None**, the tuplet numbers/ratios for the selected tuplets are hidden. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

Signposts are shown at the position of each hidden tuplet; that is, tuplets with no numbers/ratios or brackets shown.

Deactivating **Number** returns the selected tuplets to the default setting.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

If you want to hide indications of tuplets entirely, you might also need to hide the tuplet brackets.

RELATED LINKS

Hiding/Showing tuplet brackets on page 1276
Changing the property scope on page 617
Copying property settings to other layouts/frame chains on page 599

Changing the position of tuplet numbers/ratios

You can show individual tuplet numbers/ratios at either the visual or rhythmic horizontal center of tuplets. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the tuplets or the signposts of tuplets whose tuplet number/ratio horizontal position you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Center** in the **Tuplets** group.
3. Choose one of the following options:
    - **Visual**
    - **Rhythmic**

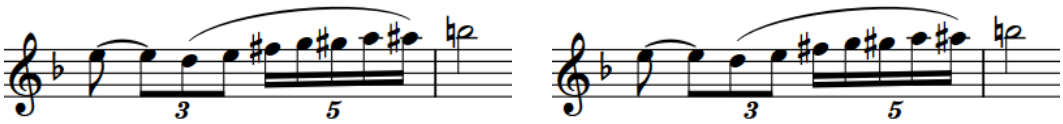
RESULT

The horizontal position of tuplet numbers/ratios on the selected tuplets is changed. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

- **Visual** positions tuplet numbers/ratios at the visual center of the tuplet.

- **Rhythmic** positions tuplet numbers/ratios at the rhythmic center of the tuplet, which might be visually off-center.

EXAMPLE



Visual center

Rhythmic center

RELATED LINKS

Tuplet brackets on page 1276
Moving items graphically on page 481
Signposts on page 426

Unpitched percussion

The term “unpitched percussion” covers all percussion instruments that are not tuned to specific pitches. This includes instruments such as bass drum, guiro, maracas, cymbals, and shakers.

Dorico Elements provides comprehensive support for unpitched percussion notation, with flexible options for combining music for multiple instruments into percussion kits that can then be displayed differently in different layouts. You can also define percussion kits as drum sets, which changes the default stem directions of notes.

You can also customize and create new playing technique-specific noteheads for unpitched percussion. This allows you to indicate how notes are played by using different noteheads for different playing techniques on each instrument in percussion kits.

RELATED LINKS
Percussion kits and drum sets on page 1289
Percussion kit presentation types on page 1293
Staff labels for percussion kits on page 1189
Defining percussion kits as drum sets on page 154
Inputting notes for unpitched percussion on page 227
Playing techniques for unpitched percussion instruments on page 1282
Playing technique-specific noteheads on page 1283
Showing brackets on noteheads on page 954
Percussion editor on page 631

Playing techniques for unpitched percussion instruments

Playing techniques for unpitched percussion instruments, both as individual instruments and within percussion kits, can be notated in different ways, including using different notehead designs and positions.

You can indicate playing techniques for unpitched percussion instruments in any of the following ways:

- Use playing technique-specific noteheads, including positioning notes above/below their normal staff line
- Add articulations or single-note tremolos
- Add playing techniques in the same ways as for pitched instruments

For example, you can add open and closed techniques for hi-hats as playing techniques and use playing technique-specific cross noteheads for side stick notes for the snare drum.

You can select playing technique-specific noteheads for unpitched percussion instruments when inputting notes and change the playing technique-specific noteheads of existing notes. You can input playing techniques during note input and by adding them to existing music.

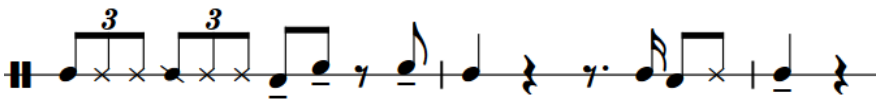
RELATED LINKS
Playing techniques on page 1062
Articulations on page 723
Tremolos on page 1264
Edit Percussion Kit dialog on page 150

Inputting notes for unpitched percussion on page 227
Changing playing technique-specific noteheads on page 1286
Defining how combinations of articulations and single-note tremolos sound in playback on page 705
Exporting percussion kits on page 1290
Importing percussion kits on page 1290
Input methods for playing techniques, pedal lines, string indicators, and harp pedal diagrams on page 351

Playing technique-specific noteheads

Playing technique-specific noteheads use the design and position of noteheads to indicate different playing techniques for unpitched percussion instruments, both as individual instruments and within percussion kits.

For example, side stick notes on the snare drum notes are typically notated using cross noteheads. Other techniques might use the staff positions above or below the single-line staff to indicate different playing techniques.



Multiple different playing technique-specific noteheads for snare drum

You can edit the set of playing technique-specific noteheads and staff positions defined for each unpitched percussion instrument in the **Percussion Instrument Playing Techniques** dialog.

You can select playing technique-specific noteheads for unpitched percussion instruments when inputting notes and change the playing technique-specific noteheads of existing notes.

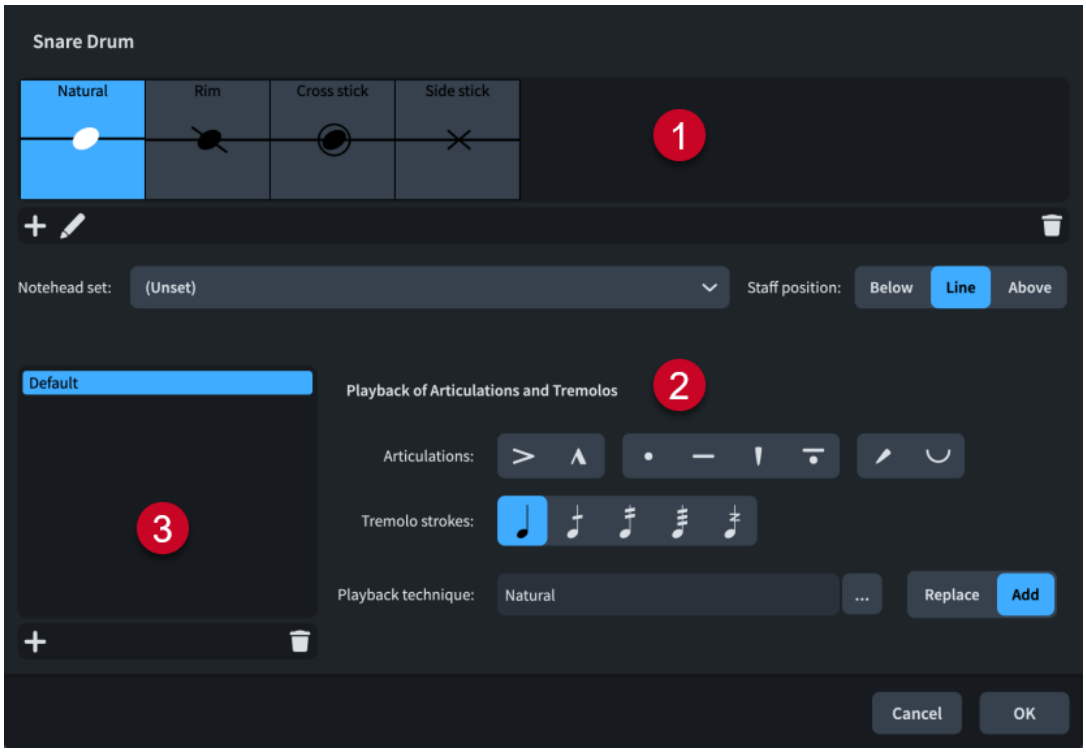
RELATED LINKS
Creating new playing technique-specific noteheads on page 1287
Changing playing technique-specific noteheads on page 1286
Inputting notes for unpitched percussion on page 227

Percussion Instrument Playing Techniques dialog

The **Percussion Instrument Playing Techniques** dialog allows you to edit the set of playing technique-specific noteheads defined for each unpitched percussion instrument.

You can open the **Percussion Instrument Playing Techniques** dialog in Setup mode in the following ways:

- For an individual percussion instrument: In the **Players** panel, click the instrument menu ··· in the instrument label, and choose **Edit Percussion Playing Techniques** from the menu.
- For percussion instruments that are part of percussion kits: In the **Players** panel, click the instrument menu ··· in the kit instrument label and choose **Edit Percussion Kit** to open the **Edit Percussion Kit** dialog. In the main editing area, select the instrument whose playing techniques you want to edit, then click **Edit Percussion Playing Techniques**.



1 Playing technique-specific noteheads list

Contains the main playing technique-specific noteheads currently defined for the selected percussion instrument, showing the notehead set and the staff position corresponding to the playing technique as applicable.

You can add new playing technique-specific noteheads for unpitched percussion instruments. Normally, percussion instruments define at least the **Natural** playing technique, which is usually shown using the default notehead set.

2 Playback of Articulations and Tremolos

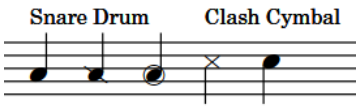
Allows you to define how combinations of articulations and tremolo strokes affect or override the playback of playing techniques.

For example, you can define an entirely different playing technique for a playing technique-specific notehead for when an accent is added to it.

3 Overrides of articulations and tremolos list

Displays any overrides of articulations and tremolos you define.

EXAMPLE



Three different snare drum playing technique-specific noteheads followed by two clash cymbal playing technique-specific noteheads

All of these settings are saved in the percussion instrument within your project, and you can export them from one project and import them into others.

NOTE

Overrides for articulations and tremolos are not currently reflected in playback, but this is planned for future versions.

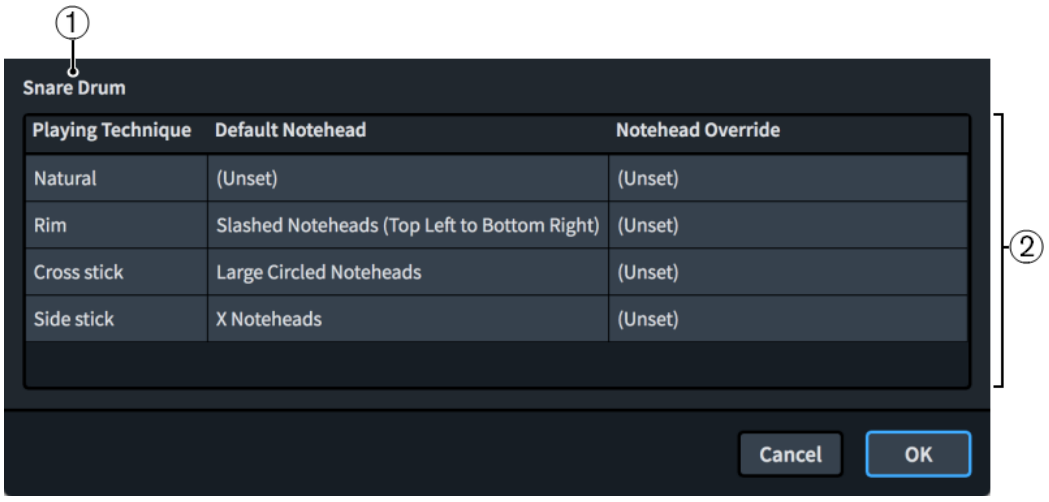
RELATED LINKS
Changing playing technique-specific noteheads on page 1286
Creating new playing technique-specific noteheads on page 1287
Overriding the appearance of playing technique-specific noteheads on page 1288
Defining how combinations of articulations and single-note tremolos sound in playback on page 705
Inputting notes for unpitched percussion on page 227
Exporting percussion kits on page 1290
Importing percussion kits on page 1290

Override Percussion Noteheads dialog

The **Override Percussion Noteheads** dialog lists the playing technique-specific noteheads defined for the selected instrument in the **Percussion Instrument Playing Techniques** dialog, shows the notehead type mapped for each technique, and allows you to override those noteheads for five-line staff kit presentations only.

For example, the same notehead can indicate different playing techniques for different instruments. When those instruments are presented on the same five-line staff, this can cause confusion, so you can use the **Override Percussion Noteheads** dialog to disambiguate the notes for one instrument from another in five-line staff kit presentations only.

- You can open the **Override Percussion Noteheads** dialog by selecting an instrument in the **Edit Percussion Kit** dialog and clicking **Edit Noteheads**.



The **Override Percussion Noteheads** dialog comprises the following:

1 **Instrument name**

Displays the name of the percussion instrument whose noteheads are listed in the dialog.

2 **Playing techniques table**

Contains the noteheads for the selected percussion instrument, arranged into the following columns:

- **Playing Technique**: Displays the playing technique associated with the notehead in the corresponding row of the table.

- **Default Notehead**: Displays the notehead used by default for the playing technique in the corresponding row of the table.
- **Notehead Override**: Displays the notehead override used in five-line staff presentations for the playing technique in the corresponding row of the table. You can change the notehead override by clicking it and selecting another notehead from the menu.

RELATED LINKS
Overriding the appearance of playing technique-specific noteheads on page 1288
Changing playing technique-specific noteheads on page 1286
Inputting notes for unpitched percussion on page 227
Percussion kit presentation types on page 1293

Changing playing technique-specific noteheads

You can change the playing technique-specific noteheads of notes belonging to unpitched percussion instruments after they have been input; for example, to switch selected snare drum notes to the side stick technique and corresponding notehead.

PREREQUISITE

The unpitched percussion instruments whose playing techniques you want to change have at least two playing technique-specific noteheads defined in the **Percussion Instrument Playing Techniques** dialog.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the notes whose playing technique-specific notehead you want to change.

   TIP

   If you select a single note in percussion kits using five-line staff or grid presentations, the current playing technique is shown above the rhythmic grid.

2. Cycle through the available playing techniques for the selected unpitched percussion instruments in any of the following ways:
   - To cycle upwards, press **Shift-Alt/Opt-Up Arrow**.
   - To cycle downwards, press **Shift-Alt/Opt-Down Arrow**.

RESULT

The playing techniques of the selected unpitched percussion notes are changed. Their notehead design and/or staff position might be changed.

RELATED LINKS
Playing technique-specific noteheads on page 1283
Playing techniques for unpitched percussion instruments on page 1282
Percussion Instrument Playing Techniques dialog on page 1283
Inputting notes for unpitched percussion on page 227
Moving notes to different instruments in percussion kits on page 1291
Percussion editor on page 631
Inputting notes using the Drumstick tool on page 633
Moving percussion notes between instruments/playing techniques on page 637
Defining how combinations of articulations and single-note tremolos sound in playback on page 705
Playing techniques on page 1062

Input methods for playing techniques, pedal lines, string indicators, and harp pedal diagrams on page 351
Showing brackets on noteheads on page 954
Changing the notehead design of individual noteheads on page 946

Creating new playing technique-specific noteheads

You can define new playing technique-specific noteheads for unpitched percussion instruments, which are saved for that type of percussion instrument in your project. You can also export playing technique-specific noteheads from your project and import them into other projects.

PROCEDURE

1. In Setup mode, open the **Percussion Instrument Playing Techniques** dialog in one of the following ways:
   - For an individual percussion instrument: In the **Players** panel, click the instrument menu ··· in the instrument label, and choose **Edit Percussion Playing Techniques** from the menu.
   - For percussion instruments that are part of percussion kits: In the **Players** panel, click the instrument menu ··· in the kit instrument label and choose **Edit Percussion Kit** to open the **Edit Percussion Kit** dialog. In the main editing area, select the instrument whose playing techniques you want to edit, then click **Edit Percussion Playing Techniques**.
2. In the playing technique-specific noteheads list, click **Add Playing Technique** +.
3. Select the playback technique you want to use in the dialog that opens.
4. Click **OK** to add the selected playback technique as a new playing technique-specific notehead.
5. From the **Notehead set** menu, select the notehead you want for the playing technique-specific notehead.

   NOTE

   To use the default notehead set, leave **Notehead set** as **(Unset)**.

6. Choose one of the following options for **Staff position**:
   - **Below**
   - **Line**
   - **Above**

RESULT

A new playing technique-specific notehead is added to the selected unpitched percussion instrument.

RELATED LINKS

Defining how combinations of articulations and single-note tremolos sound in playback on page 705
Input methods for playing techniques, pedal lines, string indicators, and harp pedal diagrams on page 351

Overriding the appearance of playing technique-specific noteheads

It might be necessary to override the appearance of playing technique-specific noteheads in order to disambiguate the notes for one instrument from another if they share a staff position in five-line staff kit presentations.

PROCEDURE

1. In Setup mode, in the **Players** panel, expand the card of the player holding the kit whose playing technique-specific noteheads you want to override.
2. In the kit instrument label, click the instrument menu ··· and choose **Edit Percussion Kit** to open the **Edit Percussion Kit** dialog.
3. Select the instrument whose noteheads you want to override in the main editing area of the dialog.
4. Click **Edit Noteheads** to open the **Override Percussion Noteheads** dialog.
5. Click in the **Notehead Override** column for the appropriate playing technique and select a new notehead type from the menu to override its notehead.
6. Click **OK** to save your changes and close the dialog.

RESULT

The playing technique-specific notehead is overridden for the selected instrument in five-line staff kit presentations.

NOTE

This does not affect the appearance of playing technique-specific noteheads in grid and single-line instrument kit presentation types.

RELATED LINKS

Players panel on page 107
Override Percussion Noteheads dialog on page 1285

Percussion kits vs. individual percussion instruments

Percussion kits allow you to show multiple unpitched percussion instruments held by a single player at the same time in different ways. Multiple percussion instruments not combined into kits are shown on a single line that only shows the instrument currently being played by default.

One common type of percussion kit is a drum set. A drum set consists of a number of separate instruments mounted together on a frame, and is typically written on a regular five-line staff. Each instrument has its own position on the staff, and sometimes its own notehead type. Similarly, a pair of bongos is a percussion kit by default in Dorico Elements, consisting of the two bongo drums, typically written on a grid with two lines: the smaller drum shown on the top line, and the larger drum shown on the bottom line.

Showing individual percussion instruments separately can be appropriate if a player only has one or two percussion instruments. However, combining percussion instruments into a kit gives you more flexibility over the presentation of music, which you can vary in each layout independently. Kits also give you greater control over the labeling of instruments.

If instrument changes are enabled on the **Players** page in **Layout Options**, Dorico Elements changes from one instrument to the next, just as it does for pitched instruments.

NOTE

Kit instruments in player cards in the **Players** panel in Setup mode are colored green, whereas individual percussion instruments not part of percussion kits are colored the same light blue as all other instruments.

Per-flow notation options for unpitched percussion

You can find options for how notes in percussion kits are notated in each flow independently on the **Percussion** page in **Notation Options**.

For example, you can choose to notate all notes in a percussion kit in a single voice rather than in multiple voices.

RELATED LINKS
Notation Options dialog on page 679

Percussion kits and drum sets

A percussion kit is a collection of unpitched percussion instruments that are played by a single player. Drum sets are a particular type of percussion kit that are often used in pop and rock music.

NOTE

In this documentation, we use “percussion kit” to refer to both percussion kits and drum sets.

In Dorico Elements, you can present percussion kits in different ways, including as a five-line staff and as a grid. If you want percussion kits to behave as drum sets, you can define them as drum sets. For example, there are options on the **Percussion** page in **Notation Options** for handling voices that only apply to drum sets.

You can create percussion kits in Setup mode. You can combine existing unpitched percussion instruments into kits and add empty kits to players, to which you can then add unpitched percussion instruments. You can also import existing kits you have previously exported and saved.

You can move percussion instruments between players without affecting any music already added to that instrument.

NOTE

If the instrument you want to move is combined into a percussion kit, you must first remove the instrument from the kit before you can move it to another player.

You can change individual percussion instruments like any other instrument. However, you can only change unpitched percussion instruments to other unpitched percussion instruments, and you can only change the percussion instruments in kits within the **Edit Percussion Kit** dialog.

RELATED LINKS
Note input setup for percussion kits on page 230
Percussion kit presentation types on page 1293
Staff labels for percussion kits on page 1189
Universal Indian Drum Notation on page 1301

Edit Percussion Kit dialog on page 150
Combining individual percussion instruments into kits on page 135
Defining percussion kits as drum sets on page 154
Adding instruments to percussion kits on page 153
Removing individual instruments from percussion kits on page 158
Moving instruments on page 137
Inputting notes for unpitched percussion on page 227
Per-flow notation options for unpitched percussion on page 1289

Exporting percussion kits

You can export percussion kits as `.doricolib` files. This allows you to use kits again without having to create them from scratch.

PROCEDURE

1. In Setup mode, in the **Players** panel, expand the card of the player whose percussion kit you want to export.
2. In the kit instrument label, click the instrument menu ··· and choose **Edit Percussion Kit** to open the **Edit Percussion Kit** dialog.
3. Click **Export Kit** at the bottom of the dialog to open the File Explorer/macOS Finder.
4. In the File Explorer/macOS Finder, specify a name and location for the library file.
5. Click **Save**.

RESULT

The kit is exported and saved as a `.doricolib` file.

TIP

You can later import the `.doricolib` file into other projects to reuse the percussion kit.

Importing percussion kits

You can import `.doricolib` files containing percussion kits, which allows you to use kits again without having to create them from scratch.

PREREQUISITE

Your project contains at least one single player or empty-handed section player.

PROCEDURE

1. In Setup mode, in the **Players** panel, open the instrument picker for the player to which you want to assign the imported percussion kit in any of the following ways:
   - Select the player and press **Shift-I**.
   - Click the plus symbol + in the player card.
   - Select the player, then click **Player Settings** ··· in the action bar and choose **Add Instrument to Player**. You can also right-click players and choose this option from the context menu.
2. Click **Import Kit** in the instrument picker to open the File Explorer/macOS Finder.
3. Locate and select the percussion kit `.doricolib` file you want to import.

4. Click **Open**.

RESULT

The selected `.doricolib` file is imported as a percussion kit. It is assigned to the player from whose card you opened the instrument picker.

RELATED LINKS

Players panel on page 107
Adding players on page 121

Moving notes to different instruments in percussion kits

You can move notes to different instruments in the same percussion kit after they have been input.

NOTE

These steps do not apply in layouts using the single-line instruments kit presentation type. In such layouts, you can cross or move notes to other staves.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the notes you want to move to a different instrument in the percussion kit.
2. Move the notes to another instrument in any of the following ways:
   - To move them to the instrument above, press **Alt/Opt-Up Arrow**.
   - To move them to the instrument below, press **Alt/Opt-Down Arrow**.

RESULT

The notes are moved to another instrument in the kit.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

You can change the position of each instrument in the kit.

RELATED LINKS

Edit Percussion Kit dialog on page 150
Changing the positions of instruments within percussion kits on page 156
Changing playing technique-specific noteheads on page 1286
Percussion kit presentation types on page 1293
Changing the percussion kit presentation type on page 1294
Creating cross-staff beams/tremolos on page 764
Moving notes/items to other staves on page 440

Notations on notes in percussion kits

You can add notations to notes and use different rhythms in percussion kits in the same ways as for normal notes; however, they can behave differently.

Articulations

You can add articulations to percussion instruments in all kit presentation types in the same ways as for other instruments.

However, in grid and five-line staff presentations, any articulations you add apply to all instruments in the same voice that have notes at that rhythmic position. For example, if both a snare drum and tom-tom note are at the same rhythmic position, and you add an accent, the accent is added to both instruments because they are both shown in the same down-stem voice by default.

You can see the accent applied to each note if you switch to the single-line instruments presentation type.

Tuplets

When working in the grid and five-line staff kit presentation types, tuplets are added to all instruments in the same voice.

You can switch to the single-line instruments presentation type to input cross-rhythms on each instrument separately. When you switch back to the grid or five-line staff kit presentation types, Dorico Elements attempts to resolve the rhythmic conflicts.

- Conflicting tuplets: One tuplet is moved into an extra voice for the duration of the conflict.
- Tuplet notes in one instrument and non-tuplet notes in another instrument starting at the same rhythmic position: The non-tuplet note is displayed as if it were part of the tuplet. This is because the note onset is at the same position as the start of the tuplet, so it sounds the same as the original notation.
- Tuplet notes in one instrument and non-tuplet notes in another instrument that do not start at the same rhythmic position, or other non-tuplet notes that start part-way through the tuplet: Non-tuplet notes are moved into an extra voice for the duration of the conflict.

  NOTE

  Deleting a tuplet from grid and five-line staff kit presentation types deletes the tuplet from all instruments whose notes contribute to the same shared voice.

Playing techniques

You can input playing techniques, such as **+** for closed and **o** for open hi-hat, during note input and add them later to existing music in the same ways as for other instruments.

Playing techniques are only added to the instrument to which the note you select belongs, even if there are other instruments in the same voice.

Percussion stickings

Dorico Elements does not yet have a dedicated feature for percussion stickings. However, you can use lyrics to represent percussion stickings in all kit presentation types:

- Grid/Five-line staff presentation types: Select a note in the instrument in which you want to show stickings.
- Single-line instruments presentation type: Input lyrics directly into instruments in which you want to show stickings.

RELATED LINKS
Inputting articulations on page 259
Inputting tuplets on page 243
Changing the pitch of individual notes on page 444
Input methods for playing techniques, pedal lines, string indicators, and harp pedal diagrams on page 351

Inputting lyrics on page 374

Dynamics in percussion kits

Unlike other items, dynamics are not shared between the grid/five-line staff presentation types and the single-line instruments presentation type. Any dynamics added to instruments in the single-line instruments presentation type do not appear when you switch to grid/five-line presentations.

This is due to the complexity of combining a large number of different dynamics at the same rhythmic position, as allowed in the single-line instruments presentation, into the single position required for both the grid and five-line staff presentations. Therefore, you can add dynamics in the grid and five-line staff presentation types independently of the single-line instruments presentation type.

RELATED LINKS
Input methods for dynamics on page 296

Percussion kit presentation types

You can show percussion kits in three different presentation types, which can be different in each layout in your project.

NOTE

Dynamics are not shared between the grid/five-line staff presentation types and the single-line instruments presentation type. Any dynamics added to instruments in the single-line instruments presentation type do not appear when you switch to grid/five-line presentations.

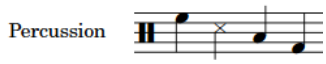
You can edit the appearance/structure of each presentation type independently in the **Edit Percussion Kit** dialog. For example, changing the order of instruments in the five-line staff presentation does not affect the order of instruments in the grid presentation of the same percussion kit.

5-line staff

Kit instruments are shown on a five-line staff. You can determine which instruments are shown on each line and in each space of the staff. A single staff label containing the name of the kit is shown.

The numbers down the left-hand side of the editing area in the **Edit Percussion Kit** dialog correspond to staff positions. For example, position 0 is the middle line of the five-line staff, position 1 is the space immediately above the middle staff line, position -2 is the line below the middle staff line, and so on.

Bold black lines show the five staff lines, while gray lines above and below the staff show nominal staff line positions. Each instrument is shown on its staff position.



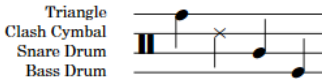
Grid

Kit instruments are shown on a grid, with each instrument on its own line. You can customize the size of the gaps between each line. Staff labels are shown for each instrument in a smaller font than normal staff labels.

The numbers down the right-hand side of the editing area in the **Edit Percussion Kit** dialog correspond to the number of staff spaces between each instrument line. By default, all instruments in a grid are two spaces apart.

The order in which the instruments are listed matches the order in which they appear in the score.

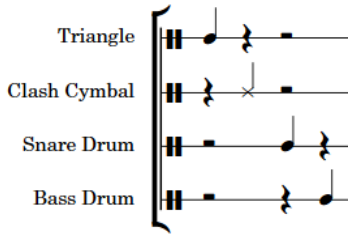
Each instrument in a grid shows its own staff label by default, aligned vertically with its own line, but you can group adjacent instruments together and show a single label for each group.



Single-line instruments

Kit instruments are shown as individual instruments with their own lines. Normal-sized staff labels are shown for each instrument.

The editing area in the **Edit Percussion Kit** dialog lists all of the instruments in the order in which they appear in the score.



RELATED LINKS
Percussion kits and drum sets on page 1289
Edit Percussion Kit dialog on page 150
Staff labels for percussion kits on page 1189
Overriding the appearance of playing technique-specific noteheads on page 1288
Override Percussion Noteheads dialog on page 1285
Layout Options dialog on page 677

Changing the percussion kit presentation type

You can change the presentation type of percussion kits in each layout independently and independently of each other. For example, you can use a five-line staff in the full score layout but a grid in the percussion part layout, and have two percussion kits with different presentation types in the same full score layout.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-L** to open **Layout Options**.
2. In the **Layouts** list, select the layouts in which you want to change the percussion kit presentation type.

   By default, the layout currently open in the music area is selected when you open the dialog. You can select other layouts by using the selection options in the action bar, clicking and dragging across multiple layouts, **Shift**-clicking adjacent layouts, and **Ctrl/Cmd**-clicking individual layouts.
3. In the category list, click **Players**.
4. In the **Percussion** section, choose one of the following options for each percussion kit in your project:

- **5-line Staff**
- **Grid**
- **Single-line Instruments**

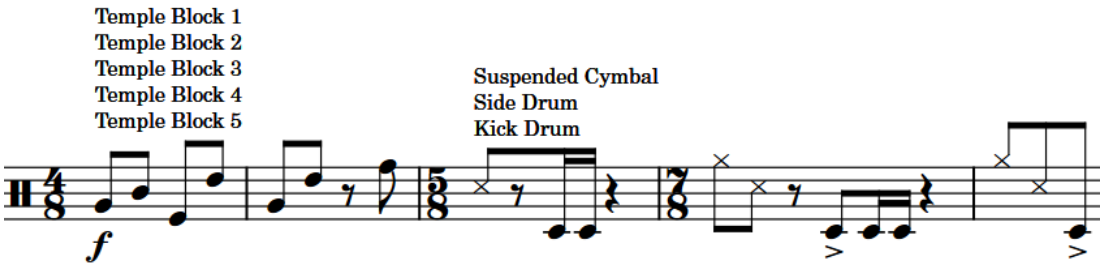
5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

The presentation type is changed for the selected percussion kits in the selected layouts.

Percussion legends

Percussion legends list the percussion instruments in use when using the five-line presentation type. Percussion legends can include all instruments that are represented on the staff, or only show sounding instruments in a set range to remind players which instruments to play at certain points.



Two sounding instrument percussion legends

By default, percussion legends appear above the staff. You can change the staff-relative placement of percussion legends individually.

Percussion legends appear as signposts if there are no instruments sounding at their position, or when the layout uses the grid presentation type. Percussion legends do not appear at all in layouts using the single-line instrument presentation type.

NOTE

- Percussion legends only appear in the layout in which they were added. If you want to show percussion legends in multiple layouts, you must add them in each layout.
- You can hide/show percussion legend signposts by choosing **View** > **Signposts** > **Percussion Legends**. Percussion legend signposts are shown when a tick is shown beside **Percussion Legends** in the menu, and hidden when no tick is shown.

RELATED LINKS

Changing the staff-relative placement of items on page 414
Per-flow notation options for unpitched percussion on page 1289
Edit Percussion Kit dialog on page 150
Percussion kit presentation types on page 1293
Hiding/Showing instrument change labels at the start of flows on page 1187
Staff labels for percussion kits on page 1189

Adding percussion legends to five-line staff kit presentations

You can add percussion legends at specific rhythmic positions to indicate the instruments in the kit. Percussion legends can show all instruments in the kit or only instruments sounding within the specified range.

NOTE

Percussion legends only appear when kits use the five-line staff percussion kit presentation type and in the layout in which they were added. If you want to show percussion legends in multiple layouts, you must add them in each layout.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select one of the following:
   - An item on the staff at the rhythmic position where you want to add a percussion legend for all instruments.
   - The range of notes/items for which you want to show a percussion legend for sounding instruments.
2. Add a percussion legend in one of the following ways:
   - Choose **Edit** > **Notations** > **Percussion** > **Legend for All Instruments**.
   - Choose **Edit** > **Notations** > **Percussion** > **Legend for Sounding Instruments**.

   TIP

   You can also choose these options from the context menu.

RESULT

A percussion legend is added to the kit. It appears above the staff when the kit uses the five-line staff presentation. It lists instruments, either all instruments or just instruments with notes within the selected range, in the order in which they appear in the five-line staff, from highest down to lowest.

RELATED LINKS

Percussion kit presentation types on page 1293
Editing percussion legend text on page 1298

Changing the percussion legend type

You can change the type of percussion legends so they show all instruments or only sounding instruments in five-line staff presentations.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the percussion legends whose type you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Legend type** in the **Percussion Legends** group.

NOTE

The property is already activated for sounding instrument percussion legends.

3. Choose one of the following options:
   - **Legend**
   - **Sounding instruments**

RESULT

The legend type of the selected legends is changed.

RELATED LINKS

Percussion legends on page 1295
Percussion kit presentation types on page 1293
Adding percussion legends to five-line staff kit presentations on page 1296

Changing the sounding instrument percussion legend range

You can change the rhythmic range of sounding instrument percussion legends to include more/fewer instruments in the legend, as they only show the instruments playing at the rhythmic positions included in the range.

PROCEDURE

1. In Write mode, select the sounding instrument percussion legend whose range you want to change.
2. Change the range in any of the following ways, according to the current rhythmic grid resolution:
   - To move the whole range to the right, press **Alt/Opt-Right Arrow**.
   - To move the whole range to the left, press **Alt/Opt-Left Arrow**.
   - To lengthen the range, press **Shift-Alt/Opt-Right Arrow**.
   - To shorten the range, press **Shift-Alt/Opt-Left Arrow**.

     NOTE

     Key commands lengthen/shorten items by moving their end only.

   - Click and drag the circular handle at the start/end to the right/left.

RESULT

The rhythmic range covered by the selected sounding instrument percussion legend is changed according to the current rhythmic grid resolution.

The instruments included in the percussion legend are automatically updated to reflect the instruments playing within the range.

RELATED LINKS

Rhythmic grid on page 204

Showing short instrument names in percussion legends

Percussion legends use full instrument names by default, but you can choose to use short names to save space.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the percussion legends whose instrument name lengths you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Use short names** in the **Percussion Legends** group.

RESULT

Short instrument names are shown in the selected percussion legends.

Deactivating **Use short names** returns the selected percussion legends to showing full instrument names.

RELATED LINKS

Staff labels for percussion kits on page 1189
Percussion legends on page 1295
Percussion kit presentation types on page 1293
Adding percussion legends to five-line staff kit presentations on page 1296

Editing percussion legend text

By default, percussion legends show the instrument names of percussion instruments in five-line staff presentations, stacked vertically. You can change the text shown in percussion legends to show custom text.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the percussion legends you want to edit. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Custom text** in the **Percussion Legends** group.
3. Enter the text you want into the value field.
4. Press **Return**.

RESULT

The text shown in the selected percussion legends is changed.

RELATED LINKS

Hiding/Showing zones on page 44
Properties panel on page 615

Erasing the background of percussion legends

You can erase the background of individual percussion legends; for example, to ensure they remain legible when crossing barlines. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the percussion legends whose backgrounds you want to erase.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Erase background** in the **Percussion Legends** group.

RESULT

The backgrounds of the selected percussion legends are erased. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

Deactivating **Erase background** returns the selected percussion legends to the default non-erased background.

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

You can change the padding between percussion legends and each edge of their erased areas.

RELATED LINKS

Properties panel on page 615
Changing the property scope on page 617
Copying property settings to other layouts/frame chains on page 599

Changing the erasure padding of percussion legends

You can change the erasure padding of individual percussion legends, including changing the padding between percussion legends and each edge of their erased areas independently. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select the percussion legends whose erasure padding you want to change.
2. In the Properties panel, activate the **Erasure padding** properties, individually or together, in the **Percussion Legends** group.
    - **L** changes the padding between percussion legends and their left edge.
    - **R** changes the padding between percussion legends and their right edge.
    - **T** changes the padding between percussion legends and their top edge.
    - **B** changes the padding between percussion legends and their bottom edge.

3. Change the values in the value fields.

RESULT

Increasing the values increases the padding, decreasing the values decreases the padding. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

Voices in percussion kits

Dorico Elements automatically combines music into a smaller number of voices when multiple percussion instruments are presented in a five-line staff or as a grid, even if they contain different rhythms. By default, music is combined into one up-stem voice and one down-stem voice.

Alternatively, you can choose to notate all notes in a percussion kit in a single voice when the kit is defined as a drum set on the **Percussion** page in **Notation Options**. This convention is used less frequently for orchestral percussion.

You can also override this option for individual notes and whole instruments in individual percussion kits.

Notes in the same voice cannot be notated using different durations and are notated using ties by default instead. You can eliminate the use of ties by choosing to truncate longer notes so that only their onsets appear on the **Percussion** page in **Notation Options**.

If one of the instruments in a percussion kit has a tuplet rhythm, other instruments can share the voice if their notation is compatible, such as if the tuplet structure is the same, or if they have a single note that coincides with the start of the tuplet. In this case, the single non-tuplet note is notated as the same duration of the first note of the tuplet.

If the music of the different instruments in the same voice is incompatible, Dorico Elements dynamically creates another voice and notates the remaining music in that voice until the music is compatible again.

RELATED LINKS

Edit Percussion Kit dialog on page 150
Notations on notes in percussion kits on page 1291
Defining percussion kits as drum sets on page 154
Adding slash voices to percussion kits on page 1142

Specifying the stem direction/voice of instruments in percussion kits

You can specify the stem direction for each instrument in individual percussion kits. You can also set which voice they are in, allowing you to control which instruments share voices in percussion kits.

PROCEDURE

1. In Setup mode, in the **Players** panel, expand the card of the player holding the kit whose instrument stem directions and voices you want to specify.
2. In the kit instrument label, click the instrument menu ··· and choose **Edit Percussion Kit** to open the **Edit Percussion Kit** dialog.
3. In the dialog, select an instrument whose stem direction and voice you want to specify.
4. Choose one of the following stem directions for **Stem direction and voice**:

- **Up-stem**
- **Down-stem**

5. Specify a voice by changing the value for **Stem direction and voice**.

   NOTE

   You do not have to change the voice number if you are switching between up- and down-stem voices as the number corresponds to the voice number for each stem direction.

6. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

RESULT

The default stem direction and voice of the selected instrument is changed.

RELATED LINKS

Players panel on page 107
Edit Percussion Kit dialog on page 150

Changing the voice of individual notes in percussion kits

You can override the default voice for individual notes in percussion kits, including drum sets.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the notes whose voice you want to override. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. Choose **Edit** > **Notations** > **Percussion** > **Change Voice** > **[Voice]**.

   For example, to change notes to the second down-stem voice, choose **Edit** > **Notations** > **Percussion** > **Change Voice** > **Down-stem Voice 2**. You can also choose this option from the context menu.

RESULT

The voice of the selected notes is changed, independently of the default voice for their instrument and independently of your setting for voices in drum sets.

TIP

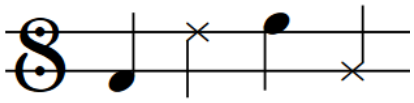
You can reset the voice of individual notes by selecting them and choosing **Edit** > **Notations** > **Percussion** > **Change Voice** > **Reset Note Destination Voice**. You can also choose this option from the context menu.

Universal Indian Drum Notation

Dorico Elements supports the Universal Indian Drum Notation system developed by Keda Music Ltd.

Universal Indian Drum Notation has been designed primarily for tabla, but can also be applied to other Indian drums with two heads, such as nagara, dhol, dholak, mridangam, and pakhawaj.

Indian drum clefs are automatically shown on the staves of tabla instruments and tabla percussion kits, but you can also input Indian drum clefs manually.

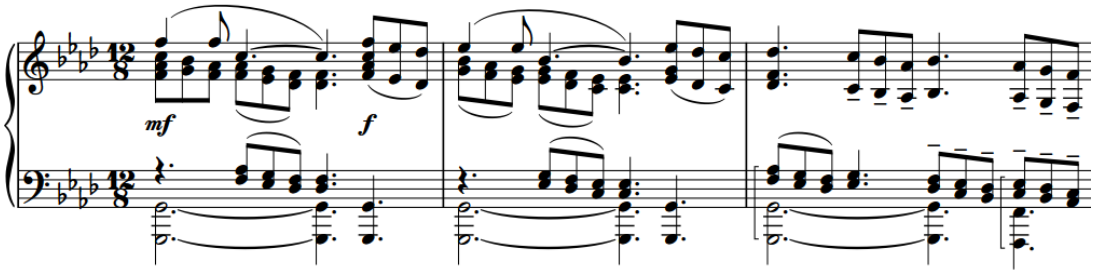


RELATED LINKS

Adding players on page 121
Adding instruments to players on page 133
Inputting clefs with the panel on page 318
Percussion kits and drum sets on page 1289
Percussion maps on page 700

Voices

For many instruments, such as flute or trombone, each staff usually contains a single musical line in a single voice that is read from left to right along the staff. When multiple, independent lines must be shown in a single staff, each line can be a separate voice.



An excerpt of piano music with two voices active on each staff

One common use for showing multiple voices in a single staff is in vocal music, when the soprano and alto lines share a single staff and the tenor and bass lines share another staff. Showing each vocal line in its own voice helps to separate the lines, making the music easier to read and making the shape of each melodic line clear.

In Dorico Elements, notes belong to voices. You can create as many voices as you like on each pitched instrument staff. Each voice has its own color, which you can see if you show voice colors. This can help you to keep track of which notes are in which voices if there are multiple overlapping musical lines in your project.

Voices in Dorico Elements are divided into up-stem voices and down-stem voices. Stems of notes in up-stem voices point upwards, while stems of notes in down-stem voices point downwards. However, in bars where only one voice contains notes, stem directions are automatically changed to the directions they would have if there were only one voice on the staff. By default, the first voice on the staff is up-stem.

Following most notation conventions, rests are shown in bars for all voices that have notes in the bar. If two or more voices have a rest of the same rhythmic duration at the same rhythmic position, that rest is consolidated by default: instead of showing two identical rests, only one is shown.

RELATED LINKS

Inputting notes into multiple voices on page 221
Changing the voice of existing notes on page 442
Swapping the contents of voices on page 443
Voices in percussion kits on page 1300
Slash voices on page 1141
Adding notes above/below existing notes on page 247
Stem direction on page 961
Voice column index on page 1307
Unused voices on page 1309
Implicit rests in multiple-voice contexts on page 1146
Moving rests vertically on page 1148
Deleting rests on page 1149

Per-flow notation options for voices

You can find options controlling how notes in multiple voices are positioned in each flow independently on the **Voices** page in **Notation Options**.

The options on this page allow you to change the position and order of notes in multiple-voice contexts, and choose when noteheads in different voices can overlap.

Musical examples demonstrate how each option affects the appearance of your music.

RELATED LINKS
Notation Options dialog on page 679
Per-flow notation options for rests on page 1147

Hiding/Showing voice colors

You can show notes in different colors according to their voice; for example, to check which notes are in which voice. When voice colors are hidden, all notes appear black by default.

Voice colors are considered annotations and are not printed by default.

NOTE

You cannot show colors for voices and notes out of range simultaneously.

PROCEDURE

- Do one of the following:
  - To show voice colors, choose **View** > **Note And Rest Colors** > **Voice Colors**.
  - To hide voice colors, choose **View** > **Note And Rest Colors** > **None**.

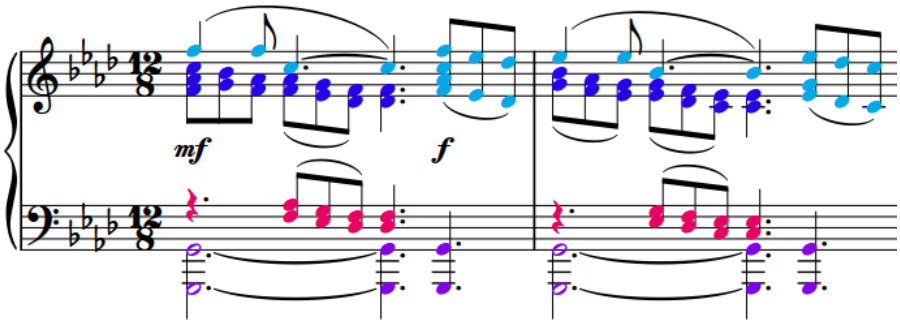
RESULT

Voice colors are hidden/shown. The first eight voices on each staff use the colors set in **Preferences** > **Colors** > **Voice Colors**. Voice colors are automatically assigned to subsequent voices.

TIP

You can also identify voices by selecting individual notes and looking at the display in the status bar.

EXAMPLE



Voice colors shown

AFTER COMPLETING THIS TASK

If showing voice colors reveals some notes are not in the voice you want, you can change their voice.

RELATED LINKS

Preferences dialog on page 58
Changing music area colors on page 54
Changing the voice of existing notes on page 442
Stem direction on page 961
Viewing options for notes and rests on page 951
Hiding/Showing colors for notes out of range on page 951
Annotations on page 554
Status bar on page 39

Allowing/Disallowing noteheads in opposing voices to overlap

You can allow/disallow the noteheads of unison notes in opposing voices to overlap in different contexts in each flow independently. For example, if you want to allow notes with and without rhythm dots to overlap but disallow half notes to overlap with shorter notes.

PROCEDURE

1. Press **Ctrl/Cmd-Shift-N** to open **Notation Options**.
2. In the category list, click **Voices**.
3. In the **Ordering Multiple Voices** section, choose one of the following options for **Unison half notes (minims) and shorter notes in opposing voices**:
   - **Allow noteheads to overlap**
   - **Do not allow noteheads to overlap**
4. Choose one of the following options for **Unison dotted and undotted notes in opposing voices**:
   - **Allow noteheads to overlap**
   - **Do not allow noteheads to overlap**
5. Click **Apply**, then **Close**.

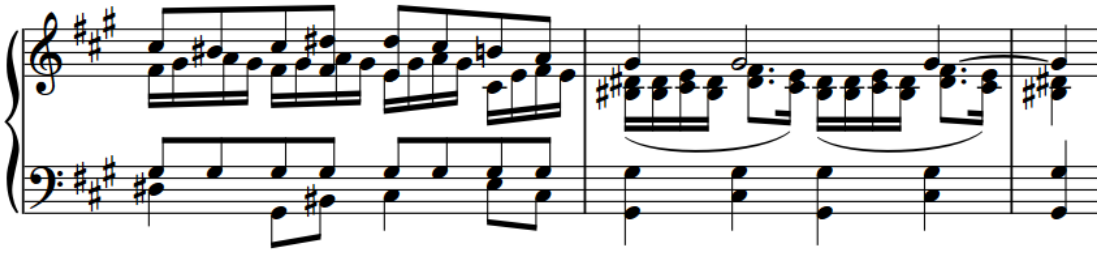
RELATED LINKS

Notation Options dialog on page 679
Swapping the order of voices on page 1307
Changing the voice column of notes on page 1308
Inputting notes into multiple voices on page 221
Note and rest grouping on page 774

Note positions in multiple-voice contexts

Notes are usually placed directly above each other and at the same horizontal position, so that it is immediately clear which notes are played together. However, the horizontal alignment of notes can be different in multiple-voice contexts.

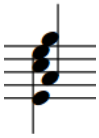
There are circumstances when some notes must be positioned slightly to one side in a different voice column to ensure the division of notes across the voices is clear. For example, when there are three or more voices in a single staff, or when notes in two voices are a second interval apart.



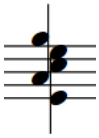
A phrase with multiple voice columns for some beats on the top staff

Interlocking notes in different voices can be positioned in two ways:

1. Notehead to notehead, which allows noteheads to overlap partially. This voice order often takes up less horizontal space than positioning notes stem to stem, as notes can overlap.



2. Stem to stem, which does not allow noteheads to overlap. This voice order keeps notes in different voices separate.



Dorico Elements positions notes by default with the noteheads partially overlapping, in order to minimize the horizontal space they occupy and to maintain the clarity of the rhythm. The order and position of notes in different voices is also automatically adjusted so that each rhythmic position uses as little horizontal space as possible, while remaining clear and legible.

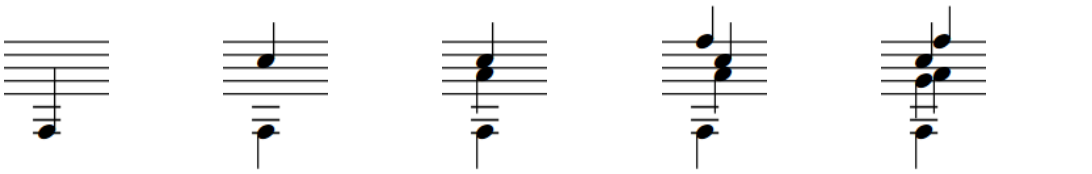
- You can change the default order of notes in multiple voices project-wide on the **Voices** page in **Notation Options**.
- You can manually swap the order in which opposing voices are positioned horizontally and change the voice column of individual notes.

RELATED LINKS
Stem direction on page 961
Slashes in multiple-voice contexts on page 1134
Implicit rests in multiple-voice contexts on page 1146
Per-flow notation options for voices on page 1304
Notation Options dialog on page 679
Note spacing on page 579

Voice column index

The voice column index is used to determine the positions of notes when multiple columns are needed; for example, when notes in two voices are a second interval apart and therefore cannot be placed directly above each other vertically, instead they must partially overlap.

Dorico Elements automatically changes the voice column of voices according to the number of active voices and the pitch of notes. Dorico Elements prefers showing voices with the widest pitch range between them on the left of the rhythmic position and voices with narrower pitch ranges to the right, as this produces the most balanced result, especially when there are multiple accidentals.



One voice

Two voices horizontally aligned in the same voice column

Three voices all still horizontally aligned

Four voices with two voice columns

Five voices with two voice columns

Swapping the order of voices

Dorico Elements automatically positions notes with the noteheads partially overlapping, in order to minimize the horizontal space they occupy and maintain the clarity of the rhythm. You can manually swap the order in which opposing voices are positioned horizontally. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. Select the notes whose order you want to change. You can do this in Write mode and Engrave mode.
2. Choose **Edit** > **Notations** > **Voices** > **Swap Voice Order**. You can also choose this option from the context menu.

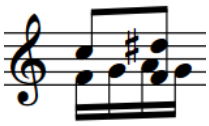
RESULT

The voice order of the selected notes is changed by changing their voice column index. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

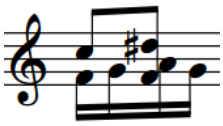
NOTE

If you want to revert voices to their default voice order, we recommend that you reset their voice column by deactivating **Voice column index** in the **Notes and Rests** group of the Properties panel instead of swapping their voice order again.

EXAMPLE



Interlocking notes in opposing voices positioned notehead to notehead.



Interlocking notes in opposing voices positioned stem to stem.

RELATED LINKS

Stem direction on page 961
Implicit rests in multiple-voice contexts on page 1146
Swapping the contents of voices on page 443
Changing the voice of existing notes on page 442
Changing the property scope on page 617
Copying property settings to other layouts/frame chains on page 599

Changing the voice column of notes

You can change the voice column, and therefore the horizontal order, of all notes in selected voices at individual rhythmic positions, independently of your per-flow settings. You can do this for the current layout and frame chain only, or for all layouts and frame chains.

PREREQUISITE

- The lower zone is shown.
- **Properties** is selected in the lower zone toolbar.
- You have chosen the appropriate property scope for local properties.

PROCEDURE

1. In Engrave mode, select at least one note in each voice whose voice column you want to change.
2. In the Properties panel, activate **Voice column index** in the **Notes and Rests** group.
3. Change the value in the value field.

RESULT

The voice column of the selected voices is changed. If the property scope was set to **Locally**, this change only takes effect in the current layout and frame chain.

Deactivating the property returns the selected voice to their default order according to your per-flow settings.

TIP

The **Voice column index** property in the **Notes and Rests** group of the Properties panel is automatically activated when you swap the order of voices manually.

Unused voices

An unused voice is one that contains no notes anywhere in the project. Any unused voices are automatically deleted when you close a project, but you cannot manually delete voices once they have been created. You can create as many voices as you want in each staff.

NOTE

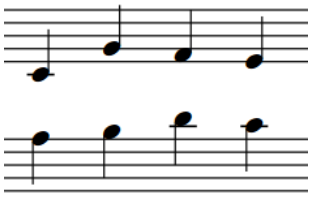
Deleting all notes in a voice does not delete the voice immediately.

If you later want to input notes in a voice that was automatically deleted when you last closed the project, you can create a new voice at any rhythmic position.

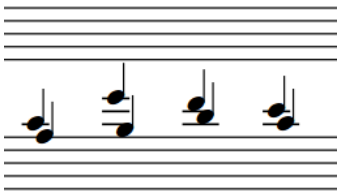
Notes crossed to staves with existing notes in other voices

When you create cross-staff beams by crossing notes to staves that already contain notes, the stem direction of the existing notes may change. This is due to how multiple voices at the same rhythmic position are handled in Dorico Elements.

For example, if a piano part contains notes in up-stem voices on both staves, the stem direction of notes in both voices can change if notes from the upper staff are crossed to the lower staff. In this situation, the notes from the two staves are not combined, but are instead treated as two up-stem voices in a multiple-voice context.



Two piano staves, each with notes in a single up-stem voice.



When the notes in the upper staff are crossed to the lower staff, the stem direction of the notes already in the lower staff changes so they point upwards.

You can change the stem direction of the notes originally in the lower staff in any of the following ways:

- Select the notes originally in the lower staff and change their voice to another voice, such as a down-stem voice.
- Select the notes originally in the lower staff and change their stem direction.

Alternatively, you can move the notes in the upper staff permanently to the lower staff.

RELATED LINKS
Creating cross-staff beams/tremolos on page 764
Moving notes/items to other staves on page 440
Inputting notes into multiple voices on page 221
Changing the voice of existing notes on page 442
Stem direction on page 961

Glossary

A

action (expression maps)

A control in expression maps that determines how individual switches are controlled in order to trigger the required playback technique or combination of playback techniques.

action (harps)

The mechanism that raises or lowers the pitch of harp strings, as controlled by the position of each pedal.

action (pianos)

The mechanism that allows piano hammers to strike the strings with different forces, depending on the strength with which the player depresses the corresponding key. It allows pianos to use a greater dynamic range, hence their full name “pianoforte”.

alignment relative to noteheads

When calculating the horizontal alignment of items relative to noteheads, Dorico Elements uses the front notehead in the first voice column at the corresponding rhythmic position. The front notehead is the notehead on the correct side of the stem; that is, on the left of up-stems and on the right of down-stems. Items that can be aligned relative to noteheads include lyrics, chord symbols, and playing techniques.

anacrusis

See pick-up bar.

articulation (music notation)

A symbol that indicates how a note should be played, typically affecting its onset (attack), release, or duration. For example, staccato marks and accents.

articulation (sound libraries)

A term that refers to playing techniques generally.

attachment

The rhythmic position at which an item occurs, or to which an item applies, in the music.

B

bar

A span of music comprising a specific number of beats, as defined by the prevailing time signature, whose boundaries are indicated by bar lines. Also known as a “measure”, but this documentation uses “bar”.

C

cancellation natural

A natural accidental positioned on the staff immediately before a change in key signature or a single note. It indicates that the previous accidental no longer applies and can be followed immediately by a new accidental if applicable. Showing cancellation naturals before single accidentals that follow double accidentals is also known as “archaic cancellation”. Cancellation naturals before a change in key signature are known as “traditional” when positioned after the barline and “Russian” when positioned before the barline.

caret

Shown during note input, the caret is the vertical line that extends above and below the staff and indicates the rhythmic position at which items are input. Also known as an “insertion point”. In Dorico Elements, the caret, cursor, and mouse pointer are related but serve different purposes. See also rhythmic grid, note input, cursor, mouse pointer.

casting off

The act of fixing the layout of pages of music, such as defining a set number of systems per page or the number of bars per system.

cautionary accidental

A restatement of an earlier accidental to eliminate ambiguities, such as when a tied note with an accidental continues onto another page. Also known as a “courtesy accidental”.

CC

Short for “continuous controller” or “control change”, it is a MIDI message that combines a controller number and a value. The value for an individual controller can change over time, allowing incremental manipulation of the corresponding sound or effect, such as increasing/decreasing the string vibrato intensity. You can specify the sound or effect that each CC switches to and controls in each sound library using expression maps. In Dorico Elements, each instrument track has 127 available MIDI CCs, each with a value range from 0 to 127. Because MIDI CC does not use notes on a MIDI keyboard, it allows you to use the full range of MIDI keyboard notes for note input. However, it is therefore harder to trigger MIDI CC whilst recording notes. See also MIDI, PC.

channel

In MIDI, a channel determines which note, controller, or other data is played by which sound on which device. In Dorico Elements, notes on a single staff may be played by different channels, depending on which playing techniques are provided by the patch assigned to each channel. See also MIDI, patch.

chord

Two or more notes of the same duration that start at the same rhythmic position and share a stem.

chord input

A variation of note input where notes are stacked on top of each other to create chords, rather than being input after the previous note in sequence. Notes are input at the caret position, which does not advance automatically. See also caret, note input, Insert mode.

collision avoidance

Automatic adjustments made by Dorico Elements to ensure multiple items at the same position do not overlap and that all remain clearly legible. Includes changing the shape of items, such as slurs, and changing the vertical and/or horizontal position of items, such as accidentals in chords.

column

A vertical line representing the same horizontal position across all staves in the system. Used to determine the position of notes and chords for the purposes of spacing music accurately. Multiple columns can be used for the same rhythmic position to accommodate multiple voices, with notes or chords in some voices being offset horizontally from notes or chords in other voices.

concert pitch

All notes are written as they sound. Full scores are often notated in concert pitch, so that harmonies and themes are easier to identify. Also known as “sounding pitch”. See also transposed pitch, instrument transposition.

condensing

The process of showing the music for multiple players on fewer staves than is normal, usually by allowing multiple instruments of the same type to share a staff, such as Flutes 1-2 or Horns 1-4. Most commonly used for large orchestral scores, as when there are fewer staves on a page it is possible to use a larger staff size, which is easier for conductors to read. See also divisi, pitch crossing, reducing.

constant point

A change in value in the Key Editor that sets a fixed value until the next point. See also point (Key Editor), linear point, value line.

context menu

A menu that you can access by right-clicking on a mouse or double-tapping on a touchpad. Its options vary by the location of the mouse pointer and what is selected when you access it, but it most commonly contains options also found on the **Edit** menu.

cursor

The vertical blinking line that appears when entering or editing text. See also caret, mouse pointer.

D

dead note

A note played on a fretted instrument whose sound is muted to produce a sound that is more percussive than pitched. Usually produced by gently resting one hand on the string. Also known as a “muted”, “muffled”, “ghost”, or “silenced” note. In Dorico Elements, only notes belonging to fretted instruments, such as the guitar or banjo, can be dead notes.

disclosure arrow

A small arrow that is shown on all edges of the main window in Dorico Elements. It allows you to hide/show the toolbar and panels individually.

divisi

Italian for “divide” or “divided”, divisi is when players split in order to play multiple lines of music. This commonly involves a section, such as Violin I, dividing and using two staves rather than one for a limited passage. Divisi passages can be notated all on the same staff, using multiple voices if required, or across multiple staves. See also tutti, condensing, exploding, reducing.

drum set

A particular type of percussion kit that is often used in pop and rock music. Drum sets often use a different arrangement of voices than percussion kits. In this documentation, references to “percussion kits” also apply to drum sets, as drum sets are a type of percussion kit.

E

EDO

An abbreviation for Equal Division of the Octave, it is a unit used to describe how an octave can be divided into equal parts, often for the purpose of defining a microtonal scale or tonality system. Traditional Western European music uses 12-EDO; that is, each octave is divided into 12 equal half-steps (semitones). Music that uses equal quarter tones uses 24-EDO. See also pitch delta.

endpoint

The unique combination of inputs and outputs that together allow the correct sounds to be played for each instrument.

Engrave mode

A mode in Dorico where you can manipulate and modify every item in your project, but without deleting them, moving them rhythmically, or changing the pitch of notes. You can also determine how the pages in each layout of your project are formatted for printing or exporting. See also modes.

enharmonic equivalent

An alternative spelling of a note that uses a different scale degree and accidental but produces the same sounding pitch, such as G♯ and A♭.

ensemble

A predefined collection of players, each holding instruments that are often used together, such as string quartet, wind quintet, brass quintet, string ensemble, and double woodwinds.

envelope

A change in sound over time that comprises multiple stages, such as attack, sustain, and decay. In the Dynamics editor, envelopes are represented by highlighted regions and multiple separate points, each controlling a different parameter of the overall envelope. See also point (Key Editor), constant point, linear point, value line.

explicit rest

A rest that was deliberately input during rest input or imported from a MusicXML file. Explicit rests cannot be suppressed between notes in a particular voice. See also rest, implicit rest.

exploding

The process of assigning music to more instruments than it was written for originally. Exploding music is often a key step in arranging and orchestrating music, such as when a piano piece is arranged for string quartet. See also reducing, divisi.

F

family

Instruments of a similar kind that are typically bracketed together in a score, such as woodwind, brass, percussion, and strings.

fermata

A notation that indicates all notes at that position are held for longer than their notated length. It is most commonly shown as a curved line with a dot under the curve, but it can also be shown with a pointed arch or square shape. Also known as a “pause” or a “birds’ eye”.

flow

A self-contained span of music of any scope, such as a movement in a symphony, a song in an album, a number in a musical, or a short exercise in a music theory worksheet. A flow can contain the same players as other flows in the project or separate players just for that flow. See also player.

formatting

The act of determining the number of bars in a system, the number of systems on a page, and the distances between staves and systems.

fps

A unit of measurement, short for “frames per second”, that refers to the number of video frames occurring each second.

fragment

Part of a notation item. For example, fragments of a note include its notehead, rhythm dots, accidentals, the tip of its stem, and beam. In Write mode, selecting any part of an item also selects all of its fragments, so any changes you make affect the whole item. See also item, segment.

frame

A rectangular container for music, text, or graphics on a page.

fretted instrument

A type of instrument that in most cases has multiple strings, a neck with marked frets, and is played by stopping the strings at fret positions on the neck with one hand, usually the left, and plucking the corresponding strings with the other hand, usually the right. Common fretted instruments include the guitar, ukulele, and banjo.

full score

A score comprising all of the music for all of the players and their instruments, typically laid out in a specific order. The order used varies according to the ensemble for which the music is written. In full scores for orchestra, the players are typically ordered from the highest wind

instrument at the top of the page, such as piccolo, to the lowest string instrument at the bottom of the page, such as contrabass, with brass, keyboards, voices, and percussion in between.

G

galley view

A viewing option that shows music laid out as a single, infinitely wide system.

grace note

A small note, often used to show an ornament or embellishment, that is not counted towards the number of beats in the bar; instead, it steals from the duration of either the preceding or the following rhythmic notes. Also known as an “arhythmic” or “crushed” note. In common practice, a grace note with a slashed stem is an “acciaccatura”, which is to be played as quickly as possible, either immediately before or at the rhythmic position of the note or chord that follows it. A grace note with an unslashed stem is an “appoggiatura”, which is played as half of the written duration of the note or chord that follows it.

grand staff instrument

An instrument that normally uses two or more staves joined by a brace to display their notes. Common grand staff instruments include the piano, organ, and harp. Upper staves usually indicate higher notes and use the treble clef, while lower staves usually indicate lower notes and use the bass clef.

H

hairpin

A notation for dynamics that uses a pair of angled lines, diverging from or converging on a single point, to show a gradual increase or reduction in the dynamic level; that is, a crescendo or diminuendo.

half-bar

The rhythmic position that divides bars into two equal sections when the prevailing time signatures can be divided into four equal beats. In Dorico Elements, specific beam grouping and note grouping settings apply to bars with a half-bar. Time signatures that have a half-bar include 4/4 and 12/8.

handle

A selectable item that marks the ends of lines, the corners of frames, and other moveable positions, such as pedal line retakes and slur control points. In Write mode, handles are circular and mark rhythmic positions.

harmonic series

A naturally-occurring set of frequencies that are all related to a single pitch, known as the “fundamental”. When a fundamental pitch is played, the note produced contains many different notes within the harmonic series. These additional notes are known as “partials” or “overtones”. It is also possible to bring out the sound of individual partials by playing them as harmonics. There is a consistent pattern of intervals between partials within the harmonic series, and these intervals become progressively smaller the further up the harmonic series they occur. For example, the interval between the first and second partials is an octave whereas the interval between the seventh and eighth partials is only approximately a major second. At the top end of the harmonic series, most partials are microtones. See also partial.

hook

A short line that extends from other lines, most commonly at a right angle, that helps to clarify the end position of lines. In Dorico Elements, hooks can be used at the end of pedal lines, octave lines, repeat endings, and tuplet brackets.

horizontal justification

The alignment of musical content to the left and right edges of the frame. To ensure that all staves in a system occupy the same width, any remaining space that is left over after the music is spaced is distributed evenly between all of the columns in the system. Sometimes the final

system of a flow is not fully justified and is allowed to end partway across the width of the frame. See also frame, justification.

I

implicit rest

A rest that is automatically shown around the notes you input. Its notated duration automatically adjusts according to the time signature and its position in the bar. Implicit rests can be suppressed between notes in a particular voice, which hides them. See also rest, explicit rest, padding rest, multi-bar rest.

Insert mode

A way of changing how notes are input. When Insert mode is activated, new notes push all subsequent notes in the same voice along by the input duration instead of overwriting existing notes. Similarly, reducing the duration of notes with Insert mode activated pulls them closer together without leaving rests between the notes. This also affects edits you make outside of note input, such as deleting notes, changing the duration of notes, or inputting time signatures. See also note input, chord input.

instrument

Anything that requires at least one staff to represent the sounds or music it produces. Common instruments include the violin, flute, tuba, and bass drum. However, human voices, computer triggering samples, and tape recordings can also be instruments.

instrument transposition

The interval difference between the pitch the instrument plays and the resulting sounding pitch, often included as part of the instrument name. For example, when a Clarinet in B♭ plays a C, the pitch produced is a concert B♭. Instrument transposition is also known as “instrument pitch”. See also concert pitch, transposed pitch.

item

Generic term for any note, rest, chord, notation, or other selectable object that appears in the score in Dorico Elements. See also fragment, segment.

J

justification

The alignment of musical content to the edges of the frame, both horizontally and vertically. See also frame, horizontal justification, vertical justification.

K

key command

A set of keys that perform a defined task when pressed together. Also known as a “keyboard shortcut” or “hotkey”.

L

layout

A page-based presentation of the music for one or more players in one or more flows; for example, a full score that contains all players or an instrumental part that contains only a single player. See also flow, player.

layout options

Options that affect the setup of an individual layout, such as page and staff size. These options can be set in each layout independently in the **Layout Options** dialog. See also layout.

linear point

A change in value in the Key Editor that acts as a point on a curve, setting a value for its position only and allowing for a smooth change in value from that position until the next point. See also point (Key Editor), constant point, value line.

lock duration

Functionality that allows you to change the pitches of existing music while retaining existing rhythms.

lyric

Any text that is intended to be sung or spoken by an individual singer or group of singers. A lyric can be a whole word or an individual syllable in a multi-syllabic word. Lyrics are shown at each rhythmic position where a new word or syllable begins. Typically, lyrics are found below the staff, but are sometimes placed above the staff; for example, in the case of a short score.

M

measure

See bar.

MIDI

An abbreviation for Musical Instrument Digital Interface, a standard for how electronic musical instruments, computers, and virtual instruments can connect to and communicate with each other. In Dorico Elements, MIDI data can be sent to one of 16 channels, which allow either a specific instrument, or a specific patch on a specific instrument, to receive and respond to the data. See also channel, patch, CC, PC.

minor key

A key signature based on a minor scale, which has a different pattern of intervals to a major scale. See also minor scale.

minor scale

A sequence of notes containing the pitches of a minor key. There are three types of minor scales: natural, harmonic, and melodic. Natural minor scales follow the interval pattern of the Aeolian mode, which on a keyboard is all the white notes from A-A. Harmonic minor scales also follow the Aeolian mode interval pattern but the seventh degree of the scale is sharpened; for example, G♯ in A harmonic minor. Melodic minor scales follow different interval patterns when they are rising/falling: when rising, melodic minor scales have sharpened sixth and seventh degrees, but when falling, the sixth and seventh degrees are both natural. See also minor key.

modes

Selectable workspaces in the project window that represent different phases in the workflow of preparing a score. See also Setup mode, Write mode, Engrave mode, Play mode, Print mode.

mouse pointer

The icon on the screen that allows you to interact with items and the user interface, usually by clicking. Its position is typically controlled by an external mouse or touchpad. Its appearance varies depending on the context, such as appearing as a hand when it hovers over a hyperlink, but it most commonly appears as an arrow pointing towards the top left corner of the screen. Also known as a “mouse arrow”, “cursor”, or simply a “pointer” or “mouse” In this documentation, we use the term “mouse pointer” to differentiate from the cursor and caret. See also cursor, caret, touchpad.

multi-bar rest

A consolidation of multiple adjacent empty bars into a smaller unit, typically shown as a single bar with the total number of bars' rest written above the staff. A multi-bar rest normally shows an H-bar symbol, which is a thick horizontal line with vertical lines at each end. In some older published scores, a multi-bar rest of up to nine bars in length is shown using a combination of double whole and whole rests. Also known as a “multirest”.

music area

The main part of the window in Setup mode and Write mode where you input and edit your music.

MusicXML

A file format designed to allow the interchange and archiving of music notation data in an open and non-proprietary way. It is useful for exchanging scores between different music applications.

N

node

A position along the length of a string that marks an equal division of the string, such as a quarter of the way along a string. Touching, but not fully stopping, a string at a node produces a harmonic partial. See also partial, harmonic series.

notation options

Options that affect the way the music is notated, particularly concerning how notes and rests are grouped according to meter, rules for the extent of accidentals, and options for transposition. These options can be set independently for each flow in the **Notation Options** dialog.

note input

The standard method of adding notes to staves in sequence that is possible when the caret is active. The caret automatically advances to the next rhythmic position after each note is input. During note input, it is also possible to input other items at the caret position. Also known as "step input" because notes are input step-by-step. See also caret, chord input, Insert mode.

O

octave division

A single step within an octave whose interval depends on the total number of divisions in the octave. For example, in 12-EDO, there are twelve octave divisions, each a half-step (semitone) apart. See also EDO, pitch delta.

overtone

See partial. See also harmonic series, node.

P

padding

The minimum distance/gap between two items, such as text and its enclosure. Padding values can be independent of other set values, such as minimum height or width.

padding rest

A rest that fills the extra rhythmic space before or after cues that start or end partway through bars. This shows clearly how the rhythm of the cue fits within the time signature and how it relates to the player's existing material. See also implicit rest.

page break

The forced termination of a page of music at a particular rhythmic position, typically at a barline. Often used to ensure a convenient page turn in a part. In Dorico Elements, page breaks can be achieved using frame breaks, which are indicated using signposts. See also system break.

page view

A viewing option that shows music laid out on a page with a fixed width and height, as it appears when printed. See also galley view.

panel

Wide palettes of tools on the left, right, and bottom edges of the program window that are available in all modes, but their content varies in each mode.

part

The music belonging to the instruments played by one or more players, shown on its own rather than in a full score. Performers who do not need to see the music belonging to the whole ensemble play from parts so they only have to read the music they play themselves. See also full score, layout.

partial

A single pitch or frequency in the harmonic series, which varies in pitch according to the pitch of the fundamental but is always a consistent interval above the fundamental according to its number in the harmonic series. For example, the second partial is an octave above the fundamental, the third partial is an octave and a fifth above the fundamental, and the fourth partial is two octaves above the fundamental. Also known as simply a “harmonic” or “overtone”, although when described as an overtone it has a different number, as the first overtone is the same as the second partial. See also harmonic series.

patch

An older term for a discrete sound on a MIDI device or virtual instrument. See also channel, MIDI, PC.

pause (holds)

A notation that shows where the established rhythmic flow of the music is interrupted, either with a moment of repose or a short silence, before continuing. Also known as a “hold”, “fermata”, “breath mark”, and “caesura”. See also fermata.

pause (rest)

A marking with a rhythmic value that indicates no note is played for that duration. In this documentation, we refer to this as a “rest”. See also rest.

PC

Short for “program change” or “patch change”, it is a MIDI message that allows you to access different sounds by switching to the corresponding programs. Because programs can also include effects presets, they allow you to change to specific sounds quickly, which is particularly useful in live performances. You can specify the programs that each PC switches to in each sound library using expression maps. See also MIDI, CC, patch.

pedal level change

A change to how far a piano sustain pedal is depressed, between 1 (fully depressed) and 0 (not depressed). It is notated as a change to the height of a pedal line. Also known as a “pedal lift”.

pick-up bar

A note or notes played before the first full bar of a piece. Also known as an “upbeat” or “anacrusis”. Pick-up bars often only comprise one or two beats whose main purpose is to lead in to the start of the piece.

pitch crossing

A possible situation on staves containing multiple voices or parts, such as condensed staves, where notes in down-stem voices have higher pitches than notes in up-stem voices. See also condensing.

pitch delta

The number of octave divisions by which accidentals raise or lower the pitch of notes. For example, in 12-EDO, a pitch delta of 1 raises notes by a half-step (semitone) and is commonly notated using the sharp accidental (♯). See also EDO.

player

A musician who plays one or more instruments. Players are defined as either single players or section players and are assigned to flows and layouts. See also single player, section player, flow, layout.

player group

A collection of players that comprises either a subset of the main ensemble, such as a choir within an orchestra, or a separate group, such as an off-stage brass group or second orchestra. Each group of players is labeled separately in the full score and is grouped and numbered together in the instrument order. See also player.

playhead

A vertical line that moves alongside music during playback and when recording, showing the current rhythmic position. Also known as a “playback line”.

Play mode

A mode in Dorico where you can change how your music sounds in playback, including by changing the playback template and assigning VST instruments, inputting automation, adjusting the mix, and changing the sounding duration of notes in playback without affecting their notated duration. See also modes.

playthrough

A single time playing from the beginning of the piece to the end. Music that contains multiple possible endings, such as music with repeat endings or codas, requires multiple playthroughs.

plug-in

A software program that can operate within another software program. Dorico Elements supports VST instruments and effects and script plug-ins written in Lua.

point (Key Editor)

A change in value in the Key Editor. Points appear as squares that you can select and edit, such as by dragging them. Points can be constant or linear. See also constant point, linear point, value line.

point (size)

A unit of measurement in typography that describes the size of fonts.

pointer

See mouse pointer.

polymeter

Music containing multiple simultaneous meters; for example, one instrument in the ensemble plays in 6/8 and another plays in 7/4.

popover

A temporary value field that is evoked using a key command and allows you to input items using text entries. You can open popovers in Write mode during note input or when items are selected in the music area. There are dedicated popovers for different types of items.

preamble

The notations typically drawn before the first note or rest on each system of music. The preamble usually includes clefs, key signatures, and time signatures. In Dorico Elements, the preamble is drawn automatically, so you cannot select any items included in it.

Print mode

A mode in Dorico that allows you to print and export the layouts in your project. See also modes.

print preview area

The main part of the window in Print mode where you can see a preview of what is going to be printed or exported as a graphic. See also Print mode.

project

A Dorico Elements file that can contain multiple flows and layouts. See also flow and layout.

properties

The characteristics of individual items and fragments of items in your project that can be edited via the Properties panel. There are two types of properties: local and global. Local properties are layout- and frame chain-specific, meaning that by default, changing local properties for an item in one layout does not affect the same item in other layouts or other frame chains.

Q

quantization

In music, the act of adjusting the positions and durations of notes so they align with the nearest defined beat. This process eliminates small variations in rhythm and duration produced naturally by live performers, and can be useful when importing/exporting MIDI data as quantized music produces neater notation.

R

rastral size

The size of a full five-line staff, measured from the bottom line to the top line. The term comes from the rastra engravers historically used to draw five-line staves on blank paper. Because the rastrum is a fixed object, people became used to their set sizes and Dorico Elements continues this tradition by offering users a selection of rastral staff sizes.

reducing

The process of taking music for more than one instrument and assigning it to fewer instruments, such as a keyboard reduction of a choral piece. A piece of music that has been reduced is known as a “reduction”. See also exploding, condensing, divisi.

rest

A marking with a rhythmic value that indicates no note is played for that duration. Also known as a “silence” or “pause”, but in this documentation, we refer to them as “rests”. See also implicit rest, explicit rest, padding rest, multi-bar rest, pause (holds).

rhythmic grid

A unit of rhythmic duration whose value affects certain aspects of inputting and editing, such as the amount by which items move. Its current value is shown by the note value in the status bar, and by ruler markings indicating beat divisions and subdivisions above the staff on which the caret is active. See also caret.

S

score

See full score, part, layout, project.

section player

Multiple musicians who all play the same instrument and read from the same part layout; for example, Violin I. Section players may not play multiple different instruments, but can divide. See also player, single player.

segment

Part of a notation item that functions autonomously in Engrave mode. Segments can exist regardless of their position, such as individual ending brackets within a repeat ending, or only when a single item is split across a system or frame break, such as glissando lines. See also item, fragment.

Setup mode

A mode in Dorico where you can set up the fundamental elements of the project: instruments and the players that hold them, flows, layouts, and videos. You can also determine how they interact with each other; for example, by changing the players assigned to layouts. See also modes.

single player

An individual musician who can play one or more instruments; for example, a flute doubling piccolo. See also player, section player.

SMuFL

Short for “Standard Music Font Layout”, it is a font specification that maps all the different symbols required for music notation onto a standard layout. Dorico Elements requires SMuFL-

compliant fonts for certain areas of the program, such as clefs and dynamic glyphs, to ensure it can locate the correct symbol. SMuFL-compliant fonts include Bravura, Petaluma, and November 2.0.

space

A unit of measurement in music engraving based on the distance between the center of two adjacent staff lines. Practically all notation items are scaled in proportion to the size of a space; for example, a notehead is normally one space tall.

spacing

The act of determining the horizontal distance between successive columns in order to format the music. Horizontal spacing in Dorico Elements considers the graphical shape and size of notes and other items, such as rhythm dots and accidentals, and the note spacing values set. Full systems are automatically horizontally justified.

spelling

The way in which a note of a given pitch is specified by a letter name plus an accidental. For example, assuming the conventional 12-EDO pitch system, MIDI note 61 can be spelled as C♯, D♭, and B𝄪. The same pitch is normally spelled a certain way in a given key; for example, MIDI note 61 is normally spelled as C♯ in D major, but is spelled as D♭ in A♭ major. See also EDO, MIDI.

split stem

A way of presenting altered unisons that keeps each accidental directly beside the notehead to which it applies. Also known as a “cherry stalk” or “tree”.

staff-relative placement

The vertical position of items relative to musical staves; that is, either above or below.

string shift indicator

An angled line that indicates the direction of movement when string players have to shift position on the fingerboard to play a higher/lower note with the same finger as the previous note.

stroke

The short line that bisects editorial slurs and ties. Also known as a “notch”.

SVG

SVG stands for Scalable Vector Graphics, which is an XML-based way of displaying and modifying graphics. Due to the way it is coded, it allows you to modify graphics very flexibly compared to other formats.

system

A horizontal span of music that is played together. Most printed music displays systems spanning the full width of pages. A system can contain any number of staves. For example, in orchestral full scores, systems typically contain staves for all instruments in the orchestra, meaning a single system often occupies the full height of the page. In part layouts, each system only contains the staves required for that player, which is often a single staff and means multiple systems can fit on each page. See also system break, page break, casting off.

system break

The forced termination of a system of music at a particular rhythmic position, typically at a barline. Indicated in Dorico Elements with signposts. See also page break.

system formatting

The distribution of bars into systems and systems into frames. When copying part formatting between layouts, Dorico Elements considers the positions of system breaks, frame breaks, and note spacing changes to be aspects of system formatting.

system object

An item that applies to all staves in the system, but is not necessary to show on every staff, such as tempo marks and rehearsal marks. In Dorico Elements, you can show system objects at multiple positions in each system by showing them above multiple instrument families.

T

tempo track

The timing-related information included in MIDI data that affects tempo, SMPTE offsets, time signatures, timecodes, and markers, which can be imported independently of the rest of the data in MIDI files.

token

A code used in a text string that is automatically replaced by a piece of information from elsewhere in the project, such as the title of the current flow, the name of the player, or the page number. Also known as a “wildcard” or “text code”.

touchpad

Any flat device with a tactile sensor that functions as an alternative to the traditional computer mouse. Commonly built into laptop computers but can also be separate appliances connected wirelessly or via a cable.

transport

Encompasses all options related to playback and recording.

transposed pitch

In transposed pitch, the pitches notated are the pitches that the instrument plays, rather than the desired sounding pitch. Instrumental parts are always in transposed pitch so that players can simply play the written notes, which is especially important for transposing instruments. See also concert pitch, instrument transposition.

tuplet

A rhythm that is performed at a fraction of its normal written duration. For example, a triplet is three notes of a given note value played in the time it would normally take to play two notes of that note value. Also known as an “irrational rhythm” or a “countermetric rhythm”.

tutti

Italian for “everyone”, tutti indicates that a passage of music is to be played by all players reading from that part or staff. It is most commonly used to indicate the end of a divisi passage, or for clarification when a staff can indicate both solos and tutti passages at different times. See also divisi.

U

upbeat

See pick-up bar.

V

value line

A visual representation of value over time. In Dorico Elements, you typically find value lines in the Key Editor. Fully horizontal value lines indicate a constant value, while angled value lines indicate a smooth change in value within a given duration, usually between two points. See also point (Key Editor), constant point, linear point.

vertical justification

The spreading out of staves and systems across the full height of frames with as even a distribution of space as possible. If the music in the frame requires less vertical space than is available, the remaining space is distributed evenly between the systems, and between the staves of the systems. See also frame, justification.

vibrato bar

A device on electric fretted instruments, typically guitars, that allows the performer to add vibrato to notes and to adjust the pitch of notes, similar to a guitar bend. Also known as a “whammy bar”, “tremolo bar”, “tremolo arm”, or “vibrato arm”.

voice

In Dorico Elements, a series of notes, chords, rests, and other notations that make up a single musical line and are normally played by the same instrument. Assigning notes and items to different voices allows multiple lines of music to be presented on the same staff as clearly as possible, such as in vocal music where the soprano line uses an up-stem voice and the alto line uses a down-stem voice. Dorico Elements allows as many voices as are needed to be input onto a single staff, and lays them out and spaces them automatically. See also instrument.

VST instrument

Short for “Virtual Studio Technology instrument”, it is a digital plug-in that converts MIDI data into audio output. It can emulate an existing piece of studio hardware or can be an entirely new creation.

W

Write mode

A mode in Dorico where you can input and edit your music, including changing the rhythmic positions of items, changing the pitch of notes, and deleting notes and items. See also modes.

Index

A

abbreviated
    dates 611
    dynamics 828, 840
    instrument names 172, 175, 176, 1184
    staff labels 150, 1181, 1183, 1184
    tempo text 1210
absolute channel change actions 695
absolute tempo changes 1205
    components 1206
Academico font 681
accelerando. *See* gradual tempo changes. *See also* tempo marks
accents. *See* articulations
acciaccaturas. *See* grace notes
accidental duration rules 719
    changing 720
    common practice 719
    Modernist 719
    Second Viennese School 719
accidental spelling 234
    changing 449, 450, 452
    resetting 452
accidentals 712
    altered unisons. *See* altered unisons
    appearance 713, 720
    arrows 918
    brackets 713, 720, 971
    cancellation 719, 721
    cautionary 719, 720
    changing 233
    chord symbols 142, 147, 149, 305, 783, 794, 796
    chords 715
    collision avoidance 715–717
    deleting 712
    duration rules. *See* accidental duration rules
    enharmonic equivalents 449, 450, 452
    figured bass 380
    glissando lines 1000
    Gould arrows 918
    guitar pre-bends 1014
    harmonics 971
    harp pedaling. *See* harp pedaling
    hiding 712, 713, 720, 721, 971, 985
    inputting 218, 233
    intervals 326, 463, 986
    kerning 716
    key signatures 712, 911, 912, 915
    layout names 174
    lines 1084
    microtonal 719
    MIDI input 234
    moving 716, 717
    none 266, 713, 913, 971
    octave divisions 918
accidentals *(continued)*
    ornaments 977, 990
    panel 191, 269
    parentheses 713, 720, 971
    part names 174
    piano roll editor 630, 632
    pitch before duration 218
    quarter tones 719, 918
    respelling 449, 450, 452
    restating 719, 720
    showing 712, 713, 720, 971, 985
    signposts 426
    size 714
    spacing 716
    stacking order 715, 716
    Stein-Zimmermann 918
    text 370, 373, 608
    ties across breaks 713, 1238
    titles 608
    tokens 608
    transposing 446, 915, 917
    trills 984–986, 989, 990
accolades. *See* braces
actions 688, 695
activating 63, 209
    caret 209
    channel effects 671, 675
    chord input 187, 240
    dotted notes 187
    EQ 671
    force duration 187
    grace note input 187
    independent voice playback 506
    Insert mode 187, 226
    inserts 675
    instrument filters 424
    lock to duration 187
    mouse input 187, 219
    note input 209, 211, 214
    pitch before duration 187
    playback 31, 503, 518, 523
    player sorting 123
    plug-ins 505
    rest input 187
    scissors 187
    system track 406
    tuplet input 187
    VST instruments 505
adagio. *See* tempo marks
add intervals popover. *See* note tools popover
Add Marker dialog 383
add-on switches 687, 695
added notes
    chord symbols 307
adding. *See* inputting

additional
endings 391, 393, 1107
voices 221, 1151, 1303
additive time signatures. *See* time signatures
advanced options
hiding 43
showing 43
advancing
caret 210
chord symbols popover 310
figured bass popover 381
hairpins 410
lyrics popover 376
slurs 410
aeolian
chord symbols 308, 795
scales 460, 467
aggregate time signatures 271, 1250
dashed barlines 271, 1250
inputting 271, 273–275
aikin noteheads 945, 946
air sounds. *See* playing techniques. *See also* diamond noteheads
aliases
jump bar 67, 68
alignment
arpeggio signs 997
bar numbers 746, 747
barlines 739
bars 569, 739, 1198
chord symbols 783, 788, 791
counts 1118
crosshairs 484
dynamics 830, 831, 853–856
fermatas 908–910
gradual dynamics 832
instrument names 176
items 484
lines 1078, 1084
lyrics 925, 927
measures 569, 1198
notes 1305–1308. *See also* voice column index
octave line numerals 823, 824
ornaments 978
pedal lines 1050
playing techniques 1066, 1073
repeat counts 1118
repeat endings 1110
rests 1144
rhythm dots 950, 1307
staff labels 176, 1182
staves 560, 569, 577, 1182, 1198
systems 560, 569, 577, 1182, 1198
tempo marks 1208
text 371, 1225
time signatures 1261
trills 979
voices 1305–1308. *See also* voice column index
allegretto. *See* tempo marks
allowing. *See* activating. *See also* enabling
alpha channel 543, 553
alterations
chord symbols 307, 783
jazz ornaments 330
altered bass notes 307, 783, 796
arrangement 797
inputting 303, 307
separator 783, 797
altered unisons 717
appearance 718
formatting 718
split stems 717
alternating time signatures. *See* time signatures
alto clef. *See* clefs
amp modeling 671, 675
AmpSimulator 671, 675
anacrusis. *See* pick-up bars
angles
beams 760, 761, 772
borders 1227
fanned beams 772
fingering slides 885
glissando lines 481, 1000, 1003
hairpins 481, 843
jazz articulations 1030
lines 367, 481, 1075, 1081, 1094
pedal lines 1045, 1046, 1049, 1050
slurs 1159, 1173
string shift indicators 888
ties 1243
tremolos 1265
tuplet brackets 481, 1276
annotations 205, 470, 554, 1077
comments 470
highlights 793, 794, 1120, 1122, 1132, 1134
lines 1077
note/rest colors 54, 55, 509, 951, 1148, 1304
ornaments. *See* ornaments
signposts 426
voice colors 54, 1304
aperture
hairpins 842, 843, 849
messa di voce 843, 849
apostrophes 610
appearance
default settings 677, 679
items 615
resetting 415
appending
flows 79
subito 840
applying. *See* assigning. *See also* activating
appoggiaturas. *See* grace notes
Arabic numerals
page numbers 1033
archaic accidental cancellation 721
arco. *See* playing techniques
areas
editing 38, 150, 1293
graphs 662
music 35
print preview 37
project start 35

areas *(continued)*
selecting 403, 404, 406, 407, 627, 664
tools 38, 615
arhythmic notes. *See* grace notes
arms
vibrato. *See* vibrato bar
arpeggio signs 994, 997, 1075
alignment 997
appearance 994–996
beat-relative playback 998
brackets 994
changing 412
cross-staff 332, 333
crosshairs 484
curved 328
deleting 431
direction 994
duration 999
ends 996
filter 407
fingerings 884
formatting 995, 996
grace notes 997
handles 997
inputting 325, 328, 332, 333
length 332, 333, 481, 997
moving 437, 440, 481
muting in playback 509
panel 330, 333
playback 998, 999
popover 328, 332
position 997
spacing 997
swash 994
ties 237
types 328, 995
voices 332, 333
arrangements
accidentals in key signatures 912
chord symbols 783, 797
flows 162
movements 162
pages 42, 50
arranger 75
adding 75
tokens 609
arranging 431, 433
changing instruments 136
chord symbols 311, 312
condensing. *See* condensing
copying 433–435
exploding 441
filters 407, 408, 421
MIDI import 86
pasting 435
reducing 441, 595
tools 431, 453
transforming notes. *See* transformations
transposing. *See* transposing
voices 440, 442, 443
arrows 1075
accidentals 918
arpeggio signs 994
arrows *(continued)*
caps 1072, 1086
design 1071
disclosure 43
lines 1077
noteheads 943, 946
panels 39, 44, 106
zones 39, 44, 106
articulations 723, 1062
changing 259
collision avoidance 727
copying 724
deleting 724
duration 723, 728
inputting 197, 218, 259, 260
inverting 727
jazz. *See* jazz articulations
key commands 260
kits 1291
MIDI import 89
moving 481, 726, 727
notes 725
order 725
overlapping 727
panel 191
percussion 705, 1282, 1283, 1291
pitch before duration 218
placement 725, 727
playback 506, 507, 683, 705–707, 728
playing technique-specific noteheads 705
position 481, 724–726
slurs 725, 727, 1158
spacing 481
stems 725
ties 726, 728, 1232
tremolos 705
tuplets 259
types 723
artificial harmonics 968
accidentals 971
changing 975
hiding 969
partials 970
pitch 970
playback 968–970
showing 969
styles 972, 975
assigning 63
expression maps to endpoints 531
flows to layouts 118, 168
instruments to endpoints 530
key commands 63
MIDI commands 63
notehead designs 946
notes to strings 947
page templates 558
percussion maps to endpoints 531
players to flows 118, 164
players to layouts 118, 167
voices to endpoints 530
atonal key signatures 913
note spelling 446
attacca 737

attachment lines 26, 437, 481
caesuras 325
crosshairs 484
dynamics 848
hiding 416
playing techniques 1066, 1068, 1072
text 1221
attachment points
chord symbol components 786
items 437, 481
lines 367–369, 1075, 1078
attack
articulations 723, 1233
dynamics 298, 828
playback 682
tremolos 388, 395, 397, 1266
attribute playback techniques 707
audio
buffer size 256, 257
device setup 58
dialog 100
exporting 99, 100
mixer 667, 668
outputs in mixer 526
panning 674
playback 518, 523
repeats 509
videos 184
volume 184, 667, 668, 673
warning 39
auditioning
chords 409
MIDI devices 252
notes 252, 408, 409
augmented 462
accidentals 719
chord symbols 307, 783
intervals 326, 446, 462, 463, 719, 986, 987
scales 460, 467
trills 326, 986, 987
author name 470
changing 475
auto-save 102, 103
date and time 103
deleting projects 102
disabling 104
interval 104
recovering projects 103
automation lanes. *See* MIDI CC editor. *See also* Key Editor
AutoPan 671, 675
auxiliary notes 989
notehead design 946
position 990
showing 990

B

backgrounds 52
chord symbols 798
colors 53
dynamics 834
erasing 798, 834, 883, 891, 1064, 1092, 1229, 1299
backgrounds *(continued)*
fingerings 883
gradients 53
lines 1092
pages 53
percussion legends 1299
playing techniques 1064
text 1092, 1229
backups 104
auto-save. *See* auto-save
location 105
number 104
backwards 417
moving bars 586, 589
navigation 310, 376, 381, 417
pitches 454, 455, 466
rhythms 454, 455, 466
balalaika. *See* fretted instruments
balance
mix. *See* mixer
bands 78
adding 71, 111
EQ 671
player order 107, 123
staff grouping 778
templates 71, 78
banjo. *See* fretted instruments
bar counts
multi-bar rests 744
bar graphs 662
bar numbers 742
alignment 747
alternative 753
appearance 742
barlines 746
brackets 753
changing 750, 751
clefs 747
colors 55
comments 470, 472, 474
counts 1128
default settings 742
deleting 751
enclosures 743
erased backgrounds 743
font 745
frequency 742
galley view 41
gaps 747
guide 745
hiding 742, 745, 749, 751
layout options 742
moving 481, 746, 747
multi-bar rests 744
multiple positions 746
paragraph styles 745
parentheses 753
pick-up bars 1253
position 746, 747, 1131
ranges 744, 1127. *See also* numbered bar regions
rehearsal marks 1097
repeat sections 753
returning to primary sequence 752

bar numbers *(continued)*
sequence changes 749
showing 742, 745, 751
signposts 426
staff-relative placement 746, 1131
subordinate 751
subsequent repeats 753
system-relative placement 748
time signatures 749
total. *See* counts
bar repeats 1120, 1264
bar numbers 744
brackets 1122, 1124
casting off 582
changing 412, 1121
changing number 1123
colors 55
consolidating 1152
counts 1122–1124
deleting 431
dynamics 1121
erased backgrounds 1120
filter 407
font style 1122
frame breaks 590
frequency 1123
grouping 1125
handles 410
highlights 1120, 1122
inputting 389, 390, 399
length 410
moving 437, 440
moving counts 481
multi-bar rests 1152
panel 390
parentheses 1122, 1124
phrase length 412, 1121
playback 412, 1121
popover 389
regions 1120
symbols 1125
system breaks 586
types 389
viewing options 1122
bar rests 1150
counts 1152
cues 679, 827, 1147
deleting 1146, 1149
hiding 1146, 1147, 1149–1151
inputting 236, 288
moving 1148
multi-bar rests 1152
showing 1147, 1150, 1151
slashes 1146
voices 1146, 1147, 1151
barbershop quartet. *See* project templates
barline joins 739, 740, 778
default 740
barline-attached lines. *See* lines
barlines 734
across staves 739–741
alignment 739
bar numbers 746
barlines *(continued)*
caesuras 325
changing 293, 294, 735–737
chord symbols 791, 798
copying 163
counts. *See* repeat counts
custom joins. *See* barline joins
dashed 735–737
default 736, 737
default settings 734
deleting 431, 740
double 735–737
dynamics 831, 832, 834
end barlines 737
fermatas 910
final. *See* final barlines
frame breaks 585
gaps 798, 834, 1064, 1092, 1229, 1299
grace notes 900
gradual tempo changes 1209
grand staff instruments 739, 740
hiding 271, 737, 798, 834, 1064, 1092, 1229, 1250, 1299
initial. *See* systemic barlines
inputting 287, 289, 290, 293, 294, 732
joins. *See* barline joins
key signatures 737, 914
length 739–741
moving 431
multi-bar rests 293
none 271, 737, 1250
notation options 734
open meter 1250
panel 290, 294
popover 288, 289, 293
rehearsal marks 1095
repeat. *See* repeat barlines
scale size 735, 736
short 735–737
signposts 293, 294, 426, 431
single 735–737
staff grouping 739–741, 778
system breaks 585, 737
systemic 738
thickness 735–737
tick 735–737
time signatures 741, 1261
triple 289
tuplets 1274
types 289, 735
vocal staves 739, 740
Baroque
appoggiaturas 897, 904
figured bass. *See* figured bass
ornaments 330, 977
trills 991, 993
barré 1062
adding 813
chord diagrams 806, 814
hiding 1065
inputting 352, 356, 358

bars 16, 729
alignment 569, 739, 1198
bar rests. *See* bar rests
beam grouping 26, 774
chord symbols 793
combining 431
deleting 288, 428, 729–731
deleting contents 731
display 515, 517
divisions 732
duration 729
expanding 290, 292, 428, 429
fixing number 582, 583, 587, 591
frame breaks 585, 589
gaps 1198
glissando lines 1001
going to 419
graphs 662
grouping. *See* bar repeats. *See also* multi-bar rests
half-bar 679, 774
height 559, 560, 577
inputting 287, 288, 290–292, 427
Insert mode 427
length 428, 729
moving 583, 585–587, 589, 590
multi-bar rests 1152
navigation 419
note grouping 26, 774, 1133
numbers 742
panel 290, 291
pick-up bars 1253
playback 503, 515
popover 288, 290
red 429, 430
repeat 1107, 1113, 1120
rests. *See* bar rests
rhythm slashes 1132, 1133
selecting 401, 403, 406
size 427, 428, 559, 569, 577, 579, 729, 1198
spacing 579, 580, 1149
splitting 585, 586, 589, 590, 732
system breaks 585, 586
timecodes 1105
tuplets 1274
upbeats. *See* pick-up bars
vibrato. *See* vibrato bar. *See also* guitar
width 569, 579, 580, 1149, 1198
Bars and Barlines panel 290, 291, 294
Bartók pizzicato. *See* playing techniques
base switches 687, 695
baseline
attachment points 786
chord symbols 783
instrument names 176
lyrics 929, 932
staff labels 176
text 371
bass clef. *See* clefs
bass drum. *See* unpitched percussion
bass guitar. *See* fretted instruments
bass notes
altered 303, 307
figured bass. *See* figured bass
bassoon. *See* instruments
beam corners 768
beam groups 25, 754, 755, 774
creating 755
default settings 679, 754
defining 754, 774
half-bar 754
notation options 754
pick-up bars 1253
resetting 758
selecting 401
stem directions 963
time signatures 755
beam lines
direction 769
gaps 770
number 769
thickness 758
beam slants 760
changing 761
grace notes 903
beaming 754, 755, 772
accidentals 719
angles 760, 761, 772
centered beams 762, 763
corners 768
cross-staff. *See* cross-staff beams
default settings 754
direction 759–761, 769
fanned 772
gaps 770
grace notes 903
grouping 754, 755, 774. *See also* beat groups
half-bar 754, 774
handles 761
hiding 966
inverting 759
large pitch ranges 903
lyrics 757
meter 774
multiple staves. *See* cross-staff beams
notation options 754
notes 755
optical cross-staff spacing 766
partial 769
placement 759, 764, 768
primary beams 768
resetting 758, 760, 764, 768
restating accidentals 719
rests 754, 755, 771, 772
secondary beams 768, 769
slants 760, 761, 903
slashes 1138
spacing 766
splitting 679, 754, 757, 774
staff-relative placement 759
stem direction 759, 763, 764, 766
stemlets. *See* stemlets
tablature 1201
thickness 758
ties 237
time signatures 755, 774
tuplets 754, 771, 774, 1275

beaming *(continued)*
unbeaming 757
vocal staves 757
beat groups 25, 754, 774
defining 774
numerators 1256
rhythm slashes 1133
specifying 271
ties 1232
time signatures 1256, 1257
beat units 1211
deleting beats 288
inputting beats 288
metronome marks 412, 1212
setting 283
tempo marks 282
tuplets 246
beats
deleting 288, 428, 729–731
display 515, 517
inputting 288, 290, 292, 427, 428
Insert mode 427, 428
per minute 1211
pick-up. *See* pick-up bars
popover 288
recording latency 256, 257
relative position 415
selecting 407
bend intervals 1012
handles 1015, 1017–1019
microtonal 1012
bends
guitar. *See* guitar bends. *See also* dives
jazz. *See* jazz articulations. *See also* jazz ornaments
vibrato. *See* vibrato bar
big band. *See* bands. *See also* jazz
bindings. *See* ties. *See also* laissez vibrer ties
birds eyes. *See* fermatas
bit depths 99, 100
black and white 553
black noteheads 940, 941
blank areas. *See* erased backgrounds
blank pages
deleting 602
blank staves
adding 121, 126, 133
after flows 564
hiding 562, 564
showing 562, 564
blog 69
blue selections 855, 1169
Blues guitar post-bends 1009
body
changing 1085
lines 1075, 1077, 1085
playing technique continuation lines 1069, 1071
bold text 371, 1221
bomb
dive. *See* dives
bongos. *See* unpitched percussion
booklets 548
duplex printing 549
printing 547, 548
borders 554, 1227
bar numbers 743
chord symbols 799
exporting 542
fingerings 877
harp pedaling 1040, 1041
lines 1091
padding 799, 1041, 1229
printing 538
shape 743, 1227
style 1227
tacets 592
text 1091, 1227
thickness 1040, 1091, 1228
Boston chord symbols 783
bottom zone. *See* lower zone
bowing. *See* playing techniques. *See also* slurs
boxes. *See* borders. *See also* frames
bpm 1211
changing 658, 1212
braces 776
hiding 780
secondary brackets 779, 781
showing 780
signposts 426
staff spacing 559, 560, 577
bracketed noteheads 953, 954, 1025
changing type 954
chords 953, 954, 957
curve 959
formatting 959
ghost notes 954
guitar bends 1006, 1008
handles 958
hiding 954
inputting 954
length 481, 958
moving 481, 958, 959
percussion 954
playback 954
shape 958, 959
showing 954
slurs 958
splitting 957
tablature 953, 954, 1006, 1011
tie chains 956
ties 958
ties on tablature 956, 1232
trills 989
vibrato bar dives and returns 1011
width 959
brackets 776
accidentals 713, 720, 971
arpeggio signs 994
bar numbers 753
bar repeats 1122, 1124, 1128, 1129
barlines 739, 740
capo chord symbols 142, 783
chord symbols. *See* parenthesized chord symbols
counts 1124, 1129, 1140
divisi 777, 778, 780, 781, 1075, 1199
dynamics 833
ensemble types 78, 778

brackets *(continued)*
figured bass 378, 861, 864
fingerings 262, 263, 879, 881
grouping 158, 777, 778, 1188
guitar bends 1006, 1008
harmonics 972
hiding 777, 780
hold lines 864
horizontal. *See* lines
instrument transpositions 1186
layouts 777
metronome marks 1206, 1207
moving 803, 958
noteheads. *See* bracketed noteheads
numbered bar regions 1128, 1129
pedal lines 1058
player groups 158, 740, 1188
playing techniques 1069
project templates 78
secondary 779, 781
showing 777, 780
signposts 426
size 802
slash regions 1140
staff labels 1186
staff spacing 559, 577
staves 777, 778, 1188
sub-brackets 779, 781
sub-sub-brackets 781
tablature 972, 1006, 1008, 1011
templates 78
tempo marks 1206, 1207
thickness 801
time signatures 271, 1254, 1256, 1259
tuplets 1276
vibrato bar dives and returns 1011
Brandt-Roemer chord symbols 783
brass band. *See* bands. *See also* project templates
brass instruments 127
adding 109, 111, 121, 126, 133
brackets 778, 1188
chord symbols 789
fingerings 871, 887
groups 158
horn branch indicators 888
player order 107, 123
playing techniques 355
project templates 78
system objects 1197
transposition 109, 133
Bravura music font 681
breaking
multi-bar rests 1152, 1154
notes 249
tie chains 249, 1241
breaks
frame 589
page 589
system 586
breath marks 905, 907
appearance 412
colors 55
deleting 431
breath marks *(continued)*
inputting 322–324
moving 437, 440, 481
multiple at same position 909
placement 908
position 908
types 412, 907
breves. *See* double whole notes
Brickwall Limiter 671, 675
Britten fermata. *See* fermatas
Broadcast WAVE format 100
broken beams 769
buffer
audio 256, 257
building ensembles 111, 127
bypassing 671, 675. *See also* muting

C

C clef. *See* clefs
cadenzas 271, 290, 292, 428, 429, 729, 1250
system dividers 1195
caesuras 905, 907
appearance 412
colors 55
deleting 431
gaps 908
inputting 322–325
moving 437, 481
multiple at same position 909
placement 908
position 325, 908
types 412, 907
calando. *See* gradual tempo changes. *See also* tempo marks
calculating
chord symbols 311, 312
harp pedaling 363
cancellation
accidentals 719, 721
double accidentals 721
candidate menus
playing techniques popover 352
tempo popover 280
cantabile. *See* dynamic modifiers
Capo Chord Symbol Definition dialog 147
Capo Definition dialog 144
capos 142
adding 143, 144
chord symbols 142, 146–148, 150, 783
defining 143–147, 149
deleting 145, 147
gaps 142, 783
hiding 147, 148, 150
italics 142, 783
notation staves 145, 146
parentheses 142, 783
partial 143, 144
tablature 142–145
caps 1067, 1077
arrows 1072, 1086
changing 1072, 1086
continuation 1077

caps *(continued)*
lines 1077
playing technique continuation lines 1069, 1072
cards
disclosure arrows 43
flows 117
layouts 114
players 107
timecodes 117
caret 205
activating 187, 209
advancing 210
chords 205, 240
color 54
deactivating 187, 209
extending 209, 225
grace notes 205, 239
inputting vs. editing 201
Insert mode 205, 226
lock to duration 205
moving 204, 210, 1272
multiple staves 209, 225
percussion kits 227
rhythmic grid 204
slash voices 205
slashes 223
tablature 205
types 205
voice indicator 205, 221, 838
casting off 581
bars per system 582, 587
copying to other layouts 596
flows 470, 565
locking 582–584
moving bars 583
note spacing 579, 580
resetting 585
staff spacing 559, 576, 577
systems per frame 583, 591
categories
ensembles 111, 114, 127
lines 367, 1075
noteheads 941, 945
templates 71, 78, 778
cautionary accidentals 719, 720
common practice 720
hiding 713, 720, 971
Modernist 719
parentheses 719, 720
showing 713, 720, 971
tie chains 713, 971, 1238
trills 984
cautionary clefs 816
cautionary fingering 879
hiding 879
parentheses 879
showing 879
cautionary key signatures 915
cautionary time signatures 1252
CC64
pedal lines 92, 256, 258
cello. *See* instruments
centered beams 762
creating 763
removing 764
centered text
bar numbers 746
hairpins 841
centimeters
unit of measurement 51
chains
frames 613
ties 1232
change labels
instruments 130–132
channel change actions 526, 531, 695
channels 667, 669, 670
bypassing inserts 675
changing 530
controls 669, 671
endpoints 525
expression maps 526, 531, 695. *See also* channel change actions
height 673
hiding 672
importing 92
inserts 671, 675, 676
instruments 530, 669, 670
meter 669
MIDI 92, 669, 670
mixer 667–671
muting 507
panning 674
percussion maps 526, 531
playback 525
plug-ins 526
reverb 676
scrolling 672
setup 526
showing 672
soloing 507
strips 671
volume 673
character styles
missing fonts 74
cherry stalks. *See* split stems
choir templates 71, 78
staff grouping 778
Choose Chord Diagram dialog 812
choral
lyrics 919
playing techniques 355
verse numbers 938
chord brackets. *See* bracketed noteheads. *See also* parenthesized chord symbols
chord diagrams 782, 805
barré 806, 814
changing 812
colors 812, 814
components 806
copying shapes 812
custom 813
dots 813, 814
editing 813
fingerings 806, 810, 811, 813, 814

chord diagrams *(continued)*
formatting 813, 814
fret numbers 810, 811, 813, 814
gaps 809
grid 809, 810
hiding 806, 808, 809
inputting 806, 808
nut 806
omitted strings 806, 814
open strings 806, 814
resetting 811, 814
rows 809–811
shapes 812–814
showing 806, 808, 809
size 809
symbols. *See* chord symbols
thumb 810, 811, 814
tuning 138, 140, 809, 812
chord input 242
activating 187, 240
arpeggio signs 332
caret 205
exploding 225
multiple staves 225
register selection 214
tablature 232, 240
chord symbol components 783
appearance 783
attachment points 786
custom 786
handles 784, 786
inputting 305
popover 305
types 783
chord symbol regions 793
handles 410, 793
hiding 789, 790
highlights 794
inputting 309, 311
length 410
moving 437, 440
popover 309
showing 789, 790
chord symbols 240, 782
accidentals 142, 147, 149, 305, 783, 794
added notes 307
alignment 783, 788, 791
alterations 783
altered bass notes 303
appearance 783, 784, 786
backgrounds 798
barlines 791, 798
brackets. *See* parenthesized chord symbols
capos 142, 147, 148, 150, 783
changing 412, 783
colors 55, 786
components. *See* chord symbol components
copying 404, 788–790
crosshairs 484
custom 784, 786
default settings 783
deleting 431, 789
diagrams. *See* chord diagrams
chord symbols *(continued)*
dialog 784, 786
engraving options 783
enharmonic spelling 142, 147–150, 783, 794, 796
erased backgrounds 783, 798, 799
figured bass 377, 378
filter 407
gaps 142, 783
generating 311, 312
global 782
hiding 311, 789, 790, 793, 796, 808
highlights 794
inputting 303, 305, 310–312, 789
instruments 303, 789, 790
intervals 307
inversions 303
italics 142, 783
layouts 790
local 782
main 142
MIDI input 303
MIDI navigation 63
modal 308, 795
moving 437, 481, 791, 792
MusicXML import 803
navigation during input 310
no chord 308
note spacing 791
omissions 307
padding 783, 799, 803
parentheses. *See* parenthesized chord symbols
pitch 169
placement 792
playback 488, 498–500
players 303, 789, 790
polychords 303, 308
popover 305
position 783, 788, 791
quality 303, 783, 796
regions. *See* chord symbol regions
roots 303, 306, 783, 796
selecting 401, 404, 406, 407
showing 303, 311, 789, 790, 793, 796, 808
signposts 426, 782, 793
size 413, 802
slash regions 789, 793, 1132
spacing 791
spelling 142, 147–150, 783, 794, 796
staff-relative placement 792
staves 303, 789, 790
suspensions 307
systems 790
track. *See* chords track
transposing 142, 145–150, 169, 445, 446, 782, 794
transposing instruments 142, 169, 794, 796
types 305, 783
viewing options 794
voicing 303, 500
Chord Symbols Options dialog 783
chords 240
accidentals 715–717
arpeggio signs 997
auditioning 409

chords *(continued)*
bracketed noteheads 953, 954, 957
brackets 799
building 247, 464
caret 205, 210, 240
collision avoidance 715, 717
dense 715
exploding 225, 441
figured bass 377, 378, 858, 869
fingerings 884
guitar bends 1006, 1009
inputting 187, 225, 240, 247, 464
inverting 453
lines 225, 332–335, 368, 369, 441
moving 454, 456
parentheses 799
pitch mappings 458
playback 498, 499, 503, 506, 509
post-bends 1009
register selection 214
reversing 454. *See also* retrograde
rolled. *See* arpeggio signs
rotating 456
scale mapping 460
selecting 401
stem directions 962. *See also* voices
tablature 214, 232
ties 237, 1237
track. *See* chords track
transformations 453
velocity 643. *See also* Velocity editor
vibrato bar dives and returns 1011
voices 221, 1303
chords track 498
hiding 500
showing 500
Chorus 671, 675
chorus lyrics 919
changing lines to 936
changing lyrics to 920
popover 375
chromatic glissando 1000
playback 1004
circle
bar number enclosures 743
chord symbols 783
fingerings 877
hairpins. *See* niente
harmonics 972, 974
noteheads 941, 946, 1283, 1286, 1287
pitches 456, 457, 466
playing techniques 355, 1062
rhythms 456, 457, 466
string indicators 891
tapping 1022
clarinet. *See* instruments
clash cymbals. *See* unpitched percussion
Classical
ornaments 330
trills 991, 993
classical guitar. *See* fretted instruments
clefs 816
bar numbers 747
cautionary 816
colors 55
deleting 431
filter 407
gaps 816
grace notes 817
hiding 317, 318, 817, 818
Indian drum 318, 1301
inputting 314–318
instruments 109
key signatures 914
layouts 817
moving 437, 440, 817
multi-bar rests 1153, 1154
octave indicators 315, 819, 820
panel 318
popover 314, 315, 317
position 817
restorative 317, 318
showing 817, 818
signposts 426, 817
ties 1239
tokens 608
transposing instruments 109
transposition 315, 817, 819, 820
types 315
Clefs panel 316, 318
click 515
count-in 253
disabling 503
enabling 503
MIDI recording 253
mixer 667, 668
playback 496, 503
sound 496
volume 673
clipping 673
closing. *See* opening
CMYK processing 553
coda 1113
gap 1117, 1198
hiding 1116
indent 1117, 1198
inputting 394, 395
mid-system gap 1113, 1117
multiple 1114
sections 1113
showing 1116
codec 180
codes 607
time 1103
col legno. *See* playing techniques
collision avoidance
accidentals 715–717
articulations 727
bar numbers 747
barlines 798, 834
chord symbols 798
clefs 747
dynamics 829, 831, 834
flow headings 570

collision avoidance *(continued)*
galley view 579
margins 570
notehead brackets 958
playing techniques 1067
slurs 1159, 1167
staves 559, 560, 577, 579
text 1226
ties 1232, 1245
titles 570
colon
dynamics 296, 837
tuplets 1279
colored regions 495, 794, 1122, 1132, 1134
Dynamics editor 645
exporting 554
hiding 416
MIDI CC editor 651
MIDI Pitch Bend editor 650
percussion editor 631
piano roll editor 630
Playing Techniques editor 641
printing 554
Tempo editor 656, 657
tempo track 496
Transform tool 663
colors 52
background 53, 55
bar numbers 55
bar repeats 55, 1122
breath marks 55
caesuras 55
caret 54
chord diagrams 812, 814
chord symbols 55, 786, 794
clefs 55
comments 55
dark theme 52
dynamics 55
exporting 543
fermatas 55
graphics 543, 553
holds 55
instrument names 176
instruments 495, 630, 631
inverting 55
light theme 52
lines 55
lyrics 55
markers 55
monochrome 553
muted 509
note ranges 54, 951
noteheads 55, 945
notes 54, 55, 509, 1304
ornaments 55
pages 53, 55
pedal lines 55
piano roll editor 630, 631
Play mode 495
playhead 54
playing techniques 55
rehearsal marks 55
colors *(continued)*
resetting 53–55
rests 55, 1148
rhythmic grid 54
slash regions 1132, 1134
slurs 55
staff labels 176
tablature 54, 55, 951, 1200, 1202
tempo marks 55
text 55, 371
tracks 495, 630, 631
trills 55
tuplets 55
voices 54, 495, 630, 631, 1303, 1304
windows 52
columns
accidentals 715, 716
figured bass 858
lines 1079
markers 384
missing fonts 74
videos 384
voices 1305–1307
combinations
part layouts 167
playback techniques 693, 697, 705
tremolos 705
combined dynamics. *See* dynamics
combining. *See* consolidation
comma
breath marks. *See* breath marks
commands
jump bar 65, 67
key commands 59, 63
MIDI 59, 63
Comment dialog 471
comments 426, 470, 953
adding 474
authors 470, 475
bar numbers 472, 474
changing 475
colors 55
deleting 431, 472
dialog 471
exporting 472, 476, 542, 554
hiding 476
initials 470, 475
instruments 472
list 472
panel 472
printing 476, 538, 554
replying 474
showing 476
common practice
accidental duration rule 719
common practice accidental duration rule 720
common time. *See* time signatures
components
articulations 724
chord diagrams 806
chord symbols 305, 783, 786
lines 1077

components *(continued)*
playing technique continuation lines 1069
tempo marks 1206
composer 69, 75
adding 75
first pages 601, 895
flow headings 603–605
tokens 609
compound figured bass intervals 377, 378, 869
compound time signatures 1250
beam grouping 754, 1133
inputting 271, 273–275
note grouping 774, 1133
rhythm slashes 1133
compressed MusicXML 84
Compressor 671, 675
con sordino. *See* playing techniques
concert band. *See* bands. *See also* project templates
concert pitch 170
clefs 315, 817, 819
exporting 542
input pitch 218
instrument transpositions 1185
layouts 165, 169, 538, 542, 608, 895
printing 538
staff labels 1180, 1185
status display 39
tokens 608, 895
viewing 169
concertos
cadenzas 428, 429, 1250
movements. *See* flows
soloists 124
condensing 441, 559, 560, 562, 595, 1199
divisi 1190
extra staves 1193
fonts 1190
ossia staves 1194
paragraph styles 1190
percussion. *See* percussion kits
signposts 426
staff labels 1190
conditions
expression maps 689, 697
conductor score. *See* condensing. *See also* layouts
configurations
accidentals 716, 719, 912
endpoints 526, 528–530
Key Editor 627, 664, 665
key signatures 912
playback 58, 518
connecting. *See* linking
consolidation 595
bar repeats 1152
bars 431
flows 79
notes 242, 442, 1305
part layouts 167
players 159, 167, 595
rests 679, 1146, 1147, 1151, 1152
rhythm dots 950
staff labels 154, 155, 1189, 1190
staves. *See* condensing
consolidation *(continued)*
stems 150, 1300, 1301, 1303
voices 150, 442, 595, 1300, 1301, 1303, 1305–1308
constant points 653, 656
inputting 646, 652, 657
contents
bars 731
front matter 895
lines 1069, 1077
playing techniques 1069
table 895
tempo marks 1206, 1209, 1211, 1214
continuation caps 1077
continuation lines 1067, 1075
angles 1046
caps 1072
duration 1068
dynamics 828, 832, 842, 844, 845
figured bass 861
hiding 1216
inputting 352, 356, 358
pedal lines 1044, 1046, 1053, 1056, 1057, 1059, 1060
playing techniques 1067, 1070–1073
slurs across breaks 1159
tempo marks 1209, 1215, 1216
thickness 1057, 1218
continuation signs 1058
lines 1077
parentheses 1058
playing technique continuation lines 1069
text 1059
continuous
bar counts 1123, 1129
beams across staves 764
controller 695
hairpins 845
rehearsal marks 1096
view 41, 50, 619, 630, 631
contrabass. *See* instruments
contracting. *See* expanding
contrapuntal. *See* counterpoint
control change actions 688, 695
control points
handles 1160, 1177, 1247
slurs 1171, 1172
ties 1242, 1243, 1247
controllers
expression maps 682
MIDI. *See* MIDI controllers
conventions
accidentals 712, 719, 912, 918
arpeggio signs 997
breath marks 908
caesuras 908
cues 827
dynamics 829
ensembles 78
fermatas 908
fingerings 871
grace notes 898
harp pedaling 1042
key signatures 912, 914

conventions *(continued)*
lyrics 925
ornaments 978
pauses 907
pedal lines 1050
playing techniques 1066
rehearsal marks 1095
rests 1144
tempo marks 1208
tremolos 1265
trills 978
voices 1306
converting
grace notes into normal notes 900
layouts to graphics files 542
notes into grace notes 899
notes into tuplets 1273
PDF 542
tuplets into normal notes 1273
copies
printing multiple 538
copying 431, 433–435
articulations 724
barlines 163
beams 768
chord diagram shapes 812
Chord mode 242
chord symbols 404, 788–790
dynamics 433, 436, 628, 649, 855
exploding 441
flows 79, 163
frames 599, 601
Insert mode 427
instruments 122
lyrics 922
MIDI 436, 628, 655
notes 433–435, 637, 724, 768
page formatting 597
page templates 599, 601
part formatting 596
pitches 457, 458, 467
players 122
playing techniques 1070
points 628
properties 599
reducing 441
slurs 436, 724
system objects 404, 1197
tempo marks 433, 628
tremolos 768
copyright 75
adding 75
first pages 601
tokens 609
cor anglais. *See* instruments
corners
beaming 768
crop marks 554
count-in
duration 253
metronome click 253
counterpart layout 43
counterpoint 236
bar rests 236, 1151
MIDI import 89
MIDI recording 252, 253
voices 221, 1303
counts 1122
bar numbers 744, 753, 1253
bar repeats 1122–1124
barlines 1118
bars 400, 1122, 1127–1129, 1138
frames 1103
hiding 1118, 1124, 1129, 1140
lyrics 931
moving 481, 1118, 1131, 1140
multi-bar rests 1152
numbered bar regions 400, 1128, 1129
page numbers 610
pick-up bars 1253
placement 1131, 1140
ranges 744, 1128, 1129
repeats 510, 753, 1107, 1118
rhythm slashes 1138–1140
staff-relative placement 1131, 1140
timecodes 1103
courtesy accidentals. *See* cautionary accidentals
cowbell. *See* unpitched percussion. *See also* playing technique-specific noteheads
crash cymbals. *See* unpitched percussion
creating. *See* inputting
crescendo. *See* gradual dynamics
crop marks 554
exporting 542
printing 538
cross noteheads 942, 946
dead notes 1025
percussion 1283, 1286, 1287
cross stick. *See* unpitched percussion. *See also* playing technique-specific noteheads
cross-staff
arpeggio signs 332, 333
beams 764, 766, 768
lines 368, 369
resetting 768
slurs 260, 410, 437, 440, 1159, 1166
spacing 766
stems 764, 768
ties 237, 1239
tremolos 764, 768
cross-voice
arpeggio signs 332, 333
lines 368, 369
slurs 260, 410, 437, 440, 1166
ties 237, 1239
crosshairs 484
crotchets. *See* quarter notes
crushed notes. *See* grace notes
Cubase
expression maps 682, 699
instrument names 1181
staff labels 1181
cue labels
moving 481
staff-relative placement 414

cues 827
bar rests 679, 1147
deleting 431
moving 440
rests 679
signposts 426
spacing 580
staves 574
cup mute. *See* playing techniques
curlew fermata. *See* fermatas
curly quotes 610
cursor
caret 205
chord symbols 310
figured bass 381
fingerings 262
lyrics 376, 931
text 607
curvature direction
grace notes 1157
guitar bends 414
guitar pre-bends 1013
notehead brackets 958, 959
slurs 1157, 1164, 1165, 1177
ties 1237, 1245
curved arpeggio signs 994
duration 999
inputting 328
playback 998, 999
popover 328
custom
barline joins 740
chord diagrams 813
chord symbols 783, 784, 786
endpoint configurations 528
ensembles 111, 127
key commands 59, 63, 67
layouts 118
markers 383, 1101
note sizes 413
page size 550
paper size 550
percussion techniques 1283, 1285–1287
playback templates 518, 520, 523
player order 123
repeat endings 1110
repeat markers 1115
score layouts. *See* layouts
staff order 123
staff size 575
tempo text 1209
trill speeds 992
tuning 138, 140, 141, 806, 809
Custom Centered Beam dialog 763
custom notehead sets
percussion 1283, 1285–1287
custom playing techniques
percussion 1283, 1285–1287
playback 706
custom score layouts. *See* layouts
Custom Staff Size dialog 575
custom text 1220
dynamics 839
instrument changes 132
markers 383, 1101
percussion legends 1298
repeat endings 1110
repeat markers 1115
repeats 1118
cut common time. *See* time signatures
cutting
bars 729–731
beats 428, 729
notes 249
selections 433, 470, 729–731
slash regions 1137
tie chains 249, 1241

D

da capo
al coda 1113
al fine 1113
al segno 1113
hiding 1116
inputting 394, 395
showing 1116
word wrapping 1115
dal segno 1113
hiding 1116
showing 1116
damping. *See* playing techniques
dangling ties. *See* laissez vibrer ties
dark theme 52, 55
dashed
barlines 271, 736, 737, 1250. *See also* aggregate time signatures
figured bass 861
guitar bend hold lines 1013
hairpins 844
jazz articulations 1031
lines. *See* dashed lines
lyrics 374, 376, 934
octave lines 822
pedal continuation lines 1057
pedal lines 1056
slurs 1161–1163
staff labels 1186
string indicator lines 891, 1068
tempo marks 1215–1217
ties 1234–1236
vibrato bar lines 347, 348, 1021
dashed lines 481
attachment 437, 481
between staves 421
crosshairs 484
lines 367, 1075
octave lines 822
tempo marks 1215, 1216
data
expression maps 683
library 677

date and time
annotations 554
auto-saved projects 103
comments 470
exporting 542
language 57
printing 538
tokens 57, 611
deactivating
caret 209
chord input 240
Insert mode 226
mouse input 219
muted tracks 508, 667, 668
note input 211, 214
player sorting 123
soloed tracks 508, 667, 668
dead notes 1025
decimal places
metronome marks 285, 286, 1212
decorations. *See* ornaments
decrescendo. *See* gradual dynamics
dedications 75, 895
tokens 609
default flow headings 600, 603
default page templates 600, 601
composer 895
lyricist 895
title 895
tokens 895
default playback templates 519
default settings 20, 29, 58, 615, 677, 679
accidentals 218
articulations 218
barlines 736, 737
beam grouping 679, 758
chord symbols 783
dialogs 29
dynamics 436
file names 545
flow headings 603
flows 679
hand tool 41
instrument names 57, 175, 176, 178
key commands 28, 59, 63
layouts 171, 585, 677
library 677
marquee tool 41
MIDI 436
mouse input 202, 203
note grouping 679
note input options 218
note spacing 580
overlapping notes 679
playback 518, 523, 673
playing techniques 1067
project templates 78
resetting 677, 679
rhythm dots 218
selection tools 41
slurs 436
staff grouping 778
staff labels 57, 175, 176, 178
default settings *(continued)*
staff spacing 559, 577
tablature strings 211, 214
text 1226
voice order 679
volume 673
delay
glissando line playback 1004
inserts 671, 675
deleting 431, 477
accidentals 712
articulations 724
auto-saved projects 102, 103
bar number changes 751
barlines 740
bars 288, 428, 729–731
beams 757
beats 288, 428, 729, 731
borders 1227
brackets 713, 720, 800, 801, 833, 861, 864, 954
capos 145, 147
centered beams 764
chord symbols 789
comments 472
counts 1118
duplicate notes 441
dynamics 629
editors 627
effects 676
empty pages 27
endpoints 528, 530
fermatas 909
files 69
fingering slides 886
fingerings 878
flow headings 567
flow numbers 604, 605
flows 165, 168
frame breaks 585, 592
frames 567
gaps between notes 248
grace notes 900
groups from percussion kits 156
guitar post-bends 1015
guitar pre-bends 1015
guitar techniques 1027
indents 1198
Insert mode 427
inserts 676
instrument filters 426
instrument names 1181
instrument transpositions 176, 1185
instruments 125, 137, 158
jazz articulations 1032
jump bar aliases 68
key commands 64, 65
Key Editor configurations 665
layouts 171
markers 384
MIDI points 629
niente markings 852
notehead brackets 954
notes 428, 638, 729, 949, 952

deleting *(continued)*
overlapping notes 248
page template overrides 602
pages 602
parentheses 713, 720, 800, 801, 833, 861, 864, 954
pedal level changes 1050
pedal lines 1050
pick-up bars 428
pitch mappings 459
playback overrides 640
playback techniques 699, 707
players 125, 161, 164, 167
projects 69
reducing 441
rests 248, 729, 1149, 1150
retakes 1050
rhythm dots 949, 950, 952
rhythmic feel change 515
scoops 1027
staff labels 1181
staves 562
stem direction changes 965
stop positions 430
string indicators 892
strings 138
system breaks 585, 589
system indents 1198
tapping 1027
templates 665
tempo marks 629
ties 774, 1241
time 427, 428, 729–731
titles 567
tre corde 1060
tremolos 1268
trill intervals 988
tuplets 1273
unison notes 441
velocity changes 644
videos 184
voices 1309
delta 660, 661, 663
demo projects 69
denominators
styles 1256, 1258
time signatures 1249
dense chords
accidental stacking 715
depressed keys 197
depth
audio 674
nested slurs 1167
nested tuplets 1271
deselecting. *See* selecting
design
arrows 1071, 1072, 1075, 1086
fingerings 877
grace note slashes 901
lines 1071, 1072, 1075, 1085, 1086
noteheads 941, 945, 946
slurs 1161, 1163
time signatures 1262
designation
strings. *See* string indicators
destination
exporting files 544
instruments 827
notes 458–460, 467, 885
détaché. *See* playing techniques. *See also* articulations
detecting
grace notes 94
inversions 312
strings 366
tuplets 94
detuned fretted instruments 142, 145, 146
devices
audio 58, 256, 257
diagonal
accidental stacking 715
chord symbols 783, 797
lines 368, 772, 1000, 1028
diagrams
chords. *See* chord diagrams
harp pedaling. *See* harp pedaling. *See also* harp pedal diagrams
dialogs 29
diamond noteheads 942, 943, 946, 1062
accidentals 971
harmonics 969, 972, 974, 975
percussion 1283, 1286, 1287
diddle 211, 247, 1264, 1271
dimensions
page size 550
paper size 550
diminished. *See* augmented. *See also* intervals
diminuendo. *See* gradual dynamics
dips 1021
inputting 346, 347
intervals 1026
moving 481
popover 328
direction
arpeggio signs 994, 995
audio. *See* panning
beams 759, 760, 769
fanned beams 772
glissando lines 947
grace notes 899
gradual dynamics 842, 849, 850
guitar bends 414
guitar pre-bends 1013
hairpins 842, 849, 850
lines 1087
panning 674
paper orientation 550
partial beams 769
playback techniques 707
rhythm slashes 1135
slur curvature 1164, 1165
stems 961, 963–965
string shift indicators 889, 947
tie curvature 1237
transposing 445, 446
disabling. *See* enabling. *See also* deactivating

disclosure arrows 43
Expression Maps dialog 683
Properties panel 39
disconnecting. *See* unlinking
display options 30, 41
date 611
frames 555, 613
image resolution 552
Key Editor 619
language 56
layouts 34
music area 35, 42, 50
pages 555
panels 38, 44
percussion editor 631
piano roll 619, 630
playback 517
print preview 37
project window 34
tabs 45
time 33, 517, 611
transport 33
zones 38
distance
bar numbers 747
beams 771, 772
braces 779
brackets 779, 781
breath marks 908
chord diagrams 809
fermatas 908
flow headings 571
margins 557, 570–572
noteheads 766
page edges 557, 572
staff labels 1182
staves. *See* staff spacing
stems 766
system indents 1182, 1198
text borders 1229
Distortion 671, 675
distribution
bars per system 582
beats in bars 774
dynamics 844
staves per frame 560
systems per frame 583
values 659
velocity 659
dives 1006, 1011, 1021
handles 1017, 1019
inputting 340, 341, 343, 344
moving 481
popover 328
pre-dives. *See* guitar pre-bends
vibrato bar. *See* vibrato bar. *See also* guitar bends
dividers. *See* system dividers
dividing. *See* splitting
divisi 595, 1199
brackets 777, 778, 780, 781, 1075, 1199
condensing 595, 1190, 1199
hiding empty staves 562, 563
hiding staff labels 1181
divisi *(continued)*
lengthening 437, 440
moving 437, 440
playback 506, 507, 530
shortening 437, 440
signposts 426
staff labels 1181, 1190
staff size 574
staff spacing 560
staves 562, 563
DJ-EQ 671, 675
djembe. *See* unpitched percussion
doits. *See* jazz articulations
dolce. *See* dynamic modifiers
dorian
chord symbols 308, 467, 795
scales 460
DoricoBeep 488, 496
sound 496
dots
barlines. *See* repeat barlines
chord diagrams 805, 806, 813, 814
guitar tapping 1022
Keyboard panel 197
rhythm. *See* rhythm dots. *See also* dotted notes
dotted
beat units 283
dynamics 828
hairpins 844
lines. *See* dotted lines
noteheads 944
notes. *See* dotted notes
octave lines 822
rests 187, 679
slurs 1161–1163
tempo marks 1215, 1216
ties 1234–1236
tremolos 395, 397
dotted lines 481
attachment 437, 481
crosshairs 484
lines 1075
octave lines 822
stop positions 430
tempo marks 1215, 1216
dotted notes 219, 774
consolidation 950, 1305
double 219
forcing 250
inputting 187, 219
moving dots 950
note grouping 25, 774, 1133
rhythm slashes 1133
swing playback 512
tempo equations 1218
tremolos 395, 397
triple 219
voices 1305
double 618
accidentals 446, 449, 450, 452, 721
barlines 289, 293, 294, 735–737
cadence. *See* ornaments
dotted notes 25, 219, 774

double *(continued)*
note durations 248
octaves 462
slashes 1194, 1264
stems 717, 1303. *See also* voices
values 618
whole notes 16, 191, 211, 214, 221, 225–227, 232, 240, 247–249
doubling instruments 120
adding 133
inputting notes 211, 214
instrument changes 130–132
labels 1187
moving 137
showing staves 50
down arpeggio signs. *See* arpeggio signs
down bow. *See* playing techniques
down-stem voices. *See* voices
downloads 69
dpi 552
draft staves. *See* sketch staves
dragging 41, 420, 627. *See also* drawing
drags. *See* grace notes
drawing 41, 420, 621, 627
crosshairs 484
dynamics 646
marquee selections 627, 664
MIDI 652
notes 632. *See also* note input
tempo 496, 656
velocity 643
drop frame timecodes 1103
drops. *See* jazz articulations
drum editor. *See* percussion editor
drum kits. *See* percussion kits. *See also* drum sets
Drum Pads panel 200
key commands 44
drum rolls. *See* tremolos
drum sets 150, 1282, 1289
caret 227
defining kits as 154
exporting 1290
filtering instruments 150
importing 1290
inputting notes 227, 633
laissez vibrer ties 1240
naming 150
note input 230
setting up 150, 230
stem direction 154
voices 154, 1300
dry
reverb 676
DualFilter 671, 675
duplets. *See* tuplets
duplex printing 538, 549
booklets 548
duplicating
copying. *See* copying
dynamics 433, 649
exploding 441
expression maps 696
flows 163
duplicating *(continued)*
items 433–435
MIDI 628, 655
notes 433–435, 637
percussion maps 703
pitches 457, 458, 467
playback templates 523
players 122
playing techniques 1070
points 628, 649, 655
rehearsal marks 1197
repeat endings 1197
switches 697
tempo marks 433, 628, 1197
duration 16, 410, 1068, 1144
accidentals 719, 720
arpeggio signs 999
articulations 723, 728
audio 99, 100
bars 26, 428, 729
changing 247, 248, 250, 410
fermatas 412
figured bass 410, 861, 863, 867
flows 610, 729–731
forcing 250
grace notes 904
horizontal lines 1083
jazz articulations 1030
lines. *See* duration lines
locking 448
notated 639
notes 26, 191, 247–249, 632, 633, 635, 639
pedal lines 1061
percussion 633
played 639
playing techniques 352, 356, 358, 410, 1068, 1073
repeat endings 1109
rests 247, 250, 1144
slurs 1178
terminology 16
vibrato bar lines 1021
duration before pitch note input 211
duration lines 1067, 1075
appearance 1071
figured bass 861–863, 867
handles 1066, 1068
hiding 410, 1068, 1070, 1071
inputting 352, 356, 358
playing techniques 1068, 1072
showing 410, 1068, 1070, 1071
string indicators 364, 365, 891, 1067
dyads. *See* chords. *See also* chord symbols
dynamic glyphs 828
dynamic levels 296, 298, 299, 302, 835
changing 647, 835
decreasing 835
increasing 835
playback 645
dynamic modifiers 828, 839, 1204, 1215
appearance 840
centered 841
hairpins 841
inputting 296, 298, 299, 302, 839

dynamic modifiers *(continued)*
poco a poco 847
showing 836
subito 840
dynamics 828
alignment 830–832, 853–856
appearance 837
backgrounds 834
bar repeats 1121
barlines 831, 832, 834
brackets 833
changing 412, 647, 835
colors 55
combined 828
continuation lines 828, 842
continuous hairpins 845
conventions 829
copying 433, 436, 628, 649, 855
crescendo. *See* gradual dynamics
crosshairs 484
deleting 431
diminuendo. *See* gradual dynamics
editing 835
editor. *See* Dynamics editor. *See also* Velocity editor
endpoint positions 832
erased backgrounds 834, 835
expression maps 690
expressive text. *See* dynamic modifiers
filters 407
flared hairpins 846, 847
force 828
gradual. *See* gradual dynamics
grand staff instruments 299, 302, 838
grouping 853, 854
hairpins. *See* gradual dynamics
handles 410, 842, 843, 849
hiding 836, 837, 840
humanize 645
hyphens 296, 837, 844
immediate 828
inputting 296, 298, 299, 302, 646, 649
intensity 412, 647, 835
length 410, 481, 647, 843
levels. *See* dynamic levels
linking 436, 855, 856
messa di voce. *See* messa di voce
modifiers. *See* dynamic modifiers
moving 437, 440, 454, 456, 481, 647, 829, 831, 840, 843, 849, 853–856
muting in playback 408, 509
niente. *See* niente
non-sustaining instruments 857
overriding 646, 649
padding 835
panel 302
parentheses 833
percussion kits 1293
placement 829
playback 408, 506, 507, 509, 645, 651, 690, 706, 707, 838, 857
poco a poco 841, 847
popover 296, 299
dynamics *(continued)*
position 829, 830
repeats 509
reversing 454. *See also* retrograde
rfz 837
rotating 456
selecting 402, 407
separators 296, 837
sfz 837
showing 836
signposts 426, 836
size 413
spacing 848
staff-relative placement 414
subito 840
sustaining instruments 857
swells. *See* messa di voce
tempo marks 1209
text 844
ties 299, 302, 437, 829
tracks. *See* Dynamics editor. *See also* Velocity editor
types 296, 828
ungrouping 854
unlinking 436, 856
velocity 642, 643, 835
voice-specific 299, 302, 645, 646, 838
volume 835, 857
Dynamics editor 296, 642, 645, 828, 855
adding 627
closing 627
copying points 628
deleting points 629
height 625
hiding 645
inputting points 646
moving points 647
selecting points 627
showing 645
dynamics lanes. *See* Dynamics editor
Dynamics panel 298, 302

E

East Asian elision slurs 938, 939
edges
frames 603, 605
margins 570
pages 570
Edit Chord Diagram dialog 814
Edit Chord Symbol Appearance dialog 784
Edit Chord Symbol Component dialog 786
Edit Endpoint Configurations dialog 530
Edit Flow Heading dialog 605
Edit Instrument Names dialog 176
Edit Percussion Kit dialog 150
Edit Playback Techniques dialog 707
editing 201, 409, 412
area 150, 1293
flow headings 604, 605
handles 483
inputting vs. editing 201
items 412, 483, 615

editing *(continued)*
lyric text 930–932
mouse input 202, 203
moving. *See* moving
note durations 248, 410
notes 187
rhythmic grid 204
editorial
accidentals 714
chord symbols 799–801
dynamics 833
figured bass 861, 864
notes 953, 954
slurs 1161
ties 1234
editors 619
adding 627, 665
closing 627
configurations 664, 665
drum. *See* percussion editor
dynamics. *See* Dynamics editor
histogram. *See* Histogram tool
Key Editor. *See* Key Editor
MIDI CC. *See* MIDI CC editor. *See also* MIDI Pitch Bend editor
percussion. *See* percussion editor
piano roll. *See* piano roll editor
pitch bends. *See* MIDI Pitch Bend editor. *See also* MIDI CC editor
playing techniques. *See* Playing Techniques editor
saving 664, 665
scrolling 626
templates 664, 665
tempo. *See* Tempo editor
text 371
velocity. *See* Velocity editor
EDO 918
effects channels 669–671
mixer 667, 668
reverb 676
volume 673
eighth notes 16, 191, 211, 214, 225, 226, 247, 248
beaming 755
beats 288
chords 240
grace notes 239
metronome marks 282
percussion 227, 633
playback 690
rests 235, 1144
splitting notes 249
swing playback 282, 512
tablature 232
tempo equations 1218
tremolos 395, 397, 1264
tuplets 243, 246
voices 221
elbowed beams. *See* centered beams
electric guitar. *See* fretted instruments
elision slurs 938
inputting 374, 376
size 938
width 925
empty bars
deleting 731
inputting 290, 291
multi-bar rests 1152
rests. *See* bar rests
showing 1152
empty pages
deleting 27, 602, 1221
empty staves 562
after flows 564
hiding 562, 563, 577
showing 562, 563, 577
system dividers 1195
tacets 592
empty voices 1309
enabling 209
auto-save 104
channel effects 671, 675
chord symbol playback 498, 499
click during playback 503
dynamics linking 436
EQ 671
independent voice playback 506, 507
inserts 675
instrument changes 130
instrument filters 424
MIDI copying 436
MIDI devices 258
MIDI import 88
MIDI thru 252
partial harp pedaling 1042
plug-ins 505
slur collision avoidance 1159
slurs linking 436
swing playback 282, 513, 515
system track 406
text collision avoidance 1226
tracks 88
VST instruments 505
enclosures
bar numbers 743
fingerings 877
lines 1091
rehearsal marks 1095
text 1091, 1227, 1229
end barlines 737
end repeat barlines 289, 735, 736
counts. *See* repeat counts
inputting 288, 290, 293, 294
playthroughs 509, 510, 1118
repeat endings 1107
endings
additional 391, 393
arpeggio signs 994–996
playthroughs 1107
repeat. *See* repeat endings
endpoint positions
arpeggio signs 997
dynamics 832
lines 1078, 1082, 1084
octave lines 823, 824
pedal lines 1051
repeat endings 1111

endpoint positions *(continued)*
slurs 727, 1156–1159, 1171–1173
staff lines 1157
ties 1242, 1245
trills 979
tuplet brackets 1278
Endpoint Setup dialog 526
endpoints 525
changing 530, 531
configurations 528
custom 529, 530
deleting 530
expression maps 526, 531
glissando lines 1000, 1003
instruments 530
moving 410, 437, 481
notehead brackets 959
percussion maps 526, 531
plug-ins 518
renaming 530
saving 529
setup 526
voices 530
Engrave mode 477
make into frame 591
make into system 587
moving items 481
panels 38, 477, 478, 615
playhead 503
switching 477
engraving options
chord symbols 783
exporting 78
project templates 78
engraving tools. *See* properties. *See also* default settings
enharmonic spelling
accidentals 234, 449, 450, 452
chord symbols 142, 783, 794–796
key signatures 915, 917
MIDI 85, 252
modes 795
notes 234, 449, 450, 452
pitch mappings 458, 459, 467
respelling 197, 449, 450, 452
ensemble picker 111
ensembles 107, 125
adding 111, 126
brackets 777, 778, 1188
custom 111, 114, 127
divisi 1199
filters 423
groups. *See* player groups
language 111
saving 114, 127
staff grouping 778, 1188
templates 71, 78
envelopes
dynamics 645, 647
EnvelopeShaper 671, 675
equal division of the octave 918
equalization 671
changing 675
equations
tempo marks 283, 1218
erased backgrounds 1229
bar numbers 743
bar repeats 1120
chord symbols 783, 798, 799
dynamics 834, 835
fingerings 883
harp pedaling 1041
lines 1092, 1093
padding 799, 835, 1041, 1064, 1093, 1229, 1299
percussion legends 1299
playing techniques 1064
staff lines 798, 834, 875, 883, 1064, 1092, 1229, 1299
string indicators 891
text 1093, 1229
erasing. *See* deleting
espressivo. *See* dynamic modifiers
even staff spacing 560
event display. *See* track overview
events
markers 497
exchanging. *See* switching
excluding 118
flows from layouts 118, 168
playback 509
players 164
players from flows 118
players from layouts 118, 167
tempo changes from playback 504
exclusion groups
expression maps 683
exercises. *See* flows
expanding 410
barlines 739–741
bars 290, 292, 428, 429
caret 209, 225
duration 247, 248, 410
editors 625
flow headings 570, 571
grace notes 899, 900
items 410
Key Editor 625
margins 557, 570–572
menus 43
notes 247, 248, 441, 899, 900, 1273
options 43
pages 556
percussion grids 157
ranges 138
selections 402, 403
slurs 1156
spacing 559, 560, 570
staves 157, 559, 560, 579, 1293
strings 138
systems 559, 560, 569, 579
tuplets 1273
explicit rests 1144, 1145
colors 1148
deleting 1149
hiding 1149

explicit rests *(continued)*
implicit rests 1147
showing 1149
exploding 209, 225, 441
chords 225, 441
MIDI import 89
note input 209, 225
exponential hairpins. *See* flared hairpins
Export Audio dialog 100
Export File Names dialog 545
Export Flows dialog 81
Export MIDI dialog 95
Export MusicXML dialog 84
Export Tempo Track dialog 98
exporting 78
annotations 554
arrangements 547
audio 99, 100
borders 554
color graphics 553
comments 472, 476, 554
crop marks 554
date 554
ensembles 78, 114
expression maps 700
file names 545
FLAC files 99, 100
flows 80, 81, 540, 541
fretted instrument tunings 141
key commands 59
Key Editor configurations 665
layouts 542
lyrics 924
MIDI 95
monochrome graphics 553
MP3 files 99, 100
MusicXML files 84, 1112
note colors 554
options 535
output format 542
page ranges 540, 541, 547
path 544
PDF 542, 543
percussion kits 1290
percussion maps 705
playback templates 525
players 80
PNG 542, 543
repeats 509
signposts 554
stems 99, 100
SVG 542, 543
tempo tracks 98
TIFF 542, 543
time 554
voice colors 554
watermarks 554
WAV files 99, 100
expression maps 682, 683
actions 688, 697
conditions 689, 697
creating 696, 697, 699
dialog 683, 693
expression maps *(continued)*
dynamics 690
endpoints 525, 528, 531
exporting 700
file format 682, 700
filters 683
hiding playing techniques 1065
importing 699
MIDI 857
mutual exclusion groups 692, 696, 699
order 683
pitch 683, 696
playback techniques 683, 693, 697
playing techniques 706, 1065
resetting 693
switches 687, 695, 697
transpose 684, 687, 690
trills 991
volume 857
Expression Maps dialog 683
expressive text. *See* dynamic modifiers
extended techniques
noteheads 941
extending. *See* expanding
extension lines
lyrics 376, 921, 934
trills 981–983
extra staves 1193
condensing 1193
divisi. *See* divisi
hiding 562, 563
moving 437, 440
ossia staves. *See* ossia staves
showing 562, 563
signposts 426, 1193
ties 237
extracts. *See* flows

F

F clef. *See* clefs
factory default playback templates 519
faders 667–669
moving 673
resetting 673
fallback
playback techniques 707
playback templates 520
falls. *See* jazz articulations
false harmonic. *See* pinch harmonics
families
fonts 74
instruments 88, 109, 520, 1062
fanned beams 772
direction 772
fast-forwarding 502, 515
feathered beams. *See* fanned beams
feedback
comments. *See* comments
fermatas 905, 906
appearance 412
barlines 910
changing 909

fermatas *(continued)*
colors 55
crosshairs 484
deleting 431, 909
duration 412
hiding 909
inputting 321–324
moving 437, 481, 910
multiple at same position 909
number per staff 909
placement 908
position 908
showing 909
single staves 909
stems 908
types 412, 906, 909
voices 909
figured bass 858, 861, 862
accidentals 380
appearance 868–870
brackets 378, 861, 864
crosshairs 484
deleting 431
duration 410, 861, 863, 867
fixing 869
font 868
global 377
grace notes 863, 867
handles 410, 861, 865, 867
hiding 859
hold lines 861, 862
input options 869, 870
inputting 377, 378, 381
instruments 377
inverting 866
length 410, 481, 861, 863, 865, 867
local 377, 858
moving 437, 481, 861, 863, 865, 867
navigation during input 381
octaves 869
parentheses 378, 861, 864
pitches 444
placement 865, 866
players 377, 859
popover 378
position 865
resetting 870
resolutions 377, 378, 862, 867
rests 377, 858, 860, 868
rows 865
showing 377, 859
signposts 377, 426, 858, 859, 868
simplifying 869
slashes 378
staff-relative placement 866
staves 377
suspensions 378, 861, 862
transposing 445, 447
vertical position 859
file formats 552
audio 99, 100
backups 104
expression maps 682, 700
file formats *(continued)*
graphics files 552
MIDI 85
MusicXML 82
PDF 552
percussion maps 705
playback templates 518
videos 180
file names 545
ingredients 545
recipes 545
setting 545
tokens 607
files 78
different Dorico versions 73
exporting 78, 542–544
importing 78
missing fonts 74
opening 72
videos 182
filled noteheads 941
films. *See* videos
filters 407, 421
deselect 408
drums 150
dynamics 407
effects 671, 675, 676
ensembles 111, 126, 127
equalization 671, 675, 676
expression maps 683
frequencies 671, 675, 676
harp pedaling 407
Histogram tool 661
inserts 671, 675, 676
instruments 109, 111, 421. *See also* instrument filters
Key Editor 661
key switches 92
lyrics 407, 924, 925
mixer 671, 672, 675, 676
notes 407
options 677, 679
percussion 150
percussion maps 701
pitch 407
properties 615
select 408
staves. *See* instrument filters
stem direction 407
tempo marks 407
voices 407, 621, 661
final barlines 289, 735–737
end of systems 737
inputting 288, 290, 293, 294, 737
number of times played 510
repeat barlines 737
final tempo 1214
Find Tempo dialog 385
important markers 1102
finding. *See* searching
fine
barlines 737
d.c. al 1113

fine *(continued)*
hiding 1116
inputting 394, 395
sections 1113
showing 1116
finger tapping. *See* tapping
fingering 871
appearance 877, 879
arpeggio signs 884
backgrounds 883
borders 877
brackets 262, 263, 879, 881
cautionary 879
changing 811, 814, 873
chord diagrams 805, 806, 810, 811, 813, 814
circles 877
deleting 878
design 877
enclosures 877
erased backgrounds 883
font 877
font styles 879
fretted instruments 880. *See also* tapping
grace notes 876
hammer-ons. *See* hammer-ons
handles 873
hiding 810, 878, 879
horn branch indicators 888
inputting 262, 263
inside the staff 875
inverting 874
italics 877
moving 481, 810, 882
MusicXML import 890
parentheses 262, 263, 879
placement 871, 875, 881, 882
popover 262, 263
position 810, 871
pull-offs. *See* hammer-ons
resetting 415
separators 887
showing 878, 879
size 876
slides. *See* fingering slides
slurs 875
staff-relative placement 874
string shift indicators 888, 889
strings 947
substitution 872, 873
tapping. *See* tapping
thumb letter 810, 811, 814
types 263, 887
underlines 877
valved brass instruments 887
fingering slides 885
deleting 886
handles 885
hiding 886
length 886
moving 481, 885
resetting 885
showing 886
finials. *See* caret. *See also* annotations
first and second endings. *See* repeat endings
first page templates 601
assigning to pages 566
formatting 601
page numbers 1034
first systems
indents 1198
page numbers 1034
staff labels 1181
fit to paper 551. *See also* staff size
five-line staff 1192
noteheads 1285, 1288
percussion kits 150, 1293, 1294
percussion legends 1296
fixed tempo mode 504
fixing
bars 582, 591
figured bass 869
frames 591
layouts 584
note durations 237, 248, 250
pages 583, 591
systems 583, 587
FLAC files
exporting 99, 100
flageolet. *See* harmonics
flags
above staves. *See* signposts
hiding 966
markers. *See* markers
notes 961
stems 961
flams. *See* grace notes. *See also* playing technique-specific noteheads
Flanger 671, 675
flared hairpins 846
size 847
flat
accidentals. *See* accidentals
beams 760, 761
slurs 1163
flipping 414, 1165
flips. *See* jazz ornaments
floor tom. *See* unpitched percussion
flow cards 118
flow headings 75, 599–601, 603–605
changing 604, 605
default 603
dialog 605
editing 604, 605
flow titles 568
frames 603
gaps 570, 571, 809
hiding 69, 567
margins 570, 571, 809
moving 571
page numbers 568, 1034
page templates 566
removing overrides 602
resetting 604
showing 69, 567
titles 568
Flow Import Options dialog 79

flow numbers 164
changing 75, 164
deleting 604, 605
flow headings 603–605
hiding 604, 605
tokens 610
flows 22, 118, 162
accidental duration rules 719, 720
adding 163, 470
adding players 164
adding to layouts 168
audio 99, 100
cards 117
copying 79, 163
default settings 679
deleting 165
deleting empty bars 731
duplicating 163
duration 610, 729–731
end barlines 737
exporting 80, 81, 540, 541
going to 418
headings. *See* flow headings
hiding 168
importing 79, 82, 85, 86
indents 1198
instrument change labels 1187
justification 569
key signatures 911
layouts 118
merging 79, 85, 86, 565
MIDI import 85, 86
moving 590, 591
multiple on pages 565
MusicXML files 84
names 178, 179
navigation 418
notation options 679
numbers. *See* flow numbers
opening 487
order 75, 164
page numbers 568, 610
page templates 566
panel 117
playback 530
players 118, 164
printing 540, 541
project templates 78
rehearsal marks 1096
removing from layouts 168
removing players 164
selecting 403
showing 168
sorting 164
splitting 470, 565
staff labels 1181
staff size 574
switching 487
system dividers 1195
systems 569
tacets 592, 593
tempo tracks 96
timecodes 117
flows *(continued)*
titles 178, 179, 568
tokens 609, 610
transposing 445, 446
trimming 288, 293, 294, 731
videos 117, 180, 182, 183
voices 530
Flows panel 106, 117
flute. *See* instruments
flutter-tongue. *See* playing techniques
flz. *See* playing techniques
folders
backups 104, 105
export path 544
follow tempo mode 504
font styles 1221
bar repeats 1122
condensing 1190
figured bass 868
fingerings 877
glyphs 681
lyrics 919, 932–934
missing fonts 74
music 681
notations 681
notes 681
numbered bar regions 1128
PDF files 553
player group labels 1188
playing techniques 1066
rhythm slashes 1138
SVG files 553
time signatures 1262
force
articulations 723
dynamics 828
figured bass appearance 869, 870
frames 591
horizontal 1091, 1278
staff visibility 562
systems 587
force duration 187, 250
activating 187
inputting notes with 250
inputting rests with 250
formats. *See* file formats
formatting
altered unisons 718
arpeggio signs 995, 996
bar numbers 742, 746
caps 1072, 1086
chord diagrams 813
chord symbols 784, 786
dynamics 844
file names 545
flow headings 604, 605
frames 479, 596
front matter 895
glissando lines 1001
grace notes 900
gradual dynamics 844
hairpins 844
handles 483

formatting *(continued)*
instrument change labels 131, 132
layouts 558, 596, 597
lines 1071, 1072, 1085, 1086
lyrics 932, 934
markers 383, 1101
niente hairpins 852
notehead brackets 958, 959
noteheads 946
page formatting 581, 600
page templates 599
pages 555, 596, 597, 895
pedal lines 1054–1057
player group labels 1188
slurs 1162, 1163, 1173, 1175
systems 478, 596
tacets 592, 594
tempo marks 1216–1218
text 371, 373, 1221, 1225
ties 1235, 1236, 1243, 1244
tuplets 1273, 1279
Formatting panel 477, 478
forte. *See* dynamics
forum 69
forwards. *See* backwards
forzando. *See* dynamics
fps 185
fractions
arpeggio signs 999
chord symbols 783
figured bass 378
fingerings 873
glissando lines 1004
guitar bends 1012
tempo marks 285, 286, 385, 1211, 1212
time signatures 271, 1249, 1250
frame breaks 479, 555, 581, 589
bar repeats 590
barlines 585
clefs 816
copying to other layouts 596, 597
deleting 585, 592
divisi 1199
first page on the left 565
glissando lines 1003
hiding staves 562
inserting 583, 584, 590
key signatures 915
lines 1094
moving 585
octave lines 824
playing techniques 1066
repeat endings 1110
signposts 426, 592
slurs 1159
staff labels 1183
staff size 574
staff spacing 559
staff visibility 562
ties 1238
time signatures 1252
frame chains
music. *See* music frame chains
properties 599, 615–617
frame fullness indicator 480
frame rates 185
changing 181, 185
dialog 181
drop frame timecodes 1103
non-drop frame timecodes 1103
transport window 515, 517
frames 605, 1227
breaks 555, 589
constraints 570
copying 599, 601
dashed 603
flow headings 568, 570, 571, 603
fullness 480
gaps 570–572
hiding 416
making from selection 591
margins 570, 572
moving 570, 571
padding 555, 572
resetting 602
running headers 568
staves 560, 569
systems 560, 569, 583
tokens 607
frequency
auto-save 104
bar numbers 742, 1129
bar repeat counts 1123
harmonics 968
numbered bar region counts 1129
slash region counts 1139
timecodes 1105
trills 982
Fretboard panel 199
key commands 44
frets 138, 1200
adding 138, 232, 814
brackets. *See* bracketed noteheads
capos. *See* capos
changing 1202
chord diagrams. *See* chord diagrams
deleting 138, 814
intervals 138
note input 199, 232
notes out of range 1202
parentheses. *See* bracketed noteheads
position 138
spacing 138
starting number 806, 813, 814
string number 947
fretted instruments 138
adding 109, 133
arpeggio fingering 884
capos. *See* capos
changing tuning 109, 136, 138, 140
chord diagrams 805, 806
chord symbols 142, 145, 794
detuned 142, 145, 146
exporting tunings 141

fretted instruments *(continued)*
fingerings 262, 880
frets 138
guitar bends 1006
guitar techniques. *See* guitar techniques
harmonics 968–970, 972
importing tunings 141
note input 199
open pitches 140
pinch harmonics 975
popover 265
slides 885, 886
string indicators. *See* string indicators
strings 138, 140, 142, 947
tablature. *See* tablature
thumbs 810, 811, 814
transposition 133, 138, 143–146
tuning 136, 138, 142, 145, 146, 794
front matter 895
composer 601
copyright 601
lyricist 601
page templates 599, 601
performance instructions 599, 601
player list 607
title 599, 601
full score layouts. *See* layouts
full screen 50
full stop. *See* period
fullness
frames 480
pages 480, 559, 560, 569, 573, 574
systems 480
fullness threshold
horizontal justification 569
vertical justification 560, 577
functions
key commands 62
removing key commands 64
fundamental
harmonics 968
string pitches 138
funk noteheads 945, 946
FX channels 669–671
reverb 676

G

G clef. *See* clefs
galley view 41, 50
bar numbers 41, 745
dragging pages 420
flows 470
instrument changes 130
instrument filters 422, 423
instrument labels 50
staff labels 41
staff spacing 577, 579
gaps 481, 570
around items. *See* erased backgrounds
articulations 724, 727
bar numbers 747
barlines 798, 834, 1064, 1092, 1229, 1299
gaps *(continued)*
bars 1198
beams 770, 771
caesuras 908
capos 138, 142, 143, 145, 147, 149, 783
chord diagrams 809
chord symbols 783, 798, 799, 803
clefs 816
codas 1117, 1198
dynamics 829, 835, 837
elision slurs 938
erased backgrounds. *See* erased backgrounds
extender lines 925
fingering slides 885
flow headings 570, 571
frames 570–572
galley view 579
H-bars 1153, 1154
hairpins 843
hyphens 925
lines 1090
lyrics 925
margins 570
multi-bar rests 1153, 1154
notes. *See* note spacing
ossia staves 559, 577
parentheses 803
pedal lines 1052, 1053
percussion legends 1299
playing techniques 1064
quantization 94
removing 248
rests 771
slurs 1158, 1159, 1163
staff labels 1182
staves 157, 559, 560, 576, 577, 1113, 1198
stemlets 772
stems 766
system indents 1182, 1198
systems 560, 1113
tacets 594
tempo marks 1217
text 1090, 1229
text collision avoidance 1226
ties 1236
time signatures 1261
Gate 671, 675
General MIDI 86, 92, 682, 695
Generate Chord Symbols From Selection dialog 312
generated trills 991, 992
generating
chord symbols 311, 312
harp pedaling 363
ghost notes 953, 954
guitar. *See* dead notes. *See also* bracketed noteheads
gli altri. *See* divisi
glissando lines 1000, 1028, 1075
accidentals 1000
angles 1000, 1003
changing 412
deleting 431
direction 947

glissando lines *(continued)*
endpoints 1000, 1003
filter 407
formatting 1001
frame breaks 1003
guitar bends. *See* guitar bends
handles 1003
harp pedaling 1004, 1036
hiding 1002
inputting 325, 328, 334, 335, 1001
length 481, 1003
line styles 1001
moving 481, 1003
one note 1028
panel 330, 335
playback 1004, 1036
popover 328, 334
segments 1003
showing 1002
styles 1001
system breaks 1003
text 1002
tie chains 1004
types 328
global
chord symbols 303, 782
fermatas 905
figured bass 377, 858
key commands 61
note spacing 580
options 29
pedal level 1048
properties 599, 615–617
glockenspiel. *See* instruments
glyphs
accidentals 449, 450, 452
bracketed noteheads 958
chord symbols 786
fonts 681
music symbols 370, 373, 608
pedal lines 1053
playing techniques 1062
text 370, 373, 608
trills 977, 978
go to. *See* navigation
Go To Bar dialog 419
Go To Page dialog 418
Go To Rehearsal Mark dialog 419
gongs. *See* unpitched percussion
Gould
accidentals 267, 918
grace notes 897
appearance 903
arpeggio signs 997
barlines 900
beams 903
caret 205, 239
clefs 817
default settings 898
deleting 431, 900
duration 239, 904
figured bass 863, 867
fingerings 876
grace notes *(continued)*
glissando lines 334, 335
guitar bends 338, 339
hairpins 849
inputting 94, 187, 239, 899
inverting 453, 898
lines 1080
messa di voce 849
moving 437, 440, 454, 456, 899, 900
pedal lines 1051
pitch 444
pitch mappings 458
placement 898
playback 904
position 898, 900
quantization 94
register 444
reversing 454. *See also* retrograde
rotating 456
scale mapping 460
size 413, 901
slashes 898, 901, 902
slurs 260, 898, 1156, 1157
spacing 580, 898
speed 904
stems 898, 901, 903
ties 237, 1239
transformations 453, 899, 900
transposing 445
trills 991
types 901
unscaling 900
voices 898
gradient background 53
gradual dynamics 828, 842
alignment 831, 832, 853–856
angles 481, 843
aperture 843
appearance 844
barlines 832
centered text 841
continuation lines 844
continuous hairpins 845
dashed 844
dotted 844
end position 832, 843
flared hairpins 846, 847
grace notes 849
grouping 853, 854
handles 410, 843
hyphens 844
inputting 296, 298, 299, 302
length 410
line style 844
linking 855, 856
messa di voce 849
moving 437, 829, 831, 843, 849, 853, 855
niente. *See* niente
playback 857
poco a poco 841, 847
position 848
rotating 481, 843
spacing 848

gradual dynamics *(continued)*
start position 843
syllables 844
system breaks 843
tempo marks 1209
ties 299, 302, 437
truncated 848
ungrouping 854
unlinking 856
volume 857
width 843
gradual tempo changes 991, 1205, 1215
barlines 1209
components 1206
continuation lines 1215, 1216
dashes 1217
drawing 656
final tempo 1214
formatting 1216–1218
gaps 1217
hyphens 1216
inputting 280, 283, 285, 286, 657
length 410, 481
lines 1215, 1216
moving 481
Play mode 496, 656
popover 280
position 1209
style 1216, 1218
syllables 1216
Tempo editor 656
text 1209
thickness 1218
grand staff instruments
barlines 739, 740
braces 776
brackets 778
centered beams 762
chord symbols 792
cross-staff beams 764, 766, 768
dynamics 299, 302, 829, 838
hiding staves 562, 563, 577
MIDI import 92
MIDI recording 253
multi-bar rests 1152
slurs 260
split point 92
staff grouping 778
staves 739
swing playback 513
ties 237
vertical justification 577
voices 205, 221, 1303
graphical adjustments 481
graphics
chord symbols 786
files. *See* graphics files
graphics files 542, 552
colors 553
exporting 542–544
file names 545
fonts 553
formats 552
graphics files *(continued)*
image resolution 552
monochrome 553
graphs 662
green notes
Dynamics editor 645
tablature 1202
grids
chord diagrams 809, 810
gaps 157
groups 155
Hub 69
percussion kits 154, 155, 157, 1189, 1293, 1294
rhythmic 204
staff labels 1181, 1184
staves 1189, 1293
groups
bar repeats 1125
beams. *See* beam groups
braces 776
brackets 776
dynamics 853–855
guitar bends 1006, 1015
instruments. *See* instrument groups
notes. *See* note grouping
percussion kits 150, 154–156, 1189
players. *See* player groups
playing techniques 1067, 1068, 1072, 1073
rests. *See* note grouping
staff labels 1190
staff spacing 559, 577
staves 739, 740
tabs 48
guide bar numbers 50, 745
hiding 416
guide instrument labels 50, 173, 174
guitar 1021
amp modeling 671, 675, 676
bends. *See* guitar bends
capos. *See* capos
changing string for notes 1202
chord diagrams. *See* chord diagrams
chord symbols. *See* chord symbols
dead notes 1025
dips 346, 347, 1021
dives 341, 343, 344, 1011, 1017, 1019, 1021
fingerings 880
hammer-ons 349, 1023
harmonics 968, 970, 972
lines 347, 348, 1006, 1011, 1015, 1017–1019, 1021
note input 232
notes out of range 951
open pitches 140
playback 499, 1006, 1011, 1021, 1025
pre-bends. *See* guitar pre-bends
pre-dives. *See* guitar pre-bends
pull-offs 349, 1023
scoops 345, 1021
slides 885
string indicators. *See* string indicators
strings 140
strumming 884
tablature. *See* tablature

guitar *(continued)*
tapping 350, 1022
techniques. *See* guitar techniques
tuning 109, 138, 140
vibrato bar. *See* vibrato bar
guitar bends 1006, 1011
chords 1006, 1009
crosshairs 484
deleting 431
direction 414
dives 1011
groups 1006, 1015
handles 1015, 1019
hold lines 1013
holds 1006, 1013, 1015, 1019
inputting 328, 338, 339
intervals. *See* bend intervals
length 481
microtonal 341, 1009, 1012
moving 481
parentheses 1006
playback 1006
popover 328, 338, 339
post-bends 341, 1009
pre-bends 1008
releases 1006
runs 1006, 1015
segments 1015, 1019
shape 1015, 1019
tablature 1201
guitar post-bends 1009
bend intervals 1012
chords 1009
deleting 1015
handles 1018
inputting 341
microtonal 341, 1009
moving 481, 1018
shape 1018
guitar pre-bends 1008
accidentals 1014
bend intervals 1012
deleting 1015
direction 1013
handles 1017
inputting 340
length 481, 1017
moving 481, 1017
shape 1017
guitar pre-dives. *See* guitar pre-bends
guitar techniques 1021–1023
dead notes 1025
deleting 1027
inputting 328, 338, 341, 343–350
intervals 1026
moving 481, 1026
panel 330
popover 328
staff-relative placement 1026

H

H-bars. *See* multi-bar rests
hairpins. *See* gradual dynamics
half depressed pedal lines 1045, 1046, 1048, 1049
half notes 16, 191, 211, 214, 225, 226, 247, 248
beats 288
chords 240
metronome marks 282
percussion 227, 633
rests 235, 1144
splitting notes 249
tablature 232
tempo equations 1218
tremolos 395, 397, 1264
tuplets 243, 246
voices 221
half-bar
beam grouping 754, 774
note grouping 679, 774
ties 679, 774
half-diminished. *See* scales. *See also* intervals
half-step trills 984, 991
appearance 989
hiding 981, 985
inputting 326, 331, 332
position 990
showing 981, 985
half-steps 16, 712
accidentals 233, 712
bend intervals 1012, 1026
figured bass 380
glissando lines 1000
harp pedaling 1036
pitch bends 650
string pitches 138
tonality systems 918
trills. *See* half-step trills
half-whole diminished
chord symbols 308
scales 460, 467
HALion Sonic SE
endpoints 530
independent voice playback 506
playback template 518, 519
HALion Symphonic Orchestra
endpoints 530
independent voice playback 506
playback template 518, 519
halving. *See* double
hammer-ons 1023
deleting 1027
inputting 349
moving 481, 1026
popover 328
slurs 1023
staff-relative placement 1026
hand tool 41
dragging pages 420
handles
arpeggio signs 997
beams 761
bend intervals 1015, 1017–1019
brackets 958
chord symbols 784, 786, 793
duration 410

handles *(continued)*
dynamics 842, 843, 849
figured bass 861, 865, 867
fingerings 873, 885
glissando lines 1003
guitar bends 1015, 1017–1019
hairpins 843, 849
jazz articulations 1030
length 410
lines 1094
lyrics 926, 929, 934
moving 481, 849
notehead brackets 958
numbered bar regions 1127
octave lines 824
pedal lines 1046
percussion legends 1297
playing techniques 1066, 1068, 1072
releases 1015, 1019
repeat endings 1109, 1110
selecting 483
slurs 1160, 1170–1172
stems 965, 1269
string indicators 1066
tempo marks 1208
ties 1242, 1243, 1245–1247
tuplet brackets 1276
harmonic analysis. *See* figured bass
harmonic minor. *See* scales. *See also* key signatures
harmonics 968
accidentals 971
appearance 972, 974, 975
artificial 968
hiding 969
inputting 969
natural 968
noteheads 946, 969, 972
partials 970
pitch 970
playback 968–970
question marks 969
showing 969
string number 947, 1202
styles 972, 975
tablature 969, 972
harp pedal diagrams 1036, 1037
placement 1042
position 1042
showing 1037
harp pedaling 1036
appearance 1036, 1037
borders 1040
calculating 363
crosshairs 484
diagrams. *See* harp pedal diagrams
erased backgrounds 1041
filter 407
glissando lines 1004, 1036
hiding 1038, 1039
inputting 354, 362, 363
moving 437, 440, 481
note names 1037
notes out of range 951
harp pedaling *(continued)*
padding 1041
partial 1042
playback 1036
popover 354
showing 1038
signposts 426, 1036, 1038, 1039
headers
Dynamics editor 645
editors 627
flows 603
Key Editor 619
MIDI CC editor 651
MIDI Pitch Bend editor 650
percussion editor 631
piano roll editor 623, 630
Tempo editor 656
tracks 486, 488, 495–498
Velocity editor 642
heavy swing. *See* swing playback
height
bars 559, 560, 577
brackets 777, 778, 802, 1188
channels 673
chord symbols 802
drum pads 200
editors 625
flared hairpins 847
hairpins 843, 847
handles 1171, 1172, 1176, 1242
Key Editor 621, 625
keyboard 197
lines 1084
mixer 667, 673
notehead brackets 958
parentheses 802
pedal lines 1046, 1049
percussion editor 625
piano roll editor 625
slurs 1176
staves 559, 560, 570, 572, 573, 577
systems 559, 560, 577
ties 1245–1247
tracks 500, 625
hemiola
forcing note durations 250
independent time signatures 274, 275, 277, 278
Henze fermatas. *See* fermatas
hi-hat. *See* unpitched percussion
hiding 44, 427, 431, 663, 1230
accidentals 712, 713, 720, 721, 971, 985, 1014
audio outputs in mixer 526
backgrounds 798, 834, 1064, 1092, 1229, 1299
bar numbers 742, 744, 745, 749, 751
bar repeat counts 1124
bar rests 1146, 1147, 1149–1151
barlines 271, 737, 738, 798, 834, 1064, 1092, 1229, 1250, 1299
beams 966, 1138
borders 416, 743, 1040, 1091, 1227
braces 777, 780
brackets 713, 720, 777, 780, 800, 801, 833, 861, 864, 954, 1188

hiding *(continued)*
brackets on noteheads 954
capos 147, 148, 150
caps 1072
caret 209
cautionary accidentals 713, 720, 971
channels 672
chord diagram fingering 810, 814
chord diagrams 806, 808, 809
chord symbol parentheses 800, 801
chord symbols 311, 789, 790, 793, 796, 808
circles 743, 852
clefs 317, 318, 817, 818
coda 1116
colors 509, 951, 1122, 1134, 1148, 1304
comments 476
condensing colors 416
continuation lines 1070, 1071
counts 744, 1118, 1124, 1129, 1140
da capo 1116
dal segno 1116
dead notes 1025
divisi colors 416
divisi labels 1181
divisi staves 562, 563
dynamics 836, 837, 840
Dynamics editor 627, 645
elision slurs 939
empty staves 562
fermatas 909
figured bass 378, 859–862
figured bass brackets 861, 864
fine 1116
fingering slides 886
fingerings 810, 878, 879
flared hairpins 846
flow headings 69, 567
flow numbers 604, 605
flow page numbers 568
flow titles 568
flows 168, 592
Flows panel 117
glissando line text 1002
guitar bend hold lines 1013
guitar pre-bend accidentals 1014
harmonics 969
harp pedaling 1038, 1039, 1042
highlights 416
Histogram tool 659
hold lines 861, 862, 1013
hyphens 837
initial page numbers 1034
instrument change labels 1187
instrument changes 130, 132
instrument names 1181, 1183, 1184
instrument transpositions 176, 1185
interchangeable time signatures 1250
jump bar 66, 67
key signatures 109, 136, 266, 268, 269, 911, 913–915
laissez vibrer ties 1240
ledger lines 948
lines 410, 416, 862, 1070, 1071, 1188, 1216

hiding *(continued)*
margins 416
markers 1099
MIDI CC editor 627, 651
MIDI Pitch Bend editor 627
mixer 667–669, 672
multi-bar rests 1152
niente 852
note colors 416, 554, 951
notes 949, 952, 1136
numbered bar regions 1128, 1129
padding rests 1136
page numbers 568, 1034
panels 32, 39, 43, 44, 107, 114
parentheses 713, 720, 800, 801, 833, 861, 864, 954
partial harp pedaling 1042
pedal lines 1054–1056
percussion legend signposts 1295
player group labels 1188
players 164, 167
playhead 503
playing techniques 1065, 1070
Playing Techniques editor 641
prefixes 132
quality in chord symbols 796
rectangles 743
repeat counts 1118
repeat markers 1116
rest colors 1148
rests 1146, 1149–1152
rhythm dots 949, 950, 952
root in chord symbols 783, 796
running headers 568
secondary brackets 780
segno 1116
separators 837
signposts 416, 427, 588, 592
slash region counts 1140
staff labels 1181, 1183
staff lines 798, 834, 883, 1064, 1092, 1229, 1299
staves 118, 164, 167, 168, 421, 424, 562, 563, 1201
stems 966, 1138
string indicators 366, 410
sub-brackets 780
symbols 1065
system dividers 1195
system track 406, 416
systemic barlines 738
tablature 1201
tabs 32
tacets 593
Tempo editor 627
tempo marks 1211, 1216
text 1230
text borders 1091, 1227
text on lines 1088
time signatures 428, 1261, 1262
timecodes 1105
toolbar 31
tracks 500, 623
transport window 515
tre corde 1060
trill extension lines 983

hiding *(continued)*
trill intervals 985
trill marks 981
tuplets 1276, 1279
Velocity editor 627, 642
verse numbers 938
vibrato bar lines 410
video window 183
voice colors 416, 554, 1304
VST instruments 491
zones 32, 44
highlights
bar repeats 1120, 1122
chord symbol regions 793, 794
comments 476
dynamics 645, 646, 649
exporting 554
flags. *See* signposts
hiding 416
MIDI 650–652, 655
music frames 477
numbered bar regions 1122
printing 554
search matches 58, 677, 679
slash regions 1132, 1134
stop positions 429
tempo changes 496, 656, 657
tracks 486, 496
histogram editor
changing values 643
Histogram tool 659, 660, 663
area graph 662
bar graph 662
changing values 661
controls 660, 661
filter 661
graph type 662
hiding 659
showing 659
hold lines 1006, 1013
brackets 864
figured bass 410, 861–863, 865, 867
guitar bends 1015
handles 865, 1015
hiding 861, 862, 1013
length 862, 863, 867, 1015
moving 481, 1015
showing 861, 862, 1013
holds
colors 55
Holds and Pauses panel 324
Hollywood-style trills 989
intervals 990
position 990
showing 990
hooks
length 1111
octave lines 824
pedal lines 1045, 1046, 1049, 1053, 1055
playing techniques 1067, 1070
repeat endings 1111
tuplets 1276
horizontal alignment
chord symbols 797
crosshairs 484
dynamics 831, 853, 854
instrument names 176
items 484
lyrics 925, 927
ornaments 978
staff labels 176
staves 569
systems 569
text 1225
horizontal justification
staves 569
systems 569
horizontal lines. *See* lines. *See also* glissando lines
horizontal position 481
accidentals 715–717
arpeggio signs 997
bar numbers 746
chord symbols 788, 791
clefs 817
dynamics 829, 830, 841
H-bars 1153, 1154
instrument names 176
lines 437, 440, 1079, 1080, 1084, 1094
lyrics 925, 927
modifiers 841
multi-bar rests 1153, 1154
notes 480, 579, 950, 1305–1308
ornaments 978
poco a poco 841
rehearsal marks 1095
rests 1144, 1149, 1153, 1154
rhythm dots 950
staff labels 176
staves 569
string indicators 893
systems 569
tempo marks 1208
text 1225
time signatures 1261
trills 978
tuplet brackets 1278
tuplets 1280
horns 127
branch indicators 888
clefs 109, 136, 315, 819
fingerings 887
key signatures 109, 136
transposition 109, 133, 136
hotkeys. *See* key commands
hours 33, 515, 1103
HTML files
comments 476
Hub 69
opening projects 72, 73
starting projects 71
video tutorials 69
humanize
dynamics 645

hymnals
lyrics 580
note spacing 580
tick barlines 736
hyphens
dynamics 296, 837
lyrics 374, 376, 921, 934
staff labels 1186
tempo marks 1216
time signatures 1256, 1259

I

illustrations
exporting 542, 543
images
exporting 542, 543
resolution 542, 543, 552
videos 180
immediate dynamics. *See* dynamics
implicit rests 25, 1144, 1145
colors 1148
deleting 1149
explicit rests 1147
hiding 1146, 1149
showing 1149
voices 1146
imploding. *See* reducing
Import Tempo Track dialog 97
important markers 385, 1102
importing 78
Cubase data 682, 699
expression maps 682, 699
flows 79, 85, 86
fretted instrument tunings 141
Key Editor configurations 665
MIDI files 85, 86
MusicXML files 82, 83, 1112
pedal lines 85, 92, 258
percussion kits 1290
percussion maps 705
playback templates 524
playing techniques 88, 92
tempo tracks 96, 97
tracks 85, 86
unpitched percussion 83, 86
inches
unit of measurement 51
including. *See* excluding
indents 1198
codas 1117, 1198
final systems 569
first systems 1198
removing 1198
staff labels 1182
systems 569, 1181, 1182, 1198
independent voice playback 488, 506
changing endpoints 530
disabling 507
enabling 506
inputting notes 632
piano roll editor 630
playing techniques 356, 358
index
rehearsal marks 1096
tokens 607
vertical stacking 825, 1067
voice columns. *See* voice column index
Indian drum notation 1301
Indiana chord symbols 783
indicators
audio engine 39
caret 838
clefs 820
fingerings 263, 888
frame fullness 480
horn branches 888
MIDI input 39
octaves 820
string fingerings 888, 889, 947
system fullness 480
tempo. *See* tempo marks
thumbs 263
trill intervals 984, 990
voices 838
information. *See* project information
ingredients 545
init switches 687, 695
initial pages
left-hand page 565
page numbers 565, 1034
initial trill notes 991
initials
comments 470, 475
input pitch 218
inputting 201
accidentals 218, 233, 712
additional repeat endings 391, 393
altered bass note chord symbols 303
arpeggio signs 325, 328, 332
articulations 218, 259, 260
bar number changes 750, 751
bar number counts 389, 400
bar repeats 389, 390, 399
bar rests 236, 288
barlines 287, 289, 290, 293, 294
bars 287, 288, 290–292
beams 211, 755
beats 288, 290, 292
bracketed noteheads 954
breath marks 320, 322–324
caesuras 320, 322–324
capos 143, 144
caret 205, 209
centered beams 763
chord diagram shapes 813
chord diagrams 789, 806, 808
chord symbol parentheses 303, 309, 800
chord symbol regions 309
chord symbols 303, 305, 310–312
chords 187, 240, 247, 464
clefs 314–318
comments 471, 474
dips 346, 347
dives 340, 341, 343, 344
dynamic modifiers 296, 298, 299, 302, 839

inputting *(continued)*
dynamics 296, 298, 299, 302, 646, 649, 839
editors 627, 665
elision slurs 374, 376
ensembles 111, 126, 127
expression maps 696, 697, 699
fermatas 320–324
figured bass 377, 378, 381
figured bass hold lines 377, 378, 410, 861–863
fingerings 262
flows 79, 163, 164, 470
frame breaks 584, 590, 591
glissando lines 325, 328, 334, 335, 1001
grace notes 94, 239, 899
gradual dynamics 296, 298, 299, 302
gradual tempo changes 280, 283, 285, 286, 657
guitar bend hold lines 1013
guitar bends 328, 338, 339
guitar dips 328, 346, 347
guitar dives 328, 341, 343, 344
guitar lines 328, 347, 348
guitar post-bends 341
guitar pre-bends 340
guitar pre-dives 340
guitar scoops 328, 345
guitar tapping 328, 350
hammer-ons 328, 349
harmonics 969
harp pedaling 354, 362, 363
hold lines 410, 861–863
inputting vs. editing 201
Insert mode 226
instrument changes 211, 214
instrument filters 425
instruments 109, 121, 133
instruments in percussion kits 153
intervals 462
jazz articulations 325, 327, 336, 337
jazz ornaments 327, 331, 332
key commands 63
Key Editor 623, 627, 632, 646, 652, 657, 665
key signatures 265, 267–269, 712
layouts 167, 171
left-hand fingerings 265
line text 1088
lines 352, 356, 358, 367–369
lyrics 374, 376
markers 383, 384, 497
messa di voce 296, 298, 299, 302, 849, 850
metronome marks 280, 285, 286
MIDI 85, 86, 252, 253, 258, 493, 518, 519, 523
MIDI points 652, 655
mouse input 202, 203, 219
mutual exclusion groups 699
nested slurs 1167
nested tuplets 1272
niente 296, 298, 299, 302, 852
notehead brackets 954
noteheads 637, 1286, 1287
notes 210, 211, 214, 218, 225, 226, 232, 247, 250, 253, 464, 632, 633
notes in multiple voices 221
notes in percussion kits 227, 230, 633

inputting *(continued)*
numbered bar regions 389, 400
octave lines 314, 316, 318, 320
octaves 462
ornaments 325, 326, 331, 332
panels 192
parentheses 303, 309, 377, 378, 713, 800, 833, 861, 864, 954, 971
pauses 320–324
pedal lines 351, 354, 359–362
percussion kits 134, 135, 227, 632, 633, 637, 1286, 1287
percussion legends 1296
pick-up bars 270, 272, 277, 278, 428
pitch mappings 458, 459, 467
playback techniques 697, 707
playback templates 523, 524
player groups 159
players 111, 121, 127
playing techniques 351, 352, 356, 358, 632, 633, 637, 1286, 1287
popovers 24, 192
position 201
post-bends 341
pull-offs 328, 349
register selection 214
rehearsal marks 382
repeat endings 387, 390–393
repeat markers 388, 390, 394, 395
rests 187, 197, 211, 235, 250
retakes 359, 360, 362
rhythm dots 211, 214, 218, 219
rhythm slashes 389, 390, 398
rhythmic feels 280, 513
rhythmic grid 204
right-hand fingerings 265
scoops 345
settings 203, 218
slash regions 389, 398
slash voices 223, 1142
slurs 260, 349, 1167
soloists 124
staves 121, 126, 133, 1199
stem direction 231
stems 221, 1303. *See also* voices
string indicator lines 410
string indicators 354, 364–366
strings 138
swing playback 282
switches 697
system breaks 584, 586, 587
system-attached text 370
tablature 232, 1201
tapping 328, 350
tempo equations 280, 283, 285, 286
tempo marks 280, 283, 285, 286, 657
text 370, 1088
ties 187, 237
time signatures 270, 271, 274, 275
timecodes 383, 1100, 1104
tokens 607
tremolos 388–390, 395, 397
trill intervals 987

inputting *(continued)*
trills 326, 331, 332
tuplets 94, 243, 1272, 1273
unpitched percussion 632, 633
upbeats. *See* pick-up bars
velocity 643
vibrato bar 338, 340, 341
vibrato bar dips 346, 347
vibrato bar dives 343, 344
vibrato bar lines 347, 348, 410
vibrato bar scoops 345
videos 182
voices 221, 223
VST instruments 493, 518, 519, 523
Insert Bar Number Change dialog 749
Insert mode 187, 201, 427
activating 187, 226
caret 205, 226
deactivating 226
inputting notes 226
scope 428, 429
stop positions 427, 429, 430
time signatures 274, 275, 277, 278, 428, 1249
tuplets 431
Insert Music Text dialog 373
inserting. *See* inputting. *See also* Insert mode
insertion point 205
inserts 671
changing 675, 676
loading 675
removing 676
inspector. *See* Track Inspector. *See also* properties
instances
adding 493
chord symbols 782
plug-ins 488, 491
instrument change labels 127, 130
borders 130
editing 131, 132
font style 130
hiding 1187
prefixes 131
showing 1187
suffixes 131
instrument changes 130
allowing 130
disallowing 130
inputting 133, 211, 214
labels. *See* instrument change labels
language 57, 131, 176
instrument channels 667–670
instrument colors 495
Dynamics editor 645, 649
MIDI CC editor 651, 655
MIDI Pitch Bend editor 650, 655
percussion editor 631
piano roll editor 630
Playing Techniques editor 641
Velocity editor 642
instrument filters 109, 111, 421, 422
activating 424
adding 425
deactivating 424
instrument filters *(continued)*
deleting 426
instruments 423, 425
key commands 421, 423
order 423
instrument groups 154, 158
deleting 156
filters 423
labels 1188
naming 155
percussion kits 154, 1189
instrument labels
percussion kits 155
instrument names 172, 1180
abbreviated 175, 176, 1184
alignment 176
baseline shift 176
changing 175
colors 176
Endpoint Setup dialog 526
hiding 1181, 1183, 1184
length 176, 1181
mixer 667, 668
numbering 129, 1184
overline 176
Play mode 495, 526, 668
resetting 176, 178
saving as default 176
showing 1181
solo 124
staff labels 176, 608, 1181, 1184
stretch 176
subscript 176
superscript 176
tokens 608
tracks 495. *See also* instrument tracks
underline 176
instrument numbering 129, 1186
instrument picker 109
instrument pitches. *See* instrument transpositions
instrument tracks 494, 495
automation. *See* MIDI CC editor
dynamics. *See* Dynamics editor
MIDI. *See* MIDI CC editor
piano roll editor 630
velocity. *See* Velocity editor
instrument transpositions 133, 1185
changing 109, 136
clefs 817
hiding 176, 1185
layout names 174
layouts 174
order 1186
parentheses 1186
showing 176, 1185
staff labels 176, 1185, 1186
instrumental parts. *See* layouts
instrumentation lists 607, 895
page templates 599, 601
instruments 23, 127
adding 109, 111, 126, 133
adding to flows 164
adding to parts 167

instruments *(continued)*
adding to percussion kits 153
arranging tools 431
assigning to endpoints 530
automatic numbering 129
barline joins. *See* barline joins
brackets 777, 778
changes. *See* instrument changes
changing existing 136, 153
changing transposition 136
channels 667–670
chord symbols 303, 789
clefs 109, 136
colors 495, 630, 631
combining into kits 135
comments 470, 472
copying 122
deleting 125, 137
divisi 1199
doubling 50, 133
dynamics 645, 838, 855, 857. *See also* Dynamics editor
empty staves 562
endpoints 525, 526, 530
ensembles 125
expression maps 526, 683
figured bass 377
filters. *See* instrument filters
fretted 138
fretted fingerings 880
groups. *See* instrument groups
hiding 164, 167, 421
importing 86
inputting notes 211, 214
key signatures 913, 915–917
labels 50, 130–132, 173, 174
language 57, 109, 111, 178
loading 493
MIDI 488, 492, 493
MIDI import 86
MIDI recording 252
mixer 667–670, 673
moving 137, 161
muting 507, 508, 667
names. *See* instrument names
non-sustaining 857
numbering 129
order 123, 124, 137, 156, 158
panning 674
part layouts. *See* layouts
percussion 156, 700, 1293
percussion legends 1295, 1297
percussion maps 526
Play mode 495
playback 506, 507, 518–520, 523, 525, 530, 682, 700
players 120
Players panel 107
plucked fingerings 880
ranges 951
removing from kits 158
removing from parts 164, 167
searching 109, 111
instruments *(continued)*
showing 164, 167, 421
showing staves 50
soloing 507, 508, 667
staff grouping 778
staff labels 176, 1184, 1186
staff size 574
staves 50, 562, 563, 838, 1193, 1293
strings 138
sustaining 857
swing playback 513
tablature 1200, 1201
templates 71, 111, 114
tracks. *See* instrument tracks
transposing 133, 169. *See also* instrument transpositions
tuning 109, 138
velocity 642. *See also* Velocity editor
volume 673, 838
VST 488, 491, 493
intensity
dynamics 299, 302, 412, 645, 828, 835, 836
interactive key commands map 61
interchangeable time signatures 1250
ending 1262
inputting 271, 273–275
interface 30
interspersion
accidentals 715
intervals
accidentals 326, 463, 986
adding 240, 247, 464
auto-save 104
chord symbols 307, 783
dips 1026
figured bass 869
fretted instruments 138
glissando lines 1000
guitar bends. *See* bend intervals
handles 1015, 1017–1019
harmonics 968–970, 972, 975
microtonal 463
note input 214
octave divisions 918
ornaments 977
pitch mappings 458, 459, 467
popover 463
simplifying 869
transposing 445, 446, 464
trills 326, 331, 984–987, 990
vibrato bar dives and returns 1011
inversions
chord symbols 303, 500
figured bass 377, 378, 858
pitches 453, 455, 465
playback 500
Invert Pitches dialog 455
inverting 453, 455, 1165
articulations 727
beaming 759
colors 55
figured bass 866
fingerings 874

inverting *(continued)*
grace note stems 898
pitches 453, 455, 465
slurs 1157, 1164, 1165
ties 1237
tuplets 1277
invisible. *See* hiding
ionian
chord symbols 308, 795
scales 460, 467
irrational time signatures. *See* time signatures
irregular
bars as pick-up bars 1253
time signatures 1250
italics
chord symbols 142, 783
dynamics 828
fingerings 877
lyrics 932, 933
player group labels 1188
staff labels 176
text 371
items 201, 401
behind other items 401
changing 412
copying 433
deselecting 408
editing 615
resetting 415
selecting 201, 401–403, 408, 417
settings. *See* properties

J

Japanese
chord symbols 783
jazz
articulations. *See* jazz articulations
band templates 71, 78
chord symbols 783
glyphs 681
music font 681
staff grouping 778
jazz articulations 1028, 1029
appearance 1030, 1031
bend 1028
changing 1030
copying 724
deleting 1032
duration 1030
handles 1030
inputting 325, 327, 336, 337
length 481, 1030
line styles 1031
moving 481, 1030
ornaments. *See* jazz ornaments
panel 330, 337
playback 706, 707, 1028
popover 327, 336
position 1030
smooth 1028
types 327, 1028, 1030
jazz ornaments 1028, 1029
inputting 327, 331, 332
popover 327
types 327
Jazz Standards chord symbols 783
jeté. *See* playing techniques
job types 535, 547
page ranges 540, 541
printing 547
selecting 547
joins
barlines 739, 778
beams 755, 757, 764, 768
pedal lines 1053
staves with barlines 741
stems 764, 768
jump bar 65
aliases 67, 68
Commands 65, 67
entries 65
Go To 66
showing 66, 67
jumps
hiding 1116
inputting 394, 395
playback 510
rehearsal marks 419, 1096
repeat 1113
showing 1116
justification
staves 560, 569, 577, 1198
systems 560, 569, 577, 1198
vertical 560, 577

K

kerning
accidentals 716
figured bass 865
key clicks. *See* playing techniques
key commands 19, 28, 59, 65
articulations 260
assigning 63, 67
defining 58
finding 62, 65
galley view 50
instrument filters 421, 423
Key Editor 623
keyboard layouts 64
languages 64
lower zone 44
maps 61
MIDI 63
mouse input 187
muting 507, 508
navigation 37, 418–420
notehead sets 946
page view 50
panels 44
playback 503
played duration 639
removing 64
resetting 65

key commands *(continued)*
searching 61, 62
soloing 507, 508
text formatting 371
Key Editor 619, 621, 651
configurations 627, 664, 665
controls 659, 660, 663
copying 628, 637
deleting notes 638
dynamics. *See* Dynamics editor
height 625
histogram. *See* Histogram tool. *See also* Transform tool
inputting notes 632
instruments 623
key commands 44, 623, 625
locking 623
MIDI CC. *See* MIDI CC editor
moving notes 634
note duration 632, 633, 635, 639
panel 619, 621
percussion. *See* percussion editor
piano roll. *See* piano roll editor
pitch bends. *See* MIDI Pitch Bend editor
playing techniques. *See* Playing Techniques editor
rhythmic grid 621, 626
scrolling 619, 626
selecting 627
selecting velocity bars 664
slurred notes 1178
tempo 656
toolbar 621
Transform tool. *See* Transform tool. *See also* Histogram tool
transposing notes 636, 637
tuplets 630
velocity. *See* Velocity editor
voices 506, 621, 623
zoom 619, 625
key signatures 911, 918
accidentals 712, 912
atonal 913
barlines 737, 914
cautionary 915
changes 737, 912, 914
changing 268, 269, 412
clefs 914
deleting 431
enharmonic equivalent 915, 917
filter 407
hiding 109, 136, 266, 268, 269, 911, 913, 914
inputting 265, 267–269
instruments without 109, 136, 911, 916
major 913
MIDI import 92
minor 913
moving 437, 440
multi-bar rests 1153, 1154
multiple 911
none 913
octave divisions 918
open 913
panel 267, 269
key signatures *(continued)*
placement 914
polytonality 268, 269, 911
popover 266, 268
position 268, 914
respelling 917
scales 913
selecting 401, 404, 406, 407
showing 914
signposts 268, 269, 426, 911
start repeat barlines 737
tonality systems 918
transposing 445, 446, 917
transposing instruments 170, 679, 916
types 266, 913
Key Signatures, Tonality Systems, and Accidentals
panel 267, 269
key switches 695
expression maps 682, 688
MIDI import 92
percussion maps 701
Keyboard panel 197
key commands 44
keyboard shortcuts. *See* key commands
keyboards
inputting notes 210
key command maps 61
layouts 64
keys
major 913
minor 913
signatures. *See* key signatures
transposing 445, 446
kick drum. *See* unpitched percussion
kits. *See* percussion kits
kneed beams. *See* centered beams

L

l.v. ties. *See* laissez vibrer ties
labels
brackets 1188
instrument changes 130–132
instruments 176, 1180
markers 1099
percussion kits 1189, 1293
player groups 1188
staves. *See* staff labels
laissez vibrer ties 1062, 1232, 1240
angle 1243
shape 1243
width 1240, 1243
landscape orientation 550, 551, 556
lanes. *See* editors. *See also* tracks
languages 56
application 56
date and time 57
ensembles 111
instruments 57, 109, 111, 131, 176, 178
key commands 28, 61, 64
staff labels 57
tokens 57

large
noteheads 944
selections 403
time signatures. *See* large time signatures
large time signatures 1254, 1256
bar numbers 749
largo. *See* tempo marks
latency
changing value 257
MIDI recording 252, 256
lattice arrangement
accidentals 715
layers. *See* voices
layout cards 114, 118
disclosure arrows 43
numbers 114. *See also* layout numbers
opening 114
layout names 172, 174
accidentals 174
changing 174
first pages 601
resetting 174
tokens 608
layout numbers 114
changing 171
order 170
layout options 29, 677
bar numbers 742–744, 746
copying to other layouts 596
dialog 677
saving as default 677
searching 677
Layout Options dialog 677
layout selector 32
order of layouts 170
switching layouts 43
layouts 26, 114, 118, 165, 595
accidentals 449, 452
adding flows 168
adding players 167
bar numbers 742, 744, 745
blank staves 564
braces 777, 778, 780. *See also* staff grouping
brackets 777, 778, 780. *See also* staff grouping
cards. *See* layout cards
casting off 581–585
chord symbols 790
clefs 315, 817, 819
color mode 543
comparing 48
concert pitch 170, 608, 895
condensing 595
copies 538
copying formatting 596, 597
copying properties 599
creating 92, 167, 171
cues. *See* cues
custom scores 165
deleting 171
divisi 1199
dynamics 831
empty staves 562, 564
enharmonic spelling 449, 452
layouts *(continued)*
exporting 542, 547
exporting audio 99
exporting MIDI 95
figured bass 859
file names 545
fingering 878
fit to paper 551
fixing 582–584
flow headings 567, 568, 603–605
flow ranges 540, 541
flows 118, 168, 565, 566
formatting 596
frame breaks 589
frame chains. *See* music frame chains
front matter 895
full scores 165
graphics files 542, 552
harp pedaling 1038
hiding staves 562, 563
image resolution 543
indents 1198
instrument change labels 1187
instrument filters. *See* instrument filters
justification 560, 569, 577
keyboard 61, 64
large time signatures 1254, 1256
Layouts panel 114
left pages 565
locking 582–584
margins 557, 570, 572
markers 1099, 1100
MIDI import 92
multi-bar rests 744, 1152, 1154
multiple windows 49
MusicXML files 84
naming 174. *See also* layout names
navigation 417–420
note spacing 579, 580
note spelling 449, 452
numbered bar regions 1128
numbers. *See* layout numbers
opening 34, 43
opening multiple 45, 48
orchestral order 123, 124, 158, 1188
order 170
orientation 550, 551, 556
page numbers 1033
page ranges 540, 541, 547
page size 550, 556
page template sets 558, 600
page templates. *See* page templates
page turns 589
panel in Print mode 534
panel in Setup mode 114, 165
paper sizes 550
parts 165, 167, 596
percussion kit presentation 1294
percussion legends 1295
player order 123, 124, 158, 1188
players 118, 167
printing 538, 547, 551
propagating parts 596, 597

layouts *(continued)*
properties 599, 615–617
rehearsal marks 1095, 1197
removing flows 168
removing page overrides 602
removing players 167
renumbering 171
repeat marker text 1115
restoring 171
running headers 568
scale size 551
selecting 32
settings 677
sorting 170
staff filters. *See* instrument filters
staff labels 608, 1181
staff size 559
staff spacing 559, 560, 577, 1226
staves 562, 563
switching 43
system dividers 1194, 1195
system formatting 559, 569, 577, 586, 596
system objects 1196, 1197
tabs 34, 45
tacets 592–594
text 370, 601, 1220, 1226, 1230
time signatures 1254, 1256, 1262
timecodes 1100, 1104, 1105
titles 599, 601, 603
tokens 608, 895
transposing 133, 165, 169, 170, 608, 895
vertical justification 560
view types 41
zoom 420
Layouts panel
Print mode 533, 534
Setup mode 106, 114
lead sheets
barlines 738
bars per system 582
capo chord symbols 147–150
chord diagrams grid 809, 810
chord symbols 782
clefs 818
key signatures 914
project template 78
systems per frame 583
learning materials 69
ledger lines 948
hiding 948
width 948
left hand hooks. *See* lines
left pages
starting from 565
left zone 38, 39
Engrave mode 478
hiding 44
Print mode 534
Setup mode 107
showing 44
Write mode 191
left-foot pedals. *See* harp pedaling. *See also* pedal lines
left-hand fingering 880
erased backgrounds 883
hammer-ons. *See* hammer-ons
inputting 262, 265
placement 872
popover 265
position 882
pull-offs. *See* hammer-ons
size 880
slides 885, 886
tapping. *See* tapping
left-hand guitar tapping. *See* tapping
legato
note durations 248
playback 690, 1178
playing technique. *See* playing techniques. *See also* playback techniques
slurs 1155, 1178
legends
percussion. *See* percussion legends
leggiero. *See* dynamic modifiers
length 410, 481
arpeggio signs 332, 333, 997
audio 100
bar repeat phrases 412, 1121
barlines 739–741
bars 428, 729
brackets 958
chord symbol parentheses 801
continuation lines 1066, 1067, 1072
divisi passages 437, 440
dynamics 410, 647, 843
figured bass 861–863, 865, 867
fingering slides 886
glissando lines 1003
grace note slashes 902
guitar bends 1015, 1017, 1019
H-bars 1153
hairpins 832, 848
hold lines 861–863, 865, 867, 1015
hooks 481, 1046, 1111
instrument names 131, 132, 175, 1181
jazz articulations 1030
laissez vibrer ties 1240
lines 368, 369, 410, 1066–1068, 1072, 1082–1084, 1094
lyric extender lines 934
lyric hyphens 934
messa di voce 848
multi-bar rests 1153
notated duration of notes 639
notehead brackets 958
notes 248, 633, 635, 639
octave lines 410, 824
pedal lines 1046, 1050, 1053, 1057
percussion legends 1297, 1298
played duration of notes 639
player group names 160
player names 173
playing techniques 1066, 1067, 1072
repeat endings 1109, 1111
reverb tail 100
slurs 1156, 1166

length *(continued)*
staff labels 1181, 1184
stemlets 772
stems 760, 965
string indicators 1066, 1067
system dividers 1196
systems 569
tempo marks 1208, 1217
tuplet brackets 1276
lentando. *See* gradual tempo changes. *See also* tempo marks
lento. *See* tempo marks
let ring. *See* laissez vibrer ties
letter paper sizes 550
letters
rehearsal marks 1097
levels
channels 667, 668, 673
dynamics. *See* dynamic levels
nested tuplets 1271
pedal lines 1045, 1046, 1048, 1049. *See also* pedal level changes
libraries 677
fretted instrument tunings 141
percussion 700
project templates 78
sound 488, 491, 505, 518, 682, 683, 700
libretto
exporting 924
librettist 75, 609
lifts
jazz articulations. *See* jazz articulations
pedal lines. *See* pedal retakes
ligado. *See* hammer-ons
light swing. *See* swing playback
light theme 52
Limiter 671, 675
limits 660, 661, 663
histogram controls 660, 661, 663
Lin One Dither 671, 675
line breaks
repeat markers 1115
staff labels 176, 1186
text 370
line spacing. *See* staff size. *See also* staff spacing
linear points 653, 656
inputting 646, 652, 657
lines 1000, 1062, 1067, 1075, 1077
accidentals 1084
alignment 484, 1084
angled 367, 1075, 1081
annotations 1077
appearance 1071, 1085, 1086
arpeggio signs. *See* arpeggio signs
attachments 367, 368, 1075, 1078
backgrounds 1092
bar numbers 746, 747
barlines. *See* barlines
beams. *See* beaming
brackets 776, 779, 781, 1188
caesuras. *See* caesuras
caps 1072, 1077, 1086
changing 1071, 1085, 1086
lines *(continued)*
chords 225, 332–335, 368, 369, 441
colors 55
columns 1079
components 1077
cross-staff 369
crosshairs 484
deleting 431
diagonal 368
drawing 657
duration 1083, 1084
dynamics 645, 646, 649
enclosures 743
end position 1084
ends 1077
erased backgrounds 1092, 1093
figured bass. *See* figured bass
fingerings 888
frame breaks 1094
glissando. *See* glissando lines
grace notes 901, 1080
gradual tempo changes 1218
groups 1188
guitar bends. *See* guitar bends. *See also* vibrato bar handles 1094
harp pedaling 1036, 1042
hiding 410, 862, 1070
holds. *See* hold lines
horizontal 368, 1075, 1078, 1079
horizontal text 1091
inputting 367–369
Insert mode 429, 430
jazz articulations 1028, 1031
joining notes. *See* beams
ledger 948
length 481, 1082–1084, 1094
lyrics 374–376, 919, 934, 935. *See also* lyric extender lines
markers 1100
MIDI 651, 652, 655
moving 437, 440, 481, 1079, 1080, 1094
noteheads 941, 1084, 1283
notes. *See* stems. *See also* beaming
octave lines. *See* octave lines
order 1067, 1079
padding 1093
pauses. *See* caesuras. *See also* pauses
pedal. *See* pedal lines
placement 1079, 1081
playback. *See* playhead
player groups. *See* player group labels
playing techniques. *See* playing technique lines
position 1078
repeat endings. *See* repeat endings
repeat marker text 1115
reversing 1087
secondary beams 769
secondary brackets 779, 781
segments 1094
showing 410, 862, 1070
size 1082
slurs 1155, 1162
staff-relative placement 1081

lines *(continued)*
start position 1084
staves 1192
stemlets. *See* stemlets
stop position 429, 430
string indicators 364, 365, 410
string shift indicators 889
system breaks 1077, 1094
system dividers. *See* system dividers
tablature 1200
tempo marks 496, 656, 1215, 1216
text 1077, 1088–1093, 1227
thickness 783
through noteheads 941, 1283
ties 1234, 1235
timecodes 1100
trills 982, 983
tuplet brackets. *See* tuplet brackets
types 1071, 1075, 1078
velocity 643
vertical 369, 1075, 1078
vertical position 1067, 1078, 1081
vibrato bar. *See* vibrato bar
width 569
wiggly 982, 994
linking 855
dynamics 436, 855, 856
flow names 178
flow titles 178
groups of dynamics 853, 854
Key Editor 623
MIDI 436, 655
percussion maps to VST/MIDI 531
slurs 436, 1169, 1170
staves. *See* brackets. *See also* braces
tracks 623
lists
comments 472
Hub 69
players 172, 607
little finger. *See* pinky finger
loading
MIDI instruments 493
playback templates 523
sounds 493, 523
video files 182
VST instruments 493
local
chord symbols 303, 782
figured bass 377, 858
properties 599, 615–617
locations
backups folder 105
lock
duration. *See* lock to duration
frames 479, 584, 585
Key Editor 623
layouts 584, 585
systems 478, 584, 585, 587
lock to duration 187, 448
loco. *See* octave lines
locrian
chord symbols 308, 795
scales 460, 467
lower case
chord symbols 783
flow titles 610
Roman numerals 610
lower limits. *See* limits
lower notes
percussion 227, 1283, 1286
trills 993
lower zone 31, 38, 196
Engrave mode 615, 667
hiding 44
key commands 44
Key Editor. *See* Key Editor
Mixer panel. *See* Mixer panel
Play mode 619, 667
Properties panel. *See* Properties panel
Setup mode 117
showing 44
Write mode 615, 619, 667
lute. *See* fretted instruments
lv ties. *See* laissez vibrer ties
lydian
chord symbols 308, 795
scales 460, 467
lyric extender lines 374–376, 919, 921, 934, 935
extending 374
handles 934
inputting 374, 376
moving 481, 934
lyric hyphens 921, 934
extending 374
handles 934
inputting 374
moving 481, 934
lyric lines 375, 919, 935
adding 374, 375
changing 920, 936, 937
copying 922
deleting 431
moving 929
navigation 376
numbers 935–937
offsets 929
placement 926
position 926, 929
lyricist 75
first pages 601, 895
tokens 609
lyrics 919, 1221
alignment 925, 927
beaming 757
changing 920, 930–932, 936
chorus 375, 919, 920, 936
colors 55
copying 922
counts 931
crosshairs 484
deleting 431
East Asian elision slurs 938, 939
editing 930–932

lyrics *(continued)*
elision slurs 374, 376, 938
exporting 924
extender lines. *See* lyric extender lines
filters 407, 924, 925
font styles 932, 934
gaps 925
handles 926, 929, 934
hyphens. *See* lyric hyphens
inputting 374, 376
italics 932, 933
lines. *See* lyric lines. *See also* lyric extender lines
melismatic 374, 376, 925, 934
moving 437, 440, 481, 927–929, 936, 937
note spacing 580, 925, 927
offsets 929
paragraph styles 934
placement 925
popover 374–376
position 925
printing 924
saving 924
selecting 402, 407, 925
size 932, 934
spacing 580, 925, 927, 929, 932, 934
staff-relative placement 928, 929
syllable types 376, 921
text 930–932
translations 375, 919, 920, 936
types 375, 919, 921
verse numbers 938
vertical position 919, 920, 928, 929, 935–937
zoom 931

M

macOS
printing 541
main chord symbols 142, 147, 148, 150
transposing 146
major
chord symbols 307, 783
intervals 445–447, 463
keys 913
scales 460, 467, 913
make into
frame 479, 591
system 478, 587
Manage Instrument Filters dialog 423
mandolin. *See* fretted instruments
manual staff visibility 562, 563
manuscript paper 564
Map Pitches dialog 459
Map Scale dialog 460
maps
expression. *See* expression maps
key commands 61
percussion. *See* percussion maps
pitches. *See* pitch mapping
scales. *See* scale mapping
marcato. *See* articulations
margins 570
changing 557
chord diagrams 809
flow headings 571
hiding 416
instrument names. *See* staff labels
music frames 570, 572
MusicXML files 82
pages 555, 557, 570
staves 569, 570, 572, 1181, 1182, 1198
tacets 594
mark-up. *See* comments. *See also* annotations
markers 1099, 1103
colors 55
comments. *See* comments
deleting 384, 431
dialog 383
exporting 95, 100
filter 407
flags. *See* signposts
hiding 1099, 1116
important 385, 1102
importing 97
inputting 383, 497
moving 437, 1102
panel 384
repeats 387, 388, 1113
showing 1099, 1116
signposts. *See* signposts
staff 1100
staff spacing 559, 577
text 97, 383, 384, 1101
timecodes 383, 1102
track 497, 500
vertical position 559, 577, 1100
marks
rehearsal. *See* rehearsal marks
tempo. *See* tempo marks
trills 977, 978, 981, 990
marquee tool 41
Key Editor 627
using 403, 627, 664
martelé. *See* articulations
masking. *See* hiding
master output volume 667–670, 673
master pages. *See* page templates
matches
options search 58, 677, 679
Maximizer 671, 675
measured tremolos. *See* tremolos
measurement
units 51
measures. *See* bars
medium swing. *See* swing playback
melismatic lyrics 374, 376, 925, 934
melodic minor. *See* scales. *See also* key signatures
meno. *See* tempo marks. *See also* dynamic modifiers
Mensurstriche 740
merging
flows 79, 85, 86, 565
notes 92, 240, 242, 441, 595
pedal lines 1053
players 79, 82, 85, 86, 89, 92

merging *(continued)*
projects 79
staves 441, 595
voices 89, 92, 441, 595
messa di voce 849
aperture 843
gaps 848
grace notes 849
handles 843, 849
inputting 296, 298, 299, 302, 850
length 848
moving 437, 829, 843, 849
showing 850
ties 299, 302, 437
meter 1249
beam grouping 755, 774
changing 412
channel levels 667, 668
irregular 729, 732
note grouping 755, 774, 1133
open 1250, 1256, 1258
rest grouping 755, 774
rhythm slashes 1133
time signatures. *See* time signatures
tremolos 1264
tuplets 1271
metric modulation
tuplets 1273
metronome marks 1204, 1211
appearance 1206, 1207
beat units 282, 412, 1211, 1212
brackets 1206, 1207
changing 412, 658, 1212, 1213
click 496
components 1206, 1207
decimal places 285, 286, 1212
equations 283, 1218
hiding 1211
inputting 280, 285, 286, 657
moving 437, 481, 1214
multiple positions 1196
order 1214
parentheses 1206, 1207
playback 496, 515, 1213
popover 280
range 1213
relative tempo changes 1213
selecting 402
showing 1205, 1211
values 412, 658, 1212
vertical positions 1196
mezzo
dynamics. *See* dynamics
microtones 719
EDO 918
guitar bends 341, 1009, 1012
intervals 463, 464
transposing 464
trills 985–987
mid-system gaps
codas 1113, 1117
middle C
clefs 816
expression maps 688
fretted instruments 138
percussion maps 701
playback 688, 701
middle line
stem direction 961
MIDI
accidental spelling 234
channels 488, 526, 667–670
commands 59, 63
controllers. *See* MIDI controllers
copying 436, 628, 655
deleting 629
devices. *See* MIDI devices
dialog 86, 94, 95
editor. *See* MIDI CC editor. *See also* MIDI Pitch Bend editor
endpoints 525, 528, 530
exporting 98
expression maps 682, 683, 696, 697
fader 668
files. *See* MIDI files
Histogram tool 659, 661
importing 85, 86, 94
inputting 652, 655
instruments 488, 492, 495. *See also* MIDI instruments
Key Editor 651
linking 436
loading instruments 493
markers 497
mixer 667–670
navigation 63
note input 210, 225, 234
note range 127
opening 72
order 688
overlapping notes 248
overriding 655
pan 668, 669, 674
pedal lines 1061
percussion maps 531, 700, 701, 703
piano roll editor 630
pitch bend 651
playback 495, 525, 700
ports 488, 526
quantization 94
range 127
recording. *See* MIDI recording
slurs 1178
tempo 496, 504, 656
Tempo editor 656
tempo track 496
tempo tracks 96–98
thru 252
unlinking 436
values 654, 659, 660, 663
volume 857
MIDI CC editor 650, 651
adding 627, 651
closing 627, 651

MIDI CC editor *(continued)*
constant points 653
copying points 628
deleting points 629
filter 661
height 625
Histogram controls 660
inputting points 652
linear points 653
moving points 654
pedal lines 1061
selecting points 627
Transform controls 663
transformations. *See* Transform tool. *See also* Histogram tool
values 654, 659, 661, 663, 664
zoom 625
MIDI channels 667–670
MIDI controllers 651, 857
copying 436, 628, 655
dynamics 857
editor. *See* MIDI CC editor. *See also* MIDI Pitch Bend editor
inputting 627, 652, 655
pedal lines 1061
Transform tool 663
transformations. *See* Transform tool. *See also* Histogram tool
values 654, 659–661, 663, 664
MIDI devices 258
activity 39
chord symbols 303, 488, 498, 499
disabling 258
enabling 258
expression maps 682, 696, 697
note input setup 230
percussion kits 230
percussion maps 700, 703
playback templates 518, 519
polychords 303
warning 39
MIDI files 85
dialog 86, 95
exporting 95
grace notes 94
importing 85, 86
key signatures 92
opening 72
pedal lines 85, 92, 258
percussion maps 89
playback overrides 640
playing techniques 92
quantization 85, 94
repeats 509
requantizing 255
slurs 92
sustain pedal controllers 258
tremolos 92
trills 92
tuplets 94
unpitched percussion 86
MIDI Import Options dialog 86
MIDI instruments 488, 492
endpoints 528
instances 492
loading 493
numbering 492
panel 491
MIDI Pitch Bend editor 650, 651
adding 627
closing 627
copying points 628
deleting points 629
height 625
moving points 654
selecting points 627
transformations. *See* Transform tool. *See also* Histogram tool
values 654, 661, 664
zoom 625
MIDI points
copying 436
linking 436
unlinking 436
MIDI Quantize Options dialog 94
MIDI recording 252, 253
audio buffer size 256, 257
click settings 496
devices 258. *See also* MIDI devices
dialog 94
grace notes 94, 899
input pitch 218
latency 257
optimization 256
overlapping notes 248
pedal lines 256, 258
pitch 218
quantization 94, 253
repeats 255
requantizing 255
retrospective recording 254
setup 256
slurs 256
starting 253
stopping 253
sustain pedal controllers 258
tempo mode 504
time signatures 253
transport window 515
tremolos 256
trills 256
voices 252, 253
MIDI thru 252
millimeters
unit of measurement 51
milliseconds 33, 515
mini transport 31, 33
minims. *See* half notes
minor
chord symbols 307, 783
intervals 445–447, 463
keys 913
scales 460, 467, 913
minutes 33, 515, 1103
duration tokens 610

Missing Fonts dialog 74
missing sounds
    loading 523
mixer 667, 668
    channel strips 671
    channels 667–670, 672
    filters 671, 672
    height 673
    hiding 667–669
    hiding audio outputs 526
    muting tracks 507, 508, 667, 668
    panning 669, 674
    ports 667, 668
    resetting 508, 667, 673
    scrolling 672
    showing 667–669
    soloing tracks 507, 508, 667, 668
    soundtracks 184
    videos 184
    volume 673
Mixer panel 667
    key commands 44
mixolydian
    chord symbols 308, 795
    scales 460, 467
mock-ups
    exporting 99
modal
    chord symbols 308, 795
    scales 460, 467
moderato. *See* tempo marks
modern accidental cancellation 721
Modernist accidental duration rule 719, 720
modes 21, 31
    chords 205, 795
    Engrave 477
    Insert 205, 226, 242, 427
    jump bar 65–67
    Play 485
    Print 533
    scale mapping 460, 467
    Setup 106
    tempo 504
    transposing 460, 467
    Write 186
modifier keys
    key commands 61
    searching 61
modifiers. *See* dynamic modifiers
modulation wheel dynamics 857
molto
    centered 841
    dynamics 296, 298, 839, 841
    marcato. *See* articulations
    tempo marks 280, 283
monochrome graphics 553
MonoDelay 671, 675
monophony. *See* polyphony
MonoToStereo 671, 675
moon noteheads 944, 946
mordents. *See* ornaments
morendo. *See* gradual tempo changes. *See also* dynamic modifiers
MorphFilter 671, 675
mosso. *See* tempo marks
motors. *See* playing techniques
mouse input 201
    activating 187, 219
    deactivating 187, 219
    settings 202, 203
movements 22, 162
    adding 163
    exporting 80, 81
    flow headings 603
    importing 79
    multiple on pages 565
    splitting 470
    tacets 592
movies. *See* videos
moving 417, 437, 440, 481
    accents 726
    accidentals 716, 717
    arpeggio signs 997
    articulations 726, 727
    bar numbers 746, 747
    bar rests 1148
    barlines 431
    bars 583, 586, 587, 589, 590
    braces 777, 778
    brackets 777, 778, 801, 803, 958
    breath marks 908
    caesuras 908
    caret 210, 243
    channels 672, 673
    chord diagrams 810
    chord symbols 791, 792, 801, 803
    clefs 437, 440, 817
    counts 1118, 1131, 1140
    crosshairs 484
    cursor 262, 310, 376, 381
    dives 1017, 1019
    dynamics 437, 647, 829, 831, 840, 843, 849, 853–856
    fermatas 908, 910
    figured bass 861, 865, 867
    fingerings 810, 882, 885, 886
    flow headings 571
    flows 164, 590, 591
    frame breaks 585
    frames 570, 571
    glissando lines 1003
    grace notes 899, 900, 902
    gradual dynamics 437, 829, 843
    guitar bends 1015, 1017–1019
    H-bars 1154
    hairpins 437, 829, 843, 849
    hammer-ons 1026
    hold lines 1015
    instruments 130, 137, 161
    jazz articulations 1030
    Key Editor 626
    layouts 170
    lines 1079, 1080, 1094
    lyric extender lines 934
    lyric hyphens 934
    lyrics 927–929, 936, 937

moving *(continued)*
marcato 726
markers 1102
messa di voce 437, 843, 849
MIDI points 654
multi-bar rests 1154
navigating. *See* navigation
notehead brackets 958, 959
notes 437, 442, 444, 579, 634, 636, 637, 950, 1305, 1307, 1308
notes to other staves 440, 636, 637, 764, 768, 1291
notes to other strings 1202
numbered bar region counts 1131
octave lines 824
ornaments 978
pages 420
panning 674
parentheses 801, 803
pedal lines 92, 1046, 1050
piano roll 626
players 123, 124, 161
playhead 419, 502
playing techniques 1066, 1067
pull-offs 1026
repeat counts 1118
resolutions 867
rests 579, 1148
rhythm dots 950, 1307
rhythm slashes 1135
selection. *See* navigation
slash region counts 1140
slashes 902
slurs 1166, 1173
staccato 726
staves 123, 124, 559, 570, 572
stop positions 429
stress marks 726
string indicators 893, 1066, 1067
subito 840
system breaks 585–587
systems 586, 587, 590, 591
tablature notes 1202
tabs 48, 49
tacets 594
tapping 1026
tempo marks 658
tenuto 726
text 481, 1225
text on lines 1089, 1090
time signatures 1261
tremolos 1269
tuplets 440, 1280
vibrato bar 1019, 1066
view 418–420, 626, 672
mp. *See* dynamics
MP3 files
exporting 99, 100
muffed notes. *See* dead notes
multi-bar rests 592, 1120, 1152
bar numbers 744
barlines 293
clefs 1153, 1154
hiding 1152
multi-bar rests *(continued)*
key signatures 1153, 1154
moving 1154
showing 1152
signposts 426, 1154
single bars 1152
splitting 1154
tacets 592, 593
time signatures 1153, 1154
width 1153
multi-note tremolos. *See* tremolos
multi-pasting 434, 435
multi-rests. *See* multi-bar rests
multi-segment slurs 1170–1172
multi-staff instruments 1193
cross-staff beams 764, 766, 768
hiding staves 562, 563, 577
slurs 260
multiple
bar numbers per system 746
bounce roll. *See* tremolos
codas 1114
flows on pages 565
movements 162
segnos 1114
staff input 209, 225
multiple-voice contexts 1303
articulations 724
dynamics 414, 838
fermatas 907, 909
grace notes 898, 1157
guitar pre-bends 1013
inputting notes 221
note alignment 1306
notes 1309
ornaments 414, 978
rests 1144, 1146
rhythm dot consolidation 950
slashes 1134, 1136
slurs 1157
stem direction 898, 962, 1309
ties 1237
voice column index 1307
music
arranging. *See* arranging
condensing. *See* condensing
deleting 125, 137, 165, 428, 431, 729–731
editing 201
extracts. *See* flows
fixing into frames 591
fixing into systems 587
transforming. *See* transformations
music area 35
making selections 403
moving music 418–420
multiple windows 49
navigation. *See* navigation
opening flows 487
opening layouts 34, 43, 47
page arrangements 42, 50
panels 44
Play mode. *See* track overview

music area *(continued)*
view options 41, 42, 50
zoom options 42, 420
music fonts 69
Music Fonts dialog 681
music frame chains 613
propagating part formatting 596
music frames 605
frame chains. *See* music frame chains
fullness 480
highlights 477
margins 570, 572
padding 480, 570, 572
vertical justification 577
music symbols
inputting 370, 373, 608
text 370, 373, 608
tokens 608
MusicXML
chord symbols 803
dialog 84
exporting 84
importing 82
opening 72
pedal lines 1061
percussion 83
repeat endings 1112
resetting beaming 758
staff labels 1181
muted
colors 509
notes. *See* dead notes
mutes. *See* playing techniques
muting
channels 507, 669, 675
colors 509
deactivating 508, 667, 668
effects 675
inserts 675
instruments 507
items 509
notes 408, 509
slash notes 442, 1141
tracks 507, 667, 668
voices 507
mutual exclusion groups 692
editing 699

N

names
drum sets 150
flow headings 603
flows 178, 179
groups 155
instrument filters 423
instruments. *See* instrument names
layouts 172, 174
mixer 669
noteheads 945
percussion kits 150, 155
player groups 158, 160, 1188
players 172–175, 607, 1184
names *(continued)*
staff labels. *See* staff labels. *See also* instrument names
tokens 607
naming schemes
file names 545
narrow time signatures 1262
Nashville
chord symbols 306, 783
numbers 305
natural harmonics 968
appearance 972, 974
hiding 969
showing 969
natural minor. *See* scales. *See also* key signatures
naturale. *See* playing techniques
naturals
hiding 713, 720, 721, 971
inputting 233
parentheses 713, 720, 971
showing 713, 720, 721, 971
navigation 65, 417
bars 419
caret 210
chord symbols popover 310
figured bass popover 381
fingerings popover 262
flows 418
handles 483
items 417
jump bar 65, 66
Key Editor 625, 626
layouts 43, 47
lyrics popover 376
mixer 672
music area 417
note input 211, 214, 232
notes 417
pages 418, 420
part layouts 43, 47, 487
percussion editor 625, 626
piano roll 625, 626
print preview area 37, 533
rehearsal marks 419
rhythmic grid 204
strings 138
Write mode 417
nested
slurs 1158, 1167
tuplets 1271, 1272
new projects 71
New York chord symbols 783
niente 851
circle 851, 852
deleting 852
inputting 296, 298, 299, 302, 852
moving 829, 843
styles 852
text 851, 852
no chord symbols 308
nodes 968
changing 970
non-arpeggio signs. *See* arpeggio signs

non-drop frame timecodes 1103
non-power of two time signatures. *See* time signatures
non-sustaining instruments 857
  velocity 642. *See also* Velocity editor
non-transposing layouts 169
nonuplets. *See* tuplets
notated duration 639
  played duration 639
  requantizing 255
  tool 621
notation options 29, 679
  barlines 734, 737
  beaming 754
  dialog 679
  percussion kits 1289
  rests 1147
  saving as default 679
  searching 679
  voices 1304
Notation Options dialog 679
notation reference 711
notation staves 1200
  hiding 1201
  showing 1201
notations
  appearance 615
  changing 412
  copying 433–435
  editing 615
  inputting 24, 259
  panels 186
  percussion kits 1291
  popovers 24
  position 615
  properties 615
  selecting 402, 403
  settings 677, 679
  stacking order 825
  tucking index 825
  zoom options 42, 420
Notations toolbox 192
notches
  pedal lines. *See* pedal retakes
  slurs 1161
  ties 1234
note and rest colors 55, 951, 1148
  changing 54, 55
  exporting 542, 554
  hiding 416, 509, 951, 1304
  inverting 55
  muted 509
  notehead sets 945
  notes out of range 54, 951, 1200
  printing 538, 554
  rests 1148
  tablature 1200
  voices 54, 1304
note brackets. *See* bracketed noteheads
note durations 16, 191, 247, 639
  changing 248, 635
  chords 240
  different 221
  expression maps 683, 697
note durations *(continued)*
  forcing 250
  hiding 191
  inputting 211, 214, 247, 248, 250
  inputting beats 288
  Key Editor 633, 635
  metronome marks 282
  notated 639
  percussion 227, 633, 635
  playback 690
  played 639
  quantization 94
  rhythm dot consolidation 950
  selecting 247, 249
  showing 191
  slash regions 1133
  splitting 249
  tablature 232
  tempo equations 282
  transformations 453
  tuplets 243, 246
  voices 221
note event actions. *See* key switches
note grouping 25, 774
  beaming 754, 755, 757, 758, 774
  changing 250
  hemiola 250
  meter 755, 774
  note input 25, 26
  pick-up bars 1253
  rests 25
  rhythm slashes 1133
  ties 237
  time signatures 26
note input 210, 211, 214, 632
  adding notes 247, 464
  caret 205, 210
  chords 205, 240
  Drum Pads panel 200
  Fretboard panel 199
  fretted instruments 199
  grace notes 239
  input pitch 218
  inputting vs. editing 201
  Insert mode 205
  Keyboard panel 197
  lock to duration 448
  MIDI 252–254, 256
  mouse input 219
  multiple staves 209, 225
  muting notes 408
  percussion 227, 230, 231, 633
  piano keyboard 197
  pitch 218
  playing notes back 408
  register selection 214
  repitching notes 448
  rests 1145
  retrospective recording 254
  rhythmic grid 204
  starting 209
  stem direction 231
  strings 199

note input *(continued)*
tablature 214, 232
ties 237
tuplets 243
voices 221
note names 467
case 57
chord symbols 306–308
harp pedaling 1036, 1037, 1042
inversion 465
language 57
noteheads 945
pitch mapping 467
note spacing 579, 580, 639, 766, 1148, 1154, 1306
accidentals 717
changing 579, 1149, 1307
chord symbols 791
copying to other layouts 596
cross-staff beams 766
default 580
fullness 480
galley view 41
grace notes 898
justification 480, 569
layout options 580, 677
layouts 580
lyrics 580, 925, 927
rests 1149
rhythm dots 1307
signposts 426
stems 766
systems 480, 569
voices 1307
note spelling 449, 450
adding notes 464
automatic 450
layouts 452
resetting 452
transposing 464
note tools popover 462
adding notes 247
transposing notes 447
note values. *See* note durations
note velocities
MIDI import 92, 256
notehead sets 940, 941, 945
colors 945
designs 941, 945
ledger lines 948
pitch-dependent 945
scale degree 945
types 940
notehead-attached lines. *See* lines
noteheads 941
aikin 945
arrows 943
articulations 727
brackets. *See* bracketed noteheads
changing 946
circular 941
colors 55, 945
crosses 942
cues. *See* cues
noteheads *(continued)*
designs 941, 945, 946. *See also* notehead sets
diamond 942, 943, 969, 972
dotted 944
fermatas 908
five-line staff 1285
funk 945
harmonics 969, 972
hiding 949, 952
large 944
ledger lines 948
lines 1084
moon 944
muted 944
note names 945
overlapping 1305
parentheses. *See* bracketed noteheads
percussion 227, 633, 637, 1283, 1285, 1286, 1288
pitch-dependent 945
playing techniques 637, 1283, 1285–1287
rectangular 944
sets. *See* notehead sets
shapes 941, 945. *See also* notehead sets
showing 949, 952
size 413, 827, 941
slashes 944, 1132, 1141, 1283
square 944
stemless 966
time signatures 1258
triangular 943
types 941
unpitched percussion 1283, 1285
walker 945
wedges 943
notes 25, 940
above staves 247, 444, 764, 782, 822, 948, 1194
accidentals 191, 233, 712
adding to existing notes 247
alignment 831
appearance 615
arpeggio signs. *See* arpeggio signs
articulations 191, 724–726
auditioning 408, 409
auxiliary 989
beaming 754, 755
below staves 247, 444, 764, 782, 822, 948, 1194
brackets. *See* bracketed noteheads
brass fingerings 887
changing pitch 444, 448
chord symbol alignment 791
chords 240, 242, 311, 312
colors 54, 55, 509, 945, 951, 1304
condensing. *See* condensing
copying 433–435, 637, 724
crossing to other staves 440, 764, 768
cues. *See* cues
custom scale size 413
dead notes 1025
deleting 428, 431, 638, 729, 1268
deselecting 408
dotted 219, 755, 774
durations 191, 247–249, 633, 635, 639

notes *(continued)*
dynamics 296, 642, 645, 828. *See also* Dynamics editor
dynamics alignment 830, 831
editing 187, 615
editorial. *See* bracketed noteheads. *See also* comments
enharmonic spelling 449, 450, 452
exploding 441
filters 407
fixing duration 250
fonts 681
ghost notes 954
glissando lines. *See* glissando lines
grace notes 239, 897, 899
grouping 755, 774
guitar bends 338, 339, 1006
guitar post-bends 341, 1009
guitar pre-bends 340, 1008
harmonics. *See* harmonics
harp pedaling 1036, 1037
hiding 949, 952, 1136
hiding ledger lines 948
hiding stems 966
horizontal spacing. *See* note spacing
horn branch indicators 888
inputting 210, 211, 214, 218, 219, 226, 227, 240, 250, 632, 633
Insert mode 226, 427
inverting 453, 455, 465
jazz articulations. *See* jazz articulations
Key Editor 619, 630
laissez vibrer ties 1240
ledger lines 948
length 248, 633, 635
lines. *See* lines. *See also* glissando lines
lock to duration 448
lyric alignment 927
moving 454, 456, 950, 1283, 1286, 1305, 1307
moving graphically. *See* note spacing
moving rhythmically 437, 634
moving to other instruments 637, 1291
moving to other staves 440, 637, 764, 768
moving to other strings 1202
multiple-voice contexts 1305, 1309
muting 507, 509, 1025, 1062
navigation 417
notated duration 26, 639
note spacing 579, 580
notehead designs 941
notehead sets 940
order 1307, 1308
out of range 54, 951, 1202
overlapping 248, 1304, 1305, 1307
overrides 639, 640
parentheses 953, 954
partials 968
pedal lines 1050
percussion editor 627, 631–635, 637
percussion kits 227, 633, 1283, 1288, 1289, 1293, 1300
percussion maps 701
piano roll editor 619, 627, 630, 632, 634–636
notes *(continued)*
pitch 444, 448
pitch mappings 458
pitch-dependent noteheads 945
Play mode 632
playback 503, 506, 507, 509, 682
played duration 639, 640
popover 462
properties 615
ranges 54, 951
register 214, 444, 448
removing stem direction changes 965
repitching 448
requantizing 255
resetting 640
rests 1145
retakes 1050
reversing 454. *See also* retrograde
rhythm dots 219, 950, 1307
rhythm slashes 1142
rhythmic grid 204
rolls. *See* tremolos
rotating 456
scale mapping 460
scale size 413
secondary beams 768
selecting 401–403, 408, 417, 627
showing 949, 952, 1136
size 413, 827
slash regions 1136
slashes 1132, 1141
slurs 191, 724, 1158
spacing. *See* note spacing
speed 247–249, 772, 1204
spelling 449, 450, 452
splitting 187, 249, 1241
staff spacing 559
stem direction 442, 961, 963, 964, 1300
stem length 965
stemlets 772
stems. *See* stems
string fingerings 888, 889, 947
string indicators. *See* string indicators
strings 1202
tablature 1202
terminology 16
ties 26, 237, 726, 1239
time signatures 1258
transforming 453
transposing 444–447, 464, 636
tremolos. *See* tremolos
trill intervals 986, 987
trills 981
tuplets 1271, 1273
types 191
unbeaming 757
undamped 1240
unisons 1305
unscaling 900, 1273
velocity 642. *See also* Velocity editor
voices 221, 442, 443
Notes panel 186, 191
Notes toolbox 187

November music font 681
nudging. *See* moving
numbered bar regions 744, 1127
  changing number 1129
  counts 1128, 1129
  font style 1128
  frequency 1129
  handles 410, 1127
  hiding 1128
  highlights 1122
  inputting 400
  length 410
  moving 437
  panel 390
  parentheses 1129
  placement 1131
  popover 389
  showing 1128
  staff-relative placement 1131
  systems 1128
numbers
  backups 104
  bar repeats 1122, 1123
  barlines 510
  bars. *See* bar numbers
  bars per system 582
  beam lines 769
  chord diagrams 810, 811, 813, 814
  condensing 1190
  figured bass. *See* figured bass
  flows. *See* flow numbers
  frets. *See* frets. *See also* tablature
  instruments 124, 129, 1186
  layouts 171
  lyric lines 935–937
  moving 481
  multi-bar rests 1152
  numbered bar regions 1127–1129
  pages 1033
  plug-in instances 488, 491, 492
  rehearsal marks 1096, 1097
  repeats 510
  rhythm slashes 1139
  slash region counts 1138
  slur segments 1171
  staff labels 1186, 1190
  staff lines 564, 1293, 1294
  staves 562, 1193, 1194
  strings. *See* string indicators
  systems per frame 583
  tablature. *See* tablature
  time signatures 1257
  tuplets 1279
  value fields 618
  verses 938
numerators
  styles 1256, 1257
  time signatures 1249
numeric value fields 618
nut
  chord diagrams 806
  fretted instruments 138
  tablature 142, 143, 1200

O

oboe. *See* instruments
octatonic
  chord symbols 308
  scales 460
octave divisions 918
  EDO 918
  transposing 445, 446
octave lines 822
  alignment 823, 824
  crosshairs 484
  deleting 431
  Engrave mode 824
  filter 407
  frame breaks 824
  handles 824
  hooks 824
  inputting 314, 316, 318, 320
  length 410, 481, 824
  moving 437, 440, 481
  panel 320
  placement 825
  popover 314, 316, 318
  position 823–825
  selecting 402
  size 413
  stacking order 825
  staff-relative placement 414
  system breaks 824
  tucking index 825
  types 316, 822
octave transpositions 444–446
  clefs 315, 819, 820
  figured bass 869
  inversions 453, 455, 465
  octave lines 316, 822
  pitch mapping 458, 459, 467
  scale mapping 460, 467
Octaver 671, 675
octuplets. *See* tuplets
odd-numbered layouts
  booklets 548
  printing 538, 548
offsets 481, 618
  accidentals 717
  bar numbers 746–751
  chord symbols 792, 803
  fret numbers 813, 814
  lyric lines 929
  multi-bar rests 1153, 1154
  played duration 639, 640
  rehearsal marks 1096
  resetting 415
  rhythm dots 1307
  timecodes 181, 1104
  tuplets 1280
  videos 181
  voice columns 1307, 1308
omissions
  chord diagrams 806, 814
  chord symbols 307
opacity 426, 543, 553

open
    key signatures 913
    meter 271, 274, 275, 1250, 1256, 1258
    strings. *See* open strings
    time signatures 271, 274, 275, 1250, 1256, 1258
open strings 968
    chord diagrams 806, 814
    harmonics 968
    pitches 138, 140
opening 72
    auto-saved files 103
    documentation 69
    editors 627, 665
    files 72, 103
    flows 487
    Key Editor 619, 627, 665
    layouts 43
    MIDI files 72, 86
    mixer 667–669
    MusicXML files 72
    panels 44
    projects 71–73, 103
    tabs 45, 47
    templates 71
    transport window 515
    video tutorials 69
    video window 183
    windows 49
    zones 44
optical spacing
    cross-staff beams 766
optimized staves 559, 560, 562. *See also* condensing
optional notes. *See* bracketed noteheads. *See also* parenthesized chord symbols
options 29, 615
    items 615
    layout 677
    notation 615, 679
    page sizes 551
    preferences 58
    properties 615
    searching 58, 677, 679
    text formatting 371
    toolbar 31
    transport 31, 33
    workspaces 31, 32
    zoom 39, 42, 420
orchestral
    cues. *See* cues
    instrument filters. *See* instrument filters
    order 123, 137, 158, 171, 1188
    panning 674
    shorthand 111
    staff grouping 778, 1188
    templates 71, 78, 111
orchestrating. *See* arranging
order
    accidentals 715, 716, 912
    actions 688
    articulations 725
    band 123
    chord symbols 797
    expression maps 683
order *(continued)*
    flows 75, 164
    frame chains 613
    instrument filters 423
    instruments 124, 129, 137, 156, 173, 174, 1186
    key signatures 912
    layouts 170
    lines 1079
    metronome marks 1214
    MIDI messages 688
    names 137, 173, 174
    notes 1307, 1308
    orchestral 123, 124, 137, 158, 1188
    pages 42, 50
    players 123, 124, 158, 1188
    playing techniques 1067
    rehearsal marks 1096
    repeat markers 1114
    rhythm dots 950, 1307
    score 123, 124, 158, 1188
    staff labels 1186
    string indicators 1067
    tabs 48
    tempo marks 1214
    voices 679, 1304, 1307
orientation
    changing 556
    exporting 551
    landscape 550, 551
    portrait 550, 551
    printing 538, 551
ornaments 977
    acciaccaturas. *See* grace notes
    accidentals 977, 990
    alignment 978
    appoggiaturas. *See* grace notes
    changing 412
    colors 55
    crosshairs 484
    deleting 431
    filter 407
    inputting 325, 326, 331, 332
    intervals 977
    jazz 1029. *See also* jazz articulations
    length 410
    moving 437, 440, 454, 456, 481, 978
    panel 330, 332
    placement 978
    popover 326, 331
    position 978
    reversing 454. *See also* retrograde
    rotating 456
    selecting 402
    slurs 979
    staff-relative placement 414
    trills. *See* trills
    types 326
Ornaments panel 332, 333, 335
ossia staves 1194
    condensing 1194
    moving 437, 440
    playback 1194
    signposts 426, 1194

ossia staves *(continued)*
staff spacing 559, 577
vertical spacing 559, 576, 577
ottava lines. *See* octave lines
outputs
audio export 58
mixer 526, 667, 668
plug-ins 526
volume 673
overdubbing
MIDI recording 255
overlapping
accidentals 715, 716
articulations 727
barlines 832
dynamics 832
notes 242, 248, 426, 579, 950, 1304, 1305, 1307
slash regions 1134
slurs 1159
staves 556, 559, 573, 579
text 426, 579, 1226
voices 950, 1304, 1305, 1307
overline text 371
instrument names 176
staff labels 176
Override Percussion Noteheads dialog 1285
overrides
barlines 293, 294, 426, 737
clefs 315, 817, 819
dynamics 646, 649
endpoints 528
flow headings 602, 603
MIDI points 655
note duration 639, 640
placement 414
playback templates 518–520, 523, 528
played duration 640
removing 640
transposition 315, 817, 819
velocity 640
overscroll 420
overtones. *See* partials

P

padding
chord diagrams 809
chord symbols 783, 799, 803
dynamics 835
frames 555
harp pedaling 1041
lines 1093
music frames 480, 570, 572
percussion legends 1299
playing techniques 1064
rests. *See* padding rests
silence 100
text 1093, 1229
time signatures 1261
padding rests 1144
hiding 1136
slash regions 1136
page arrangements 41, 42, 50
page breaks. *See* frame breaks
page formatting 555
bars per system 582
blank staves 564
casting off 581
divisi 1199
empty staves 562, 564
fixing 581–584, 591, 596, 597, 599
flow headings 555, 603
formatting 600
left pages 565
locking 584
make into frame 591
make into system 587
multi-bar rests 1154
multiple flows 565
page size 556
page templates 558, 599–601
resetting 585, 602
staff size 573
staff spacing 559, 576, 1226
staves 562, 563
systems 559, 583
tacets 593
text 681, 1226
titles 599, 603
page margins 555, 570
changing 557, 572
hiding 416
page numbers 601, 1033
count 610
flow headings 568, 1034
flows 610
hiding 568, 1034
initial 565, 1034
numeral style 1033
page templates 601
showing 568
tokens 610
total 610
page ranges
exporting 540, 541
flows 540, 541
printing 540, 541
selecting 547
page size 550, 551
changing 556
graphics files 542
layout options 677
MusicXML files 82
page template overrides 1221
removing 602
page template sets 600
applying 558
flow headings 600, 603
layouts 558
page templates 27, 599, 601
assigning to pages 566
composer 601
copying 599, 601
default 601
first 566, 601
flow headings. *See* flow headings

page templates *(continued)*
page numbers 601, 1033
project templates 78
sets. *See* page template sets
titles 601
types 601
page turns. *See* frame breaks
page view 41, 50
arrangements 42, 50
flows 470
navigation 418, 420
pages
arrangements 42, 50
background color 53, 55
breaks. *See* frame breaks
changing view 50
color 53, 55
copying 599, 601
deleting 602
dragging 420
edges. *See* page margins
editing 602
exporting 540–542, 547
formatting 895
frames. *See* frames
fullness 480, 559, 560, 573, 574
going to 418
hiding empty staves 562
layouts 555, 581, 583, 599
locking 584
making from selection 591
margins 555, 557, 570–572
multiple flows 565
navigation 418, 420
numbers. *See* page numbers
orientation 556
page templates 555, 599
printing 540, 541, 547, 551
ranges 547
rectangles. *See* frames
setup 551
size. *See* page size
templates 599
tokens 610
total number 610
turns. *See* frame breaks
view options 39
Pages panel 477
palettes. *See* panels
panels 38, 192
accidentals 269
arpeggio signs 330, 333
bar repeats 390
barlines 290, 294
bars 290, 291
clefs 316, 318, 320
drum pads 200
dynamics 298, 302
Engrave mode 477, 615
flows 106, 117
formatting 478
fretboard 199
glissando lines 330, 335
panels *(continued)*
guitar techniques 330, 339, 344, 345, 347, 348
hiding 32, 43, 44
holds 324
jazz articulations 330, 337
Key Editor 619
key signatures 267, 269
keyboard 197
layouts 106, 114, 534
MIDI instruments. *See* track inspector
mixer 667
notations 195
notes 191
octave lines 320
ornaments 330, 332, 333, 335, 337
pauses 324
pedal lines 355, 361
Play mode 485
players 106, 107
playing techniques 355, 358, 361
Print mode 533
print options 535
properties 615
repeat endings 390
repeat markers 390
rhythm slashes 390
Setup mode 106
showing 32, 43, 44, 196
tempo 283, 286
time signatures 273, 275, 278
tonality systems 269
tremolos 390, 397
VST instruments. *See* track inspector
Write mode 186, 191, 195, 615
panning 668, 669, 674
paper
color 53
duplex printing 549
orientation 550, 551
size 550, 551, 556
paradiddle 211, 247, 1271
paragraph styles
bar numbers 745
changing 1225
inputting text 370
lyrics 934
missing fonts 74
player group labels 1188
tacets 592
parallel
lines 754, 768, 907, 1000, 1067, 1194
parentheses
accidentals 713, 720, 971
bar numbers 753
bar repeats 1122, 1124
capo chord symbols 142, 783
chord symbols. *See* parenthesized chord symbols
counts 1124, 1128, 1129, 1138, 1140
dynamics 833
figured bass 378, 861, 864
fingerings 262, 263, 879
fret numbers 1006, 1011
ghost notes. *See* bracketed noteheads

parentheses *(continued)*
guitar bends 1006, 1008
harmonics 971
hiding 801
inputting 303, 309, 377, 378, 713, 800, 833, 861, 864, 954, 971
instrument transpositions 1186
metronome marks 1206, 1207
moving 803, 958
noteheads. *See* bracketed noteheads
numbered bar regions 1128, 1129
octave line numerals 822
padding 803
pedal continuation signs 1058
percussion notes. *See* bracketed noteheads
playing techniques 1069
shape 801, 864, 954
showing 801
size 802
slash regions 1138, 1140
staff labels 1186
string shift indicators 947
style 801
tablature 972, 1006, 1008, 1011
tempo marks 1206, 1207
thickness 801
tie chains 956
time signatures 271, 274, 1256, 1259
trills 989
vibrato bar dives and returns 1011
parenthesized chord symbols 799, 953
capos 142, 783
moving 803
padding 803
showing 800
single 801
size 801, 802
style 801
part formatting 596, 597
system formatting 596
part layouts. *See* layouts
part names 172, 174
partial
beams 769
capos 143–145
harp pedaling 1042
hiding. *See* erased backgrounds
partial bars. *See* pick-up bars
partials 968, 970
parts. *See* layouts
pasting. *See* copying
pataflafla. *See* grace notes. *See also* sixteenth notes
patches
endpoints 525
playback 525, 682, 700
path
export 80, 84, 95, 98, 99, 544
patterns
chord diagrams 805, 812–814
inversion 453, 455
mapping 458–460, 467
pitches 457, 458, 467
repeating 433, 457, 458, 467
patterns *(continued)*
retrograde 454, 455
rotating 456, 457
scales 460, 467
pauses 905, 907
appearance 412
barlines 910
breath marks. *See* breath marks
caesuras. *See* caesuras
changing 909
crosshairs 484
default settings 907
deleting 431, 1149
duration 412
fermatas 906, 909
filter 407
hiding 1149
inputting 320–324
linked 909
moving 437, 481, 910
multiple at same position 909
panel 324
playback 905
popover 321, 323
position 907
rests. *See* rests
selecting 402
single staves 909
staff-relative placement 907
types 321, 905
PDF files 552
color 553
exporting 542, 543
fonts 553
key commands 59
layout numbers 171
layouts 542, 543
page size 542
project preview 75
peaking 673
pedal level changes 1045, 1046, 1048, 1049
end level 1049
handles 1046
inputting 1048
removing 1050
start level 1048, 1049
pedal lines 1036, 1044
alignment 1050
appearance 1053, 1054, 1056, 1059, 1060
brackets 1058
changing 412
colors 55
continuation lines 1044, 1053, 1056, 1057
crosshairs 484
dashed 1056
dashes 1057
deleting 431
duration 1061
end signs 1055, 1056
Engrave mode 1046
filter 407
formatting 1054–1057
gaps 1057

pedal lines *(continued)*
grace notes 1051
handles 1046
harp pedaling. *See* harp pedaling
hiding 1054–1056
hooks 1046, 1053, 1055
inputting 351, 354, 359, 361
length 410, 481, 1046, 1050, 1053
levels. *See* pedal level changes
lifts 1045
merging 1053
MIDI controllers 1061
MIDI import 85, 92, 258
MIDI recording 256, 258
moving 92, 437, 481, 1046, 1050
MusicXML import 1061
muting in playback 509
notes 1050
order 1050
panel 355, 361
parentheses 1058
percussion 1062
playback 1061
popover 354, 359
position 1050, 1051
releases 1053
removing retakes 1050
retakes. *See* pedal retakes
signposts 426
splitting 1052
staff-relative placement 1050
start signs 1053, 1054, 1058
text 1058–1060
thickness 1057
types 354, 1044
pedal retakes 1045
handles 1046
inputting 354, 359–362
notes 1050
pedal level 1049
removing 1050
types 1047
pedals
harp pedaling. *See* harp pedaling
piano. *See* pedal lines
percentages
horizontal spacing 480, 569, 580
note duration 690, 1178
scale size 413, 538, 551, 802, 880
tempo marks 1205, 1213, 1214
vertical spacing 480, 560, 577
percussion
adding 109, 111, 121, 133, 134
articulations 1283
drum sets. *See* drum sets
groups 158, 1188
instrument changes 130, 133
kits. *See* percussion kits
laissez vibrer ties 1240
legends. *See* percussion legends
note input 227, 230, 231, 632, 633
noteheads 637, 1283, 1285–1287
part names 172, 174
percussion *(continued)*
pitched percussion. *See* instruments
playing techniques 705
rudiments 211, 247, 897, 1264, 1271
staff labels 1184, 1188, 1189
system objects 1197
tremolos 705, 1283
unpitched percussion. *See* unpitched percussion
percussion editor 631
copying notes 637
deleting notes 638
height 625
inputting notes 632
moving notes 634, 637
navigation 626
note duration 633, 635, 639
played vs. notated durations 639
playing techniques 631
scrolling 626
selecting notes 627
tools 621
tracks 494
zoom 625
Percussion Instrument Playing Techniques dialog 1283
percussion kits 1282, 1289
adding instruments 153
caret 227
changing instruments 153
creating 134, 135, 153
drum sets. *See* drum sets
dynamics 1293
editing area 150, 1293
exporting 1290
filtering instruments 150
five-line staff 1192, 1293
gap sizes 157
grids 154–157, 1293
groups 154–156
importing 1290
individual instruments vs. kits 1288
inputting notes 227, 633
instrument order 156
legends 1295
moving notes 1291
naming 150, 154, 155
notation options 1289
notations 1291
note input 230, 231, 632
noteheads 637, 1283, 1285, 1286
playing techniques 637, 1282, 1283, 1286
presentation types 150, 1288, 1293, 1294
removing instruments 158
rests 679
rhythm slashes 1142
setting up 150, 230
single-line instruments 1293
spacing 157
staff labels 150, 154, 155, 1181, 1189, 1293
staff position 156, 230, 1283
staff-relative legend placement 414
staves 150, 1288, 1293, 1294
stem direction 150, 231, 679, 1300

percussion kits *(continued)*
stickings 1292
voices 150, 679, 1300, 1301
percussion legends 1295
adding 1296
backgrounds 1299
changing 1296
crosshairs 484
erased backgrounds 1299
handles 1297
instrument names 1298
layouts 1295
length 1297, 1298
padding 1299
position 1295
ranges 1295, 1297
signposts 426, 1295
sounding instruments 1297
staff-relative placement 414
text 1298
types 1295, 1296
percussion maps 700
creating 703
custom 703
dialog 701
endpoints 525, 531
exporting 705
file format 705
filters 701
importing 705
linking 531
MIDI import 89
note input 230
playback techniques 701
resetting 701
Percussion Maps dialog 701
percussion stickings 1292
perfect intervals 445–447, 463
performance instructions 599, 601, 895, 1221
adding 370
parts 370
playing techniques. *See* playing techniques
period 16
dynamics 840
lyrics 921
rhythm dots 187, 219
subito 840
Petaluma music font 681
Phaser 671, 675
phrases
bar repeats 412, 1121
chord symbol regions 793
slurs 1155
phrygian
chord symbols 308, 795
scales 460, 467
piano 127
chord symbol playback 499
depressed notes. *See* bracketed noteheads
dynamics. *See* dynamics
hand marks. *See* lines
level changes 1045, 1050
pedal lines. *See* pedal lines
piano *(continued)*
playback 1061
reduction. *See* reducing. *See also* condensing
retakes 1045, 1050
slurs 260
substitution fingering 872
piano roll editor 630
copying notes 637
deleting notes 638
height 625
independent voice playback 630
inputting notes 632
moving notes 634
navigation 626
note duration 632, 635, 639
pitch 630, 632, 636
played vs. notated durations 639
scrolling 626
selecting notes 627
tools 621
tracks 494
transposing notes 636
tuplets 630
zoom 625
piccolo. *See* instruments
pick-up bars 1250, 1253
deleting beats 288, 428, 729, 730
inputting 270, 272, 277, 278, 428
turning bars into 428, 1253
pictures
videos 180
pincé. *See* ornaments
pinch harmonics 972, 975
PingPongDelay 671, 675
pinky finger 880
inputting 265
popover 265
pit band. *See* bands. *See also* project templates
pitch
accidentals 233, 712
bends. *See* pitch bends
changing 140, 444, 446–448, 636
changing string 1202
chord diagrams 813, 814
clefs 317, 318, 816
click 496
concert 170
dips 1026
expression maps 683, 696
filters 407
fretted instrument strings 140
guitar strings 140
guitar techniques 1026
harmonics 968–970
input 218
instruments 133, 136
inverting 453, 455, 465
jazz articulations 1028
key signatures 911
mapping 458, 460
metronome click 496
microtonal 463, 719, 918
note input 214, 233

pitch *(continued)*
noteheads 940, 945
octave lines 318, 320, 822
open strings 138, 140
ornaments 977
partials 968, 970
piano roll editor 630, 636
popover 462
ranges 951
repeating 457, 458, 467
reversing 454, 455. *See also* retrograde
rotating 456, 457, 466
strings 138, 140, 813, 814, 947
transposed 133, 170
transposing. *See* transposing. *See also* transposed pitch
trills 984, 986, 987, 990, 991, 993
pitch before duration 214
accidentals 218
activating 187
articulations 218
rhythm dots 218
pitch bends 1000, 1006
guitar. *See* guitar bends
MIDI controllers 650, 652
pitch mapping 458, 459, 467
più. *See* tempo marks. *See also* dynamic modifiers
pizzicato. *See* playing techniques
placement
articulations 727
breath marks 908
caesuras 908
changing 414
chord symbols 792
dynamics 829
fermatas 908
fingerings 871, 875
grace notes 898
harp pedal diagrams 1042
lines 1079, 1081
lyrics 925
octave lines 825
order 825
ornaments 978
pauses 907
pedal lines 1050
playing techniques 414, 1066
rehearsal marks 1095
rests 1144
slurs 1155, 1158, 1164
tempo marks 1208
ties 1237, 1245
tremolos 1265
tucking index 825
voices 1306
plain font 1221
playing techniques 1062
string indicators 891
time signatures 1262
Play mode 21, 485
channels. *See* channels. *See also* tracks
deleting notes 638
Endpoint Setup dialog 526
Play mode *(continued)*
exporting expression maps 700
expression maps 682, 693
inputting notes 632
loading sounds 493, 505
MIDI instruments 488, 492, 493
mixer. *See* mixer
moving notes 634
note durations 633, 635, 639
overrides 640
panels 38, 485, 488
percussion editor 631
percussion maps 700
piano roll editor 630
playback 503
playhead. *See* playhead
switching 485
toolboxes 485
track overview 486
tracks 494
transport 33, 515
VST and MIDI panel 491
VST instruments 488, 491, 493, 505
window elements 485
zooming 501, 625
playback 503, 706, 1199
accents 728
activating 31, 503
arpeggio signs 998, 999
articulations 506, 507, 683, 728
audio buffer size 256, 257
bar repeats 1121
bracketed noteheads 954
bypassing inserts 675
changing sound libraries 523
channels. *See* channels. *See also* tracks
chord symbols 488, 498–500
chords 409
click 496, 503, 515, 656
dead notes 1025
default settings 523
default tempo 431, 1204
dynamics 408, 506, 507, 645, 690, 838, 857
elapsed time 515, 517
endpoints 525, 526, 528, 530, 531
excluding items 509
exporting audio 99, 100
expression maps 682, 683
faders 667, 668, 673
fast-forwarding 502
fixed tempo 504
flows 530
follow tempo 504
ghost notes 954
glissando lines 1004, 1036
grace notes 904
guitar bends 1006
harmonics 968–970
hiding notes 1136
instruments 506, 507, 682, 700
jazz articulations 706, 1028
Keyboard panel 197
legato 690, 1178

playback *(continued)*
line 501
marcato 728
metronome 515
metronome click 496
MIDI controllers 651
mixer. *See* mixer
multiple windows 49
muting 507–509, 667
mutual exclusion groups 699
note durations 639, 690
note velocity 642
notes 408, 409, 506, 507
number of times played 510
ornaments 977
ossia staves 1194
overrides 640
panning 674
patches 525
pauses 905
pedal lines 1061
percussion 531, 631, 637, 700, 701, 1282, 1283, 1285, 1286
playhead. *See* playhead
playing techniques 506, 507, 697, 706, 707
playthroughs 510
plug-ins 668
preferences 58
recording notes 254
repeats 509, 510
resetting volume 673
reverb 669, 670, 676
rewinding 502
selections 503
silence playback template 518, 519
slashes 442, 1136, 1141
slurs 260, 506, 507, 1178
soloing 507, 508, 667
staccato 728
starting 503
swing 512, 513, 515
templates. *See* playback templates
tempo 496, 515, 656, 1212–1214
tempo equations 1218
tenuto 728
timecode 515, 517, 1099, 1103
transport 515, 517
tremolos 506, 507, 705
trills 991, 992
velocity 642
vibrato bar dives and returns 1011
voices 506, 507, 530
volume 408, 667, 668, 673
Playback Technique Combinations dialog 693
playback techniques 525, 697, 706, 707, 723, 1062
attribute 707
combinations 693, 697
creating 707
deleting 699, 707
direction 707
editing 707
endpoints 525
expression maps 682, 683
playback techniques *(continued)*
fallback 707
mutual exclusion groups 699
percussion 705
percussion maps 701
playback templates 518
resetting 707
playback templates 518, 519
changing 523
creating 523
custom 518, 520, 523
dialog 519, 520
endpoint configurations 491, 526, 528
exporting 525
factory default 519
fallback 520
file format 518
importing 524
metronome click 496
overriding 518
resetting 523
track inspector 488
played duration 639, 904
changing 639, 640
key commands 639
notated duration 639
overrides 639, 640
resetting 640
slurs 1178
tool 621
player cards 107, 118
disclosure arrows 43
player group labels 1180, 1188
fonts 1188
hiding 1188
showing 1188
player groups 107, 158
adding players 159
bracket grouping 740
creating 92, 159
deleting 161
ensembles 111
filters 423
labels. *See* player group labels
MIDI import 92
moving players 161
naming 160
removing players 161
player labels
hiding 1187, 1188
moving 481
showing 1187, 1188
staff labels 1180, 1184, 1188, 1190
player names 172
changing 173
groups. *See* player group labels
instrument tracks 495
resetting 173, 174
staff labels 1184
tokens 607
players 23, 118, 120
adding 109, 111, 121, 126, 127, 133, 159
adding to flows 164

players *(continued)*
brackets 777, 778, 1188
cards 107
changing transposition 136
chord symbols 303, 789
clefs 817
colors 495, 630, 631
combined parts 167
condensing 595
copying 122
deleting 125, 137, 161
divisi 1199
duplicating 122
empty staves 562
ensembles 107, 125
exporting 80
exporting audio 99
exporting MIDI 95
extra staves 1193
figured bass 377, 859
flows 118, 164
groups. *See* player groups
hiding 164, 167
importing 79
instrument change labels 1187
instrument order 137
instruments 23, 50, 127, 133, 136
layouts 118, 167, 174
lists 172, 607
maximum number 120
merging 79, 82, 85, 86, 89, 92
MIDI import 86
moving 123, 161
moving between groups 161
moving instruments between 137
multiple instruments 50, 133, 173, 174, 1184
muting 507, 508, 667
naming 172–175, 1184
numbering instruments 129
ossia staves 1194
panel 106, 107
panning 674
part layouts. *See* layouts
percussion kits 134, 135
pitch 133
player names 173, 174
position in score 123
removing from flows 164
removing from groups 161
saving 114
section players 107, 120, 121
showing 164, 167
single players 107, 120, 121
soloing 507, 508, 667
soloists 124
sorting 123
staff labels 1184
staff size 574
staves 562, 563
swing playback 513, 515
system dividers 1195
tablature 1200, 1201
tokens 607
players *(continued)*
transposition 133
volume 673, 838
Players panel 106, 107
playhead 501
color 54
fast-forwarding 502
hiding 503
moving 419, 502
playback 503, 515
position 503
repeats 509
rewinding 502
showing 503
transport 515, 517
zooming 501, 625
playing technique lines 1067, 1072
appearance 1070, 1071
caps 1072
changing 1071, 1074
components 1069
default settings 1067
duration 410, 1068, 1070
hiding 1070, 1071
showing 1070, 1071, 1073
system breaks 1069
playing technique-specific noteheads 897, 1062, 1282, 1283, 1285
appearance 1288
articulations 705
changing 637, 1286
creating 1287
inputting 227, 633
playback 705
playing techniques 1062
adding text 1063
backgrounds 1064
brackets 1069
changing 412, 637, 1286
collision avoidance 1067
colors 55
combinations 693, 697, 705
continuation lines 1067, 1071–1073
creating 1287
crosshairs 484
deleting 431
dialog 707
divisi 1199
duplicating 1070
duration 410, 1068, 1070, 1073
editor. *See* Playing Techniques editor
endpoint configurations 528
erased backgrounds 1064
expression maps 682, 683, 706
filter 407
font 1062
frame breaks 1066
grouping 1067, 1072, 1073
guitar. *See* guitar techniques. *See also* vibrato bar handles 1066, 1068, 1072
harmonics. *See* harmonics
hiding 1065
inputting 351, 352, 356, 358

playing techniques *(continued)*
length 410, 481, 1066, 1067
lines. *See* playing technique lines
MIDI import 88, 89, 92
moving 437, 440, 454, 456, 481, 1066, 1067
muting 509
noteheads 637, 705, 1283, 1285–1288
order 1067
padding 1064
panel 355, 358
parentheses 1069
percussion 705, 1282, 1283, 1285, 1292
placement 1066
playback 506, 507, 682, 683, 706, 707
popover 352, 356
position 1066
repeating 1070
reversing 454. *See also* retrograde
rotating 456
selecting 402
showing 1065
signposts 426, 1065
size 413
staff-relative placement 414
system breaks 1066
text 1062, 1063
ties 356, 358
tracks. *See* Playing Techniques editor
types 352, 1062
ungrouping 1074
vertical position 1067
voices 356, 358, 506, 507
Playing Techniques editor 641
hiding 641
showing 641
playing techniques lanes. *See* Playing Techniques editor
Playing Techniques panel 358, 361
playthroughs 1107
bar numbers 753
changing 510
dividing 1108
MIDI recording 255
optional notes. *See* bracketed noteheads
repeats 510, 1108
total number 1107
plops. *See* jazz articulations
plucked instruments
arpeggio fingering 884
fingerings 262, 880
popover 265
slides 885, 886
string indicators. *See* string indicators
strings 947
tablature. *See* tablature
tuning 138
plug-ins 518
allowing 505
blocking 505
changing 518, 676
configurations 520, 526, 528–530
endpoints 518, 525, 530, 531
expression maps 531, 683
plug-ins *(continued)*
instances 488, 491
loading 493
mixer 526, 668, 671
percussion maps 531
playback 488, 491, 518, 668
reverb 676
saving 528, 529
plus sign
caret 205
chord symbols 783
mutes. *See* playing techniques
rim shots. *See* playing techniques. *See also* playing technique-specific noteheads
tapping 1022
time signatures 271, 1250
PNG files 552
color 553
exporting 542, 543
layout numbers 171
layouts 542, 543
project preview 75
resolution 552
poco a poco
centered 841
dynamics 296, 298, 839, 841, 847
tempo marks 1206, 1207
points
constant 653
copying 628, 649, 655
deleting 629
dynamics 645–647
linear 653
MIDI 651–654
selecting 627
tempo changes 656, 657
unit of measurement 51
polychord chord symbols 308, 782
arrangement 797
inputting 303
polymeter 274, 275, 1249
polyphony 1303
adding voices 221
changing voices 442
condensing. *See* condensing
exploding 441
MIDI import 89
MIDI recording 252, 253
reducing 441
polytonality 268, 269, 911
popovers 24, 192
add intervals. *See* note tools popover
arpeggio signs 328, 332
bar repeats 389, 399
barlines 288–290, 293, 294
bars 288, 290
beats 288
changing items 412
chord symbols 305, 310
clefs 314, 315, 317
commands. *See* jump bar
dynamics 296, 299
ensembles. *See* ensemble picker

popovers *(continued)*
figured bass 378, 381
fingerings 262, 263
glissando lines 328, 334
guitar techniques 328, 338, 341, 343, 345–347, 349, 350
harp pedaling 354
holds 321, 323
instrument filters 422
instruments. *See* instrument picker
jazz articulations 327, 336
key signatures 266, 268
lyrics 374–376
metronome marks 280
note tools 247, 447, 462
numbered bar regions 389
octave lines 314, 316, 318
ornaments 326, 331, 332, 334, 336
pauses 321, 323
pedal lines 354, 359
playing techniques 352, 356, 359
repeat endings 387
repeat markers 388
repeats 387, 395, 399
rhythm slashes 389
string indicators 354
tempo 280, 285
time signatures 271, 274, 277
transpose 464
tremolos 388, 389, 395
trills 326, 987
tuplets 243, 244
port de voix. *See* ornaments
portamento. *See* glissando lines
portrait orientation 550, 551, 556
ports 488, 496, 526, 656
changing 530
chords track 488
expression maps 526, 531
instruments 530
mixer 668
percussion maps 526, 531
setup 526
Tempo editor 656
tempo track 496
position
arpeggio signs 997
articulations 724, 726
dynamics 829
figured bass 865
fingerings 871
grace notes 898
gradual dynamics 848
hairpins 848
inputting 201
Insert mode 427, 429, 430
instruments in percussion kits 156
items 415, 615
jazz articulations 1030
key signatures 914
lines 1078
new items 201
notes in multiple-voice contexts 1306
position *(continued)*
octave lines 823, 824
order 825
pauses 907
pedal lines 1051
resetting 415
rhythmic 26
slurs 1155, 1158, 1164
stop 427, 429, 430
string indicators 893
trill intervals 990
tucking index 825
vertical order 825
videos 183
possibile. *See* dynamic modifiers
post-bends. *See* guitar post-bends
pre-bends. *See* guitar pre-bends
pre-dives. *See* guitar pre-bends
preamble 895
barlines 738
clefs 818
key signatures 914
page templates 599
precipitando. *See* gradual tempo changes. *See also* tempo marks
preferences
colors 52
key commands 59, 63
MIDI 258
missing fonts 74
mouse input 202, 203
note input 214, 218
pedal lines 258
selection tools 41
sustain pedal controllers 258
theme 52
Preferences dialog 58
prefixes
dynamics 839
fingerings 888
hiding 132
instrument change labels 57, 131, 132
rehearsal marks 1098
presentation types 150
changing 1294
dynamics 1293
editing area 150, 1293
percussion kits 1288, 1293
presets
background color 53
chord symbols 783
effects 695
instrument filters 423
staff size 573
zoom 42
pressure. *See* playing techniques. *See also* lines
presto. *See* tempo marks
preview
color 53
file names 545
images 75, 102
note spacing 580

preview *(continued)*
print preview 37, 533
projects 75, 102
previous versions 73
primary
beams 768
instruments 623, 649, 652, 655
primary bar number sequence 749
changing 750, 751
returning to 752
primes 610
Print mode 21, 533
landscape orientation 547
page setup 551
panels 38, 533–535
portrait orientation 547
printers 546
switching 533
Print Options panel 533, 535
print preview area 37
navigation 37, 533
printers 546
selecting 538
printing 533, 538
annotations 554
arrangements 547
booklets 548
borders 554
comments 476, 554
copies 538
crop marks 554
date 554
duplex 538, 549
flows 540, 541
job types 547
key commands 59
landscape 547, 550
layouts 538
lyrics 924
macOS options 541
note colors 554
options 535
orientation 550
page sizes 550, 551
paper sizes 550
PDF files 542
portrait 547, 550
preview 37, 416
ranges 538, 540, 541
scale size 538
signposts 554
spreads 547
time 554
voice colors 554
watermarks 554
program change actions 682, 688, 695
Project Info dialog 75
project information 75
exporting 78
flow titles 178
page templates 601, 895
project templates 78
tokens 75, 178, 609
project templates 71, 78
categories 78
Hub 69
MIDI import 86
starting projects 71
project window 30
dark 52, 55
Engrave mode 477
light 52
opening multiple 49
Play mode 485
Print mode 533
Setup mode 106
splitting 48
theme 52
Write mode 186
projects 21, 75, 78
audio 99
auto-save 102, 103
backup location 105
backups 104
different Dorico versions 73
exporting 84, 95, 98
exporting flows 80, 81
flows 79–81, 162, 163, 179, 470
frame rates 185
full screen mode 50
Hub 69
importing flows 79, 82
layouts. *See* layouts
merging 79
MIDI files 95
missing fonts 74
movements 162
multiple windows 49
MusicXML files 84
opening 49, 72, 73, 103
PDF files 542, 552
preview 75
recent 73
recovering 103
settings 29, 677, 679
splitting flows 470
start area 35
starting 71
tabs 48
templates. *See* project templates
titles 179
tokens 607, 609
videos 180, 182
window 30
workspaces 43
Propagate Part Formatting dialog 597
propagating
part formatting 596
properties 599
properties 615
copying to other layouts 599
global 616, 617
local 616, 617
notations 615
notes 615
scope 615–617

properties *(continued)*
searching 615
selected items 615
values 618
videos 181
Properties panel 615
disclosure arrow 39
key commands 44
Write mode 186
pulgar. *See* thumbs
pull-offs. *See* hammer-ons
punctuation
duration 610
timecodes 1103

Q

qualifiers 296, 298
quality
chord symbols 303, 307, 783, 796
intervals 463, 464
transposing 445, 446, 464
quantization 94
changing 255
grace notes 94
MIDI import 85, 92, 94
MIDI recording 94, 253, 256
requantizing 255
splitting notes 249
tuplets 94
quarter depressed pedal lines 1045, 1046, 1048, 1049
quarter notes 16, 191, 211, 214, 225, 226, 247, 248
beats 288
chords 240
grace notes 239
metronome marks 282
percussion 227, 633
playback 690
rests 235, 1144
splitting notes 249
swing playback 512
tablature 232
tempo equations 1218
tremolos 395, 397, 1264
tuplets 243, 246
voices 221
quarter tones 719, 918
accidentals 719, 918
guitar bends 341, 1009, 1012
octave divisions 918
tonality systems 918
transposing 464
quartet templates 71, 78
staff grouping 778
quavers. *See* eighth notes
question marks
harmonics 969
tablature 444, 1200
quick tool selector 621
quintet templates 71, 78
staff grouping 778
quintuplets. *See* tuplets
quotation marks 610

R

rack. *See* VST and MIDI panel
rallentando. *See* gradual tempo changes. *See also* tempo marks
randomization 660, 661, 663
ranges
arpeggio signs 332, 333, 997
bar numbers 744, 1128, 1129
colors 54, 55, 951
copying notes 435
counts 1128, 1129
cues 827
flows 540, 541
glissando lines 1003
instruments 127, 138
keys 197
lines 369, 997, 1082
metronome marks 1211, 1213
notes 138, 951
numbered bar regions 1128, 1129
pages 538, 540, 541
percussion legends 1297
selecting 403
slurs 1160
strings 138
rasterizing. *See* staff size
rastral size 573
ratamacue. *See* grace notes. *See also* tuplets
rates
frames 185
ratios
grace notes 901
note spacing 580
swing playback 512
tuplets 1279, 1280
re-strikes. *See* guitar pre-bends
read-only mode 72, 105, 120
recent projects 69, 73
recipes 545
recording
audio 99
click settings 496
devices 258
input pitch 218
MIDI. *See* MIDI recording
pedal lines 256
playing techniques 256
retrospective recording 254, 515
tempo 504
Recover Auto-saved Projects dialog 103
recovering 254
backups 104
files 102–104
notes 254
rectangle
above systems. *See* system track
bar number enclosures 743
borders 1227
colored. *See* signposts
music. *See* music frames. *See also* frames
noteheads 944

rectangle *(continued)*
notes 630, 631, 639
text enclosures 1227
redo 31
reducing 165, 441, 442, 573
condensing. *See* condensing
note durations 248, 249
notes into chord symbols 311, 312
reeds 165
adding 109, 111, 121, 133
instrument changes 130
part names 172, 174
staff labels 1184
transposition 133
regions
bar repeats. *See* bar repeats
bars. *See* numbered bar regions
chord symbols. *See* chord symbol regions
counts 1122, 1128, 1138
dynamics 645
Play mode. *See* colored regions
slashes 1132, 1137. *See also* rhythm slashes
register
changing 444, 446, 447
clefs 317, 318, 816, 820
note input 214
octave lines 318, 320, 822
plug-ins 505
transposing 447, 820
rehearsal marks 1095
barlines 1095
colors 55
crosshairs 484
deleting 431
enclosures 1095
filter 407
going to 419
index 1096
inputting 382
moving 437, 481
multiple positions 1095, 1196, 1197
navigation 419
order 1096
placement 1095
position 1095
prefixes 1098
selecting 401, 404, 406, 407
sequences 1096, 1097
size 413
staff-relative placement 1095
starting number 1096
suffixes 1098
tempo marks 1095
types 1097
vertical positions 1196
relative channel change actions 695
relative tempo changes 1205, 1213
releases
guitar bends 1006
handles 1015, 1019
tremolos 388, 395, 397, 1266
reloading
video files 182
removing. *See* deleting
Rename Player dialog 173
Rename Player Group dialog 160
renaming
drum sets 150
endpoints 530
files 69
flows 178
groups 155
instrument filters 423
instruments 172, 175
layouts 172, 174
percussion kits 150, 155
player groups 160
players 172–174
staves 172, 175
titles 178
renumbering
bars 749–751
flows 164
instrument filters 423
layouts 171
repeat barlines 735, 736, 1113
counts. *See* repeat counts
end of systems 737
exporting 509
inputting 288–290, 293, 294
MIDI recording 255
number of times played 510
panel 290, 294
playback 509
playthroughs 510
popover 288, 289, 293
start of systems 737
text. *See* repeat counts
repeat counts 1118
changing 510
hiding 1118
location 1118
moving 1118
showing 1118
repeat endings 1107
additional endings 391, 393
alignment 1110
appearance 1111
bar numbers 753
crosshairs 484
deleting 431
exporting 509
filter 407
final segments 1111
frame breaks 1110
handles 1109, 1110
hooks 1111
inputting 387, 390–393
length 481, 1109
MIDI recording 255
moving 437, 481, 1109
multiple positions 1110, 1196, 1197
MusicXML files 1112
number of playthroughs 1107
optional notes. *See* bracketed noteheads
panel 390, 392, 393

repeat endings *(continued)*
playback 509
playthroughs 1107, 1108
popover 387, 391
position 1110
segments 1107, 1110
selecting 401, 404, 406, 407
size 1109
system breaks 1110
text 1110
types 387
vertical positions 1196
repeat jumps. *See* repeat markers
repeat markers 1113
bar numbers 753
barlines 737
changing 412
crosshairs 484
deleting 431
exporting 509
filter 407
hiding 1116
index 1114
inputting 388, 390, 394, 395
lines 1115
MIDI recording 255
moving 437, 481
multiple 1114
multiple positions 1117, 1196, 1197
number of times played 510
optional notes. *See* bracketed noteheads
order 1114
panel 390, 395
playback 509, 510
popover 388, 394
position 1117
showing 1116
staff-relative placement 1117
text 1115
types 388
vertical positions 1196
word wrapping 1115
Repeat Pitches dialog 458
repeat sections. *See* repeat markers
Repeat Structures panel 390
repeating. *See* copying. *See also* repeats
repeats
barlines. *See* repeat barlines
bars 1120, 1127
counts 510, 1122, 1128
dynamics 509
endings. *See* repeat endings
export 509
frequency 1123, 1129
grouping 1125
length 412, 1121
markers. *See* repeat markers
moving counts 481
notes. *See* tremolos. *See also* bar repeats
numbers 510, 1114, 1122, 1128, 1138
optional notes. *See* bracketed noteheads
playback 509, 510
repeats *(continued)*
playing techniques 1070
tempo marks 509
repeats popover 387
repitching notes 448
replacing 412
fonts 74
Key Editor configurations 665
replying
comments 470, 472, 474
requantizing notes 255
resetting 431
accidentals 712
appearance 415
background color 53
bar numbers 751, 752
beaming 758, 760, 764, 768, 769
capos 145–147
casting off 585
chord diagrams 811, 814
chord symbol voicing 500
chord symbols 796
colors 54, 55
cross-staff beaming 764, 768
dynamics 629
expression maps 693
figured bass 870
fingering slides 885
fingerings 811, 882
flow headings 604
instrument names 176, 178
items 415
key commands 65
layout names 174
layouts 171, 585
mute states 508, 667
note velocity 644
options 58, 677, 679
page color 53
page templates 566
paragraph styles 1225
part layouts 171
percussion maps 701
playback overrides 640
playback techniques 707
playback templates 523
played duration 640
player names 173, 174
position 415, 825
preferences 58
rests 1149
secondary beams 769
solo states 508, 667
staff labels 178
staves 562, 563, 585
stems 965
systems 585
tempo 1205
text 1225
trill intervals 988
velocity 644
voice order 1308

resetting *(continued)*
voicing 500
volume 673
resolution
changing 543
figured bass 377, 378, 862, 867
images 552
rhythmic grid 39, 204, 626
respelling
accidentals 197, 449, 450, 452
chord symbols 142, 794–796
key signatures 917
notes 197, 449, 450, 452, 458–460, 467
rest grouping. *See* note grouping
restating
accidentals 719, 720
restorative
clefs 317, 318
pedal lines 1058, 1060
text 1058, 1060
restoring. *See* resetting. *See also* hiding
rests 25, 1144
alignment 1144
bar rests. *See* bar rests
beaming 754, 755, 771, 772
changing type 1147
colors 55, 1148. *See also* note and rest colors
consolidation 679, 1146, 1152
deleting 248, 428, 729–731, 1149, 1150
dotted 679
durations 247
empty bars 1150
explicit 1144, 1145, 1147
figured bass 377, 858, 860, 868
filling in 248
forcing duration 250
grouping. *See* note grouping
H-bars. *See* multi-bar rests
hiding 1136, 1149–1152
implicit 1144, 1145, 1147
inputting 187, 197, 211, 235, 236, 250
moving 579, 1148, 1154. *See also* note spacing
multi-bar rests. *See* multi-bar rests
notation options 1147
padding 1136
percussion kits 679
placement 1144
position 1144
restoring 1149
showing 1149–1152
spacing. *See* note spacing
voices 1144, 1146, 1148, 1151
width 1153
retakes. *See* pedal retakes
reticles. *See* crosshairs
retrieving. *See* recovering. *See also* retrospective recording
retrograde 454, 455, 466
retrospective recording 254, 515
reverb 669–671
changing 676
hiding 672
reverb *(continued)*
showing 672
tail 100
reverb channels
mixer 668
REVerence 671, 675, 676
reverse
lines 1087
pitches 454, 455, 466
printing 548, 549
rhythms 454, 455, 466
stems 762–764, 768, 961, 963–965
Reverse and Invert Pitches dialog 455
Reverse Rhythms dialog 455
reverting. *See* resetting
reviewing
comments 470
print preview 37, 416, 533
rewinding 502, 515
rfz. *See* dynamics
rhythm
chord symbols 311, 312
locking 448
requantizing 255
reversing 454, 455, 466. *See also* retrograde
rotating 456, 457, 466
slashes. *See* rhythm slashes
tablature 1201
rhythm dots 219, 774
Chord mode 242
compound time signatures 1133
consolidation 950
deleting 949, 952
hiding 949, 950, 952
inputting 211, 214, 218, 219, 247
Insert mode 427
moving 950, 1307
number 219, 247
pitch before duration 218
rhythm slashes 1133
showing 950
splitting notes 249
tremolos 395, 397
voices 950, 1305, 1307
rhythm section
brackets 778, 1188
chord symbols 789, 790
staff grouping 778, 1188
rhythm slashes 1132, 1141
appearance 1134
bar rests 1146
beaming 1138
caret 205, 223
changing number 1139
counts 1138–1140
deleting 431
filter 407
font style 1138
frequency 1139
hiding rests 1136
highlights 1132, 1134
inputting 223, 390, 398
moving 437, 440, 1135

rhythm slashes *(continued)*
moving counts 481
note grouping 774, 1133
panel 390
parentheses 1140
percussion kits 150, 156, 227, 1142
placement 1140
popover 389, 398
regions 1132, 1138
rests 1136, 1146
rhythm dots 1133
splitting 1137
staff position 156, 1135
staff-relative placement 1140
stem direction 964, 1135
stemless 205, 223
stems 1138
type 1142
vertical position 1135
viewing options 1134
voices 223, 442, 1135, 1141, 1142
rhythmic feel 512
changing 513
default settings 512
deleting changes 515
popover 282
signposts 426, 513, 515
rhythmic grid 39, 204
changing 204
color 54
key commands 59, 63
Key Editor 621, 626
resolution 39, 204
selecting music 407
rhythmic notation 26, 1132
rhythmic position 26
playback 501
rhythmic position-attached lines. *See* lines
rich black 553
ride bell. *See* unpitched percussion. *See also* playing technique-specific noteheads
right hand hooks. *See* lines
right pages
starting from 565
right zone 38, 39
hiding 44
Print mode 535
Setup mode 114
showing 44
Write mode 195
right-foot pedals. *See* harp pedaling. *See also* pedal lines
right-hand fingering 880
arpeggio signs 884
brackets 881
inputting 262
placement 872
popover 265
tapping. *See* tapping
right-hand guitar tapping. *See* tapping
rim shots. *See* playing techniques. *See also* playing technique-specific noteheads
rinforzando. *See* dynamics
rips. *See* jazz articulations. *See also* glissando lines
ritardando. *See* gradual tempo changes. *See also* tempo marks
ritenuto. *See* gradual tempo changes. *See also* tempo marks
rolled chords. *See* arpeggio signs
rolls. *See* tremolos. *See also* tuplets
Roman numerals
flow numbers 610
harmonic analysis 858
page numbers 1033
tokens 610
RoomWorks SE 671, 675
roots
chord symbols 303, 306, 307, 783, 796
Ross chord symbols 783
Rotary 671, 675
rotating 456
hairpins 481, 843
pitches 456, 457, 466
rhythms 456, 457, 466
slurs 1173
text 1188
ties 1243
round
chord symbol parentheses 799, 801
figured bass brackets 864
notehead brackets 953, 954
rounded rectangle
borders 1227
text enclosures 1227
rows
bar numbers 747
buttons. *See* toolbar. *See also* lower zone
chord diagrams 809, 810
chord symbols 142, 147, 148, 150, 783
dynamics 831, 853, 854
figured bass 865
rubato
expressive text 296, 839
system-attached text 370
tempo marks 280, 1204
text 370
rudimental drumming. *See* unpitched percussion
ruffs. *See* grace notes
rulers
crosshairs 484
Play mode 486
rhythmic grid 204
running headers 601
flow headings 568
hiding 568
page templates 601
runs
guitar bends 1006, 1015
Russian
instrument names 57

S

salzedo breath marks. *See* breath marks
sample libraries. *See* sound libraries
sample rate 39, 256, 257

sampled trills 991, 992
Save Endpoint Configuration dialog 529
saving 69, 102
  audio 95, 99, 100
  auto-save. *See* auto-save
  backups 104
  chord diagram shapes 813
  comments 476
  custom ensembles 114
  editors 664, 665
  endpoint configurations 528, 529
  ensembles 114
  expression maps 700
  folder location 105
  graphics files 542, 544
  import settings 86
  instrument names as default 176
  Key Editor configurations 665
  layout options as default 677
  lyrics 924
  MIDI files 86, 95
  MusicXML files 84
  notation options as default 679
  PDF files 542
  percussion kits 1290
  percussion maps 705
  playback templates 524, 525
  played notes 254
  players 114
  plug-in instances 528
  PNG files 542
  project templates 86
  settings as default 86, 677, 679
  SVG files 542
  TIFF files 542
saxophone. *See* instruments
scale degrees
  chord symbols 305, 783
  mapping 460
  Nashville numbers 306
  noteheads 945
  popover 463
  trills 984, 986, 987
scale mapping 460, 467
scale multiplication 660, 661, 663
scale size
  accidentals 714
  barlines 735–737
  chord diagrams 809
  chord symbol components 784, 786
  cues 580
  fingerings 876, 880
  grace notes 580, 897, 901
  note spacing 580
  notes 413
  printing 538, 550, 551
  staves 573–575, 577
scales 918
  degrees 783, 945
  EDO 918
  exercises. *See* flows
  key signatures 911, 913
  major 460, 467, 913
scales *(continued)*
  mapping 460, 467
  minor 460, 467, 913
  modal 460, 467
  octave divisions 918
  transposing 446, 460, 467
  values. *See* scale multiplication. *See also* Histogram tool
scissors 187
  activating 187
  slashes 1137
  ties 1241
scoops
  deleting 1027
  inputting 336, 337, 345
  jazz. *See* jazz articulations
  popover 327, 328
  vibrato bar 1021
scope
  crosshairs 484
  Insert mode 428, 429
  jump bar 65
  properties 616, 617
scordatura 138, 140
scores. *See* layouts
scrapes. *See* playing techniques
scroll view. *See* galley view
scrolling 420
  Key Editor 619, 626
  mixer 672
  percussion editor 626
  piano roll editor 626
searching 58
  ensembles 111
  instruments 109
  key commands 59, 61, 62
  layout options 677
  notation options 679
  notes 407
  preferences 58
  properties 615
Second Viennese School accidental duration rule 719, 720
second voices
  adding 221
  bar rests 236, 1151
secondary beams 768
  changing 769
  direction 769
  lines 769
  resetting 769
  rests 771
  splitting 757
secondary brackets 779, 781
  braces 781
  hiding 780
  showing 780
  sub-brackets 781
  sub-sub-brackets 781
secondary instruments 623, 649, 652, 655
seconds 33, 515, 1103
  duration tokens 610

section players 120
adding 121, 126, 127
divisi 1199
empty staves 562
ensembles 111, 125–127
MIDI import 86
ossia staves 1194
staff labels 1180
staves 562, 563
sections
coda 1113
fine 1113
hiding 43, 1116
repeat 1113
showing 43, 1116
segments
caps 1086
final 1111
glissando lines 1003
guitar bends 1015, 1019
hairpins 843
lines 1094
moving 481
playing technique continuation lines 1072
playthroughs 1108
repeat endings 391, 393, 1108–1110
slurs 1170, 1171
tuplets 1274
segno 1113
hiding 1116
inputting 394, 395
multiple 1114
sections 1113
showing 1116
selecting 41, 401, 403, 408, 417
bars 401, 404, 406
beats 407
blue 855, 1169
changing the selection. *See* navigation
chord symbols 404, 406, 407
chords 409
dynamics 402, 407
everything 403, 404, 406, 407
extending selection 402, 403
filters 407, 408
flows 403
handles 483
items 201, 401, 403, 417, 627
items behind other items 401
Key Editor 627
key signatures 404, 406, 407
lyrics 402, 407, 925
marquee 41, 403, 627, 664
more 402, 403
notations 41, 403, 417
notes 41, 401, 403, 407–409, 417, 627
panels 192, 195, 196
playback 503, 515
points 627
rehearsal marks 404, 406, 407
repeat endings 404, 406, 407
status display 39
staves 403
selecting *(continued)*
system objects 404, 406, 407
system track 404
system-attached text 404, 406, 407
tempo marks 404, 406, 407
time signatures 404, 406, 407
tools 39, 41, 187, 621
tracks 88
transposing selections 445
velocity bars 664
voices 402, 407, 442, 623, 627
Write mode 187
selectors
layouts 31, 32
panels 192, 195, 196
semibreves. *See* whole notes
semiquavers. *See* sixteenth notes
semitones. *See* half-steps
sends 671
loading 675
mixer 667, 668
removing 676
separators
beams 770, 774
chord symbols 797
duration tokens 610
dynamics 296, 837
fingerings 887
staff labels 1186
systems. *See* system dividers
time signatures 1256, 1259
timecodes 1103
tokens 610
septuplets. *See* tuplets
sequences
bar numbers 749–751
page numbers 565
rehearsal marks 1096
staff labels 129
subordinate 751
types 1097
sets
drum sets. *See* drum sets
page templates. *See* page template sets
setting up
audio devices 58, 256, 257
drum sets 150
duplex printing 538
key commands 63
MIDI recording 256
percussion kit note input 230
percussion kits 150
windows 43
workspaces 43
settings 29, 677
audio 58
copying properties 599
default 58, 677, 679
flow-specific 679
harp pedals 1036
individual items. *See* properties
layout-specific 677
MIDI import 86

settings *(continued)*
mouse input 202, 203
note input 214, 218
preferences 58
properties 615–617
videos 181
Setup mode 21, 106
adding players 126
ensembles 125
flows. *See* flows
instruments. *See* instruments
layouts. *See* layouts
panels 38, 106, 107, 114, 117
percussion 150
player groups 158
players. *See* players
signposts 426
switching 106
sextuplets. *See* tuplets
sfz. *See* dynamics
shadow notes 201
color 54
shakes. *See* jazz ornaments
shape
bar number enclosures 743
beaming 758, 760, 762–764, 768, 770, 772
borders 743, 1227
chord diagrams 805, 812–814
figured bass brackets 864
guitar bends 1015, 1017–1019
multi-segment slurs 1172
notehead brackets 954, 958, 959
noteheads 941, 945
parentheses 801, 864, 954
slurs 1159, 1160, 1170–1173, 1177
text enclosures 1227
ties 1242, 1243
tuplet brackets 1276–1278
sharing staves. *See* condensing. *See also* divisi
sharps. *See* accidentals
shifts
clefs 315, 819
octaves 315, 444–447, 453, 819
pitches. *See* rotating
rhythms. *See* rotating
short
barlines 736, 737
notes 94, 211, 214, 221, 225–227, 232, 239, 240, 243, 247–249, 580, 633, 689, 897, 904
scores. *See* condensing. *See also* layouts
stemlets 772
shortcuts. *See* key commands
shoulder offset
notehead brackets 959
slurs 1177
ties 1247
showing. *See* hiding
shrinking. *See* size
side stick. *See* unpitched percussion. *See also* playing technique-specific noteheads
signatures
annotations 554
key signatures. *See* key signatures
signatures *(continued)*
printing 554
time signatures. *See* time signatures
signposts 426
barlines 293, 294, 431, 732, 1262
bars 732
chord symbols 782, 789, 793
clefs 817
dynamics 836
exporting 542, 554
extra staves 1193
figured bass 377, 858, 859, 868
frame breaks 592
harp pedaling 1036, 1038, 1039
hiding 416, 427
key signatures 268, 269, 911
multi-bar rests 1154
ossia staves 437, 440, 1194
percussion legends 1295
playing techniques 1065
printing 538, 554
showing 427
staff changes 1193
staves 437, 440
system breaks 586, 588
tempo marks 1207, 1211
text 1230
time signatures 732, 1256, 1258, 1261, 1262
trills 984–987
tuplets 1276, 1279
silence
hairpins. *See* niente
missing sounds 523
muting items 509
notes 1025
playback template 518, 519, 523
rests. *See* rests
simile
dynamics 296, 298, 839
hiding 1070
playing techniques 1070
showing 1070
simple time signatures. *See* time signatures
simplifying accidentals 450
single bar rests
bar counts 1152
H-bars 1152
hiding 1150
showing 1150
single barlines 293, 294, 735–737
single players 120, 124
adding 121, 126, 127
empty staves 562
ensembles 111, 125–127
extra staves 1193
MIDI import 86
ossia staves 1194
staff labels 1180
staff size 574
staves 562, 563
single-line
percussion kits 1293, 1294
staves 1192

single-note tremolos. *See* tremolos
single-sided printing 538
single-stroke caesuras 322, 907
single-voice contexts 1303
articulations 724
grace notes 898
guitar pre-bends 1013
stem direction 898, 961
tie curvature direction 1237
six-line staff
tablature. *See* tablature
sixteenth notes 16, 191, 211, 214, 225, 226, 247, 248, 897
beats 288
chords 240
grace notes 239
metronome marks 282
percussion 227, 633
rests 235, 1144
splitting notes 249
swing playback 282, 512
tablature 232
tremolos 395, 397, 1264
tuplets 243, 246
voices 221
size 573
accidentals 714
arpeggio sign fingerings 884
audio buffer 256, 257
barlines 739, 740
bars 427, 428, 559, 569, 577, 579, 729, 1198
beams 758, 760, 770
brackets 777, 778, 802, 1188
channels 673
chord diagrams 809
chord symbols 413, 802
cues 827
dynamics 413
elision slurs 925, 938
fingerings 876, 884
flared hairpins 847
font styles 371, 1225
gaps 157, 1163, 1236
grace notes 413, 897, 901
H-bars 1153
Key Editor 625
laissez vibrer ties 1240
left-hand fingering 880
lyrics 931, 932, 934
measures 569, 1198
mixer 673
multi-bar rests 1153
noteheads 827, 941
notes 413, 827
octave lines 413
pages 550, 556, 677
paper 550, 551
parentheses 802
percussion editor 625
piano roll editor 625
player group labels 1188
playing techniques 413
rastral 573
size *(continued)*
rehearsal marks 413
repeat endings 1109
slurs 1173
space 573
staff labels 1189
staves 559, 573, 574, 677
system objects 559, 574
systems 569
text 371, 1225
ties 1243
time signatures 1254, 1256, 1262
tracks 500, 501, 625
unit of measurement 51
video window 184
sketch staves 109, 111
slants
beams 760, 903
pedal line hooks 1055
slap tongue. *See* playing techniques
slash notation 1132
slash regions 1132
beaming 1138
beat grouping 1133
chord symbols 789, 793, 1132
compound time signatures 1133
counts 1138, 1140
default settings 1133
deleting 431
filter 407
handles 410
hiding other notes 1136
hiding rests 1136
highlights 1132, 1134
inputting 398
length 410
moving 437, 440, 1135
moving counts 481
multiple 1134
note grouping 774, 1133
overlapping 1134
parentheses 1140
placement 1140
popover 389, 398
rests 1136
showing other notes 1136
staff position 1135
staff-relative placement 1140
stem direction 1135
stems 1138
vertical position 1135
viewing options 1134
voices 1135, 1141
slash voices 1141, 1264
bar rests 1146
caret 205, 223
changing 442, 1142
hiding stems 966
inputting 223
moving 1135
multiple-voice contexts 1134
percussion kits 150, 227, 1142
playback 1141

slash voices *(continued)*
popover 389
rests 1146
staff position 1135
stem direction 964
stemless 205, 223
vertical position 1135
slashes 1132
bar rests 1146
caesuras. *See* caesuras
chord symbols 783, 796
double 1194, 1264
dynamics 296, 837
figured bass 378
grace notes 897, 898, 901, 902, 904
noteheads 941, 944, 1132, 1141, 1283
notes. *See* slash voices. *See also* tremolo strokes
pauses. *See* caesuras
percussion 1283
regions. *See* slash regions
rests 1146
stemless 1142
stems. *See* tremolo strokes
systems. *See* system dividers
time signatures 1256, 1259
tremolos. *See* tremolo strokes
triple 1264
voices. *See* slash voices
slides
fingerings. *See* fingering slides
jazz. *See* jazz articulations
Key Editor 619
pitch. *See* glissando lines. *See also* pitch bends
tempo 33
zoom 619
slight bends. *See* guitar bends
slots 488, 671
slur segments 1170, 1172
number 1171
slurs 1062, 1155, 1233
angles 1159, 1173
arpeggio signs. *See* curved arpeggio signs
articulations 725, 727, 1158
collision avoidance 1159, 1167
colors 55
control points 1171
copying 433, 436, 724
cross-staff 260, 1159, 1166
cross-voice 260, 1166
crosshairs 484
curvature 1157, 1163–1165, 1177
dashed 1161–1163
deleting 431
dotted 1161–1163
duration 1178
East Asian elision 938, 939
editorial 1161
elision 938
endpoints 1158, 1159, 1171, 1173
Engrave mode 1171
filter 407
fingerings 875
flat slurs 1163
slurs *(continued)*
formatting 1162, 1163, 1173, 1175
frame breaks 1159
gap size 1163
gaps 1159
grace notes 260, 898, 1156, 1157
guitar techniques 349
hammer-ons 349, 1023
handles 1160, 1170–1172
height 1176
inputting 197, 260, 349, 1167
inverting 1157, 1164, 1165
large pitch ranges 1160
length 410, 1156
linking 436, 1169
MIDI import 92
MIDI recording 256
moving 437, 440, 1173
multi-segment 1172
muting 509
nested 1158
nested slurs 1167
notehead brackets 958
ornaments 979
overlapping 1159
panel 191
placement 825, 1155, 1157–1159, 1164, 1165
playback 260, 506, 507, 1178
position 825, 1155, 1157–1159, 1164
pull-offs 349, 1023
ranges 1160
rotating 1173
segments. *See* slur segments
selecting 402, 417
shape 1159, 1160, 1170–1173, 1177
short 1160
shoulder offset 1177
staff lines 1157
stem direction 1158, 1164
styles 1161, 1162
system breaks 1159
thickness 1175
ties 1156, 1158
ties vs. slurs 1233
tucking index 825
unlinking 436, 1170
within slurs 1167
small notes 413
cues. *See* cues
grace notes. *See* grace notes
harmonics. *See* harmonics
staves. *See* staff size
trills. *See* trills
tuplets 1271. *See also* tuplet numbers
smart quotes 610
smears. *See* jazz ornaments
smooth
glissando lines 1000
jazz articulations 1028
MIDI 653
slur shapes 1171, 1172
tie shapes 1242, 1243

smorzando. *See* gradual tempo changes. *See also* tempo marks
SMPTE. *See* timecodes. *See also* markers
SMuFL 681
    accidentals 373
    music symbols 373
    noteheads 373
    tokens 608
snap pizzicato. *See* playing techniques
snapping pitches
    pitches 458, 459, 467
    scales 460, 467
snare drum. *See* unpitched percussion
snare rolls. *See* tremolos
solfège chord symbols 306, 783
solid
    slurs 1161
    tempo marks 1216
    ties 1234
solo
    indication 370
    players. *See* soloists. *See also* single players
    staff labels 124
soloing 667, 668
    channels 507, 669
    deactivating 508, 667, 668
    instruments 507
    playback 506, 507
    tracks 507
    voices 507
soloists 124
sonata. *See* flows
songs. *See* flows
sordino. *See* playing techniques
sorting
    flows 164
    layouts 170, 171
    players 123, 124
sostenuto pedal 1044
    MIDI controller 1061
    start signs 1054
    text 1058, 1059
sound libraries 518, 700
    changing 523
    expression maps 683
    loading sounds 493, 518, 523
    missing sounds 523
    percussion maps 703
    playback 682, 700
    trills 991
sounding
    duration 639, 904. *See also* played duration
    percussion legend ranges 1295, 1297
    pitch. *See* sounding pitch. *See also* concert pitch
sounding pitch 170, 968
    harmonics 972
    input pitch 218
    layouts 169
sounds. *See* playback
soundtracks
    audio 184
    volume 184
source instruments 827
source notes 885
    pitch mapping 458, 459, 467
    scale mapping 460, 467
space size 559, 573, 574
spacing 559, 576, 577, 579
    accidentals 715–717
    arpeggio signs 997
    bars 579, 580, 1149
    caesuras 325
    capos 142, 783
    chord diagrams 809
    chord symbols 783, 791, 797–799, 803
    clefs 816
    condensing 595
    cross-staff beams 766
    cues 580
    flow headings 571
    frame fullness 480
    frets 138
    galley view 41
    grace notes 580
    gradual dynamics 848
    layout options 677
    lyrics 580, 925, 927, 929, 932, 934
    mixer 673
    notes. *See* note spacing
    percussion 150, 157, 1294
    rehearsal marks 1095
    rests. *See* note spacing
    rhythm dots 1307
    staff lines 150, 157, 1294
    staves. *See* staff spacing
    stems 766
    systems. *See* system spacing. *See also* staff spacing
    tacets 594
    time signatures 1261
    voice columns 1307, 1308
speech bubbles
    comments. *See* comments
speed
    arpeggio signs 999
    beaming. *See* fanned beams
    bpm 1211
    changing 285, 286, 504, 657, 658, 1212, 1214
    frame rates 185
    grace notes 904
    playback 504, 1204
    swing playback 512
    tempo marks 1204, 1212, 1214, 1215
    tremolos 1268
    trills 982, 991, 992
    videos 185
spelling
    accidentals 234, 449, 450, 452
    chord symbols 142, 782, 794
    notes 234, 449, 450, 452
spiccato. *See* playing techniques
spin boxes 618
split point 92
split stems 717
    appearance 718

splitting 249
barline joins 740
bars 585, 586, 589, 590, 732
beams 679, 754, 757, 768, 771, 774
brackets 957
flows 470
multi-bar rests 1152, 1154
notehead brackets 957
notes 187, 249, 250, 679, 774, 1133, 1241
pedal lines 1052
phrases 442, 1199
project window 48
repeat marker text 1115
rests 250
slash regions 1137
staves 394, 395, 586, 589, 590, 595, 1113, 1199
ties 249, 250, 679, 774, 1241
tuplets 1274
spreads
histogram controls 660, 661, 663
page arrangement 42, 50, 547
square
accidental brackets 713, 971
bracketed noteheads 953, 954, 958
brackets 779, 781, 1075
figured bass brackets 864
noteheads 944
squeal. *See* pinch harmonics
squeezes. *See* jazz ornaments
staccatissimo. *See* articulations
staccato. *See* articulations. *See also* playback techniques
stacking order 825
accidentals 715, 716
changing 825
chord symbols 147, 148, 150, 783, 797
lines 1079
octave lines 825
playing techniques 1067
signposts 426
slurs 825
string indicators 1067
tuplets 825
staff grouping
barline joins 739, 740
changing 777
default settings 78, 777, 778
ensemble types 777, 778
player groups 158
staff labels 172, 1180
alignment 176, 1182
baseline shift 176
brackets 1188
changing 175, 1184–1186
changing first system indent 1198
colors 176
condensed staves 1190
Cubase 1181
default settings 78
divisi 1190
galley view 41
grouping 154, 155, 1188–1190
hiding 1181, 1183
staff labels *(continued)*
indents 1182, 1198
instrument change labels 1187
instrument names 57, 154, 155, 172, 175, 176, 178, 608, 1181, 1184
italics 176
language 57
length 1181, 1183, 1184
line breaks 1186
MusicXML import 1181
numbering 129, 1184, 1190
overline 176
parentheses 1186
percussion 150, 154, 155, 1184, 1189, 1293, 1298
player groups. *See* player group labels
player names 173, 1184
project templates 78
resetting 178
separators 1186
showing 1181, 1183
size 1189
solo 124
stretch 176
subscript 176
superscript 176
systems 1183
tokens 608
transposing instruments 1180, 1185, 1186
underline 176
staff lines
erasing 798, 834, 875, 883, 891, 1064, 1092, 1229, 1299
fingerings 883
number 150, 564, 1293, 1294
percussion 150, 157, 1294
slurs 1157
spacing 150, 157, 1294
string indicators 891
tablature 138, 1200
text 1092, 1229
ties 1245
staff position
lines 997, 1081, 1082, 1084
note input 230
percussion 637, 1282, 1283, 1286, 1287
percussion kits 156, 230
staff size 551, 559, 573
changing 559, 574, 575
custom 575
dialog 575
individual staves 574
layouts 1193
MusicXML files 82
rastral size 573
space size 573
staff spacing 559, 576
changing 559, 560, 576
condensing 595
default settings 559, 577
divisi 560
final systems 569
flow headings 571
fullness 480

staff spacing *(continued)*
galley view 577, 579
hiding staves 562, 563
horizontal 480, 569
justification 480, 560, 569, 577
layout options 677
layouts 559
rehearsal marks 1095
system fullness 480
systems 480
text collision avoidance 1226
staff text. *See* staff-attached text
staff-attached text 1220, 1221
alignment 1225
backgrounds 1229
borders 1227
erased backgrounds 1229
formatting 371, 373, 1225
hiding 1230
inputting 370
moving 454, 456, 481, 1225
padding 1229
paragraph styles 1225
reversing 454. *See also* retrograde
rotating 456
selecting 401
showing 1230
signposts 426
staff-relative placement 414
staff-relative placement
articulations 727
bar numbers 748
beaming 759
changing 414
cue labels 414
dynamics 414, 829
figured bass 866
fingering 881
fingerings 874, 875
guitar bends 414
guitar pre-bends 1013
hammer-ons 1026
harmonics 974
left-hand fingerings 882
lines 1081
lyrics 928, 929
numbered bar region counts 1131
octave lines 414, 823
ornaments 414
pedal lines 1050
percussion legends 414
playing techniques 414
pull-offs 1026
rehearsal marks 1095
repeat markers 1117
resetting 415
slash region counts 1140
slurs 1165
string indicators 364–366, 891, 893
tapping 1026
text 414
trills 414
tuplet brackets 1277
stars
pedal lines 1044, 1056
start area 35
start position
frames 581, 589
lines 1084
pages 581, 589
playback 502
systems 581, 586
trills 979
videos 183
start repeat barlines 289, 735, 736
counts. *See* repeat counts
inputting 288, 290, 293, 294
key signatures 737
playthroughs 509, 1118
system breaks 737
start signs
lines 1069, 1077
pedal lines 1053, 1054, 1058, 1059
starting 209
area 35
Hub 69
interchangeable time signatures 271, 274, 275, 1250, 1262
MIDI recording 253
note input 209, 211, 214
playback 503
players 35
projects 35, 71
timecode values 1104
workspaces 43
status bar 39
selection tools 41
view types 41
status display 39
staves 16, 1192
adding 121, 126, 133, 1193, 1199
arranging tools 431
bar numbers 745, 746
bar rests. *See* bar rests
barlines 739–741
beaming 764, 766, 768
brackets 78, 777, 778, 1188
casting off 581–584
chord symbols 169, 303, 788–790, 792, 793
clefs 820
collision avoidance 559, 560, 577, 579
color 55
comments 470, 472
condensing. *See* condensing
copying items 433, 434
crossing notes 764, 768
dialog 575
dividers. *See* system dividers. *See also* divide arrows
divisi 1199
dynamics 299, 302, 414, 838
dynamics linking 436, 855
empty. *See* empty staves. *See also* blank staves
exploding 441
extra 1193
fermatas 909

staves *(continued)*
figured bass 377, 858
filtering. *See* instrument filters. *See also* filters
fingerings 875, 883
five-line 1189, 1192, 1293
fixing 581–584
galley view 50
gaps 560, 1113, 1198
glissando lines 334, 335
grids 1189, 1293
groups 158, 740, 778. *See also* staff grouping
height 559, 560, 570, 572, 573
hiding 118, 164, 167, 168, 421, 422, 424, 425, 562–564, 1201
indents 569, 1181, 1182, 1193, 1198
inputting on multiple 209, 225
instrument change labels 1187
instrument changes 130–132
key signatures 268, 269, 911
labels. *See* staff labels
language 57
large time signatures 1256
layout options 1193
margins 569, 570, 572, 1181, 1182, 1198
markers 1100
moving 559, 570, 572
multiple voices 221, 595
names. *See* staff labels. *See also* instrument names
notation 1200, 1201
note input 209, 225
notes 440
number 562, 564, 1193, 1194
order 123, 124
ossia staves. *See* ossia staves
page view 50
pauses 907
percussion 1293, 1294
pick-up bars. *See* pick-up bars
playback 503
rasterizing. *See* staff size
reducing 441, 595
rehearsal marks 1196, 1197
renaming 175
repeat endings 1196, 1197
repeat markers 1117
selecting 403
showing 50, 164, 167, 421, 422, 424, 426, 562–564
single-line 1100, 1104, 1105, 1189, 1192, 1293
size. *See* staff size
slurs 1166, 1169
slurs linking 436
spacing. *See* staff spacing
splitting 394, 395, 1113
staff labels. *See* staff labels
stem length 965
string indicators. *See* string indicators
swing playback 513
system breaks 586
system dividers 1194, 1195
system objects 1196, 1197
tablature 1200, 1201
tacets 592
tempo marks 1196
staves *(continued)*
text 370, 1196
ties 237, 1239, 1245
time signatures 274, 275, 277, 278, 1196, 1249, 1254–1256, 1261
timecodes 1100, 1104, 1105
transposing instruments 133
tremolos 764, 768
vertical spacing. *See* staff spacing
voices 221
white 55
width 569
Stein-Zimmermann accidentals 267, 918
stem direction 961
beam groups 963
beam placement 759, 766
centered beams 763
changing 442, 963, 964, 1135
chords 962
cross-staff beams 764
drum sets 154
filters 407
grace notes 898, 903
guitar pre-bends 1013
middle line 961
multiple-voice contexts 962
notes crossed to other staves 764, 768, 1309
notes on middle line of staff 961
percussion kits 150, 154, 231, 679, 1300, 1301
resetting 760, 965
rhythm slashes 964, 1135
single-voice contexts 961, 964
slurs 1158, 1164
staff-relative placement 759
ties 963
voices 442, 961, 964, 1303
stemless
noteheads 966
rhythm slashes 205, 223, 1142
stemlets 772
gaps 772
length 772
stems 754, 961
altered unisons 717
articulations 727
audio 99, 100
beam placement 766
beaming 757, 760, 766
combining. *See* voices
cross-staff 764, 768
deleting tremolos 1268
direction. *See* stem direction
double 221, 717, 1303. *See also* voices
durations 191, 211, 247–249
fermatas 908
flags 961
gaps 766. *See also* note spacing
grace notes 901, 903
handles 965, 1269
hiding 966
inputting 221, 1303. *See also* voices
length 760, 903, 965
percussion kits 150, 154, 231, 679, 1300, 1301

stems *(continued)*
removing direction changes 965
reverse 762–764, 768, 961, 963–965
rhythm slashes 1135, 1138, 1142
showing 966
slashes 1264
slurs 1158
split stems 717, 718
stemlets. *See* stemlets
tablature 1201
ties 963
tremolos 1264, 1267, 1269
unbeaming 757
voices 961, 964, 1307, 1308
step input. *See* note input
stereo pan 668, 669
changing 674
StereoEnhancer 671, 675
stickings 1292
stop positions 427
adding 429
deleting 430
moving 429
stopped pitch 968
Fretboard panel 199
harmonics 972
stopping. *See* starting
stopping finger. *See* left-hand fingering
straight lines 1075
duration 610
glissando lines 1000
guitar bends 1006
jazz articulations 1031
pedal lines 1044
quotes 610
straight playback. *See* swing playback
stress marks. *See* articulations
stretch
instrument names 176
lyrics 932, 934
note spacing 579
pages 560, 577
staff labels 176
systems 480, 560, 569, 577
text 371
strikethrough text 371
string designation. *See* string indicators
string indicators 880, 891, 947
deleting 892
duration 410, 1067, 1068
handles 1066
horizontal position 893
inputting 352, 354, 364–366
inside staff 366, 891, 892
length 1066, 1067
lines 364, 365, 410, 1067, 1068
moving 437, 440, 481, 893, 1066, 1067
order 1067
outside staff 364, 365, 891
panel 355, 365
placement 893
popover 352, 354, 364
string indicators *(continued)*
position 893
string number 947
string instruments 127, 138
adding 109, 111, 121, 126, 133
brackets 778, 1188
chord symbols 789
fingering shifts 888
groups 158
player order 107, 123
playing techniques. *See* playing techniques
string number 947
substitution fingering 872
system objects 1197
string pitches
changing 140, 947
fretted instruments 140
string shift indicators 888
angles 888
direction 889, 947
inputting 262, 263, 888
thickness 888
stringendo. *See* gradual tempo changes. *See also* tempo marks
strings
adding 138
assigning notes to 947
bends. *See* guitar bends
capos. *See* capos
changing 947, 1202
changing pitch 138
chord diagrams 806, 814
color 54
deleting 138
fingering 880, 947. *See also* string indicators
fretted instruments 109, 138
hammer-ons. *See* hammer-ons
harmonics 968
indicators. *See* string indicators
notes out of range 951, 1202
numbers. *See* string indicators
pitches 138, 947
pull-offs. *See* hammer-ons
ranges 138
resetting 1202
slurs. *See* hammer-ons
tapping. *See* tapping
tuning 109, 138, 947
strokes
figured bass 378
slurs 1161
ties 1234
tremolos 1264, 1265, 1267–1269
structures
documentation 17
meters 271, 754, 774, 1133, 1249, 1250
repeat 390, 509, 1107, 1113, 1120
strumming
arpeggios. *See* arpeggio signs
fingering 884
styles
appearance 415
breath marks 907

styles *(continued)*
caesuras 907
fermatas 906
glissando lines 1000, 1001
jazz articulations 1031
margins 555
niente hairpins 852
parentheses 801, 864, 954
resetting 415
slurs 1161, 1162
tempo marks 1205, 1215
ties 1234, 1235
time signatures 1256, 1258, 1260
sub-brackets. *See* secondary brackets
sub-sub-brackets. *See* secondary brackets
subdivision
bars 774, 1133
slash regions 1133
tempo equations 1218
time signatures 271, 774, 1256, 1257
subito. *See* dynamic modifiers
subordinate bar numbers 751
adding 751
changing 751
subscript
chord symbols 783
instrument names 176
staff labels 176
text 371
subsequent repeats
bar numbers 753
substitution fingering 872
handles 873
position 873
subtitles 75, 599, 601, 603–605. *See also* flow headings
suffixes
dynamics 839
instrument changes 57, 131
playing techniques 1063
rehearsal marks 1098
timecodes 1103
sul ponticello. *See* playing techniques
sul tasto. *See* playing techniques
super locrian scales 460, 467
superscript
chord symbols 783
instrument names 176
staff labels 176
text 371
trill intervals 990
SuperVision 671, 675
suppressing playback 509
suspensions
brackets 864
chord symbols 307
figured bass 377, 378, 861, 862, 865, 867
sustain pedal 1044
continuation lines 1056
Engrave mode 1046
handles 1046
inputting 354, 359, 361
level changes 362, 1045, 1048
merging 1053
sustain pedal *(continued)*
MIDI controller 258, 1061
MusicXML import 1061
popover 354, 359
removing retakes/level changes 1050
retakes 360, 362, 1045, 1047
splitting 1052
start signs 1054
text 1058, 1059
sustaining instruments 857
SVG files 552
color 553
exporting 542, 543
fonts 553
layout numbers 171
layouts 542, 543
swapping. *See* switching
swash arpeggio signs 994, 996
swells. *See* messa di voce
swing playback 512
disabling 515
enabling 282, 513
popover 282
ratios 512
triplets 512
Swiss army triplet. *See* grace notes. *See also* tuplets
switches 687, 695
creating 696, 697
properties 615
switching 443
flows 418–420, 487
galley view 50
handles 483
instruments. *See* instrument changes
layouts 31, 43, 47
note order 1308
notes 1291, 1307
page view 50
rehearsal marks 1096
selection 401, 417
tabs 47
view type 50
voices 443
syllables
beaming 757
dynamics 844
lyrics 921, 925, 927
position 925
tempo marks 1216
types 921
symbols
bar repeats 1120, 1125
bar rests 1148
caret 205
chords. *See* chord symbols. *See also* chord diagrams
coda 1115
ornaments 977
pedal lines 1045, 1053, 1056, 1058
playing techniques 1062
repeats. *See* repeat markers. *See also* repeat barlines
segno 1115

symbols *(continued)*
speech bubbles. *See* comments
text 370, 373
vibrato bar 1021
symphony. *See* flows
syncing
dynamics 649
instruments 621, 649, 655
Key Editor 621
MIDI 655
tracks 621
videos to music 183
syncopation
beat grouping 774
stemlets 772
system breaks 478, 555, 586
automatic 582, 584
bar repeats 582, 586
barlines 585, 737
clefs 816
copying to other layouts 596, 597
deleting 585, 589
divisi 1199
dynamics 843
glissando lines 1003
hairpins 843
hiding staves 562
inserting 583, 584, 586
key signatures 915
lines 1077, 1094
make into system 587
moving 585
octave lines 824
playing technique lines 1069
playing techniques 1066
repeat endings 1110
signposts 426, 586, 588
slurs 1159
staff labels 1183
staff size 574
staff spacing 559
staff visibility 562
ties 1238
time signatures 1252
system dividers 1194
hiding 1195
showing 1195
width 1196
system formatting 555
casting off. *See* casting off
condensing. *See* condensing
copying to other layouts 596
frame breaks. *See* frame breaks
indents 1181, 1198
note spacing. *See* note spacing
staff labels 1181
system breaks. *See* system breaks
system dividers. *See* system dividers
system objects. *See* system objects
system fullness indicator 480
system objects 1196
copying 404
layouts 1196
system objects *(continued)*
lines 368, 1075
positions 1197
rehearsal marks 1095
repeat counts 1118
repeat endings 1107, 1110
repeat markers 1117
selecting 401, 404, 406, 407
size 559, 574, 1193
tempo marks 1204, 1208
text 370
time signatures 1255, 1261
system spacing 559, 576
changing 559, 560
default settings 559, 577
justification 560, 577
system text. *See* staff-attached text
system track 404
deleting music 730
hiding 406, 416
inputting bars 292
inputting beats 292
selecting music 406, 407
stop positions 429, 430
system-attached text 1196, 1220, 1221
alignment 1225
backgrounds 1229
borders 1227
copying 404
erased backgrounds 1229
formatting 371, 373, 1225
hiding 1230
inputting 370
markers 97
moving 481, 1225
multiple positions 1197
padding 1229
paragraph styles 1225
selecting 401, 404, 406, 407
showing 1230
signposts 426
staff-relative placement 414
stave positions 1196
tempo tracks 97
systemic barlines 738
braces 776
brackets 776
hiding 738
secondary brackets 779, 781
showing 738
sub-brackets 779, 781
sub-sub-brackets 781
text alignment 1225
systems
alignment 560, 569
bar numbers 742, 746, 748, 1128
barlines 737, 738
breaks. *See* system breaks
casting off 581–585
changing indents 1198
chord symbols 790
clefs 818
coda gap 1117

systems *(continued)*
condensed staves. *See* condensing
dividers. *See* system dividers
divisi 1199
fixing 581–584
formatting 478
fullness. *See* system fullness indicator
gaps 559, 560, 1113, 1198
height 559, 560
indents 569, 1181, 1182, 1193, 1198
justification 560, 569
key signatures 914
length 569
lyrics 926, 929, 935, 938
make into system 587
margins 569, 1181, 1182, 1198
moving 586, 587, 590
numbered bar regions 1128
rehearsal marks 1095
repeat barlines 737
resetting 585
sections 1113
selecting 402, 403
spacing. *See* system spacing
splitting 1113
staff labels 1181, 1183, 1190, 1198
staff size 574
text. *See* system-attached text
timecodes 1104, 1105
tonality 918
track. *See* system track
trill marks 981
vertical position. *See* system spacing
width 569

T

tabla notation 1301
tablature 1200
beaming 1201
bend intervals 1012
bends. *See* guitar bends
bracketed noteheads 953, 954, 1006, 1011
capos 142–145
caret 205
changing string for notes 1202
chords 214, 232
clefs 816
color 54
colors 55
dead notes 1025
default notation 211, 214
dives 1011, 1019
frets 138, 143–145
green notes 1200, 1202
guitar bends 1006, 1201
harmonics 969, 972
hiding 1201
hold lines 1006, 1013
intervals 1012
moving notes to other strings 1202
note input 214, 232
notes out of range 444, 951, 1200, 1202
tablature *(continued)*
numbers 1200, 1202
open pitches 140
parenthesized fret numbers 1006, 1011
post-bends. *See* guitar post-bends
pre-bends. *See* guitar pre-bends
question marks 444, 1200
resetting strings 1202
rhythms 1201
showing 1201
stems 1201
strings 138, 140, 211, 214, 1202
ties 1232
trills 981
tuning 138, 141, 143–145
tables
actions 688
comments 476
conditions 689
contents. *See* front matter
endpoint setup 526
fonts 74
markers 384
MIDI import 88
percussion maps 701
switches 687
tracks 88
tabs
bar 34
closing 47
groups 48
hiding 32
layouts 43, 45, 47
moving 48, 49
opening 45
order 48
showing 32
showing multiple 48
switching 47
view options 45
tacets 22, 592
exporting 80
formatting 592
hiding 593, 1152
margins 594
moving 594
paragraph style 592
removing players from flows 164
showing 593, 1152
text 594
tags. *See* signposts. *See also* comments
tails. *See* stems
tambourine. *See* unpitched percussion
tanto. *See* tempo marks
tap tempo 283
tapping 880, 1022
deleting 1027
inputting 350
moving 481, 1026
percussion. *See* grace notes. *See also* tuplets
popover 328
staff-relative placement 1026
tasto solo 377, 378, 858

techniques 1062
combinations 693, 697
endpoint configurations 528
exclusion groups 692
expression maps 683
guitar 1021
percussion 701, 705, 1283, 1285
playback 693, 697, 706, 707
templates
brackets 78
categories 71
deleting 665
ensembles 111, 114, 125, 127
flow headings 603
Key Editor 627, 664, 665
new projects 69
pages. *See* page templates
playback 491, 518
players 111, 114, 125, 127
projects. *See* project templates
staff grouping 778
staves 78, 111, 127, 778
titles 603
tempo 1204
bpm 1211
changing 658
click settings 496
default 431, 1204
deleting changes 629
drawing 656
equations. *See* tempo equations
finding 385, 1102
fixed tempo 504, 515
follow tempo 504, 515
inputting 657
marks. *See* tempo marks
metronome marks 1211
MIDI recording 504
muting in playback 509
Play mode 496, 656
range 1213
recording 504
tracks. *See* tempo tracks
tempo changes. *See* tempo marks
Tempo editor 496, 656
adding 623, 627
changing tempo 658
closing 623, 627
copying points 628
deleting points 629
height 625
inputting tempo changes 657
moving tempo changes 658
selecting points 627
zoom 625
tempo equations 1218
inputting 282, 283, 285, 286
panel 283
popover 282
tempo marks 656, 1204, 1215
abbreviated 1210
absolute tempo changes 283, 1205
alignment 1208
tempo marks *(continued)*
appearance 1207
barlines 1209
beat units 282, 412, 1212
brackets 1206, 1207
changing 412, 1207, 1209, 1210, 1212, 1213
colors 55
components 1206, 1207, 1214
continuation lines 1204, 1215, 1216
copying 433, 628
crosshairs 484
dashes 1217
decimal places 285, 286, 1212
deleting 431
equations. *See* tempo equations
filters 407
finding 385, 1102
formatting 1216–1218
gaps 1217
gradual tempo changes 283, 1205, 1214, 1215
handles 410, 1208
hiding 1211
hyphens 1216
inputting 280, 283, 285, 286
integers 285, 286
length 410, 481, 1208
lines 1215, 1216
metronome marks. *See* metronome marks
moving 437, 481, 658, 1214
multiple positions 1196, 1197, 1208
muting in playback 509
order 1214
panel 283
parentheses 1206, 1207
placement 1208
playback 431, 509, 1204, 1213, 1214
poco a poco 1207
popover 280
position 1208
rehearsal marks 1095
relative tempo changes 283, 1205, 1213
repeats 509
reset tempo 283, 1205
selecting 401, 402, 404, 406, 407
showing 1211
signposts 426, 1207, 1211
style 1216, 1218
text 412, 1205, 1209, 1210
types 280, 283, 1205
vertical positions 1196
Tempo panel 283
tempo track 496, 656
editing. *See* Tempo editor
editor. *See* Tempo editor
hiding 500, 627, 656
showing 500, 627, 656
tempo tracks 96–98, 656
dialog 97, 98
exporting 98
importing 96, 97
Play mode. *See* tempo track. *See also* Tempo editor
tenor clef. *See* clefs
tenuto. *See* articulations

terminal lines 1077
terminology
British vs. American English 16
note durations 16
text 1220, 1221
abbreviated tempo text 1210
accidentals 370, 373
alignment 371, 1225
annotations 1077
appearance 371
backgrounds 1229
bar numbers. *See* bar numbers
baseline shift 371
borders 1091, 1227, 1228
codes. *See* tokens
collision avoidance 1226
color 55
colors 371
comments 470, 475
crosshairs 484
default settings 370, 1226
distance from staff 481
dynamics 839, 844
editing 373, 1209, 1221
editor. *See* text editor
erased backgrounds 1093, 1229
expressive 828, 839
filter 407
fingerings 877
flow titles 179
formatting 69, 371, 1225
glissando lines 1002
glyphs 370, 373, 608
hiding 1118, 1230
horizontal 1091
horizontal alignment 1225
inputting 370, 1088
lines 1077, 1088–1093
lyrics 921, 930–932
markers 97, 383, 384, 1099, 1101
missing fonts 74
moving 437, 481, 1225
multiple positions 1196, 1197
music fonts 681
music symbols 370, 373, 608
overlapping 1226
overline 371
padding 1093, 1229
paragraph styles 1225
pedal lines 1058–1060
percussion legends 1298
playing techniques 1062, 1063
rehearsal marks 1095
repeat endings 1110
repeat markers 1115
resetting 1225, 1226
restorative 1058, 1060
showing 1118, 1230
signposts 426, 1230
spacing 371
staff labels. *See* staff labels. *See also* player group labels
staff-relative placement 414
text *(continued)*
stretch 371
strikethrough 371
subscript 371
superscript 371
system-attached text 370, 1196
tacet. *See* tacets. *See also* multi-bar rests
tacets 594
tempo marks 412, 1204, 1206, 1209–1211, 1215
timecodes 1101
tokens. *See* tokens
types 1221
underline 371
vertical. *See* player group labels
word wrapping 1115
text editor 371, 373
comments 471
lyrics 931, 932
Write mode 371
text frames 1221
flow headings 568
identifying 1221
running headers 568
tokens 607
text items 1220, 1221
colors 55, 371
crosshairs 484
editing 373
hiding 1230
identifying 1221
inputting 370
moving 437
showing 1230
signposts 1230
text tokens. *See* tokens
theme 52
theorbo. *See* fretted instruments
thick barlines 736, 737
thickness
beams 758, 770
borders 1040, 1091, 1228
brackets 779, 801
chord symbols 783, 801
grace note slashes 901
gradual tempo changes 1218
line borders 1091
lines 783
parentheses 801
pedal lines 1057
slurs 1162, 1175
string shift indicators 888
text borders 1091, 1228
ties 1235, 1244
three quarters depressed pedal lines 1045, 1046, 1048, 1049
thru
MIDI 252
thumbs 880
chord diagrams 810, 811, 814
fingerings 880
inputting 265
popover 263, 265

tick
barlines 736, 737
breath marks. *See* breath marks
played duration 639, 640
tie chains 1232
accents 726
articulations 726, 1232
bracketed noteheads 956
deleting 1241
glissando lines 1004
numbering bars. *See* numbered bar regions
selecting 1232
slurs 1156
splitting 249, 1241
staccato 726
stem direction 963
tablature 1232
tenuto 726
tremolos 1266, 1267
ties 25, 774, 1232–1234, 1238
accents 726
accidentals 1238
appearance 1234
articulations 726, 728, 1232
bracketed noteheads 956
breaking 1241
cautionary accidentals 713, 971
chains. *See* tie chains
chords 1237
clef changes 1239
collision avoidance 1232, 1245
control points 1242
cross-staff 237, 1239
cross-voice 237, 1239
curvature direction 1237
dashed 1234–1236
deleting 774, 1241
dotted 1234–1236
dynamics 299, 302, 437, 829, 849
editorial 1234
endpoints 1242
Engrave mode 1242
forcing 250
formatting 1235, 1236, 1243, 1244
frame breaks 1238
gap size 1236
grace notes 237, 1239
guitar bends 1013
hairpins 299, 302, 437, 829
half-bar 679, 774
half-dashed 1234
handles 1242, 1243, 1245–1247
height 1245, 1246
inputting 187, 237
inverting 1237
laissez vibrer 1240
messa di voce 849
non-adjacent notes 237, 1239
non-standard types 1238
note grouping 250
notehead brackets 958
numbering bars. *See* numbered bar regions
parentheses 956
ties *(continued)*
pedal lines 360
placement 1237
playing techniques 356, 358
position 1156, 1243, 1245
rotating 1243
shape 1243
shoulder offset 1247
slurs 1156, 1158
slurs vs. ties 1233
solid 1234
splitting 249, 250, 774, 1241
staccato 726
staff lines 1245
stems 963
style 1234, 1235
system breaks 1238
tablature 1232
tenuto 726
thickness 1244
tie chains. *See* tie chains
time signatures 1232, 1239
tremolos 1266, 1267
voices 237, 1237, 1308
width 1243
TIFF files 552
color 553
exporting 542, 543
layout numbers 171
layouts 542, 543
resolution 552
time
deleting 427, 428, 729–731
display 515, 517
inserting 226, 290–292, 427, 428
language 57
latency 252, 256, 257
markers 1099
rhythmic position 26
signatures. *See* time signatures
tokens 611. *See also* date and time
track. *See* tempo track. *See also* Tempo editor
transport window 515, 517
videos 183
time and date. *See* date and time
time bars. *See* repeat endings
time signatures 1249, 1250
above staff 1255
additive 1250
aggregate 1250
alternating 1250
appearance 1262
bar numbers 749
barlines 734, 741, 1261
beam grouping 26, 679, 755, 774
beat groups 26, 679, 1257
bracketed groups 1254
brackets 271, 1256, 1259
cautionary 1252
changing 226, 412, 427–429, 732
click 253
common 271, 273, 1260
compound 1250

time signatures *(continued)*
custom 1250
cut common 271, 273, 1260
deleting 431
denominators 1249, 1256, 1258
design 1262
filter 407
font styles 1262
hiding 428, 1261, 1262
inputting 270, 271, 274, 275
Insert mode 226, 427–429
interchangeable 1250, 1262
irregular 1250
large 1254
MIDI recording 253
moving 437, 440, 481, 1261
multi-bar rests 1153, 1154
multiple positions 1196, 1197
non-power of two 1250
note grouping 26, 755, 774, 1133
noteheads 1258
numerators 1249, 1256, 1257
open 1250, 1256, 1258
panel 273
parentheses 271, 274, 1256, 1259
pick-up bars 272, 277, 278, 1250, 1253
polymeter 274, 275, 277, 278, 1249
popover 271
position 274, 275, 1256, 1261
rest grouping 755, 774
rhythm slashes 1133
selecting 401, 404, 406, 407
separators 1256, 1259
showing 1261, 1262
signposts 426, 732, 1256, 1258, 1261
simple 1250
size 1256, 1262
spacing gaps 1261
staves 1254, 1256
styles 1256, 1259
system objects 1255
ties 1232, 1239
types 271, 1250
upbeats. *See* pick-up bars
vertical position 1196, 1197, 1254, 1256
Time Signatures (Meter) panel 273
timecodes 1103
changing 181, 1102, 1104
dialog 181
drop frame 1103
exporting 100
flows 117
frequency 1105
inputting 383
markers 383–385
non-drop frame 1103
offset 1104
panel 384
staff 1100, 1104
staff spacing 559, 577
start values 1104
tempo 385
text 1101
timecodes *(continued)*
transport window 515, 517
vertical position 1104
times played 1118
changing 510
timpani 127
key signatures 109
laissez vibrer ties 1240
rolls. *See* tremolos. *See also* trills
title pages 599, 895
tokens 607
titles 75, 178
accidentals 608
adding 69, 75, 1221
changing 75, 179, 1221
first pages 601, 895
flow headings 568, 603–605
flows 178, 179, 603
hiding 69, 567, 568
movements 603
page templates 601
projects 178
running headers 568, 601
showing 69, 567, 568
templates 603
tokens 607
tokens 607, 1221
accidentals 608
clefs 608
date 611
file names 545, 607
first pages 601
flows 178, 603–605, 609, 610
inputting 607
language 57
music symbols 608
page numbers 610
page templates 601, 895
project information 75, 178, 609
Roman numerals 610
running headers 601
SMuFL 608
staff labels 608
time 611
titles 178
tom-tom. *See* unpitched percussion
tonality systems 918
octave divisions 918
panel 269
scale mapping 460, 467
ToneBooster 671, 675
tones
intervals. *See* whole steps. *See also* pitch
microtones. *See* microtones. *See also* quarter tones
tongue clicks. *See* playing techniques
toolbar 31
hiding 31
Key Editor 621
transport options 31, 33
workspace options 31, 32

toolboxes 39
Key Editor 621
Notations 186, 192
Notes 186, 187
tools 39
arranging. *See* arranging
editing. *See* properties. *See also* default settings
selecting 39, 41
timecodes 1103
touched pitch 968
harmonics 972
Track Inspector 485, 488, 615
track overview 486
automation. *See* MIDI CC editor
chords track 498
dynamics. *See* Dynamics editor
markers track 497
MIDI CC. *See* MIDI CC editor
MIDI pitch bend. *See* MIDI Pitch Bend editor. *See also* MIDI CC editor
pitch bends. *See* MIDI Pitch Bend editor. *See also* MIDI CC editor
Tempo editor 656
tempo track 496. *See also* Tempo editor
tracks 494, 619, 667
adding 627
automation. *See* MIDI CC editor
chords. *See* chords track
colors 495, 630, 631
dynamics. *See* Dynamics editor
height 500, 625
hiding 500, 623, 627
importing 86
independent voice playback 506, 507, 530
inputting notes 632
inserts 667, 668, 671, 675, 676
instruments. *See* instrument tracks
Key Editor 619
locking 623
markers 497
MIDI. *See* MIDI CC editor
MIDI import 86
muting 507
names 86
percussion. *See* percussion editor
piano roll. *See* piano roll editor
playing techniques. *See* Playing Techniques editor
selecting 88
showing 500, 623, 627
soloing 507
system. *See* system track
tempo. *See* tempo tracks
time. *See* tempo track. *See also* Tempo editor
types 494
unlocking 623
velocity. *See* Velocity editor
voices 495, 506, 507
volume 673
width 501, 625
zoom 500, 501, 625
traditional
music fonts 681
rastral size 573
tonality systems 918
transcribing
MIDI import 89, 92
MIDI recording 252, 253, 256
voices 252, 253
Transform tool 659, 663
hiding 664
showing 664
transformations 453
inversion 453
Key Editor 659, 660, 663
MIDI CC 660
pitch mapping 458
popover 462
repetition 457
retrograde 454
rotation 456
scale mapping 460
selections 664
velocity 659, 660, 663
transition lines 1067, 1075
appearance 1071
duration 1068
hiding 1071
inputting 352, 356, 358
MIDI 653
playing techniques 1072
showing 1071, 1073
tempo 656, 657
translation lyrics 919
changing lines to 936
changing lyrics to 920
popover 375
transport 515
basic options 31, 33
hiding 515
playhead 502
playhead position 515, 517
repeats 509
showing 515
window 515
Transpose dialog 445, 446
transposed pitch 170, 444
chord symbols 142, 169, 794, 796
clefs 315, 817, 819
exporting 542
input pitch 218
instrument transpositions 1185
layouts 169, 608, 895
MIDI import 89
note input 218
part layouts 165, 169, 538, 542
printing 538
score layouts 538, 542
showing 169
staff labels 1180, 1185
status display 39
tokens 608, 895
viewing 169

transposing 444, 446
accidentals 446, 915, 917
chord symbols 142, 145–147, 149, 150, 169, 445, 446, 782, 794
clefs 109, 820
dialog 446
expression maps 682, 684, 687, 690
figured bass 445, 447
flows 445, 446
fretted instruments 138, 140–142
instruments. *See* transposing instruments
key signatures 445, 446, 911, 915, 917
layouts 165, 170, 174, 608, 895
MIDI import 89
notes 444–448, 458–460, 464, 467, 636, 637
octaves 444
pitch. *See* transposed pitch
popover 464
scales 460, 467
selections 445
staff labels 1185
strings 142
tokens 608, 895
transposing instruments 133, 169, 1180
chord symbols 142, 794, 796
clefs 109, 817, 820
concert pitch 169, 170
fretted instruments 133, 145, 146
instrument transpositions 1185, 1186
key signatures 170, 679, 911, 913, 916
layout names 174
layouts 169, 170
staff labels 1180, 1185, 1186
transposed pitch 169, 170
tre corde. *See* una corda pedal. *See also* pedal lines
treble clef. *See* clefs
trees. *See* split stems
tremblements. *See* ornaments
tremolo arm. *See* vibrato bar
Tremolo plug-in 671, 675
tremolo strokes 1141, 1264, 1268
changing number 1267, 1268
moving 1269
tremolos 1264
angles 1265
articulations 705
attack 388, 395, 397, 1266
cross-staff 764, 768
deleting 1268
inputting 388–390, 395, 397
measured 1264
MIDI import 89, 92
MIDI recording 256
moving strokes 1269
multi-note 389, 1264
number of strokes 1267
panel 390, 397
percussion 1282, 1283
placement 1265
playback 506, 507, 705–707
popover 388, 389, 395
position 1265, 1269
release 388, 395, 397, 1266
tremolos *(continued)*
single-note 388, 1264
speed 1268
strokes. *See* tremolo strokes
tie chains 1266
tuplets 1264
types 388, 389, 1264
unmeasured 1264
triads. *See* chords. *See also* chord symbols
triangles
beams 760
chord symbols 783
noteheads 943, 946, 1283, 1286, 1287
percussion. *See* unpitched percussion
playback 700
trill intervals 984, 985, 990
accidentals 986, 989
appearance 989, 990
auxiliary notes 989
changing 986, 987
deleting 988
hiding 985
Hollywood-style 989
indicators 984
inputting 331
microtonal 985–987
position 990
resetting 988
showing 985
signposts 426, 985
trill lines 982, 983
hiding 983
length 410, 481
showing 983
speed 982, 983
trills 977, 981, 989, 991, 1264
accidentals 986, 989, 990
alignment 979, 983
appearance 989, 990
auxiliary notes 989
colors 55
crosshairs 484
deleting 431
deleting intervals 988
extension lines. *See* trill lines
filter 407
generated 992
grace notes 991
handles 410
hiding marks 981
Hollywood-style 989
inputting 326, 331, 332
intervals 326, 984–987, 989, 990
length 410
lines. *See* trill lines
MIDI import 89, 92
MIDI recording 256
moving 437, 440, 481, 978
panel 330, 332
pitch 986, 987, 993
placement 978
playback 706, 707, 991, 992
popover 326

trills *(continued)*
position 978, 979
resetting 988
sampled 992
signposts 426, 984–987
speed 982, 991, 992
staff-relative placement 414
start position 979
starting pitch 993
tablature 981
trimming flows 288, 731
triple accidentals
respelling 449, 450, 452
transposing 446
triple barlines 736, 737
triple-dotted notes 219
triplets 1271
inputting 187, 243, 244
swing playback 512
trombone. *See* instruments
troppo. *See* tempo marks
true black 553
trumpet. *See* instruments
tuba. *See* instruments
Tube Compressor 671, 675
tucking index 825
changing 825, 1067, 1079
chord symbols 147, 148, 150
lines 1079
playing techniques 1067
string indicators 1067
tuning
capos. *See* capos
changing 109, 138, 140
chord diagrams 809, 812, 813
custom 138, 140, 141, 806, 809
dialog 138
exporting 141
fretted instruments 109, 138, 142
guitar 109, 138, 142
importing 141
open pitches 140
strings 140
systems. *See* tonality systems
tuplet brackets 1276
angle 481, 1276
end position 1278
handles 1276
hiding 1276
hooks 1276
horizontal 1278
length 481, 1276
moving 481
showing 1276
tuplet numbers 1271, 1279
appearance 1279
hiding 1279
horizontal position 1280
tuplet ratios. *See* tuplet numbers
tuplets 897, 1264, 1271
accidentals 233
appearance 1276, 1279
articulations 259, 725
tuplets *(continued)*
barlines 1274
beams 754, 771, 774, 1275
beat units 246
brackets. *See* tuplet brackets
colors 55
deleting 1273
end position 1278
filter 407
formatting 1279
handles 1276
hiding 1276, 1279
hooks 1276
horizontal brackets 1278
inputting 94, 243, 1272, 1273
inverting 1277
Key Editor 630
moving 437, 440, 454, 456, 481, 1280
nested tuplets 1271, 1272
notes 1273
numbers. *See* tuplet numbers
percussion kits 1292
piano roll editor 630
placement 825
popover 243, 244
position 825
quantization 94
ratios. *See* tuplet numbers
reversing 454. *See also* retrograde
rotating 456
showing 1279
signposts 426, 1276, 1279
slurs 260
staff-relative placement 1277
swing playback 512
transformations 453, 1273
tremolos 1264
tucking index 825
types 244, 1271
unscaling 1273
Turkish music
octave divisions 918
turn off. *See* hiding. *See also* deactivating
turns 977
intervals 977
jazz. *See* jazz ornaments
pages. *See* frame breaks
tutorials 69
tutti 1199
two-up page arrangement 547
types
appearance 415
arpeggio signs 328
articulations 1029
bar repeats 389
barlines 735
breath marks 322, 907
caesuras 322, 907
caret 205
chord symbols 305, 783
clefs 315
dynamics 296, 828
enclosures 743

types *(continued)*
fermatas 321, 906
fingerings 263, 887
glissando lines 328
grace notes 901
holds 321, 905
jazz articulations 327, 1028–1030
key signatures 266
lines 1075, 1077
lyrics 375, 919, 920
notehead sets 940
noteheads 941, 945
notes 191
octave lines 316, 822
ornaments 326, 1029
page templates 601
pauses 321, 905
pedal lines 354, 1044
percussion legends 1296
players 86, 120, 124
playing technique lines 1069, 1071
playing techniques 352, 1062
rehearsal marks 1097
repeat endings 387
repeat markers 388
resetting 415
rhythm slashes 1142
syllables 921
templates 78
tempo marks 280, 283, 1205
text 1221
ties 1234
time signatures 271, 1250, 1256, 1259
tracks 494
tremolos 388, 389, 1264
tuplets 244, 1271

U

ukulele. *See* fretted instruments
una corda pedal 1044, 1058
appearance 1060
hiding 1060
MIDI controller 1061
start signs 1054
text 1059, 1060
unassigned instruments
loading sounds 523
uncompressed MusicXML 84
undamped. *See* playing techniques. *See also* laissez vibrer ties
underlines
fingerings 877
instrument names 176
lyrics 932
staff labels 176
text 371
undo 31
ungrouping
dynamics 854
playing techniques 1074
unisons 1199
altered. *See* altered unisons
arranging 441
deleting 441
stems 221
voices 221, 1304, 1305, 1307
units
beats 181, 283, 385, 412, 1211, 1212
measurement 51
metronome marks 412, 1212
quantization 94
rhythmic grid 204
swing playback 512
system track 404
tempo 283, 385
time 181, 515
tuplets 244
video 181
Universal Indian Drum Notation 1301
unlinking 855
dynamics 856
Key Editor 623
slurs 1170
tracks 623
unmeasured tremolos. *See* tremolos
unpitched percussion 1282
articulations 705, 1283, 1291
drags. *See* grace notes
drum sets. *See* drum sets
dynamics in kits 1293
exporting kits 1290
flams. *See* grace notes
ghost notes. *See* bracketed noteheads
grid kit presentation 154–157, 1189
groups 154, 1189
importing kits 1290
Indian drum notation 1301
individual instruments 1288
instrument order 156
Key Editor. *See* percussion editor
kits. *See* percussion kits
laissez vibrer ties 1240
legends 1295–1298
MIDI import 86
moving notes 1291
MusicXML files 83
naming groups 155
notation options 1289
notations 1291
note input 227, 230, 231, 632, 633
noteheads 1283, 1287
parentheses. *See* bracketed noteheads
percussion maps 531, 700, 701
Play mode. *See* percussion editor
playback 531, 700, 701, 705, 1282
playing techniques 637, 705, 1282, 1283, 1285, 1286, 1292
presentation types 150, 1288, 1293, 1294
rhythm slashes 150, 1142
rudiments 211, 247, 897, 1264, 1271
scrapes. *See* playing techniques
staff labels 154, 155, 1189
staff position 637, 1283, 1286, 1287

unpitched percussion *(continued)*
staves 150, 1293, 1294
stem direction 150, 231, 1300
stickings 1292
techniques. *See* playing techniques
tremolos 705, 1283
tuplets 1292
voices in kits 1300, 1301
unscaling
grace notes 900
tuplets 1273
up arpeggio signs. *See* arpeggio signs
up bow. *See* playing techniques
up-bow breath marks. *See* breath marks
up-stem voices. *See* voices
upbeats. *See* pick-up bars
upper case
chord symbols 783
flow numbers 610
Roman numerals 610
upper limits. *See* limits
upper notes
percussion 227, 1283, 1286
trills 993
used chord diagrams 809
capos 149, 150
fingerings 810
user interface 30
colors 52, 53, 55
language 56, 64
transport options 33
windows 30
user name
comments 470, 475

V

value fields 618
value line
dynamics 645
MIDI 651, 653
tempo 496, 656
values
faders 669, 673
frame rates 181
gradual tempo changes 1214
histogram controls 661
latency compensation 257
metronome marks 412, 1212–1214
MIDI CC 654, 659–661, 663, 664
notes. *See* note durations
properties 618
relative tempo changes 1213
rhythmic grid 39, 204, 632
timecodes 181, 1104
velocity 642–644, 659–661, 663
valves
fingerings 887
vamping 312
velocity
bracketed noteheads 954
changing 643, 644, 659–661, 663
controls 643, 659–661, 663
velocity *(continued)*
editor. *See* Velocity editor
expression maps 690
Histogram tool 659, 660
MIDI import 92
MIDI recording 256
resetting 644
selecting 664
Transform tool 663
Velocity editor 642, 643, 645
adding 627, 642
changing velocity 643, 659–661, 663
closing 627, 642
filter 661
height 625
Histogram controls 660
resetting velocity 644
Transform controls 663
zoom 625
velocity lanes. *See* Velocity editor
verse numbers 938
exporting 924
hiding 938
lyric line numbers 935
showing 938
versions
files 73
vertical alignment
crosshairs 484
dynamics 831, 853–856
items 484
lines 1072
playing techniques 1072
vertical justification
staves 560, 577
systems 560, 577
vertical lines. *See* lines. *See also* arpeggio signs
vertical position 481
articulations 725, 727
bar numbers 746–748, 1131
breath marks 908
caesuras 908
changing 414
chord symbols 783, 788, 790, 792, 797, 808
counts 1131, 1140
dynamics 829, 841
fermatas 908
figured bass 859, 866
fingerings 871, 881, 882, 884
flipping items 414
flow headings 568, 570, 571, 603
harp pedal diagrams 1042
instruments 123, 124
layouts 170
lines 1067, 1078, 1081, 1084, 1094
lyrics 919, 925, 928, 929, 935–937
markers 1100
modifiers 841
ornaments 978
pauses 907
pedal lines 1050
players 123, 124
playing techniques 414, 1066, 1067

vertical position *(continued)*
poco a poco 841
rehearsal marks 1095, 1196, 1197
repeat endings 1110, 1196, 1197
repeat markers 1117, 1197
rests 1144
rhythm slashes 1135
slurs 1159, 1164
stacking order. *See* stacking order
staves 123, 124, 559, 560, 577
string indicators 1067
system objects 1197
systems 559, 560, 577
tacets 594
tempo marks 1196, 1197, 1208
text 414, 1196, 1197, 1226
ties 1237, 1245
time signatures 1196, 1254, 1256, 1261
timecodes 1100, 1104
tremolos 1265
trills 978
vertical spacing
bracketed noteheads 954, 957
chord diagrams 809
frame fullness indicator 480
lyrics 929
ossia staves 1194
percussion kits 157
staves. *See* staff spacing
systems. *See* system spacing
tacets 594
vertical stacking order. *See* stacking order
vibrato. *See* playing techniques
vibrato bar 1006, 1011, 1021
chords 1011
deleting 431, 1027
dips 346, 347, 1021, 1026
dives 1011, 1019, 1021
duration 410, 1068
handles 1017, 1019
inputting 340, 341, 343, 344, 347, 348
intervals 1012, 1026
length 410
lines 347, 348, 410, 1021, 1068
moving 481, 1017, 1019
playback 1011
pre-dives. *See* guitar pre-bends
returns 1011, 1019, 1021
scoops 1021
Vibrato plug-in 671, 675
Video Properties dialog 181
videos 69, 180
adding 182
audio 184, 667–669, 672
channel 667–669, 672
dialog 181
flows 117
formats 180
frame rates 185
hiding 183
locating 182
markers 497, 1099
mixer 667–669, 672
videos *(continued)*
panel 384
reloading 182
removing 184
size 184
start position 183
syncing 183
timecodes 1103, 1104
tutorials 69
volume 184
window 183, 184
Viennese accidental duration rule 719
view options 41, 554
background color 53
bar numbers 745
bar repeats 1122
changing 39, 662
chord diagrams 806, 808, 809
chord symbols 147, 148, 150, 789, 790, 792, 794, 808
colors 52–55
comments 470, 476
exporting 554
figured bass 868
flows 487
frame break signposts 592
full screen mode 50
galley view 41, 50
harp pedaling 951
hiding 416
histogram editor 662
Hub 69
Key Editor 619, 623, 625–627, 662
language 56, 64
layouts 34, 43, 47
mixer 667, 669, 672
moving music 418–420
music area 35, 42, 50
notes 509, 951, 1304
notes out of range 54, 951
numbered bar regions 1122
page arrangements 39, 42, 50
page color 53
page view 41, 50
panels 38, 44
percussion legends 1295
piano roll 619, 623, 625–627, 630
playhead 503, 517
print preview 416, 533
printing 554
recent projects 69
rests 951, 1148
signposts 427
slash regions 1134
system break signposts 588
system track 406
tabs 34, 43, 45, 47
time signature signposts 1261
timecode 517
tracks 500, 501, 625
transport 517
types 41
video window 183

view options *(continued)*
voices 1303, 1304
windows 49
zoom 42, 420, 500, 501, 625
VintageCompressor 671, 675
violin. *See* instruments
vivace. *See* tempo marks
vocal scores. *See* layouts
vocal staves 78, 109, 111
barlines 739, 740
brackets 778, 1188
groups 158
staff grouping 778, 1188
syllabic beaming 757
voice colors
changing 54
exporting 554
hiding 416, 1304
printing 554
showing 1304
voice column index 1305–1308
default settings 679
ledger lines 948
order 1307, 1308
resetting 1308
rhythm dots 950, 1307
voices 221, 717, 1303
accidental stacking order 715, 716
adding 221
alignment 1305–1308
articulations 724
bar rests 236, 1147, 1151
beaming 963
caret 205, 221
changing 442, 443, 1142
chord symbol playback 303, 499, 500
chords 240
colors 54, 495, 630, 631, 1303, 1304
column index 1307
copying 637
creating new 221
cues 827
deleting 1309
direction 1135
divisi. *See* divisi. *See also* condensing
drum sets 154, 1289, 1300, 1301
dynamics 299, 302, 645, 838
endpoints 530
fermatas 907, 909
filters 407, 621, 661
flows 530
glissando lines 334, 335
grace notes 898
hiding 1136
Histogram tool 659, 661
identifying 39, 1304
inputting 221, 240, 632
Insert mode 226, 427
Key Editor 506, 623, 632
ledger lines 948
merging 441
MIDI CC editor 651
MIDI import 89, 92
voices *(continued)*
MIDI recording 252, 253, 255, 256
mixer 667, 668, 673
moving notes 440
muting 507
notation options 1304
octave lines 318, 320
order 679, 1307, 1308
overlapping 1305, 1307
panning 674, 838
parts. *See* layouts
pasting notes into 637
percussion kits 150, 154, 1289, 1300, 1301
piano roll editor 623, 630, 632
placement 1306
playback 506, 507, 530
playing techniques 356, 358, 641
position 1306
rests 1144, 1146, 1148
rhythm dots 950, 1307
rhythm slashes 223, 1135
selecting 401–403, 407, 442, 623, 627, 632
showing 1136
slash regions 1136
slashes 223, 442, 1134, 1141, 1142
slurs 1158, 1164, 1166
soloing 507
spacing. *See* note spacing
status bar 39
stem direction 961, 964, 1300, 1303, 1309
stems 1307, 1308
swapping contents 443
swapping order 1307
switching between 221
ties 237, 1237, 1239
tracks 488, 495, 506
velocity 642–644, 659, 661
volume 673
voicing
chord diagrams 805, 809, 812, 813
chord symbols 303, 499, 500
notes 221, 240
percussion kits 150, 154
volta lines. *See* repeat endings
volume
bracketed noteheads 954
channel meters 667, 668, 673
click 673
dynamics 647, 828, 835, 851, 857
MIDI 857
mixer 667, 668, 673
playback 673, 690
resetting 673
silence playback template 518, 519
swells. *See* messa di voce
tracks 667, 668, 673
velocity 642–644, 659, 663, 690
video audio 184
VST Amp Rack 671, 675
VST and MIDI panel 485, 491
VST Bass Amp 671, 675

VST instruments 488, 491
allowing 505
blocking 505
chord symbols 499
click 496
editing 491
endpoints 525, 528
expression maps 683
instances 491
loading 493, 505
names 526
numbering 491
panel 491
percussion maps 531
playback 518, 519, 525, 682, 700
ports 488, 526
VSTDynamics 671, 675

W

w/ bar. *See* vibrato bar
WahWah 671, 675
walker noteheads 945, 946
warnings
audio engine 39
deleting players 107, 125
different Dorico versions 73
exporting 542
MIDI input 39
missing fonts 74
printing 538
transposition 538, 542
watermarks 554
exporting 542
printing 538
WAV files
exporting 99, 100
wavy lines. *See* wiggly lines. *See also* lines
wedge lines 367, 1075
hiding 1070
inputting 368
showing 1068, 1070, 1071, 1085
wedge noteheads 943, 946
weight
fonts 786
time signatures 1262
Western tonality
key signatures 912
octave divisions 918
whammy bar. *See* vibrato bar
whistle tones. *See* playing techniques. *See also* diamond noteheads
white
noteheads 940, 941, 946
pages 53, 55
staves 55
whole notes 16, 191, 211, 214, 225, 226, 247, 248
beats 288
chords 240
metronome marks 282
percussion 227, 633
rests 235, 1144
splitting notes 249
whole notes *(continued)*
tablature 232
tremolos 395, 397, 1264
tuplets 243, 246
voices 221
whole step trills 984, 991
appearance 989
hiding 981, 985
inputting 326, 332
position 990
showing 981, 985
whole steps 712
bend intervals 1012, 1026
pitch bends 650
string pitches 138
tonality systems 918
transposing instruments 133, 916
trills. *See* whole step trills
whole tone
chord symbols 308
scales 460, 467
whole-half diminished. *See* scales. *See also* intervals
width
accidentals 716
barlines 735
bars 569, 579, 1149, 1198
beams 758, 770
braces 779
brackets 779, 781
columns 74
elision slurs 925, 938
empty bars 1149
flared hairpins 847
graphics 786
H-bars 1152, 1153
hairpins 832, 843, 848
Key Editor 625
keys 197
laissez vibrer ties 1240
ledger lines 948
line borders 1091
lines 569
measures 569
messa di voce 848
multi-bar rests 1153
note durations 579, 639. *See also* note spacing
notehead brackets 959
noteheads 943
notes 625
percussion editor 625
piano roll editor 625
system dividers 1196
systems 569, 1198
text borders 1091, 1228
ties 1243
time signatures 1262
tracks 501, 625
wiggly lines 1000, 1028, 1075
glissando lines 1000, 1001
hiding 1070
inputting 332–337, 368
jazz articulations 327, 330, 336, 337, 1028, 1031
playing techniques 1071

wiggly lines *(continued)*
showing 1068, 1070, 1085
trills 982, 983
wildcards. *See* tokens
wind band. *See* bands. *See also* project templates
wind instruments. *See* woodwind instruments
windows
full screen 50
MIDI instruments 488
mixer 668, 669
moving tabs 49
multiple 45, 48, 49
opening 49
playback 49
project 30
splitting 48
tabs 48
transport 515
video 183, 184
VST instruments 488, 491
workspaces 43
wizard. *See* hub
wood blocks 1282, 1288, 1289
adding 121, 133
click 496
woodwind instruments 127
adding 109, 111, 121, 126, 133
brackets 778, 1188
chord symbols 789
groups 158
player order 107, 123
playing techniques 355
transposition 109, 133
word spacing 371
instrument names 176
lyrics 932, 934
staff labels 176
words. *See* lyrics. *See also* text
workflow
comments 470
worksheets
colors 55, 945
extracts. *See* flows
note name noteheads 945
text alignment 1225
workspaces 21
key commands 28, 63
options 31, 32
preferences 58
setting up 43, 56
wrapping text
repeat markers 1115
Write mode 21, 186
caret 209
inputting notations 259
inputting notes 210
inputting vs. editing 201
navigation. *See* navigation
notation options 679
panels 38, 186, 191, 195, 615
playhead 503
popovers 24
selecting 401–403, 406, 407
Write mode *(continued)*
selecting notes 417
signposts 426
spacing 579
switching 186
system track 404
text editor 371
toolboxes 39, 186, 187, 192
Transpose dialog 446
written tempo 285, 286, 504, 1204, 1211

X

X-noteheads 942, 946
dead notes 1025
percussion 227, 633, 1283, 1285–1287
xylophone. *See* instruments

Z

zero
bar numbers 1253
chord diagrams 805, 814
string indicators 366, 891
zig-zag
accidentals 715
lines. *See* lines
zones 30, 38
Engrave mode 477, 615
hiding 44
lower 615
Play mode 485, 619, 667
Print mode 533–535
Setup mode 106, 107, 114, 117
showing 44
Write mode 186, 191, 195–197, 199, 200, 615, 619, 667
zoom 39
bar repeats 1122
changing 420
chord symbols 794
Key Editor 619, 625
lyrics 931
numbered bar regions 1122
options 39, 42, 420
percussion editor 625, 626
piano roll editor 625, 626
slash regions 1132, 1134
tracks 500, 501, 625